

**Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources**

**THIRD REVIEW DRAFT  
FOR CCSP and CENR CLEARANCE-28 FEBRUARY 2008**

Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.4  
Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program  
And the Subcommittee on Global Change Research

**Editors**

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

**Authors**

Jill S. Baron, U.S. Geological Survey and Colorado State University  
Linda A. Joyce, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Brad Griffith, U.S. Geological Survey  
Peter Kareiva, The Nature Conservancy  
Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Margaret Palmer, University of Maryland  
Charles Peterson, University of North Carolina  
J. Michael Scott, U.S. Geological Survey and University of Idaho

## **FEDERAL EXECUTIVE TEAM**

Acting Director, Climate Change Science Program:	William J. Brennan
Director, Climate Change Science Program Office:	Peter A. Schultz
Lead Agency Principal Representative to CCSP, National Program Director for the Global Change Research Program, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:	Joel D. Scheraga
Product Lead, Global Ecosystem Research and Assessment Coordinator, Global Change Research Program, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:	Susan Herrod Julius
Chair, Synthesis and Assessment Product Advisory Group Associate Director, National Center for Environmental Assessment, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:	Michael W. Slimak
Synthesis and Assessment Product Coordinator, Climate Change Science Program Office:	Fabien J.G. Laurier
Special Advisor, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	Chad A. McNutt

## **EDITORIAL AND PRODUCTION TEAM**

Editor, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:	Susan Herrod Julius
Editor, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency:	Jordan M. West
Technical Advisor, Climate Change Science Program Office:	David J. Dokken

Disclaimer: This document, part of the Synthesis and Assessment Products described in the U.S. Climate Change Science Program (CCSP) Strategic Plan, was prepared in accordance with Section 515 of the Treasury and General Government Appropriations Act for Fiscal Year 2001 (Public Law 106-554) and the information quality act guidelines issued by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency pursuant to Section 515. The CCSP Interagency Committee relies on U.S. Environmental Protection Agency certifications regarding compliance with Section 515 and Agency guidelines as the basis for determining that this product conforms with Section 515. For purposes of compliance with Section 515, this CCSP Synthesis and Assessment Product is an “interpreted product” as that term is used in U.S. Environmental Protection Agency guidelines and is classified as “highly influential”. This document does not express any regulatory policies of the United States or any of its agencies, or provides recommendations for regulatory action.

**LETTER TO MEMBERS OF CONGRESS / TRANSMITTAL LETTER**

**LEFT BLANK INTENTIONNALLY**

## AUTHORS TEAM FOR THIS REPORT

Chapter 1	<p><b>Lead Authors:</b> Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. EPA; Jordan M. West, U.S. EPA</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow, U.S. EPA; Jill S. Baron, USGS and Colo. State Univ.; Linda A. Joyce, USDA Forest Service; Peter Kareiva, The Nature Conservancy; Brian D. Keller, NOAA; Margaret A. Palmer, Univ. Md.; Charles H. Peterson, Univ. N. Car.; J. Michael Scott, USGS and Univ. Id.</p>
Chapter 2	<p><b>Lead Authors:</b> Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. EPA; Jordan M. West, U.S. EPA; Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow, U.S. EPA</p>
Chapter 3	<p><b>Lead Author:</b> Linda A. Joyce, USDA Forest Service</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow, U.S. EPA; Jeremy S. Littell, JISAO CSES Climate Impacts Group, Univ. Wa.; Steven G. McNulty, USDA Forest Service; Constance I. Millar, USDA Forest Service; Susanne C. Moser, NCAR; Ronald P. Neilson, USDA Forest Service; Kathy O'Halloran, USDA Forest Service; David L. Peterson, USDA Forest Service</p>
Chapter 4	<p><b>Lead Author:</b> Jill S. Baron, USGS and Colo. State Univ.</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Craig D. Allen, USGS; Erica Fleishman, NCEAS, Univ. Southern Calif.; Lance Gunderson, Emory Univ.; Don McKenzie, USDA Forest Service; Laura Meyerson, Univ. Rhode Is.; Jill Oropeza, Colo. State Univ.; Nate Stephenson, USGS</p>
Chapter 5	<p><b>Lead Authors:</b> J. Michael Scott, USGS and Univ. Id.; Brad Griffith, USGS</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Robert S. Adamcik, USFWS; Daniel M. Ashe, USFWS; Brian Czech, USFWS; Robert L. Fischman, Indiana Univ. School of Law; Patrick Gonzalez, The Nature Conservancy; Joshua J. Lawler, Univ. Wa.; A. David McGuire, USGS; Anna Pidgorna, Univ. Id.</p>
Chapter 6	<p><b>Lead Author:</b> Margaret A. Palmer, Univ. Md.</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Dennis Lettenmaier, Univ. Wa.; N. LeRoy Poff, Colo. State Univ.; Sandra Postel, Global Water Policy Project; Brian Richter, The Nature Conservancy; Richard Warner, Kinnickinnic Consulting</p>
Chapter 7	<p><b>Lead Author:</b> Charles H. Peterson, Univ. N. Car.;</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Richard T. Barber, Duke Univ.; Kathryn L. Cottingham, Dartmouth College; Heike K. Lotze, Dalhousie Univ.; Charles A. Simenstad, Univ. Wa.; Robert R. Christian, East Car. Univ.; Michael F. Piehler, Univ. N. Car.; John Wilson, U.S. EPA</p>
Chapter 8	<p><b>Lead Author:</b> Brian D. Keller, NOAA</p> <p><b>Contributing Authors:</b> Satie Airamé, Univ. Ca. Santa Barbara; Billy Causey, NOAA; Alan Friedlander, NOAA; Daniel F. Gleason, Ga. Southern Univ.; Rikki Grober-Dunsmore, NOAA;</p>

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

	Johanna Johnson, Great Barrier Reef MPA; Elizabeth Mcleod, The Nature Conservancy; Steven L. Miller, Univ. N. Car. Wilmington; Robert S. Steneck, Univ. Maine; Christa Woodley, Univ. Ca. Davis
Chapter 9	<b>Lead Author:</b> Peter Kareiva, The Nature Conservancy <b>Contributing Authors:</b> Carolyn Enquist, The Nature Conservancy; Ayana Johnson, Univ. Ca. San Diego; Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. EPA; Joshua Lawler, Oregon State Univ.; Brian Petersen, Univ. Ca. Santa Cruz; Louis Pitelka, Univ. Md.; Rebecca Shaw, The Nature Conservancy; Jordan M. West, U.S. EPA
Annex A	<b>Editors:</b> Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. EPA; Jordan M. West, U.S. EPA; <b>Lead Authors:</b> Jill S. Baron, USGS and Colo. State Univ.; Brad Griffith, USGS; Linda A. Joyce, USDA Forest Service; Brian D. Keller, NOAA; Margaret A. Palmer, Univ. Md.; Charles H. Peterson, Univ. N. Car.; J. Michael Scott, USGS and Univ. Id.
Annex B	<b>Editors:</b> Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. EPA; Jordan M. West, U.S. EPA; <b>Lead Authors:</b> Jill S. Baron, USGS and Colo. State Univ.; Linda A. Joyce, USDA Forest Service; Brian D. Keller, NOAA; Margaret A. Palmer, Univ. Md.; Charles H. Peterson, Univ. N. Car.; J. Michael Scott, USGS and Univ. Id.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

### **Federal Advisory Committee: Adaptation for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources Advisory Committee (ACSERAC)**

We would like to thank the following members of ACSERAC who provided excellent reviews of this report that resulted in an improved document, and to the Designated Federal Officials:

#### Chair

Paul G. Risser, University of Oklahoma

Elizabeth Malone, Joint Global Change  
Research Institute

#### Vice-Chair

Reed F. Noss, University of Central Florida

David Patton, University of Arizona  
Daniel Tufford, University of South Carolina  
Robert Van Woesik, Florida Institute of  
Technology

#### Members

Joe Arvai, Michigan State University

Eric Gilman, IUCN Global Marine

Programme

Carl Hershner, Virginia Institute of Marine  
Science

George Hornberger, University of Virginia

#### Designated Federal Officials

Joanna Foellmer

Janet Gamble (back-up)

Thank you to Sharon Moxley (EPA) and to  
Versar, Inc for their support to the  
ACSERAC.

### **Additional External (Public) Reviewers**

We would like to thank the many individuals who provided useful comments during the public review period. The draft manuscript, public review comments, and response to public comments are publicly available at: <http://www.climatescience.gov/Library/sap/sap4-4/default.php>  
Stakeholder workshop participants and key reviewers are acknowledged in individual chapters.

### **US Environmental Protection Agency Internal Reviewers**

We would like to thank the following internal reviewers who provided valuable comments on this report in preparation for external and public review:

Peter Beedlow Office of Research and  
Development

Paul Bunje American Association for the  
Advancement of Science Fellow

David Burden Office of Research and  
Development

Barry Burgan Office of Water

Ben DeAngelo Office of Air and Radiation

Dominic Digiulio Office of Research and  
Development

Anne Fairbrother Office of Research and  
Development

Bill Fisher Office of Research and  
Development

Eric Jorgensen Office of Research and  
Development

Chris Laab Office of Water

Michael Lewis Office of Research and  
Development

Jeremy Martinich Office of Air and  
Radiation

Larry Merrill Region 3

Dave Olszyk Office of Research and  
Development

Kathryn Parker Office of Air and Radiation

Amina Pollard Office of Research and  
Development

Jackie Poston Region 10

#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

Kathryn Saterson Office of Research and Development

Karen Scott Office of Air and Radiation

Jim Titus Office of Air and Radiation

Jim Wigington Office of Research and Development

Wendy Wiltse Region 9

Steve Winnett Region 1

Jeff Yang Office of Research and Development

3 anonymous reviewers Office of Research and Development

#### **National Center for Environmental Assessment (NCEA), Global Change Research Program**

We would like to thank our colleagues in the Global Change Research Program who contributed thoughtful insights, reviewed numerous drafts, and helped with the production of this report: Amanda Babson (AAAS Fellow), Britta Bierwagen, Geoffrey Blate (AAAS Fellow), Anne Grambsch, Thomas Johnson, Chris Pyke\*, Michael Slimak, Chris Weaver. We would also like to acknowledge the administrative support and oversight provided by the National Center for Environmental Assessment.

#### **ICF International (support contractor to NCEA)**

We would like to thank our colleagues at ICF International for their logistical and technical support for this report, with special thanks to: Susan Asam, Anne Choate, Randall Freed, Joseph Herr, Bradford Hurley, Kathryn Maher, Sandra Seymour, and Sarah Shapiro. Stakeholder workshops were organized by ICF and facilitated by Bill Dennison of the University of Maryland, Center for Environmental Science.

It was an honor and a pleasure to work with all of the people above as well as the many other colleagues we have encountered in the science and management communities who are working to address climate change impacts. We hope that this document will be a positive step forward in our collective.

## RECOMMENDED CITATIONS

Note: The page numbers included below are specific to this third draft report to be cleared by the CCSP and NSTC. These page numbers will change in the final cleared report when it is formatted for publication.

### For the Report as a Whole:

CCSP, 2008: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research. [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, 873 pp.

### For Chapter 1:

Julius, S.H., J.M. West, G.M. Blate, J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, P. Kareiva, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott, 2008: Executive Summary. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 1-1 to 1-6.

### For Chapter 2:

Julius, S.H., J.M. West, and G.M. Blate, 2008: Introduction. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 2-1 to 2-24.

### For Chapter 3:

Joyce, L.A., G.M. Blate, J.S. Littell, S.G. McNulty, C.I. Millar, S.C. Moser, R.P. Neilson, K. O'Halloran, and D.L. Peterson, 2008: National Forests. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 3-1 to 3-127.

### For Chapter 4:

Baron, J.S., C.D. Allen, E. Fleishman, L. Gunderson, D. McKenzie, L. Meyerson, J. Oropeza, and N. Stephenson, 2008: National Parks. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 4-1 to 4-68.

### For Chapter 5:

Scott, J.M., B. Griffith, R.S. Adamcik, D.M. Ashe, B. Czech, R.L. Fischman, P. Gonzalez, J.J. Lawler, A.D. McGuire, and A. Pidgorna, 2008: National Wildlife Refuges. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 5-1 to 5-100.



## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

### **For Chapter 6:**

Palmer, M.A., D. Lettenmaier, N.L. Poff, S. Postel, B. Richter, and R. Warner, 2008: Wild and Scenic Rivers. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 6-1 to 6-73.

### **For Chapter 7:**

Peterson, C.H., R.T. Barber, K.L. Cottingham, H.K. Lotze, C.A. Simenstad, R.R. Christian, M.F. Piehler, and J. Wilson, 2008: National Estuaries. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 7-1 to 7-108.

### **For Chapter 8:**

Keller, B.D., S. Aíramé, B. Causey, A. Friedlander, D.F. Gleason, R. Grober-Dunsmore, J. Johnson, E. Mcleod, S.L. Miller, R.S. Steneck, and C. Woodley, 2008: Marine Protected Areas. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 8-1 to 8-95.

### **For Chapter 9:**

Kareiva, P., C. Enquist, A. Johnson, S.H. Julius, J. Lawler, B. Petersen, L. Pitelka, R. Shaw, and J.M. West, 2008: Synthesis and Conclusions. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 9-1 to 9-66.

### **For Annex A:**

Julius, S.H., J.M. West, J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott, 2008: Annex A: Case Studies. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. A-1 to A-170.

### **For Annex B:**

Julius, S.H., J.M. West, J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott, 2008: Annex B: Confidence Estimates for SAP 4.4 Adaptation Approaches. In: *Preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources*. A Report by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research [Julius, S.H., J.M. West (eds.), J.S. Baron, L.A. Joyce, B.D. Keller, M.A. Palmer, C.H. Peterson, and J.M. Scott (Authors)]. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, USA, pp. B-1 to B-36.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### 1. Executive Summary

### 2. Introduction

- 2.1 Goal and Audience 2-4
- 2.2 Stakeholder Interactions 2-5
- 2.3 Approach for Reviewing Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources 2-5
- 2.4 Climate Variability and Change 2-7
  - 2.4.1 Increases in Surface Temperature 2-7
  - 2.4.2 Changes in Precipitation 2-8
  - 2.4.3 Warming of the Oceans 2-8
  - 2.4.4 Sea Level Rise and Storm Intensity 2-8
  - 2.4.5 Changes in Ocean pH 2-9
  - 2.4.6 Warming in the Arctic 2-9
  - 2.4.7 Changes in Extreme Events 2-10
  - 2.4.8 Changes in Hydrology 2-10
  - 2.4.9 Observed Ecological Responses 2-10
  - 2.4.10 Future Anticipated Climate Change 2-11
- 2.5 Treatment of Uncertainty 2-11
- 2.6 The Adaptation Challenge: The Purpose of This Report 2-12
- 2.7 References 2-14
- 2.8 Boxes 2-18
- 2.9 Figures 2-21

### 3. National Forests

- 3.1 Summary 3-3
- 3.2 Background and History 3-6
  - 3.2.1 Historical Context and Enabling Legislation 3-6
  - 3.2.2 Evolution of National Forest Mission 3-6
  - 3.2.3 Interpretation of Goals 3-8
- 3.3 Current Status of Management Systems 3-9
  - 3.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics Upon Which Goals Depend 3-9
  - 3.3.2 Stressors of Concern on National Forests 3-11
  - 3.3.3 Management Approaches and Methods Currently in Use to Manage Stressors 3-19
  - 3.3.4 Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change 3-21
- 3.4 Adapting to Climate Change 3-35
  - 3.4.1 The Need for Anticipatory Adaptation 3-35
  - 3.4.2 Approaches for Planning in the Context of Climate Change 3-42
  - 3.4.3 Approaches for Management in the Context of Climate Change 3-45
  - 3.4.4 Prioritizing Management Responses in Situations of Resource Scarcity 3-56
  - 3.4.5 Barriers to Adaptation Approaches 3-57
- 3.5 Conclusions and Recommendations 3-58
  - 3.5.1 Climate Change and National Forests 3-58
  - 3.5.2 Management Response Recommendations 3-59

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

- 3.5.3 Research Priorities 3-63
- 3.6 References 3-68
- 3.7 Acknowledgements 3-102
- 3.8 Boxes 3-103
- 3.9 Case Study Summaries 3-109
- 3.10 Figures 3-116

### **4. National Parks**

- 4.1 Chapter Summary 4-3
- 4.2 Background and History 4-6
  - 4.2.1 Legal History 4-8
  - 4.2.2 Interpretation of Goals 4-10
- 4.3 Current Status of Management Systems 4-12
  - 4.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend 4-12
  - 4.3.2 Stressors of Concern 4-13
  - 4.3.3 Current Approaches to NPS Natural Resource Management 4-20
  - 4.3.4 Sensitivity of NPS Goals to Climate Change 4-25
- 4.4 Adapting to Climate Change 4-26
  - 4.4.1 Coming to Terms with Uncertainty 4-26
  - 4.4.2 Approaches to Management Given Uncertainty 4-27
  - 4.4.3 Incorporating Climate Change Considerations into Natural Resource Management 4-31
- 4.5 Conclusions 4-38
- 4.6 References 4-40
- 4.7 Acknowledgements 4-49
- 4.8 Boxes 4-50
- 4.9 Case Study Summaries 4-59
- 4.10 Figures 4-61

### **5. National Wildlife Refuges**

- 5.1 Summary 5-3
- 5.2 Background and History 5-7
  - 5.2.1 Introduction 5-7
  - 5.2.2 Mission, Establishing Authorities, and Goals 5-10
  - 5.2.3 Origins of the NWRS 5-11
  - 5.2.4 The 1997 NWRS Improvement Act 5-12
- 5.3 Current Status of the NWRS 5-15
  - 5.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend 5-15
  - 5.3.2 Challenges to the NWRS 5-17
  - 5.3.3 Ecoregional Implications of Climate Change for the NWRS 5-26
- 5.4 Adapting to Climate Change 5-33
  - 5.4.1 Adaptive Management as a Framework for Adaptation Actions 5-34
  - 5.4.2 Adaptation Strategies within Refuge Borders 5-35
  - 5.4.3 Adaptation Strategies Outside Refuge Borders 5-38
  - 5.4.4 Steps for Determining Research and Management Actions 5-46
- 5.5 Conclusions 5-55

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

- 5.5.1 Take Away Messages 5-57
- 5.6 References 5-61
- 5.7 Acknowledgements 5-78
- 5.8 Appendix: Actions to Assist Managers in Meeting the Challenges Posed by the Challenge of Climate Change 5-79
- 5.9 Text Boxes 5-86
- 5.10 Case Study Summaries 5-88
- 5.11 Tables 5-90
- 5.12 Figures 5-91

### **6. Wild and Scenic Rivers**

- 6.1 Summary 6-3
- 6.2 Background and History 6-6
- 6.3 Current Status of Management System 6-7
  - 6.3.1 Framework for Assessing Present and Future Status 6-8
  - 6.3.2 Hydrogeomorphic Context 6-8
  - 6.3.3 Present Human Context 6-11
  - 6.3.4 The Policy Context: Present Management Framework Legal and Management Context 6-16
- 6.4 Adapting to Climate Change 6-22
  - 6.4.1 Climate Change Impacts 6-22
  - 6.4.2 Future Human Context: Interactive Effects of Multiple Stressors 6-25
  - 6.4.3 Ecosystem Goods and Services Assuming Present Management 6-27
  - 6.4.4 Options for Protection Assuming New Management 6-29
- 6.5 Conclusions 6-35
- 6.6 References 6-37
- 6.7 Acknowledgements 6-45
- 6.8 Boxes 6-46
- 6.9 Case Study Summaries 6-52
- 6.10 Figures 6-56

### **7. National Estuaries**

- 7.1 Summary 7-3
- 7.2 Background and History 7-7
  - 7.2.1 Historical Context and Enabling Legislation 7-7
  - 7.2.2 Interpretation of National Estuary Program Goals 7-9
- 7.3 Current Status of Management Systems 7-10
  - 7.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend 7-10
  - 7.3.2 Current Stressors of Concern 7-12
  - 7.3.3 Legislative Mandates Guiding Management of Stressors 7-15
  - 7.3.4 Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change 7-24
- 7.4 Adapting to Climate Change 7-40
  - 7.4.1 Potential for Adjustment of Traditional Management Approaches to Achieve Adaptation to Climate Change 7-41

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

- 7.4.2 Management Adaptations to Sustain Estuarine Services 7-44
- 7.4.3 New Approaches to Management in the Context of Climate Change 7-56
- 7.4.4 Prioritization of Management Responses 7-60
- 7.5 Conclusions 7-61
  - 7.5.1 Management Response 7-61
  - 7.5.2 Research Priorities 7-64
- 7.6 Appendix 7-68
  - 7.6.1 Federal Legislation for Protection and Restoration of Estuaries 7-68
- 7.7 References 7-93
- 7.8 Acknowledgements 7-94
- 7.9 Boxes 7-95
- 7.10 Case Study Summaries 7-102
- 7.11 Tables 7-104
- 7.12 Figures 7-107

## **8. Marine Protected Areas**

- 8.1 Summary 8-4
- 8.2 Background and History 8-7
  - 8.2.1 Introduction 8-7
  - 8.2.2 Historical Context and Origins of National Marine Sanctuaries and Other Types of Marine Protected Areas 8-10
  - 8.2.3 Enabling Legislation 8-12
  - 8.2.4 Interpretation of Goals 8-14
- 8.3 Current Status of Management System 8-15
  - 8.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend 8-15
  - 8.3.2 Stressors of Concern 8-18
  - 8.3.3 Management Approaches and Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change 8-27
- 8.4 Adapting to Climate Change 8-30
  - 8.4.1 Ameliorate Existing Stressors in Coastal Waters 8-30
  - 8.4.2 Protect Apparently Resistant and Potentially Resilient Areas 8-32
  - 8.4.3 Develop Networks of MPAs 8-33
  - 8.4.4 Integrate Climate Change Into MPA Planning, Management, and Evaluation 8-37
- 8.5 Conclusions 8-41
  - 8.5.1 Management Considerations 8-41
  - 8.5.2 Research Priorities 8-43
- 8.6 References 8-44
- 8.7 Acknowledgements 8-73
- 8.8 Boxes 8-75
- 8.9 Tables 8-80
- 8.10 Figures 8-84

## **9. Synthesis and Conclusions**

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

### 9.1 Summary 9-3

### 9.2 Introduction 9-5

### 9.3 Assessing Impacts to Support Adaptation 9-6

#### 9.3.1 Mental Models for Making Adaptation Decisions 9-6

#### 9.3.2 Elements of an Impact Assessment 9-7

#### 9.3.3 Uncertainty and How to Incorporate it Into Assessments 9-13

### 9.4 Best Practices for Adaptation 9-16

#### 9.4.1 Resilience 9-16

#### 9.4.2 Adaptation Approaches 9-18

#### 9.4.3 Confidence 9-21

#### 9.4.4 Adaptive Management 9-22

### 9.5 Barriers and Opportunities for Adaptation 9-24

#### 9.5.1 Legislation and Regulation 9-25

#### 9.5.2 Management Policies and Procedures 9-26

#### 9.5.3 Human and Financial Capital 9-29

#### 9.5.4 Information and Science 9-30

### 9.6 Advancing the Nation's Capability to Adapt 9-32

#### 9.6.1 Re-Evaluate Priorities and Consider Triage 9-33

#### 9.6.2 Manage at Appropriate Scales 9-34

#### 9.6.3 Manage for Change 9-35

#### 9.6.4 Expand Interagency Collaboration, Integration, and Lesson-Sharing 9-36

### 9.7 Conclusions 9-38

### 9.8 References 9-40

### 9.9 Appendix: Resources for Assessing Climate Vulnerability And Impacts 9-47

### 9.10 Boxes 9-49

### 9.11 Tables 9-56

### 9.12 Figures 9-65

## 10. Glossary and Acronyms

## 11. SAP Workshop Participants

### Annex A: Case Studies

#### A1 National Forests Case Studies 4

##### A1.1 Tahoe National Forest 4

##### A1.2 Olympic National Forest 16

##### A1.3 Uwharrie National Forest 26

#### A2 National Parks Case Study 30

##### A2.1 Rocky Mountain National Park 30

#### A3 National Wildlife Refuges Case Study 36

##### A3.1 Alaska and the Central Flyway 36

#### A4 Wild and Scenic Rivers Case Studies 47

##### A4.1 Wekiva River 47

##### A4.2 Rio Grande 54

##### A4.3 Upper Delaware River 59

#### A5 National Estuaries Case Study 63

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

A5.1 The Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System	63
A6 Marine Protected Area Case Studies	73
A6.1 The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary	74
A6.2 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park	83
A6.3 Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National Monument	90
A6.4 The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary	99
A6.5 Conclusions about Marine Protected Area Case Studies	107
A7 References	109
A8 Boxes	140
A9 Tables	147
A10 Figures	149

### **Annex B: Confidence Estimates for SAP 4.4 Adaptation Approaches**

B1 Introduction	B-3
B2 Adaptation Approach: Protecting Key Ecosystem Features	B-3
B3 Adaptation Approach: Reducing Anthropogenic Stresses	B-8
B4 Adaptation Approach: Representation	B-12
B5 Adaptation Approach: Replication	B-15
B6 Adaptation approach: Restoration	B-17
B7 Adaptation Approach: Refugia	B-21
B8 Adaptation Approach: Relocation	B-24
B9 References	B-27

# 1 Executive Summary

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

## Authors

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Geoff Blate, AAAS Fellow at U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jill S. Baron, U.S. Geological Survey and Colorado State University  
Linda A. Joyce, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Peter Kareiva, The Nature Conservancy  
Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Margaret Palmer, University of Maryland  
Charles Peterson, University of North Carolina  
J. Michael Scott, U.S. Geological Survey and University of Idaho



1 Climate variables are key determinants of geographic distributions and biophysical  
2 characteristics of ecosystems, communities, and species. Climate *change* is therefore  
3 having profound effects on species attributes, ecological interactions, and ecosystem  
4 processes. Because changes in the climate system will continue into the future regardless  
5 of emissions mitigation, strategies for protecting climate-sensitive ecosystems through  
6 management will be increasingly important. While there will always be uncertainties  
7 associated with the future path of climate change, the response of ecosystems to climate  
8 impacts, and the effects of management, it is both possible and essential for adaptation to  
9 proceed using the best available science.

10  
11 This report provides a preliminary review of adaptation options for climate-sensitive  
12 ecosystems and resources in the United States. The term “adaptation” in this document  
13 refers to adjustments in human social systems (*e.g.*, management) in response to climate  
14 stimuli and their effects. Since management always occurs in the context of desired  
15 ecosystem conditions or natural resource management goals, it is instructive to examine  
16 particular goals and processes used by different organizations to fulfill their objectives.  
17 Such an examination allows for discussion of specific adaptation options as well as  
18 potential barriers and opportunities for implementation. Using this approach, this report  
19 presents a series of chapters on the following selected management systems: National  
20 Forests, National Parks, National Wildlife Refuges, Wild and Scenic Rivers, National  
21 Estuaries, and Marine Protected Areas. The information drawn from across these chapters  
22 is then analyzed to develop the key synthetic messages presented below.

23  
24 *Many existing best management practices for “traditional” stressors of concern have the*  
25 *added benefit of ameliorating climate change exacerbations of those stressors.*

26 Changes in temperature, precipitation, sea level, and other climate-related factors can  
27 often exacerbate problems that are already of concern to managers. For example,  
28 increased intensity of precipitation events can further increase delivery of non-point  
29 source pollution and sediments to rivers, estuaries, and coasts. Fortunately, many  
30 management practices that exist to address such “traditional” stressors can also address  
31 climate change impacts. One such practice with multiple benefits is the construction of  
32 riparian buffer strips that (1) manage pollution loadings from agricultural lands into rivers  
33 today and (2) establish protective barriers against increases in both pollution and  
34 sediment loadings due to climate changes in the future. While multiple benefits may  
35 result from continuing with today’s best practices, key adjustments in their application  
36 across space and time may be needed to ensure their continued effectiveness in light of  
37 climate change.

38  
39 *Seven “adaptation approaches” can be used for strategic adjustment of best management*  
40 *practices to maximize ecosystem resilience to climate change.*

41 As defined in this report, the goal of adaptation is to reduce the risk of adverse  
42 environmental outcomes through activities that increase the resilience of ecological  
43 systems to climate change. Here, resilience refers to the amount of change or disturbance  
44 that a system can absorb without undergoing a fundamental shift to a different set of  
45 processes and structures. Managers’ past experiences with unpredictable and extreme  
46 events have already led to some existing approaches that can be adjusted for use in  
47 adapting to longer-term climate change. The specific “adaptation approaches” described

1 below are derived from discussions of existing (and new) management practices to  
2 maintain or increase ecosystem resilience, drawn from across the chapters of this report.

- 3
- 4 • **Protecting key ecosystem features** involves focusing management protections  
5 on structural characteristics, organisms, or areas that represent important  
6 “underpinnings” or “keystones” of the overall system.
- 7 • **Reducing anthropogenic stresses** is the approach of minimizing localized  
8 human stressors (*e.g.*, pollution, fragmentation) that hinder the ability of species  
9 or ecosystems to withstand climatic events.
- 10 • **Representation** refers to protecting a portfolio of variant forms of a species or  
11 ecosystem so that, regardless of the climatic changes that occur, there will be  
12 areas that survive and provide a source for recovery.
- 13 • **Replication** centers on maintaining more than one example of each ecosystem or  
14 population within a management system, such that if one area is affected by a  
15 disturbance, replicates in another area provide insurance against extinction and a  
16 source for recolonization of affected areas.
- 17 • **Restoration** is the practice of rehabilitating ecosystems that have been lost or  
18 compromised.
- 19 • **Refugia** are areas that are less affected by climate change than other areas and can  
20 be used as sources of “seed” for recovery or as destinations for climate-sensitive  
21 migrants.
- 22 • **Relocation** refers to human-facilitated transplantation of organisms from one  
23 location to another in order to bypass a barrier (*e.g.*, urban area).
- 24

25 Each of these adaptation approaches ultimately contributes to resilience, whether at the  
26 scale of individual protected area units, or at the scale of regional/national systems. Once  
27 an approach has been selected, the choice, location, timing, and focus of the specific  
28 management activity should be based on considerations such as the ecosystem  
29 management goal, type and degree of climate effect, type and magnitude of ecosystem  
30 response, spatial and temporal scales of ecological and management responses, and  
31 confidence in the adaptation approach.

32  
33 *Levels of confidence in these adaptation approaches vary and are difficult to assess, yet*  
34 *are essential to consider in adaptation planning.*

35 Due to uncertainties associated with climate change projections as well as uncertainties in  
36 species and ecosystem responses, there is also uncertainty as to how effective the  
37 different adaptation approaches listed above will be at supporting resilience. It is  
38 therefore important to assess the confidence within the expert community that these  
39 approaches will support a degree of resilience that may allow ecosystems to persist  
40 without major losses of ecosystem processes or functions. Using one of the  
41 methodologies presented in the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change’s guidelines<sup>1</sup>  
42 for estimating uncertainties, the authors of this report developed their confidence  
43 estimates by considering two separate but related elements of confidence. The first  
44 element is the amount of available evidence (high or low) to support the determination  
45 that the effectiveness of a given adaptation approach is well-studied and understood.  
46 Evidence might consist of any of the following sources: peer-reviewed and gray

---

<sup>1</sup> Guidance on uncertainty from the IPCC Fourth Assessment, 2007

1 literature, data and observations, model results, and the authors' own experience with  
2 each adaptation approach. The second element is the level of agreement or consensus  
3 throughout the scientific community about the different lines of evidence on the  
4 effectiveness of the adaptation approach.

5  
6 The resulting confidence estimates vary, both across approaches and across management  
7 systems. Reducing anthropogenic stresses is the one approach for which there is  
8 considerable scientific confidence in its ability to promote resilience for virtually any  
9 situation. Confidence in the other approaches—including protecting key ecosystem  
10 features, representation, replication, restoration, identifying refuges, and especially  
11 relocation—is much more variable. Despite this variability, many of the individual  
12 adaptation options under these approaches may still be effective. In these cases, a more  
13 detailed assessment of confidence for individual adaptation options is needed, based on a  
14 clearer understanding of how the ecosystem in question functions, the extent and type of  
15 climate change that will occur there, the resulting ecosystem impacts, and the projected  
16 ecosystem response to the adaptation option.

17  
18 One method for integrating confidence estimates into resource management given  
19 uncertainty is adaptive management. Adaptive management is a process that promotes  
20 flexible decision-making so that adjustments are made in decisions as outcomes from  
21 management actions and other events are better understood. This method supports  
22 managers in taking action today using the best available information while also providing  
23 the possibility of ongoing future refinements through an iterative learning process.

24  
25 *The success of adaptation strategies may depend on recognition of potential barriers to*  
26 *implementation and creation of opportunities for partnerships and leveraging.*

27 In many cases, perceived barriers associated with legal or social constraints, restrictive  
28 management procedures, limitations on human and financial capital, and gaps in  
29 information may be converted into opportunities. For example, there may be a possibility  
30 to address difficulties associated with information or capacity shortages through  
31 leveraging of human capital. Existing staff could receive training on addressing climate  
32 change issues within the context of their current job descriptions and management  
33 frameworks, but a critical requirement for success of this activity would be to ensure that  
34 employees feel both valued as “climate adaptation specialists” and empowered by their  
35 institutions to develop and implement innovative adaptive management approaches that  
36 might be perceived as “risky.” As a second example, partnerships among managers,  
37 scientists, and educators can go a long way toward efficiently closing information gaps.  
38 With good communication and coordination, scientists can target their research to better  
39 inform management challenges, resource managers can share data and better design  
40 monitoring to test scientific hypotheses, and outreach specialists can better engage the  
41 public in understanding and supporting adaptation activities. Two additional categories of  
42 opportunities that are especially promising are highlighted below.

43  
44 *The Nation's adaptive capacity can be increased through expanded collaborations*  
45 *among ecosystem managers.*

46 When managers seize opportunities to link with other managers to coordinate adaptation  
47 planning, they are able to broaden the spatial and ecological scope of potential adaptation  
48 options with a shared vision for increasing adaptive capacity. For example, many

1 management units are nested within or adjacent to other systems. Collaboration across  
2 systems allows individual units to be, in effect, extended beyond their official boundaries  
3 to encompass entire ecosystems or regions; the result is a larger array of options for  
4 responding to future climate change impacts. Collaboration may also enhance research  
5 capacity and offer opportunities to share data, models, and experiences. In addition to  
6 overcoming limiting factors such as inadequate resources and mismatches of  
7 management unit size with ecosystem extent, collaborations may also be used to create  
8 flexible boundaries that follow unanticipated changes in ecosystems or species in  
9 response to climate change. Exercising opportunities for collaboration has the advantage  
10 of reducing uncertainties associated with attaining management goals under climate  
11 change because (1) the increase in the geographic range over which resources can be  
12 managed and the associated increase in available adaptation options makes success more  
13 likely, and (2) the increase in the resource base, in research capabilities, and in the size of  
14 data sets through data sharing and coordinated monitoring reduces statistical uncertainties  
15 and increases the probability of success.

16  
17 *The Nation's adaptive capacity can be increased through creative re-examination of*  
18 *program goals and authorities.*

19 Anticipated climate-induced changes in ecosystems and species and the uncertain nature  
20 of some of those changes will necessitate dynamic management systems that can  
21 accommodate and address such changes. Existing management authorities may be  
22 malleable enough to allow for changing conditions and dynamic responses, and with  
23 creative re-examination of those authorities their full capabilities could be applied. For  
24 example, federal land and water managers may be able to strategically apply traditional  
25 legislative authorities in non-traditional ways to coordinate management outside of  
26 jurisdictional boundaries. Similarly, while management policies can sometimes be  
27 limiting, the iterative nature of management planning may allow priorities and plans to be  
28 revisited on a cyclical basis to allow for periodic adjustments. Greater agility in program  
29 planning can increase the probability of meeting management goals by overcoming  
30 implementation barriers associated with narrowly defined and interpreted authorities.

31  
32 *Establishing current baselines, identifying thresholds, and monitoring for changes will be*  
33 *essential elements of any adaptation approach.*

34 Climate changes may cause ecological thresholds to be exceeded, leading to abrupt shifts  
35 in the structure of ecosystems. Threshold changes in ecosystems have profound  
36 implications for management because such changes may be unexpected, large, and  
37 difficult to reverse. If these ecosystems cannot then be restored, actions to increase their  
38 resilience will no longer be viable. Understanding where thresholds have been exceeded  
39 in the past and where they may be exceeded in the future allows managers to plan  
40 accordingly and avoid tipping points where possible. Activities taken to prevent threshold  
41 changes include establishing current baseline conditions, modeling a range of possible  
42 climate changes and system responses, monitoring to identify relevant ecological  
43 changes, and responding by implementing adaptation actions at appropriate scales and  
44 times. Baselines capture the current set of conditions for the ecological attributes or  
45 processes that are critical for maintaining that system and the current set of ecosystem  
46 services that the public has come to expect from that system. Developing a range of  
47 quantitative or qualitative visions of the future (scenarios) and planning adaptation  
48 responses for that range provide an approach for addressing the large uncertainties

1 associated with any single projection of the future. Sensitivity analyses for any given  
2 scenario explore key attributes of the system and their response to systematic changes in  
3 the climate drivers. Such analyses may allow managers to identify thresholds beyond  
4 which key management goals may become unattainable. Directed monitoring then  
5 supports managers' ability to detect changes in baseline conditions, informs on the timing  
6 of adaptation actions, and helps managers evaluate the effectiveness of their actions. With  
7 such information, a program that has the authority to, for example, acquire land interests  
8 and water rights to restore a river to its historic flows would better be able to determine  
9 how, when, and where to use this authority.

10  
11 *Beyond “managing for resilience,” the Nation’s capability to adapt will ultimately*  
12 *depend on our ability to be flexible in setting priorities and “managing for change.”*  
13 Prioritizing actions and balancing competing management objectives at all scales of  
14 decision making is essential, especially in the midst of shifting budgets and rapidly  
15 changing ecosystems. Using a systematic framework for priority setting would help  
16 managers catalog information, design strategies, allocate resources, evaluate progress,  
17 and inform the public. This priority-setting could happen in an ongoing way to address  
18 changing ecological conditions and make use of new information. Over time, our ability  
19 to “manage for resilience” of current systems in the face of climate change will be limited  
20 as temperature thresholds are exceeded and climate impacts become severe and  
21 irreversible. At this point, it will be necessary to “manage for change,” with a re-  
22 examination of priorities and a shift to adaptation options that incorporate information on  
23 projected ecosystem changes. Both “managing for resilience” and “managing for change”  
24 require more observation and experimentation to fill knowledge gaps on how to adapt to  
25 climate change. This report presents a preliminary review of existing adaptation  
26 knowledge to support managers in taking immediate actions to meet their management  
27 goals in the context of climate change. However, this is only a first step in better  
28 understanding this burgeoning area of research in adaptation science and management. It  
29 will be necessary to continuously refine and add to this body of knowledge in order to  
30 meet the challenge of preserving the Nation’s lands and waters in a rapidly changing  
31 world.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

## **2 Introduction**

### **Authors**

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2		
3	2.1	Goal and Audience..... 2-4
4	2.2	Stakeholder Interactions..... 2-5
5	2.3	Approach for Reviewing Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems
6		and Resources ..... 2-5
7	2.4	Climate Variability and Change..... 2-7
8	2.4.1	Increases in Surface Temperature..... 2-7
9	2.4.2	Changes in Precipitation ..... 2-8
10	2.4.3	Warming of the Oceans ..... 2-8
11	2.4.4	Sea Level Rise and Storm Intensity ..... 2-9
12	2.4.5	Changes in Ocean pH..... 2-9
13	2.4.6	Warming in the Arctic ..... 2-9
14	2.4.7	Changes in Extreme Events ..... 2-10
15	2.4.8	Changes in Hydrology ..... 2-10
16	2.4.9	Observed Ecological Responses ..... 2-11
17	2.4.10	Future Anticipated Climate Change..... 2-11
18	2.5	Treatment of Uncertainty ..... 2-12
19	2.6	The Adaptation Challenge: The Purpose of This Report..... 2-12
20	2.7	References..... 2-14
21	2.8	Boxes..... 2-18
22	2.9	Figures..... 2-21
23		

1 Strategies for protecting climate-sensitive ecosystems will be increasingly important for  
2 management, because impacts resulting from a changing climate system are already  
3 evident and will persist into the future regardless of emissions mitigation. Climate is a  
4 dominant factor influencing the distributions, structures, functions, and services of  
5 ecosystems. Changes in climate can interact with other environmental changes to affect  
6 biodiversity and the future condition of ecosystems (*e.g.*, McCarty, 2001; IPCC, 2001;  
7 Parmesan and Yohe, 2003). The extent to which ecosystem condition may be affected  
8 will depend on the amount of climate change, the degree of sensitivity of the ecosystem  
9 to the climate change, and the availability of adaptation options for effective management  
10 responses. This Synthesis and Assessment Product (SAP), SAP 4.4, is charged with  
11 reviewing adaptation options for ecosystems that are likely to be sensitive to continuing  
12 changes in climate. SAP 4.4 is one of 21 SAPs commissioned by the U.S. government's  
13 Climate Change Science Program, seven of which examine the sensitivity and  
14 adaptability of different natural and managed ecosystems and human systems to climate  
15 and related global changes.

16  
17 Adaptation is defined as an adjustment in natural or human systems to a new or changing  
18 environment. Adaptation to climate change refers to adjustment in natural or human  
19 systems in response to actual or expected climatic stimuli or their effects, which  
20 moderates harm or exploits beneficial opportunities (IPCC, 2001). In biological  
21 disciplines, adaptation refers to the process of genetic change within a population due to  
22 natural selection, whereby the average state of a character becomes better suited to some  
23 feature of the environment (Groom, Meffe, and Carroll, 2006). This type of adaptation,  
24 also referred to as autonomous adaptation (IPCC, 2001), is a reactive biological response  
25 to climate stimuli and does not involve intervention by society. Planned adaptation, on  
26 the other hand, refers to strategies adopted by society to manage systems based on an  
27 awareness that conditions are about to change or have changed, such that action is  
28 required to meet management goals (adapted from IPCC, 2001). This report focuses on  
29 the latter form of adaptation, with all subsequent uses of the term "adaptation" referring  
30 to strategies for management of ecosystems in the context of climate variability and  
31 change.

32  
33 The purpose of adaptation strategies is to reduce the risk of adverse outcomes through  
34 activities that increase the resilience of ecological systems to climate change stressors  
35 (Scheffer *et al.*, 2001; Turner, II *et al.*, 2003; Tompkins and Adger, 2004). A stressor is  
36 defined as any physical, chemical, or biological entity that can induce an adverse  
37 response (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2000). Resilience refers to the amount  
38 of change or disturbance that can be absorbed by a system before the system is redefined  
39 by a different set of processes and structures (Holling, 1973; Gunderson, 2000; Bennett,  
40 Cumming, and Peterson, 2005). Potential adverse outcomes of climate change may vary  
41 for different ecosystems, depending on their sensitivity to climate stressors and their  
42 intrinsic resilience to climate change. The "effectiveness" of an adaptation option that is  
43 designed to boost ecosystem resilience will thus be case-dependent, and can be measured  
44 only against a desired ecosystem condition or natural resource management goal. This  
45 report evaluates the effectiveness of potential adaptation options for supporting natural  
46 resource management goals.

47  
48 Adaptation options for enhancing ecosystem resilience include changes in management  
49 processes, practices, or structures to reduce anticipated damages or enhance beneficial



1 responses associated with climate variability and change. In some cases, opportunities for  
2 adaptation offer stakeholders outcomes with multiple benefits, such as the addition of  
3 riparian buffer strips that (1) manage pollution loadings from agricultural land into rivers  
4 designated as “wild and scenic” today *and* (2) establish a protective barrier to increases in  
5 both pollution and sediment loadings associated with future climate change. Where there  
6 are multiple benefits to implementing specific adaptation options, this report seeks to  
7 identify those benefits.

8  
9 A range of adaptation options may be possible for many ecosystems, but a lack of  
10 information or resources may impede successful implementation. In some cases,  
11 managers may not have the knowledge or information available to address climate  
12 change impacts. In other instances, managers may understand the issues and have the  
13 relevant information but lack resources to implement adaptation options. Furthermore,  
14 even with improvement in the knowledge and communication of available and emerging  
15 adaptation strategies, the feasibility and effectiveness of adaptation will depend on the  
16 adaptive capacity of the ecological system or social entity. Adaptive capacity is defined  
17 as the potential or ability of a system, region, or community to counteract, adjust for, or  
18 take advantage of the effects of climate change (IPCC, 2001). Depending on the  
19 management goals, there may be biological, physical, economic, social, cultural,  
20 institutional, or technological conditions that enhance or hinder adaptation. To the extent  
21 possible, this report will address those factors that affect managers’ ability to implement  
22 adaptation options.

## 23 **2.1 Goal and Audience**

24 The goal of SAP 4.4 is to provide useful information on the state of knowledge regarding  
25 adaptation options for key, representative ecosystems and resources that may be sensitive  
26 to climate variability and change. To provide such useful information, it is necessary to  
27 examine adaptation options in the context of a desired ecosystem condition or natural  
28 resource management goal. Therefore, this report explores potential adaptation options  
29 for supporting natural resource management goals in the context of management systems  
30 such as the National Park System or the National Wildlife Refuge System. Management  
31 systems such as these provide a framework of processes and procedures used to ensure  
32 that an organization’s objectives are fulfilled.

33  
34 Specifically, this report supports the stated goal by providing information on (1) the  
35 implications of the combined effects of climate changes and non-climate stressors on our  
36 ability to achieve specific resource management goals; (2) existing management options  
37 as well as new adaptation approaches that reduce the risk of negative outcomes; and (3)  
38 opportunities and barriers that affect successful implementation of management strategies  
39 to address climate change impacts. Through the provision of this information, the desired  
40 outcome of this report is an enhanced adaptive capacity to respond to future changes in  
41 climate.

42  
43 The primary intended audience of this report is resource and ecosystem managers at  
44 federal, state, and local levels; tribes, nongovernmental organizations, and others  
45 involved in protected area management decisions. Additional audiences include  
46 scientists, engineers, and other technical specialists who will be able to use the  
47 information provided to set priorities for future research and to identify decision-support

1 needs and opportunities. This information also may support tribes and government  
2 agencies at federal, state, and local levels in the development of policy decisions that  
3 promote adaptation and increase society’s adaptive capacity for management of  
4 ecosystems and species within protected areas.

## 5 **2.2 Stakeholder Interactions**

6 Stakeholder interactions play a key role in maximizing the relevance, usefulness, and  
7 credibility of assessments and encouraging ownership of the results (National Research  
8 Council, 2007). This may be especially true in the adaptation arena, where managers are  
9 challenged by both the technical aspects of adaptation and the constraints imposed by  
10 legal mandates and resource limitations. In these cases, participation by an appropriate  
11 array of stakeholders is important in order to ensure that proposed adaptation options are  
12 analyzed in light of both technical rigor and feasibility. Given this, the appropriate  
13 composition of stakeholders for SAP 4.4 includes: (1) those who wish to consider options  
14 for reducing the risk of negative ecological outcomes associated with climate variability  
15 and change; (2) researchers who study climate change impacts on ecosystems and topics  
16 relevant for adaptation to impacts of climate variability and change (*e.g.*, ecosystem  
17 restoration, sustainability); (3) science managers from the physical and social sciences  
18 who develop long-term research plans based on the information needs and decisions at  
19 hand; and (4) tribes and government agencies at federal, state, and local levels who  
20 develop and evaluate policies, guidelines, procedures, technologies, and other  
21 mechanisms to improve adaptive capacity.

22  
23 The initial planning of SAP 4.4 involved engaging a narrowly defined targeted group of  
24 expert stakeholders to review the substance of the report. Small groups of no more than  
25 20 people from the fields of adaptation science and resource management were asked to  
26 provide comments to the authors of the report on its content through participation in a  
27 series of six workshops (one for each “management system” chapter; see below). Chapter  
28 lead and contributing authors presented draft information on their chapters and case  
29 studies, and incorporated the expert input into their revisions.

30  
31 Beyond the narrowly defined group of expert stakeholders mentioned above, a broader  
32 array of relevant stakeholders were invited to contribute to the shaping of this document  
33 through a public review process. Feedback was received from non-governmental  
34 organizations, industry, academia, state organizations, and private citizens, as well as  
35 federal government representatives. That feedback resulted in significant changes to this  
36 report. Final input was received from a Federal Advisory Committee composed primarily  
37 of academicians.

## 38 **2.3 Approach for Reviewing Adaptation Options for Climate-** 39 **Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources**

40 This report examines federally protected and managed lands and waters as a context for  
41 reviewing adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems and resources. The focus  
42 on federal holdings was chosen because their protected status reflects the value placed on  
43 these ecosystems and resources by the American public; the management goals for  
44 federal ecosystems are also representative of the range of goals and challenges faced by  
45 other ecosystem management organizations across the United States; and adaptation

1 options for federal ecosystems will require a variety of responses (equally applicable to  
2 non-federal lands) to ensure achievement of management goals over a range of time  
3 scales.

4  
5 Approximately one-third of the nation's land base is managed by the federal government  
6 and administered by different agencies through a variety of "management systems."  
7 Since a comprehensive treatment of all federal holdings is beyond the scope of this  
8 report, the focus is on representative management systems that have clear management  
9 goals for which adaptation options can be discussed. Therefore, adaptation options are  
10 reviewed for six management systems: national forests, national parks, national wildlife  
11 refuges, wild and scenic rivers, national estuaries, and marine protected areas (especially  
12 national marine sanctuaries). By using a sample of management systems, the discussion  
13 of adaptation options can go beyond a general list to more specific options tailored to the  
14 management context and goals. This approach also allows exploration of any specific  
15 barriers and opportunities that may affect implementation. The array of adaptation  
16 options discussed should be useful to other resource managers, regardless of whether  
17 their management systems are represented in this report. Likewise, the types of barriers  
18 and suggested methods for addressing those barriers should be sufficiently broad to be  
19 useful to a wider audience of resource managers. Other federally protected systems—  
20 such as wilderness preservation areas, biosphere reserves, research natural areas, natural  
21 estuarine research reserves, and public lands—could not be examined in this report  
22 because of limitations on time and resources. As a result, certain important and extensive  
23 management systems (*e.g.*, Bureau of Land Management) were not reviewed in this  
24 report. Thus, the material in this report represents only the beginning of what should be  
25 an ongoing effort to inform and support resource management decision making. Other  
26 management systems not represented in this report would also benefit from specific  
27 examination of important impacts and adaptation options.

28  
29 For each of the six management systems selected, this report reviews (1) the historical  
30 origins of the management system and the formative factors that shaped its mission and  
31 goals, (2) key ecosystem components and processes upon which those goals depend, (3)  
32 stressors of concern for the key ecosystem characteristics, (4) management methods  
33 currently in use to address those stressors, (5) ways in which climate variability and  
34 change may affect attainment of management goals, and (6) options for adjusting current  
35 management strategies or developing new strategies in response to climate change. All of  
36 these elements vary considerably depending on the history and organizational structure of  
37 the management systems and the locations and types of ecosystems that they manage.

38  
39 Specific management goals for the ecosystems in the different management systems vary  
40 based on the management principles or frameworks employed to reach targeted goals.  
41 Natural resource management goals are commonly expressed in terms of maintaining  
42 ecosystem integrity, achieving restoration, preserving ecosystem services, and protecting  
43 wildlife and other ecosystem characteristics. The achievement of management goals is  
44 thus dependant on our ability to protect, support, and restore the structure and functioning  
45 of ecosystems.

46  
47 Changes in climate may affect ecosystems such that management goals are not achieved.  
48 Thus, the identified management goals from the literature review are analyzed for their  
49 sensitivity to climate variability and change, as well as to other stressors present in the

1 system that may interact with climate change. Adaptive responses to climate variability  
2 and change are meant to reduce the risk of failing to achieve management goals.  
3 Therefore, each management system chapter discusses adaptation theories and  
4 frameworks, as well as options for modifying existing management actions and  
5 developing new approaches to address climate change impacts.

6  
7 For each chapter, the above analysis of climate sensitivities and management responses  
8 includes one or more place-based case studies that explore the current state of knowledge  
9 regarding management options that could be used to adapt to the potential impacts of  
10 climate variability and change. The case studies—which were selected using a range of  
11 criteria (Box 2.1)—cover a variety of ecosystem types such as forests, rivers and streams,  
12 wetlands, estuaries, and coral reefs (Fig. 2.1).

13  
14  
15 **Figure 2.1.** Map showing the geographic distribution in the United States of SAP 4.4  
16 case studies.

17  
18 Taken together, the six management system chapters of this report offer an array of  
19 issues, viewpoints, and case studies to inform managers as they consider adaptation  
20 options. As such, they are not only useful individually but also serve as rich sources of  
21 “data” to inform the cross-cutting themes and synthetic approaches that comprise the  
22 “results” of the Synthesis and Conclusions chapter.

## 23 **2.4 Climate Variability and Change**

24 Climate change is defined by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) as  
25 any change in climate over time, whether due to natural variability or as a result of  
26 human activity (IPCC, 2007b). Climate variability refers to variations in the mean state  
27 and other statistics (such as standard deviations, the occurrence of extremes, etc.) of the  
28 climate on all temporal and spatial scales beyond that of individual weather events  
29 (IPCC, 2007b). The motivation for developing responses to projected changes in the  
30 climate system stems from observations of changes that have already occurred, as well as  
31 projected climate changes. The discussion below provides background information on  
32 observed climatic and ecological changes that have implications for management of  
33 ecosystems in the United States. For more detailed information, the reader is referred to  
34 recent publications of the IPCC (IPCC, 2007a; 2007b).

### 35 **2.4.1 Increases in Surface Temperature**

36 Evidence from observations of the climate system has led to the conclusion that human  
37 activities are contributing to a warming of the earth’s atmosphere. This evidence includes  
38 an increase of  $0.74 \pm 0.18^{\circ}\text{C}$  in global average surface temperature over the last century,  
39 and an even greater warming trend over the last 50 years than over the last 100 years.  
40 Eleven of the last 12 years (1995–2006) are among the 12 warmest years since the  
41 instrumental record of global surface temperature was started in 1850 (IPCC, 2007b).

42  
43 In the continental United States, temperatures rose linearly at a rate of  $0.06^{\circ}\text{C}$  per decade  
44 during the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. That rate increased to  $0.33^{\circ}\text{C}$  per decade from  
45 1976 to the present. The degree of warming has varied by region (Fig. 2.2) across the

1 United States, with the West and Alaska experiencing the greatest degree of warming  
2 (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007). These changes in temperature have led to  
3 an increase in the number of frost-free days. In the United States, the greatest increases  
4 have occurred in the West and Southwest (Tebaldi *et al.*, 2006).

5  
6  
7  
8 **Figure 2.2.** Annual mean temperature anomalies 1901–2006. *Red shades indicate*  
9 *warming over the period and blue shades indicate cooling over the period. Data*  
10 *courtesy of [NOAA's National Climatic Data Center](#).*  
11

## 12 **2.4.2 Changes in Precipitation**

13 Changes in climate have also been manifested in altered precipitation patterns. Over the  
14 last century, the amount of precipitation has increased significantly across eastern parts of  
15 North America and several other regions of the world (IPCC, 2007b). In the contiguous  
16 United States, this increase in total annual precipitation over the last century has been  
17 6.1%. When looked at by region (Fig. 2.3), however, the direction and magnitude of  
18 precipitation changes vary, with increases of more than 10% observed in the East North  
19 Central and South, and a decrease of more than 7% in Hawaii (U.S. Environmental  
20 Protection Agency, 2007). The form of precipitation has also changed in some areas. For  
21 example, in the western United States, more precipitation has been falling as rain than  
22 snow over the last 50 years (Knowles, Dettinger, and Cayan, 2006).

23  
24  
25  
26 **Figure 2.3.** Annual precipitation anomalies 1901–2006. *Green shades indicate a*  
27 *trend towards wetter conditions over the period, and brown shades indicate a trend*  
28 *towards dryer conditions. Data courtesy of [NOAA's National Climatic Data](#)*  
29 *[Center](#).*

## 30 **2.4.3 Warming of the Oceans**

31 Another manifestation of changes in the climate system is a warming in the world's  
32 oceans. The global ocean temperature rose by 0.10°C from the surface to 700 m depth  
33 from 1961–2003 (IPCC, 2007b). Observations of sea-surface temperatures, based on a  
34 reconstruction of the long-term variability and change in global mean sea-surface  
35 temperature for the period 1880–2005, show that they have reached their highest levels  
36 during the past three decades over all latitudes (Fig. 2.4). Warming has occurred through  
37 most of the 20th century and appears to be independent of measured inter-decadal and  
38 short-term variability (Smith and Reynolds, 2005).

39  
40  
41  
42 **Figure 2.4.** Annual global sea surface temperature anomaly, 1880–2005, compared  
43 with 1961–1990 climate normal (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007).

**1 2.4.4 Sea Level Rise and Storm Intensity**

2 Warming causes seawater to expand and thus contributes to sea level rise. This factor,  
3 referred to as thermal expansion, has contributed  $1.6 \pm 0.5$  mm per year to global average  
4 sea level over the last decade (1993–2003). Other factors contributing to sea level rise  
5 over the last decade include a decline in mountain glaciers and ice caps ( $0.77 \pm 0.22$  mm  
6 per year), losses from the Greenland ice sheets ( $0.21 \pm 0.07$  mm per year), and losses  
7 from the Antarctic ice sheets ( $0.21 \pm 0.35$  mm per year) (IPCC, 2007c).

8  
9 In the United States, relative sea levels have been rising along most of the coasts at rates  
10 of 1.5–3 mm per year (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007), which is consistent  
11 with the average rate globally for the 20<sup>th</sup> century ( $1.7 \pm 0.5$  mm per year) (IPCC, 2007b).  
12 Relative sea level has risen 3–4 mm per year in the Mid-Atlantic states and 5–10 mm per  
13 year in the Gulf states, due to subsidence combined with accelerated global sea level rise  
14 (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007). On Florida’s Gulf coast, relative sea  
15 level rise has led to a rate of conversion of about 2 meters of forest to salt marsh annually  
16 (Williams *et al.*, 1999).

17  
18 The effects of sea level rise in coastal areas would be compounded if tropical cyclones  
19 were to become more intense. For the North Atlantic, there is observational evidence  
20 since about 1970 of an increase in intense tropical cyclone activity which is correlated  
21 with increases in tropical sea surface temperatures (IPCC, 2007b). Various high  
22 resolution global models and regional hurricane models also indicate that it is likely that  
23 some increase in tropical cyclone intensity will occur if the climate continues to warm  
24 (IPCC, 2007b). This topic remains an area of intense debate and investigation, with many  
25 competing opinions as to the accuracy of detection methods, the quality of historical data,  
26 and the strength of various modeling results (*e.g.*, see Donnelly and Woodruff, 2007;  
27 Landsea, 2007; Vecchi and Soden, 2007). Nevertheless, if the prospect of increasingly  
28 intense tropical cyclone activity is one plausible scenario for the future, then the  
29 possibility of intensified storm surges and associated exacerbation of sea level rise  
30 impacts may merit consideration and planning by managers.

**31 2.4.5 Changes in Ocean pH**

32 Between 1750 and 1994, the oceans absorbed about 42% of all emitted carbon dioxide  
33 (CO<sub>2</sub>) (IPCC, 2007b). As a result, the total inorganic carbon content of the oceans  
34 increased by  $118 \pm 19$  gigatons of carbon over this period and is continuing to increase.  
35 This increase in oceanic carbon content caused calcium carbonate (CaCO<sub>3</sub>) to dissolve at  
36 greater depths and led to a 0.1 unit decrease in surface ocean pH from 1750–1994 (IPCC,  
37 2007b). The rate of decrease in pH over the past 20 years accelerated to 0.02 units per  
38 decade (IPCC, 2007b). This decline in pH, along with the concomitant decreased depth at  
39 which calcium carbonate dissolves, have impaired the ability of marine organisms to use  
40 carbonate ions to build their shells or other hard parts (The Royal Society, 2005; Caldeira  
41 and Wickett, 2005; Doney, 2006; Kleypas *et al.*, 2006).

**42 2.4.6 Warming in the Arctic**

43 Other observations at smaller geographic scales lend evidence that the climate system is  
44 warming. For example, in the Arctic, average temperatures have increased and sea ice

1 extent has shrunk. Over the last 100 years, the rate of increase in average Arctic  
2 temperatures has been almost twice that of the global average rate, and since 1978 the  
3 annual average sea ice extent has shrunk by  $2.7 \pm 0.6\%$  per decade. The permafrost layer  
4 has also been affected in the Arctic, to the degree that the maximum area of ground  
5 frozen seasonally has decreased by about 7% in the Northern Hemisphere since 1900,  
6 with the spring realizing the largest decrease (up to 15%) (IPCC, 2007b).

#### 7 **2.4.7 Changes in Extreme Events**

8 Whether they have become drier or wetter, many land areas have likely experienced an  
9 increase in the number and intensity of heavy precipitation (5 cm of rain or more) events  
10 (IPCC, 2007b). About half of the increase in total precipitation observed nationally has  
11 been attributed to the increase in intensity of storms (Karl and Knight, 1998). Heavy  
12 precipitation events are the principal cause of flooding in most of the United States  
13 (Groisman *et al.*, 2005).

14  
15 The general warming trend observed in most of the United States was also accompanied  
16 by more frequent hot days, hot nights, and heat waves (IPCC, 2007b). Furthermore,  
17 higher temperatures along with decreased precipitation have been associated with  
18 observations of more intense and longer droughts over wider areas since the 1970s.  
19 Within the United States, the western region has experienced longer and more intense  
20 droughts, but these appear also to be related to diminishing snow pack and consequent  
21 reductions in soil moisture. In addition to the factors above, changes in sea-surface  
22 temperatures and wind patterns have been linked to droughts (IPCC, 2007b).

#### 23 **2.4.8 Changes in Hydrology**

24 During the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the changes in temperature and precipitation described above  
25 caused important changes in hydrology over the continental United States. One change  
26 was a decline in spring snow cover. This trend was observed throughout the Northern  
27 Hemisphere starting in the 1920s and accelerated in the late 1970s (IPCC, 2007b).  
28 Declining snow cover is a concern in the United States, because many western states rely  
29 on snowmelt for their water use (Mote *et al.*, 2005). Less snow generally translates to  
30 lower reservoir levels. The earlier onset of spring snowmelt exacerbates this problem.  
31 Snowmelt started 2–3 weeks earlier in 2000 than it did in 1948 (Stewart, Cayan, and  
32 Dettinger, 2004).

33  
34 Another important change, described in the preceding section, was the increase in heavy  
35 precipitation events documented in the United States during the past few decades. These  
36 changes have affected the timing and magnitude of streamflow. In the eastern United  
37 States, high streamflow measurements were associated with heavy precipitation events  
38 (Groisman, Knight, and Karl, 2001). Because of this association, there is a high  
39 probability that high streamflow conditions have increased during the 20<sup>th</sup> century  
40 (Groisman, Knight, and Karl, 2001). Increases in peak streamflow have not been  
41 observed in the West, most likely because of the reduction in snow cover (Groisman,  
42 Knight, and Karl, 2001).

**1 2.4.9 Observed Ecological Responses**

2 A growing body of literature indicates that over the past three decades, the changes in the  
3 climate system described above—including the anthropogenic component of warming—  
4 have caused discernable physical and biological changes in a variety of ecosystems (Root  
5 *et al.*, 2005; Parmesan, 2006; IPCC, 2007a). These changes include shifts in genetics  
6 (Bradshaw and Holzapfel, 2006; Franks, Sim, and Weis, 2007), species' ranges,  
7 phenological patterns, and life cycles (reviewed in Parmesan, 2006). Most (85%) of these  
8 ecological responses have been in the expected direction (*e.g.*, poleward shifts in species  
9 distributions), and it is very unlikely that the observed responses are due to natural  
10 variability alone (IPCC, 2007a). The asynchronous responses of different species to  
11 climate change may alter species' interactions (*e.g.*, predator-prey relationships and  
12 competition) and have unforeseen consequences (Parmesan and Galbraith, 2004).

**13 2.4.10 Future Anticipated Climate Change**

14 Improvements in understanding of the anthropogenic influences on climate have led to  
15 very high confidence in some of the changes described in the previous section (*e.g.*,  
16 increased global average air and ocean temperatures and sea levels, and melting of  
17 glaciers and sea ice). This improved understanding has also increased confidence in  
18 model projections of future climatic changes. The most recent models project future  
19 changes in the earth's climate system that are greater in magnitude and scope than those  
20 already observed. Based on annual average projections, surface temperature increases by  
21 the end of the 21<sup>st</sup> century will range from 2°C near the coasts in the conterminous  
22 United States to at least 5°C in northern Alaska. Nationally, summertime temperatures  
23 will likely increase by 3–5°C. Winter temperatures will likely increase by 7–10°C in  
24 Northern Alaska. In addition, more extreme hot events and fewer extreme cold events are  
25 projected to occur (IPCC, 2007b).

26  
27 On average, annual precipitation will likely increase in the northeastern United States and  
28 will likely decrease in the Southwest over the next 100 years (IPCC, 2007b). In the  
29 western United States, precipitation increases are projected during the winter, whereas  
30 decreases are projected for the summer (IPCC, 2007b). More precipitation will likely fall  
31 as rain rather than snow, and snow season length and snow depth are very likely to  
32 decrease in most of the country (IPCC, 2007b). More extreme precipitation events are  
33 also projected (Diffenbaugh *et al.*, 2005; Diffenbaugh, 2005), which, coupled with an  
34 anticipated increase in rain-on-snow events, will likely contribute to more severe flooding  
35 due to increases in extreme runoff (IPCC, 2007b).

36  
37 The interaction of climate change with other stressors, as well as direct stressors from  
38 climate change itself, will likely cause more complicated responses than have so far been  
39 observed. In general, during the next 100 years, it is likely that many ecosystems will not  
40 be able to resist or recover from the combination of climate change, associated  
41 disturbances, and other global change drivers. Ecological responses to future climate  
42 change are expected with high confidence to negatively affect most ecosystem services.  
43 Major changes in ecosystem structure, composition, and function, as well as interspecific  
44 interactions, are very likely to occur where temperature increases exceed 1.5–2.5°C  
45 (IPCC, 2007a).



## 1 **2.5 Treatment of Uncertainty: Confidence**

2 In this report, evaluations of uncertainty are communicated for judgments, findings, and  
3 conclusions made in the text. Treatment of uncertainty involves characterization and  
4 communication of two distinct concepts: uncertainty in terms of *likelihood* or in terms of  
5 *confidence* in the science (IPCC, 2007b). Likelihood is relevant when assessing the  
6 chance of a specific future occurrence or outcome, and is often quantified as a  
7 probability. However, in this report, judgments and conclusions about adaptation will be  
8 associated with qualitative expressions of confidence rather than quantitative statements  
9 of likelihood.

10  
11 Confidence is composed of two separate but related elements (IPCC, 2007b). The first  
12 element is the amount of evidence available to support the determination that the  
13 effectiveness of a given adaptation approach is well-studied and understood. The second  
14 element is the level of agreement or consensus within the scientific community about the  
15 different lines of evidence on the effectiveness of that adaptation approach. Thus, each of  
16 the synthetic adaptation approaches drawn from across the chapters of this report is  
17 assessed and given a ranking of “high” or “low” for each element (amount of evidence  
18 and amount of agreement). These assessments of confidence are presented and discussed  
19 in the Synthesis and Conclusions chapter.

## 20 **2.6 The Adaptation Challenge: The Purpose of This Report**

21 Understanding how to incorporate adaptation into strategic planning activities is an  
22 important challenge because: (1) the climate system is always changing and will continue  
23 to change; (2) those changes will affect attainment of management goals for ecosystems;  
24 and (3) there are varying levels of uncertainty associated with both the magnitude of  
25 climatic changes and the magnitude and direction of ecosystem responses. This report  
26 addresses where, when, and how adaptation strategies may be used to address climate  
27 change impacts on managed ecosystems, the barriers and opportunities that may be  
28 encountered while trying to implement those strategies, and potential long-term strategic  
29 shifts in management approaches that may be made to broaden the scope of adaptation  
30 strategies available to resource managers.

31  
32 Different approaches are discussed to address adaptation in the planning process. These  
33 approaches generally fall into broad categories that may be distinguished by (1) timing of  
34 the management response: whether the response takes place prior to (proactively) or after  
35 (reactively) a climate event has occurred; and (2) intention of the managing agency:  
36 whether climate-induced changes are formally acknowledged and addressed in  
37 management plans (Box 2.3).

38  
39 Given that management agencies’ resources are likely to fluctuate over time, a key to the  
40 planning process will be to determine an approach that maximizes attainment of  
41 established short- and long-term goals, especially in light of the effect that climate change  
42 may have on those goals. This report provides a discussion of key questions, factors, and  
43 potential approaches to consider when setting priorities during the planning process, as  
44 well as examples of adaptation strategies that may be employed across different types of  
45 ecosystems and geographic regions of the country (see Box 2.4 for types of strategies).

46

1 Addressing future changes is an imprecise exercise, fraught with uncertainties and  
2 unanticipated changes. Managers have to anticipate the interaction of multiple stressors,  
3 the interdependencies of organisms within an ecosystem, and the potential intertwined,  
4 cascading effects. Thus the ability to measure effectiveness of management options, *i.e.*,  
5 ecological outcomes of specific actions on the ground, is essential in order to  
6 continuously refine and improve adaptation. This report raises issues to consider when  
7 measuring management effectiveness for increasing the resilience of ecosystems to  
8 climate variability and change.

9  
10 Another requirement for management effectiveness is successful implementation.  
11 Challenges to implementation may be associated with different organizational scales,  
12 operational tradeoffs, cost/benefit considerations, social/cultural factors, and planning  
13 requirements. The information in this report provides an improved understanding of  
14 barriers and opportunities associated with these challenges, including priority information  
15 gaps and technical needs.

16  
17 Finally, some challenges to implementation of adaptation options and their ultimate  
18 success may require fundamental shifts in management approaches. This report will seek  
19 to identify and discuss possible short- and long-term shifts in management structures,  
20 approaches, and policies that increase the likelihood of effectiveness and success in  
21 implementation, and that may open the door to a greater array of adaptation options in the  
22 future.

1

2 **2.7 References**

3 **Bennett, E.M., G.S. Cumming, and G.D. Peterson, 2005:** A systems model approach to  
4 determining resilience surrogates for case studies. *Ecosystems*, **8**, 945-957.

5 **Bradshaw, W.E. and C.M. Holzapfel, 2006:** Climate change: evolutionary response to  
6 rapid climate change. *Science*, **312(5779)**, 1477-1478.

7 **Caldeira, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2005:** Ocean model predictions of chemistry changes  
8 from carbon dioxide emissions to the atmosphere and ocean. *Journal of*  
9 *Geophysical Research*, **110**, 1-12.

10 **Diffenbaugh, N.S., 2005:** Atmosphere-land cover feedbacks alter the response of surface  
11 temperature to CO<sub>2</sub> forcing in the western United States. *Climate Dynamics*,  
12 **24(2)**, 237-251.

13 **Diffenbaugh, N.S., J.S. Pal, R.J. Trapp, and F. Giorgi, 2005:** Fine-scale processes  
14 regulate the response of extreme events to global climate change. *Proceedings of*  
15 *the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **102(44)**,  
16 15774-15778.

17 **Doney, S.C., 2006:** The dangers of ocean acidification. *Scientific American*, **294(3)**, 58-  
18 65.

19 **Donnelly, J.P. and J.D. Woodruff, 2007:** Intense hurricane activity over the past 5,000  
20 years controlled by El Niño and the West African Monsoon. *Nature*, **447**, 465-  
21 468.

22 **Franks, S.J., S. Sim, and A.E. Weis, 2007:** Rapid evolution of flowering time by an  
23 annual plant in response to a climate fluctuation. *Proceedings of the National*  
24 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104**, 1278-1282.

25 **Groisman, P.Y., R.W. Knight, D.R. Easterling, T.R. Karl, G.C. Hegerl, and V.N.**  
26 **Razuvaev, 2005:** Trends in intense precipitation in the climate record. *Journal of*  
27 *Climate*, **18(9)**, 1326-1350.

28 **Groisman, P.Y., R.W. Knight, and T.R. Karl, 2001:** Heavy precipitation and high  
29 streamflow in the contiguous United States: trends in the twentieth century.  
30 *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **82(2)**, 219-246.

31 **Groom, M.J., G.K. Meffe, and C.R. Carroll, 2006:** *Principles of Conservation Biology*.  
32 [Groom, M.J., G.K. Meffe, and C.R. Carroll (eds.)]. Sinauer Press, Sunderland,  
33 MA, pp. 1-701.

- 1 **Gunderson**, L.H., 2000: Ecological resilience-in theory and application. *Annual Review*  
2 *of Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 3 **Holling**, C.S., 1973: Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Annual Review of*  
4 *Ecology and Systematics*, **4**, 1-23.
- 5 **IPCC**, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability.*  
6 *Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the*  
7 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.* [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani,  
8 N.A. Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S. White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
9 Cambridge, UK.
- 10 **IPCC**, 2007a: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability.*  
11 *Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
12 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.* Cambridge University Press,  
13 Cambridge.
- 14 **IPCC**, 2007b: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis. Contribution of*  
15 *Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel*  
16 *on Climate Change.* [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis,  
17 K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
18 Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp. 1-996.
- 19 **IPCC**, 2007c: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical*  
20 *Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report*  
21 *of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change,* [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M.  
22 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
23 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY,  
24 USA.
- 25 **Karl**, T.R. and R.W. Knight, 1998: Secular trends of precipitation amount, frequency,  
26 and intensity in the United States. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological*  
27 *Society*, **79(2)**, 231-241.
- 28 **Kleypas**, J.A., R.A. Feely, V.J. Fabry, C. Langdon, C.L. Sabine, and L.L. Robbins, 2006:  
29 *Impacts of Ocean Acidification on Coral Reefs and Other Marine Calcifiers: a*  
30 *Guide for Future Research.* Workshop Report, National Science Foundation,  
31 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the U.S. Geological  
32 Survey.
- 33 **Knowles**, N., M.D. Dettinger, and D.R. Cayan, 2006: Trends in snowfall versus rainfall  
34 in the Western United States. *Journal of Climate*, **19(18)**, 4545-4559.
- 35 **Landsea**, C.W., 2007: Counting Atlantic Tropical Cyclones Back to 1900. *Eos*,  
36 *Transactions American Geophysical Union*, **88(18)**, 197-202.

- 1 **McCarty, J.P.**, 2001: Ecological consequences of recent climate change. *Conservation*  
2 *Biology*, **15(2)**, 320-331.
- 3 **Mote, P.W.**, A.F. Hamlet, M.P. Clark, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Declining mountain  
4 snowpack in Western North America. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological*  
5 *Society*, **86(1)**, 39-49.
- 6 **National Research Council**, 2007: *Analysis of Global Change Assessments: Lessons*  
7 *Learned*. Committee on Analysis of Global Change Assessments, National  
8 Research Council, National Academies Press, Washington, D.C..
- 9 **Parmesan, C.** and H. Galbraith, 2004: *Observed Impacts of Global Climate Change in*  
10 *the US*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change.
- 11 **Parmesan, C.**, 2006: Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change.  
12 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 637-669.
- 13 **Parmesan, C.** and G. Yohe, 2003: A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change  
14 impacts across natural systems. *Nature*, **421**, 37-42.
- 15 **Root, T.L.**, D.P. MacMynowski, M.D. Mastrandrea, and S.H. Schneider, 2005: Human-  
16 modified temperatures induce species changes: joint attribution. *Proceedings of*  
17 *the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **102(21)**, 7465-  
18 7469.
- 19 **Scheffer, M.**, S. Carpenter, J.A. Foley, C. Folke, and B.H. Walker, 2001: Catastrophic  
20 shifts in ecosystems. *Nature*, **413**, 591-596.
- 21 **Smith, T.M.** and R.W. Reynolds, 2005: A global merged land-air-sea surface  
22 temperature reconstruction based on historical observations (1880-1997). *Journal*  
23 *of Climate*, **18(12)**, 2021-2036.
- 24 **Stewart, I.T.**, D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2004: Changes in snowmelt runoff  
25 timing in Western North America under a 'business as usual' climate change  
26 scenario. *Climatic Change*, **62**, 217-232.
- 27 **Tebaldi, C.**, K. Hayhoe, J. Arblaster, and G. Meehl, 2006: Going to the extremes: an  
28 intercomparison of model-simulated historical and future changes in extreme  
29 events. *Climatic Change*, **79(3-4)**, 185-211.
- 30 **The Royal Society**, 2005: *Ocean Acidification Due to Increasing Atmospheric Carbon*  
31 *Dioxide*. Policy document 12/05, Royal Society.
- 32 **Tompkins, E.L.** and N.W. Adger, 2004: Does adaptive management of natural resources  
33 enhance resilience to climate change? *Ecology and Society*, **19(2)**.

- 1 **Turner**, B.L., II, R.E. Kasperson, P.A. Matsone, J.J. McCarthy, R.W. Corell, L.  
2 Christensene, N. Eckley, J.X. Kasperson, A. Luerse, M.L. Martello, C. Polsky, A.  
3 Pulsipher, and A. Schiller, 2003: A framework for vulnerability analysis in  
4 sustainability science. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the*  
5 *United States of America Early Edition*, **100(14)**.
- 6 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2000: *Stressor Identification Guidance*  
7 *Document*. EPA-822-B-00-025, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of  
8 Water and Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC, pp.1-208.
- 9 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2007: *Proposed Indicators for the U.S. EPA's*  
10 *Report on the Environment (External Peer Review)*. U.S. Environmental  
11 Protection Agency.
- 12 **Vecchi**, G.A. and B.J. Soden, 2007: Increased tropical Atlantic wind shear in model  
13 projections of global warming. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **34**.
- 14 **Williams**, K., K.C. Ewel, R.P. Stumpf, F.E. Putz, and T.W. Workman, 1999: Sea-level  
15 rise and coastal forest retreat on the west coast of Florida, USA. *Ecology*, **80(6)**,  
16 2045-2063.  
17  
18

## 1 **2.8 Boxes**

### 2 **Box 2.1.** Case Study Selection Criteria

3  
4 The authors of this report, in consultation with agency representatives and  
5 stakeholders, used the following criteria for evaluation and selection of  
6 candidate case studies:

- 7  
8
- 9 • Contains one or more ecosystem services or features that are protected  
10 by management goals;
  - 11 • Management goals are sensitive to climate variability and change, and  
12 the potential impacts of climate variability and change are significant  
13 relative to the impacts of other changes;
  - 14 • Adaptation options are available or possible for preserving a service or  
15 a physical or biological feature; and
  - 16 • Adaptation options have potential for application in other geographic  
17 regions or for other ecosystem types.

18 In order to ensure that the entire collection of case studies would include  
19 broad representation across geographic areas, ecosystem types, and  
20 management goals and methods, the following characteristics were  
21 required of the group as a whole:

- 22
- 23 • Addresses a reasonable cross section of important, climate-sensitive  
24 ecosystems and/or ecosystem services and features;
  - 25 • Addresses a range of adaptation responses (*e.g.*, structural, policy,  
26 permitting);
  - 27 • Distributed across the United States and valued by a national  
28 constituency; and
  - 29 • Attributes allow for comparison of adaptation approaches and their  
30 effectiveness across the case studies (*e.g.*, lessons learned about  
31 research gaps and about factors that enhance or impede  
32 implementation).

1 **Box 2.2.** Confidence Levels, adapted from McCarthy *et al.* (2001)

The 5-point confidence scale below is used to assign confidence levels to selected conclusions. The confidence levels are stated as Bayesian probabilities, meaning that they represent the degree of belief among the authors of the report in the validity of a conclusion, based on their collective expert judgment of all observational evidence, modeling results, and theory currently available to them.

*5-Point Quantitative Scale for Confidence Levels*

95% or greater	Very High Confidence
67–95%	High Confidence
33–67%	Medium Confidence
5–33%	Low Confidence
5% or less	Very Low Confidence

2

3  
4



1 **Box 2.3. Approaches to Adaptation Planning**

- 2
- 3 1. No adaptation: future climate change impacts are not planned for by the managing
- 4 agency and are not acknowledged as likely to occur.
- 5 2. Reactive adaptation: climate change impacts are not planned for by the managing
- 6 agency, and adaptation takes place after the impacts of climate change have been
- 7 observed.
- 8 3. Anticipatory adaptation
- 9 - Responsive: future climate change impacts are acknowledged as likely to occur by the
- 10 managing agency, and responses to those changes are planned for when changes are
- 11 observed.
- 12 - Proactive: climate change impacts are acknowledged as likely to occur by the
- 13 managing agency, and adaptation responses are planned for before the changes are
- 14 observed.

15

16

17

18

19

20

21 **Box 2.4. Typology of Adaptation Strategies at Ecosystem and**

22 **Planning Levels**

23

24 **Ecosystem level**

- 25
- 26 • Resilience
  - 27 • Resistance
  - 28 • Representation
  - 29 • Replication
  - 30 • Restoration

31

32 **Planning level**

- 33
- 34 • Realignment
  - 35 (set management standards given current and projected future
  - 36 conditions rather than historic conditions)
  - 37 • Recognition
  - 38 (adjust techniques, such as silviculture, with recognition of current
  - 39 and projected future conditions rather than historic conditions)
- 40

1

## 2 **2.9 Figures**

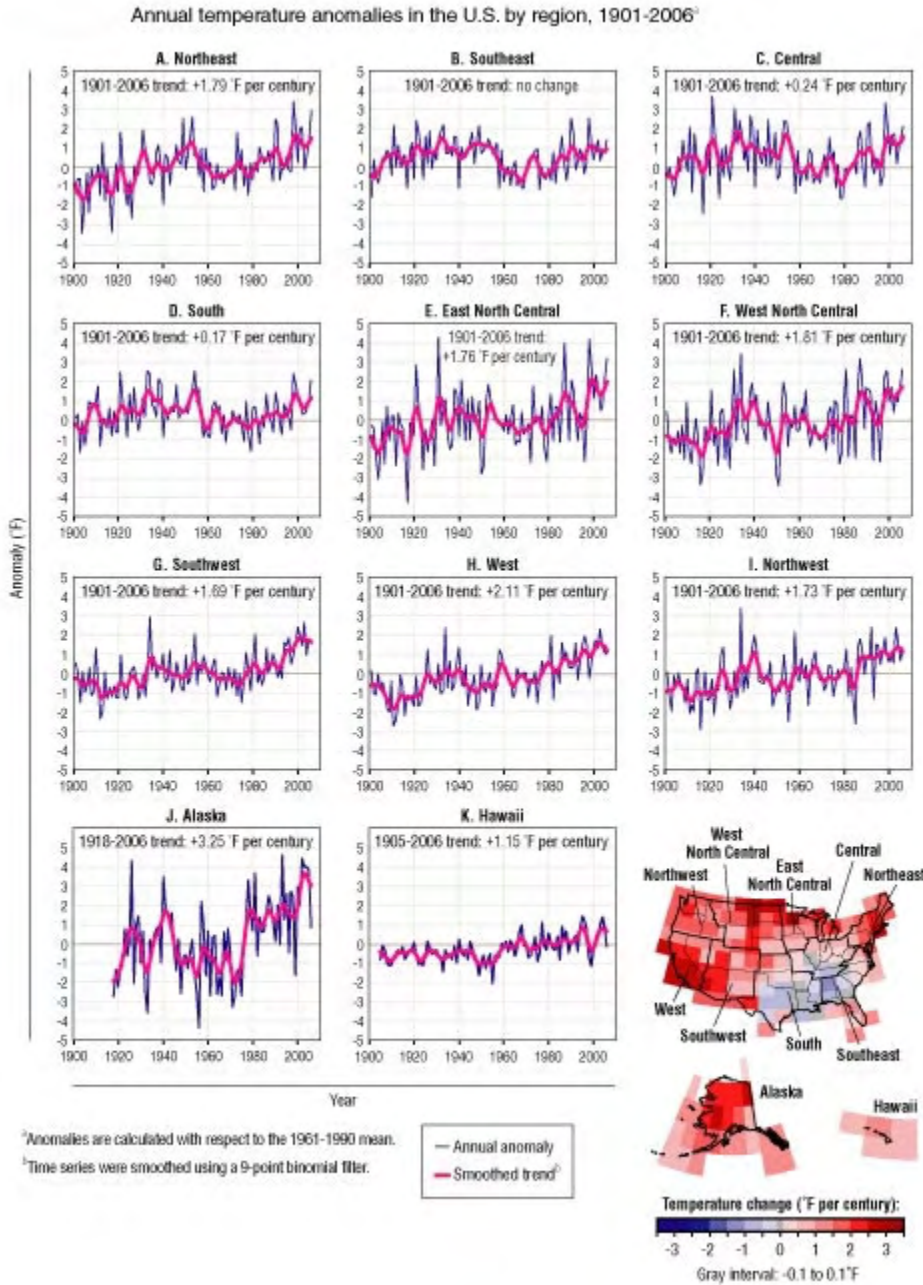
3 **Figure 2.1.** Map showing the geographic distribution in the United States of SAP 4.4  
4 case studies.

5



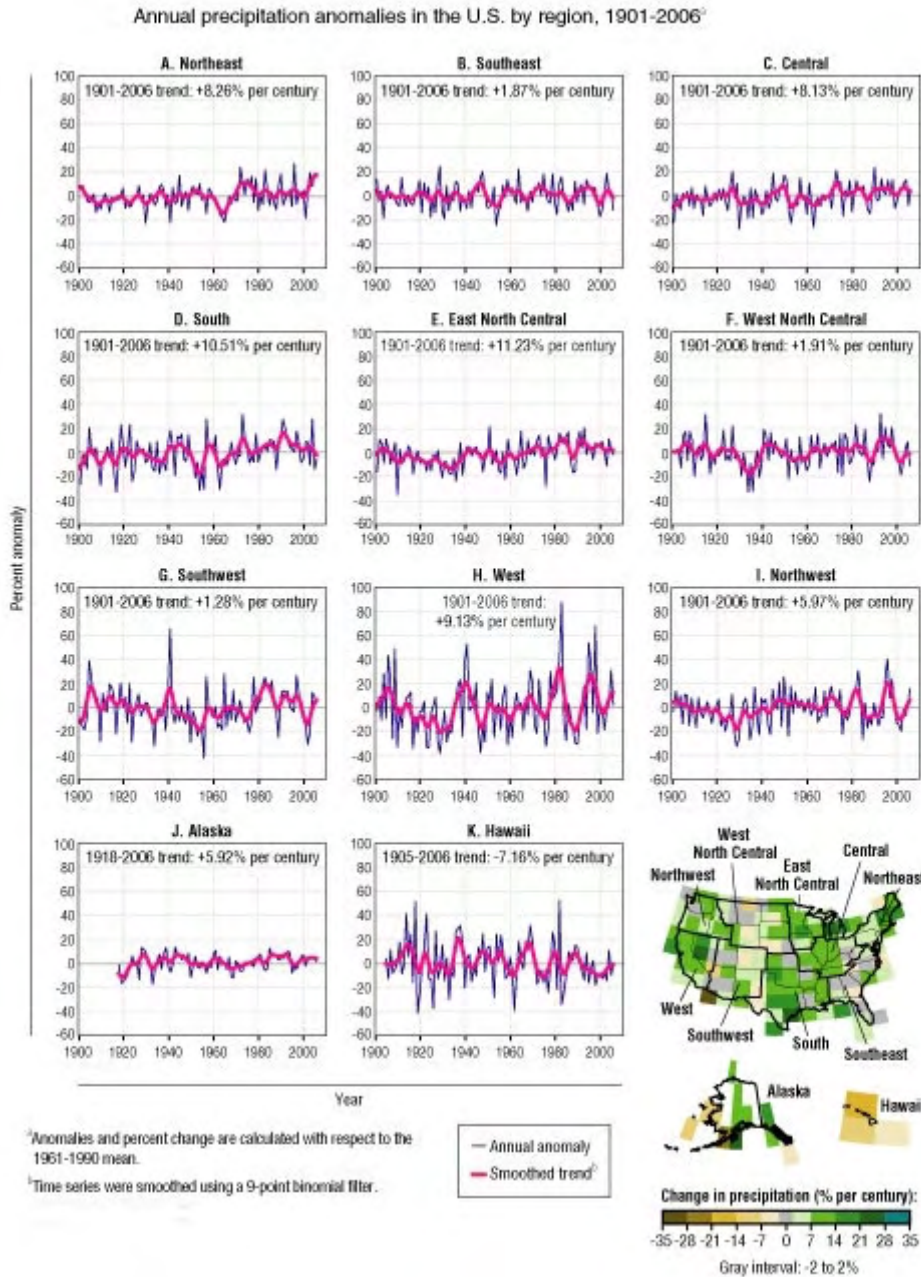
6

- 1 **Figure 2.2.** Annual mean temperature anomalies 1901–2006. *Red shades indicate*
- 2 *warming over the period and blue shades indicate cooling over the period. Data courtesy*
- 3 *of [NOAA's National Climatic Data Center](#).*



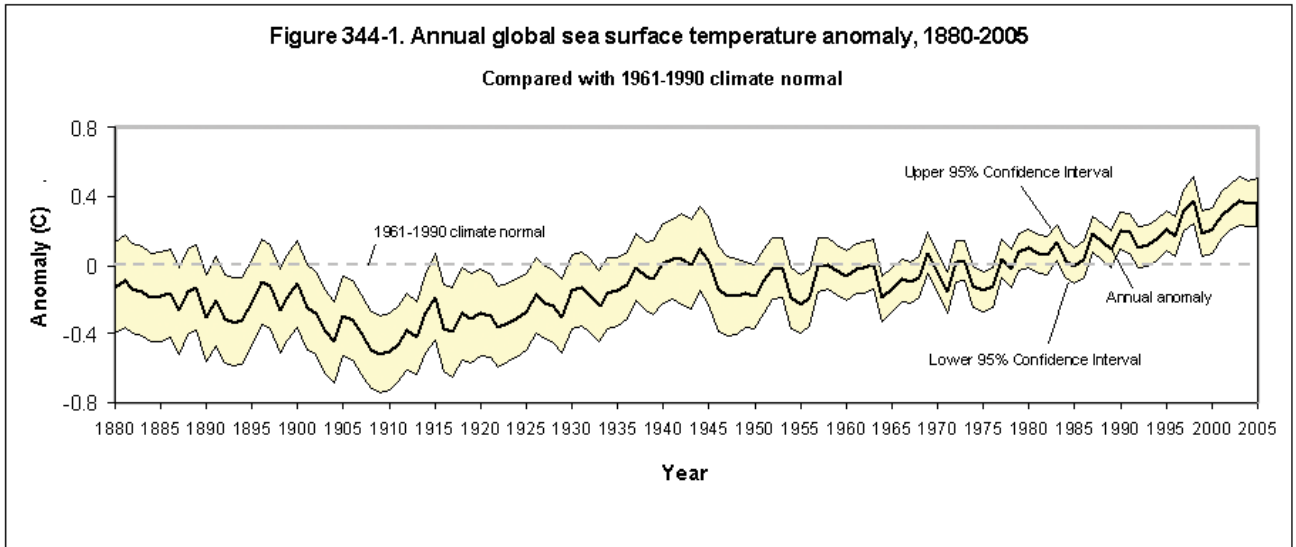
4

1 **Figure 2.3.** Annual precipitation anomalies 1901–2006. Green shades indicate a trend  
 2 towards wetter conditions over the period, and brown shades indicate a trend towards  
 3 dryer conditions. Data courtesy of [NOAA's National Climatic Data Center](#).



4  
5

- 1 **Figure 2.4.** Annual global sea surface temperature anomaly, 1880–2005, compared with
- 2 1961–1990 climate normal (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007).



3

### **3 National Forests**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19

#### **Authors**

##### **Lead Author**

Linda A. Joyce, U.S.D.A. Forest Service

##### **Contributing Authors**

Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow at U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jeremy S. Littell, JISAO CSES Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington  
Steven G. McNulty, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Constance I. Millar, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Susanne C. Moser, National Center for Atmospheric Research  
Ronald P. Neilson, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Kathy O'Halloran, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
David L. Peterson, U.S.D.A. Forest Service

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2		
3	3.1	Summary ..... 3-3
4	3.2	Background and History ..... 3-6
5	3.2.1	Historical Context and Enabling Legislation ..... 3-6
6	3.2.2	Evolution of National Forest Mission ..... 3-6
7	3.2.3	Interpretation of Goals ..... 3-8
8	3.3	Current Status of Management Systems ..... 3-9
9	3.3.1	Key Ecosystem Characteristics Upon Which Goals Depend ..... 3-9
10	3.3.2	Stressors of Concern on National Forests ..... 3-11
11	3.3.3	Management Approaches and Methods Currently in Use to Manage Stressors 3-19
12	3.3.4	Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change ..... 3-21
13	3.4	Adapting to Climate Change ..... 3-35
14	3.4.1	The Need for Anticipatory Adaptation ..... 3-35
15	3.4.2	Approaches for Planning in the Context of Climate Change ..... 3-42
16	3.4.3	Approaches for Management in the Context of Climate Change ..... 3-45
17	3.4.4	Prioritizing Management Responses in Situations of Resource Scarcity ..... 3-56
18	3.4.5	Barriers to Adaptation Approaches ..... 3-57
19	3.5	Conclusions and Recommendations ..... 3-58
20	3.5.1	Climate Change and National Forests ..... 3-58
21	3.5.2	Management Response Recommendations ..... 3-59
22	3.5.3	Research Priorities ..... 3-63
23	3.6	References ..... 3-68
24	3.7	Acknowledgements ..... 3-102
25	3.8	Boxes ..... 3-103
26	3.9	Case Study Summaries ..... 3-109
27	3.10	Figures ..... 3-116
28		

1

## 2 **3.1 Summary**

3 The National Forest System (NFS) is composed of 155 national forests (NFs) and 20 national  
4 grasslands (NGs), which encompass a wide range of ecosystems, harbor much of the nation's  
5 biodiversity, and provide myriad goods and services. The mission of the U.S. Forest Service  
6 (USFS), which manages the NFS, has broadened from water and timber to sustaining ecosystem  
7 health, diversity, and productivity to meet the needs of present and future generations. The  
8 evolution of this mission reflects changing societal values (*e.g.*, increasing emphasis on  
9 recreation, aesthetics, and biodiversity conservation), a century of new laws, increasing  
10 involvement of the public and other agencies in NF management, and improved ecological  
11 understanding. Climate change will amplify the already difficult task of managing the NFS for  
12 multiple goals. This chapter offers potential adaptation approaches and management options that  
13 the USFS might adopt to help achieve its NFs goals and objectives in the face of climate change.

14

### 15 **Key Findings**

16

17 *Climate change will affect the NFS's ability to achieve its goals and objectives.* Climate change  
18 will make the achievement of all seven strategic goals more challenging because they are all  
19 likely to be sensitive to the direct effects of climate change as well as the interactions of climate  
20 change with other major stressors.

21

22 *Climate change will exacerbate the impact of other major stressors on NF and NG ecosystems.*  
23 Wildfires, non-native and native invasive species, extreme weather events, and air pollution are  
24 the most critical stressors that climate change will amplify within NFS ecosystems. Reduced  
25 snowpack, earlier snowmelt, and altered hydrology associated with warmer temperatures and  
26 altered precipitation patterns are expected to complicate western water management and affect  
27 other ecosystem services that NFs provide (*e.g.*, winter recreational opportunities). Drought will  
28 likely be a major management challenge across the United States. Ozone exposure and  
29 deposition of mercury, sulfur, and nitrogen already affect watershed condition, and their impacts  
30 will likely be exacerbated by climate change.

31

32 *Both adaptation and mitigation strategies are needed to minimize potential negative impacts and*  
33 *to take advantage of possible positive impacts from climate change.* Because mitigation options  
34 may have deleterious ecological consequences on local to regional scales and adaptation options  
35 may have associated carbon effects, it will be important to assess potential tradeoffs between the  
36 two approaches and to seek strategies that achieve synergistic benefits.

37

38 *Developing an adaptation strategy will involve planning for and developing a suite of*  
39 *management practices to achieve multiple goals, along with evaluating different types of*  
40 *uncertainty (e.g., environmental conditions, models, data, resources, planning horizons, and*  
41 *public support), to support decisions about the most suitable adaptations to implement.* Three  
42 different adaptation approaches are offered: no active adaptation, planned responses after a major  
43 disturbance event, and proactive steps taken in advance of a changing climate. The  
44 appropriateness of each strategy will likely vary across spatial and temporal scales of decision  
45 making; thus, selection of an approach will be influenced by specific management objectives and



1 the adaptive capacity of the ecological, social, and economic environment. Although none of  
2 these approaches may successfully maintain extant ecosystems under a changing climate, the  
3 proactive approach is best suited to support natural adaptive processes (e.g., species migration)  
4 and maintain key ecosystem services. To succeed, proactive adaptation would require greater  
5 involvement and integration of managers at many levels to appropriately monitor ecosystem  
6 changes, adjust policies, and modify specific practices.

7  
8 *Reducing the impact of current stressors is a “no regrets” adaptation strategy that could be*  
9 *taken now to help enhance ecosystem resilience to climate change, at least in the near term.*  
10 Increased effort and coordination across agencies and with private landowners to reduce these  
11 stressors (especially air pollution, drought, altered fire regimes, fragmentation, and invasive  
12 species) would benefit ecosystems now, begin to incorporate climate change incrementally into  
13 management and planning, and potentially reduce future interactions of these stressors with  
14 climate change. Approaches that quickly address problems that otherwise would become large  
15 and intractable (e.g., the Early Detection/Rapid Response program for invasive species) may also  
16 help managers reduce the impacts of climate-driven events such as floods, windstorms, and  
17 insect outbreaks. Consideration of post-disturbance management for short-term restoration and  
18 for long-term restoration under climate change prior to the disturbance (fire, invasives, flooding,  
19 hurricanes, ice storms) may identify opportunities and barriers. Large system-resetting  
20 disturbances offer the opportunity to influence the future structure and function of ecosystems  
21 through carefully designed management experiments in adapting to climatic change.

22  
23 *Incorporating climate change into the USFS planning process is an important step that could be*  
24 *taken now to help identify suitable management adaptations as well as ecological, social, and*  
25 *institutional opportunities and barriers to their implementation.* Planning processes that include  
26 an evaluation of vulnerabilities (ecological, social, and economic) to climate change in the  
27 context of defining key goals and contexts (management, institutional, and environmental) might  
28 better identify suitable adaptive actions to be taken at present or in the short term, and better  
29 develop actions for the longer term. Coordination of assessments and planning efforts across the  
30 organizational levels in the USFS might better identify spatial and temporal scales for modeling  
31 and addressing uncertainty and risk linked to decision-making. Given the diversity of NFS  
32 ecosystems, a planning process that allows planners and managers to develop a toolbox of  
33 multiple adaptation options would be most suitable.

34  
35 *Better educating USFS employees about climate change and adaptation approaches is another*  
36 *step that could be implemented immediately.* Developing adaptation options to climate change  
37 may require NF staff to have a more technical understanding of climate change as well as the  
38 adaptive capacity of social and economic environments. The challenge for NFs to keep up with  
39 the rapidly changing science also suggests the need to build on and strengthen current  
40 relationships between researchers (inside and outside of the USFS) and NF staff.

41  
42 *As climate change interacts with other stressors to alter NFS ecosystems, NFs may need to*  
43 *manage for change by increasing emphasis on managing for desired ecological processes by*  
44 *working with changes in structure and composition of NFs.* The individual, disparate, and  
45 potentially surprising responses of species to climate change may preclude the preservation of  
46 current species assemblages over the long term. Under such a scenario, managing for change,

1 despite uncertainty about its direction or magnitude, may be the most viable long-term option.  
2 Working toward the goal of desired future functions (*e.g.*, processes, ecosystem services) would  
3 involve managing current and future conditions (*e.g.*, structure, outputs), which may be dynamic  
4 through a changing climate, to sustain those future functions as climate changes.

5  
6 *Establishing priorities to address potential changes in population, species, and community*  
7 *abundances, structures, and ranges—including potential species extirpation and extinction—*  
8 *under climate change is an important adaptation that will require time and effort to develop. A*  
9 careful examination of current prioritization methods would begin to identify opportunities and  
10 barriers to the analysis of tradeoffs and development of priorities under a changing climate. A  
11 tiered approach to priority-setting could include the “no regrets” actions mentioned above  
12 (reducing current stressors), “low regrets” actions that provide important benefits at little  
13 additional cost and risk, and “win-win” actions that reduce the impacts of climate change while  
14 also providing other benefits. Using triage to set priorities would acknowledge where limited  
15 resources might be more effective if focused on urgent, but treatable problems.

16  
17 *As discussed in the three case studies (Tahoe NF, Olympic NF, and Uwharrie NF; see the Case*  
18 *Study Summaries and Annex A1), the USFS will need to overcome various barriers to take*  
19 *advantage of opportunities to implement adaptation options. The collaboration and cooperation*  
20 *with other agencies, national networks, and the public required to manage NF lands could be an*  
21 *opportunity or a barrier to adaptation. The ability of the USFS to adapt will be enhanced or*  
22 *hindered to the extent that these other groups recognize and address climate change. Adaptive*  
23 *management is also both an opportunity and a barrier. While it facilitates learning about*  
24 *ecosystem responses to management, it may not be useful when the ability to act adaptively is*  
25 *constrained by policies or public opinion, or when actions must be taken quickly.*

26  
27 *Applied research could help fill gaps in understanding and data while also providing enhanced*  
28 *tools for decision support. Research priorities include studies that assess the socioeconomic*  
29 *impacts of adaptation options, develop ways to reduce ecosystem vulnerability to disturbances*  
30 *that will be exacerbated by climate change (*e.g.*, insects, fire, invasives), and show how climate*  
31 *change can be better incorporated into long-term forest planning (including improved*  
32 *communication). The USFS could also take advantage of current infrastructure and coordinate*  
33 *with other agencies to enhance monitoring and mapping efforts with climate change in mind.*

34  
35 *There is a clear need for the USFS as a whole to respond to the potential impacts of climate*  
36 *change. While this report focuses on the NFS, climate change needs to be addressed across all*  
37 *functional lines and program areas (including state and private forestry, international programs,*  
38 *and research) of the USFS. Further enhancing the relationship between NFS managers, state and*  
39 *private forestry staffs, and scientists in the research branch should help the USFS address this*  
40 *challenge.*

41

## 1 **3.2 Background and History**

### 2 **3.2.1 Historical Context and Enabling Legislation**

3 In the mid 1800s, the rapid western expansion of European-American settlement and the  
 4 associated environmental impact of deforestation, human-caused wildfire, and soil erosion raised  
 5 concerns about the sustainability of public lands (Rueth, Baron, and Joyce, 2002). At a meeting  
 6 of the American Association for the Advancement of Science in 1873, Franklin Benjamin Hough  
 7 described the environmental harm resulting from European forest practices and proposed that the  
 8 United States take action to avoid such impacts. Congress directed the U.S. Department of  
 9 Agriculture (USDA) to report on forest conditions, and in 1876 Hough—as the USDA special  
 10 forestry agent—completed the first assessment of U.S. forests. In 1881, the Division of Forestry  
 11 within USDA was created with the mission to provide information. Three years later, research  
 12 was added to the mission.

13  
 14 With the passage of the Forest Reserve Act of 1891, President Harrison established the first  
 15 timber land reserve (Yellowstone Park Timber Land Reserve, eventually to become the  
 16 Shoshone National Forest) under the control of the General Land Office (Fig. 3.1). Over the next  
 17 two years, Harrison designated more than 13 million acres (5.26 million ha) within 15 forest  
 18 reserves in seven western states and Alaska (Rowley, 1985). The Forest Transfer Act of 1905  
 19 established the U.S. Forest Service, in USDA, and transferred the reserves from the General  
 20 Land Office to USDA. With this legislation, the policy shifted from land privatization to federal  
 21 forest protection, with integrated research and scientific information as an important element in  
 22 the management for sustained timber yields and watershed protection (Rowley, 1985).<sup>1</sup> In 1907,  
 23 the forest reserves were renamed to national forests (NFs). By 1909, the NFs had expanded to  
 24 172 million acres (70 million hectares) on 150 NFs.<sup>2</sup>

25  
 26  
 27

28 **Figure 3.1.** Timeline of National Forest System formation and the legislative influences on  
 29 the mission of the national forests.

### 30 **3.2.2 Evolution of National Forest Mission**

31 In the 1891 act, the mission was to “improve and protect the forest within the boundaries, or for  
 32 the purposes of securing favorable conditions of water flows, and to furnish a continuous supply  
 33 of timber.” In 1905, Secretary of Agriculture James Wilson wrote that questions of use must be  
 34 decided “from the standpoint of the greatest good for the greatest number in the long run”  
 35 (USDA Forest Service, 1993). The 1936 Report of the Chief recognized a greater variety of  
 36 purposes for NFs including “timber production, watershed production, forage production, and

---

<sup>1</sup> See also **MacCleery, D.**, 2006: Reinventing the U.S. Forest Service: Evolution of the national forests from custodial management, to production forestry, to ecosystem management: A case study for the Asia-Pacific Forestry Commission. In: *Proceedings of the Reinventing Forestry Agencies Workshop*. Asia-Pacific Forestry Commission, FAO Regional Office for Asia and the Pacific, Thailand. 28 February, 2006. Manila, Philippines.

<sup>2</sup> **USDA Forest Service.** 2007. Table 21 National Forest Lands Annual Acreage (1891 to present). Report date October 10, 2007, [http://www.fs.fed.us/land/staff/lar/2007/TABLE\\_21.htm](http://www.fs.fed.us/land/staff/lar/2007/TABLE_21.htm), accessed on 11-28-2007.

1 livestock grazing, wildlife production, recreational use, and whatever combination of these uses  
 2 will yield the largest net total public benefits.”<sup>1</sup> In 1960, the Multiple Use-Sustained Yield Act  
 3 officially broadened the mission to give the agency “permissive and discretionary authority to  
 4 administer the national forest for outdoor recreation, range, timber, watershed, and wildlife and  
 5 fish purposes.”<sup>3</sup>

6  
 7 Specific management goals for land within national forest boundaries were identified by  
 8 legislation in the 1960s: Wilderness Act of 1964, National Trails System Act of 1968, Wild and  
 9 Scenic Rivers Act of 1968.<sup>4</sup> As these congressional designations encompassed land from many  
 10 federal agencies, coordination with other federal and in some cases state agencies became a new  
 11 component of the management of these designated NF lands. By 2006, 23 percent of the  
 12 National Forest System’s lands were statutorily set aside in congressional designations—the  
 13 national wildernesses, national monuments, national recreation areas, national game refuges and  
 14 wildlife preserves, wild and scenic rivers, scenic areas, and primitive areas.

15  
 16 Legislation of the 1970s established oversight by agencies other than the Forest Service for the  
 17 environmental effect of land management within NFs. The Clean Air Act of 1970 and the Clean  
 18 Water Act of 1972 gave the Environmental Protection Agency responsibility for setting air and  
 19 water quality standards, and the states responsibility for enforcing these standards. Similarly, the  
 20 U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and the National Marine Fisheries Service were given a new  
 21 responsibility through the required consultation process in the Endangered Species Act of 1973  
 22 to review proposed management on federal lands that could modify the habitat of listed species.

23  
 24 Additional legislation established greater public involvement in evaluating management impacts  
 25 and in the forest planning process. The National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1970  
 26 required all federal agencies proposing actions that could have a significant environmental effect  
 27 to evaluate the proposed action as well as a range of alternatives, and provide an opportunity for  
 28 public comment. Increased public participation in the national forest planning process was  
 29 provided for within the National Forest Management Act of 1976. Land management activities  
 30 within the NFs were now, more than ever, in the local, regional, and national public limelight.

31  
 32 These laws and their associated regulations led to many changes within the organizational  
 33 structure of the Forest Service, the composition of the skills within the local, regional, and  
 34 national staffs, and the management philosophies used to guide natural resource management.  
 35 Additionally, the public, environmental groups, internal agency sources, and the Forest Service’s  
 36 own research community were reporting that substantial changes were needed in natural resource  
 37 management.<sup>1</sup> In 1992, Forest Service Chief Dale Robertson announced that “an ecological  
 38 approach” would now govern the agency’s management philosophy. In 1994, Chief Jack Ward  
 39 Thomas issued the publication *Forest Service Ethics and Course to the Future*, which described  
 40 the four components of ecosystem management: protecting ecosystems, restoring deteriorated  
 41 ecosystems, providing multiple-use benefits for people within the capabilities of ecosystems, and  
 42 ensuring organizational effectiveness. MacCleery<sup>1</sup> notes that this shift to ecosystem management  
 43 occurred without explicit statutory authority, and as an administrative response to many factors  
 44 such as public involvement in the planning processes, increased technical diversity within the

---

<sup>3</sup> 16 U.S.C. § 528-531

<sup>4</sup> 16 U.S.C. § 1271-1287 P.L. 90-542

1 Forest Service staffs, increased demand for recreational opportunities, and increased  
2 understanding in the natural resource sciences.

3  
4 After the active wildfire season in 2000, federal agencies drafted the National Fire Plan to reduce  
5 the risk of wildfire to communities and natural resources. The Plan has focused prevention on the  
6 reduction of woody biomass (mechanical thinning, prescribed fire, wildland fire use, removal of  
7 surface fuels) and the restoration of ecosystems where past land use had altered fire regimes. The  
8 Healthy Forest Restoration Act of 2003 included provisions to expedite NEPA and other  
9 processes to increase the rate at which fuel treatments were implemented in the wildland-urban  
10 interfaces of at-risk communities, at-risk municipal watersheds, areas where fuel treatments  
11 could reduce the risk of fire in habitat of threatened and endangered species, and where wind-  
12 throw or insect epidemics threaten ecosystem components or resource values.<sup>5</sup>

13  
14 The 2007–2012 USDA Forest Service Strategic Plan describes the mission of the Forest Service,  
15 an agency with three branches: National Forest Systems, Research, and State and Private, as: “To  
16 sustain the health, diversity and productivity of the Nation’s forest and grasslands to meet the  
17 needs of present and future generations” (USDA Forest Service, 2007b). The mission reflects  
18 public and private interests in the protection and preservation of natural resources, a century of  
19 laws passed to inform the management of NF lands, partnerships with states for stewardship of  
20 non-federal lands, and a century of research findings.

### 21 **3.2.3 Interpretation of Goals**

22 At the national level, the USDA Forest Service Strategic Plan identifies a set of strategic  
23 priorities that are implemented over a period of time through annual agency budgets. The  
24 strategic priorities or goals are based on national assessments of natural resources and in  
25 response to social and political trends (USDA Forest Service, 2007b) (Box 3.1). Within the NFS,  
26 these goals are interpreted in each level of the organization: national, regional, and individual  
27 administrative unit (forest, grassland, and prairie) (Fig. 3.2).

#### 31 **Figure 3.2.** Jurisdiction and organizational levels within the National Forest System.

32  
33 Individual unit planning (national forest, grassland or other units) provides an inventory of  
34 resources and their present conditions on a particular management unit. This inventory, coupled  
35 with the desired future condition for ecosystem services and natural resources within each  
36 national forest, is the basis for annual work planning and budgeting (USDA Forest Service,  
37 2007b). Annual work planning identifies the projects that all units propose for funding within a  
38 fiscal year. This level of planning involves the final application of agency strategic direction into  
39 a unit’s annual budget to move its resources toward its desired future condition. Project planning  
40 includes specific on-the-ground management for recreation, fisheries, restoration, vegetation  
41 management, and fuel treatments.

---

<sup>5</sup> H.R. 190

1 Individual administrative units have worked together to develop documents that guide  
 2 management across several units. For example, the Pacific Northwest Forest Plan was initiated in  
 3 1993 to end an impasse over the management of federal lands within the range of the northern  
 4 spotted owl. The area encompassed 24.5 million acres (~10 million ha); 17 NFs in Washington,  
 5 Oregon, and California; and public lands in Oregon and Washington managed by the Bureau of  
 6 Land Management.

### 7 **3.3 Current Status of Management Systems**

#### 8 **3.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics Upon Which Goals Depend**

9 The NFS (Fig. 3.3) includes a large variety of ecosystems with diverse characteristics. National  
 10 Forests include ecosystem types ranging from evergreen broadleaf tropical forests within the  
 11 Caribbean NF in Puerto Rico; alpine tundra on the Medicine Bow NF in Wyoming and the  
 12 Arapaho NF in Colorado; oakbrush and piñon-juniper woodlands within the Manti-LaSal NF in  
 13 Utah; northern hardwood forests on the White Mountains NF in New Hampshire; mixed  
 14 hardwoods on the Wayne-Hoosier NF in Indiana; oak-hickory forests on the Pisgah NF in North  
 15 Carolina; and ponderosa forests in the Black Hills NF of South Dakota, the Coconino and  
 16 Sitgreaves NFs of Arizona, and the Lassen NF in California (Adams, Loughry, and Plaughter,  
 17 2004). The National Grasslands (NGs) include ecosystem types ranging from shortgrass prairie  
 18 on the Pawnee NG in Colorado to tallgrass prairie on the Midewin NG in Illinois, and from  
 19 tallgrass prairie on the Sheyenne NG to the stark badlands found in the Little Missouri NG, both  
 20 in North Dakota. The NFs also includes aquatic systems (lakes, ponds, wetlands, and  
 21 waterways). Considering its extent and diversity, the NFS is an important cultural and natural  
 22 heritage and, as such, is valued by a wide variety of stakeholders.

23  
 24  
 25

26 **Figure 3.3.** One hundred fifty-five national forests and 20 national grasslands across the  
 27 United States provide a multitude of goods and ecosystems services, including  
 28 biodiversity.<sup>6</sup>

29

30 National forests harbor much of the nation's terrestrial biodiversity. Specifically, NFs comprise  
 31 three major attributes of biodiversity across multiple levels of organization (genes to landscapes)  
 32 (see Noss, 1990): structural diversity (*e.g.*, genetic, population, and ecosystem structure),  
 33 compositional diversity (*e.g.*, genes, species, communities, ecosystems, and landscape types),  
 34 and functional diversity (*e.g.*, genetic, demographic, and ecosystem processes, life histories, and  
 35 landscape-scale processes and disturbances). Biodiversity conservation has become an important  
 36 goal of the USFS and is a consideration in planning.<sup>7</sup> National forests provide important habitat  
 37 for many rare, threatened, and endangered plants and animals, ranging from charismatic species  
 38 such as the grey wolf (*Canis lupus*) to lesser known species such as Ute ladies' tresses  
 39 (*Spiranthes diluvialis*). Climate change will amplify the current biodiversity conservation

<sup>6</sup> **USDA Forest Service Geodata Clearinghouse**, 2007: FSGeodata Clearinghouse: other forest service data sets. USDA Forest Service Geodata Clearinghouse Website, Overlay created in ArcMap 8.1, boundary files are the alp\_boundaries2 file set, [http://fsgeodata.fs.fed.us/clearinghouse/other\\_fs/other\\_fs.html](http://fsgeodata.fs.fed.us/clearinghouse/other_fs/other_fs.html), accessed on 7-30-2007.

<sup>7</sup> For example see **USDA Forest Service**, 7-11-2007: Rocky Mountain region: species conservation program. USDA Forest Service Website, <http://www.fs.fed.us/r2/projects/scp/>, accessed on 7-30-2007.

1 challenge because it is already affecting and will continue to affect the relationships between  
 2 climate and the various attributes and components (*i.e.*, genes, species, ecosystems, and  
 3 landscapes) of biodiversity (Hansen *et al.*, 2001; Root *et al.*, 2003; Malcolm *et al.*, 2006;  
 4 Parmesan, 2006).

5  
 6 National forests also provide myriad goods and services—collectively called ecosystem services  
 7 (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005). Historically, timber, grazing, and fresh water have  
 8 been the most important goods and services provided by NFs. Although timber harvest (Fig. 3.4)  
 9 and domestic livestock grazing now occur at lower than historical levels (see also Mitchell,  
 10 2000; Haynes *et al.*, 2007), NFs harvested more than 2.2 billion board feet in 2006<sup>8</sup> and more  
 11 than 7000 ranchers relied on NFs and national grasslands for grazing their livestock.<sup>9</sup> About 60  
 12 million Americans (20% of the nation’s population in 3,400 towns and cities) depend on water  
 13 that originates in national forest watershed (USDA Forest Service, 2007b). In addition, NFs  
 14 contain about 3,000 public water supplies for visitors and employees (*e.g.*, campgrounds, visitor  
 15 centers, and administrative facilities) (USDA Forest Service, 2007b). Thus, the condition of the  
 16 watershed affects the quality, quantity, and timing of water flowing through it.<sup>10</sup> Climate change  
 17 will almost certainly affect all three of these historical ecosystem services of NFs (see Section  
 18 3.3.4.2) and likely complicate the USFS’s already formidable task of restoring, sustaining, and  
 19 enhancing NFs and NGs while providing and sustaining benefits to the American people.

20  
 21  
 22  
 23 **Figure 3.4.** Historical harvest levels across the national forests.<sup>8</sup>

24  
 25 Over the past few decades, the USFS and the public have come to appreciate the full range of  
 26 ecosystem services that NFs provide (see Box 3.2). The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment  
 27 (2005) defines ecosystem services as the benefits people derive from ecosystems, and classifies  
 28 these benefits into four general categories (Box 3.2): provisioning (*i.e.*, products from  
 29 ecosystems), regulating (*i.e.*, regulation of ecosystem processes), cultural (*i.e.*, nonmaterial  
 30 benefits), and supporting services (*i.e.*, services required for production of all other ecosystems  
 31 services). Biodiversity can be treated as an ecosystem service in its own right, or can be seen as a  
 32 necessary condition underpinning the long-term provision of other services (Millennium  
 33 Ecosystem Assessment, 2005; Balvanera *et al.*, 2006; Díaz *et al.*, 2006). This report treats  
 34 biodiversity as an ecosystem service. The growing importance of regulating services such as pest  
 35 management, and watershed and erosion management (see Goal 1); provisioning services such as  
 36 providing wood and energy (see Goal 2); and cultural services such as aesthetics and especially  
 37 recreation (Goal 4) are reflected in the USFS national goals (see Box 3.1).

38  
 39 The achievement of strategic and tactical goals set forth by the USFS depends on conservation  
 40 and enhancement of ecosystem services at various scales. Maintenance and enhancement of

---

<sup>8</sup> **USDA Forest Service**, 2006: FY1905-2006 annual national sold and harvest summary. Available from  
[http://www.fs.fed.us/forestmanagement/reports/sold-harvest/documents/1905-  
 2006\\_Natl\\_Sold\\_Harvest\\_Summary.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/forestmanagement/reports/sold-harvest/documents/1905-2006_Natl_Sold_Harvest_Summary.pdf), USDA Forest Service Forest Management, Washington, DC.

<sup>9</sup> **USDA Forest Service**, 2007: *Grazing Statistical Summary 2005*. Washington, DC, pp.iii-108.

<sup>10</sup> **Brown**, T.C. and P. Froemke, 2006: *An Initial Ranking of the Condition of Watersheds Containing NFS Land: Approach and Methodology*. USDA Forest Service Rocky Mountain Research Station.

1 ecosystems services on NFs is considered within the context of all potential uses and values of  
 2 individual NFs. Unlike federal lands afforded strict protection, NFs contain multiple resources to  
 3 be used and managed for the benefit of current and future generations (see Multiple-Use  
 4 Sustained-Yield Act of 1960). The USFS, as the steward of NFs and its resources, actively  
 5 manages NFs to achieve the national goals outlined in Box 3.1 and the individual goals identified  
 6 for each NF and NG.

### 7 **3.3.2 Stressors of Concern on National Forests**

#### 8 **3.3.2.1 Current Major Stressors**

9 National forests are currently subject to many stressors that affect the ability of the USFS to  
 10 achieve its goals. We define the term stressor as any physical, chemical, or biological entity that  
 11 can induce an adverse response (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2000). Stressors can  
 12 arise from physical and biological alterations of natural disturbances within NFs, increased  
 13 unmanaged demand for ecosystem services (such as recreation), alterations of the landscape  
 14 mosaic surrounding NFs, chemical alterations in regional air quality, or from a legacy of past  
 15 management actions (USDA Forest Service, 2007b).

16  
 17 Disturbances, both human-induced and natural, shape ecosystems by influencing their  
 18 composition, structure, and function (Dale *et al.*, 2001). Over long timeframes, ecosystems adapt  
 19 and can come to depend on natural disturbances such as fire, hurricanes, windstorms, insects, and  
 20 disease. For example, sites where fire has naturally occurred include plant species with seed  
 21 cones that open only in response to heat from wildfire, and thick barked trees that resist surface  
 22 fire. When disturbances become functions of both natural and human conditions (*e.g.*, forest fire  
 23 ignition and spread), the nature (*i.e.*, temporal and spatial characteristics) of the disturbance may  
 24 change—such as when wildfire occurs outside of the recorded fire season. These altered  
 25 disturbance regimes become stressors to ecosystems, and affect ecosystem services and natural  
 26 resources within NF ecosystems (*e.g.*, fire, USDA Forest Service, 2007b).

#### 27 28 **Current Management Activities and the Legacy of Past Management**

29 The legacy of past land-use can leave persistent effects on ecosystem composition, structure, and  
 30 function (Dupouey *et al.*, 2002; Foster *et al.*, 2003). Depending on their scale and intensity,  
 31 extractive activities such as timber harvesting, mining, and livestock grazing stress NF  
 32 ecosystems, affecting their resilience and the services they provide. Current USFS management  
 33 strategies emphasize mitigation of environmental impacts from these activities (see section  
 34 3.3.3). However, the legacy of extractive activities in the past (Rueth, Baron, and Joyce, 2002;  
 35 Foster *et al.*, 2003) is a continuing source of stress in NFs. For example, past logging practices,  
 36 in combination with fire suppression, fragmentation, and other factors, have homogenized forest  
 37 species composition (including a shift from late- to early-successional species); created a  
 38 unimodal age and size structure; and markedly reduced the number of large trees, snags, and  
 39 coarse woody debris (Rueth, Baron, and Joyce, 2002; Foster *et al.*, 2003). The long-term  
 40 ecological impacts of mining operations before the environmental regulations of the 1960s were  
 41 promulgated have been similarly profound, including mortality of aquatic organisms from lethal  
 42 concentrations of acid and toxic metals (*e.g.*, copper, lead, and cadmium) and alteration of  
 43 aquatic and riparian food webs from bio-accumulation of these metals (Rueth, Baron, and Joyce,  
 44 2002). The uncontrolled grazing prevailing on federal lands (including areas that are now NFs)



1 until the Taylor Grazing Act was enacted in the 1930s has left a similar environmental imprint.  
 2 Overstocked rangelands contributed to widespread erosion, reduced soil productivity, and a shift  
 3 in species composition, including the invasion of non-native species that have altered fire  
 4 regimes (Rueth, Baron, and Joyce, 2002).

#### 6 **Land Use and Land Cover Change Surrounding National Forests**

7 Changes in the land use and land cover surrounding NFs have been and continue to be associated  
 8 with the loss of open space (subdivision of ranches or large timber holdings) (Birch, 1996;  
 9 Sampson and DeCoster, 2000; Hawbaker *et al.*, 2006), the conversion of forestland to urban and  
 10 built-up uses in the wildland-urban interface (WUI), and habitat fragmentation (related to  
 11 increases in road densities and impervious surfaces). The amount of U.S. land in urban and built-  
 12 up uses increased by 34% between 1982 and 1997, the result primarily of the conversion of  
 13 croplands and forestland (Alig, Kline, and Lichtenstein, 2004). Subdivision of large timber  
 14 holdings also results in a change in management, as private forest landowners no longer practice  
 15 forest management (Sampson and DeCoster, 2000).

16  
 17 The WUI is defined as “the area where structures and other human developments meet or  
 18 intermingle with undeveloped wildland” (Stewart, Radeloff, and Hammer, 2006). Between 1990  
 19 and 2000, 60% of all new housing units built in the United States were located in the WUI (Fig.  
 20 3.5), and currently 39% of all housing units are located in the WUI (Radeloff *et al.*, 2005). More  
 21 than 80% of the total land area in the United States is within about 1 km of a road (Riitters and  
 22 Wickham, 2003). “Perforated” (*i.e.*, fragmented) forests with anthropogenic edges affect about  
 23 20% of the eastern United States. (Riitters and Coulston, 2005). These changes surrounding NFs  
 24 can change the effective size of wildlife habitat, change the ecological flows (*e.g.*, fire, water,  
 25 and plant and animal migrations) into and out of the NFs, increase opportunities for invasive  
 26 species, increase human impact at the boundaries within the borders of NFs (Hansen and  
 27 DeFries, 2007), and constrain management options (*e.g.*, fire use). In addition to these land use  
 28 and land cover changes surrounding the large contiguous NFs, some NFs contain large areas of  
 29 checkerboard ownership where sections of USFS lands and private ownership intermingle.

33 **Figure 3.5.** Wildland Urban Interface across the United States (Radeloff *et al.*, 2005).

#### 35 **Invasive Species**

36 A species is considered invasive if (1) it is non-native to the ecosystem under consideration, and  
 37 (2) its introduction causes or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm, or harm to  
 38 human health.<sup>11</sup> Invasive species have markedly altered the structure and composition of forest,  
 39 woodland, shrubland, and grassland ecosystems. Non-native insects expanding their ranges  
 40 nationally in 2004 include Asian longhorned beetle, hemlock woolly adelgid, the common  
 41 European pine shoot beetle, and the emerald ash borer (USDA Forest Service Health Protection,  
 42 2005). Non-native diseases continuing to spread include beech bark disease, white pine blister  
 43 rust, and sudden oak death. Within the Northeast, 350,000 acres (141,600 ha) of NFs are  
 44 annually infested and affected by non-native species, including 165 non-native plant species of  
 45 concern (USDA Forest Service, 2003). Plant species of greatest concern include purple

<sup>11</sup> Executive Order 13112: Invasive Species

1 loosestrife, garlic mustard, Japanese barberry, kudzu, knapweed, buckthorns, olives, leafy  
 2 spurge, and reed and stilt grass (USDA Forest Service, 2003). Non-native earthworms have  
 3 invaded and altered soils in previously earthworm-free forests throughout the northeastern  
 4 United States (Fig. 3.6) (Hendrix and Bohlen, 2002; Hale *et al.*, 2005; Frelich *et al.*, 2006).  
 5  
 6  
 7

8 **Figure 3.6.** Influence of non-native earthworms on eastern forest floor dynamics (Frelich  
 9 *et al.*, 2006). Forest floor and plant community at base of trees before (a, left-hand photo)  
 10 and after (b) European earthworm invasion in a sugar-maple-dominated forest on the  
 11 Chippewa National Forest, Minnesota, USA. Photo credit: Dave Hansen, University of  
 12 Minnesota Agricultural Experimental Station.  
 13

14 Non-native invasive plant species have altered fire regimes in the western United States,  
 15 including Hawaii (Westbrooks, 1998; Mitchell, 2000), and consequently other important  
 16 ecosystem processes (D'Antonio and Vitousek, 1992; Brooks *et al.*, 2004). Cheatgrass (*Bromus*  
 17 *tectorum*), now a common understory species in millions of hectares of sagebrush-dominated  
 18 vegetation assemblages in the Intermountain West (Mack, 1981), alters the fuel complex,  
 19 increases fire frequency, and reduces habitat provided by older stands of sagebrush (Williams  
 20 and Baruch, 2000; Smith *et al.*, 2000; Ziska, Faulkner, and Lydon, 2004; Ziska, Reeves, and  
 21 Blank, 2005).<sup>12</sup> Similarly, buffelgrass (*Pennisetum ciliare*) and other African grasses are now  
 22 common in much of the Sonoran Desert, providing elevated fuel levels that could threaten cactus  
 23 species with increased fire frequency and severity (Williams and Baruch, 2000). Fountain grass  
 24 (*Pennisetum setaceum*), introduced to the island of Hawaii, greatly increases fire susceptibility in  
 25 the dry forest ecosystems where fire was not historically frequent (D'Antonio, Tunison, and Loh,  
 26 2000). Cogongrass (*Imperata cylindrica* (L.) Beauv.) invasions have similarly altered fire  
 27 regimes in pine savannas in the southeastern United States (Lippincott, 2000).  
 28

### 29 **Air Pollution**

30 Ozone, sulfur dioxide, nitrogen oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>), and mercury transported into NFs from urban and  
 31 industrial areas across the United States affect resources such as vegetation, lakes, and wildlife.  
 32 A combination of hot, stagnant summer air masses, expansive forest area, and high rates of NO<sub>x</sub>  
 33 emissions combine to produce high levels of ozone, especially in the western, southern, and  
 34 northeastern regions of the United States (Fiore *et al.*, 2002). Current levels of ozone exposure  
 35 are estimated to reduce eastern and southern forest productivity by 5–10% (Joyce *et al.*, 2001;  
 36 Felzer *et al.*, 2004). Elevated nitrogen deposition downwind of large, expanding metropolitan  
 37 centers or large agricultural operations has been shown to affect forests when nitrogen deposited  
 38 is in excess of biological demand (nitrogen saturation). Across the southern United States it is  
 39 largely confined to high elevations of the Appalachian Mountains (Johnson and Lindberg, 1992),  
 40 although recent increases in both hog and chicken production operations have caused localized  
 41 nitrogen saturation in the Piedmont and Coastal Plain (McNulty *et al.*, forthcoming). In the  
 42 western United States, increased nitrogen deposition has altered plant communities (particularly  
 43 alpine communities in the Rocky Mountains) and reduced lichen and soil mychorriza

<sup>12</sup> See also **Tausch**, R.J., 1999: Transitions and thresholds: influences and implications for management in pinyon and juniper woodlands. In: *Proceedings: Ecology and Management of Pinyon-Juniper Communities Within the Interior West*, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, pp. 361-365.

1 (particularly in the Sierra Nevada mountains of Southern California) (Baron *et al.*, 2000; Fenn *et al.*, 2003). In Southern California, the interaction of ozone and nitrogen deposition has been  
2 shown to cause major physiological disruption in ponderosa pine trees (Fenn *et al.*, 2003).  
3 Mercury deposition negatively affects aquatic food webs as well as terrestrial wildlife, as a result  
4 of bioaccumulation, throughout the United States (Chen *et al.*, 2005; Driscoll *et al.*, 2007;  
5 Peterson *et al.*, 2007). In the Ottawa NF (Michigan), for example, 16 lakes and four streams have  
6 been contaminated by mercury that was deposited from pollution originating outside of NF  
7 borders (Ottawa National Forest, 2006).  
8

#### 9 10 **Energy Activities**

11 Of the estimated 99.2 million acres (40.1 million ha) of oil and gas resources on federal lands  
12 (USDA, USDI, and DOE, 2006), 24 million acres (9.7 million ha) are under USFS management.  
13 The Bureau of Land Management has the major role in issuing oil and gas leases and permits in  
14 NFs; however, the USFS determines the availability of land and the conditions of use, and  
15 regulates all surface-disturbing activities conducted under the lease (GAO, 2004). Principal  
16 causes of stress are transportation systems to access oil and gas wells, the oil and gas platforms  
17 themselves, pipelines, contamination resulting from spills or the extraction of oil and gas, and  
18 flue gas combustion and other activities in gas well and oil well productions. The extent to which  
19 these stressors affect forests depends on the history of land use and ownership rights to  
20 subsurface materials in the particular NF. For example, oil and gas development is an important  
21 concern in the Allegheny NF because 93% of the subsurface mineral rights are privately held,  
22 and because exploration and extraction have increased recently due to renewed interest in  
23 domestic oil supplies and higher crude oil prices (Allegheny National Forest, 2006).  
24

#### 25 **Altered Fire Regimes**

26 Fire is a major driver of forest dynamics in the West, South and Great Lakes region (Agee, 1998;  
27 Frelich, 2002), and fire regimes (return interval and severity) and other characteristics (season,  
28 extent, etc.) vary widely across the United States (Hardy *et al.*, 2001a; Schmidt *et al.*, 2002). Fire  
29 and insect disturbances interact, often synergistically, compounding rates of change in forest  
30 ecosystems (Veblen *et al.*, 1994). Historical fire suppression has led to an increase in wildfire  
31 activity and altered fire regimes in some forests, resulting in increased density of trees and  
32 increased build-up of fuels (Covington *et al.*, 1994; Sampson *et al.*, 2000; Minnich, 2001;  
33 Moritz, 2003; Brown, Hall, and Westerling, 2004). Lack of fire or altered fire frequency and  
34 severity are considered sources of stress in those ecosystems dependent upon fire, such as forests  
35 dominated by ponderosa pine and lodgepole pine in the West, longleaf pine in the South, and oak  
36 and pine ecosystems in the East.  
37

#### 38 **Unmanaged Recreation**

39 National forests are enjoyed by millions of outdoor enthusiasts each year, but recreation—  
40 particularly unmanaged recreation—causes a variety of ecosystem impacts.<sup>13</sup> Recreational  
41 activities that can damage ecosystems include cutting trees for fire, starting fires in inappropriate  
42 places, damaging soil and vegetation through the creation of roads and trails, target practice and

---

<sup>13</sup> Reviewed in Leung, Y.F. and J.L. Marion, 2000: Recreation impacts and management in wilderness: a state-of-knowledge review. In: Wilderness Ecosystems, Threats, and Management [Cole, D.N. (ed.)]. *Proceedings of the Wilderness science in a time of change conference*, 23, May 1999, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

1 lead contamination, and pollution of waterways.<sup>14</sup> Impacts of these activities include vegetation  
 2 and habitat loss from trampling, soil and surface litter erosion, soil compaction, air and water  
 3 pollution, decreased water quality, introduction of non-native invasive species, and wildfires.  
 4 The creation of unauthorized roads and trails by off-highway vehicle (OHVs) causes erosion,  
 5 degrades water quality, and destroys habitat.<sup>15</sup>

#### 6 **Extreme Weather Events: Wind, Ice, Freeze-thaw events, Floods, and Drought**

7 Severe wind is the principal cause of natural disturbance in many NFs (*e.g.*, Colorado, Veblen,  
 8 Hadley, and Reid, 1991; Alaska, Nowacki and Kramer, 1998; northern temperate forests, Papaik  
 9 and Canham, 2006). Wind is one of the three principal drivers (along with fire and herbivory) of  
 10 forest dynamics in temperate forests of northeastern and north-central North America (for an  
 11 example of a wind event, see Box 3.3) (Frelich, 2002). Turnover in northeastern forests depends  
 12 on creation of gaps from individual trees falling down or being blown down by wind (Seymour,  
 13 White, and deMaynadier, 2002). Winds from severe storms (*e.g.*, from tornadoes, hurricanes,  
 14 derechos, and nor'easters) occurring at very infrequent intervals also replace stands at various  
 15 spatial scales (0.2-3,785 ha; Seymour, White, and deMaynadier, 2002; see also McNulty, 2002).  
 16 Worrall, Lee, and Harrington (2005) found that windthrow, windsnap, and chronic wind stress  
 17 expand gaps initiated by insects, parasites, and disease in New Hampshire subalpine spruce-fir  
 18 forests. Thus, wind, insects, and disease interact to cause chronic stress to forests, whereas  
 19 extreme storms typically are stand-replacing events.

20  
 21  
 22 Ice storms are another important part of the natural disturbance regime (Irland, 2000; Lafon,  
 23 2006) that stress individual trees (Bruederle and Stearns, 1985), influence forest structure and  
 24 composition (Rhoads *et al.*, 2002) and, when severe, can affect important ecosystem processes  
 25 such as nitrogen cycling (Houlton *et al.*, 2003). The extent to which trees suffer from the stress  
 26 and damage caused by ice appears to vary with species, slope, aspect, and whether severe winds  
 27 accompany or follow the ice storm (Bruederle and Stearns, 1985; De Steven, Kline, and  
 28 Matthiae, 1991; Rhoads *et al.*, 2002; Yorks and Adams, 2005). Growth form, canopy position,  
 29 mechanical properties of the wood, and tree age and health influence the susceptibility of  
 30 different species to ice damage (Bruederle and Stearns, 1985). Severe ice storms, such as the  
 31 1999 storm in New England, can shift the successional trajectory of the forest due to the  
 32 interactions between the storm itself and effects of more chronic stressors, such as beech bark  
 33 disease (Rhoads *et al.*, 2002).

34  
 35 Climate variability and extreme weather events also affect ecosystem response. Auclair, Lill, and  
 36 Revenga (1996) identified the relationships between thaw-freeze and root-freeze events in winter  
 37 and early spring and severe episodes of dieback in northeastern and Canadian forests. These  
 38 extreme events helped trigger (and synchronize) large-scale forest dieback, because trees injured  
 39 by freezing were more vulnerable to the heat and drought stress that eventually killed them. In  
 40 northern hardwoods, freezing, as opposed to drought, was significantly correlated with  
 41 increasing global mean annual temperatures and low values of the Pacific tropical Southern

---

<sup>14</sup> **National Forest Foundation**, 2006: Recreation. National Forests Foundation Website,  
[http://www.natlforgest.org/consi\\_02\\_rec.html](http://www.natlforgest.org/consi_02_rec.html), accessed on 5-4-2007.

<sup>15</sup> **Foltz, R.B.**, 2006: Erosion from all terrain vehicle (ATV) trails on National Forest lands. Proceedings of the 2006 ASABE Annual International Meeting, 9, July 2006, American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers, Portland Convention Center, Portland, OR. Available from <http://asae.frymulti.com/request.asp?JID=5&AID=21056&CID=por2006&T=2>.

1 Oscillation Index (Auclair, Lill, and Revenga, 1996). Auclair, Eglinton, and Minnemeyer (1997)  
 2 identified large areas in the Northeast and Canada where this climatic phenomenon affected  
 3 several hardwood species. Lack of the insulating layer of snow was shown to increase soil  
 4 freezing events in northern hardwood forests (Hardy *et al.*, 2001b).

5  
 6 Droughts (and even less-severe water stress) weaken otherwise healthy and resistant trees and  
 7 leave them more susceptible to both native and non-native insect and disease outbreaks.  
 8 Protracted droughts have already contributed to large-scale dieback of species such as ponderosa  
 9 pine (see Box 3.4). Vegetation in NFs with sandy or shallow soils is more susceptible to drought  
 10 stress than vegetation growing in deeper or heavier soils (Hanson and Weltzin, 2000), resulting  
 11 in situations where soil type and drought interact to substantially increase fire risk. The extent  
 12 and severity of fire impacts is closely associated with droughts; the most widespread and severe  
 13 fires occur in the driest years (Taylor and Beaty, 2005; Westerling *et al.*, 2006). The temporal  
 14 and spatial distribution of droughts also affects watershed condition by affecting surface water  
 15 chemistry (Inamdar *et al.*, 2006).

16  
 17 Floods caused by extreme precipitation events—especially those that co-occur with or contribute  
 18 to snowmelt—are another important stressor in NFs. In floodplain forests, periodic floods  
 19 deposit alluvium, contribute to soil development, and drive successional processes (Bayley,  
 20 1995; Yarie *et al.*, 1998). Tree damage and mortality caused by inundation depends on several  
 21 factors including season, duration, water levels, temperature and oxygen, mechanical damage,  
 22 and concentration of contaminants. Floods in upland forests, however, are considered large,  
 23 infrequent disturbances (Turner *et al.*, 1998; Michener and Haeuber, 1998) dominated by  
 24 mechanical damage that affects geophysical and ecological processes (Swanson *et al.*, 1998).  
 25 The physical damage to aquatic and riparian habitat from landslides, channel erosion, and  
 26 snapped and uprooted trees can be extensive and severe, or quite heterogeneous (Swanson *et al.*,  
 27 1998). Flooding facilitates biotic invasions, both by creating sites for invasive species to become  
 28 established and by dispersing these species to the sites (Barden, 1987; Miller, 2003;  
 29 Decruyenaere and Holt, 2005; Truscott *et al.*, 2006; Watterson and Jones, 2006; Oswalt and  
 30 Oswalt, 2007).

### 31 **3.3.2.2 Stress Complexes in Western Ecosystems**

32 A warmer climate is expected to affect ecosystems in the western United States by altering *stress*  
 33 *complexes* (Manion, 1991)—combinations of biotic and abiotic stresses that compromise the  
 34 vigor of ecosystems—leading to increased extent and severity of disturbances (McKenzie,  
 35 Peterson, and Littell, forthcoming). Increased water deficit will accelerate the stress complexes  
 36 experienced in forests, which typically involve some combination of multi-year drought, insects,  
 37 and fire. Increases in fire disturbance superimposed on ecosystems with increased stress from  
 38 drought and insects may have significant effects on growth, regeneration, long-term distribution  
 39 and abundance of forest species, and carbon sequestration (Fig. 3.7).

40  
 41  
 42  
 43 **Figure 3.7.** Conceptual model of the relative time scales for disturbance vs. climatic  
 44 change alone to alter ecosystems. Times are approximate. Adapted from (McKenzie *et al.*,  
 45 2004).

1  
2 Forests of western North America can be classified into energy-limited vs. water-limited  
3 vegetation (Milne, Gupta, and Restrepo, 2002; Littell and Peterson, 2005). Energy-related  
4 limiting factors are chiefly light (*e.g.*, productive forests where competition reduces light to most  
5 individuals) and temperature (*e.g.*, high-latitude or high-elevation forests). Energy-limited  
6 ecosystems in general appear to be responding positively to warming temperatures over the past  
7 100 years (McKenzie, Hessler, and Peterson, 2001). In contrast, productivity in water-limited  
8 systems may decrease with warming temperatures, as negative water balances constrain  
9 photosynthesis (Hicke *et al.*, 2002), although this may be partially offset if CO<sub>2</sub> fertilization  
10 significantly increases water-use efficiency in plants (Neilson *et al.*, 2005b). Littell (2006) found  
11 that most montane Douglas fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) forests across the northwestern United  
12 States appear to be water limited; under current climate projections these limits would increase in  
13 both area affected and magnitude.

14  
15 Temperature increases are a predisposing factor causing often lethal stresses on forest  
16 ecosystems of western North America, acting both directly through increasingly negative water  
17 balances (Stephenson, 1998; Milne, Gupta, and Restrepo, 2002; Littell, 2006) and indirectly  
18 through increased frequency, severity, and extent of disturbances—chiefly fire and insect  
19 outbreaks (Logan and Powell, 2001; McKenzie *et al.*, 2004; Logan and Powell, 2005; Skinner,  
20 Shabbar, and Flanningan, 2006). Four examples of forest ecosystems whose species composition  
21 and stability are currently affected by stress complexes precipitated by a warming climate are  
22 described below. Two cases involve the loss of a single dominant species, and the other two  
23 involve two or more dominant species.

#### 24 25 **Piñon-Juniper Woodlands of the American Southwest**

26 Piñon pine (*Pinus edulis*) and various juniper species (*Juniperus* spp.) are among the most  
27 drought-tolerant trees in western North America, and piñon-juniper ecosystems characterize  
28 lower treelines across much of the West. Piñon-juniper woodlands are clearly water-limited  
29 systems, and piñon-juniper ecotones are sensitive to feedbacks from environmental fluctuations  
30 and existing canopy structure that may buffer trees against drought (Milne *et al.*, 1996) (Box  
31 3.4). However, severe multi-year droughts periodically cause dieback of piñon pines,  
32 overwhelming any local buffering. Interdecadal climate variability strongly affects interior dry  
33 ecosystems, causing considerable growth during wet periods. This growth increases the  
34 evaporative demand, setting up the ecosystem for dieback during the ensuing dry period  
35 (Swetnam and Betancourt, 1998). The current dieback is historically unprecedented in its  
36 combination of low precipitation and high temperatures (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). Fig. 3.8 shows  
37 the stress complex associated with piñon-juniper ecosystems. Increased drought stress via  
38 warmer climate is the predisposing factor, and piñon pine mortality and fuel accumulations are  
39 inciting factors. Ecosystem change comes from large-scale severe fires that lead to colonization  
40 of invasive species (D'Antonio, 2000), which further compromises the ability of piñon pines to  
41 re-establish.

42  
43  
44  
45 **Figure 3.8.** Stress complex in piñon-juniper woodlands of the American Southwest. From  
46 McKenzie *et al.* (2004).  
47

**1 Mixed Conifer Forest of the Sierra Nevada and Southern California**

2 These forests experience a Mediterranean climate with long, dry summers. Fire frequency and  
 3 extent have not increased concomitantly with warmer temperatures, but instead have decreased  
 4 to their lowest levels in the last 2,000 years. Stine (1996) attributed this decline to decreased fuel  
 5 loads from sheep grazing, decreased ignition from the demise of Native American cultures, and  
 6 fire exclusion. Continued fire exclusion has led to increased fuel loadings, and competitive  
 7 stresses on individual trees as stand densities have increased (Van Mantgem *et al.*, 2004).  
 8 Elevated levels of ambient ozone from combustion of fossil fuels affect plant vigor in the Sierra  
 9 Nevada and the mountains of southern California (Peterson, Arbaugh, and Robinson, 1991;  
 10 Miller, 1992). Sierra Nevada forests support endemic levels of a diverse group of insect  
 11 defoliators and bark beetles, but bark beetles in particular have reached outbreak levels in recent  
 12 years, facilitated by protracted droughts and biotic complexes that include bark beetles  
 13 interacting with root diseases and mistletoes (Ferrell, 1996). Dense stands, fire suppression, and  
 14 exotic pathogens such as white pine blister rust (*Cronartium ribicola*) can exacerbate biotic  
 15 interactions (Van Mantgem *et al.*, 2004) and drought stress. Fig. 3.9 shows the stress complex  
 16 associated with Sierra Nevada forest ecosystems, and is likely applicable to the mountain ranges  
 17 east and north of the Los Angeles basin.

18  
 19  
 20  
 21 **Figure 3.9.** Stress complex in Sierra Nevada and southern Californian mixed-conifer  
 22 forests. From McKenzie, Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).

**23 Interior Lodgepole Pine Forests**

24 Lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* var. *latifolia*) is widely distributed across western North  
 25 America, often forming nearly monospecific stands in some locations. It is the principal host of  
 26 the mountain pine beetle (*Dendroctonus ponderosae*), and monospecific stands are particularly  
 27 vulnerable to high mortality during beetle outbreaks. Recent beetle outbreaks have caused  
 28 extensive mortality across millions of hectares (Logan and Powell, 2001; Logan and Powell,  
 29 2005), with large areas of mature cohorts of trees (age 70–80 yr) contributing to widespread  
 30 vulnerability.<sup>16</sup> Warmer temperatures facilitate bark beetle outbreaks in two ways: (1) drought  
 31 stress makes trees more vulnerable to attack, and (2) insect populations respond to increased  
 32 temperatures by speeding up their reproductive cycles (*e.g.*, to one-year life cycles). Warming  
 33 temperatures would be expected to exacerbate these outbreaks and facilitate their spread  
 34 northward and eastward across the continental divide (Logan and Powell, 2005; but see Moore *et*  
 35 *al.*, 2006). Fig. 3.10 shows the stress complex for interior lodgepole pine forests. Warmer  
 36 temperatures, in combination with beetle mortality, set up some ecosystems for shifts in species  
 37 dominance that will be mediated by disturbances such as fire.

38  
 39  
 40  
 41  
 42 **Figure 3.10.** Stress complex in interior (British Columbia and United States) lodgepole  
 43 pine forests. From McKenzie, Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).

---

<sup>16</sup> **Carroll, A.**, 2006: Changing the climate, changing the rules: global warming and insect disturbance in western North American forests. Proceedings of the 2006 MTNCLIM conference, Mt. Hood, Oregon. Accessed at [http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/cirmount/meetings/mtnclim/2006/talks/pdf/carroll\\_talk\\_mtnclim2006.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/cirmount/meetings/mtnclim/2006/talks/pdf/carroll_talk_mtnclim2006.pdf).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26

### **Alaskan Spruce Forests**

The state of Alaska has experienced historically unprecedented fires in the last decade, including the five largest fires in the United States. More than 2.5 million hectares burned in the interior during 2004. During the 1990s, massive outbreaks of the spruce bark beetle (*Dendroctonus rufipennis*) occurred on and near the Kenai Peninsula (including the Chugach NF) in southern Alaska (Berg *et al.*, 2006). Although periodic outbreaks have occurred throughout the historical record, these most recent ones may be unprecedented in extent and percentage mortality (over 90% in many places; Ross *et al.*, 2001; Berg *et al.*, 2006). Both these phenomena are associated with warmer temperatures in recent decades (Duffy *et al.*, 2005; Berg *et al.*, 2006; Werner *et al.*, 2006). Although fire-season length in interior Alaska is associated with the timing of onset of late-summer rains, the principal driver of annual area burned is early summer temperature (Duffy *et al.*, 2005). In the interior of Alaska, white spruce (*Picea glauca*) and black spruce (*P. mariana*) are more flammable than their sympatric deciduous species (chiefly paper birch, *Betula papyrifera*). Similarly, conifers are the target of bark beetles, so in southern Alaska they will be disadvantaged compared with deciduous species. Fig. 3.11 shows the stress complex for Alaska forest ecosystems, suggesting a significant transition to deciduous life forms via more frequent and extensive disturbance associated with climate variability and change. This transition would be unlikely without changes in disturbance regimes, even under climate change, because both empirical and modeling studies suggest that warmer temperatures alone will not favor a life-form transition (Johnstone *et al.*, 2004; Bachelet *et al.*, 2005; Boucher and Mead, 2006).

**Figure 3.11.** Stress complex in the interior and coastal forests of Alaska. From McKenzie, Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).

### **3.3.3 Management Approaches and Methods Currently in Use to Manage Stressors**

Management approaches addressing the current stressors are based on guidance from USFS manuals and handbooks, developed through planning processes that may occur after the disturbance (such as ice storms or wind events), and developed through regional scientific assessment and national planning efforts. For example, approaches for invasive species management are outlined in the National Strategy and Implementation Plan for Invasive Species Management; approaches for altered fire regimes are outlined in the National Fire Plan. Unmanaged recreation, particularly the use off-highway-vehicles, is being addressed through the new travel management plan. Management of native insects and pathogens that become problematic is the responsibility of the Forest Health Protection Program, working in cooperation with NFs. When extreme climate- or weather-related events occur, such as large wind blowdown events (see Box 3.3), management plans are developed in response to the stressor (such as after the blowdown event on the Superior National Forest).<sup>17</sup> Current USFS management strategies emphasize mitigation of environmental impacts from activities such as timber harvest and grazing through environmental analyses and the selection of the best management practices. Silvicultural practices are used to manipulate and modify forest stands for wildlife habitat,

<sup>17</sup> **USDA Forest Service**, 5-12-2006: Superior National Forests: lowdown on the blowdown. USDA Forest Service, [http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/forests/superior/storm\\_recovery/](http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/forests/superior/storm_recovery/), accessed on 5-7-2007.



1 recreation, watershed management, and for fuels reductions, as well as for commercial tree  
2 harvests. Management approaches across the NFS are influenced by the local climate, physical  
3 environment (soils), plant species, ecosystem dynamics, and the landscape context (*e.g.*, WUI,  
4 proximity to large metropolitan areas for recreational use).

5  
6 Adaptive management can be defined as a systematic and iterative approach for improving  
7 resource management by emphasizing learning from management outcomes (Bormann, Haynes,  
8 and Martin, 2007). An adaptive management approach was implemented through the Northwest  
9 Forest Plan to federal lands in the Pacific Northwest (Bormann, Haynes, and Martin, 2007). The  
10 Plan directed managers to experiment, monitor, and interpret as activities were applied both  
11 inside and outside adaptive management areas—and to do this as a basis for changing the Plan in  
12 the future. In that application, managers identified adaptive management areas; developed  
13 organizational strategies to apply the adaptive management process across the entire plan area  
14 (10 million acres); established a major regional monitoring program; and undertook a formal  
15 interpretive step that gathered what was learned and translated new understanding for the use of  
16 decision makers (Haynes *et al.*, 2006). The Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment (see Case  
17 Study Summary 3.1) contained a Sierra-wide adaptive management and monitoring strategy.  
18 This strategy is being implemented as a pilot project on two NFs in California. This seven-year  
19 pilot project, undertaken via a Memorandum of Understanding between the USFS, the U.S. Fish  
20 and Wildlife Service, and the University of California, applies scientifically rigorous design,  
21 treatment, and analysis approaches to fire and forest health, watershed health, and wildlife.  
22 Several watersheds of Tahoe NF are involved in each of the three issue areas of the adaptive  
23 management project.

24  
25 Lessening the damages caused by native insects and pathogens is the goal of the USFS Forest  
26 Health Protection (FHP) program. This program includes efforts to control the native species of  
27 southern pine beetle and western bark beetles. FHP funds southern pine beetle suppression,  
28 prevention, and restoration projects on state lands, private lands, and NFs in the South. FHP's  
29 forest health monitoring program determines the status, changes, and trends in indicators of  
30 forest condition annually. The program uses data from ground plots and surveys, aerial surveys,  
31 and other biotic and abiotic data sources, and develops analytical approaches to address forest  
32 health issues.

33  
34 Reducing, minimizing, or eliminating the potential for introduction, establishment, spread and  
35 impact of invasive species across all landscapes and ownerships is the goal of the USFS National  
36 Strategy and Implementation Plan for Invasive Species Management (USDA Forest Service,  
37 2004). The Plan encompasses four program elements: (1) prevention, (2) early detection and  
38 rapid response (EDRR), (3) control and management, and (4) rehabilitation and restoration.  
39 Activities in the Prevention element include regularly sanitizing maintenance equipment;  
40 requiring weed-free certified seed for restoration, and use of certified weed-free hay; training to  
41 identify invasive species; cooperating with other institutions and organizations to prevent the  
42 introduction of new forest pests from other countries; and providing technical assistance and  
43 funding for public education and prevention measures for invasive species on all lands,  
44 regardless of ownership. Activities in the EDRR program include the annual cooperative survey  
45 of federal, tribal, and private forestland for damage caused by forest insects and pathogens, and  
46 the establishment of the EDRR system for invasive insects in 10 ports and surrounding urban

1 forests. Control and Management activities include treating invasive plants each year on federal,  
 2 state, and private forested lands, and collaborating with biological control specialists to produce  
 3 a guide to biological control of invasive plants in the eastern United States. Rehabilitation and  
 4 Restoration activities highlight the importance of partnerships in such work as developing  
 5 resistant planting stock for five-needle pine restoration efforts following white pine blister rust  
 6 mortality, and coordinating at the national and regional levels to address the need for and supply  
 7 of native plant materials (for example, seeds and seedlings) for restoration.

8  
 9 Reducing hazardous fuels and enhancing the restoration and post-fire recovery of fire-adapted  
 10 ecosystems are two goals in the National Fire Plan. The two other goals focus on improving fire  
 11 prevention and suppression, and promoting community assistance. The updated implementation  
 12 plan (Western Governors' Association, 2006) emphasizes a landscape-level vision for restoration  
 13 of fire-adapted ecosystems, the importance of fire as a management tool, and the need to  
 14 continue to improve collaboration among governments and stakeholders at the local, state,  
 15 regional, and national levels. Land managers reduce hazardous fuels through the use of  
 16 prescribed fire, mechanical thinning, herbicides, grazing, or combinations of these and other  
 17 methods. Treatments are increasingly being focused on the expanding WUI areas. Where fire is a  
 18 major component of the ecosystem, wildland fire use—the management of naturally ignited  
 19 fires—is used to achieve resource benefits. The appropriate removal and use of woody biomass,  
 20 as described in the USFS Woody Biomass Strategy, has the potential to contribute to a number  
 21 of the USFS's strategic goals while providing a market-based means to reduce costs.

22  
 23 In response to the expanded use of off-highway vehicles, the Forest Service's new travel  
 24 management rule provides the framework for each national forest and grassland to designate a  
 25 sustainable system of roads, trails, and areas open to motor vehicle use.<sup>18</sup> The rule aims to secure  
 26 a wide range of recreational opportunities while ensuring the best possible care of the land.  
 27 Designation includes class of vehicle and, if appropriate, time of year for motor vehicle use.  
 28 Designation decisions are made locally, with public input and in coordination with state, local,  
 29 and tribal governments.

30  
 31 The Federal Land Manager (broadly, the federal agency charged with protecting wilderness air  
 32 quality; *e.g.*, the USFS or the National Park Service) has a responsibility to protect the Air  
 33 Quality Related Values (AQRV) of Class I wilderness areas identified in and mandated by the  
 34 Clean Air Act. Air resources managers develop monitoring plans for AQRV, such as pH and  
 35 acid neutralizing capacity in high-elevation lakes. The Federal Land Manager must advise the air  
 36 quality permitting agency if a new source of pollution, such as from an energy or industrial  
 37 development, will cause an adverse impact to any AQRV.

### 38 **3.3.4 Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change**

39 All USFS national goals (Box 3.1) are sensitive to climate change. In general, the direction and  
 40 magnitude of the effect of climate change on each management goal depends on the temporal  
 41 and spatial nature of the climate change features, their impact on the ecosystem, and the current  
 42 status and degree of human alteration of the ecosystem (*i.e.*, whether the ecosystem has lost key

---

<sup>18</sup> 36 CFR Parts 212, 251, 261, and 295 Travel Management; Designated Routes and Areas for Motor Vehicle Use; Final Rule, November 9, 2005.

1 components such as late-seral forests; free-flowing streams; or keystone species such as beaver,  
 2 large predators, and native pollinators). The sensitivity of the management goals to climate  
 3 change also will depend on how climate change interacts with the major stressors in each  
 4 ecoregion and national forest. And finally, the sensitivity of the management goals to climate  
 5 change will depend on the assumptions about climate that the management activities currently  
 6 make. These assumptions range from the relationship between natural regeneration and climate  
 7 to seasonal distributions of rainfall and stream flow and management tied to these distributions.

#### 8 **3.3.4.1 Goal 1: Restore, Sustain, and Enhance the Nation's Forests and Grasslands**

9 The identified outcome for this goal is forests and grasslands with the capacity to maintain their  
 10 health, productivity, diversity, and resistance to unnaturally severe disturbances (USDA Forest  
 11 Service, 2007b). Ecosystem productivity and diversity are strongly influenced by climate.  
 12 Changes in climatic variables, as well as the effects of interactions of climate change with other  
 13 stressors (Noss, 2001; Thomas *et al.*, 2004; Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005; Malcolm  
 14 *et al.*, 2006), may affect all attributes and components of biodiversity (*sensu* Noss, 1990).  
 15 Numerous effects of climate change on biodiversity components (*e.g.*, ecosystems, populations,  
 16 and genes) and attributes (*i.e.*, structure, composition, and function of these components) have  
 17 already been documented (reviewed in Parmesan, 2006). Natural disturbances such as fire  
 18 regimes are tightly linked to key climate variables (*i.e.*, temperature, precipitation, and wind)  
 19 (Agee, 1996; Pyne, Andrews, and Laven, 1996; McKenzie *et al.*, 2004). As a result, changes in  
 20 weather and climate are quickly reflected in altered fire frequency and severity (Flannigan,  
 21 Stocks, and Wotton, 2000; Dale *et al.*, 2001). Invasive species are currently contributing to a  
 22 homogenization of the earth's biota (McKinney and Lockwood, 1999; Mooney and Hobbs, 2000;  
 23 Rahel, 2000; Olden, 2006), increasing extinction risks for native species (Wilcove and Chen,  
 24 1998; Mooney and Cleland, 2001; Novacek and Cleland, 2001; Sax and Gaines, 2003), and  
 25 harming the economy and human health (Pimentel *et al.*, 2000). Species that can shift ranges  
 26 quickly and tolerate a wide range of environments, traits common to many invasive species, will  
 27 benefit under a rapidly changing climate (Dukes and Mooney, 1999). Thus, this goal is sensitive  
 28 to climate change.

29  
 30 Specific objectives related to this goal include reducing the risk to communities and natural  
 31 resources from uncharacteristically severe wildfires; reducing adverse impacts from invasive  
 32 non-native and native species, pests, and diseases; and restoring and maintaining healthy  
 33 watersheds and diverse habitats.

#### 34 **Climate change and wildfire management**

35  
 36 A continual reassessment of climate and land management assumptions may be necessary for  
 37 effective wildfire management under future climate change. Future climate scenarios suggest a  
 38 continued increase in fire danger across the United States (Flannigan, Stocks, and Wotton, 2000;  
 39 Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Brown, Hall, and Westerling, 2004; McKenzie *et al.*, 2004; Running,  
 40 2006) through increasing fire season length, potential size of fires, and areas vulnerable to fire, as  
 41 well as by altering vegetation, which in turn will influence fuel loadings and consequently fire  
 42 behavior. Future climate change may offer opportunities to conduct prescribed fire outside of  
 43 traditional burn seasons, with increased accessibility in some areas in the winter (see Case Study  
 44 Summary 3.1).

1 Since the mid-1980s, western forests have sustained more large wildfires, of longer duration,  
2 within a context of longer fire seasons, with 60% of the increase occurring at mid-elevations of  
3 the Northern Rocky Mountains (Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Land use influences do not appear to  
4 have altered fire regimes in high-elevation forests with long fire return intervals (Schoennagel,  
5 Veblen, and Romme, 2004). However, suppression of fires has led to the conversion of some  
6 lodgepole pine forests to fir and spruce. Some of these stand structures have changed  
7 significantly, which may increase their susceptibility to insect infestations (Keane *et al.*, 2002).  
8 Wildfire risk has increased in some ponderosa pine and mixed conifer forests (Schoennagel,  
9 Veblen, and Romme, 2004; Westerling *et al.*, 2006), where the exclusion of more frequent fires  
10 has led to denser stands and higher fuel loading. Future climate projections for western North  
11 America project June to August temperature increases of 2–5°C by 2040 to 2069, and  
12 precipitation decreases of up to 15% over that time period (Running, 2006). The potential for  
13 increased fire activity in high-elevation forests could be exacerbated by the increased fuel loads  
14 expected to result from enhanced winter survival of mountain pine beetles and similar pest  
15 species (Guarin and Taylor, 2005; Millar, Westfall, and Delany, forthcoming). Fires that occur in  
16 low- and mid-elevation forest types have potential for increasing fire severity (Keane *et al.*,  
17 2002) as future burning conditions become more extreme.

18  
19 Increases in the area burned or biomass burned under future climate scenarios are seen in a  
20 number of studies across the United States. Using historical data, warmer summer temperatures  
21 were shown to be significant in western state-level statistical models of area burned (McKenzie  
22 *et al.*, 2004). Using the IPCC B2 climate scenario and the Parallel Climate Model, wildfire  
23 activity was projected to increase from 1.5–4 times historical levels for all western states (except  
24 California and Nevada) by the 2070–2100 period. The highest increases were projected for Utah  
25 and New Mexico. The analysis of 19 climate models and their scenarios used in the Fourth IPCC  
26 Assessment Report (Seager *et al.*, 2007) show a consistency in the projections for increased  
27 drought in the Southwest, unlike any seen in the instrumental record. In Alaska, warmer and  
28 longer growing seasons and associated vegetation shifts under two future climate scenarios  
29 indicated an increase in the area of forests burned by a factor of two or three (Bachelet *et al.*,  
30 2005).

31  
32 The combination of extended dry periods resulting from fewer, stronger rainfall events with  
33 warmer temperatures could render northeastern forests more susceptible to fire than they have  
34 been for the past 100 years of fire suppression (Scholze *et al.*, 2006). Similarly, drought may  
35 become an increasingly important stressor in eastern forests, which in turn may increase the risk  
36 of fire in areas that have experienced low frequency fire regimes during the past century or more  
37 (Lafon, Hoss, and Grissino-Mayer, 2005).

38  
39 Some climate scenarios project less and others more precipitation for the southern United States  
40 (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). Even under the wetter scenarios, however, the South is projected to  
41 experience an increase in temperature-induced drought and an increase in fires (Lenihan *et al.*,  
42 forthcoming). On average, biomass consumed by fire is expected to increase by a factor of two  
43 or three (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Bachelet *et al.*, forthcoming).

#### 44 **Climate Change and Invasive and Native Species Management**

45 Invasive species are already a problem in many areas of the United States (Stein *et al.*, 1996;  
46 Pimentel *et al.*, 2000; Rahel, 2000; Von Holle and Simberloff, 2005). Climate change is expected  
47

1 to compound this problem, due to its direct influence on native species' distributions and the  
2 effects of its interactions with other stressors (Chornesky *et al.*, 2005). A continual reassessment  
3 of management strategies for invasive species may be necessary under a changing climate.  
4

5 In general, the impacts of invasive species with an expanded range are difficult to predict, in part  
6 because the interactions among changing climate, elevated CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations, and altered  
7 nutrient dynamics are themselves still being elucidated (Simberloff, 2000). In some cases,  
8 however, the likely impacts are better understood. For example, future warming may accelerate  
9 the northern expansion of European earthworms, which have already substantially altered the  
10 structure, composition, and competitive relationships in North American temperate and boreal  
11 forests (Frelich *et al.*, 2006). In arid and semi-arid regions of the United States, increases in  
12 annual precipitation are expected to favor non-native invasive species at the expense of native  
13 vegetation on California serpentine soils (Hobbs and Mooney, 1991) and in Colorado steppe  
14 communities (Milchunas and Lauenroth, 1995). Understanding the potential to prevent and  
15 control invasives will require research on invasive species' population and community dynamics  
16 interacting with a changing ecosystem dynamic.  
17

18 Increasing concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere may also create a competitive advantage to  
19 some invasive species (Dukes, 2000; Smith *et al.*, 2000; Ziska, 2003; Weltzin, Belote, and  
20 Sanders, 2003). These positive responses may require a re-evaluation of current management  
21 practices. Positive responses to elevated CO<sub>2</sub> have been reported for red brome, an introduced  
22 non-native annual grass in the Southwest (Smith *et al.*, 2000). Increasing presence of this exotic  
23 grass, along with its potential to produce fire fuel, suggest future vegetation shifts and increased  
24 fire frequency (Smith *et al.*, 2000) where vegetation has not evolved under frequent fire. The  
25 positive response to current (from pre-industrial) levels of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> by six invasive  
26 weeds—Canada thistle (*Cirsium arvense* (L.) Scop.), field bindweed (*Convolvulus arvensis* L.),  
27 leafy spurge (*Euphorbia esula* L.), perennial sowthistle (*Sonchus* L.), spotted knapweed  
28 (*Centaurea stoebe* L.), and yellow star-thistle (*Centaurea solstitialis* L.)—suggests that 20<sup>th</sup>  
29 century increases in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> may have been a factor in the expansion of these invasives  
30 (Ziska, 2003). Because increasing CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations allow invasive species to allocate  
31 additional carbon to root biomass, efforts to control invasive species with some currently used  
32 herbicides may be less effective under climate change (Ziska, Faulkner, and Lydon, 2004).  
33

34 Further, the combination of elevated CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations and warmer temperatures is expected to  
35 exacerbate the current invasive species problem in the currently cooler parts of the United States  
36 (Sasek and Strain, 1990; Simberloff, 2000; Weltzin, Belote, and Sanders, 2003). The northward  
37 expansion of the range of invasive species currently restricted by minimum temperatures (*e.g.*,  
38 kudzu and Japanese honeysuckle) is a particular concern (Sasek and Strain, 1990; Simberloff,  
39 2000; Weltzin, Belote, and Sanders, 2003). Invasive species with a C4 photosynthetic pathway  
40 (*e.g.*, itchgrass, *Rottboellia cochinchinensis*) are particularly likely to invade more northerly  
41 regions as frost hardiness zones shift northward (Dukes and Mooney, 1999). Although C3  
42 species (*e.g.*, lamb's quarters, *Chenopodium album*) are likely to grow faster under elevated CO<sub>2</sub>  
43 concentrations (Bazzaz, 1990; Drake, Gonzalez-Meler, and Long, 1997; Nowak, Ellsworth, and  
44 Smith, 2004; Ainsworth and Long, 2005; Erickson *et al.*, 2007), C4 species seem to respond  
45 better to warmer temperatures (Alberto *et al.*, 1996; Weltzin, Belote, and Sanders, 2003),

1 probably because the optimum temperature for photosynthesis is higher in C4 species (Dukes  
2 and Mooney, 1999).

3  
4 Climate change will likely facilitate the movement of some native species into the habitats of  
5 others, and thus create novel species assemblages, potentially affecting current goods and  
6 services. Some of the dispersing native species will likely become problematic invaders that  
7 place many threatened and endangered species at greater risk of local extinction due to enhanced  
8 competition, herbivory, predation, and parasitism (Neilson *et al.*, 2005a; 2005b). For example, in  
9 the Pacific Northwest, barred owls (*Strix varia*), which are rapidly migrating generalists from  
10 eastern forests of the United States, have invaded the spotted owl's range in the Pacific  
11 Northwest and are now competing with the northern spotted owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*) for  
12 nest sites (Kelly, Forsman, and Anthony, 2003; Noon and Blakesley, 2006; Gutierrez *et al.*,  
13 2007). An increase of 3°C in minimum temperature could extend the southern pine beetle's  
14 northern distribution limit by 170 km, with insect outbreaks spreading into the mid-Atlantic  
15 states (Williams and Liebhold, 2002). Novel species assemblages may require a re-examination  
16 of management approaches for native species now acting as invasives; for threatened,  
17 endangered and rare species; and a re-evaluation of what ecosystem services can be managed  
18 within each NF.

#### 19 20 **Climate Change and Watershed Management**

21 The hydrological regimes of NFs are closely linked to climate, as well as to the many other  
22 variables that climate change may affect. Changes in precipitation patterns, including declining  
23 snowpack, earlier snowmelt, more precipitation falling as rain vs. snow (Mote *et al.*, 2005),  
24 advances in streamflow timing (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger, 2004; Barnett, Adam, and  
25 Lettenmaier, 2005; Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia, 2005), and the increasing frequency and intensity  
26 of extreme precipitation events (Karl and Knight, 1998; Nearing, 2001; Groisman *et al.*, 2005)  
27 have affected the hydrology, and hence condition of watersheds and ecosystems throughout the  
28 United States (Dettinger *et al.*, 2004; Hayhoe *et al.*, 2004). Increases in flooding may occur as a  
29 result of the increased storm intensity projected by future climate models (IPCC, 2007). Changes  
30 in the distribution, form, and intensity of precipitation will make it more challenging to achieve  
31 the goal of improving watershed conditions.

32  
33 Water shortages in some areas are projected, due to increasing temperatures and changing  
34 precipitation patterns, as well as to shifting demography and increased water demand (Arnell,  
35 1999; Whiles and Garvey, 2004). National forest ecosystems in more arid parts of the country  
36 are expected to be particularly affected by projected climatic changes (Hayhoe *et al.*, 2004;  
37 Seager *et al.*, 2007). However, even in wetter regions (*e.g.*, the southeastern United States), hot  
38 temperatures and high evapotranspiration rates cause only 50% of annual precipitation to be  
39 available for streamflow (Sun *et al.*, 2005). Thus, future scenarios of climate and land-use  
40 change indicate that the water yield for this region will become increasingly variable.<sup>19</sup> In the  
41 Northeast, a temperature increase of 3°C was projected to decrease runoff by 11–13% annually,  
42 and to a greater extent during the summer months when flow is typically lowest (Huntington,  
43 2003). Gains in water use efficiency from elevated CO<sub>2</sub> may be negated or overwhelmed by

---

<sup>19</sup> Sun, G., S.G. McNulty, E. Cohen, J.M. Myers, and D. Wear, 2005: Modeling the impacts of climate change, landuse change, and human population dynamics on water availability and demands in the Southeastern US. Paper number 052219. Proceedings of the 2005 ASAE Annual Meeting, St. Joseph, MI.

1 changes in the hydrological variables described above, leading to increased water stress for  
2 vegetation in NFs (Baron *et al.*, 2000; but see Huntington, 2003).

#### 3 **Climate Change and Biodiversity Management**

4 Climate change affects biodiversity directly by altering the physical conditions to which many  
5 species are adapted. Although species with large geographic ranges have a wide range of  
6 physiological tolerance, species that are rare, threatened, endangered, narrowly distributed, and  
7 endemic, as well as those with limited dispersal ability, will be particularly at risk under climate  
8 change (Pounds *et al.*, 2006) because they may not be able to adapt *in situ* or migrate rapidly  
9 enough to keep pace with changes in temperature (Hansen *et al.*, 2001; Wilmking *et al.*, 2004;  
10 Neilson *et al.*, 2005b). Changes in precipitation patterns may disrupt animal movements and  
11 influence recruitment and mortality rates (Inouye *et al.*, 2000). The projected changes in fish  
12 habitat associated with increases in temperature and changes in hydrology (Preston, 2006) would  
13 cause shifts in the distributions of fish and other aquatic species (Kling *et al.*, 2003). Projected  
14 declines in suitable bird habitat of 62–89% would increase the extinction risk for Hawaiian  
15 honeycreepers (Benning *et al.*, 2002). Similar projected losses of suitable habitat in U.S. forests  
16 would decrease Neotropical migratory bird species richness by 30–57% (Price and Root, 2005).  
17 Interactions among species may also amplify or reverse the direct impacts of climate change on  
18 biodiversity (Suttle, Thompsen, and Power, 2007).

19  
20  
21 Tree species richness is projected to increase in the eastern United States as temperatures warm,  
22 but with dramatic changes in forest composition (Iverson and Prasad, 2001). Projections indicate  
23 that spruce-fir forests in New England could be extirpated and maple-beech-birch forests greatly  
24 reduced in area, whereas oak-hickory and oak-pine forest types would increase in area (Bachelet  
25 *et al.*, 2001; Iverson and Prasad, 2001). Projected changes in temperature and precipitation  
26 suggest that southern ecosystems may shift dramatically. Depiction of the northern shift of the jet  
27 stream and the consequent drying of the Southeast (Fu *et al.*, 2006) varies among future climate  
28 scenarios, with some showing significant drying while others show increased precipitation  
29 (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). However, even under many of the somewhat wetter future scenarios,  
30 closed-canopy forests the Southeast may revert, or in some areas, be converted to savanna,  
31 woodland, or grassland under temperature-induced drought stress and a significant increase in  
32 fire disturbance (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Scholze *et al.*, 2006).

33  
34 Ecosystems at high latitudes and elevations (including many coniferous forests), as well as  
35 savannas, ecosystems with Mediterranean (*e.g.*, California) climates, and other water-limited  
36 ecosystems, are expected to be particularly vulnerable to climate change (Thomas *et al.*, 2004;  
37 Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005; Malcolm *et al.*, 2006). Temperature-induced droughts  
38 in these ecosystems are expected to contribute to forest diebacks (Bugmann, Zierl, and  
39 Schumacher, 2005; Millar, Westfall, and Delany, forthcoming). Alpine ecosystems are also  
40 projected to decrease in area as temperatures increase (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). Specifically, as  
41 treelines move upward in elevation, many species could be locally extirpated as they get  
42 “pushed” off the top of the mountains (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). Also, given the strong species-area  
43 relationship that has been shown for the “island” habitats on the tops of western mountains,  
44 species diversity could be significantly reduced as these habitats become smaller or even  
45 disappear (McDonald and Brown, 1992).

46

1 Simulations of future vegetation distribution in the Interior West show a significant increase in  
2 woody vegetation as a result of enhanced water-use efficiency from elevated CO<sub>2</sub>, moderate  
3 increases in precipitation, and a strengthening of the Arizona Monsoon (Neilson *et al.*, 2005a),  
4 with the greatest expansion of woody vegetation projected in the northern parts of the interior  
5 West (Lenihan *et al.*, forthcoming). The drier interior vegetation shows a large increase in  
6 savanna/woodland types, suggesting possibly juniper and yellow pine species range expansions.  
7 However, this region is also projected to be very susceptible to fire and drought-induced dieback,  
8 mediated by insect outbreaks (Neilson *et al.*, 2005a). Such outbreaks have already altered the  
9 species composition of much of this region (Breshears *et al.*, 2005).

10  
11 A key predicted effect of climate change is the expansion of native species' ranges into  
12 biogeographic areas in which they previously could not survive (Simberloff, 2000; Dale *et al.*,  
13 2001). This prediction is supported by the observed northward shift in the ranges of several  
14 species, both native and introduced, due to the reduction of cold temperature restrictions  
15 (Parmesan, 2006). In general, climate change would facilitate the movement of some species into  
16 the habitats of others, which would create novel species assemblages, especially during post-  
17 disturbance succession. An entire flora of frost-sensitive species from the Southwest may invade  
18 ecosystems from which they have been hitherto restricted, and in the process displace many  
19 extant native species over the course of decades to centuries (Neilson *et al.*, 2005b) as winter  
20 temperatures warm (Kim *et al.*, 2002; Coquard *et al.*, 2004) and hard frosts occur less frequently  
21 in the interior West (Meehl, Tebaldi, and Nychka, 2004; Tebaldi *et al.*, 2006). Similar migrations  
22 of frost-sensitive flora and fauna occurred during the middle-Holocene thermal maximum, which  
23 was comparable to the minimum projected temperature increases for the 21st century (Neilson  
24 and Wullstein, 1983).

25  
26 Similarly increases in warm temperate/subtropical mixed forest are projected in the coastal  
27 mountains of both Oregon and Washington, with an increase in broadleaved species such as  
28 various oak species, tanoak, and madrone under many scenarios (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Lenihan  
29 *et al.*, forthcoming). However, slow migratory rates of southerly (California) species would  
30 likely limit their presence in Oregon through the 21st century (Neilson *et al.*, 2005b).

31  
32 These potential shifts in species may or may not enhance the biodiversity of the areas into which  
33 they migrate. This shift will potentially confound management goals based on the uniqueness of  
34 species for which there are no longer habitats.

#### 35 **3.3.4.2 Goal 2: Provide and Sustain Benefits to the American People**

36 The outcome for this goal is forests and grassland with sufficient long-term multiple  
37 socioeconomic benefits to meet the needs of society. Specific objectives are focused on  
38 providing a reliable supply of forest products and rangeland, with productivity that is consistent  
39 with achieving desired conditions on NFS lands and helps support local communities, meets  
40 energy resource needs, and promotes market-based conservation and stewardship of ecosystem  
41 services.

42  
43 Co-benefits of joint carbon sequestration and biofuel production, along with other potential  
44 synergies, are certainly possible via forest management (Birdsey, Alig, and Adams, 2000;  
45 Richards, Sampson, and Brown, 2006), and would enable contribution to both the country's



1 energy needs and its carbon sequestration and greenhouse gas mitigation goals. Forest  
 2 management practices designed to achieve goals of removing and storing CO<sub>2</sub> are diverse, and  
 3 the forestry sector has the potential for large contributions on the global to regional scales  
 4 (Malhi, Meir, and Brown, 2002; Krankina and Harmon, 2006). Along with preventing  
 5 deforestation, key activities include afforestation, reforestation, forest management, and post-  
 6 harvest wood-product development (Harmon and Marks, 2002; Von Hagen and Burnett, 2006).  
 7 Reducing deforestation (Walker and Kasting, 1992) and promoting afforestation provide  
 8 important terrestrial sequestration opportunities (Nilsson and Schopfhauser, 1995),<sup>20</sup> as do many  
 9 forest plantation and forest ecosystem management practices (*e.g.*, Briceno-Elizondo *et al.*,  
 10 2006). Many suggested approaches duplicate long-recognized best forest management practices,  
 11 where goals are to maintain healthy, vigorous growing stock, and keep sites as fully occupied as  
 12 possible while still maintaining resistance to uncharacteristically severe fire, insects, and disease  
 13 (Gottschalk, 1995). Projects planned to delay return of CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere (*e.g.*, by  
 14 lengthening rotations; Richards, Sampson, and Brown, 2006), both *in situ* (in the forest or  
 15 plantation) and post-harvest, are most successful.

16  
 17 Climate change is expected to alter forest and rangeland productivity (Joyce and Nungesser,  
 18 2000; Aber *et al.*, 2001; Hanson *et al.*, 2005; Norby, Joyce, and Wullschleger, 2005; Scholze *et*  
 19 *al.*, 2006). This alteration in forest productivity, in turn, will influence biomass available for  
 20 wood products or for energy (Richards, Sampson, and Brown, 2006), whether as a direct energy  
 21 source or for conversion to a biofuel. The interactions of climate change (*e.g.*, warming  
 22 temperatures, droughts) and other stressors—including altered fire regimes, insects, invasive  
 23 species, and severe storms—may affect the productivity of forests and rangelands. This alteration  
 24 in forest productivity in turn would affect the volume of material that could be harvested for  
 25 wood products or for energy, or the rate at which a forest would sequester carbon on site. The  
 26 interactions of climate change with other stressors such as insects (Volney and Fleming, 2000;  
 27 Logan, Regniere, and Powell, 2003), disease (Pounds *et al.*, 2006), and fire (Flannigan, Stocks,  
 28 and Wotton, 2000; Whitlock, Shafer, and Marlon, 2003) will challenge the management of  
 29 ecosystem services and biodiversity conservation in NF ecosystems. Indeed, Flannigan, Stocks,  
 30 and Wotton (2000) noted that “the change in fire regime has the potential to overshadow the  
 31 direct effects of climate change on species distribution and migration.” Thus, this goal is  
 32 sensitive to a changing climate.

### 33 34 **Climate Change and Ecosystem Services**

35 The distinctive structure and composition of individual NFs are key characteristics on which  
 36 forest and rangeland products and ecosystem services depend, and that national forest managers  
 37 seek to sustain using current management approaches. For example, efforts to achieve a  
 38 particular desired forest structure, composition, and function have been based on an  
 39 understanding of ecosystem dynamics as captured in historical references or baselines (*i.e.*,  
 40 observed range of variation), and the now outdated theory that communities and ecosystems are  
 41 at equilibrium with their environment (Millar and Woolfenden, 1999). Under a changing climate

---

<sup>20</sup> See also **Kadyszewski, J.**, S. Brown, N. Martin, and A. Dushku, 2005: Opportunities for terrestrial carbon sequestration in the west. Winrock International. Presented at the Second Annual Climate Change Research Conference, From Climate to Economics and Back: Mitigation and Adaptation Options for California and the Western United States, 15, September 2005. Accessed at [http://www.climatechange.ca.gov/events/2005\\_conference/presentations/2005-09-15/2005-09-15\\_KADYSZEWSKI.PDF](http://www.climatechange.ca.gov/events/2005_conference/presentations/2005-09-15/2005-09-15_KADYSZEWSKI.PDF).

1 (increased temperatures; changes in rainfall intensity; and greater occurrence of extreme events,  
 2 such as drought, flooding, etc.), such an approach may no longer be sensible. Ecosystem  
 3 composition, structure, and function will change as species respond to these changes in climate.  
 4 Thus, as climate change interacts with other stressors to alter NF ecosystems, it will be important  
 5 to focus as much on maintaining and enhancing ecosystem processes as on achieving a particular  
 6 composition. For these reasons, it will be increasingly important for the USFS to consider  
 7 evaluating current management practices, their underlying climatic and ecological assumptions,  
 8 and to consider managing ecosystems for change (discussed further in Sections 3.4–3.5).

9  
 10 Although forests are projected to be more productive under elevated CO<sub>2</sub> (Joyce and Birdsey,  
 11 2000; Hanson *et al.*, 2005; Norby, Joyce, and Wullschlegel, 2005), productivity increases are  
 12 expected to peak by 2030. Declines thereafter are likely to be associated with temperature  
 13 increases, changes in precipitation, ozone effects, and other climate change stressors (Scholze *et*  
 14 *al.*, 2006; Sitch *et al.*, 2007). Productivity increases may be offset especially where water and/or  
 15 nutrients are limiting and increases in summer temperature further increase water stress (Angert  
 16 *et al.*, 2005; Boisvenue and Running, 2006), and where ozone exposure reduces the capacity of  
 17 forests to increase their productivity in response to elevated CO<sub>2</sub> (Karnosky, Zak, and Pregitzer,  
 18 2003; Hanson *et al.*, 2005; Karnosky *et al.*, 2005; King *et al.*, 2005). In cooler regions where  
 19 water will not be a limiting resource, and where other stressors do not offset potential  
 20 productivity increases, opportunities may increase for the production of biofuels and biomass  
 21 energy. The feasibility of taking advantage of these opportunities may hinge on whether  
 22 economic, political, and logistical barriers can be overcome (Richards, Sampson, and Brown,  
 23 2006). If, as projected, climate change enhances woody expansion and productivity for the near  
 24 term in the intermountain West (Bachelet *et al.*, 2003), then forests and woodlands in that region  
 25 could provide a source of fuel while mitigating the use of fossil fuels (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001).

#### 26 **Interactions of Climate Change with Other Stressors**

27 Insect and disease outbreaks may become more frequent as the climate changes, because warmer  
 28 temperatures may accelerate their life cycles (*e.g.*, Logan and Powell, 2001). As hardiness zones  
 29 shift north<sup>21</sup> and frost-free days and other climatic extremes increase (Tebaldi *et al.*, 2006), the  
 30 hard freezes that in the past slowed the spread of insect and disease outbreaks may become less  
 31 effective, especially if the natural enemies (*e.g.*, parasitoids) of insects are less tolerant of the  
 32 climate changes than are their hosts or prey (Hance *et al.*, 2007). In addition, previously confined  
 33 southern insects and pathogens may move northward as temperatures warm (see Box 3.5)  
 34 (Ungerer, Ayres, and Lombardero, 1999; Volney and Fleming, 2000; Logan, Regniere, and  
 35 Powell, 2003; Parmesan, 2006), especially in the absence of predatory controls. While the  
 36 expectation is for increased wildfire activity associated with increased fuel loads (*e.g.*, Fleming,  
 37 Candau, and McAlpine, 2002), in some ecosystems (*e.g.*, subalpine forests in Colorado), insect  
 38 outbreaks may decrease susceptibility to severe fires (*e.g.*, Kulakowski, Veblen, and Bebi, 2003).

39  
 40  
 41 Species, whether or not they are indigenous to the United States, may act invasively and increase  
 42 the stress on ecosystems and on other native species. The rapid advance of the mountain pine  
 43 beetle beyond its historic range (Logan and Powell, 2005) is a case in which a native species,

---

<sup>21</sup> **National Arbor Day Foundation**, 2006: Differences between 1990 USDA hardiness zones and 2006  
 arborday.org hardiness zones reflect warmer climate. Available at  
<http://www.arborday.org/treeinfo/zonelookup.cfm>.

1 indigenous to the American West, has begun to spread across large areas like an invasive species  
 2 (as reflected by faster dispersal rates and greater range extension) because longer and warmer  
 3 growing seasons allow it to more rapidly complete its lifecycle, and because warmer winters  
 4 allow winter survival (Logan and Powell, 2001; Carroll *et al.*, 2004; Millar, Westfall, and  
 5 Delany, forthcoming).  
 6

### 7 **3.3.4.3 Goal 3: Conserve Open Space**

8 The outcome for this goal is the maintenance of the environmental, social, and economic benefits  
 9 of the Nation’s forests and grasslands, protecting those forest and grasslands from conversion to  
 10 other uses, and helping private landowners and communities maintain and manage their land as  
 11 sustainable forests and grasslands. As described under Goals 1 and 2 above, the environmental  
 12 benefits of forests and grasslands are influenced strongly by climate and changes in climate.  
 13 Additionally, fragmentation and urbanization facilitate the spread of invasive species, and are  
 14 key drivers contributing to biotic homogenization in the United States in general (Olden, 2006)  
 15 Under a changing climate, landscape fragmentation may exacerbate or cause unexpected changes  
 16 in species and ecosystems (Iverson and Prasad, 2001; Price and Root, 2005). Thus this goal will  
 17 be sensitive to a changing climate.  
 18

#### 19 **Climate Change and Open Space**

20 The loss of open space and land-use changes that are already problematic may be worsened  
 21 under climate change, due to shifts in species’ behaviors and changed habitat requirements. The  
 22 loss of open space is of particular concern because it may impede species’ migration and  
 23 exacerbate edge effects (*e.g.*, windthrow, drought, and non-native invasive species) during  
 24 extreme climatic events, and possibly result in increased population extirpation (Ewers and  
 25 Didham, 2006). Fragmentation may result in the loss of larger management unit sizes, broad  
 26 habitat corridors, and continuity of habitat. In this regard, enhancing coordination among the  
 27 multiple agencies that manage adjacent lands to ensure habitat continuity will be essential  
 28 (Malcolm *et al.*, 2006). Land-use change and invasive species are expected to exacerbate the  
 29 effects of climate change, and hence make the goal of maintaining environmental benefits on  
 30 forests and grasslands more challenging to achieve.

### 31 **3.3.4.4 Goal 4: Sustain and Enhance Outdoor Recreation Opportunities**

32 The outcome identified for this goal is high-quality outdoor recreational opportunities on the  
 33 Nation’s forests and grassland available to the public. Specific objectives include improving the  
 34 quality and availability of outdoor recreation experiences, securing legal entry to NF lands and  
 35 water, and improving the management of off-highway vehicle use. National forests across the  
 36 United States are managed for a variety of outdoor recreational opportunities, capitalizing on the  
 37 natural resources and ecosystem services available within each NF (Cordell *et al.*, 1999). The  
 38 demands on NFs for recreation have diversified with population growth (local, regional, and  
 39 national), preferences for different types of recreation, and technological influences on recreation  
 40 (off-road motorized vehicles, mountain biking, snowboarding). Along with camping, hunting,  
 41 and fishing, recreational activities now include skiing (downhill, cross-country), snowboarding,  
 42 mountain biking, hiking, kayaking, rafting, and bird watching.  
 43

#### 44 **Climate Change and Recreation Management**

1 Because individual recreational opportunities are often a function of climate (cold-water fisheries  
2 or winter snow), climate change may affect both the opportunity to recreate and the quality of  
3 recreation (Irland *et al.*, 2001), curtailing some recreational opportunities and expanding others.

4  
5 Winter outdoor recreation—such as alpine and Nordic skiing, snowmobiling, skating, ice fishing,  
6 and other opportunities—may decrease and/or shift in location due to fewer cold days and  
7 reduced snowpack (National Assessment Synthesis Team, US Global Change Research Program,  
8 2001). The costs of providing these opportunities (*e.g.*, increased snowmaking) are likely to rise  
9 (Irland *et al.*, 2001) or may result in potential conflicts with other uses (*e.g.*, water) (Aspen  
10 Global Change Institute, 2006). Other winter recreational activities (*e.g.*, ice skating, ice fishing,  
11 and ice climbing) may also become more restricted (both geographically and seasonally) as  
12 winter temperatures warm (National Assessment Synthesis Team, US Global Change Research  
13 Program, 2001), with limited opportunities for management to sustain these opportunities.

14  
15 Altered streamflow patterns and warmer stream temperatures, observed trends that are projected  
16 to continue with future climate change (Regier and Meisner, 1990; Eaton and Scheller, 1996;  
17 Rahel, Keleher, and Anderson, 1996; Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger, 2004; Barnett, Adam, and  
18 Lettenmaier, 2005; Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia, 2005), may change fishing opportunities from  
19 salmonids and other cold-water species to species that are less sensitive to warm temperatures  
20 (Keleher and Rahel, 1996; Melack *et al.*, 1997; Ebersole, Liss, and Frissell, 2001; Mohseni,  
21 Stefan, and Eaton, 2003) and altered streamflow (Marchetti and Moyle, 2001). One estimate  
22 indicates that cold-water fish habitat may decrease by 30% nationally and by 50% in the Rocky  
23 Mountains by 2100 (Preston, 2006). More precise estimates of the climate change impacts on  
24 fish populations will depend on the ability of modelers to consider other factors (*e.g.*, land use  
25 change, fire, invasive species, and disease) in addition to temperature and streamflow regimes  
26 (Clark *et al.*, 2001). The projected reductions in volume of free-flowing streams during summer  
27 months, due to advances in the timing of flow in these streams (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger,  
28 2004; Barnett, Adam, and Lettenmaier, 2005; Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia, 2005), may also  
29 restrict canoeing, rafting, and kayaking opportunities (Irland *et al.*, 2001).

30  
31 Climate change may also increase recreational opportunities, depending on the preferences of  
32 users, the specific climatic changes that occur, and the differential responses of individual  
33 species to those changes. Fewer cold days, for example, may encourage more hiking, biking, off-  
34 road vehicle use, photography, swimming, and other warm-weather activities. The different  
35 growth responses of closely related fish species to increases in temperature and streamflow  
36 (Guyette and Rabeni, 1995) may enhance opportunities for species favored by some anglers.

### 37 **Interactions of Climate Change with Other Stressors**

38  
39 An increase in the frequency, extent, and severity of disturbances such as fire and severe storms  
40 also may affect the quality of recreation experienced by visitors to NFs during and after  
41 disturbances. Recreational opportunities may be curtailed if forest managers decide (for public  
42 safety or resource conservation reasons) to reduce access during and in the wake of major  
43 disturbances such as fire, droughts, insect outbreaks, blowdowns, and floods, all of which are  
44 projected to increase in frequency and severity during the coming decades (IPCC, 2007). Unlike  
45 smoke from prescribed fires, which is subject to NAAQS (national ambient air quality

1 standards),<sup>22</sup> wildfire smoke is considered a temporary “natural” source by EPA and the  
2 departments of environmental quality in Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming, and is therefore not  
3 directly regulated. Within the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem, prescribed fire smoke is managed  
4 to minimize smoke encroachment on sensitive areas (communities, Class 1 wilderness areas,  
5 high use recreation areas, scenic vistas) during sensitive periods.<sup>22</sup> After wildfire, the quality of  
6 the recreational experience has been shown to be affected by the need to travel through a  
7 historical fire area (Englin *et al.*, 1996) and by the past severity of fire (Vaux, Gardner, and  
8 Thomas, 1984). Groups experiencing different types of recreation (hiking versus mountain  
9 biking) react differently to wildfire, and reactions vary across geographic areas (Hesseln *et al.*,  
10 2003). Changes in vegetation and other ecosystem components (*e.g.*, freshwater availability and  
11 quality) caused by droughts, insect and disease outbreaks (Rouault *et al.*, 2006), fires, and storms  
12 may alter the aesthetics, sense of place, and other cultural services that the public values.

13  
14 The projected increases of pests and vector-borne diseases may also affect the quality of  
15 recreational experiences in NFs. Hard freezes in winter have been shown to kill more than 99%  
16 of pathogen populations annually (Burdon and Elmqvist, 1996; as cited in Harvell *et al.*, 2002).  
17 The hard freezes necessary to slow the spread of insect and disease outbreaks may become less  
18 effective (Gutierrez *et al.*, 2007). In particular, warmer temperatures are expected to increase the  
19 development, survival, rates of disease transmission, and susceptibility of both human and non-  
20 human hosts (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Stenseth *et al.*, 2006). Land-use change leading to conversion  
21 of forests adjacent to NFs may compound the effect of climate change on disease, because  
22 increases in disease vectors have been associated with loss of forests (Sutherst, 2004).  
23 Conversely, where climate change contributes to a decline in the impacts of pathogens—or in  
24 cases where species have demonstrated an ability to adapt to changes in disease prevalence (*e.g.*,  
25 Woodworth *et al.*, 2005)—the goal may become easier to achieve because visitors may have a  
26 positive experience.

#### 27 **3.3.4.5 Goal 5: Maintain Basic Management Capabilities of the Forest Service**

28 The outcome identified for this goal is administrative facilities, information systems, and  
29 landownership management with the capacity to support a wide range of natural resources  
30 challenges. The means and strategies identified for accomplishing this goal include (and are not  
31 limited to) recruiting and training personnel to develop and maintain strong technical and  
32 leadership skills in Forest Service program areas to meet current and future challenges. Resource  
33 management is challenging in today’s environment, and climate change will heighten that  
34 challenge. Maintaining technical skills associated with resource management will require the  
35 most current information on climate change and its potential impacts to ecosystems within the  
36 NFS, as well as its impacts on the ecological and socioeconomic systems surrounding the NFs.  
37 The depth of this technical understanding will influence policy development across all levels of  
38 the agency. Under a changing climate, ecosystem services will likely be altered within the NFs,  
39 resulting in the need to evaluate national policy as well as local land management objectives,  
40 relationships with current partnerships, and the need to develop new partnerships. Line officers

---

<sup>22</sup> Story, M., J. Shea, T. Svalberg, M. Hektner, G. Ingersoll, and D. Potter, 2005: *Greater Yellowstone Area Air Quality Assessment Update*. Greater Yellowstone Clean Air Partnership. Available at [http://www.nps.gov/yell/planyourvisit/upload/GYA\\_AirQuality\\_Nov\\_2005.pdf](http://www.nps.gov/yell/planyourvisit/upload/GYA_AirQuality_Nov_2005.pdf).

1 and resource staff are faced with—and will continue to be faced with—the challenge of making  
2 decisions in an uncertain environment. This goal is sensitive to climate change.

3  
4 **Climate Change and Management Capabilities of the Forest Service**

5 The capacity of the USFS to address climate change may require the staff within NFs to have a  
6 technical understanding of climate change impacts on ecological systems, to be able to share  
7 technical information and experiences (successes as well as failures) about managing under  
8 climate change efficiently and effectively, to be able to apply new knowledge to the development  
9 of management approaches, and to be able to develop and use planning tools with climate  
10 information. Current understanding about the relationships among climate and disturbances,  
11 ecosystem services, and forest and grassland products may no longer be appropriate under a  
12 changing climate. The climate sensitivity of best management practices, genetic diversity  
13 guidelines, restoration treatments, and regeneration guidelines may need to be revisited. Many  
14 forest managers are awaiting information from quantitative models about future climates and  
15 environments to guide climate-related planning, but adequate training and user-friendly  
16 interfaces will be needed before these can be implemented. Limited staff capacities within NFs,  
17 combined with the scope of current on-the-ground management needs, could slow the attainment  
18 of this goal.

19 **3.3.4.6 Goal 6: Engage Urban America with Forest Service Programs**

20 The outcome identified for this goal is broader access by Americans to the long-term  
21 environmental, social, economic, and other types of benefits provided by the USFS. The climate  
22 change impacts associated with ecosystem services from NFs would suggest that this goal will be  
23 sensitive to climate change.

24  
25 **Climate Change and Urban America**

26 Two objectives were identified for this goal: (1) promote conservation education and (2) improve  
27 the management of urban and community forests to provide a wide range of public benefits. The  
28 current goal of the conservation education program in the USFS is to “ensure that educational  
29 programs and materials developed or certified by the Forest Service incorporate the best  
30 scientific knowledge; are interdisciplinary and unbiased; support the Forest Service mission; and  
31 are correlated with appropriate national, State, and agency guidelines” (USDA Forest Service,  
32 2007a). Incorporating the best scientific knowledge will require information on climate change  
33 and the potential impacts of climate change, necessitating a strong tie to and need for ongoing  
34 research on climate change and natural resource management.

35  
36 Means and strategies identified for this goal include continuing urban forest inventory and  
37 analysis, to monitor the health and benefits of ecological and social services of urban forests and  
38 more effectively manage these complex landscapes; developing and disseminating strategies and  
39 options such as “green infrastructure,” to effectively manage resources to maintain  
40 environmental quality and services in urban and urbanizing landscapes; helping communities  
41 increase professional urban forestry staffing, ordinances, management plans, and local advisory  
42 and advocacy groups for managing forest resources in cities, suburbs, and towns; developing and  
43 disseminating tools to ensure that urban trees and forests are strategically planned and managed  
44 to maximize ecosystem services and benefits; engaging partners and educators in conservation  
45 education and interpretive programs; developing methods to measure environmental literacy and

1 techniques to engage urban residents in the management of urban forests; improving access by  
 2 urban Americans to USFS resources and information; and developing partnerships with  
 3 nontraditional partners to engage urban and underserved audiences.

4  
 5 The rapid and continuing growth of the WUI in both the eastern and western states is  
 6 dramatically altering the strategic and tactical approaches to fire and forest management. Urban  
 7 and urbanizing communities may need information on the changing dynamics of the surrounding  
 8 wildland and urbanizing environment, as well as the need to manage the surrounding landscapes  
 9 to reduce the risks from uncharacteristically severe wildfires, which are often related to drought  
 10 and pest infestations. Urban and urbanizing communities' sense of place may have an important  
 11 role in developing adaptation strategies for those environments.

12 **3.3.4.7 Goal 7: Provide Science-based Applications and Tools for Sustainable Natural**  
 13 **Resources Management**

14 The outcome identified for this goal is that management decisions are informed by the best  
 15 available science-based knowledge and tools. Means and strategies include developing and  
 16 making available cost-effective methods for transferring scientific information, technologies,  
 17 methods, and applications; providing information and science-based tools that are used by  
 18 managers and policymakers; developing and implementing effective processes for engaging  
 19 users in all phases of R&D study development; developing and deploying analysis and decision-  
 20 support systems; developing tools for evaluating the efficiency and effectiveness of alternative  
 21 management practices; and ensuring that current resource information is available to address the  
 22 strategic, tactical, and operational business requirements of the USFS.

23  
 24 Under a changing climate, the need will arise for quantitative tools to address complex issues  
 25 facing each forest and region, such as linkages between ecosystems; water resources;  
 26 disturbances, including drought, fire, infestation and disease; regional migration patterns,  
 27 including invasions of both native and exotic species; and local to regional carbon storage and  
 28 carbon management, such as for biofuels. This goal will be sensitive to the impacts of a changing  
 29 climate on ecosystems and the needs of resource managers.

30  
 31 **Climate Change and Science-based Applications and Tools**

32 As with any natural resource management issue, resource managers need access to current  
 33 scientific information, qualitative/quantitative tools to use in decision support analyses at forest  
 34 and project planning levels, and management strategies to guide on-the-ground management.  
 35 Scientific information is scattered across websites, scientific journals, regional assessments,  
 36 government documents, and international reports, challenging attempts by resource managers to  
 37 compile the best available information. At present, most established planning and operational  
 38 tools within NFs, such as the Forest Vegetation Simulator, assume that climate will continue to  
 39 reflect the historical climate. No climate information or dynamics are included in many of the  
 40 currently available planning tools. Recognition that climate is an important element in natural  
 41 resource management is beginning to occur in some of the natural resource management  
 42 communities such as water resource planning. However, few analytical tools are available to  
 43 incorporate uncertainty analyses into resource planning.

## 1 3.4 Adapting to Climate Change

### 2 3.4.1 The Need for Anticipatory Adaptation

3 Climate is constantly changing at a variety of time scales, prompting natural and managed  
4 ecosystems to adjust to these changes. As a natural process, without human intervention,  
5 adaptation typically refers to the autonomous and reactive changes that species and ecosystems  
6 make in response to environmental change such as a climate forcing (Kareiva, Kingsolver, and  
7 Huey, 1993; Smit *et al.*, 2000; Davis and Shaw, 2001; Schneider and Root, 2002). Organisms  
8 respond to environmental change (including climate change) in one of three ways: adaptation,  
9 migration, or extinction. Adaptation typically refers to genetic changes, but also includes *in situ*  
10 acclimation (physiological adaptation to the changing environment while remaining in place) as  
11 well as phenological (*e.g.*, breeding, flowering, migration) and behavioral changes. This natural  
12 adaptation in the ecosystem is important to understand, so that the influence of management on  
13 these natural processes can be assessed. Space for evolutionary development under climate  
14 change may be important to incorporate into conservation and restoration programs under a  
15 changing climate (Rice and Emery, 2003).

16  
17 We focus on adaptation as interventions and adjustments made by humans in ecological, social,  
18 or economic systems in response to climate stimuli and their effects, such as fire, wind damage,  
19 and so on. More specifically, in the social-science literature, the term adaptation refers to “a  
20 process, action, or outcome in a system (household, community, sector, region, country) in order  
21 for the system to better cope with, manage or adjust to some changing condition, stress, hazard,  
22 risk or opportunity” (Smit and Wandel, 2006).

23  
24 Human adaptation to climate change impacts is increasingly viewed as a necessary  
25 complementary strategy to mitigation—reducing greenhouse gas emissions from energy use and  
26 land use changes in order to minimize the pace and extent of climate change (Klein *et al.*, 2007).  
27 Because adaptive strategies undertaken will have associated effects on carbon dynamics, it is  
28 important to consider carbon impacts of any proposed adaptive strategy. Forest management  
29 practices designed to achieve mitigation goals of reducing greenhouse gases (CO<sub>2</sub> in particular)  
30 are diverse, and have large potential mitigation contributions on the global to regional scales  
31 (Malhi, Meir, and Brown, 2002; Krankina and Harmon, 2006). Options for minimizing return of  
32 carbon to the atmosphere include storing carbon in wood products (Wilson, 2006), or using  
33 biomass as bioenergy, both electrical and alcohol-based. While many positive opportunities for  
34 carbon sequestration using forests appear to exist, evaluating specific choices is hampered by  
35 considerable difficulty in quantifying net carbon balance from forest projects (Cathcart and  
36 Delaney, 2006), in particular unintentional emissions such as wildfire and extensive forest  
37 mortality from insects and disease (Westerling *et al.*, 2003; Westerling and Bryant, 2005;  
38 Westerling *et al.*, 2006; Lenihan *et al.*, 2006). Adaptation and mitigation can have positive and  
39 negative influences on each other’s effectiveness (Klein *et al.*, 2007). Management practices that  
40 lower vulnerabilities to uncharacteristically severe wildfire and non-fire mortality could meet  
41 multiple goals of mitigation and adaptation if such practices also reflected goals for other  
42 ecosystem services. Both strategies—adaptation and mitigation—are needed to minimize the  
43 potential negative impacts, and to take advantage of any possible positive impacts from climate  
44 variability and change (Burton, 1996; Smit *et al.*, 2001; Moser *et al.*, forthcoming).

45



1 Several concepts related to adaptation are important to fully appreciate the need for successful  
2 anticipatory adaptation to climate-related stresses, as well as the opportunities and barriers to  
3 adaptation. The first of these is *vulnerability*. Vulnerability is typically viewed as the propensity  
4 of a system or community to experience harm from some stressor as a result of (a) being *exposed*  
5 to the stress, (b) its *sensitivity* to it, and (c) its potential or *ability to cope* with and/or *recover*  
6 from the impact (see review of the literature by Adger, 2006). Key vulnerabilities can be  
7 assessed by exploring the magnitude of the potential impacts, the timing (now or later) of  
8 impacts, the persistence and reversibility (or irreversibility) of impacts, the likelihood of impacts  
9 and confidence of those estimates, the potential for adaptation, the distributional aspect of  
10 impacts and vulnerabilities (disadvantaged sectors or communities), and the importance of the  
11 system at risk (Schneider *et al.*, 2007). Of particular importance here is a system's *adaptive*  
12 *capacity*: the ability of a system or region to adapt to the effects of climate variability and  
13 change. How feasible and/or effective this adaptation will be depends on a range of  
14 characteristics of the ecological system, such as topography and micro-refugia, soil  
15 characteristics, biodiversity; pre-existing stresses, such as the presence of invasive species or loss  
16 of foundation species or fragmentation of the landscape; the status of the local ecosystem, *e.g.*,  
17 early to late successional and its intrinsic "inertia" or responsiveness; and on characteristics of  
18 the social system interacting with, or dependent on, the ecosystem (Blaikie *et al.*, 1994;  
19 Wilbanks and Kates, 1999; Kasperson and Kasperson, 2001; Walker *et al.*, 2002; Adger, 2003).

20  
21 As Smit and Wandel (2006) state in their recent review, "Local adaptive capacity is reflective of  
22 broader conditions (Yohe and Tol, 2002; Smit and Pilifosova, 2003). At the local level, the  
23 ability to undertake adaptations can be influenced by such factors as managerial ability; access to  
24 financial, technological, and information resources; infrastructure; the institutional environment  
25 within which adaptations occur; political influence, etc. (Blaikie, Brookfield, and Allen, 1987;  
26 Watts and Bohle, 1993; Adger, 1999; Handmer, Dovers, and Downing, 1999; Toth, 1999; Adger  
27 and Kelly, 2001; Smit *et al.*, 2001; Wisner *et al.*, 2004)." Adaptive capacity is determined mainly  
28 by local factors (*e.g.*, local forest managers' training in ecological processes, available staffing  
29 with appropriate skills, available financial resources, local stakeholder support) while other  
30 factors reflect more general socioeconomic and political systems (*e.g.*, federal laws, federal  
31 forest policies and regulations, state air quality standards, development pressures along the  
32 forest/urban interface, commodity market (timber, grazing) conditions, stakeholder support).

33  
34 While the literature varies in the use of these and related concepts such as *resilience* and  
35 *sustainability*, adaptation in the context of NF management would be viewed as successful if  
36 stated management goals (see Section 3.3) were continued to be achieved under a changing  
37 climate regime while maintaining the ecological integrity of the nation's forests at various scales.  
38 For example, Section 3.3 identified the close relationship between ecosystem services and  
39 management goals, and their sensitivity to climate change. While these stated management goals  
40 are periodically updated or modified, this re-examination entails a risk of setting goals lower  
41 (*e.g.*, lower quality, quantity, or production) as environmental and climatic conditions  
42 deteriorate. For the purposes of this report it is assumed that the larger tenets of the cumulative  
43 laws directing NF management remain intact: "the greatest good of the greatest number in the  
44 long run...without impairment of the productivity of the land...[and] secure for the American  
45 people of present and future generations."

46

1 Below, we distinguish different adjustments of NF management approaches by reference to  
 2 timing and intention. By “timing” we mean *when* the managing agency thinks about a  
 3 management intervention: after a climate-driven, management-relevant event, or in advance of  
 4 such an event. By “intention” we mean whether the managing agency acknowledges that a  
 5 change is likely, anticipates possible impacts, and begins planning for a response prior to it  
 6 occurring—for example, developing a monitoring or early warning system to detect changes as  
 7 they occur (see Fig. 3.12). We distinguish three different adaptation scenarios: no active  
 8 adaptation; planned management responses to disturbances associated with changing climate  
 9 regimes; and management responses in anticipation of future climate change, and in preparation  
 10 for climate change now.

11  
 12  
 13  
 14  
 15

**Figure 3.12.** Anticipatory and reactive adaptation for natural and human systems (IPCC, 2001b).

### 16 **3.4.1.1 No Active Adaptation**

17 An approach of “no active adaptation” could describe two decision-making pathways. The event-  
 18 or crisis-driven approach reacts to a climate or related environmental stimulus, without foresight  
 19 and planning. No active adaptation could also result from the approach where consideration of  
 20 the potential effects of climate change and management investment result in a conscious decision  
 21 not to manage for climate change. The first approach would be without anticipatory planning,  
 22 whereas the second, appearing as no active adaptation, would involve consideration of  
 23 vulnerabilities and impacts. These reactions could be at any level of policy- or decision-  
 24 making—national, regional, forest planning level, or project level.

25

26 The extent and severity of an extreme weather or climate event vis-à-vis the ecosystem’s ability  
 27 to naturally adjust to or recover from it, as well as the management agency’s ability to quickly  
 28 marshal the necessary response resources (money, staff, equipment, etc.) when the event occurs,  
 29 will determine the ultimate impacts on the ecosystem and the cost to the managing agency.  
 30 Depending on the extent of the impacts on the ecosystem and on the managing agency, future  
 31 attainment of management goals may also be affected. While unforeseen opportunities may  
 32 emerge, the cost of such unplanned reactive management is typically larger than if management  
 33 tools can be put in place in a timely and efficient manner (a common experience with reactive vs.  
 34 proactive resource or hazard management, *e.g.*, Tol, 2002; Multihazard Mitigation Council,  
 35 2006).

36

37 This reactive approach, which does not take into account changing climate conditions, is  
 38 sometimes used when scientific uncertainty is considered too great to plan well for the future.  
 39 There is a strong temptation to not plan ahead, because it avoids the costs and staff time needed  
 40 to prepare for an event that is uncertain to occur. The risk to the agency of initiating expensive  
 41 and politically challenging management strategies is large in the absence of a strong scientific  
 42 consensus on vulnerabilities and climate change effects. However, not planning ahead also can  
 43 mean incurring greater cost, and may bring with it great risk later on—risk that results from  
 44 inefficiencies in the response when it is needed, wasted investments made in ignorance of future  
 45 conditions, or potentially even greater damages because precautionary actions were not taken.

1  
2 The reactive approach would also reflect a management philosophy that does not consider the  
3 likelihood of climate-driven changes and impacts. Most past forest planning documents typically  
4 described a multi-decadal future without climate variability or change. While the development of  
5 the National Fire Plan is an example of planning for increasingly challenging wildfires in a cost-  
6 efficient manner, the influence of climate change on wildfire is not considered. Addressing  
7 climate change in wildland fire management could include setting up pathways for information-  
8 sharing and coordination of climate change adaptation strategies of wildland fire agencies;  
9 considering climate change and variability when developing long-range wildland fire  
10 management plans and strategies; and incorporating the likelihood of more severe fire weather,  
11 lengthened wildfire seasons, and larger-sized fires when planning and allocating budgets.<sup>23</sup> Most  
12 management strategies or practices (*e.g.*, natural regeneration or cold-water fisheries restoration)  
13 assume a relatively constant climate or weather pattern. A careful study of the historical range of  
14 natural variability provides a wealth of information on ecological process—how diverse and  
15 variable past plant community dynamics have been (Harris *et al.*, 2006). However, pre-  
16 settlement patterns of vegetation dynamics (*e.g.*, a point in time such as the mid-1800s, the end  
17 of the so-called Little Ice Age) are associated with a climate that was much cooler, and may not  
18 adequately reflect the current climate or an increasingly warmer future climate and the associated  
19 vegetation dynamics. Many quantitative tools currently used do not include climate or weather in  
20 their dynamics. Growth and yield models, unmodified by growth and density control functions  
21 (Dixon, 2003), project forest growth without climate information. The past climate may not be  
22 an adequate guide to future climate (Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach, 2007), and our  
23 understanding of the ecological assumptions underlying restoration management practices may  
24 also need to be revisited (Harris *et al.*, 2006).

25  
26 An approach of no active adaptation could also result from consideration of the potential for  
27 climate change, and a conscious decision to not prepare for or adapt to it. Examples could  
28 include low-sensitivity ecosystems, short-term projects, or a decision to triage. For low-  
29 sensitivity ecosystems, vulnerability is low or the likely impacts of climate change are very low  
30 probability, or the effects of climate change are not undesired. Existing projects nearing  
31 completion, such as high-value short-rotation timber that is about to be harvested, could be  
32 considered not critical to prepare for climate change, assuming that the harvest will occur before  
33 any major threat of climate change or indirect effects of climate change emerge. The risk is  
34 deemed low enough to continue with current management. And finally, the decision to not  
35 manage for a particular species would reflect a strategy of no active adaptation. Most prioritizing  
36 methods rank all options with varying priorities. In contrast, proper and systematic triage  
37 planning includes the necessary option of *not* treating something that could/should be treated if  
38 more resources (time, money, staff, technology) were available. Issues needing treatment are  
39 relegated untreatable in triage planning when greater gain will ensue by allocating scarce  
40 resources elsewhere; *i.e.*, in emergency situations where resources for treatment are limited, one  
41 cannot treat everything. Thus, conscious decisions are made for no action or no management.

42

---

<sup>23</sup> **National Association of State Foresters**, 2007: NASF Resolution No. 2007-1. Issue of Concern: The role that climate change plays in the severity and size of wildland fires is not explicitly recognized in the “National Fire Plan” and the Implementation Plan for its 120-year Strategy. <http://www.stateforesters.org/resolution/2007-01.pdf>.

1 Major institutional obstacles or alternative policy priorities can also lead to inattention to  
2 changing climatic and environmental conditions that affect land and resource management.  
3 Moreover, sometimes this approach is chosen unintentionally or inadvertently when climatic  
4 conditions change in ways that no one could have anticipated. Or, even if a “no action” plan is  
5 taken for the short run—say in anticipation of an impending harvest—the post-harvest plan may  
6 also inadvertently not take rapidly changing climate conditions into account for the  
7 “regeneration” of the next ecosystem.

#### 8 **3.4.1.2 Planned Management Responses to Changing Climate Regimes, Including Disturbances** 9 **and Extreme Events**

10 This approach to adaptation assumes that adjustments to historical management approaches are  
11 needed eventually, and are best made during or after a major climatic event. In this case, the  
12 managing agency would identify climate-change-cognizant management approaches that are to  
13 be implemented at the time of a disturbance, as it occurs, such as a historically unprecedented  
14 fire, insect infestation, or extreme windfall event, hurricanes, droughts and other extreme  
15 climatic events. A choice is made to not act now to prepare for climate change, but rather to react  
16 once the problem is evident. The rationale, again, could be that the climate change impacts are  
17 too uncertain to enact or even identify appropriate anticipatory management activities, or even  
18 that the best time for action from a scientific as well as organizational efficiency standpoint may  
19 be post-disturbance (*e.g.*, from the standpoint of managing successional processes within  
20 ecosystems and across the landscape).

21  
22 For example, forest managers may see large disturbances (fire, flooding, insects, hurricanes) as  
23 opportunities to react to climate change. Those disturbances could be windows of opportunity for  
24 implementing adaptive practices, such as adjusting the size of management units to capture  
25 whole watersheds or landscapes, developing a prescribed fire plan for the post-fire treated  
26 landscape, addressing road and culvert needs to handle changes in erosion under climate change,  
27 revisiting objectives for even-age versus uneven-age management, reforesting with species  
28 tolerant to low soil moisture and high temperature, using a variety of genotypes in the nursery  
29 stock, and moving plant genotypes and species into the disturbed area from other seed zones. For  
30 example, where ecosystems move toward being more water-limited under climate change,  
31 populations from drier and warmer locations will be more resistant to such changing conditions.  
32 In practice, this typically means using trees from provenances that are farther south or at lower  
33 elevation than what is currently indicated for a particular geographic location (Ying and  
34 Yanchuk, 2006). Because local climate trends and variability will always be uncertain, managers  
35 can hedge their bets by managing for a variety of species and genotypes with a range of  
36 tolerances to low soil moisture and higher temperatures. In general, genetic diversity provides  
37 resilience to a variety of environmental stressors (Moritz, 2002; Reed and Frankham, 2003;  
38 Reusch *et al.*, 2005).

39  
40 Furthermore, disturbed landscapes could be used as experiments in an adaptive management  
41 context that provide data for evaluating and improving approaches to adapt ecosystems to a  
42 warmer climate. An example may be to reforest an area after a fire or windfall event with a type  
43 of tree species that is better adjusted to the new or unfolding regional climate. This may be  
44 difficult to achieve, because the climate that exists during the early years of tree growth will be  
45 different from those that will persist during the later stages of tree growth.

1  
2 Significant cost efficiencies, relative to the unplanned approach, may be achieved in this  
3 approach, as management responses are anticipated—at least generically—well in advance of an  
4 event, yet are implemented only when “windows of opportunity” open. Future constraints to  
5 implementing such changes will need to be anticipated and planned for, and, if possible removed  
6 in advance for timely adaptation to be able to occur when the opportunity arises. For example,  
7 managers could ensure that the genetic nursery stock is available for wider areas, or they could  
8 re-examine regulations restricting practices so that, immediately after a disturbance, management  
9 can act rapidly to re-vegetate and manage the site. Such an approach may be difficult to  
10 implement, however, as crises often engender political and social conditions that favor “returning  
11 to the status quo” that existed prior to the crisis rather than doing something new (*e.g.*, Moser,  
12 2005).

### 13 **3.4.1.3 Management Responses in Anticipation of Future Climate Change and in Preparation for** 14 **Climate Change Now**

15 The management approach that is most forward-looking is one that uses current information  
16 about future climate, future environmental conditions, and the future societal context of NF  
17 management to begin making changes to policy and on-the-ground management now and when  
18 future windows of opportunity open. Opportunities for such policy and management changes  
19 would include any planning or project analysis process in which a description of the changing  
20 ecosystem/disturbance regime as climate changes would be used to identify a proactive  
21 management strategy.  
22

23 Relevant information for forest managers may include projections of regional or even local  
24 climates, including changes in average temperature, precipitation, changes in patterns of climatic  
25 extremes and disturbance patterns (*e.g.*, fire, drought, flooding), shifts in seasonally important  
26 dates (*e.g.*, growing degree-days, length of fire season), expected future distribution of key plant  
27 species, and changes in hydrological patterns. The ability of climate science to provide such  
28 information at higher spatial and temporal resolution has been improving steadily over recent  
29 years, and is likely to improve further in coming years (IPCC, 2007). Current model predictions  
30 have large uncertainties, which must be considered in making management adaptation decisions  
31 (see Sections 3.4.2.1 and 3.4.2.2 for other treatments of uncertainty). Other relevant information  
32 may be species-specific, such as the climatic conditions favored by certain plant or animal  
33 species over others, or the ways in which changed climatic conditions and the resultant habitats  
34 may become more or less favorable to particular species (*e.g.*, for threatened or endangered  
35 species). The overall goals of planned anticipatory management would be to facilitate adaptation  
36 in the face of the changing climate.  
37

38 For example, based on the available information, large-scale thinnings might be implemented to  
39 reduce stand densities in order to minimize drought effects, avoid large wildfire events in areas  
40 where these are not typical, and manage the potential for increased insect and disease outbreaks  
41 under a changing climate. Widely spaced stands in dry forests are generally less stressed by low  
42 soil moisture during summer months (*e.g.*, Oliver and Larson, 1996). Disease and insect  
43 concerns are at least partially mitigated by widely spaced trees, because trees have less  
44 competition and higher vigor. Low canopy bulk densities in thinned stands, with concurrent  
45 treatments to abate surface fuels, can substantially mitigate wildfire risk (Peterson *et al.*, 2005).

1 However, not all forest landscapes and stands are amenable to thinning, nor is it ecologically  
2 appropriate in some upper-elevation forest types. In these situations, shelterwood cutting that  
3 mitigates extreme temperatures at the soil surface can facilitate continued cover by forest tree  
4 species while mitigating risks of uncharacteristically severe fire, insects, and disease (Graham *et*  
5 *al.*, 1999). Again, it will be important to assess the tradeoffs between these silvicultural benefits  
6 and potential for genetic erosion resulting from the shelterwood treatment (Ledig and Kitzmiller,  
7 1992). This approach is economically feasible in locations where wood removed through  
8 thinnings and shelterwood cuttings can be marketed as small-dimensional wood products or  
9 biomass (Kelkar *et al.*, 2006). To identify and provide the most relevant information to support  
10 such an anticipatory approach to adaptation, it is critical that scientists and managers work  
11 together to form a growing mutual understanding of information needs and research capabilities  
12 in the context of ongoing, trusted relationships (Slovic, 1993; Earle and Cvetkovich, 1995; Cash,  
13 2001; Cash *et al.*, 2003; Cash and Borck, 2006; Vogel *et al.*, forthcoming).<sup>24</sup> Further examples of  
14 such information needs are described in the next section and in the case studies (see Case Study  
15 Summaries and Annex A1).

16  
17 Again, significant cost efficiencies and maybe even financial gains may be achieved in this  
18 approach, as management responses are anticipated well in advance and implemented at the  
19 appropriate time. If climatic changes unfold largely consistent with the scientific projections, this  
20 approach to adaptation may turn out to be the most cost-effective and ecologically effective  
21 (referred to as the "perfect foresight" situation by economists; see e.g., Sohngen and  
22 Mendelsohn, 1998; Mastrandrea and Schneider, 2001; Yohe, Andronova, and Schlesinger,  
23 2004). For example, analyses using forest sector economic models that assume "perfect  
24 foresight" have shown that when a diverse set of management options are available to managers  
25 under conditions of extensive mortality events from climate change, the economic impacts on the  
26 wood product sector, even with large-scale mortality events, are less costly than otherwise  
27 (Sohngen and Mendelsohn, 1998; Joyce, 2007).

28  
29 This approach may not be able to maintain ecosystems that currently exist (as those are better  
30 adapted to current climate regimes), but it may be best suited to support natural adaptive  
31 processes—such as planning corridor development to facilitate species migration to more  
32 appropriate climates, or managing for protection of viable habitats for threatened and endangered  
33 species to enhance or extend opportunities for adaptation (see Section 3.4.3.3). Under such a  
34 management approach, the specific management targets—such as outputs of particular rangeland  
35 and forest products, or maintenance of a particular species habitat—may themselves be adjusted  
36 over time, as the opportunities for those ecosystem services diminish under a changing climate  
37 and new opportunities for other services may have a greater chance of being met. The inability to  
38 maintain ecosystems that currently exist may suggest activities such as long-term seed bank  
39 storage with future options for re-establishing populations in new and more appropriate  
40 locations. Assessing the potential for this type of change will draw on ecological, economic, and  
41 social information. Importantly, such an approach would need to involve managers at various  
42 levels to monitor changes in the ecosystem (*i.e.*, observed on the ground); coordinate and make  
43 appropriate changes in policies, regulations, plans, and programs at all relevant scales; and  
44 modify the on-the-ground practices needed to implement these higher-level policies. This degree

---

<sup>24</sup> See also Tribbia, J. and S.C. Moser, in press: More than information: what California coastal managers need to prepare for climate change. *Environmental Science & Policy*.

1 of cross-scale integration is not typically achieved at present, and would need to occur in the  
2 future to effectively support such an approach to adaptation. Additionally, such considerations  
3 would need to involve the public, as well as stakeholders dependent upon the ecosystem services  
4 from NFs. On the local scale, the importance of establishing relationships with existing  
5 community organizations early on in a wildfire incident was identified in order to incorporate  
6 local knowledge into firefighting and rehabilitation efforts (Graham, 2003). This coordination  
7 was also important to establish a recovery base that continues once emergency personnel and  
8 resources have left the community. These partnerships should be developed as early as possible  
9 during the fire, and perhaps might best be developed before any fire in order to systematize  
10 actions, increase efficiency, and decrease potential contentions between locals and federal  
11 agencies by building trust (Graham, 2003). Lessons learned in integrating fire management  
12 across local to state to federal agencies may help in similar considerations of cross-scale  
13 integration of resource managers to address current and future resource management under a  
14 changing climate.

### 15 **3.4.2 Approaches for Planning in the Context of Climate Change**

#### 16 **3.4.2.1 Use of Models and Forecasting Information**

17 Many forest managers are awaiting information from quantitative models about future climates  
18 and environments to guide climate-related planning. Increasingly sophisticated models are being  
19 developed at regional and finer spatial scales. In general, while model information will be  
20 important for planning, the best use of this information at local and regional scales currently is to  
21 help organize thinking, attain insight into the nature of potential processes, and understand  
22 qualitatively the range of magnitudes and likely direction and trends of possible future changes.  
23 Focusing on results that are similar across diverse models may indicate results of greater  
24 likelihood.

25  
26 While science is progressing, uncertainty about climate projections are much greater at the local  
27 and regional scales important to land managers, because uncertainties amplify as data and model  
28 output are downscaled. Some climate parameters, such as changes in average annual  
29 temperature, may be more robust than others, such as changes in annual precipitation, which  
30 have higher uncertainties associated with them. Augmenting this uncertainty in physical  
31 conditions is the difficulty of modeling biological responses. Ecological response to climate-  
32 related changes is highly likely to be more difficult than climate to model accurately at local  
33 scales, because threshold and non-linear responses, lags and reversals, individualistic behaviors,  
34 and stochastic (involving probability) events are common (Webb, III, 1986; Davis, 1989).  
35 Models typically rely on directional shifts following equilibrium dynamics of entire plant  
36 communities (or, physiognomic community types), whereas especially in heterogeneous and  
37 mountainous regions, patchy environments increase the likelihood of complex, individualistic  
38 responses.

39  
40 At the global scale, this uncertainty is dealt with through simultaneous analysis of multiple  
41 scenarios (IPCC, 2007), which yields a wide range of potential future climate conditions.  
42 Similarly, approaches at finer spatial scales could be developed to use scenario analysis  
43 (Peterson, Cumming, and Carpenter, 2003; Bennett *et al.*, 2003) (alternative future climate  
44 scenarios can be used to drive ecosystem and other natural resource models), thus examining the

1 possible range of future conditions. Scenario analysis can help to identify potential management  
 2 options that could be useful to minimize negative impacts and enhance the likelihood of positive  
 3 impacts, within the range of uncertainty.

4  
 5 Uncertainty does not imply a complete lack of understanding of the future or a basis for a no  
 6 action decision. Managing in the face of uncertainty will best involve a suite of approaches,  
 7 including planning analyses that incorporate modeling with uncertainty, and short-term and long-  
 8 term strategies that focus on enhancing ecosystem resistance and resilience, as well as actions  
 9 taken that help ecosystems and resources move in synchrony with the ongoing changes that  
 10 result as climates and environments vary.

### 11 **3.4.2.2 Planning Analyses for Climate Change**

#### 12 **RPA Assessment**

13 The only legislatively required analysis with respect to climate change and USFS planning was  
 14 identified in the 1990 Food Protection Act, which amended the 1974 Resources Planning Act  
 15 (RPA). The 1990 Act required the USFS to assess the impact of climate change on renewable  
 16 resources in forests and rangelands, and to identify the rural and urban forestry opportunities to  
 17 mitigate the buildup of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. Since 1990, the RPA Assessments (e.g., USDA Forest  
 18 Service, 1993; USDA Forest Service, 2000; USDA Forest Service, forthcoming) have included  
 19 an analysis of the vulnerability of U.S. forests to climate change, and the impact of climate  
 20 change on ecosystem productivity, timber supply and demand, and carbon storage (Joyce,  
 21 Fosberg, and Comandor, 1990; Joyce, 1995; Joyce and Birdsey, 2000; Haynes *et al.*, 2007).  
 22 These analyses have identified several important aspects of the analysis of climate change  
 23 impacts on the forest sector. Transient analyses, where annual dynamics are followed throughout  
 24 the projection period, allow interactions between ecosystem responses to climate change and  
 25 market responses to identify adaptation options to the changing climate. The forest sector trade at  
 26 the global scale can influence the forest sector responses (price as well as products) within  
 27 countries. National level analyses aggregate impacts across regions, and it remains important to  
 28 identify the regional response, which may be greater, because that is where management  
 29 decisions will be made (Joyce, 2007). Most critically, all of these analyses have stressed the  
 30 importance of evaluating the ecological and the economic response in an integrated fashion

31  
 32 Adaptation strategies may vary based on the spatial and temporal scales of decision making.  
 33 Planning at regional or national scales may involve acceptance of different levels of uncertainty  
 34 and risk than appropriate at local (*e.g.*, NF or watershed) scales. National analyses associated  
 35 with RPA offer the opportunity to develop potential approaches to link assessments at the  
 36 national, regional, multi-forest, and NF scales. Such an approach could involve key questions,  
 37 methods of assessment, approaches to uncertainty and risk, needed expertise and resources,  
 38 responsibilities and timelines, and identification of spatial and temporal scales for modeling  
 39 linked to decision making. The assessment would consider how vulnerabilities and sensitivities  
 40 within these systems might be identified, given the available information, as well as identifying  
 41 situations of high resilience to climate change or situations where the climate change effects  
 42 might be locally buffered. Significant involvement by scientists, managers, policymakers, and  
 43 stakeholders from local to national levels would be critical. Such a linked assessment could  
 44 guide NFs and their partners in terms of a process to assess the impacts of climate change on



1 natural resources and ecosystem services within their boundaries, across their boundaries, and at  
 2 larger spatial scales such as regional and national.

3  
 4 **Forest Planning and Project Analyses**

5 The following planning steps have been suggested as appropriate in a climate-change context  
 6 when beginning a project (Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003; see examples therein):

- 7  
 8 1. Define the issue (management situation, goals, and environmental and institutional contexts);  
 9 2. Evaluate vulnerabilities under changing conditions;  
 10 3. Identify suitable adaptive actions that can be taken at present or in the short term; and  
 11 4. Develop suitable adaptive actions that could be taken in the longer term.

12  
 13 In a survey of the forest plans available online in December 2006, 15 plans from a total of 121  
 14 individual forests had included references to climate change (terms “climate change,” “climate  
 15 variability,” or “global warming”) in the sections of the plan describing trends affecting  
 16 management or performance risks, or, in earlier plans, as a concern in the environmental impact  
 17 statement; both of these types of references are similar to Step 2 above (evaluating  
 18 vulnerabilities).

19  
 20 Given the challenges of the uncertainty in climate scenarios at fine spatial scale (Section 3.4.2.1),  
 21 a set of assumptions to be considered in planning has been proposed.<sup>25</sup> Specifically, the  
 22 recommendations make use of an adaptive management approach to make adjustments in the use  
 23 of historical conditions as a reference point. Flexibility to address the inherent uncertainty about  
 24 local effects of climate change could be achieved through enhancing the resiliency of forests, and  
 25 specific aspects of forest structure and function are mentioned (Box 3.6). These assumptions  
 26 would allow the plan components to be designed in a way that allows for adaptability to climate  
 27 change, even though the magnitude and direction of that change is uncertain. The assumptions to  
 28 be examined (listed in Box 3.6) explore underlying premises about climate and climate change in  
 29 the management processes.

30  
 31 One information-gathering option to help define the underlying assumptions and vulnerabilities  
 32 to climate change might be to consider convening a science-based (*e.g.*, USFS research team)  
 33 rapid assessment or “audit” of existing forest planning documents (*e.g.*, the Forest Land  
 34 Management Plan, or larger plans such as the Sierra Nevada Forest Plan amendment or the  
 35 Northwest Forest Plan, and project plans). The purpose of the audit would be to determine the  
 36 level of climate adaptedness, pitfalls, and areas for improvement in current forest plans and  
 37 operations. Such an audit could focus on current management direction (written policy); current  
 38 management practices (implementation); and priorities of species (*e.g.*, specific targeted species)  
 39 and processes (fire, insects/disease). The audit would highlight concrete areas of the plans and  
 40 projects that are poorly adapted to potential changes in climate, as well as those that are already  
 41 climate-proactive. Audit recommendations would identify specific areas where changes are  
 42 needed, and where improvements in forest planning or project-level planning and management  
 43 could be made.

44  


---

<sup>25</sup> West, 2005: *Letter and Attachments*. File Code 4070, letter dated July 26, 2005. Pacific Northwest Station.

1 Information and tools needed to assist adaptation form the basis for a long-term, management-  
 2 science partnership continually refining scientific information for resource management  
 3 decisions. A wide suite of modeling approaches that project climate change impacts on  
 4 ecosystems are available (for example, Melillo *et al.*, 1993; Joyce and Birdsey, 2000; Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Iverson and Prasad, 2001; Currie, 2001; Felzer *et al.*, 2004; McKenzie *et al.*, 2004;  
 5 Logan and Powell, 2005; Scholze *et al.*, 2006; Rehfeldt *et al.*, 2006; Joyce, 2007; Lenihan *et al.*,  
 6 forthcoming; Bachelet *et al.*, forthcoming).<sup>19</sup> These modeling approaches contain different  
 7 underlying assumptions about ecological process, mathematical and statistical descriptions of  
 8 ecosystems, the effect of climate, and may or may not include the ability to explore the effect of  
 9 management on the ecosystem under a changing climate. For example, some statistical models  
 10 are based on the assumption of equilibrium relationships between vegetation and climate, a  
 11 concept that is no longer considered a valid description of ecosystem dynamics and  
 12 biogeography. In addition, the recent literature on non-analog future climates and 30 years of  
 13 literature on paleoecology demonstrate that species respond individualistically and uniquely in  
 14 time and space, and models must take into account competition and ecological disturbance, not  
 15 just gradual temperature change. Understanding the strengths and weaknesses of the available  
 16 models and where these models can contribute to planning and analysis needs, as well as the  
 17 development of pathways to add climate to existing planning and analysis tools used by NFs, are  
 18 critical research needs.  
 19

20  
 21 In the short-term, natural resource managers could benefit from a manager’s guide with current  
 22 state-of-the art scientific concepts and techniques. Critical gaps in scientific understanding of the  
 23 impacts of climate change, and of management on ecosystem services, hinder adaptation by  
 24 limiting assessment of risks, efficacy, and sustainability of actions. Assistance and consultation  
 25 on interpreting climate and ecosystem model output would provide the context and relevance of  
 26 model predictions to be reconciled with managers’ priorities for adaptation.

### 27 **3.4.3 Approaches for Management in the Context of Climate Change**

#### 28 **3.4.3.1 Toolbox of Management Approaches**

29 A primary premise for adaptive approaches is that change, novelty, uncertainty, and uniqueness  
 30 of individual situations are expected to define the planning backdrop of the future. Rapid  
 31 changes that are expected in physical conditions and ecological responses suggest that  
 32 management goals and approaches will be most successful when they emphasize ecological  
 33 processes, rather than focusing primarily on structure and composition. Information needs (*e.g.*,  
 34 projections of future climates, anticipated ecological responses) will vary in availability and  
 35 accuracy at local spatial and temporal scales. Thus, strategic flexibility and willingness to work  
 36 in a context of varying uncertainty will improve success at every level (Anderson *et al.*, 2003).  
 37 Learning from experience and iteratively incorporating lessons into future plans—adaptive  
 38 management in its broadest sense—is an appropriate lens through which natural-resource  
 39 management is conducted (Holling, 2001; Noss, 2001; Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003).  
 40 Dynamism in natural conditions is appropriately matched by dynamic approaches to  
 41 management and adaptive mindsets.  
 42

43 Given the nature of climate and environmental variability, the inevitability of novelty and  
 44 surprise, and the range of management objectives and situations, a central dictum is that *no*

1 *single approach will fit all situations* (Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003; Hobbs *et al.*, 2006). From  
2 a toolbox of options such as those proposed below, appropriate elements (and modifications)  
3 should be selected and combined to fit the situation. Some applications will involve existing  
4 management approaches used in new locations, seasons, or contexts. Other options may involve  
5 experimenting with new practices.  
6

7 A toolbox approach recognizes that strategies may vary based on the spatial and temporal scales  
8 of decision making. Planning at regional scales may involve acceptance of different levels of  
9 uncertainty and risk than appropriate at local (*e.g.*, NF or watershed) scales. The options  
10 summarized below fall under adaptation, mitigation, and conservation practices (Dale *et al.*,  
11 2001; IPCC, 2001a). Based on the toolbox approach, an overall adaptive strategy will usually  
12 involve integrating practices that have different individual goals. An important consideration in  
13 building an integrative strategy is to first evaluate the various types of uncertainty: for example,  
14 uncertainty in present environmental and ecological conditions, including the sensitivity of  
15 resources; uncertainty in models and information sources about the future; uncertainty in support  
16 resources (staff, time, funds available); uncertainty in planning horizon (short- vs. long-term);  
17 and uncertainty in public and societal support. This evaluation would lead to a decision on  
18 whether it is best to develop reactive responses to changing disturbances and extreme events, or  
19 proactive responses anticipating climate change (see Section 3.4.1). The following options  
20 provide a framework for building management strategies in the face of climate change. Some  
21 examples of specific, on-the-ground, adaptation options are presented in Box 3.7 and are  
22 elaborated upon further in the sections that follow. Examples of institutional and planning  
23 adaptations, given in Box 3.8, are also elaborated upon further in the sections that follow.

#### 24 **3.4.3.2 Reducing Existing Stresses**

25 The USFS implements a variety of management approaches to reduce the impact of existing  
26 stressors on NFs (see Section 3.3.3), and an increased emphasis on these efforts represents an  
27 important “no regrets” strategy. It is likely that the direct impacts of climate change on  
28 ecosystems and the effects of interactions of climate change with other major stressors may  
29 render NFs increasingly prone to more frequent, extensive, and severe disturbances, especially  
30 drought (Breshears *et al.*, 2005; Seager *et al.*, 2007), insect and disease outbreaks (Logan and  
31 Powell, 2001; Carroll *et al.*, 2004), invasive species, and wildfire (Logan and Powell, 2001;  
32 Brown, Hall, and Westerling, 2004; McKenzie *et al.*, 2004; Logan and Powell, 2005; Skinner,  
33 Shabbar, and Flannigan, 2006) (see also Section 3.3.2). The elevated water stress resulting from  
34 warmer temperatures in combination with greater variability in precipitation patterns and altered  
35 hydrology (*e.g.*, from less snowpack and earlier snowmelt, Mote *et al.*, 2005) would increase the  
36 frequency and severity of both droughts and floods (IPCC, 2001a). Air pollution can negatively  
37 affect the health and productivity of NFs, and the fragmented landscape in which many NFs are  
38 situated impedes important ecosystem processes, including migration. Efforts to address the  
39 existing stressors would address current management needs, and potentially reduce the future  
40 interactions of these stressors with climate change.  
41

42 Drought has occurred across the United States in recent years, resulting most notably in large  
43 areas of forest mortality in the Southwest (see Section 3.3.2). Federal, state, and local  
44 governments, as well as private institutions, have drought management plans, but the National  
45 Drought Policy Commission Report (2000) stated that the current approach is patchy and

1 uncoordinated. Climate change is likely to result in increased drought, with potential interactions  
2 with air quality and fire. Exposure to ozone may further exacerbate the effects of drought on both  
3 forest growth and stream health (McLaughlin *et al.*, 2007a; 2007b). Preparedness is an important  
4 element in reducing the potential impacts of drought on individuals, communities, and the  
5 environment. The development or refinement of drought plans that incorporate preparedness,  
6 mitigation, and response efforts would address the current stresses of drought, as well as begin to  
7 address potential adaptations to likely future droughts. Increased coordination among local, state,  
8 and federal government agencies on drought planning and drought-related policies (fire closures,  
9 recreation uses, and grazing management) would help in this regard. Coordination with the  
10 Bureau of Land Management, whose lands intermingle extensively with NF land, would be  
11 particularly beneficial. Enhancing the effectiveness of observation networks and current drought  
12 monitoring efforts would provide information on which to make management decisions,  
13 particularly in response to the impacts of drought on aquatic ecosystems, wildlife, threatened and  
14 endangered species, and forest health. Increased collaboration among scientists and managers  
15 would enhance the effectiveness of prediction, information delivery, and applied research, and  
16 would help develop public understanding of and preparedness for drought.

17  
18 Invasive species are currently a problem throughout NFs, and disturbances such as fire, insects,  
19 hurricanes, ice storms, and floods create opportunities for invasive species to become established  
20 on areas ranging from multiple stands to landscapes. In turn, invasive plants alter the nature of  
21 fire regimes (Williams and Baruch, 2000; Lippincott, 2000; Pimentel *et al.*, 2000; Ziska, Reeves,  
22 and Blank, 2005)<sup>12</sup> as well as hydrological patterns (Pimentel *et al.*, 2000), in some cases  
23 increasing runoff, erosion, and sediment loads (*e.g.*, Lacey, Marlow, and Lane, 1989). Potential  
24 increases in these disturbances under climate change will heighten the challenges of managing  
25 invasive species. Early detection/rapid response (EDRR, see Section 3.3.3) focuses on solving  
26 small problems before they become large, unsolvable problems, and recognizes that proactive  
27 management is more effective than long delays in implementation. The Olympic Land  
28 Management Plan, for example, recognizes that invasive species often become established in  
29 small, treatable patches, and are best addressed at early stages of invasion. Although designed for  
30 invasives, this EDRR approach may also be appropriate for other types of disturbances, because  
31 it could allow managers to respond quickly to the impacts of extreme events (disturbances,  
32 floods, windstorms, insect outbreaks), with an eye toward adaptation.

33  
34 The USFS allocates considerable resources toward wildfire management (see Section 3.3.3). The  
35 projected increase in frequency, severity, and extent of fire under climate change is also likely to  
36 affect watershed condition, soil quality, erosional processes, and water quantity and quality in  
37 NFs (Wagle and Kitchen, Jr., 1972; Neary *et al.*, 1999; Spencer, Gabel, and Hauer, 2003; Certini,  
38 2005; Guarin and Taylor, 2005; Neff, Harden, and Gleixner, 2005; Neary, Ryan, and DeBano,  
39 2005; Murphy *et al.*, 2006; Deluca and Sala, 2006; Hauer, Stanford, and Lorang, 2007).  
40 The National Fire Plan describes a wide variety of approaches to manage wildfire, the most  
41 prominent of which is hazardous fuels reduction. Fuel abatement approaches include prescribed  
42 fire, wildland fire use (see Section 3.3.3), and various mechanical methods such as crushing,  
43 tractor and hand piling, tree removal (to produce commercial or pre-commercial products), and

1 pruning. Incorporation of additional climate information into fire management and planning may  
2 enhance current efforts to address wildfires.<sup>26</sup>

3  
4 Air pollution from a variety of sources decreases forest productivity, diminishes watershed  
5 condition, and deleteriously affects aquatic and terrestrial food webs in NFs (see Section 3.3.2).  
6 Although droughts and fires within NFs affect air quality, the USFS actively seeks to directly  
7 reduce these stressors and their impacts. In contrast, reducing the deposition of pollutants  
8 originating from outside NFs is beyond the agency’s control, and thus the USFS mainly works to  
9 mitigate the impacts of these stressors. To directly reduce these stressors, the USFS would need  
10 to increase coordination with other agencies (federal, state, and local) and the private sector.  
11 Efforts to reduce fragmentation and land use change near NFs by creating habitat corridors,  
12 increasing the size of management units, and identifying high-value conservation lands outside  
13 of NFs that could be managed in a coordinated way with the USFS will yield ecological benefits  
14 regardless of climate change. Large, connected landscapes will be even more critical as native  
15 species attempt to migrate or otherwise adapt to climate change. As is the case with air pollution,  
16 reducing these stressors with this approach will require increased coordination across federal,  
17 state, and local agencies as well as with private landowners.

18  
19 One of the legacies of past management in NFs (see Section 3.3.2.1) is the presence of large  
20 landscapes consisting of even-aged stands, which are vulnerable to large-scale change by fire,  
21 insects, disease, and extreme weather events and their interactions. Management that emphasizes  
22 diverse, uneven age stands will benefit many NF ecosystems regardless of climate change. This  
23 approach would also likely enhance ecosystem resilience to climate change.

### 24 **3.4.3.3 Adaptation Options**

#### 25 **Forestalling Ecosystem Change**

##### 26 *Create Resistance to Change*

27  
28 Notwithstanding the importance of dynamic approaches to change and uncertainty, one set of  
29 adaptive options is to manage ecosystems and resources so that they are better able to resist the  
30 influence of climate change (Parker *et al.*, 2000; Suffling and Scott, 2002). From rare species  
31 with limited available habitat to high-value forest plantation investments near rotation,  
32 maintaining the status quo for a limited period of time may be the only or best option in some  
33 cases. Creating resistance includes improving ecosystem defenses against climate effects *per se*,  
34 but also creating resistance against climate-exacerbated disturbance impacts. Conditions with  
35 low sensitivity to climate will be those most likely to accommodate resistance treatments, and  
36 high-sensitivity conditions will require the most intensive efforts to maintain current species and  
37 ecological functions.

38  
39 For conditions with low sensitivity to climate, maintaining ecosystem health and biodiversity is  
40 an important adaptation approach, building on current understanding and management practices.  
41 Healthy forest stands recover more quickly from insect disturbances than do stressed stands, and  
42 conservation of biodiversity would aid in successful species migrations (Lemmen and Warren,

---

<sup>26</sup> **National Association of State Foresters**, 2007: NASF Resolution No. 2007-1. Issue of Concern: The role that climate change plays in the severity and size of wildland fires is not explicitly recognized in the “National Fire Plan” and the Implementation Plan for its 120-year Strategy. <http://www.stateforesters.org/resolution/2007-01.pdf>.

1 2004). Maintaining key processes, such as hydrological processes and natural disturbances,  
2 would be important. Management for resistance might require ensuring reasonable use of water  
3 from forests, and appropriate road closures to minimize invasive species transport (Christen and  
4 Matlack, 2006).

5  
6 Fragmentation and land-use changes that are already problematic may be worsened under  
7 climate change due to shifts in species behaviors and changed habitat requirements. Anticipating  
8 these impacts for high-risk, high-value, and sensitive resources may require adopting landscape  
9 management practices that enable species movements. Creating larger management unit sizes,  
10 broad habitat corridors, and continuity of habitat would increase resistance of animal species to  
11 climate change by improving their ability to migrate. In this regard, enhancing coordination  
12 among the multiple agencies that manage adjacent lands to ensure habitat continuity will be  
13 essential (Malcolm *et al.*, 2006).

14  
15 In the arid West, aggressive prophylactic actions may be needed to increase resistance of  
16 ecosystems from risks of climate-exacerbated disturbances such as drought, insect outbreak, and  
17 uncharacteristically severe wildfire. Resistance practices include thinning and fuels abatement  
18 treatments at the landscape scale to reduce crown fire potential and risk of insect epidemic,  
19 maintaining existing fuelbreaks, strategically placed area treatments that will reduce fuel  
20 continuity and drought susceptibility of forests, creating defensible fuel profile zones around  
21 high-value areas (such as WUI, critical habitat, or municipal watersheds), and similar treatments.  
22 Intensive and aggressive fuelbreaks may be necessary around highest-risk or highest-value areas,  
23 such as WUI or at-risk species, while mixed approaches may best protect habitat for biodiversity  
24 and general forest zones (Wheaton, 2001).

25  
26 With respect to climate-related insect and disease outbreaks, traditional silvicultural methods  
27 may be applied creatively. These may involve intensive treatments, such as those used in high-  
28 value agricultural situations: resistance breeding, novel pheromone applications (such as  
29 sprayable micro-encapsulated methods), complex pesticide treatments, and aggressive  
30 fuelbreaks. Abrupt invasions, changes in behavior and population dynamics, and long-distance  
31 movements of native and non-native species may occur in response to changing climates.  
32 Monitoring non-native species, and taking aggressive early and proactive actions at key  
33 migration points to remove and block invasions, are important steps to increase resistance.  
34 However, monitoring species range distributions may indicate that native species, considered  
35 non-native to a particular area, may be migrating. Evaluating the original objectives and the  
36 changing local assemblages of species may be necessary before taking aggressive action.  
37 Conditions could be cumulatively adjusting to a changing climate, and maintenance of the status  
38 quo may not be feasible.

39  
40 Efforts to increase resistance may be called for in other high-value situations. Building resistance  
41 to exacerbated effects of air pollution from climate change may require that aggressive thinning  
42 and age-control silvicultural methods are applied at broad landscape scales, that mixed species  
43 plantations be developed, that broader genetic parameters be used in plantations, or that  
44 plantations are switched to resistant species entirely (Papadopol, 2000).

45

1 Resisting climate change influences on natural forests and vegetation over time will almost  
2 always require increasingly aggressive treatments, accelerating efforts and investments over  
3 time, and a recognition that eventually these efforts may fail as conditions cumulatively change.  
4 Critical understanding of the changing environmental, social, and economic impacts of climate  
5 change will be needed to evaluate the success of management approaches to resist the influence  
6 of climate change. Creating resistance in most forest and rangeland situations to directional  
7 change is akin to “paddling upstream,” and eventually conditions may change so much that  
8 resistance is no longer possible. For instance, climate change in some places will drive  
9 environments to change so much that site capacities shift from favoring one species to another,  
10 and a type conversion occurs.

11  
12 Maintaining prior species may require significant extra and repeated efforts to supply needed  
13 nutrients and water, remove competing understory, fertilize young plantations, develop a cover  
14 species, thin, and prune. More seriously, forest conditions that have been treated to resist  
15 climate-related changes may cross thresholds and convert (*i.e.*, be lost) through extreme events  
16 such as wildfire, ice storm, tornado, insect epidemic, or drought, resulting in significant resource  
17 damage and loss. For this reason, in some situations, resistance options may best be applied in  
18 the short term and for projects with short planning horizons and high value, such as short-  
19 rotation biomass or biofuels plantings. Alternative approaches that work with processes of  
20 change, rather than against the direction of climate-related change, may enable inevitable  
21 changes to happen more gradually over time, and with less likelihood of cumulative, rapid, and  
22 catastrophic impact. For example, widely spaced thinning or shelterwood cuttings that create  
23 many niches for planted or naturally established seedlings may facilitate adaptation to change on  
24 some sites. In selecting these alternative approaches, a holistic analysis may be required to  
25 identify the break point beyond which intervention to natural selection and adaptation to climate  
26 changes may not be possible or cannot be managed at reasonable cost.

27  
28 *Promote Resilience to Climate Change*

29 Resilient ecosystems are those that not only accommodate gradual changes related to climate, but  
30 resile (return to a prior condition of that ecosystem) after disturbance. Promoting resilience is the  
31 most commonly suggested adaptive option discussed in a climate-change context (*e.g.*, Dale *et*  
32 *al.*, 2001; Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003; Price and Neville, 2003), but has its drawbacks as  
33 climate continues to change. Resilience can be increased through management practices similar  
34 to those described for resisting change, but applied more broadly, and specifically aimed at  
35 coping with disturbance (Dale *et al.*, 2001; Wheaton, 2001). As with any adaptation approach,  
36 land manager objectives will vary—*e.g.*, protection; management for endangered species,  
37 commodities, or low fire vulnerability—and these choices may or may not result in a decision to  
38 resile the system to a former state. An understanding of the ecological consequences of the  
39 changing climate is a critical component of identifying adaptation strategies.

40  
41 An example of promoting resilience in forest ecosystems is a strategy that combines practices to  
42 reduce fire or insect and disease outbreaks (resistance) with deliberate and immediate plans to  
43 encourage return of the site, post-disturbance, to species reflective of its prior condition  
44 (resilience). Given that the plant establishment phases tend to be most sensitive to climate-  
45 induced changes in site potential, intensive management dedicated to the revegetation period  
46 through the early years of establishment may enable retention of the site by desired species, even  
47 if the site is no longer optimal for those species (Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003). Practices could

1 include widely spaced thinnings or shelterwood cuttings to promote resilience with living stands,  
2 and rapid treatment of forests killed by fire or insects. In forests killed by fire or other  
3 disturbance, resilience could be promoted by maintaining some degree of shade as appropriate  
4 for the forest type; intensive site preparation to remove competing vegetation; replanting with  
5 high-quality, genetically appropriate, and diverse stock; diligent stand-improvement practices;  
6 and minimizing invasion of non-native species (Dale *et al.*, 2001; Spittlehouse and Stewart,  
7 2003). Many of these intensive forestry practices may have undesired effects on other elements  
8 of ecosystem health, and thus have often come under dispute. However, if the intent is to return a  
9 forest stand to its prior condition after disturbance under changing climate (*i.e.*, to promote  
10 resilience), then deliberate, aggressive, intensive, and immediate actions may be necessary.  
11

12 Similar to the situation with regard to resistance options, the capacity to maintain and improve  
13 resilience will, for many contexts, become more difficult as changes in climate accumulate and  
14 accelerate over time. These options may best be exercised in projects that are short-term, have  
15 high value (*e.g.*, commercial plantations), or under ecosystem conditions that are relatively  
16 insensitive to the potential climate change effects (*e.g.*, warming temperatures). Climate change  
17 has the potential to significantly influence the practice and outcomes of ecological restoration  
18 (Harris *et al.*, 2006), where the focus is on tying assemblages to one place. A strategy that  
19 combines practices to restore vigor and redundancy (Markham, 1996; Noss, 2001) and ecological  
20 processes (Rice and Emery, 2003), so that after a disturbance these ecosystems have the  
21 necessary keystone species and functional processes to recover to a healthy state even if species  
22 composition changes, would be the goal of managing for ecosystem change.  
23

## 24 **Managing for Ecosystem Change**

### 25 *Enable Forests to Respond to Change*

26 This suite of adaptation options intentionally plans for change rather than resisting it, with a goal  
27 of enabling forest ecosystems to naturally adapt as environmental changes accrue. Given that  
28 many ecological conditions will be moving naturally toward significant change in an attempt to  
29 adapt (*e.g.*, species migration, stand mortality and colonization events, changes in community  
30 composition, insect and disease outbreaks, and fire events), these options seek to work with the  
31 natural adaptive processes. In so doing, options encourage gradual adaptation over time, thus  
32 hoping to avoid sudden thresholds, extreme loss, or conversion that may occur if natural change  
33 is cumulatively resisted.  
34

35  
36 Depending on the environmental context, management goals, and availability and adequacy of  
37 modeling information (climate and otherwise), different approaches may be taken. In this  
38 context, change is assumed to happen—either in known directions, with goals planned for a  
39 specific future, or in unknown directions, with goals planned directly for uncertainty. Examples  
40 of potential practices include the following:  
41

42 *1. Assist transitions, population adjustments, range shifts, and other natural adaptations.* Use  
43 coupled and downscaled climate and vegetation models to anticipate future regional conditions,  
44 and project future ecosystems into new habitat and climate space. With such information,  
45 managers might plan for transitions to new conditions and habitats, and assist the transition—  
46 *e.g.*, as appropriate, move species uphill, plan for higher-elevation insect and disease outbreaks,  
47 reduce existing anthropogenic stresses such as air quality or land cover changes, anticipate



1 species mortality events and altered fire regimes, or consider loss of species' populations on  
2 warm range margins and do not attempt restoration there (Ledig and Kitzmiller, 1992; Parker *et*  
3 *al.*, 2000; Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003). Further examples might be to modify rotation lengths  
4 and harvest schedules, alter thinning prescriptions and other silvicultural treatments, consider  
5 replanting with different species, shift desired species to new plantation or forest locations, or  
6 take precautions to mitigate likely increases in stress on plantation and forest trees.

7  
8 A nascent literature is developing on the advantages and disadvantages of “assisted migration,”  
9 the intentional movement of propagules or juvenile and adult individuals into areas assumed to  
10 become their future habitats (Halpin, 1997; Collingham and Huntley, 2000; McLachlan,  
11 Hellmann, and Schwartz, 2007).

12  
13 It is important to not generalize assumptions about habitat and climate change in specific areas.  
14 Local climate trajectories may be far different from state or regional trends, and local topography  
15 and microclimatology interact in ways that may yield very different climate conditions than  
16 those given by broad-scale models. In mountainous terrain especially, the climate landscape is  
17 patchy and highly variable, with local inversions, wind patterns, aspect differences, soil relations,  
18 storm tracks, and hydrology influencing the weather that a site experiences. Sometimes lower  
19 elevations may be refugial during warming conditions, as in inversion-prone basins, deep and  
20 narrow canyons, riparian zones, and north slopes. Such patterns, and occupation of them by  
21 plants during transitional climate periods, are corroborated in the paleoecological record (Millar  
22 and Woolfenden, 1999; Millar *et al.*, 2006). Additionally, land use change and agricultural  
23 practices can alter local and regional precipitation and climate patterns (Foley *et al.*, 2005;  
24 Pielke, Sr. *et al.*, 2006).

25  
26 Despite the challenges in mountainous terrain, anticipating where climate and local species  
27 habitats will move will become increasingly important. On-the-ground monitoring of native  
28 species gives insight into what plants themselves are experiencing, and can suggest the directions  
29 of change and appropriate natural response at local scales. This can allow management strategies  
30 that mimic emerging natural adaptive responses. For instance, new species mixes (mimicking  
31 what is regenerating naturally), altered genotype selections, modified age structures, and novel  
32 silvicultural contexts (*e.g.*, selection harvest versus clearcut) may be considered.

33  
34 **2. Increase Redundancy and Buffers.** This set of practices intentionally manages for an uncertain  
35 but changing future, rather than a specific climate future. Practices that involve spreading risks in  
36 diverse opportunities rather than concentrating them in a few are favored; using redundancy and  
37 creating diversity are key. Forest managers can facilitate natural selection and evolution by  
38 managing the natural regeneration process to enhance disturbances that initiate increased  
39 seedling development and genetic mixing, as has been suggested for white pines and white pine  
40 blister rust (Schoettle and Sniezko, forthcoming). Managers might also consider shortening  
41 generation times by increasing the frequency of regeneration, and increasing the effectiveness of  
42 natural selection by managing for high levels of intraspecific competition; in other words, by  
43 ensuring that lots of seedlings get established when stands are regenerated. This diversification  
44 of risk with respect to plantations can be achieved, for instance, by spreading plantations over a  
45 range of environments rather than within the historic distribution or within a modeled future  
46 location. Options that include using diverse environments and even species margins will provide

1 additional flexibility. A benefit of redundant plantings across a range of environments is that  
2 they can provide monitoring information if survival and performance are measured and analyzed.  
3 Further, plantations originating as genetic provenance tests and established over the past several  
4 decades could be re-examined for current adaptations. This diversification of risk could also be  
5 achieved using natural regeneration and successional processes on NFs. A range of sites  
6 representing the diversity of conditions on a NF could be set aside after disturbance events to  
7 allow natural regeneration and successional processes to identify the most resistant species and  
8 populations. Other examples include planting with mixed species and age classes, as in  
9 agroforestry (Lindner, Lasch, and Erhard, 2000); increasing locations, sizes, and range of  
10 habitats for landscape-scale vegetation treatments; assuring that fuels are appropriately abated  
11 where vegetation is treated; and increasing the number of rare plant populations targeted for  
12 restoration, as well as increasing population levels within them (Millar and Woolfenden, 1999).  
13 In the same way, opportunistic monitoring, such as horticultural plantings of native species in  
14 landscaping, gardens, or parks, may provide insight into how species respond in different sites as  
15 climate changes, as well as engaging the public in such information gathering.

16  
17 *3. Expand Genetic Diversity Guidelines.* Existing guidelines for genetic management of forest  
18 plantations and restoration projects dictate maintenance of and planting with local germplasm. In  
19 the past, small seed zones, used for collecting seed for reforestation or restoration, have been  
20 delineated to ensure that local gene pools are used and to avoid contamination of populations  
21 with genotypes not adapted to the local site. These guidelines were developed assuming that  
22 neither environments nor climate were changing—*i.e.*, a static background. Relaxing these  
23 guidelines may be appropriate under assumptions of changing climate (Ledig and Kitzmiller,  
24 1992; Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003; Millar and Brubaker, 2006; Ying and Yanchuk, 2006). In  
25 this case, options could be chosen based on the degree of certainty known about likely future  
26 climate changes and likely environmental changes (*e.g.*, air quality). If sufficient information is  
27 available, germplasm could be moved in the anticipated adaptive direction; for instance, rather  
28 than using local seed, seed from a warmer (often, downhill) current population would be used.  
29 By contrast, if an uncertain future is accepted, expanding seed zone sizes in all directions and  
30 requiring that seed collections be well distributed within these zones would be appropriate, as  
31 would relaxing seed transfer guidelines to accommodate multiple habitat moves, or introducing  
32 long-distance germplasm into seed mixes. Adaptive management of this nature is experimental  
33 by design, and will require careful documentation of treatments, seed sources, and outplanting  
34 locations in a corporate data structure to learn from both failures and successes of such mixes.

35  
36 Traditional best genetic management practices will become even more important to implement  
37 under changing climates. Paying attention not only to the source but the balance of genetic  
38 diversity within seedlots and outplanting collections (*i.e.*, maintaining high effective population  
39 sizes) is prudent: approaches include maximizing the number of parents, optimizing equal  
40 representation by parents (*e.g.*, striving for equal numbers of seeds/seedlings per family), and  
41 thinning plantations such that existing genetic diversity is not greatly reduced. Genotypes known  
42 or selected for broad adaptations could also be favored. By contrast, although economic  
43 incentives may override, using a single or few genotypes (*e.g.*, a select clone or small clonal mix)  
44 is a riskier choice in a climate change context.

45

1 *4. Manage for Asynchrony and Use Establishment Phase to Reset Succession to Current*  
2 *Conditions.* Changing climates over paleoecologic timescales have repeatedly reset ecological  
3 community structure (species diversity) and composition (relative abundances) as plants and  
4 animals have adapted to natural changes in their environments. To the extent that climate acts as  
5 a region- and hemispheric-wide driver of change, the resulting shifts in biota often occur as  
6 synchronous changes across the landscape (Swetnam and Betancourt, 1998). At decadal and  
7 century scales, for instance, recurring droughts in the West and windstorms in the East have  
8 synchronized forest species, age composition, and stand structure across broad landscape. These  
9 then become further vulnerable to rapid shifts in climate, such as is occurring at present, which  
10 appear to be synchronizing forests through massive drought-insect-related diebacks. An  
11 opportunity exists to proactively manage the early successional stages that follow widespread  
12 mortality, by deliberately reducing synchrony.<sup>27</sup> Asynchrony can be achieved through a mix of  
13 activities that promotes diverse age classes, species mixes, stand diversities, genetic diversity,  
14 etc., at landscape scales. Early successional stages are likely the most successful (and practical)  
15 opportunities for resetting ecological trajectories that are adaptive to present rather than past  
16 climates, because this is the best chance for widespread replacement of plants. Such ecological  
17 resetting is evidenced in patterns of natural adaptation to historic climate shifts (Davis and Shaw,  
18 2001).

19  
20 *5. Establish “Neo-Native” Plantations and Restoration Sites.* Information from historic species  
21 ranges and responses to climate change can provide unique insight about species behaviors,  
22 ecological tolerances, and potential new habitats. For instance, areas that supported species in the  
23 past under similar conditions to those projected for the future might be considered sites for new  
24 plantations or “neo-native” stands of the species. These may be well outside the current species  
25 range, in locations where the species would otherwise be considered exotic. For instance,  
26 Monterey pine (*Pinus radiata*), endangered throughout its small native range, has naturalized  
27 along the north coast of California far disjunct from its present native distribution. Much of this  
28 area was paleohistoric range for the pine, extant during climate conditions that have been  
29 interpreted to be similar to expected futures in California (Millar, 1999). Using these locations  
30 specifically for “neo-native” conservation stands, rather than planning for the elimination of the  
31 trees as undesired exotics (which is the current management goal), is an example of how  
32 management thinking could accommodate a climate-change context (Millar, 1998). This option  
33 is relevant to both forest plantation and ecological restoration contexts.

34  
35 *6. Promote Connected Landscapes.* Capacity to move (migrate) in response to changing climates  
36 is key to adaptation and long-term survival of plants and animals in natural ecosystems (Gates,  
37 1993). Plants migrate, or “shift ranges” by dying in unfavorable sites and colonizing favorable  
38 edges, including internal species’ margins. Capacity to do this is aided by managing for porous  
39 landscapes; that is, landscapes that contain continuous habitat with few physical or biotic  
40 restrictions, and through which species can move readily (recruit, establish, forage) (Halpin,  
41 1997; Noss, 2001). Promoting large forested landscape units, with flexible management goals  
42 that can be modified as conditions change, will encourage species to respond naturally to  
43 changing climates (Holling, 2001). This enables managers to work with, rather than against, the  
44 flow of change. Evaluating and reducing fragmentation, and planning cumulative landscape

---

<sup>27</sup> **Mulholland, P., J. Betancourt, and D.D. Breshears, 2004: *Ecological Impacts of Climate Change: Report From a NEON Science Workshop.* American Institute of Biological Sciences, Tucson, AZ.**

1 treatments to encourage defined corridors as well as widespread habitat availability, is a  
 2 proactive approach.

3  
 4 *7. Realign Significantly Disrupted Conditions.* Restoration treatments are often prescribed for  
 5 forest species or ecosystems that have been significantly or cumulatively disturbed and are far  
 6 outside natural ranges of current variation. Because historical targets, traditionally used as  
 7 references for restoration, are often inappropriate in the face of changing climates, re-alignment  
 8 with current process rather than restoration to historic pre-disturbance condition may be a  
 9 preferred choice (Millar and Brubaker, 2006; Harris *et al.*, 2006; Willis and Birks, 2006). In this  
 10 case, management goals seek to bring processes of the disturbed landscape into the range of  
 11 current or anticipated future environments (Halpin, 1997). An example comes from the Mono  
 12 Lake ecosystem in the western Great Basin of California (National Research Council, 1987;  
 13 Millar and Woolfenden, 1999). A basin lake with no outlet, Mono Lake is highly saline, thus is  
 14 naturally fishless but rich in invertebrate endemism and productivity, provides critical habitat for  
 15 migratory waterfowl, and supports rich communities of dependent aquatic and adjacent terrestrial  
 16 animal species. In 1941, the Los Angeles Department of Water and Power diverted freshwater  
 17 from Mono Lake's tributaries; the streams rapidly dried and Mono Lake's level declined  
 18 precipitously. Salinity increased, groundwater springs disappeared, and ecological thresholds  
 19 were crossed as a series of unexpected consequences unfolded, threatening Mono Lake's aquatic  
 20 and terrestrial ecosystems. An innovative solution involved a 1990 court-mediated re-alignment  
 21 process. Rather than setting pre-1941 lake levels as a restoration goal, a water-balance model  
 22 approach, considering current climates as well as future climatic uncertainties, was used to  
 23 determine the most appropriate lake level for present and anticipated future conditions.<sup>28</sup>  
 24

#### 25 **Options Applicable to Both Forestalling Change and Managing for Change**

##### 26 *Anticipate and Plan for Surprise and Threshold Effects*

27 Evaluate potential for indirect and surprise effects that may result from cumulative climate  
 28 changes or changes in extreme weather events. This may involve thinking outside the range of  
 29 events that have occurred in recent history. For example, reductions in mountain snowpacks lead  
 30 to more bare ground in spring, so that "average" rain events run off immediately rather than  
 31 being buffered by snowpacks, and produce extreme unseasonal floods (*e.g.*, Yosemite Valley,  
 32 May 2005<sup>29</sup>). Similarly, without decreases in annual precipitation, and even with increasing  
 33 precipitation, warming minimum temperatures are projected to translate to longer dry growing-  
 34 season durations. In many parts of the West, especially Mediterranean climate regions, additional  
 35 stresses of longer summers and extended evapotranspiration are highly likely to push plant  
 36 populations over thresholds of mortality, as occurred in the recent multi-year droughts  
 37 throughout much of the West (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). Evidence is accumulating to indicate that  
 38 species interactions and competitive responses under changing climates are complex and  
 39 unexpected (Suttle, Thompsen, and Power, 2007). Much has been learned from paleo-historic  
 40

---

<sup>28</sup> **State of California**, 1994: *Decision and Order Amending Water Right Licenses to Establish Fisher Protection Flows in Streams Tributary to Mono Lake and to Protect Public Trust Resources at Mono Lake and in the Mono Lake Basin*. State Water Resources Board Decision 1631, pp.1-212.

<sup>29</sup> **Dettinger**, M., J. Lundquist, D. Cayan, and J. Meyer, 2006: The 16 May 2005 Flood in Yosemite National Park-- A Glimpse into High-Country Flood Generation in the Sierra Nevada. Presentation at the American Geophysical Union annual meeting, San Francisco.

[http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/cirmount/meetings/agu/pdf2006/dettinger\\_etal\\_poster\\_AGU2006.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/psw/cirmount/meetings/agu/pdf2006/dettinger_etal_poster_AGU2006.pdf)

1 studies about likely surprises and rapid events as a result of climate change. Anticipating these  
 2 events in the future means planning for more extreme ranges than in recent decades, and arming  
 3 management systems accordingly (Millar and Woolfenden, 1999; Harris *et al.*, 2006; Willis and  
 4 Birks, 2006).

#### 6 *Experiment with Refugia*

7 Plant ecologists and paleoecologists recognize that some environments appear more buffered  
 8 against climate and short-term disturbances, while others are sensitive. If such “buffered”  
 9 environments can be identified locally, they could be considered sites for long-term retention of  
 10 plants, or for new plantations (commercial or conservation). For instance, mountainous regions  
 11 are highly heterogeneous environmentally; this patchiness comprises a wide range of micro-  
 12 climates within the sites. Further, unusual and nutritionally extreme soil types (*e.g.*, acid podsols,  
 13 limestones, etc.) have been noted for their long persistence of species and genetic diversity,  
 14 resistance to invasive species, and long-lasting community physiognomy compared with adjacent  
 15 fertile soils (Millar, 1989). During historic periods of rapid climate change and widespread  
 16 population extirpation, refugial populations persisted on sites that avoided the regional climate  
 17 impacts and the effects of large disturbance. For example, Camp (1995) reported that  
 18 topographic and site characteristics of old-growth refugia in the Swauk Pass area of the  
 19 Wenatchee National Forest were uniquely identifiable. These populations provided both adapted  
 20 germplasm and local seed sources for advance colonization as climates naturally changed toward  
 21 favoring the species. In similar fashion, a management goal might focus specific attention to  
 22 protect populations that currently exist in environmentally and climatically buffered, cooler, or  
 23 unusually mesic environments.

#### 24 **3.4.4 Prioritizing Management Responses in Situations of Resource Scarcity**

25 Species, plant communities, regional vegetation, and forest plantations will respond to changing  
 26 climates individually. Some species and situations will be sensitive and vulnerable, while  
 27 others will be naturally buffered and resilient to climate-influenced disturbances (Holling, 2001;  
 28 Noss, 2001). Management goals for species and ecosystems across the spectrum of NFs also vary  
 29 for many reasons. As a result, proactive climate planning will reflect a range of management  
 30 intensities. Some species and ecosystems may require aggressive treatment to maintain viability  
 31 or resilience, others may require reduction of current stressors, and others less intensive  
 32 management, at least in the near future.

34 While evaluating priorities has always been important in resource management, the magnitude  
 35 and scope of anticipated needs, combined with diminishing availability of human resources,  
 36 dictate that priorities be evaluated swiftly, strictly, and definitively. A useful set of guidelines for  
 37 certain high-demand situations comes from the medical practice of triage (Cameron *et al.*, 2000).  
 38 Coming from the French *triare*, to sort, triage approaches were developed from the need to  
 39 prioritize the care of injured soldiers in battlefield settings where time is short, needs are great,  
 40 and capacity to respond is limited. Well-established emergency and disaster triage steps can be  
 41 modified to fit resource needs when conditions cannot be handled with traditional planning or  
 42 institutional capacity. Triage in a natural-resource context sorts management situations  
 43 (“patients”) into categories according to urgency, sensitivity, and capacity of available resources  
 44 to achieve desired goals (“survival”). Cases are rapidly assessed and sorted into three to five  
 45 major categories (“color tags”) that determine further action:

1  
2 1. *Red*: Significant ongoing emergency; immediate attention required. Cases in this category are  
3 extremely urgent, but may be successfully treated with immediate attention given available  
4 resources. Without attention, they will rapidly fail; in the medical sense, the patient will die soon  
5 if untreated. These cases receive the highest priority for treatment and use of available resources.  
6 Depending on available resources, some of these cases may be assigned black rather than red.

7  
8 2. *Yellow*: Strong to medium potential for emergency. Cases in this category are sensitive to  
9 disruption, vulnerable due to history or disturbance (degree and extent of trauma), have the  
10 capacity with small additional disturbance to become rapidly worse, but are marginally stable at  
11 the time of assessment. These cases have medium priority.

12  
13 3. *Green*: Low likelihood for emergency conditions. Cases in this category may have some  
14 problems but overall are relatively resistant to disturbance, have low stress or high capacity to  
15 deal with stress, a history of low vulnerability, and show signs of retaining stability at least in the  
16 short term with little need for intervention. These cases receive low priority, but conditions are  
17 monitored regularly for change.

18  
19 4. *Black*: Conditions altered beyond hope of treatment. Cases in this category are so disrupted,  
20 altered, and weakened that chances of successfully treating them with available resources are nil.  
21 In medical context, patients are either dead or unable to be kept alive with existing capacity.  
22 These cases have the lowest priority in the short term, and alternative resolutions have to be  
23 developed.

24  
25 While triage is valuable to practice under conditions of scarce resources or apparently  
26 overwhelming choice, it is not viable as a long-term or sole-use approach to priority-setting.  
27 Other approaches may be used for quick prioritizing of traditional management plans and  
28 practices. An example would be rapid assessments of current national forest land management  
29 plans, performed by teams of climate experts that visit NFs. Teams would rapidly review  
30 planning documents, interview staff, and visit representative field sites; they would conclude  
31 their visits with a set of recommendations on what aspects of the overall local forest management  
32 practices and plans are in (1) immediate need of significant revision, (2) need of revision in a  
33 longer timeframe, and (3) no need of revision; already climate-savvy. Similar integrated threat  
34 assessment tools are being developed that help managers and decision-makers grasp categories  
35 of urgency.

36  
37 In situations where available resources can be augmented, where time is not a critical factor, and  
38 where more information can be obtained, traditional evaluations and priority-setting will be most  
39 appropriate. Triage may be used, however, at any time and at any scale where urgency arises,  
40 and when demands become greater than normally managed. The common alternative under these  
41 conditions, reacting to crises chaotically and without rules of assessment, will achieve far less  
42 success in the long run than triage-based approaches.

### 43 **3.4.5 Barriers to Adaptation Approaches**

44 The USFS will need to overcome various barriers to take advantage of opportunities to  
45 implement adaptations to climate change. Insufficient resources, various uncertainties,

1 checkerboard ownership patterns, lengthy planning processes, agency targets and reward  
2 systems, and air quality standards that restrict the use of prescribed fire are examples of such  
3 barriers. The need to coordinate with other agencies, the private sector, and the general public  
4 may either enhance or impede the ability of the USFS to implement management adaptations.  
5 How these other stakeholders perceive climate change and react to USFS management proposals  
6 will strongly influence how the USFS can ultimately adapt.

7  
8 Developing innovative adaptations to climate change will require creative thinking, coupled with  
9 improved scientific understanding of proposed new approaches. The USFS may need to  
10 encourage planners and managers to relax perceptions about rules and other constraints that may,  
11 in reality, afford enough flexibility to try something new. Scientists would then need to be given  
12 the resources and support to test new approaches that are developed through this innovative  
13 process.

## 14 **3.5 Conclusions and Recommendations**

### 15 **3.5.1 Climate Change and National Forests**

16 The mission of the NFs has broadened over time, from protecting water and producing timber to  
17 managing for multiple resources and now, to sustaining the health, diversity, and productivity of  
18 the nation's forests and grasslands to meet the needs of present and future generations.  
19 Increasingly ecosystem management, ecological integrity, resilience, and sustainability have  
20 become important concepts and goals of NF management.

21  
22 The management of NF lands has broadened to include involvement by several other federal  
23 agencies, including EPA, the Fish and Wildlife Service, the National Marine Fisheries Service,  
24 and the Bureau of Land Management, as well as coordination on management of lands within  
25 NFs for national systems such as the Wilderness Preservation System, National Trails, National  
26 Monuments, and Wild and Scenic Rivers. The checkerboard ownership patterns of many of the  
27 western forests, the scattered private in-holdings of many NFs, and the scattered land parcels of  
28 the eastern forests result in the important need to coordinate with other federal and state agencies  
29 and with private land owners. Public involvement has increased. This broader level of  
30 participation—by the public and other federal and state agencies, as well as the assortment of  
31 different management units—is an asset, but also can be a challenge for coordinating and  
32 responding to novel situations such as climate change.

33  
34 One of the challenges to the USFS will be the diversity of climatic changes experienced by NFs.  
35 Not only will each NF experience regional and site-specific changes in temperature and  
36 precipitation, but the forests are likely to experience changes in frequency, intensity, timing, and  
37 locations of extreme weather events such as the occurrence of ice storms; wind events such as  
38 derechos, tornados, and hurricanes; and flooding associated with high-intensity rainfall events or  
39 with shifts between rain and snow events. Local land management goals differ greatly by NF and  
40 grassland, and by management units within NFs (*e.g.*, wilderness, matrix working forests  
41 associated with the Northwest Forest Plan, ski areas, campgrounds, etc). Thus, no single  
42 approach to adaptation to climate change will fit all NFs. This diversity of climatic changes and  
43 impacts will interact with the diversity of stressors, the diversity of ecosystems, and the diversity

1 of management goals across the NFs—in short, responses to climate change will need to reflect  
2 local and regional differences in climate, ecosystems, and the social and economic settings.

3  
4 The NFs have, in many aspects, begun to address many of the challenges of climate variability  
5 and change—changes to historic disturbance regimes, historically unprecedented epidemics of  
6 native insects, large-scale forest mortality, extreme and unseasonal weather events, spread of  
7 non-native invasive species, drought, fuels accumulation, and ecosystem fragmentation. Current  
8 management approaches include landscape-scale planning and coordinated agency planning for  
9 fire suppression, regional water management, and coordinated agency efforts for invasive  
10 species, among others.

11  
12 Adaptation options for climate-sensitive ecosystems encompass three approaches: no active  
13 planning for a changing environment, reaction to a changing disturbance regime, and  
14 anticipatory adaptation actions. The rationale for each adaptation approach involves  
15 consideration of the costs and benefits associated with the ecological, social, and economic  
16 components under the changing climate, the available information on future climatic conditions,  
17 and other technical and institutional concerns. In some cases, the choice of no active planning  
18 could reflect short-term goals on landscapes where the risk of climate change impacts may be  
19 minimal in the short term, for ecosystems with low sensitivity to climate change, where the  
20 uncertainty is great (climate variability large, potential impacts low), or where the resources to  
21 manage a particular ecosystem service jeopardized by climate change would be better used to  
22 manage other ecosystem resources. Responding to a climate-induced changing disturbance (*i.e.*,  
23 implementing adaptations after disturbances occur) might be justified in situations where  
24 managers determine that adjustments to historical management approaches are needed  
25 eventually, but are best made during or after a major climatic or disturbance event. In this  
26 instance, adaptive actions are incorporated after the disturbance occurs. The third option involves  
27 anticipating and specifically preparing for climate change opportunities and impacts. The choice  
28 involves using the best available information about future climate and environmental conditions,  
29 and the best available information about the societal context of forest management, to begin  
30 making changes to policy and on-the-ground management now, as well as when future windows  
31 of opportunity open. Each response may be appropriate in some circumstances and not in others.

## 32 **3.5.2 Management Response Recommendations**

### 33 **3.5.2.1 Integrate Consideration of Climate Change across All Agency Planning Levels**

34 Adaptation strategies may vary based on the spatial and temporal scales of decision making  
35 within the USFS. The integration of climate change and climate change impacts on ecosystem  
36 services into policy development and planning across all levels of the agency—USFS strategic  
37 goals, Resource Planning Act (RPA) Assessment, NF plans, multi-forest plans, project  
38 planning—could facilitate a cohesive identification of opportunities and barriers (institutional,  
39 ecological, social). Planning at regional or national scales may involve acceptance of different  
40 levels of uncertainty and risk than appropriate at local (*e.g.*, NF or watershed) scales. The current  
41 approach responds to the legislative requirement to address climate change analyses within the  
42 strategic national level through the RPA Assessment. National analyses associated with RPA  
43 offer the opportunity to develop potential approaches to link assessments at the scale of the  
44 national level, regional, multi-forest and NF. More quantitative approaches may be available at



1 the national/regional scales, providing strategic guidance for broad consideration of climate  
2 change opportunities and impacts to management activities at finer scales.

### 3 **3.5.2.2 Reframe the Role of Uncertainty in Land Management: Manage for Change**

4 Current ecological conditions of NFs are projected to change under a changing climate, along  
5 with social and economic changes. The challenge for the USFS will be to determine which  
6 ecosystem services and which attributes and components of biodiversity can be sustained or  
7 achieved through management under a changing climate. There will be a need to anticipate and  
8 plan for surprise and threshold effects that are at once difficult to predict with certainty yet  
9 certain to result from the interaction of climate change and other stressors. Rather than targeting  
10 a single desired future condition, avoiding a range of undesirable future conditions may be more  
11 effective

12  
13 There may also be a need to shift focus to managing for change, setting a goal of desired future  
14 function (processes, ecosystem services), and managing current and future conditions (structure,  
15 outputs), which may be quite dynamic because of a changing climate. Rapid changes that are  
16 expected in physical conditions and ecological responses suggest that management goals and  
17 approaches will be most successful when they emphasize ecological processes rather than focus  
18 on structure and composition. Under a changing climate, embracing uncertainty will necessitate a  
19 careful examination of various underlying assumptions about climate, climate change, ecological  
20 processes, and disturbances. Specifically, the USFS will need to re-evaluate (1) the dynamics of  
21 ecosystems under disturbances influenced by climate; (2) current management options as  
22 influenced by climate; and (3) important assumptions and premises about the nature of  
23 disturbances (*e.g.*, fire, insect outbreaks, diseases, extreme climate-related events, and the  
24 interactions among these disturbances) that influence management philosophy and approaches.  
25 Our assumptions about the climate sensitivity of best management practices, genetic diversity  
26 guidelines, restoration treatments, and regeneration guidelines may need to be revisited.  
27 Opportunities to test these assumptions through management activities and research experiments  
28 will be valuable. Current management approaches offer a good platform to reframe these  
29 strategies to address uncertain and varying climates and environments of the future.

### 30 **3.5.2.3 Nurture and Cultivate Human Capital within the Agency**

31 The USFS has a long tradition of attracting and retaining highly qualified employees. The  
32 capacity of the agency to address climate change may require the staff within NFs to have a more  
33 technical understanding of climate change, as well as building the adaptive capacity of the social  
34 and economic environments in which they work. Specifically, the USFS could provide  
35 opportunities to develop a better technical understanding of climate and its ecological and  
36 socioeconomic impacts, as well as options for adaptation and mitigation in NFs through the  
37 many training opportunities that currently exist within the USFS, including the silvicultural  
38 certification program, regional integrated resource training workshops, and regional training  
39 sessions for resource staff. New opportunities to share training of resource managers with other  
40 natural resource agencies could also enhance the ability of the USFS to address climate change  
41 in resource management. Additionally, increased awareness and knowledge of climate change  
42 could be transferred through the development of managers' guides, climate primers, management

1 toolkits, a Web clearinghouse, and video presentations. Opportunities for managers to share  
2 information on the success or failure of different adaptation approaches will be critical.

3  
4 The skill set necessary to address the challenge of managing natural resources under a changing  
5 climate may need to be examined. Staffing in areas such as silviculture, forest genetics and tree  
6 breeding, entomology (including taxonomy), and insect control has declined. Access to this  
7 knowledge will be critical; the challenge will be how to staff internally, or to develop  
8 relationships with experts in other federal or state agencies, universities, or the private sector.

9  
10 Resource management is challenging in today’s environment, and climate change will increase  
11 that challenge. Line officers and resource staff are faced with—and will continue to be faced  
12 with—the challenge of making decisions in an uncertain environment. Facilitation of a learning  
13 environment, where novel approaches to addressing climate change impacts and ecosystem  
14 adaptation are supported by the agency, will support USFS employees as they attempt to achieve  
15 management goals in the face of climate uncertainty and change. Scientists and managers will  
16 sometimes be called upon to sift through apparently conflicting approaches to understanding  
17 climate impacts on ecosystems. What may appear as “mistakes” are, in fact, opportunities to  
18 learn the technical issues and conditions for assessing and using such approaches.

19  
20 It may be that NF staff will not be able to keep up with the rapidly changing science. Thus, it is  
21 critical to build ongoing relationships between researchers (within and outside the USFS) and the  
22 NF staff. An example of such a partnership is the Regional Integrated Sciences and Assessments  
23 (RISA) program, which supports research that addresses complex climate-sensitive issues of  
24 concern to decision-makers and policy planners at a regional level. The RISA research team  
25 members are primarily based at universities, though some of the team members are based at  
26 government research facilities, non-profit organizations, or private sector entities. Traditionally  
27 the research has focused on the fisheries, water, wildfire, and agriculture sectors.

28 **3.5.2.4 Develop Partnerships to Enhance Natural Resource Management under a Changing**  
29 **Climate**

30 There is an urgent need for policy makers, managers, scientists, stakeholders, and the broader  
31 public to share the specific evidence of global climate change and its projected consequences on  
32 ecosystems, as well as their understanding of the choices, future opportunities, and risks. The  
33 dialogue on adaptation and mitigation might begin with the USFS and current partners. Changes  
34 in ecosystems service and biodiversity (*e.g.*, a loss of cold-water fisheries in some areas and the  
35 development of warm water fisheries) under a changing climate will likely reveal a need to  
36 develop new partnerships.

37  
38 Education and outreach on the scale necessary will require new funding and educational  
39 initiatives. Effective efforts, informed by cutting-edge social science insights on effective  
40 communication, will involve diverse suites of educational media, including information delivery  
41 on multiple and evolving platforms. There will also be a need to educate landowners in the WUI  
42 about the potential for increased disturbances or changing patterns of disturbances in these areas,  
43 as well as the challenges of land ownership and protection of valued resources within this  
44 environment.

### 1 **3.5.2.5 Increase Effective Collaboration Across Federally Managed Landscapes**

2 Where federally managed land encompasses large landscapes, increasing collaboration will  
 3 facilitate the accomplishment of common goals (*e.g.*, the conservation of threatened and  
 4 endangered species), as well as adaptation and mitigation, that can only be attained on larger  
 5 connected (or contiguous) landscapes. Common goals might include protection of threatened and  
 6 endangered species habitats, integrated treatment of fuels or insect and disease conditions that  
 7 place adjacent ownerships at risk, and developing effective strategies to minimize loss of life and  
 8 property at the WUI.  
 9

10 While collaboration logically makes sense, and seems conceptually like the only way to manage  
 11 complex ownerships, large landscapes, and across multiple jurisdictions, there are many  
 12 challenges to such an approach. Attempting to collaborate multi-institutionally across large  
 13 landscape scales can bring into focus unexpected institutional barrier and focus unanticipated  
 14 societal responses. For example, large multi-forest landscapes have high investment stakes—  
 15 with resulting political pressure from many different directions. Further, if collaboration is taken  
 16 to mean equal participation and that each collaborator has an effective voice, then potential  
 17 mismatches among laws, regulations, resources and staffing capacities can lead to situations in  
 18 which collaboration by different groups is uneven and possibly unsuccessful. For example, the  
 19 USFS, EPA, and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service each must obey its particular governing  
 20 laws, and thus agency oversight can overrule attempts at equal participation and collaboration.  
 21 Careful consideration of the challenges and expert facilitation may be necessary to successfully  
 22 manage adaptation across large landscapes.  
 23

### 24 **3.5.2.6 Establish Priorities for Addressing Potential Changes in Populations, Species, and** 25 **Community Abundances, Structures, Compositions, and Ranges, Including Potential** 26 **Species Extirpation and Extinction under Climate Change**

27 A primary premise for adaptive approaches is that change, novelty, uncertainty, and uniqueness  
 28 of individual situations are expected to define the planning backdrop of the future. Management  
 29 goals for species and ecosystems across the spectrum of NFs also vary for many reasons. As a  
 30 result, proactive climate planning will reflect a range of management intensities. Some species  
 31 and ecosystems (already affected in the near-term) may require aggressive treatment to maintain  
 32 viability or resilience; others may require reduction of current stressors, and others less intensive  
 33 management, at least in the near future. While evaluating priorities has always been important in  
 34 resource management, the magnitude and scope of anticipated needs, combined with diminishing  
 35 availability of human resources, dictate that priorities may need to be evaluated swiftly, strictly,  
 36 and definitively. Consideration of methods to establish these priorities before the crisis appears  
 37 would facilitate decision-making. The medical metaphor of triage is appropriate here. Other  
 38 approaches include developing strategies that establish options that are “win-win” or “no  
 39 regrets,” or those that gradually add options as resources and the need for change become  
 40 apparent. These approaches are best developed jointly by neighboring land resource managers  
 41 and private land owners, or regionally, to guide the management of currently rare or threatened  
 42 and endangered species as well as of populations, species, communities, and ecosystems that  
 43 expand and retreat across the larger landscape. These approaches could capitalize on the  
 44 respective strengths of the various local, state, and federal land management agencies.

### 1 **3.5.2.7 Reduce Current Stressors**

2 The USFS implements a variety of management approaches to reduce the impact of existing  
 3 stressors on NFs (see Section 3.3.3), and an increased emphasis on these efforts represents an  
 4 important “no regrets” strategy. It is likely that the direct impacts of climate change on  
 5 ecosystems, and the effects of interactions of climate change with other major stressors, may  
 6 render NFs increasingly prone to more frequent, extensive, and severe disturbances, especially  
 7 drought, insect and disease outbreaks, invasive species, and wildfire. Increased flooding is a  
 8 likely possibility. Air pollution can negatively affect the health and productivity of NFs, and the  
 9 fragmented landscape in which many NFs are situated impedes important ecosystem processes,  
 10 including migration. Efforts to address the existing stressors would address current management  
 11 needs, allow an incremental approach that begins to incorporate climate into management and  
 12 planning, and potentially reduce the future interactions of these stressors with climate change.  
 13

### 14 **3.5.2.8 Develop Early Detection and Rapid Response Systems for Post-Disturbance** 15 **Management**

16 Early detection and rapid response systems are a component in the current invasive species  
 17 strategy of the USFS. Such an approach may have value for a broader suite of climate-induced  
 18 stressors, for example using the current network of experimental forests and sites in an early  
 19 detection and response system. Consideration of post-disturbance management for short-term  
 20 restoration and for long-term restoration under climate change prior to the disturbance (fire,  
 21 invasives, flooding, hurricanes, ice storms) may identify opportunities and barriers. Large  
 22 system-resetting disturbances offer the opportunity to influence the future structure and function  
 23 of ecosystems through carefully designed management experiments in adapting to climatic  
 24 change. Current limitations (barriers) may need to be revisited so that restricted management  
 25 practices are permitted.

## 26 **3.5.3 Research Priorities**

### 27 **3.5.3.1 Conceptual (Research Gaps)**

28 Global climate change will continually alter the dynamics of ecosystems, local climate,  
 29 disturbances, and management, challenging not only the management options but also the current  
 30 understanding of these dynamics within the scientific community. To address the long-term  
 31 challenges, it will be valuable to establish strong management-research partnerships now to  
 32 collaboratively explore the information and research needed to manage ecosystem services under  
 33 a changing climate. These research-management partnerships could identify research studies on  
 34 how forest planning can better adapt to climate change in the long-term, as well as in near-term  
 35 project-level analyses. Further adaptation approaches could be tested, including improved  
 36 communication of knowledge and research.  
 37

38 Climate change will interact with current stressors—air quality, native insects and diseases, non-  
 39 native invasives, and fragmentation—in potentially surprising ways. Greater understanding of  
 40 the potential interactions of multiple stressors and climate change is needed through field  
 41 experiments, modeling exercises, and data mining and analysis of past forest history or even  
 42 recent geological records. Such approaches could promote syntheses of disciplinary research

1 related to climate and other stressors, and integrate the efforts of the research communities at  
2 universities, non-governmental organizations, state agencies, tribal organizations, and other  
3 federal agencies.

4  
5 Climate change may also challenge current theories on ecosystem restoration. Current protocols  
6 about restoration may need further experimentation to determine the role and assumptions of  
7 climate in the current techniques, and how a changing climate might alter the application of these  
8 techniques.

9  
10 Determining the baseline for monitoring, determining what to monitor, and evaluating whether  
11 current monitoring approaches will be adequate under a changing climate are critical research  
12 needs. These needs may be approached collaboratively with research institutions and other  
13 federal land management agencies.

14  
15 Understanding ecosystem restoration practices—and what metrics to use for monitoring—will  
16 raise in importance the need for paleo-ecological research. Little of the current understanding of  
17 paleo-ecology is brought into current thinking about the dynamics of species, communities and  
18 landscapes. This knowledge, relevant to the present and future, provides a greater understanding  
19 of lessons about change, dynamism, thresholds, novelty, reversibility, individualistic responses,  
20 and non-analog conditions. Whether to manage for process or structure may be learned from  
21 studying past responses to historic climate change. A paleo approach places managers in the  
22 stream of change. Thus: what is a baseline? What are native species range distributions? What is  
23 natural?

24  
25 The adaptive capacity of NFs and the surrounding social and economic systems is not well-  
26 understood. There is great need for social scientific research into the factors and processes that  
27 enhance NFs' adaptive capacity, as well as into the barriers and limits to potentially hinder  
28 effective and efficient adaptation. In addition, socioeconomic research and monitoring are  
29 needed on how social and economic variables and systems are changing, and are likely to change  
30 further, as climate change influences the opportunities and impacts within and surrounding NFs.  
31 The expansion of the urban and suburban environment into remote areas will likely be influenced  
32 by climate change—potentially shifting this expansion to higher elevations or to more northerly  
33 regions where winters may historically not have been as severe. Recreational choices are also  
34 likely to be influenced by climate changes, shifting outdoor activities across a spectrum of  
35 options from land-based to water-based, from lower/warmer regions to higher/cooler regions.

36  
37 The need currently exists to develop tradeoff analyses for situations in which management  
38 actions taken now potentially could alter more serious impacts later, such as the tradeoffs of  
39 planned prescribed fire/air quality versus unplanned wildfire/smoke/air quality. Habitat  
40 restoration for threatened and endangered species under a changing climate might involve social,  
41 economic, and ecological impacts and opportunities on NF land, adjacent ownerships, or private  
42 land. Tradeoffs involve ecological benefits and consequences, as well as social and economic  
43 benefits and consequences. Similarly, the tradeoffs between mitigation and adaptation at present  
44 cannot be addressed in the available suite of decision-making and management tools.

45

1 These research priorities will be most useful to managers if they explicitly incorporate  
 2 evaluations of uncertainty. Toward that end, new approaches for assessing (or evaluating)  
 3 uncertainty with quantitative and qualitative management methods are needed.

#### 4 **3.5.3.2 Data Gaps (Monitoring/Mapping)**

5 Information on the status of ecosystem services as climate changes will be important in  
 6 ascertaining whether management goals are being attained under the changing climate. The  
 7 Forest Inventory and Analysis data have informed historical analyses of productivity shifts as  
 8 affected by recent climate variability and change at large spatial scales, and contributed to  
 9 national accounting analyses of carbon in U.S. forests. Other potential analyses with these  
 10 inventory data could include exploring the response of ecosystems to changing fire regimes and  
 11 insect outbreaks. Opportunities exist to link the existing inventory networks within the USFS  
 12 (Forest Inventory Analysis) with other existing and planned networks, such as the National  
 13 Science Foundation's Long-term Ecological Research networks, the National Ecological  
 14 Observation Network (NEON), and other monitoring programs within USGS and NASA.  
 15 Increasingly, data are needed in a spatial format.

16  
 17 The Montreal Process Criteria and Indicators for Boreal and Temperate Forests have been used  
 18 to describe sustainability of forests and rangelands by managers at several spatial scales. The use  
 19 of Montreal Process Criteria and Indicators may also have value in assessing the opportunities  
 20 and impacts on sustainability under a changing climate.

#### 21 **3.5.3.3 Tool Gaps (Models and Decision Support Tools)**

22 There is a need to develop techniques, methods, and information to assess the consequences of  
 23 climate change and variability on physical, biological, and socioeconomic systems at varying  
 24 spatial scales, including regional, multi-forest, and NF scales. The analyses at the national scale  
 25 in the RPA Assessment, particularly if extended beyond forest dynamics, could provide national-  
 26 level information and set a larger context for the forest opportunities and impacts under climate  
 27 change. Fine-scale analyses of the ecological and economic impacts of climate change will soon  
 28 be available and could offer projections at the spatial scale of importance to managers.

29  
 30 There is a need to develop a toolbox for resource managers that can be used to quantify effects of  
 31 climate change on natural resources, as a component of land management planning. This toolbox  
 32 would have a suite of science-based products that deliver state-of-the-art information derived  
 33 from data, qualitative models, and quantitative models in accessible formats, including a Web-  
 34 based portal on climate-change science. Technology transfer through training packages on  
 35 climate change that can be delivered through workshops and online tutorials would be valuable  
 36 to internal staff and potentially to stakeholders.

37  
 38 Forest-scale decision support applications that incorporate the dynamics of climate, climate  
 39 variability, and climate change into natural resource management planning would enhance the  
 40 information about climate used in management analyses. At present, most established planning  
 41 and operational tools do not directly incorporate climate variability and change. These tools need  
 42 to be informed by recent scientific data on climate trends and the relationship between climate  
 43 and the resource of interest. Research can contribute immediately to the revision of popular tools

1 such as the Forest Vegetation Simulator, thereby improving their accuracy for a variety of  
2 applications. A Web-based portal on climate change, customized for the needs of USFS users,  
3 will be an important component of the toolbox, providing one-stop shopping for scientific  
4 information, key publications, and climate-smart models. A training curriculum and tutorials will  
5 ensure that Forest Service managers receive current, consistent information on climate change  
6 issues.

7  
8 It can not be overstated however, that effective decision support involves more than providing  
9 the right information and tools and the right time. Importantly, for climate change information to  
10 meet the needs of NF land managers at various scales of decision-making, and for that  
11 information to be used properly and effectively, it is highly advisable that ongoing relationships  
12 be built between those producing the relevant information (researchers) and those eventually  
13 using it (managers). Thus tools, Web-based tutorials, reports, and other written materials should  
14 always be viewed as decision-support products that must be embedded in an ongoing decision-  
15 support process.

#### 17 **3.5.3.4 Management Adjustments or Realignments**

18 The development of management alternatives for adapting to and mitigating the effects of an  
19 uncertain and variable climate, and other stressors on natural resource outputs and ecosystem  
20 services, will require experimentation under the changing climate. Many proposed management  
21 alternatives may need to be established as small-scale pilot efforts, to determine the efficacy of  
22 such proactive approaches to adapting to climate change in various ecosystems and climates.  
23 Protocols for “assisted migration” of species need to be tested and established before approaches  
24 are implemented more broadly.

25  
26 Assumptions about the dynamics of ecosystems under climate change and alternative treatments  
27 may need to be revisited in field experiments. Regeneration and seedling establishment studies  
28 using a variety of vegetation management treatments under the changing climate may suggest  
29 that new approaches are needed to ensure ecosystem establishment and restoration.

30  
31 New or innovative management options may need experiments or demonstration projects to  
32 explore their impact. For example, research is needed to increase our understanding of the  
33 impacts of active management on ecosystems—such as the effects of reintroducing species to  
34 disturbed ecosystems, or transferring species to areas outside of the current distribution but  
35 within areas of compatible climate. The potential for *ex situ* gene conservation techniques to  
36 remedy the impact of global change might be explored. These techniques (seed banks, common  
37 garden studies) conserve genetic diversity outside the environment where it exists at this time.  
38 Putting seed from diverse parents in diverse populations into long term storage will not prevent  
39 existing forest ecosystems from being disrupted, but it provides an opportunity to reestablish  
40 populations in new and more appropriate locations if needed. Establishing common garden  
41 studies with diverse materials at multiple locations can serve several purposes. Assuming the  
42 material planted in these plots survives, it can serve as a source of propagules for establishing  
43 new populations. The tests can also provide evidence of what sources of plant material are most  
44 adapted for the new conditions.

45

1 Research is needed to explore options to reduce both the short- and long-term vulnerability of  
2 ecosystems to disturbance altered by climate (insects, fire, disease, etc.). Many natural resource  
3 values can be enhanced by allowing fire to play its natural role where private property and social  
4 values can be protected. Research on new opportunities for ecosystem services within NFs is  
5 needed. Testing and developing a range of science-based management alternatives for adapting  
6 to and mitigating the effects of climate change on major resource values (water, vegetation,  
7 wildlife, recreation, etc.) may facilitate the attainment of these goals under a changing climate.



### 1 **3.6 References**

- 2 **Aber**, J.D., C.L. Goodale, S.V. Ollinger, M.L. Smith, A.H. Magill, M.E. Martin, R.A. Hallett,  
3 and J.L. Stoddard, 2001: Is nitrogen deposition altering the nitrogen status of northeastern  
4 forests? *BioScience*, **53(4)**, 375-389.
- 5 **Adams**, M.B., L. Loughry, and L. Plaughner, 2004: *Experimental Forests and Ranges of the*  
6 *USDA Forest Service*. General Technical Report NE-321, United States Department of  
7 Agriculture Forest Service, Northeastern Research Station.
- 8 **Adger**, W.N., 1999: Social vulnerability to climate change and extremes in coastal Vietnam.  
9 *World Development*, **27(2)**, 249-269.
- 10 **Adger**, W.N., 2003: Social aspects of adaptive capacity, In: *Climate Change, Adaptive Capacity*  
11 *and Development*, Imperial College Press, London, UK, pp. 29-49.
- 12 **Adger**, W.N., 2006: Vulnerability. *Global Environmental Change*, **16(3)**, 268-281.
- 13 **Adger**, W.N. and P.M. Kelly, 2001: *Living With Environmental Change: Social Vulnerability*  
14 *and Resilience in Vietnam*. Routledge.
- 15 **Agee**, J.K., 1996: *Fire Ecology of Pacific Northwest Forests*. Island Press, Washington, D.C..
- 16 **Agee**, J.K., 1998: The landscape ecology of western forest fire regimes. *Northwest Science*, **72**,  
17 24-34.
- 18 **Ainsworth**, E.A. and S.P. Long, 2005: What have we learned from 15 years of free-air CO<sub>2</sub>  
19 enrichment (FACE)? A meta-analytic review of the responses of photosynthesis, canopy  
20 properties and plant production to rising CO<sub>2</sub>. *New Phytologist*, **165**, 351-372.
- 21 **Alberto**, A.M.P., L.H. Ziska, C.R. Cervancia, and P.A. Manalo, 1996: The influence of  
22 increasing carbon dioxide and temperature on competitive interactions between a C 3  
23 crop, rice (*Oryza sativa*) and a C 4 weed (*Echinochloa glabrescens*). *Australian Journal*  
24 *of Plant Physiology*, **23(6)**, 795-802.
- 25 **Alig**, R.J., J.D. Kline, and M. Lichtenstein, 2004: Urbanization on the US landscape: looking  
26 ahead in the 21st century. *Landscape and Urban Planning*, **69(2-3)**, 219-234.
- 27 **Allegheny National Forest**, 2006: *Ecological Context*. USDA Forest Service.

- 1 **Allen**, C.D. and D.D. Breshears, 1998: Drought-induced shift of a forest-woodland ecotone:  
 2 Rapid landscape response to climate variation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
 3 *Sciences of the United States of America*, **95(25)**, 14839-14842.
- 4 **Amman**, G.D., 1973: Population changes of the Mountain Pine Beetle in relation to elevation.  
 5 *Environmental Entomology*, **2(541)**, 547.
- 6 **Anderson**, J.L., R. W. Hilborn, R. T. Lackey, and D. Ludwig, 2003: Watershed restoration -  
 7 adaptive decision making in the face of uncertainty, In: *Strategies for Restoring River*  
 8 *Ecosystems: Sources of Variability and Uncertainty in Natural and Managed Systems*,  
 9 American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD, pp. 202-232.
- 10 **Angert**, A., S. Biraud, C. Bonfils, C.C. Henning, W. Buermann, J. Pinzon, C.J. Tucker, and I.  
 11 Fung, 2005: Drier summers cancel out the CO<sub>2</sub> uptake enhancement induced by warmer  
 12 springs. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of*  
 13 *America*, **102(31)**, 10823-10827.
- 14 **Arnell**, N.W., 1999: Climate change and global water resources. *Global Environmental Change*,  
 15 *Part A: Human and Policy Dimensions*, **9**, S31-S49.
- 16 **Aspen Global Change Institute**, 2006: *Climate Change and Aspen: an Assessment of Impacts*  
 17 *and Potential Responses*. Aspen Global Change Institute, Aspen, CO, pp. 1-178.
- 18 **Auclair**, A.N.D., P.D. Eglinton, and S.L. Minnemeyer, 1997: Principal forest dieback episodes  
 19 in northern hardwoods: development of numeric indices of area extent and severity.  
 20 *Water, Air and Soil Pollution*, **93**, 175-198.
- 21 **Auclair**, A.N.D., J.T. Lill, and C. Revenga, 1996: The role of climate variability and global  
 22 warming in the dieback of northern hardwoods. *Water, Air and Soil Pollution*, **91**, 163-  
 23 169.
- 24 **Bachelet**, D., J. Lenihan, R. Drapek, and R. Neilson, in press: VEMAP vs VINCERA: A DGVM  
 25 sensitivity to differences in climate scenarios. *Global and Planetary Change*.
- 26 **Bachelet**, D., J. Lenihan, R. Neilson, R. Drapek, and T. Kittel, 2005: Simulating the response of  
 27 natural ecosystems and their fire regimes to climatic variability in Alaska. *Canadian*  
 28 *Journal of Forest Research*, **35(9)**, 2244-2257.
- 29 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, T. Hickler, R.J. Drapek, J.M. Lenihan, M.T. Sykes, B. Smith, S.  
 30 Sitch, and K. Thonicke, 2003: Simulating past and future dynamics of natural ecosystems  
 31 in the United States. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **17(2)**, 1045.

- 1 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, J.M. Lenihan, and R.J. Drapek, 2001: Climate change effects on  
2 vegetation distribution and carbon budget in the United States. *Ecosystems*, **4**, 164-185.
- 3 **Balvanera**, P., A.B. Pfisterer, N. Buchmann, J.S. He, T. Nakashizuka, D. Raffaelli, and B.  
4 Schmid, 2006: Quantifying the evidence for biodiversity effects on ecosystem  
5 functioning and services. *Ecology Letters*, **9(10)**, 1146-1156.
- 6 **Barden**, L.S., 1987: Invasion of *Microstegium vimineum* (poaceae), an exotic, annual, shade-  
7 tolerant, C4 grass, into a North Carolina floodplain. *American Midland Naturalist*,  
8 **118(1)**, 40-45.
- 9 **Barnett**, T.P., J.C. Adam, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Potential impacts of a warming climate  
10 on water availability in snow-dominated regions. *Nature*, **438(7066)**, 303-309.
- 11 **Baron**, J.S., M.D. Hartman, L.E. Band, and R.B. Lamers, 2000: Sensitivity of a high-elevation  
12 rocky mountain watershed altered climate and CO<sub>2</sub>. *Water Resources Research*, **36(1)**,  
13 89-99.
- 14 **Bayley**, P.B., 1995: Understanding large river: floodplain ecosystems. *BioScience*, **45(3)**, 153-  
15 158.
- 16 **Bazzaz**, F.A., 1990: The response of natural ecosystems to the rising global CO<sub>2</sub> levels. *Annual*  
17 *Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **21**, 167-196.
- 18 **Bennett**, E.M., S.R. Carpenter, G.D. Peterson, G.S. Cumming, M. Zurek, and P. Pingali, 2003:  
19 Why global scenarios need ecology. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **1**, 322-  
20 329.
- 21 **Benning**, T.L., D. LaPointe, C.T. Atkinson, and P.M. Vitousek, 2002: Interactions of climate  
22 change with biological invasions and land use in the Hawaiian Islands: modeling the fate  
23 of endemic birds using a geographic information system. *Proceedings of the National*  
24 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, pp. 14246-14249.
- 25 **Berg**, E.E., J.D. Henry, C.L. Fastie, A.D. De Volder, and S.M. Matsuoka, 2006: Spruce beetle  
26 outbreaks on the Kenai Peninsula, Alaska, and Kluane National Park and Reserve, Yukon  
27 Territory: Relationship to summer temperatures and regional differences in disturbance  
28 regimes. *Forest Ecology and Management*, **227(3)**, 219-232.
- 29 **Birch**, T.W., 1996: *Private Forest-Land Owners of the United States, 1994*. Resour. Bull. NE-  
30 134 U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment  
31 Station, Radnor, PA, pp.183 p.

- 1 **Birdsey, R., R. Alig, and D. Adams, 2000:** Mitigation activities in the forest sector to reduce  
 2 emissions and enhance sinks of greenhouse gases, In: *The Impact of Climate Change on*  
 3 *America's Forests, Publication Number RMRS-GTR59*, [Joyce, L.A. and R. Birdsey  
 4 (eds.)]. Rocky Mountain Research Station, Fort Collins, CO, pp. 112-131.
- 5 **Blaikie, P., T. Cannon, I. Davis, and B. Wisner, 1994:** *At Risk: Natural Hazards, People's*  
 6 *Vulnerability and Disasters*. London: Routledge.
- 7 **Blaikie, P.M., H.C. Brookfield, and B.J. Allen, 1987:** *Land Degradation and Society*. Methuen.
- 8 **Boisvenue, C. and S.W. Running, 2006:** Impacts of climate change on natural forest productivity  
 9 - evidence since the middle of the 20th century. *Global Change Biology*, **12(5)**, 862-882.
- 10 **Bormann, B., R. Haynes, and J.R. Martin, 2007:** Adaptive management of forest ecosystems:  
 11 did some rubber hit the road? *BioScience*, **57(2)**, 186-191.
- 12 **Boucher, T.V. and B.R. Mead, 2006:** Vegetation change and forest regeneration on the Kenai  
 13 Peninsula, Alaska following a spruce beetle outbreak, 1987-2000. *Forest Ecology and*  
 14 *Management*, **227(3)**, 233-246.
- 15 **Breshears, D.D., N.S. Cobb, P.M. Rich, K.P. Price, C.D. Allen, R.G. Balice, W.H. Romme, J.H.**  
 16 **Kastens, M.L. Floyd, and J. Belnap, 2005:** Regional vegetation die-off in response to  
 17 global-change-type drought. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the*  
 18 *United States of America*, **102(42)**, 15144-15148.
- 19 **Briceno-Elizondo, E., J. Garcia-Gonzalo, H. Peltola, and S. Kellomaki, 2006:** Carbon stocks and  
 20 timber yield in two boreal forest ecosystems under current and changing climatic  
 21 conditions subjected to varying management regimes. *Environmental Science & Policy*,  
 22 **9(3)**, 237-252.
- 23 **Brooks, M.L., C.M. D'Antonio, D.M. Richardson, J.B. Grace, J.E. Keeley, J.M. DiTomaso, R.J.**  
 24 **Hobbs, M. Pellant, and D. Pyke, 2004:** Effects of invasive alien plants on fire regimes.  
 25 *BioScience*, **54**, 677-688.
- 26 **Brown, T.J., B.L. Hall, and A.L. Westerling, 2004:** The impact of twenty-first century climate  
 27 change on wildland fire danger in the Western United States: an applications perspective.  
 28 *Climatic Change*, **62(1-3)**, 365-388.
- 29 **Bruederle, L.P. and F.W. Stearns, 1985:** Ice storm damage to a southern Wisconsin mesic forest.  
 30 *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club*, **112(2)**, 167-175.
- 31 **Bugmann, H., B. Zierl, and S. Schumacher, 2005:** Projecting the impacts of climate change on  
 32 mountain forests and landscapes, In: *Global Change and Mountain Regions: an Overview*

- 1            *of Current Knowledge*, [Huber, U.M., H. Bugmann, and M.A. Reasoner (eds.)]. Springer,  
2            Berlin, pp. 477-488.
- 3    **Burdon**, J.J. and T. Elmqvist, 1996: Selective sieves in the epidemiology of *Melampsora lini*.  
4            *Plant pathology*, **45(5)**, 933-943.
- 5    **Burton**, I., 1996: The growth of adaptation capacity: practice and policy, In: *Adapting to Climate*  
6            *Change: an International Perspective*, [Smith, J.B., N. Bhatti, G. Menzhulin, R. Benioff,  
7            M. Budyko, M. Campos, B. Jallow, and F. Rijsberman (eds.)]. Springer, New York, pp.  
8            55-67.
- 9    **Cameron**, P., G. Jelinek, A.M. Kelly, L. Murray, and J. Heyworth, 2000: Triage. Textbook of  
10           adult emergency medicine. *Emergency Medicine*, **12**, 155-156.
- 11   **Camp**, A.E., P.F. Hessburg, R.L. Everett, and C.D. Oliver, 1995: *Spatial Changes in Forest*  
12           *Landscape Patterns Resulting From Altered Disturbance Regimes on the Eastern Slope*  
13           *of the Washington Cascades*. General Technical Report INT-GTR-320, US Department  
14           of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station, Ogden, Utah, pp.1-283.
- 15   **Carroll**, A.L., S. W. Taylor, J. Régnière, and L. Safranyik, 2004: Effects of climate change on  
16           range expansion by the mountain pine beetle in British Columbia, In: *Mountain Pine*  
17           *Beetle Symposium: Challenges and Solutions*, [Shore, T.L., J.E. Brooks, and J.E. Stone  
18           (eds.)]. 30-31 October 2003, Information Report BC-X-399. Natural Resources Canada,  
19           Canadian Forest Service, Pacific Forestry Centre, Victoria, British Columbia, pp. 223-  
20           232, 298.
- 21   **Cash**, D. and J. Borck, 2006: Countering the 'loading dock' approach to linking science and  
22           decision making: a comparative analysis of ENSO forecasting systems. *Science,*  
23           *Technology, and Human Values*, **31(4)**, 465-494.
- 24   **Cash**, D.W., 2001: In order to aid in diffusing useful and practical information: Agricultural  
25           extension and boundary organizations. *Science, Technology, & Human Values*, **26(4)**,  
26           431-453.
- 27   **Cash**, D.W., W.C. Clark, F. Alcock, N.M. Dickson, N. Eckley, D.H. Guston, J. Jaeger, and R.B.  
28           Mitchell, 2003: Knowledge systems for sustainable development. *Proceedings of the*  
29           *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **100(14)**, 8086-8091.
- 30   **Cathcart**, J. and M. Delaney, 2006: *Carbon Accounting: Determining Offsets From Forest*  
31           *Products*. Cloughesy, M. (Ed.), *Forests, Carbon, and Climate Change: A synthesis of*  
32           *science findings*, Oregon Forest Resources Institute, pp.157-176.
- 33   **Certini**, G., 2005: Effects of fire on properties of forest soils: a review. *Oecologia*, **143(1)**, 1-10.

- 1 **Chen, C.Y., R.S. Stemberger, N.C. Kamman, B.M. Mayes, and C.L. Folt, 2005:** Patterns of Hg  
 2 bioaccumulation and transfer in aquatic food webs across multi-lake studies in the  
 3 Northeast US. *Ecotoxicology*, **14(1)**, 135-147.
- 4 **Chornesky, E.A., A.M. Bartuska, G.H. Aplet, K.O. Britton, J. Cummings-carlson, F.W. Davis,**  
 5 **J. Eskow, D.R. Gordon, K.W. Gottschalk, and R.A. Haack, 2005:** Science priorities for  
 6 reducing the threat of invasive species to sustainable forestry. *BioScience*, **55(4)**, 335-  
 7 348.
- 8 **Christen, D. and G.R. Matlack, 2006:** Essays: the role of roadsides in plant invasions: a  
 9 demographic approach. *Conservation Biology*, **20(2)**, 385-391.
- 10 **Clark, M.E., K.A. Rose, D.A. Levine, and W.W. Hargrove, 2001:** Predicting climate change  
 11 effects on Appalachian trout: combining GIS and individual-based modeling. *Ecological*  
 12 *Applications*, **11(1)**, 161-178.
- 13 **Collingham, Y.C. and B. Huntley, 2000:** Impacts of habitat fragmentation and patch size upon  
 14 migration rates. *Ecological Applications*, **10(1)**, 131-144.
- 15 **Colorado Department of Natural Resources, 2005:** *Report on the Health of Colorado's*  
 16 *Forests*. Colorado Department of Natural Resources, Division of Forestry,  
 17 Denver, Colorado, pp.1-32.
- 18 **Coquard, J., P.B. Duffy, K.E. Taylor, and J.P. Iorio, 2004:** Present and future surface climate in  
 19 the western USA as simulated by 15 global climate models. *Climate Dynamics*, **23**, 455-  
 20 472.
- 21 **Cordell, H.K., C. Betz, J.M. Bowker, D.B.K. English, S.H. Mou, J.C. Bergstrom, J.R. Teasley,**  
 22 **M.A. Tarrant, and J. Loomis, 1999:** *Outdoor Recreation in American Life: a National*  
 23 *Assessment of Demand and Supply Trends*. Sagamore Publishing, Champaign, IL, pp. xii-  
 24 449.
- 25 **Covington, W.W., R.L. Everett, R. Steele, L.L. Irwin, and T.A. Daer, 1994:** Historical and  
 26 anticipated changes in forest ecosystems of the Inland West of the United States. *Journal*  
 27 *of Sustainable Forestry*, **2**, 13-63.
- 28 **Currie, D.J., 2001:** Projected effects of climate change on patterns of vertebrate and tree species  
 29 richness in the conterminous United States. *Ecosystems*, **4(3)**, 216-225.
- 30 **D'Antonio, C.M., 2000:** Fire, plant invasions, and global changes, In: *Invasive Species in a*  
 31 *Changing World*, [Mooney, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs (eds.)].

- 1 **D'Antonio**, C.M., J.T. Tunison, and R. Loh, 2000: Variation in the impact of exotic grass on  
 2 native plant composition in relation to fire across an elevation gradient in Hawaii. *Austral*  
 3 *Ecology*, **25**, 507-522.
- 4 **D'Antonio**, C.M. and P.M. Vitousek, 1992: Biological invasions by exotic grasses, the grass/fire  
 5 cycle, and global change. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **23**, 63-87.
- 6 **Dale**, V.H., L.A. Joyce, S. McNulty, R.P. Neilson, M.P. Ayres, M.D. Flannigan, P.J. Hanson,  
 7 L.C. Irland, A.E. Lugo, and C.J. Peterson, 2001: Climate change and forest disturbances.  
 8 *BioScience*.
- 9 **Davis**, M.B., 1989: Lags in vegetation response to greenhouse warming. *Climatic Change*, **15(1)**,  
 10 75-82.
- 11 **Davis**, M.B. and R.G. Shaw, 2001: Range shifts and adaptive responses to quaternary climate  
 12 change: paleoclimate. *Science*, **292(5517)**, 673-679.
- 13 **De Steven**, D., J. Kline, and P.E. Matthiae, 1991: Long-term changes in a Wisconsin Fagus-Acer  
 14 forest in relation to glaze storm disturbance. *Journal of Vegetation Science*, 201-208.
- 15 **Decruyenaere**, J.G. and J.S. Holt, 2005: Ramet demography of a clonal invader, *Arundo donax*  
 16 (poaceae), in southern California. *Plant and Soil*, (**277**), 41-52.
- 17 **Deluca**, T.H. and A. Sala, 2006: Frequent fire alters nitrogen transformations in ponderosa pine  
 18 stands of the inland northwest. *Ecology*, **87(10)**, 2511-2522.
- 19 **Dettinger**, M.D., D.R. Cayan, M.K. Meyer, and A.E. Jeton, 2004: Simulated hydrologic  
 20 responses to climate variations and change in the Merced, Carson, and American River  
 21 basins, Sierra Nevada, California, 1900-2099. *Climatic Change*, **62(1/3)**, 283-317.
- 22 **Díaz**, S., J. Fargione, F.S. Chapin, and D. Tilman, 2006: Biodiversity loss threatens human well-  
 23 being. *PLoS Biology*, **4(8)**, e277.
- 24 **Dixon**, G.E., 2003: *Essential FVS: A User's Guide to the Forest Vegetation Simulator*. U.S.  
 25 Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Forest Management Service Center, Fort  
 26 Collins, CO, pp. 193.
- 27 **Drake**, B.G., M.A. Gonzalez-Meler, and S.P. Long, 1997: More efficient plants: A consequence  
 28 of rising atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>? *Annual Review Plant Physiology Plant Molecular Biology*,  
 29 **48**, 609-639.

- 1 **Driscoll, C.T., Y.J.I. Han, C.Y. Chen, D.C. Evers, K.F. Lambert, T.M. Holsen, N.C. Kamman,**  
2 **and R.K. Munson, 2007: Mercury contamination in forest and freshwater ecosystems in**  
3 **the Northeastern United States. *BioScience*, **57**, 17-28.**
- 4 **Duffy, P.A., J.E. Walsh, J.M. Graham, D.H. Mann, and T.S. Rupp, 2005: Impacts of large-scale**  
5 **atmospheric-ocean variability on Alaskan fire season severity. *Ecological Applications*,**  
6 ****15(4)**, 1317-1330.**
- 7 **Dukes, J.S., 2000: Will the increasing atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentration affect the success of**  
8 **invasive species. *Invasive Species in a Changing World*. Island Press, Washington.**
- 9 **Dukes, J.S. and H.A. Mooney, 1999: Does global change increase the success of biological**  
10 **invaders? *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **14(4)**, 135-139.**
- 11 **Dupouey, J.L., E. Dambrine, J.D. Laffite, and C. Moares, 2002: Irreversible impact of past land**  
12 **use on forest soils and biodiversity. *Ecology*, **83(11)**, 2978-2984.**
- 13 **Earle, T.C. and G.T. Cvetkovich, 1995: *Social Trust: Toward a Cosmopolitan Society*.**  
14 **Praeger/Greenwood.**
- 15 **Eaton, J.G. and R.M. Scheller, 1996: Effects of climate warming on fish thermal habitat in**  
16 **streams of the United States. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **41(5)**, 1109-1115.**
- 17 **Ebersole, J.L., W.J. Liss, and C.A. Frissell, 2001: Relationship between stream temperature,**  
18 **thermal refugia and rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* abundance in arid-land streams**  
19 **in the northwestern United States. *Ecology of Freshwater Fish*, **10(1)**, 1-10.**
- 20 **Englin, J., P.C. Boxall, K. Chakraborty, and D.O. Watson, 1996: Valuing the impacts of forest**  
21 **fires on backcountry forest recreation. *Forest Science*, **42(6)**, 450-455.**
- 22 **Erickson, J.E., J.P. Megonigal, G. Peresta, and B.G. Drake, 2007: Salinity and sea level mediate**  
23 **elevated CO<sub>2</sub> effects on C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> plant interactions and tissue nitrogen in a Chesapeake Bay**  
24 **tidal wetland. *Global Change Biology*, **13**, 202-215.**
- 25 **Ewers, R.M. and R.K. Didham, 2006: Confounding factors in the detection of species responses**  
26 **to habitat fragmentation. *Biological Reviews of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*,**  
27 ****81(1)**, 117-142.**
- 28 **Felzer, B., D. Kicklighter, J. Melillo, C. Wang, Q. Zhuang, and R. Prinn, 2004: Effects of ozone**  
29 **on net primary production and carbon sequestration in the conterminous United States**  
30 **using a biogeochemistry model. *Tellus Series B-Chemical and Physical Meteorology*,**  
31 ****56(3)**, 230-248.**



- 1 **Fenn**, M.E., J.S. Baron, E.B. Allen, H.M. Rueth, K.R. Nydick, L. Geiser, W.D. Bowman, J.O.  
 2 Sickman, T. Meixner, and D.W. Johnson, 2003: Ecological effects of nitrogen deposition  
 3 in the western United States. *BioScience*, **53(4)**, 404-420.
- 4 **Ferrell**, G.T., 1996: *The Influence of Insect Pests and Pathogens on Sierra Forests*. Sierra  
 5 Nevada Ecosystem Project: final report to Congress II, University of California, Centers  
 6 for Water and Wildland Resources, Davis, CA, pp.1177-1192.
- 7 **Fiore**, A.M., D.J. Jacob, I. Bey, R.M. Yantosca, B.D. Field, A.C. Fusco, and J.G. Wilkinson,  
 8 2002: Background ozone over the United States in summer- Origin, trend, and  
 9 contribution to pollution episodes. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **107(D15)**.
- 10 **Flannigan**, M.D., B.J. Stocks, and B.M. Wotton, 2000: Climate change and forest fires. *Science*  
 11 *of the Total Environment*, **262(3)**, 221-229.
- 12 **Fleming**, R.A., J.N. Candau, and R.S. McAlpine, 2002: Landscape-scale analysis of interactions  
 13 between insect defoliation and forest fire in Central Canada. *Climatic Change*, **55(1)**,  
 14 251-272.
- 15 **Foley**, J.A., R. DeFries, G.P. Asner, C. Barford, G. Bonan, S.R. Carpenter, F.S. Chapin, M.T.  
 16 Coe, G.C. Daily, H.K. Gibbs, J.H. Helkowski, T. Holloway, E.A. Howard, C.J. Kucharik,  
 17 C. Monfreda, J.A. Patz, I.C. Prentice, N. Ramankutty, and P.K. Snyder, 2005: Global  
 18 consequences of land use. *Science*, **309(5734)**, 570-574.
- 19 **Foster**, D., F. Swanson, J. Aber, I. Burke, N. Brokaw, D. Tilman, and A. Knapp, 2003: The  
 20 importance of land-use legacies to ecology and conservation. *BioScience*, **53(1)**, 77-88.
- 21 **Fox**, D., 2007: Back to the no-analog future? *Science*, **316**, 823-825.
- 22 **Frelich**, L., C. Hale, S. Scheu, A. Holdsworth, L. Heneghan, P. Bohlen, and P. Reich, 2006:  
 23 Earthworm invasion into previously earthworm-free temperate and boreal forests.  
 24 *Biological Invasions*, **8(6)**, 1235-1245.
- 25 **Frelich**, L.E., 2002: *Forest Dynamics and Disturbance Regimes: Studies From Temperate*  
 26 *Evergreen-Deciduous Forests*. Cambridge University Press, New York, NY.
- 27 **Fu**, Q., C.M. Johanson, J.M. Wallace, and T. Reichler, 2006: Enhanced mid-latitude  
 28 tropospheric warming in satellite measurements. *Science*, **312(5777)**, 1179.
- 29 **GAO**, 2004: *Challenges to Agency Decision and Opportunities for BLM to Standardize Data*  
 30 *Collection*. Oil and gas development GAO-05-124, U.S. Government Accountability  
 31 Office, Washington, DC.

- 1 **Gates, D.M.**, 1993: *Climate Change and Its Biological Consequences*. Sinauer Associates, Inc.,  
2 Massachusetts.
- 3 **Gottschalk, K.W.**, 1995: *Using Silviculture to Improve Health in Northeastern Conifer and*  
4 *Eastern Hardwood Forests*. Forest Health through Silviculture General Technical Report  
5 RM-267, USDA Forest Service, Ft. Collins, CO, pp.219-226.
- 6 **Graham, R.T.**, 2003: *Hayman Fire Case Study: Summary*. General Technical Report RMRS-  
7 GTR-115.
- 8 **Graham, R.T.**, A.E. Harvey, T.B. Jain, and J.R. Tonn, 1999: *The Effects of Thinning and Similar*  
9 *Stand Treatments on Fire Behavior in Western Forests*. General Technical Report PNW-  
10 GTR-463, USDA Forest Service.
- 11 **Groisman, P.Y.**, R.W. Knight, D.R. Easterling, T.R. Karl, G.C. Hegerl, and V.N. Razuvaev,  
12 2005: Trends in intense precipitation in the climate record. *Journal of Climate*, **18(9)**,  
13 1326-1350.
- 14 **Guarin, A.** and A.H. Taylor, 2005: Drought triggered tree mortality in mixed conifer forests in  
15 Yosemite National Park, California, USA. *Forest Ecology and Management*, **218(1)**,  
16 229-244.
- 17 **Gutierrez, R.J.**, M. Cody, S. Courtney, and A.B. Franklin, 2007: The invasion of barred owls  
18 and its potential effect on the spotted owl: a conservation conundrum. *Biological*  
19 *Invasions*, **9(2)**, 181-196.
- 20 **Guyette, R.P.** and C.F. Rabeni, 1995: Climate response among growth increments of fish and  
21 trees. *Oecologia*, **104(3)**, 272-279.
- 22 **Hale, C.M.**, L.E. Frelich, P.B. Reich, and J. Pastor, 2005: Effects of European earthworm  
23 invasion on soil characteristics in northern hardwood forests of Minnesota, USA.  
24 *Ecosystems*, **8(8)**, 911-927.
- 25 **Halpin, P.N.**, 1997: Global climate change and natural-area protection: management responses  
26 and research directions. *Ecological Applications*, **7(3)**, 828-843.
- 27 **Hance, T.**, J. van Baaren, P. Vernon, and G. Boivin, 2007: Impact of extreme temperatures on  
28 parasitoids in a climate change perspective. *Annual Review of Entomology*, **52**, 107-126.
- 29 **Handmer, J.W.**, S. Dovers, and T.E. Downing, 1999: Societal vulnerability to climate change  
30 and variability. *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change*, **4(3)**, 267-281.

- 1 **Hansen**, A.J. and R. DeFries, 2007: Ecological mechanisms linking protected areas to  
2 surrounding lands. *Ecological Applications*, **17**, 974-988.
- 3 **Hansen**, A.J., R.R. Neilson, V.H. Dale, C.H. Flather, L.R. Iverson, D.J. Currie, S. Shafer, R.  
4 Cook, and P.J. Bartlein, 2001: Global change in forests: responses of species,  
5 communities, and biomes. *BioScience*, **51(9)**, 765-779.
- 6 **Hanson**, P.J. and J.F. Weltzin, 2000: Drought disturbance from climate change: response of  
7 United States forests. *Science of the Total Environment*, **262(3)**, 205-220.
- 8 **Hanson**, P.J., S.D. Wullschleger, R.J. Norby, T.J. Tschaplinski, and C.A. Gunderson, 2005:  
9 Importance of changing CO<sub>2</sub>, temperature, precipitation, and ozone on carbon and water  
10 cycles of an upland-oak forest: incorporating experimental results into model simulations.  
11 *Global Change Biology*, **11(9)**, 1402-1423.
- 12 **Hardy**, C.C., K.M. Schmidt, J.M. Menakis, and N.R. Samson, 2001a: Spatial data for national  
13 fire planning and fuel management. *International Journal of Wildland Fire*, **10(4)**, 353-  
14 372.
- 15 **Hardy**, J.P., P.M. Groffman, R.D. Fitzhugh, K.S. Henry, A.T. Welman, J.D. Demers, T.J. Fahey,  
16 C.T. Driscoll, G.L. Tierney, and S. Nolan, 2001b: Snow depth manipulation and its  
17 influence on soil frost and water dynamics in a northern hardwood forest.  
18 *Biogeochemistry*, **56(2)**, 151-174.
- 19 **Harmon**, M.E. and B. Marks, 2002: Effects of silvicultural treatments on carbon stores in forest  
20 stands. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **32**, 863-877.
- 21 **Harris**, J.A., R.J. Hobbs, E. Higgs, and J. Aronson, 2006: Ecological restoration and global  
22 climate change. *Restoration Ecology*, **14(2)**, 170-176.
- 23 **Harvell**, C.D., C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.  
24 Samuel, 2002: Ecology - climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine  
25 biota. *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 26 **Hauer**, F.R., J.A. Stanford, and M.S. Lorang, 2007: Pattern and process in northern rocky  
27 mountain headwaters: ecological linkages in the headwaters of the crown of the  
28 continent. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, **43(1)**, 104-117.
- 29 **Hawbaker**, T.J., V.C. Radeloff, M.K. Clayton, R.B. Hammer, and C.E. Gonzalez-Abraham,  
30 2006: Road development, housing growth, and landscape fragmentation in northern  
31 Wisconsin: 1937-1999. *Ecological Applications*, **16(3)**, 1222-1237.

- 1 **Hayhoe, K.**, D. Cayan, C.B. Field, P.C. Frumhoff, E.P. Maurer, N.L. Miller, S.C. Moser, S.H.  
 2 Schneider, K.N. Cahill, E.E. Cleland, L. Dale, R. Drapek, R.M. Hanemann, L.S.  
 3 Kalkstein, J. Lenihan, C.K. Lunch, R.P. Neilson, S.C. Sheridan, and J.H. Verville, 2004:  
 4 Emissions pathways, climate change, and impacts on California. *Proceedings of the*  
 5 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **101**, 34.
- 6 **Haynes, R.W.**, D.M. Adams, R.J. Alig, P.J. Ince, J.R. Mills, and X. Zhou, 2007: *The 2005 RPA*  
 7 *Timber Assessment Update*. General Technical Report PNW-GTR-699, USDA Forest  
 8 Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, OR.
- 9 **Haynes, R.W.**, B.T. Bormann, D.C. Lee, and J.R. Martin, 2006: *Northwest Forest Plan—the*  
 10 *First 10 Years (1994-2003): Synthesis of Monitoring and Research Results*. General  
 11 Technical Report PNW-GTR-651, U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service,  
 12 Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, OR, pp.1-292.
- 13 **Hendrix, P.F.** and P.J. Bohlen, 2002: Exotic earthworm invasions in North America: ecological  
 14 and policy implications. *BioScience*, **52(9)**, 801-811.
- 15 **Hesseln, H.**, J.B. Loomis, A. González-Cabán, and S. Alexander, 2003: Wildfire effects on  
 16 hiking and biking demand in New Mexico: a travel cost study. *Journal of Environmental*  
 17 *Management*, **69**, 359-369.
- 18 **Hicke, J.A.**, G.P. Asner, J.T. Randerson, C. Tucker, S. Los, R. Birdsey, J.C. Jenkins, and C.  
 19 Field, 2002: Trends in North American net primary productivity derived from satellite  
 20 observations, 1982-1998. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **16(2)**, 1019.
- 21 **Hobbs, R.J.**, S. Arico, J. Aronson, J.S. Baron, P. Bridgewater, V.A. Cramer, P.R. Epstein, J.J.  
 22 Ewel, C.A. Klink, A.E. Lugo, D. Norton, D. Ojima, D.M. Richardson, E.W. Sanderson,  
 23 F. Valladares, M. Vilà, R. Zamora, and M. Zobel, 2006: Novel ecosystems: theoretical  
 24 and management aspects of the new ecological world order. *Global Ecology and*  
 25 *Biogeography*, **15**, 1-7.
- 26 **Hobbs, R.J.** and H.A. Mooney, 1991: Effects of rainfall variability and gopher disturbance on  
 27 serpentine annual grassland dynamics. *Ecology*, **72(1)**, 59-68.
- 28 **Holling, C.S.**, 2001: Understanding the complexity of economic, ecological, and social systems.  
 29 *Ecosystems*, **4**, 390-405.
- 30 **Houlton, B.Z.**, C.T. Driscoll, T.J. Fahey, G.E. Likens, P.M. Groffman, E.S. Bernhardt, and D.C.  
 31 Buso, 2003: Nitrogen dynamics in ice storm-damaged forest ecosystems: implications for  
 32 nitrogen limitation theory. *Ecosystems*, **6(5)**, 431-443.

- 1 **Huntington**, T.G., 2003: Climate warming could reduce runoff significantly in New England,  
 2 USA. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology*, **117(3)**, 193-201.
- 3 **Inamdar**, S.P., N. O'Leary, M.J. Mitchell, and J.T. Riley, 2006: The impact of storm events on  
 4 solute exports from a glaciated forested watershed in western New York, USA.  
 5 *Hydrological Processes*, **20(16)**, 3423-3439.
- 6 **Inouye**, D.W., B. Barr, K.B. Armitage, and B.D. Inouye, 2000: Climate change is affecting  
 7 altitudinal migrants and hibernating species. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
 8 *Sciences of the United States of America*, **97(4)**, 1630-1633.
- 9 **IPCC**, 2001a: *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Contribution of*  
 10 *Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on*  
 11 *Climate Change*. [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani, N.A. Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S.  
 12 White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- 13 **IPCC**, 2001b: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2001: the Science Basis.*  
 14 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the*  
 15 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M.  
 16 Noguera, P.J. van der Linden, and D. Xiaosu (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
 17 Cambridge and New York.
- 18 **IPCC**, 2007: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis.*  
 19 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
 20 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z.  
 21 Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge  
 22 University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- 23 **Irland**, L.C., 2000: Ice storms and forest impacts. *Science of the Total Environment*, **262(3)**,  
 24 231-242.
- 25 **Irland**, L.C., D. Adams, R. Alig, C.J. Betz, C.C. Chen, M. Hutchins, B.A. McCarl, K. Skog, and  
 26 B.L. Sohngen, 2001: Assessing socioeconomic impacts of climate change on US forests,  
 27 wood-product markets, and forest recreation. *BioScience*, **51(9)**, 753-764.
- 28 **Iverson**, L.R. and A.M. Prasad, 2001: Potential changes in tree species richness and forest  
 29 community types following climate change. *Ecosystems*, **4(3)**, 186-199.
- 30 **Johnson**, D.W. and S.E. Lindberg, 1992: *Atmospheric Deposition and Forest Nutrient Cycling*.  
 31 Springer.

- 1 **Johnstone**, J.F., F.S. Chapin, III, J. Foote, S. Kemmett, K. Price, and L. Viereck, 2004: Decadal  
2 observations of tree regeneration following fire in boreal forests. *Canadian Journal of*  
3 *Forest Research*, **34(2)**, 267-273.
- 4 **Joyce**, L.A., M.A. Fosberg, and J. Comandor, 1990: *Climate Change and America's Forests*.  
5 General Technical Report RM-187, USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and  
6 Range Experiment Station, Fort Collins, CO.
- 7 **Joyce**, L.A., 1995: *Productivity of America's Forests and Climate Change*. General Technical  
8 Report RM-271, US Dept. of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and  
9 Range Experiment Station, Fort Collins, CO.
- 10 **Joyce**, L.A., 2007: The impacts of climate change on forestry, In: *Resource and Market*  
11 *Projections for Forest Policy Development: Twenty Five Years of Experience With the*  
12 *U.S. RPA Timber Assessment*, [Adams, D.M. and R.W. Haynes (eds.)]. Springer.
- 13 **Joyce**, L.A., J. Aber, S. McNulty, D. H. Vale, A. Hansen, L. C. Irland, R. P. Neilson, and K.  
14 Skog, 2001: Potential consequences of climate variability and change for the forests of  
15 the United States, In: *Climate Change Impacts on the United States: the Potential*  
16 *Consequences of Climate Variability and Change, National Assessment Synthesis Team*  
17 *Report for the US Global Change Research Program*, Cambridge University Press,  
18 Cambridge, UK, pp. 489-522.
- 19 **Joyce**, L.A. and R. Birdsey, 2000: *The Impact of Climate Change on America's Forests*. RMRS-  
20 GTR-59, USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, Fort Collins, CO.
- 21 **Joyce**, L.A. and M. Nungesser, 2000: *Ecosystem Productivity and the Impact of Climate*  
22 *Change*. The impact of climate change on America's forests General Technical Report  
23 RMRS-GTR-59, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain  
24 Research Station, Fort Collins, CO, pp.45-68.
- 25 **Kareiva**, P.M., J.G. Kingsolver, and R.B. Huey, 1993: *Biotic Interactions and Global Change*.  
26 Sinauer Associates Inc., Sunderland, MA.
- 27 **Karl**, T.R. and R.W. Knight, 1998: Secular trends of precipitation amount, frequency, and  
28 intensity in the United States. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **79(2)**,  
29 231-241.
- 30 **Karnosky**, D.F., K.S. Pregitzer, D.R. Zak, M.E. Kubiske, G.R. Hendrey, D. Weinstein, M.  
31 Nosal, and K.E. Percy, 2005: Scaling ozone responses of forest trees to the ecosystem  
32 level in a changing climate. *Plant, Cell and Environment*, **28(8)**, 965-981.

- 1 **Karnosky**, D.F., D.R. Zak, and K.S. Pregitzer, 2003: Tropospheric O<sub>3</sub> moderates responses of  
2 temperate hardwood forests to elevated CO<sub>2</sub>: a synthesis of molecular to ecosystem  
3 results from the Aspen FACE project. *Functional Ecology*, **17(3)**, 289-304.
- 4 **Kasperson**, R.E. and J.X. Kasperson, 2001: *Climate Change, Vulnerability and Social Justice*.  
5 Stockholm Environment Institute, Stockholm.
- 6 **Keane**, R.E., K.C. Ryan, T.T. Veblen, C.D. Allen, J. Logan, and B. Hawkes, 2002: *Cascading*  
7 *Effects of Fire Exclusion in Rocky Mountain Ecosystems: a Literature Review*. General  
8 Technical Report RMRS-GTR-91, US Department of Agriculture Forest Service, Rocky  
9 Mountain Research Station, Fort Collins, CO, pp.1-24.
- 10 **Keleher**, C.J. and F.J. Rahel, 1996: Thermal limits to salmonid distributions in the Rocky  
11 Mountain region and potential habitat loss due to global warming: a geographic  
12 information system (GIS) approach. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*,  
13 **125(1)**, 1-13.
- 14 **Kelkar**, V.M., B.W. Geils, D.R. Becker, S.T. Overby, and D.G. Neary, 2006: How to recover  
15 more value from small pine trees: essential oils and resins. *Biomass and Bioenergy*, **30**,  
16 316-320.
- 17 **Kelly**, E.G., E.D. Forsman, and R.G. Anthony, 2003: Are barred owls displacing spotted owls?  
18 *Condor*, **105(1)**, 45-53.
- 19 **Kim**, J., T.-K. Kim, R.W. Arritt, and N.L. Miller, 2002: Impacts of increased atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>  
20 on the hydroclimate of the western United States. *Journal of Climate*, **15(14)**, 1926-1942.
- 21 **King**, J.S., M.E. Kubiske, K.S. Pregitzer, G.R. Hendrey, E.P. McDonald, C.P. Giardina, V.S.  
22 Quinn, and D.F. Karnosky, 2005: Tropospheric O<sub>3</sub> compromises net primary production  
23 in young stands of trembling aspen, paper birch and sugar maple in response to elevated  
24 atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. *New Phytologist*, **168(3)**, 623-636.
- 25 **Klein**, R.J.T., S. Hug, F. Denton, T. E. Downing, R. G. Richels, J. B. Robinson, and F. L. Toth,  
26 2007: Inter-relationships between adaptation and mitigation, In: *Climate Change 2007:*  
27 *Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth*  
28 *Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L.,  
29 O.F. Caziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge  
30 University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 745-777.
- 31 **Kling**, G., K. Hayhoe, L.B. Johnson, J.J. Magnuson, S. Polasky, S.K. Robinson, B.J. Shuter,  
32 M.M. Wander, D.J. Wuebbles, and D.R. Zak, 2003: *Confronting Climate Change in the*  
33 *Great Lakes Region: Impacts on Our Communities and Ecosystems*. Union of Concerned  
34 Scientists and The Ecological Society of America.

- 1 **Krankina**, O.N. and M. E. Harmon, 2006: Forest management strategies for carbon storage, In:  
 2 *Forests, Carbon, and Climate Change: A Synthesis of Science Findings*, [Cloughesy, M.  
 3 (ed.)]. Oregon Forest Resources Institute, pp. 77-92.
- 4 **Kulakowski**, D., T.T. Veblen, and P. Bebi, 2003: Effects of fire and spruce beetle outbreak  
 5 legacies on the disturbance regime of a subalpine forest in Colorado. *Journal of*  
 6 *Biogeography*, **30(9)**, 1445-1456.
- 7 **Lacey**, J.R., C.B. Marlow, and J.R. Lane, 1989: Influence of spotted knapweed (*Centaurea-*  
 8 *maculosa*) on surface runoff and sediment yield. *Weed Technology*, **3(4)**, 627-631.
- 9 **Lafon**, C.W., 2006: Forest disturbance by ice storms in *Quercus* forests of the southern  
 10 Appalachian Mountains, USA. *Ecoscience*, **13(1)**, 30-43.
- 11 **Lafon**, C.W., J.A. Hoss, and H.D. Grissino-Mayer, 2005: The contemporary fire regime of the  
 12 central Appalachian Mountains and its relation to climate. *Physical Geography*, **26(2)**,  
 13 126-146.
- 14 **Ledig**, F.T. and J.H. Kitzmiller, 1992: Genetic strategies for reforestation in the face of global  
 15 climate change. *Forest Ecology and Management*, **50(1)**, 153-169.
- 16 **Lemmen**, D.S. and F.J. Warren, 2004: *Climate Change: a Canadian Perspective*. Natural  
 17 Resources Canada, Ottawa.
- 18 **Lenihan**, J.M., D. Bachelet, R. Drapek, and R.P. Neilson, 2006: *The Response of Vegetation,*  
 19 *Distribution, Ecosystem Productivity, and Fire in California to Future Climate Scenarios*  
 20 *Simulated by the MCI Dynamic Vegetation Model*. Climate action team report to the  
 21 Governor and Legislators, available from  
 22 [http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-191-](http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-191-SF.PDF)  
 23 [SF.PDF](http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-191-SF.PDF).
- 24 **Lenihan**, J.M., D. Bachelet, R.P. Neilson, and R. Drapek, in press: Simulated response of  
 25 conterminous United States ecosystems to climate change at different levels of fire  
 26 suppression, CO<sub>2</sub>, and growth response to CO<sub>2</sub>. *Global and Planetary Change*.
- 27 **Lindner**, M., P. Lasch, and M. Erhard, 2000: Alternative forest management strategies under  
 28 climatic change- prospects for gap model applications in risk analyses. *Silva Fennica*,  
 29 **34(2)**, 101-111.
- 30 **Lippincott**, C.L., 2000: Effects of *Imperata cylindrica* (L.) Beauv. (Cogongrass) invasion on fire  
 31 regime in Florida sandhill (USA). *Natural Areas Journal*, **20(2)**, 140-149.



- 1 **Littell, J.S.**, 2006: Climate impacts to forest ecosystem processes: Douglas-fir growth in  
2 northwestern U.S. mountain landscapes and area burned by wildfire in western U.S.  
3 ecoprovinces. *PhD Dissertation, University of Washington, Seattle*.
- 4 **Littell, J.S.** and D.L. Peterson, 2005: A method for estimating vulnerability of Douglas-fir  
5 growth to climate change in the northwestern US. *Forestry Chronicle*, **81(3)**, 369-374.
- 6 **Logan, J.A.** and B.J. Bentz, 1999: Model analysis of Mountain Pine Beetle (*Coleoptera:*  
7 *Scolytidae*) seasonality. *Environmental Entomology*, **28(6)**, 924-934.
- 8 **Logan, J.A.** and J.A. Powell, 2001: Ghost forests, global warming, and the mountain pine beetle  
9 (*Coleoptera: Scolytidae*). *American Entomologist*, **47(3)**, 160-172.
- 10 **Logan, J.A.** and J. A. Powell, 2005: Ecological consequences of climate change altered forest  
11 insect disturbance regimes, In: *Climate Change in Western North America: Evidence and*  
12 *Environmental Effects*, [Wagner, F.H. (ed.)]. Allen Press, Lawrence, KS.
- 13 **Logan, J.A.**, J. Regniere, and J.A. Powell, 2003: Assessing the impacts of global warming on  
14 forest pest dynamics. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **1(3)**, 130-137.
- 15 **Mack, R.N.**, 1981: Invasion of bromus tectorum L. into western North America: an ecological  
16 chronicle. *Agro-Ecosystems*, **7(2)**, 145-165.
- 17 **Malcolm, J.R.**, C. Liu, R.P. Neilson, L. Hansen, and L. Hannah, 2006: Global warming and  
18 extinctions of endemic species from biodiversity hotspots. *Conservation Biology*, **20(2)**,  
19 538-548.
- 20 **Malhi, Y.**, P. Meir, and S. Brown, 2002: Forests, carbon and global climate. *Philos Transact Ser*  
21 *A Math Phys Eng Sci*, **360(1797)**, 1567-1591.
- 22 **Manion, P.D.**, 1991: *Tree Disease Concepts*. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.
- 23 **Marchetti, M.P.** and P.B. Moyle, 2001: Effects of flow regime on fish assemblages in a  
24 regulated California stream. *Ecological Applications*, **11(2)**, 530-539.
- 25 **Markham, A.**, 1996: Potential impacts of climate change on ecosystems: a review of  
26 implications for policymakers and conservation biologists. *Climate Research*, **6**, 171-191.
- 27 **Mastrandrea, M.D.** and S.H. Schneider, 2001: Integrated assessment of abrupt climatic  
28 changes. *Climate Policy*, **1(4)**, 433-449.
- 29 **McDonald, K.A.** and J.H. Brown, 1992: Using montane mammals to model extinctions due to  
30 global change. *Conservation Biology*, **6(3)**, 409-415.

- 1 **McKenzie**, D.H., Z. Gedalof, D.L. Peterson, and P. Mote, 2004: Climatic change, wildfire, and  
 2 conservation. *Conservation Biology*, **18(4)**, 890-902.
- 3 **McKenzie**, D.H., A.E. Hessler, and D.L. Peterson, 2001: Recent growth of conifer species of  
 4 western North America: assessing spatial patterns of radial growth trends. *Canadian*  
 5 *Journal of Forest Research*, **31(3)**, 526-538.
- 6 **McKenzie**, D.H., D.L. Peterson, and J. Littell, in press: Global warming and stress complexes in  
 7 forests of western North America. *Forest fires and air pollution issues*. [Bytnerowicz, A.,  
 8 M. Arbaugh, C. Anderson, and A. Riebau (ed.)]. Elsevier Science Ltd.
- 9 **McKinney**, M.L. and J.L. Lockwood, 1999: Biotic homogenization: a few winners replacing  
 10 many losers in the next mass extinction. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **14(11)**, 450-  
 11 453.
- 12 **McLachlan**, J.S., J.J. Hellmann, and M.W. Schwartz, 2007: A framework for debate of assisted  
 13 migration in an era of climate change. *Conservation Biology*, **21(2)**, 297-302.
- 14 **McLaughlin**, S.B., M. Nosal, S.D. Wullschlegel, and G. Sun, 2007a: Interactive effects of ozone  
 15 and climate on tree growth and water use in a southern Appalachian forest in the USA.  
 16 *New Phytologist*, **174(1)**, 109-124.
- 17 **McLaughlin**, S.B., S.D. Wullschlegel, G. Sun, and M. Nosal, 2007b: Interactive effects of ozone  
 18 and climate on water use, soil moisture content and streamflow in a southern Appalachian  
 19 forest in the USA. *New Phytologist*, **174(1)**, 125-136.
- 20 **McNulty**, S.G., 2002: Hurricane impacts on US forest carbon sequestration. *Environmental*  
 21 *Pollution*, **116(Supplement 1)**, S17-S24.
- 22 **McNulty**, S.G., J.A. Moore Myers, T.J. Sullivan, and H. Li, in press: Estimates of critical acid  
 23 loads and exceedances for forest soils across the conterminous United States.  
 24 *Environmental Pollution*.
- 25 **Meehl**, G.A., C. Tebaldi, and D. Nychka, 2004: Changes in frost days in simulations of  
 26 twentyfirst century climate. *Climate Dynamics*, **23(5)**, 495-511.
- 27 **Melack**, J.M., J. Dozier, C.R. Goldman, D. Greenland, A.M. Milner, and R.J. Naiman, 1997:  
 28 Effects of climate change on inland waters of the Pacific Coastal Mountains and Western  
 29 Great Basin of North America. *Hydrological Processes*, **11(8)**, 971-992.
- 30 **Melillo**, J., A.D. McGuire, D.W. Kicklighter, B. Moore, III, C.J. Vorosmarty, and A.L. Schloss,  
 31 1993: Global climate change and terrestrial net primary production. *Nature*, **363(6426)**,  
 32 234-240.

- 1 **Michener**, W.K. and R.A. Haeuber, 1998: Flooding: natural and managed disturbances.  
2 *BioScience*, **48(9)**, 677-680.
- 3 **Milchunas**, D.G. and W.K. Lauenroth, 1995: Inertia in plant community structure - state  
4 changes after cessation of nutrient-enrichment stress. *Ecological Applications*, **5(2)**, 452-  
5 458.
- 6 **Millar**, C.I., 1989: Allozyme variation of bishop pine associated with pygmy-forest soils in  
7 northern California. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **19(7)**, 870-879.
- 8 **Millar**, C.I., 1998: Reconsidering the conservation of monterey pine. *Fremontia*, **26(3)**, 12-16.
- 9 **Millar**, C.I., 1999: Evolution and biogeography of *Pinus radiata*, with a proposed revision of its  
10 Quaternary history. *New Zealand Journal of Forestry Science*, **29(3)**, 335-365.
- 11 **Millar**, C.I. and L. B. Brubaker, 2006: Climate change and paleoecology: New contexts for  
12 restoration ecology, Island Press.
- 13 **Millar**, C.I., J.C. King, R.D. Westfall, H.A. Alden, and D.L. Delany, 2006: Late Holocene forest  
14 dynamics, volcanism, and climate change at Whitewing Mountain and San Joaquin  
15 Ridge, Mono County, Sierra Nevada, CA, USA. *Quaternary research*, **66**, 273-287.
- 16 **Millar**, C.I., R.D. Westfall, and D.L. Delany, in press: Mortality and growth suppression in high  
17 elevation limber pine (*Pinus flexilis*) forests in response to multi-year droughts and 20th  
18 century warming. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*.
- 19 **Millar**, C.I. and W.B. Woolfenden, 1999: The role of climate change in interpreting historical  
20 variability. *Ecological Applications*, **9(4)**, 1207-1216.
- 21 **Millennium Ecosystem Assessment**, 2005: *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: General*  
22 *Synthesis*. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 23 **Miller**, J.H., 2003: *Nonnative Invasive Plants of Southern Forests: a Field Guide for*  
24 *Identification and Control*. General Technical Report SRS-62, U.S. Department of  
25 Agriculture, Forest Service, South Research Station, Asheville, NC, pp.1-93.
- 26 **Miller**, P.R., 1992: Mixed conifer forests of the San Bernardino Mountains, California, In: *The*  
27 *Response of Western Forests to Air Pollution*, [Olson, R.K., D. Binkley, and M. Bohm  
28 (eds.)]. Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 461-497.
- 29 **Milly**, P.C.D., K.A. Dunne, and A.V. Vecchia, 2005: Global pattern of trends in streamflow and  
30 water availability in a changing climate. *Nature*, **438(7066)**, 347-350.

- 1 **Milne**, B.T., V.K. Gupta, and C. Restrepo, 2002: A scale invariant coupling of plants, water,  
2 energy, and terrain. *Ecoscience*, **9(2)**, 191-199.
- 3 **Milne**, B.T., A.R. Johnson, T.H. Keitt, C.A. Hatfield, J. David, and P.T. Hraber, 1996: Detection  
4 of critical densities associated with pinon-juniper woodland ecotones. *Ecology*, **77(3)**,  
5 805-821.
- 6 **Minnich**, R.A., 2001: An integrated model of two fire regimes. *Conservation Biology*, **15(6)**,  
7 1549-1553.
- 8 **Mitchell**, J.E., 2000: *Rangeland Resource Trends in the United States: a Technical Document*  
9 *Supporting the 2000 USDA Forest Service RPA Assessment*. General Technical Report  
10 RMRS-GTR-68, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain  
11 Research Station, Fort Collins, CO, pp.1-84.
- 12 **Mohseni**, O., H.G. Stefan, and J.G. Eaton, 2003: Global warming and potential changes in fish  
13 habitat in U.S. streams. *Climatic Change*, **59(3)**, 389-409.
- 14 **Mooney**, H.A. and E.E. Cleland, 2001: The evolutionary impact of invasive species.  
15 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
16 **98(10)**, 5446-5451.
- 17 **Mooney**, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs, 2000: *Invasive Species in a Changing World*. Island Press,  
18 Washington, DC.
- 19 **Moore**, A., B. Nelson, B. Pence, C. Hydock, J. Hickey, P. Thurston, S. Reitz, B. White, and R.  
20 Kandare, 2006: *Allegheny National Forest: Ecological Context*.
- 21 **Moritz**, C., 2002: Symposium on biodiversity, systematics, and conservation strategies to protect  
22 biological diversity and the evolutionary processes that sustain it. *Systematic Biology*,  
23 **51(2)**, 238-254.
- 24 **Moritz**, M.A., 2003: Spatiotemporal analysis of controls on shrubland fire regimes: Age  
25 dependency and fire hazard. *Ecology*, **84(2)**, 351-361.
- 26 **Moser**, S.C., 2005: Impact assessments and policy responses to sea-level rise in three US states:  
27 An exploration of human-dimension uncertainties. *Global Environmental Change, Part*  
28 *A: Human and Policy Dimensions*, **15(4)**, 353-369.
- 29 **Moser**, S.C., R.E. Kasperson, G. Yohe, and J. Agyeman, in press: Adaptation to climate change  
30 in the northeast United States: opportunities, processes, constraints. *Mitigation and*  
31 *Adaptation Strategies for Global Change*.

- 1 **Mote**, P.W., A.F. Hamlet, M.P. Clark, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Declining mountain  
2 snowpack in Western North America. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*,  
3 **86(1)**, 39-49.
- 4 **Multihazard Mitigation Council**, 2006: *Natural Hazard Mitigation Saves: an Independent*  
5 *Study to Assess the Future Savings From Mitigation Activities*. Report to FEMA,  
6 National Institute for Building Sciences, Boston, MA.
- 7 **Murphy**, J.D., D.W. Johnson, W.W. Miller, R.F. Walker, E.F. Carrol, and R.R. Blank, 2006:  
8 Wildfire effects on soil nutrients and leaching in a Tahoe Basin watershed. *Journal of*  
9 *Environmental Quality*, **35**, 479-489.
- 10 **National Assessment Synthesis Team**, US Global Change Research Program, 2001: *Climate*  
11 *Change Impacts on the United States (Foundation Report)*. Cambridge University Press,  
12 Cambridge, United Kingdom.
- 13 **National Drought Policy Commission**, 2000: *Preparing for Drought in the 21st Century*. U.S.  
14 Department of Agriculture.
- 15 **National Research Council**, 1987: *The Mono Basin Ecosystem: Effects of Changing Lake Level*.  
16 Mono Basin Ecosystem Study Committee, Board on Environmental Studies and  
17 Toxicology and Commission on Physical Sciences, Mathematics and Resources. National  
18 Academy Press.
- 19 **Nearing**, M.A., 2001: Potential changes in rainfall erosivity in the U.S. with climate change  
20 during the 21st century. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*, **56(3)**, 229-232.
- 21 **Neary**, D.G., C.C. Klopatek, L.F. DeBano, and P.F. Ffolliott, 1999: Fire effects on belowground  
22 sustainability: a review and synthesis. *Forest Ecology and Management*, **122(1)**, 51-71.
- 23 **Neary**, D.G., K.C. Ryan, and L.F. DeBano, 2005: *Wildland Fire in Ecosystems: Effects of Fire*  
24 *on Soils and Water*. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-42-volume 4, US Department  
25 of Agriculture Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, Ogden, UT, pp.1-250.
- 26 **Neff**, J.C., J.W. Harden, and G. Gleixner, 2005: Fire effects on soil organic matter content,  
27 composition, and nutrients in boreal interior Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Forest*  
28 *Research*, **35(9)**, 2178-2187.
- 29 **Neilson**, R.P., J.M. Lenihan, D. Bachelet, and R.J. Drapek, 2005a: Climate change implications  
30 for sagebrush ecosystem. In: *Transactions of the 70th North American Wildlife and*  
31 *Natural Resources Conference*, Wildlife Management Institute.

- 1 **Neilson, R.P., L.F. Pitelka, A.M. Solomon, R. Nathan, G.F. Midgley, J. Fragoso, H. Lischke, and**  
 2 **K. Thompson, 2005b: Forecasting regional to global plant migration in response to**  
 3 **climate change. *BioScience*, **55(9)**, 749-760.**
- 4 **Neilson, R.P. and L.H. Wullstein, 1983: Biogeography of 2 southwest american oaks in relation**  
 5 **to atmospheric dynamics. *Journal of Biogeography*, **10(4)**, 275-297.**
- 6 **Nilsson, S. and W. Schopfhauser, 1995: The carbon-sequestration potential of a global**  
 7 **afforestation program. *Climatic Change*, **30(3)**, 267-293.**
- 8 **Noon, B.R. and J.A. Blakesley, 2006: Conservation of the northern spotted owl under the**  
 9 **northwest forest plan. *Conservation Biology*, **20(2)**, 288-296.**
- 10 **Norby, R.J., L. A. Joyce, and S. D. Wullschleger, 2005: Modern and future forests in a changing**  
 11 **atmosphere, In: *A History of Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> and Its Effects on Plants, Animals, and***  
 12 ***Ecosystems*, [Ehleringer, J.R., T.E. Cerling, and M.D. Dearing (eds.)]. Springer Science**  
 13 **and Business Media, Inc., New York, pp. 394-414.**
- 14 **Noss, R.F., 1990: Indicators for monitoring biodiversity - a hierarchical approach. *Conservation***  
 15 ***Biology*, **4(4)**, 355-364.**
- 16 **Noss, R.F., 2001: Beyond Kyoto: Forest management in a time of rapid climate change.**  
 17 ***Conservation Biology*, **15(3)**, 578-590.**
- 18 **Novacek, M.J. and E.E. Cleland, 2001: The current biodiversity extinction event: scenarios for**  
 19 **mitigation and recovery. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United***  
 20 ***States of America*, **98(10)**, 5466-5470.**
- 21 **Nowacki, G.J. and M.G. Kramer, 1998: *The Effects of Wind Disturbance on Temperate Rain***  
 22 ***Forest Structure and Dynamics of Southeast Alaska*. Conservation and resource**  
 23 **assessments for the Tongass land management plan revision. General Technical Report**  
 24 **PNW-GTR-421, US Department of Agriculture Forest Service, Pacific Northwest**  
 25 **Research Station, Portland, OR, pp.1-25.**
- 26 **Nowak, R.S., D.S. Ellsworth, and S.D. Smith, 2004: Functional responses of plants to elevated**  
 27 **atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> - do photosynthetic and productivity data from FACE experiments**  
 28 **support early predictions? *New Phytologist*, **162(2)**, 253-280.**
- 29 **Olden, J.D., 2006: Biotic homogenization: a new research agenda for conservation**  
 30 **biogeography. *Journal of Biogeography*, **33(12)**, 2027-2039.**
- 31 **Oliver, C. and B.C. Larson, 1996: *Forest Stand Dynamics*. John Wiley and Sons, New York, pp.**  
 32 **1-521.**

- 1 **Oswalt**, C.M. and S.N. Oswalt, 2007: Winter litter disturbance facilitates the spread of the  
2 nonnative invasive grass *Microstegium vimineum* (Trin.) A. Camus. *Forest Ecology and*  
3 *Management*, **249**, 199-203.
- 4 **Ottawa National Forest**, 2006: Affected environment and environmental consequences,  
5 Chapter 3, In: *Draft Environmental Impact Assessment*, USDA Forest Service, available  
6 at  
7 [http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest\\_management/forest\\_plan/revision/fp\\_final/volume\\_](http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest_management/forest_plan/revision/fp_final/volume_1_final_eis/final_eis_chapter_3.pdf)  
8 [1\\_final\\_eis/final\\_eis\\_chapter\\_3.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest_management/forest_plan/revision/fp_final/volume_1_final_eis/final_eis_chapter_3.pdf).
- 9 **Papadopol**, C.S., 2000: Impacts of climate warming on forests in Ontario: options for adaptation  
10 and mitigation. *Forestry Chronicle*, **76(1)**, 139-149.
- 11 **Papaik**, M.J. and C.D. Canham, 2006: Species resistance and community response to wind  
12 disturbance regimes in northern temperate forests. *Journal of Ecology*, **94(5)**, 1011-1026.
- 13 **Parker**, W.C., S.J. Colombo, M.L. Cherry, M.D. Flannigan, S. Greifenhagen, R.S. McAlpine, C.  
14 Papadopol, and T. Scarr, 2000: Third millennium forestry: what climate change might  
15 mean to forests and forest management in Ontario. *Forestry Chronicle*, **76(3)**, 445-463.
- 16 **Parmesan**, C., 2006: Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change. *Annual*  
17 *Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 637-669.
- 18 **Paulson**, A., 2007: A speck of a species - felling pines across West. *The Christian Science*  
19 *Monitor*, **February 22, 2007**.
- 20 **Peterson**, D.L., M.J. Arbaugh, and L.J. Robinson, 1991: Growth trends of ozone-stressed  
21 ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa*) in the Sierra Nevada of California, USA. *The*  
22 *Holocene*, **1(50)**, 61.
- 23 **Peterson**, D.L., M.C. Johnson, D.H. McKenzie, J.K. Agee, T.B. Jain, and E.D. Reinhardt, 2005:  
24 *Forest Structure and Fire Hazard in Dry Forests of the Western United States*. General  
25 Technical Report GTR-PNW-628, USDA Forest Service.
- 26 **Peterson**, G.D., G.S. Cumming, and S.R. Carpenter, 2003: Scenario planning: A tool for  
27 conservation in an uncertain world. *Conservation Biology*, **17(2)**, 358-366.
- 28 **Peterson**, S.A., J. Van Sickle, A.T. Herlihy, and R.M. Hughes, 2007: Mercury concentration in  
29 fish from streams and rivers throughout the western united states. *Environmental Science*  
30 *& Technology*, **41(1)**, 58-65.

- 1 **Pielke**, R.A., Sr., J.O. Adegoke, T.N. Chase, C.H. Marshall, T. Matsui, and D. Niyogi, 2006: A  
2 new paradigm for assessing the role of agriculture in the climate system and in climate  
3 change. *Agriculture and Forest Meteorology*, **142(2-4)**, 234-254.
- 4 **Pimentel**, D., L. Lach, R. Zuniga, and D. Morrison, 2000: Environmental and economic costs of  
5 nonindigenous species in the United States. *BioScience*, **50(1)**, 53-64.
- 6 **Pounds**, A.J., M.R. Bustamante, L.A. Coloma, J.A. Consuegra, M.P.L. Fogden, P.N. Foster, E.  
7 La Marca, K.L. Masters, A. Merino-Viteri, R. Puschendorf, S.R. Ron, G.A. Sanchez-  
8 Azofeifa, C.J. Still, and B.E. Young, 2006: Widespread amphibian extinctions from  
9 epidemic disease driven by global warming. *Nature*, **439(7073)**, 161-167.
- 10 **Preston**, B.L., 2006: Risk-based reanalysis of the effects of climate change on US cold-water  
11 habitat. *Climatic Change*, **76(1-2)**, 91-119.
- 12 **Price**, J.T. and T.L. Root, 2005: *Potential Impacts of Climate Change on Neotropical Migrants:*  
13 *Management Implications*. General Technical Report PSW-GTR-191, USDA Forest  
14 Service.
- 15 **Price**, M.F. and G.R. Neville, 2003: Designing strategies to increase the resilience of alpine  
16 montane systems to climate change. *Restoration Ecology*, **14(2)**, 170-176.
- 17 **Pyne**, S.J., P.L. Andrews, and R.D. Laven, 1996: *Introduction to Wildland Fire*. John Wiley &  
18 Sons, New York.
- 19 **Radeloff**, V.C., R.B. Hammer, S.I. Stewart, J.S. Fried, S.S. Holcomb, and J.F. McKeefry, 2005:  
20 The wildland-urban interface in the United States. *Ecological Applications*, **15(3)**, 799-  
21 805.
- 22 **Rahel**, F.J., 2000: Homogenization of fish faunas across the United States. *Science*, **288(5467)**,  
23 854-856.
- 24 **Rahel**, F.J., C.J. Keleher, and J.L. Anderson, 1996: Potential habitat loss and population  
25 fragmentation for cold water fish in the North Platte River drainage of the Rocky  
26 Mountains: response to climate warming. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **41(5)**, 1116-  
27 1123.
- 28 **Reed**, D.H. and R. Frankham, 2003: Correlation between fitness and genetic diversity.  
29 *Conservation Biology*, **17**, 230-237.
- 30 **Regier**, H.A. and J.D. Meisner, 1990: Anticipated effects of climate change on freshwater fishes  
31 and their habitat. *Fisheries*, **15(6)**, 10-15.



- 1 **Rehfeldt**, G.E., N.L. Crookston, M.V. Warwell, and J.S. Evans, 2006: Empirical analyses of  
2 plant-climate relationships for the western United States. *International Journal of Plant*  
3 *Science*, **167(6)**, 1123-1150.
- 4 **Reusch**, T.B.H., A. Ehlers, A. Hammerli, and B. Worm, 2005: Ecosystem recovery after climatic  
5 extremes enhanced by genotypic diversity. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
6 *Sciences of the United States of America*, **102**, 2826-2831.
- 7 **Rhoads**, A.G., S.P. Hamburg, T.J. Fahey, T.G. Siccama, E.N. Hane, J. Battles, C. Cogbill, J.  
8 Randall, and G. Wilson, 2002: Effects of an intense ice storm on the structure of a  
9 northern hardwood forest. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **32(10)**, 1763-1775.
- 10 **Rice**, K.J. and N.C. Emery, 2003: Managing microevolution: restoration in the face of global  
11 change. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **(1)**, 469-478.
- 12 **Richards**, K.R., R.N. Sampson, and S. Brown, 2006: *Agricultural & Forestlands: U.S. Carbon*  
13 *Policy Strategies*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change.
- 14 **Riitters**, K.H. and J.W. Coulston, 2005: Hot spots of perforated forest in the eastern United  
15 States. *Environmental Management*, **35(4)**, 483-492.
- 16 **Riitters**, K.H. and J.D. Wickham, 2003: How far to the nearest road? *Frontiers in Ecology and*  
17 *the Environment*, **1(3)**, 125-129.
- 18 **Root**, T.L., J.T. Price, K.R. Hall, S.H. Schneider, C. Rosenzweig, and J.A. Pounds, 2003:  
19 Fingerprints of global warming on wild animals and plants. *Nature*, **421**, 57-60.
- 20 **Ross**, D.W., G.E. Daterman, J.L. Boughton, and T.M. Quigley, 2001: *Forest Health Restoration*  
21 *in South-Central Alaska: a Problem Analysis*. General Technical Report PNW-GTR-523,  
22 USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, OR.
- 23 **Rouault**, G., J.N. Candau, F. Lieutier, L.M. Nageleisen, J.C. Martin, and N. Warzee, 2006:  
24 Effects of drought and heat on forest insect populations in relation to the 2003 drought in  
25 Western Europe. *Annals of Forest Science*, **63(6)**, 613-624.
- 26 **Rowley**, W.D., 1985: *US Forest Service Grazing and Rangelands*. Texas A & M University  
27 Press, College Station, Texas, 270.
- 28 **Rueth**, H.M., J. S. Baron, and L. A. Joyce, 2002: Natural resource extraction: past, present, and  
29 future, In: *Rocky Mountain Futures: an Ecological Perspective*, [Baron, J.S. (ed.)]. Island  
30 Press, Washington, DC, pp. 85-112.

- 1 **Running, S.W.**, 2006: Is global warming causing more, larger wildfires? *Science*, **313(5789)**,  
2 927-928.
- 3 **Sampson, N.** and L. DeCoster, 2000: Forest fragmentation: implications for sustainable private  
4 forests. *Journal of Forestry*, **98(3)**, 4-8.
- 5 **Sampson, R.N.**, R. J. Scholes, C. Cerri, L. Erda, D. O. Hall, M. Handa, P. Hill, M. Howden, H.  
6 Janzen, J. Kimble, R. Lal, G. Marland, K. Minami, K. Paustian, P. Read, P. A. Sanchez,  
7 C. Scoppa, B. Solberg, M. A. Trossero, S. Trumbore, O. Van Cleemput, A. Whitmore,  
8 and D. Xu, 2000: Additional human-induced activities - article 3.4, [Watson, R.T., I.R.  
9 Noble, B. Bolin, N.H. Ravindranath, D.J. Verardo, and D.J. Dokken (eds.)]. Cambridge  
10 University Press, pp. 181-281.
- 11 **Sasek, T.W.** and B.R. Strain, 1990: Implications of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> enrichment and climatic  
12 change for the geographical distribution of two introduced vines in the U.S.A. *Climatic*  
13 *Change*, **16**, 31-51.
- 14 **Sax, D.F.** and S.D. Gaines, 2003: Species diversity: from global decreases to local increases.  
15 *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **18(11)**, 561-566.
- 16 **Schmidt, K.M.**, J.P. Menakis, C.C. Hardy, W.J. Hann, and D.L. Bunnell, 2002: *Development of*  
17 *Coarse-Scale Spatial Data for Wildland Fire and Fuel Management*. U.S. Department of  
18 Agriculture Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, USDA Forest Service.
- 19 **Schneider, S.H.**, S. Semenov, A. Patwardhan, I. Burton, C. H. D. Magadza, M. Oppenheimer, A.  
20 B. Pittock, A. Rahman, J. B. Smith, A. Suarez, and F. Yamin, 2007: Assessing key  
21 vulnerabilities and the risk from climate change, In: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts,*  
22 *Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth*  
23 *Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L.,  
24 O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge  
25 University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 779-810.
- 26 **Schneider, S.H.** and T.L. Root, 2002: *Wildlife Responses to Climate Change: North American*  
27 *Case Studies*. Island Press, Washington, D.C., pp. 437.
- 28 **Schoennagel, T.**, T.T. Veblen, and W.H. Romme, 2004: The interaction of fire, fuels, and  
29 climate across rocky mountain forests. *BioScience*, **54(7)**, 661-676.
- 30 **Schoettle, A.W.** and R.A. Sniezko, in press: Proactive management options for high elevation  
31 white pines threatened by an exotic pathogen. *Journal of Forest Research*.

- 1 **Scholze, M., W. Knorr, N.W. Arnell, and I.C. Prentice, 2006: A climate-change risk analysis for**  
 2 **world ecosystems. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States***  
 3 ***of America*, **103(35)**, 13116-13120.**
- 4 **Seager, R., M. Ting, I. Held, Y. Kushnir, J. Lu, G. Vecchi, H. Huang, N. Harnik, A. Leetmaa,**  
 5 **N.L. Lau, J. Velez, and N. Naik, 2007: Model projections of an imminent transition to a**  
 6 **more arid climate in southwestern North America. *Science*, **316(1181)**, 1184.**
- 7 **Seymour, R.S., A.S. White, and P.G. deMaynadier, 2002: Natural disturbance regimes in**  
 8 **northeastern North America - evaluating silvicultural systems using natural scales and**  
 9 **frequencies. *Forest Ecology and Management*, **155(1-3)**, 357-367.**
- 10 **Simberloff, D., 2000: Global climate change and introduced species in United States forests.**  
 11 ***Science of the Total Environment*, **262(3)**, 253-261.**
- 12 **Sitch, S., P.M. Cox, W.J. Collins, and C. Huntingford, 2007: Indirect radiative forcing of climate**  
 13 **change through ozone effects on the land-carbon sink. *Nature*, **448**, 791-794.**
- 14 **Skinner, W.R., A. Shabbar, and M.D. Flannigan, 2006: Large forest fires in Canada and the**  
 15 **relationship to global sea surface temperatures. *Journal of Geophysical Research-***  
 16 ***Atmospheres*, **111(D14)**, D14106.**
- 17 **Slovic, P., 1993: Perceived risk, trust, and democracy. *Risk Analysis*, **13(6)**, 675-682.**
- 18 **Smit, B., I. Burton, R.J.T. Klein, and J. Wandel, 2000: An anatomy of adaptation to climate**  
 19 **change and variability. *Climatic Change*, **45(1)**, 223-251.**
- 20 **Smit, B. and O. Pilifosova, 2003: From adaptation to adaptive capacity and vulnerability**  
 21 **reduction, In: *Climate Change, Adaptive Capacity and Development*, [Smith, J.B., R.J.T.**  
 22 **Klein, and S. Hug (eds.)]. Imperial College Press, London, pp. 9-28.**
- 23 **Smit, B., O. Pilifosova, I. Burton, B. Challenger, S. Huq, R.J.T. Klein, G. Yohe, N. Adger, T.**  
 24 **Downing, and E. Harvey, 2001: Adaptation to climate change in the context of**  
 25 **sustainable development and equity. *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and***  
 26 ***Vulnerability, Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the***  
 27 ***Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani, N.A.**  
 28 **Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S. White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,**  
 29 **UK. 877-912.**
- 30 **Smit, B. and J. Wandel, 2006: Adaptation, adaptive capacity and vulnerability. *Global***  
 31 ***Environmental Change*, **16**, 282-292.**

- 1 **Smith, S.D., T.E. Huxman, S.F. Zitzer, T.N. Charlet, D.C. Housman, J.S. Coleman, L.K.**  
2 Fenstermaker, J.R. Seemann, and R.S. Nowak, 2000: Elevated CO<sub>2</sub> increases  
3 productivity and invasive species success in an arid ecosystem. *Nature*, **408**, 79-82.
- 4 **Sohngen, B. and R. Mendelsohn, 1998: Valuing the impact of large-scale ecological change in a**  
5 market: the effect of climate change on U.S. timber. *American Economic Review*, **88**,  
6 686-710.
- 7 **Spencer, C.N., K.O. Gabel, and F.R. Hauer, 2003: Wildfire effects on stream food webs and**  
8 nutrient dynamics in Glacier National Park, USA. *Forest Ecology and Management*,  
9 **178(1-2)**, 141-153.
- 10 **Spittlehouse, D.L. and R.B. Stewart, 2003: Adaptation to climate change in forest management.**  
11 *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management*, **4(1)**.
- 12 **Stein, B.A., S.R. Flack, N.B. Benton, and N. Conservancy, 1996: America's Least Wanted: Alien**  
13 *Species Invasions of US Ecosystems*. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington, VA.
- 14 **Stenseth, N.C., N.I. Samia, H. Viljugrein, K.L. Kausrud, M. Begon, S. Davis, H. Leirs, V.M.**  
15 Dubyanskiy, J. Esper, V.S. Ageyev, N.L. Klassovskiy, S.B. Pole, and K.S. Chan, 2006:  
16 Plague dynamics are driven by climate variation. *Proceedings of the National Academy*  
17 *of Sciences of the United States of America*, **103(35)**, 13110-13115.
- 18 **Stephenson, N.L., 1998: Actual evapotranspiration and deficit: biologically meaningful**  
19 correlates of vegetation distribution across spatial scales. *Journal of Biogeography*, **25(5)**,  
20 855-870.
- 21 **Stewart, I.T., D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2004: Changes in snowmelt runoff timing in**  
22 Western North America under a 'business as usual' climate change scenario. *Climatic*  
23 *Change*, **62**, 217-232.
- 24 **Stewart, S.I., V.C. Radeloff, and R.B. Hammer, 2006: The Wildland-Urban Interface in the**  
25 *United States*. The public and wildland fire management: social science findings for  
26 managers Gen. Tech. Rep. NRS-1, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service,  
27 Northern Research Station, Newtown Square, PA: pp.197-202.
- 28 **Stine, S., 1996: Climate, (1650-1850). Version II, University of California, Centers for Water**  
29 and Wildland Resources, Davis, pp.25-30.
- 30 **Suffling, R. and D. Scott, 2002: Assessment of climate change effects on Canada's National Park**  
31 system. *Environmental monitoring and assessment*, **74(2)**, 117-139.

- 1 **Sun, G., S.G. McNulty, J. Lu, D.M. Amaty, Y. Liang, and R.K. Kolka, 2005:** Regional annual  
 2 water yield from forest lands and its response to potential deforestation across the  
 3 southeastern United States. *Journal of Hydrology*, **308(1)**, 258-268.
- 4 **Sutherst, R.W., 2004:** Global change and human vulnerability to vector-borne diseases. *Clinical*  
 5 *Microbiology Reviews*, **17(1)**.
- 6 **Suttle, K.B., M.A. Thompsen, and M.E. Power, 2007:** Species interactions reverse grassland  
 7 responses to changing climates. *Science*, **315**, 640-642.
- 8 **Swanson, F., S.L. Johnson, S.V. Gregory, and S.A. Acker, 1998:** Flood disturbance in a forested  
 9 mountain landscape. *BioScience*, **48(9)**, 681-689.
- 10 **Swetnam, T.W. and J.L. Betancourt, 1998:** Mesoscale disturbance and ecological response to  
 11 decadal climatic variability in the American southwest. *Journal of Climate*, **11(12)**, 3128-  
 12 3147.
- 13 **Taylor, A.H. and R.M. Beaty, 2005:** Climatic influences on fire regimes in the northern Sierra  
 14 Nevada Mountains, Lake Tahoe Basin, Nevada, USA. *Journal of Biogeography*, **32(3)**,  
 15 425-438.
- 16 **Tebaldi, C., K. Hayhoe, J.M. Arblaster, and G.A. Meehl, 2006:** Going to the extremes. *Climatic*  
 17 *Change*, **79(3-4)**, 185-211.
- 18 **Thomas, C.D., A. Cameron, R.E. Green, M. Bakkenes, L.J. Beaumont, Y.C. Collingham, B.F.N.**  
 19 **Erasmus, M.F. de Siqueira, A. Grainger, L. Hannah, L. Hughes, B. Huntley, A.S. Van**  
 20 **Jaarsveld, G.F. Midgley, L. Miles, M.A. Ortega-Huerta, A.T. Peterson, O.L. Phillips, and**  
 21 **S.E. Williams, 2004:** Extinction risk from climate change. *Nature*, **427(6970)**, 145-148.
- 22 **Tol, R.S., 2002:** Estimates of the damage costs of climate change, Part II: dynamic estimates.  
 23 *Environmental & Resource Economics*, **21(2)**, 135-160.
- 24 **Toth, F.L., 1999:** *Fair Weather? Equity Concerns in Climate Change*. Earthscan, London.
- 25 **Truscott, A.M., C. Soulsby, S.C.F. Palmer, L. Newell, and P.E. Hulme, 2006:** The dispersal  
 26 characteristics of the invasive plant *Mimulus guttatus* and the ecological significance of  
 27 increased occurrence of high-flow events. *Journal of Ecology*, **94**, 1080-1091.
- 28 **Turner, M.G., W.L. Baker, C.J. Peterson, and R.K. Peet, 1998:** Factors influencing succession:  
 29 lessons from large, infrequent natural disturbances. *Ecosystems*, **1**, 511-523.

- 1 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2000: *Stressor Identification Guidance Document*.  
2 EPA-822-B-00-025, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water & Office of  
3 Research and Development, Cincinnati, OH.
- 4 **Ungerer**, M.J., M.P. Ayres, and M.J. Lombardero, 1999: Climate and the northern distribution  
5 limits of *Dendroctonus frontalis* Zimmermann (*Coleoptera: Scolytidae*). *Journal of*  
6 *Biogeography*, **26(6)**, 1133-1145.
- 7 **USDA**, USDI, and DOE, 2006: *Scientific Inventory of Onshore Federal Lands' Oil and Gas*  
8 *Resources and the Extent and Nature of Restrictions or Impediments to Their*  
9 *Development*. pp.1-344.
- 10 **USDA Forest Service**, 1993: *Report of the Forest Service - Fiscal Year 1992*. Washington, DC.
- 11 **USDA Forest Service**, 2000: *2000 RPA Assessment of Forest and Rangelands*. FS 687, USDA  
12 Forest Service, Washington, DC.
- 13 **USDA Forest Service**, 2003: *An Analysis of the Timber Situation in the United States: 1952 to*  
14 *2050*. General Technical Report PNW-GTR-560, Pacific Northwest Research Station,  
15 Portland, OR.
- 16 **USDA Forest Service**, 2004: *National Strategy and Implementation Plan for Invasive Species*  
17 *Management*. FS-805.
- 18 **USDA Forest Service**, in press: 2005 RPA assessment of forest and rangelands. *USDA Forest*  
19 *Service*.
- 20 **USDA Forest Service**, 2007a: *Conservation Education Strategic Plan to Advance*  
21 *Environmental Literacy 2007-2012*. FS-879, United States Department of Agriculture  
22 Forest Service.
- 23 **USDA Forest Service**, 2007b: *USDA Forest Service Strategic Plan FY 2007-2012*. FS-880,  
24 United States Department of Agriculture Forest Service.
- 25 **USDA Forest Service Health Protection**, 2005: *Forest Insect and Disease Conditions 2004*.
- 26 **Van Mantgem**, P.J., N.L. Stephenson, M.B. Keifer, and J. Keeley, 2004: Effects of an  
27 introduced pathogen and fire exclusion on the demography of sugar pine. *Ecological*  
28 *Applications*, **14(5)**, 1590-1602.
- 29 **Vaux**, H.J., P.D. Gardner, and J. Thomas, 1984: *Methods for Assessing the Impact of Fire on*  
30 *Forest Recreation*. General Technical Report PSW-79, US Deptment of Agriculture,

- 1 Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Berkeley, CA,  
2 pp.1-13.
- 3 **Veblen**, T.T., K.S. Hadley, E.M. Nel, T. Kitzberger, M. Reid, and R. Villalba, 1994: Disturbance  
4 regime and disturbance interactions in a Rocky Mountain subalpine forest. *Journal of*  
5 *Ecology*, **82(1)**, 125-135.
- 6 **Veblen**, T.T., K.S. Hadley, and M.S. Reid, 1991: Disturbance and stand development of a  
7 Colorado subalpine forest. *Journal of Biogeography*, **18(6)**, 707-716.
- 8 **Vogel**, C., S.C. Moser, R.E. Kasperson, and G. Dabelko, in press: Linking vulnerability,  
9 adaptation and resilience science to practice: players, pathways and partnerships. *Global*  
10 *Environmental Change*.
- 11 **Volney**, W.J.A. and R.A. Fleming, 2000: Climate change and impacts of boreal forest insects.  
12 *Agriculture Ecosystems & Environment*, **82(1-3)**, 283-294.
- 13 **Von Hagen**, B. and M. Burnett, 2006: Emerging markets for carbon stored by northwest forests,  
14 In: *Forests, Carbon, and Climate Change: A Synthesis of Science Findings*, [Cloughesy,  
15 M. (ed.)]. Oregon Forest Resources Institute, pp. 131-156.
- 16 **Von Holle**, B. and D. Simberloff, 2005: Ecological resistance to biological invasion  
17 overwhelmed by propagule pressure. *Ecology*, **86(12)**, 3212-3218.
- 18 **Wagle**, R.F. and J.H. Kitchen, Jr., 1972: Influence of fire on soil nutrients in a ponderosa pine  
19 type. *Ecology*, **53(1)**, 118-125.
- 20 **Walker**, B., S. Carpenter, J. Anderies, N. Abel, G.S. Cumming, M. Janssen, L. Lebel, J.  
21 Norberg, G.D. Peterson, and R. Pritchard, 2002: Resilience management in social-  
22 ecological systems: a working hypothesis for a participatory approach. *Conservation*  
23 *Ecology*, **6(1)**, 14.
- 24 **Walker**, J.C.G. and J.F. Kasting, 1992: Effects of fuel and forest conservation on future levels of  
25 atmospheric carbon-dioxide. *Global and Planetary Change*, **97(3)**, 151-189.
- 26 **Watterson**, N.A. and J.A. Jones, 2006: Flood and debris flow interactions with roads promote  
27 the invasion of exotic plants along steep mountain streams, western Oregon.  
28 *Geomorphology*, **78**, 107-123.
- 29 **Watts**, M.J. and H.G. Bohle, 1993: The space of vulnerability: the causal structure of hunger and  
30 famine. *Progress in Human Geography*, **17(1)**, 43-67.

- 1 **Webb, T., III**, 1986: Is vegetation in equilibrium with climate? How to interpret Late-Quaternary  
2 pollen data. *Plant Ecology*, **67(2)**, 75-91.
- 3 **Weltzin, J.F., R.T. Belote, and N.J. Sanders**, 2003: Biological invaders in a greenhouse world:  
4 will elevated CO<sub>2</sub> fuel plant invasions? *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **1(3)**,  
5 146-153.
- 6 **Werner, R.A., E.H. Holsten, S.M. Matsuoka, and R.E. Burnside**, 2006: Spruce beetles and forest  
7 ecosystems in south-central Alaska: A review of 30 years of research. *Forest Ecology*  
8 *and Management*, **227(3)**, 195-206.
- 9 **Westbrooks, R.G.**, 1998: *Invasive Plants: Changing the Landscape of America: Fact Book*.  
10 Federal Interagency Committee for the Management of Noxious and Exotic Weeds,  
11 Washington, DC.
- 12 **Westerling, A.L. and B. Bryant**, 2005: *Climate Change and Wildfire in and Around California:*  
13 *Fire Modeling and Loss Modeling*.
- 14 **Westerling, A.L., A. Gershunov, T.J. Brown, D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger**, 2003: Climate  
15 and wildfire in the Western United States. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological*  
16 *Society*, **84(5)**, 595-604.
- 17 **Westerling, A.L., H.G. Hidalgo, D.R. Cayan, and T.W. Swetnam**, 2006: Warming and earlier  
18 spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. *Science*, **313(5789)**, 940-943.
- 19 **Western Governors' Association**, 2006: *A Collaborative Approach for Reducing Wildland Fire*  
20 *Risks to Communities and the Environment*. 10-year strategy implementation plan,  
21 available from <http://www.westgov.org/wga/publicat/TYIP.pdf>.
- 22 **Wheaton, E.**, 2001: *Changing Fire Risk in a Changing Climate: a Literature Review and*  
23 *Assessment*. Saskatchewan Research Council SRC Publication No. 11341-2E01,  
24 Saskatchewan Research Council.
- 25 **Whiles, M.R. and J.E. Garvey**, 2004: *Freshwater Resources in the Hoosier-Shawnee Ecological*  
26 *Assessment Area*. General Technical Report NC-244, North Central Forest Experiment  
27 Station, USDA Forest Service, St. Paul, MN, pp.1-267.
- 28 **Whitlock, C., S.L. Shafer, and J. Marlon**, 2003: The role of climate and vegetation change in  
29 shaping past and future fire regimes in the northwestern U.S. and the implications for  
30 ecosystem management. *Forest Ecology Management*, **178(1-2)**, 5-21.
- 31 **Wilbanks, T.J. and R.W. Kates**, 1999: Global change in local places: how scale matters.  
32 *Climatic Change*, **43(3)**, 601-628.



- 1 **Wilcove**, D.S. and L.Y. Chen, 1998: Management costs for endangered species. *Conservation*  
2 *Biology*, **12(6)**, 1405-1407.
- 3 **Williams**, D.G. and Z. Baruch, 2000: African grass invasion in the Americas: ecosystem  
4 consequences and the role of ecophysiology. *Biological Invasions*, **2(2)**, 123-140.
- 5 **Williams**, D.W. and A.M. Liebhold, 2002: Climate change and the outbreak ranges of two North  
6 American bark beetles. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology*, **4(2)**, 87-99.
- 7 **Williams**, J.W., S.T. Jackson, and J.E. Kutzbach, 2007: Projected distributions of novel and  
8 disappearing climates by 2100 AD. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of*  
9 *the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5738-5742.
- 10 **Willis**, K.J. and H.J.B. Birks, 2006: What is natural? The need for a long-term perspective in  
11 biodiversity conservation. *Science*, **314(5803)**, 1261.
- 12 **Wilmking**, M., G.P. Juday, V.A. Barber, and H.S.J. Zald, 2004: Recent climate warming forces  
13 contrasting growth responses of white spruce at treeline in Alaska through temperature  
14 thresholds. *Global Change Biology*, **10(10)**, 1724-1736.
- 15 **Wilson**, J., 2006: Using wood products to reduce global warming, In: *Forests, Carbon, and*  
16 *Climate: a Synthesis of Science Findings*, [Cloughesy, M. (ed.)]. Oregon Forest  
17 Resources Institute, pp. 114-129.
- 18 **Wisner**, B., P. Blaikie, T. Cannon, and A. Davis, 2004: *At Risk: Natural Hazards, People's*  
19 *Vulnerability and Disasters*. Routledge, London.
- 20 **Woodworth**, B.L., C.T. Atkinson, D.A. LaPointe, P.J. Hart, C.S. Spiegel, E.J. Tweed, C.  
21 Henneman, J. LeBrun, T. Denette, R. DeMots, K.L. Kozar, D. Triglia, D. Lease, A.  
22 Gregor, T. Smith, and D. Duffy, 2005: Host population persistence in the face of  
23 introduced vector-borne diseases: Hawaii amakihi and avian malaria. *Proceedings of the*  
24 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **102(5)**, 1531-1536.
- 25 **Worrall**, J.J., T.D. Lee, and T.C. Harrington, 2005: Forest dynamics and agents that initiate and  
26 expand canopy gaps in Picea-Abies forests of Crawford Notch, New Hampshire, USA.  
27 *Journal of Ecology*, **93(1)**, 178-190.
- 28 **Yarie**, J., L. Viereck, K. van Cleve, and P. Adams, 1998: Flooding and ecosystem dynamics  
29 along the Tanana river. *BioScience*, **48(9)**, 690-695.
- 30 **Ying**, C.C. and A.D. Yanchuk, 2006: The development of British Columbia's tree seed transfer  
31 guidelines: purpose, concept, methodology, and implementation. *Forest Ecology and*  
32 *Management*, **227**, 1-13.

- 1 **Yohe**, G., N. Andronova, and M. Schlesinger, 2004: To hedge or not against an uncertain climate  
2 future? *Science*, **305(5695)**, 416-417.
- 3 **Yohe**, G.W. and R.S.J. Tol, 2002: Indicators for social and economic coping capacity--moving  
4 toward a working definition of adaptive capacity. *Global Environmental Change*, **12**, 25-  
5 40.
- 6 **Yorks**, T.E. and K.B. Adams, 2005: Ice storm impact and management implications for jack  
7 pine and pitch pine stands in New York, USA. *Forestry Chronicle*, **81.4**, 502-515.
- 8 **Ziska**, L.H., 2003: Evaluation of the growth response of six invasive species to past, present and  
9 future atmospheric carbon dioxide. *Journal of Experimental Botany*, **54(381)**, 395-404.
- 10 **Ziska**, L.H., S. Faulkner, and J. Lydon, 2004: Changes in biomass and root: shoot ratio of field-  
11 grown Canada thistle (*Cirsium arvense*), a noxious, invasive weed, with elevated CO<sub>2</sub>:  
12 implications for control with glyphosate. *Weed Science*, **52(4)**, 584-588.
- 13 **Ziska**, L.H., J.B. Reeves, and B. Blank, 2005: The impact of recent increases in atmospheric  
14 CO<sub>2</sub> on biomass production and vegetative retention of Cheatgrass (*Bromus tectorum*):  
15 implications for fire disturbance. *Global Change Biology*, **11(8)**, 1325-1332.  
16  
17

## 1 **3.7 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 We would like to thank the December 2006 Annapolis workshop participants for their thoughts  
4 on early drafts of the report, and the participants in the Tahoe Workshop and the Olympic case  
5 study for their participation in discussions on climate change and forest management. We also  
6 thank Douglas Powell, Stephen Solem, Nick Reyna, Ken Karkula, Al Abee, John Townsley,  
7 Allen Solomon, and Phil Mattson for their comments on the March draft. We would like to thank  
8 Sharon Friedman, Andy Kratz, and Claudia Regan for their comments on the March draft and the  
9 staff from Region 2 that participated in discussions on the draft report. We thank Tim Davis for  
10 several helpful comments on earlier drafts of this manuscript and Robert Norheim for the map in  
11 Figure 3.16 and David P. Coulson for the map in Figure 3.1. Robin Stoddard helped us with  
12 access to photos of ONF. We would also like to thank the respondents to the public review and  
13 the members of the Peer Review panel.

14

### 15 **Workshop Participants**

16

- 17     ▪ Chris Bernabo, National Council on Science for the Environment
- 18     ▪ Bob Davis, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 19     ▪ Lee Frelich, The University of Minnesota Center for Hardwood Ecology
- 20     ▪ Jeremy Littell, University of Washington
- 21     ▪ Douglas W. MacCleery, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 22     ▪ Kathy A. O'Halloran, Olympic National Forest
- 23     ▪ Lindsey Rustad, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 24     ▪ Hugh Safford, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 25     ▪ Allen Solomon, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 26     ▪ Jeff Sorkin, U.S.D.A. Forest Service
- 27     ▪ Chris Weaver, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

1 **3.8 Boxes**

2 **Box 3.1.** Strategic Plan Goals of the Forest Service, 2007–2012

- 3
- 4 1. Restore, Sustain, and Enhance the Nation’s Forests and Grasslands.
- 5 2. Provide and Sustain Benefits to the American People.
- 6 3. Conserve Open Space.
- 7 4. Sustain and Enhance Outdoor Recreation Opportunities.
- 8 5. Maintain Basic Management Capabilities of the Forest Service.
- 9 6. Engage Urban America with Forest Service Programs.
- 10 7. Provide Science-Based Applications and Tools for Sustainable Natural Resources Management.

11

12

13 **Box 3.2.** Ecosystem Services Described by the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005)

- 14 *Provisioning services*—fiber, fuel, food, other non-wood products, fresh water, and genetic resources
- 15 *Regulating services*—air quality, climate regulation, water regulation, erosion regulation, water purification and
- 16 waste treatment, disease regulation, pest regulation, pollination, and natural hazard regulation
- 17 *Cultural services*—cultural diversity, spiritual/religious values, knowledge systems, educational values, inspiration,
- 18 aesthetic values, social relations, sense of place, cultural heritage values, recreation and ecotourism
- 19 *Supporting services*—primary production, soil formation, pollination, nutrient cycling, water cycling

20

21

22 **Box 3.3.** The “Boundary Waters-Canadian Derecho,” a Straight-Line Wind Event in the Central United States and

23 Canada

24 During the pre-dawn hours on Sunday, July 4, 1999, thunderstorms were occurring over portions of the Dakotas. By

25 6 AM CDT, some of the storms formed into a bow echo and began moving into the Fargo, North Dakota area, with

26 damaging winds. Thus would begin the “Boundary Waters-Canadian Derecho,” which would last for more than 22

27 hours, travel more than 2,080 kilometers at an average speed almost 96 kph, and result in widespread devastation

28 and many casualties in both Canada and the United States

29 In the Boundary Waters Canoe Area (BWCA), winds estimated at 128-160 kph moved rapidly, causing serious

30 damage to 1560 square kilometers of forest in the area. Tens of millions of trees were blown down. Sixty people in

31 the BWCA were injured by falling trees, some seriously. Twenty of those injured were rescued by floatplanes flying

32 to lakes within the forest.



33

34 Area affected by the July 4–5, 1999 derecho event (outlined in blue). Curved purple lines represent the approximate

35 locations of the “gust front” at three hourly intervals. “+” symbols indicate the locations of wind damage or

36 estimated wind gusts above severe limits (58 mph or greater)<sup>30</sup>.

<sup>30</sup> NOAA's National Weather Service, 2007: The boundary waters-canadian derechos. NOAA Website, <http://www.spc.noaa.gov/misc/AbtDerechos/casepages/jul4-51999page.htm>, accessed on 7-30-2007.

**Box 3.4. Insects and Drought in Piñon-Juniper Woodlands in the Southwest United States**

Between 2002 and 2003, the southwestern United States experienced a sub-continental scale dieback of piñon pines (*Pinus edulis*), Ponderosa pines (*P. ponderosa*), and juniper (*Juniperus monosperma*), the dominant tree species in the region (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). Piñon pines were hit hardest, and suffered 40–80% mortality across an area spanning 12,000 km<sup>2</sup> of Colorado, Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico. Beetles (*Ips confusus* LeConte) were the proximate cause of death of the piñons, but the beetle infestation was triggered by a major “global-change type drought” that depleted soil water content for at least 15 months (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). Although a major drought occurred in the same region in the 1950s, mortality was less extensive—mostly Ponderosa pine stems older than 100 years and on the driest sites died (Allen and Breshears, 1998). In contrast, the more recent drought killed piñons across all size classes and elevations. It also killed 2–26% of the more drought-tolerant junipers, and reduced by about half the live basal cover of *Bouteloua gracilis*, a dominant grass in the piñon-juniper woodlands (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). The more recent drought also was characterized by warmer temperatures, which increased the water stress on the trees. This increased water stress was probably exacerbated by the increased densities of piñons that resulted from anomalously high precipitation in the region from about 1978–1995 (Breshears *et al.*, 2005).

The scale of this dieback will greatly affect carbon stores and dynamics, runoff and erosion, and other ecosystem processes, and may also lead to an ecosystem type conversion (Breshears *et al.*, 2005). The possibility that vegetation diebacks at the scale observed in this example may become more common under climate change presents a major management challenge.



*These photos—taken from similar vantages near Los Alamos, NM—show the large-scale dieback of piñon pines in 2002–2003 that resulted from a protracted drought and associated beetle infestation. In 2002, the pines had already turned brown from water stress, and by 2004, they had lost all their needles.*

Photo credit: CD Allen, USGS

**Box 3.5. Bark Beetles in Western North American Forests**

Bark beetles are native insects and important disturbance agents in western North American forests (Carroll *et al.*, 2004). Beetle outbreaks occur periodically when otherwise healthy trees are weakened from drought, injury, fire damage, and other stresses. Since 1996, bark beetles have infested and killed millions of pine, spruce, and fir trees over vast areas from Arizona to British Columbia. This outbreak, which is considered to be more extensive and damaging than any previously recorded in the West, is expected to continue without active management.<sup>31</sup>

The most “aggressive, persistent, and destructive bark beetle in the United States and western Canada” is the mountain pine beetle (*Dendroctonus ponderosae* Hopkins),<sup>32</sup> which will attack and kill most western pine species. The mountain pine beetle (MPB) infested 425,000 acres of Colorado’s lodgepole pine (LP) forests in 2005 (Colorado Department of Natural Resources, 2005) and 660,000 acres (~40% of Colorado’s LP forests) by 2006. The unprecedented scale of this outbreak in Colorado is attributable to a combination of factors, including large areas with even-age, monospecific stands (a result of fire suppression and other management practices), drought, and climate change (Colorado State Forest Service cited in Paulson, 2007).



Warmer winters have spurred extensive mountain pine beetle damage in the U.S. and Canadian Rockies. Left from Fox (2007); photo below is reprinted with permission from Colorado State University Extension, fact sheet no. 5.528, Mountain Pine Beetle, by D.A. Leatherman, and I. Aguayo.



33

Despite the historic scale of the recent MPB outbreak in Colorado’s lodgepole pine forests, periodic outbreaks, albeit on a smaller spatial scale, are considered normative (Logan and Powell, 2001). Lodgepole pine and MPB are co-evolved, and lodgepole pine is the MPB’s most important host (Logan and Powell, 2001). Lodgepole pine has serotinous cones and is maintained by stand replacing fires that are facilitated by MPB-induced mortality. Dead needles from outbreaks are an important fuel, standing dead trees serve as fire ladders, and falling limbs and stems provide high fuel loads for high-intensity crown fires. Without such fires, more shade-tolerant species would eventually replace lodgepole pine in much of its range (Logan and Powell, 2001).

Other western pines, especially those growing at higher elevations such as whitebark pine, are not similarly co-evolved with MPB. Until recently, high elevation and high latitude habitats typically have been too harsh for MPB to complete its life cycle in one season. Because the ability to complete its life cycle in one season is central to the MPB’s success (Amman, 1973),<sup>34</sup> MPB activity has historically been restricted to lower elevation pines, which are separated from high-elevation (3,000 m or 10,000 ft in Colorado) pines by non-host species.

<sup>31</sup> **Western Forestry Leadership Coalition**, 2007: Western bark beetle assessment: a framework for cooperative forest stewardship. Western Forestry Leadership Coalition Website, [http://www.wflccenter.org/news\\_pdf/222\\_pdf.pdf](http://www.wflccenter.org/news_pdf/222_pdf.pdf), accessed on 7-31-2007.

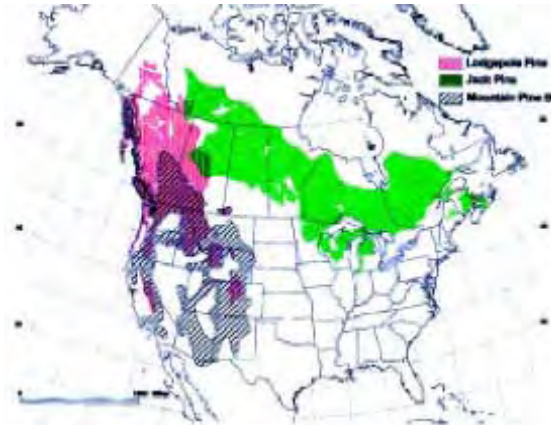
<sup>32</sup> **The Bugwood Network**, 2007: Mountain Pine Beetle - *Dendroctonus ponderosae* (Hopkins). Bark and Boring Beetles of the World Website, <http://www.barkbeetles.org/mountain/mpb.html>, accessed on 7-30-2007.

<sup>33</sup> **Leatherman, D.A.** and I. Aguayo, 2007: Mountain Pine Beetle. Colorado State University Extension Website, <http://www.ext.colostate.edu/pubs/insect/05528.html>, accessed on 7-31-0007.

<sup>34</sup> See also **Safranyik, L.**, 1978: Effects of climate and weather on mountain pine beetle populations. In: *Proceedings, Symposium: Theory and Practice of Mountain Pine Beetle Management in Lodgepole Pine Forests* [Berryman, A.A., G.D. Amman, and R.W. Stark (eds.)] University of Idaho Forest, Wildlife and Range Experiment Station, pp. 77-84.

1 Climate change will not only spur further MPB outbreaks, but will also likely facilitate the invasion of species  
 2 currently restricted to more benign environments into whitebark pine and other high-elevation pine stands in the  
 3 wake of MPB infestations (Logan and Powell, 2001). The fact that all aspects of the MPB's seasonality are  
 4 controlled by seasonal temperature patterns (Logan and Bentz, 1999) supports this forecast. It is further supported  
 5 by the finding that both the timing and synchrony of the beetle's life cycle are responsive to climate change (Logan  
 6 and Powell, 2001). Specifically, Logan and Powell (2001) showed that a 2°C increase in annual average temperature  
 7 allows MPB populations to synchronously complete their life cycle in a single season. Such a shift from a two  
 8 season, asynchronous life cycle confers the greatest chance for population success. Because the response of the  
 9 MPB's life cycle to temperature is nonlinear, climate change-induced MPB outbreaks are likely to occur in high  
 10 elevation pine ecosystems without warning.

11 In addition to creating ideal conditions for populations of MPB to reach epidemic levels, climate change has allowed  
 12 the MPB to expand its range northward and eastward in recent decades (Carroll *et al.*, 2004). The current MPB  
 13 range extends from northern Mexico through the American Rockies west and into British Columbia, Alberta, and  
 14 Saskatchewan (Carroll *et al.*, 2004). The range of the MPB is constrained principally by climate rather than the  
 15 availability of suitable hosts; lodgepole pine exists beyond the range of MPB (Logan and Powell, 2001; Carroll *et al.*  
 16 *et al.*, 2004). Evidence for the range expansion of MPB includes accelerating rates of infestation since 1970 into  
 17 previously unsuitable habitats. Further range expansion is  
 18 likely with additional warming (Carroll *et al.*, 2004). Logan  
 19 and Powell (2001) predict a 7° northward shift in the range of  
 20 MPB with a doubling of CO<sub>2</sub> and an associated temperature  
 21 increase of 2.5°C. Such a shift would allow MPB to occupy  
 22 previously unoccupied lodgepole pine habitat, and allow an  
 23 invasion into jack pine ecosystems in both the United States  
 24 and Canada, which have not been previously attacked by MPB  
 25 (see map at right). The continuous habitat provided by  
 26 lodgepole pine will facilitate this range shift. Although cold  
 27 snaps and depletion of hosts caused previous large-scale MPB  
 28 outbreaks to collapse, the current outbreak may not collapse  
 29 because there is no shortage of host trees, and temperatures are  
 30 expected to continue warming (Carroll *et al.*, 2004).



31  
 32  
 33  
 34  
 35  
 36  
 37  
 38  
 39  
 40  
 Geographic ranges of lodgepole pine (pink),  
 mountain pine beetle (hatched), and jack pine  
 (green). Source Logan and Powell (2001).

**Box 3.6.** Forest Planning Assumptions to Consider Regarding Climate Change.<sup>25</sup>

Historic Conditions: We assume that historical conditions are a useful reference or point of comparison for current or future trends, in accord with the Healthy Forest Restoration Act, the 2005 planning rule, and LANDFIRE (and other national fire-related projects). However, we recognize that this assumption is likely to face substantial challenges as the effects of climate change on vegetation and disturbance regimes play out over the next several decades. Accordingly, an adaptive management approach can be used to test this assumption, make adjustments in the desired future condition, and plan goals and objectives as the local effects of climate change become apparent.

Flexibility and Considerations: Although climate and ecosystem forecast models have improved significantly, they cannot produce highly accurate local projections. Flexibility to address the inherent uncertainty about local effects of climate change could be achieved through enhancing the resiliency of forests by considering that:

- Diverse plantings will likely be more adaptable to changing conditions than will single species stands.
- Prescribed fire and thinning could be used to keep tree densities low to improve resistance to drought and pest infestations.
- Nitrogen-fixing species, intermixed in a stand, may facilitate regrowth after disturbance in a rapidly changing environment, although they may compete for water on droughty sites.
- Encouraging local industries that can adapt to or cope with variable kinds of forest products because of the uncertainty in which tree species will prosper under changed climate.
- Some vegetation types in vulnerable environments (*e.g.*, ecotonal, narrow distribution, reliant on specific climate combinations, situations sensitive to insect/pathogens) will be highly sensitive to changes in climate and may undergo type conversions despite attempts at maintaining them (meadow to forest, treeline shifts, wetland loss). Some of these changes are likely to be inevitable.
- Reforestation after wildfire may require different species (*i.e.*, diverse plantings, as mentioned above) than were present on the site pre-fire to better match site-type changes due to climate effects.
- Genetic diversity of planting stock may require different mixes than traditionally prescribed by seed zone guidelines.
- Massive forest diebacks may be clues to site transition issues.
- Behavior of invasive species is likely to be different as climates shift.
- Increasing interannual climate variability (*e.g.*, dry periods followed by wet, as in alternating ENSO patterns) may set up increasingly severe fuels situations.
- Non-linear, non-equilibrium, abrupt changes in vegetation types and wildlife behavior may be more likely than linear, equilibrium, and gradual changes.
- Water supply and water quality issues might become critical, particularly if increased or prolonged drought or water quality changes are the local consequences of climate change.
- Carbon storage to reduce greenhouse gas and other effects might be important.

Adaptive Management: Effects due to climate change (*e.g.*, wildfire severity/acreage trends, vegetation trends, insect and disease trends) may become more apparent as new information becomes available to NFs through regional or sub-regional inventories, data collection, and research. This information may be useful for adjusting desired conditions and guidelines as plans are implemented. Information of interest might include:

- The frequency, severity, and area trends of wildfire and insect/disease disturbances, stratified by environment
- The distribution of major forest types. For example, the lower and upper elevational limits of forests and woodlands might change as precipitation, temperature, and other factors change. These trends might be detected through a combination of permanent plots (*e.g.*, Forest Inventory and Analysis plots) and remotely sensed vegetation data (*e.g.*, gradient nearest neighbor analyses).
- Stream flow and other indicators of the forests' ability to produce water of particular quality and quantity.



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

**Box 3.7. National Forest Adaptation Options**

- ✓ Facilitate natural (evolutionary) adaptation through management practices (e.g., prescribed fire and other silvicultural treatments) that shorten regeneration times and promote interspecific competition.
- ✓ Promote connected landscapes to facilitate species movements and gene flow, sustain key ecosystem processes (e.g., pollination and dispersal), and protect critical habitats for threatened and endangered species.
- ✓ Reduce the impact of current anthropogenic stressors such as fragmentation (e.g., by creating larger management units and migration corridors) and uncharacteristically severe wildfires and insect outbreaks (e.g., by reducing stand densities and abating fuels).
- ✓ Identify and take early proactive action against non-native invasive species (e.g., by using early detection and rapid response approaches).
- ✓ Modify genetic diversity guidelines to increase the range of species, maintain high effective population sizes, and favor genotypes known for broad tolerance ranges.
- ✓ Where ecosystems will very likely become more water limited, manage for drought- and heat-tolerant species and populations, and where climate trends are less certain, manage for a variety of species and genotypes with a range of tolerances to low soil moisture and higher temperatures.
- ✓ Spread risks by increasing ecosystem redundancy and buffers in both natural environments and plantations.
- ✓ Use the paleological record and historical ecological studies to revise and update restoration goals so that selected species will be tolerant of anticipated climate.
- ✓ Where appropriate after large-scale disturbances, reset succession and manage for asynchrony at the landscape scale by promoting diverse age classes and species mixes, a variety of successional stages, and spatially complex and heterogeneous vegetation structure.
- ✓ Use the paleological record and historical ecological studies to identify environments buffered against climate change, which would be good candidates for long-term conservation.
- ✓ Establish or strengthen long-term seed banks to create the option of re-establishing extirpated populations in new/more appropriate locations.

**Box 3.8. Examples of institutional and planning adaptations to improve the readiness of the USFS to cope with climate change**

- Rapidly assess existing USFS forest plans to determine the level of preparedness to climate change, examine underlying assumptions about climate, suggest improvements, and forge a long-term management-science partnership to continually refine information for resource management decisions.
- Anticipate and plan for more extreme events (e.g., incorporate likelihood of more severe fire weather and lengthened wildfire seasons in long-range fire management plans) that may lead to surprises and threshold responses and remove (if possible) future constraints to timely adaptive responses.
- Use climate and ecological models to organize thinking and understand potential changes in ecosystem processes, as well as the likely direction and magnitude of future climate trends and impacts, to explore adaptation options for climate change.
- Adjust management goals based on updated baseline conditions for species and ecosystems that have been significantly/cumulatively disturbed and are far outside of the historical range of variation.
- Use the federally mandated Resource Planning Assessment process to link assessments at the national, regional, and NF scales, and to provide guidance on assessing climate change impacts, uncertainty, vulnerability, and adaptation options.
- Coordinate with other agencies, as well as the private sector and other stakeholders, to reduce pollution and other landscape-scale anthropogenic stressors.

## 1 **3.9 Case Study Summaries**

2 The summaries below provide overviews of the case studies prepared for this chapter. The case  
3 studies are available in Annex A1.

### 4 **Case Study Summary 3.1**

#### 5 **Tahoe National Forest, California**

6 Pacific Southwest United States

---

#### 7 **Why this case study was chosen**

8 The Tahoe National Forest:

- 9 • Is representative of the 18 national forests on the west slope of the Sierra Nevada range, which have  
10 great ecological value and a complex institutional context;
- 11 • Shares common geology, forest ecosystems, wildlife habitat, climate, snowpack characteristics,  
12 hydrological properties, elevation gradients, diversity of stakeholders, institutional contexts,  
13 recreational issues, and resource issues and conflicts with 18 other national forests on the west slope  
14 of the Sierra Nevada range;
- 15 • Can serve as a model for examining climate change impacts and adaptations for application across  
16 the entire Sierra Nevada.

#### 17 **Management context**

18 The principal mission of the Tahoe National Forest (TNF) is to “serve as the public’s steward of the land,  
19 and to manage the forest’s resources for the benefit of all American people ...[and]...to provide for the  
20 needs of both current and future generations.” The 1990 Tahoe National Forest Land and Resource  
21 Management Plan (TNF LRMP) details specific goals, objectives, desired future conditions, standards,  
22 and guidelines for a variety of resources including recreation, wilderness, wildlife, timber, water, air  
23 quality, minerals, and research.

24 The Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment (FPA; USFS, 2004) and the Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library  
25 Group Forest Recovery Act (US Congress, 1998) provide additional specific direction for the TNF. The  
26 FPA is a multi-forest plan that specifies goals and direction for (1) reducing buildup of woody fuels and  
27 minimizing fire risk, and (2) protecting old forests, wildlife habitats, watersheds, and communities on the  
28 national forests of the Sierra Nevada and Modoc Plateau. Forest practices, riparian management, and  
29 treatments to reduce the likelihood of severe fires specified in the FPA replace sections of the TNF  
30 LRMP. Adaptive management is a key component of the FPA, and the TNF plays a central role in the  
31 Sierra Nevada Adaptive Management Program.

32 The Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Group Forest Recovery Act of 1998 also supersedes the TNF LRMP  
33 for specific resource and geographic areas in the Sierra Nevada, including the Sierraville Ranger District  
34 of the TNF. The Act was derived from an agreement by a broad coalition of local stakeholders to promote  
35 ecologic and economic health for selected federal lands and communities in the northern Sierra Nevada.  
36 The Act launched a pilot project to test a new adaptive management strategy for managing sensitive  
37 species as well as fire and woody fuels. In addition to implementing a riparian restoration program, the  
38 emphasis of the pilot project is to test, assess, and demonstrate the effectiveness of fuel-breaks, group  
39 selection, individual tree selection, and avoidance or protection of specified areas for managing sensitive  
40 species and wildfire.

#### 41 **Key climate change impacts**

42 Projected increase of 2.3–5.8°C in annual temperatures by 2100;

- 43 • Projected decline in annual snowpack (97% at 1,000 m elevation and 89% for all elevations) by 2100;
- 44 • Observed increase in interannual and annual variability of precipitation;
- 45 • Observed increase in intensity of periodic multi-year droughts over the past century;

- 1 • Observed increase in large fire events in recent years;
- 2 • Projected increase in length of fire seasons and risk of uncharacteristically severe and widespread
- 3 fire events;
- 4 • Expected increase in water temperatures in rivers and lakes and decrease in snow, water, and
- 5 stream runoff in the warm season;
- 6 • Observed increase in severity of higher-elevation insect and disease outbreaks.

### 8 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 9 • Science-based rapid assessments of existing plans and policies would be a valuable first step toward
- 10 understanding current levels of climate change preparedness and areas for potential improvements in
- 11 operations.
- 12 • A revision of the comprehensive assessment of the Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment could be
- 13 pursued as an opportunity to integrate climate change considerations into management planning.
- 14 • The TNF could be a valuable addition to the U.S. Forest Service Ecosystem Services program as a
- 15 pilot study.
- 16 • Increasing the sizes of management units for the forest would allow management of whole landscapes
- 17 (watersheds, forest types) in a single resource plan, and may decrease administrative fragmentation.
- 18 • Actions to improve infiltration of water to groundwater reservoirs (such as decreasing road densities
- 19 and modifying grazing practices to change surfaces from impervious to permeable) could be used to
- 20 reduce losses from runoff and increase the quantity of stored groundwater for dry periods.
- 21 • Erosion and sediment loss following disturbances could be addressed by promptly reforesting affected
- 22 areas and salvage-harvesting affected trees (where this activity will not cause further damage), so that
- 23 a new forest canopy can be established before shrubs “capture” the site;
- 24 • A focus on reversing post-disturbance mortality and shrub invasion would increase the chances of
- 25 successful forest regeneration, leading to restoration of key wildlife habitat and critical watershed
- 26 protection functions.
- 27 • Fuel treatments could be implemented far beyond the season in which they have historically been
- 28 employed, by further supporting and extending the seasonal tour of fire and fuels staff.
- 29 • TNF managers and staff have the expertise and are already prepared to seize adaptive opportunities
- 30 that would be enabled by a regional biomass and biofuels industry, should a carbon market or
- 31 regulatory environment develop to support these opportunities.
- 32 • Regular planning cycles afford a chance to build flexibility and responsiveness to climate change into
- 33 management policies.
- 34 • “Climate-smart” capacity could be increased, when possible, through staff additions or staff training.
- 35 • Education and outreach activities can be used to increase awareness among policy makers, managers,
- 36 the local public, and other stakeholders about the scientific bases for climate change, the implications
- 37 for the northern Sierra Nevada and the TNF, and the need for active resource management
- 38

### 39 **Conclusions**

40 In many cases, best management practices (e.g., post-disturbance treatments) may be effective climate  
41 change adaptation strategies even though they may be intended to achieve other goals (e.g., maintain  
42 ecosystem health). This creates an opportunity for “win-win” strategies to be implemented, whereby  
43 benefits would accrue even if the climate did not change.

44  
45 Barriers to adaptation include public opposition, insufficient funding, limited staff capacity, current large  
46 scope of on-the-ground needs, disjointed ownership patterns, and existing environmental legislation.  
47 Some barriers result from the interaction of individual barriers, such as when limited staff capacity and  
48 insufficient funding result in a continuous reactive approach to priority-setting, rather than a long-term  
49 planning process. Changing community demographics influence what landowners adjacent to the TNF  
50 accept in terms of ecosystem management, such as smoke from prescribed fires.

51  
52 Opportunities exist for overcoming barriers to adaptation. Current or potential future opportunities include  
53 the possibility of year-round management for reducing woody fuels, active dialog with the public on  
54 adaptive management projects, the use of demonstration projects to respond to public concerns, and the  
55 potential of emerging carbon markets to promote the development of regional biomass and biofuels

1 industries. Examples of promising areas for development include new management strategies that are  
2 operationally appropriate and practical to address climate change, scientifically supported practices for  
3 integrated management where resource management goals are integrated rather than partitioned into  
4 individual plans, prioritization tools for managing a range of species and diverse ecosystems, and  
5 dynamic landscape and project planning that incorporates probabilistic measures of habitat quality and  
6 availability in a temporal and spatial context.  
7

**Case Study Summary 3.2****Olympic National Forest, Washington**Pacific Northwest United States

---

**Why this case study was chosen**

The Olympic National Forest:

- Is located within a geographic mosaic of lands managed by federal and state agencies, tribal groups, and private land owners;
- Supports a diverse set of ecosystem services, including recreation, timber, water supply to municipal watersheds, pristine air quality, and abundant fish and wildlife—including several endemic species of plants and animals, as well as critical habitat for four threatened species of birds and anadromous fish;
- Is considered an urban forest because of its proximity to the cities of the greater Seattle area;
- Has numerous stakeholders and land management mandates associated with its natural and cultural resources.

**Management context**

The Olympic National Forest (ONF) is a “restoration forest” charged with managing large contiguous areas of second-growth forest. Natural resource objectives include managing for native biodiversity and promoting the development of late-successional forests; restoring and protecting aquatic ecosystems from the impacts of an aging road infrastructure; and managing for individual threatened and endangered species as defined by the Endangered Species Act or other policies related to the protection of rare species. Most management focuses on restoring old-growth forests, pristine waterways, and other important habitats; rehabilitating or restoring areas affected by unmaintained logging roads; invasive species control; and monitoring. Because the Northwest Forest Plan dictates that the ONF collaborate with other agencies, it will be important to reach consensus so that differing agency mandates, requirements, and strategies do not hinder adaptation to climate change.

**Key climate change impacts**

- Observed increase of 1.0°C in annual temperatures since 1920, with most warming in winters and since 1950;
- Observed decrease (30–60%) in spring snowpack, especially at lower elevations since 1950;
- Observed one-to-four-week advance in spring runoff in 2000 versus 1948;
- Projected increase in temperatures of 1.2–5.5°C by 2090, with greatest increases in summer;
- Projected decrease in snowpack, shifts in snowmelt and runoff timing, and increases in summer evapotranspiration;
- Expected negative consequences of higher temperatures and lower summer flows for resident fish species;
- Expected forest growth decrease at lower elevations and increase at higher elevations;
- Expected increase in floods and area burned by fire;
- Expected shift in species distribution and abundance.

**Opportunities for adaptation**

- The priorities for the ONF already emphasize management for landscape and biological diversity, and actions expected to be the most effective in this regard could be further promoted now as an important first step toward adaptation to climate change.
- The ONF’s strategic plan leaves enough flexibility so that it can take immediate steps to incorporate climate change science into management actions and to enhance resilience to climate change, while at the same time fostering scientific research to support these actions.
- The early successional forests predominating in the ONF as a result of past timber management offer an opportunity to adapt to climate change with carefully considered management actions, because these early successional stages are most easily influenced.

- 1 • The ONF's experience collaborating with other agencies and organizations could be leveraged to  
2 develop innovative climate change adaptations that benefit multiple stakeholders; continued  
3 cooperation with existing and new partners in adapting to climate change will improve the likelihood of  
4 success by increasing the overall land base and resources.
- 5 • By anticipating future impacts of climatic change on forest ecosystems, revised forest plans can  
6 become an evolving set of guidelines for forest managers.
- 7 • Coordinated revision of forest plans for the Olympic, Mt. Baker-Snoqualmie, and Gifford Pinchot  
8 National Forests offers an opportunity to develop regional-scale adaptations for similar ecosystems  
9 that are subject to similar stressors.

## 10 **Conclusions**

11 The management priorities for the ONF could facilitate managers' efforts to adapt to climate change and  
12 promote resilience to its impacts, but adaptive capacity is limited by the current allocation of scarce  
13 resources, policy environment, and lack of scientific information on the effects of climate change and the  
14 likely outcomes of adaptations. Increased support for adaptation, specific guidance on climate change  
15 impacts and adaptations for managers, and incorporating climate change explicitly into forest policies and  
16 planning at multiple scales are some of the ways these barriers can be overcome. In addition, the  
17 availability of regional climate and forest-climate research—and especially a proactive management-  
18 science partnership—set the stage for increases in adaptive capacity.

19  
20  
21 In the absence of more specific scientific guidance on how to adapt to climate change, and without new  
22 funding and additional staff, the ONF will likely manage for climate change by continuing to manage for  
23 biodiversity, which is a reasonable approach assuming that prioritizing landscape and biological diversity  
24 will confer adequate resilience to climate change over the long term. An adaptation strategy with more  
25 specific guidance could include a vision of what is needed; removal of as many barriers as possible;  
26 increased collaboration among agencies, managers, and scientists at multiple scales; and implementation  
27 of proven management actions (e.g., early detection/rapid response).

**Case Study Summary 3.3****Uwharrie National Forest, North Carolina**Southeast United States

---

**Why this case study was chosen**

The Uwharrie National Forest:

- Consists of 61 separate parcels, intermingled within private land;
- Supports a wide variety of ecosystem services, including one of the greatest concentrations of archeological sites in the Southeast;
- Is currently seeing an increased demand for recreational opportunities associated with camping, hiking, fishing, boating, and hunting;
- Expects the regional changes in land use and population to amplify the challenges already faced by forest managers;
- Is in the process of incorporating climate change considerations into a revised forest plan.

**Management context**

The Uwharrie National Forest (UNF) consists of 61 separate fragments that provide key ecosystem services—recreation, fresh water, wildlife habitat, and wood products—to millions of people because of the UNF's close proximity to several major cities. This combination of fragmentation and high demand for goods and services already poses unique forest management challenges, which are expected to become more difficult as the regional population increases over the next 40 years. For example, climate change is expected to significantly affect regional water reserves, including Badin Lake, one of the largest water bodies in the region. Much of the area had been converted from drought and fire-resistant tree species to faster growing but less resistant tree species over the past 60 years. Conversion back to original vegetation is now under consideration in response to climate change.

**Key climate change impacts**

- Projected increase in wildfire risk and concerns about sustaining forest productivity;
- Projected increase in water shortages as biological and anthropogenic demand increases and supply decreases;
- Expected increase in soil erosion and stream sedimentation due to projected increase in frequency of intense storms;
- Projected increase in insect outbreaks due to longer growing season and drier forest conditions.

**Opportunities for adaptation**

- Re-establishment of more fire- and drought-tolerant longleaf pine through selective forest management and replanting could provide increased resistance to potential future drought and unusually severe wildlife events.
- Restoration of historical sites of longleaf pine savannas on the UNF through logging or controlled burning would result in reduced forest water use, water stress, wildfire fuel loads, and wildfire risk as the region continues to warm;
- Opportunities to relocate trails farther from streams, and thus increase the size of stream buffer zones, could minimize soil erosion and stream sedimentation under conditions of increasing storm intensity;
- Opportunities to engage in a dialogue with surrounding landowners on wildfire management might encourage clearing and removal of fuels around buildings and dwellings, and thus minimize risks to property and lives from the expected increase in wildfires within the landscape mosaic containing the UNF and these landowners.

**Conclusions**

Even without climate change, management of the UNF is a complex task. Continued increases in population and fragmentation of the landscape will only be compounded by climatic change and variability. While an extensive and well-maintained road network across the forest provides excellent access for wildfire suppression, and the patchy nature of the forest also helps to isolate fires, ecosystem

1 services on the UNF are influenced by activities on the surrounding highly fragmented landscape. The  
2 forest's proximity to population centers increases the UNF's visibility and raises the public's awareness of  
3 the need for management action to mitigate negative impacts. The UNF could serve as a valuable  
4 example for other land managers on how forests can be managed to reduce climate change impacts  
5 through the modification of established forest management strategies and tools.  
6



1 **3.10 Figures**

2 **Figure 3.1.** Timeline of National Forest System formation and the legislative influences on the  
 3 mission of the national forests.

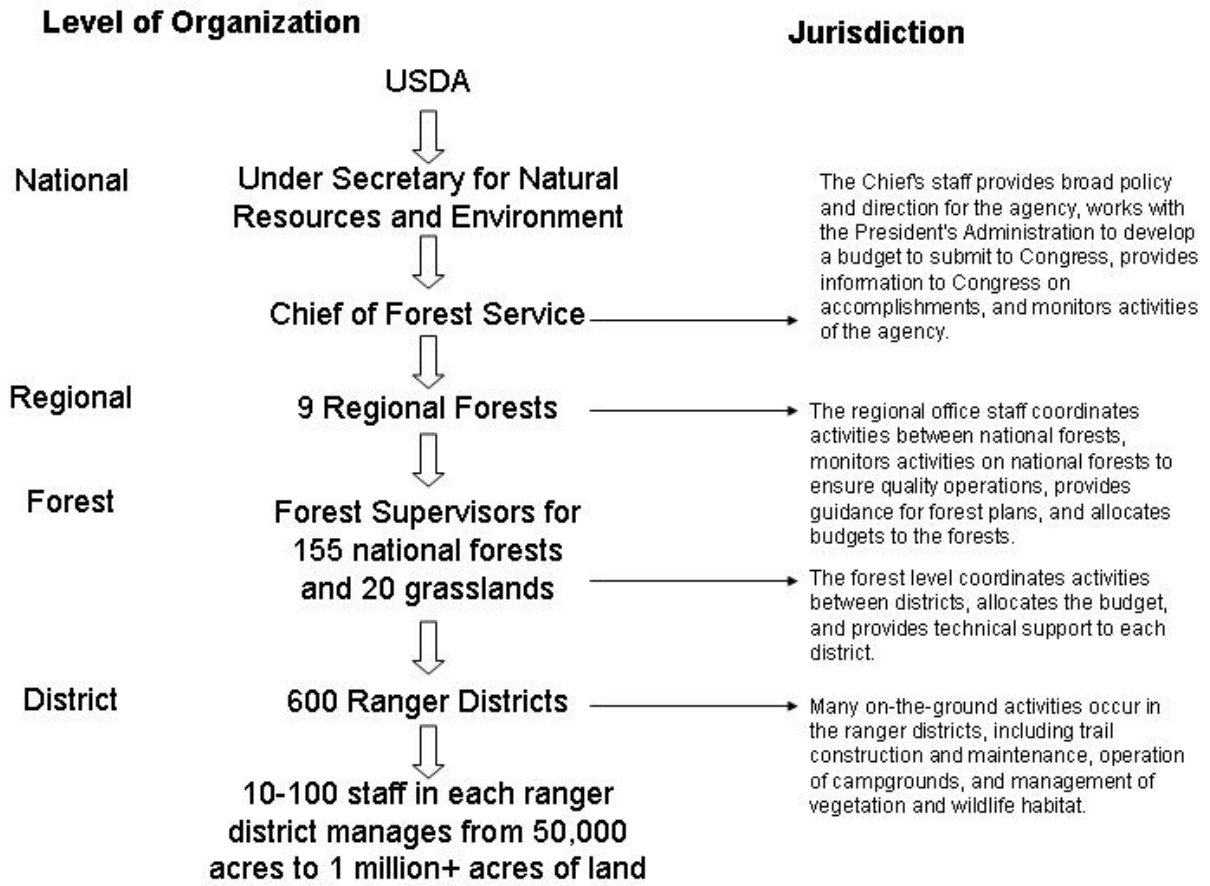
4



5

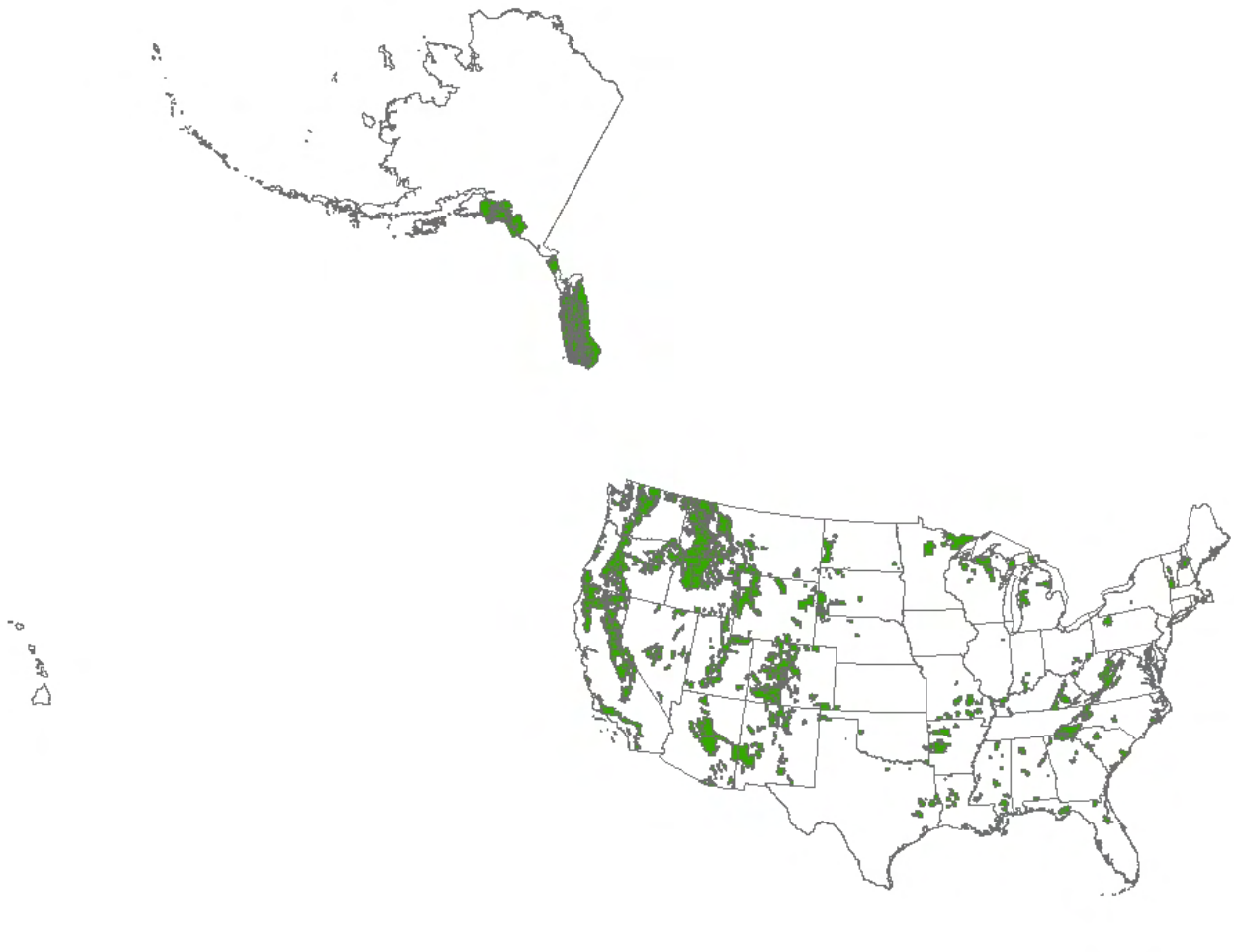
6

1 **Figure 3.2.** Jurisdiction and organizational levels within the National Forest System.  
 2



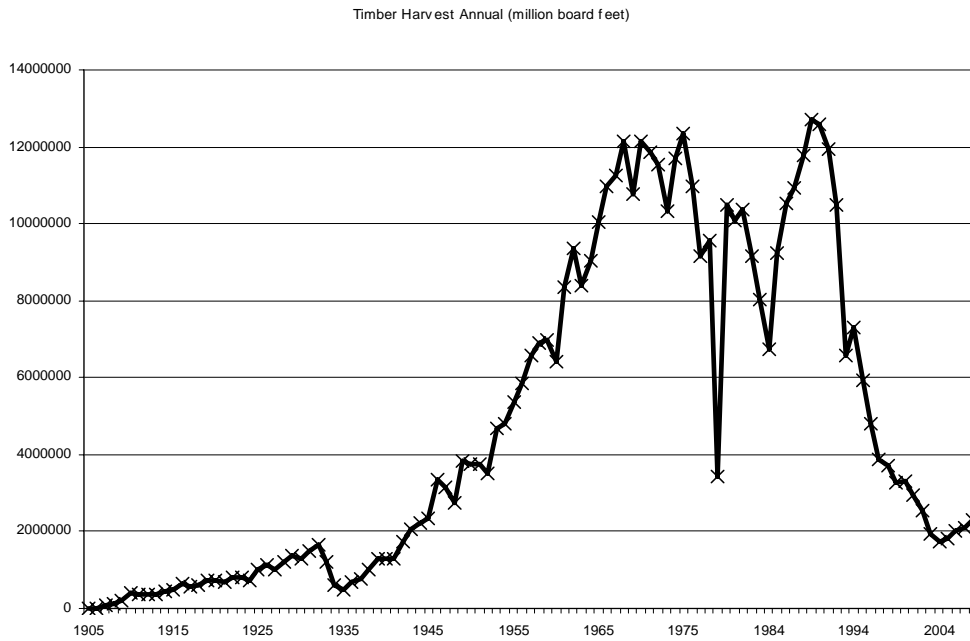
3

- 1 **Figure 3.3.** One hundred fifty-five national forests and 20 national grasslands across the United
- 2 States provide a multitude of goods and ecosystems services, including biodiversity.<sup>6</sup>



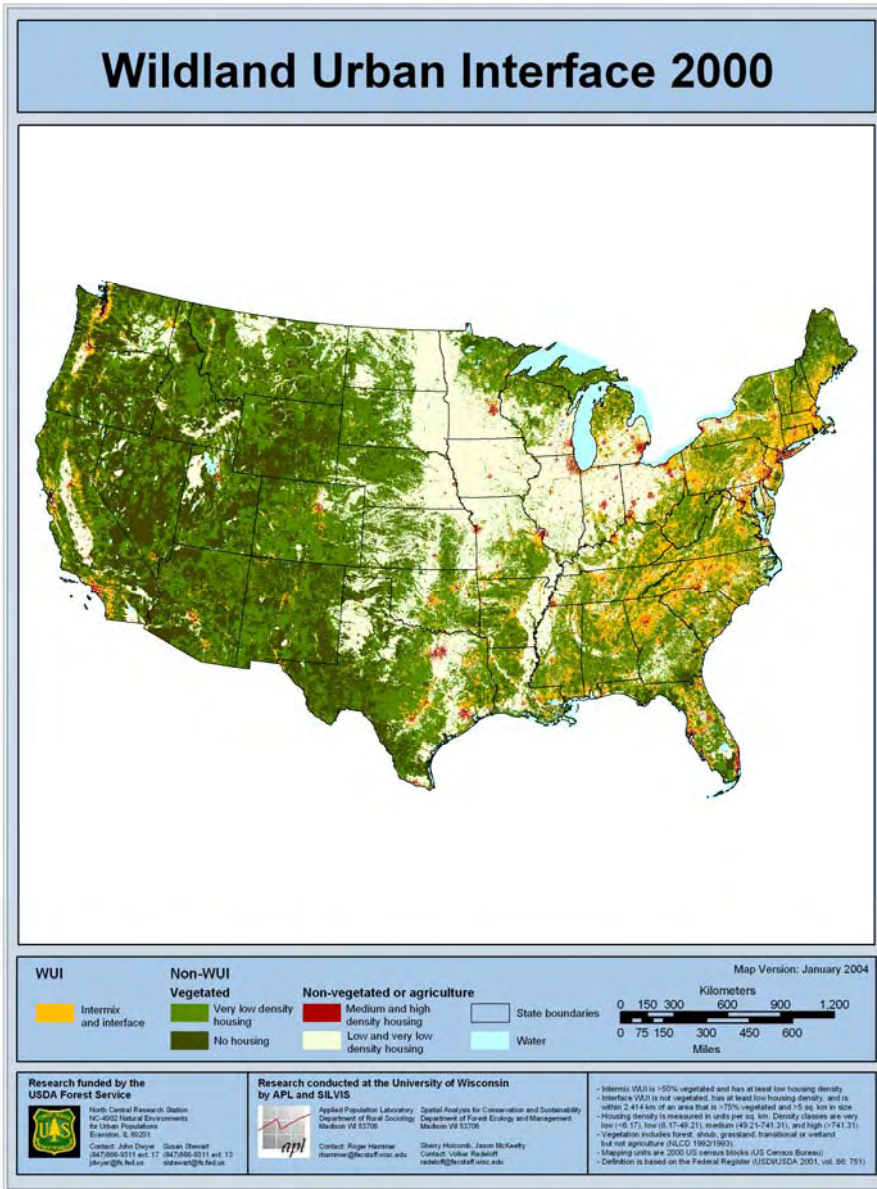
3

1 **Figure 3.4.** Historical harvest levels across the national forests.8  
2



3

1 **Figure 3.5.** Wildland Urban Interface across the United States (Radeloff *et al.*, 2005).  
 2



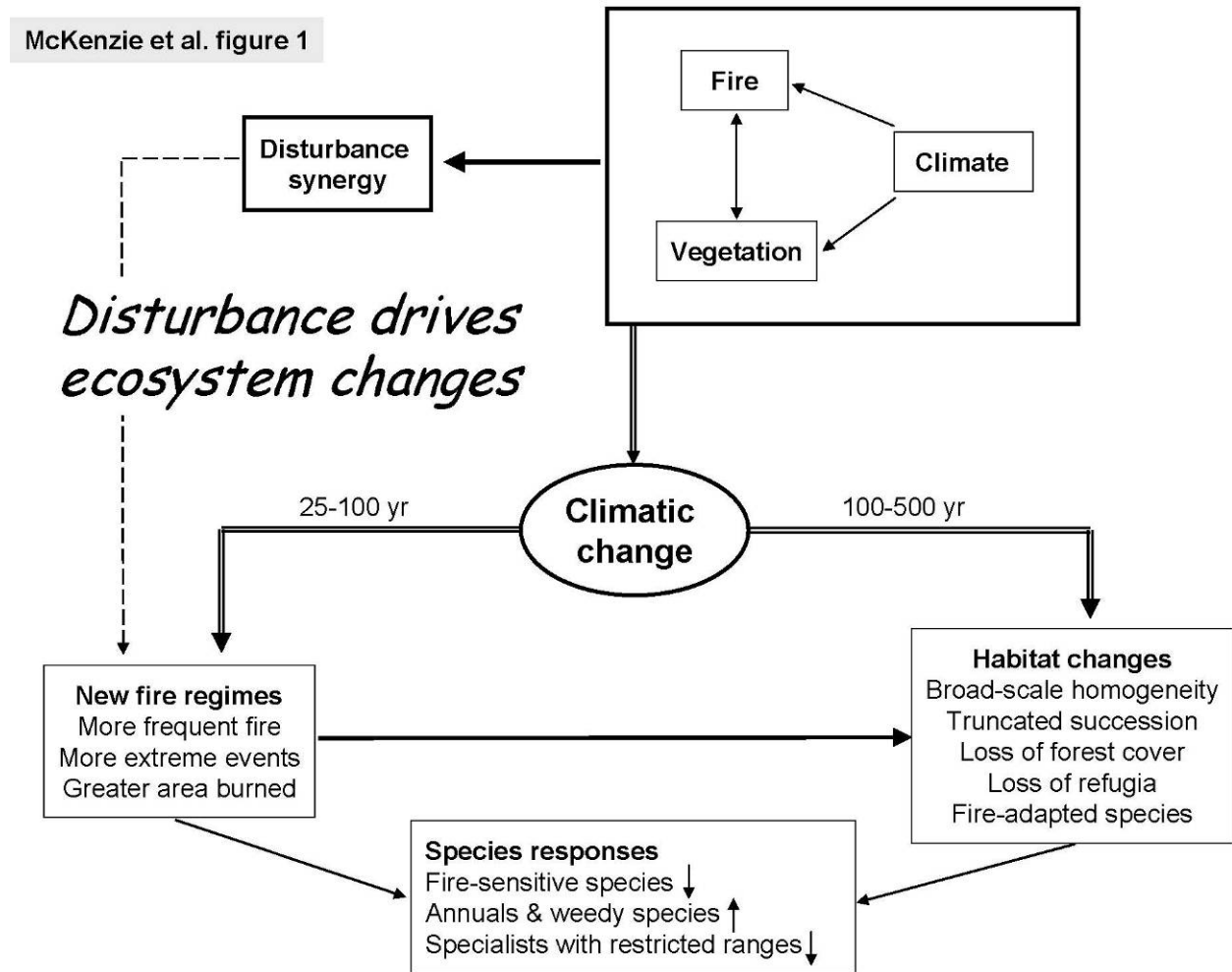
3

1 **Figure 3.6.** Influence of non-native earthworms on eastern forest floor dynamics (Frelich *et al.*,  
2 2006). Forest floor and plant community at base of trees before (a, left-hand photo) and after (b)  
3 European earthworm invasion in a sugar maple-dominated forest on the Chippewa National  
4 Forest, Minnesota, USA. Photo credit: Dave Hansen, University of Minnesota Agricultural  
5 Experimental Station.



6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16

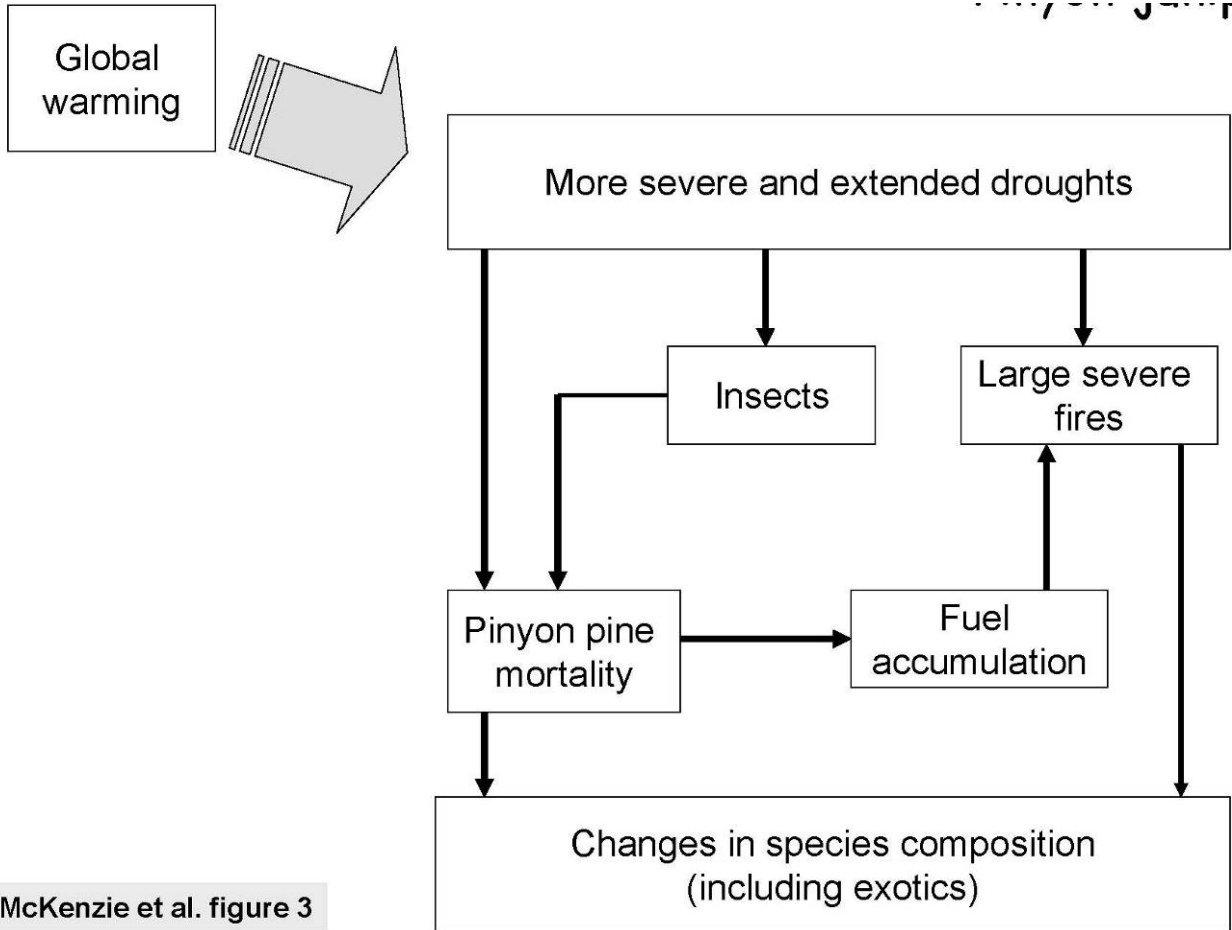
1 **Figure 3.7.** Conceptual model of the relative time scales for disturbance vs. climatic change  
 2 alone to alter ecosystems. Times are approximate. Adapted from (McKenzie *et al.*, 2004).  
 3  
 4



5  
 6  
 7  
 8

1 **Figure 3.8.** Stress complex in piñon-juniper woodlands of the American Southwest. From  
2 McKenzie *et al.* (2004).

3



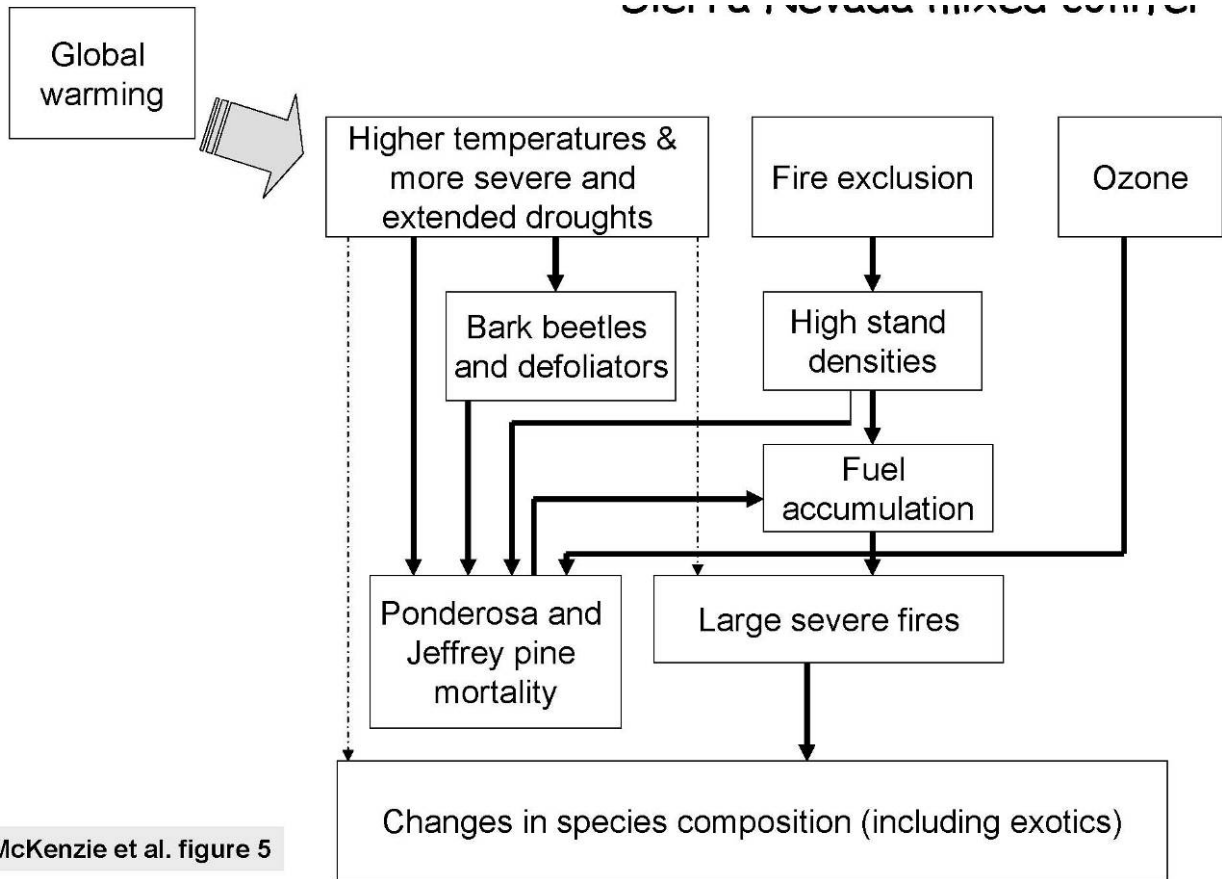
McKenzie et al. figure 3

4  
5  
6



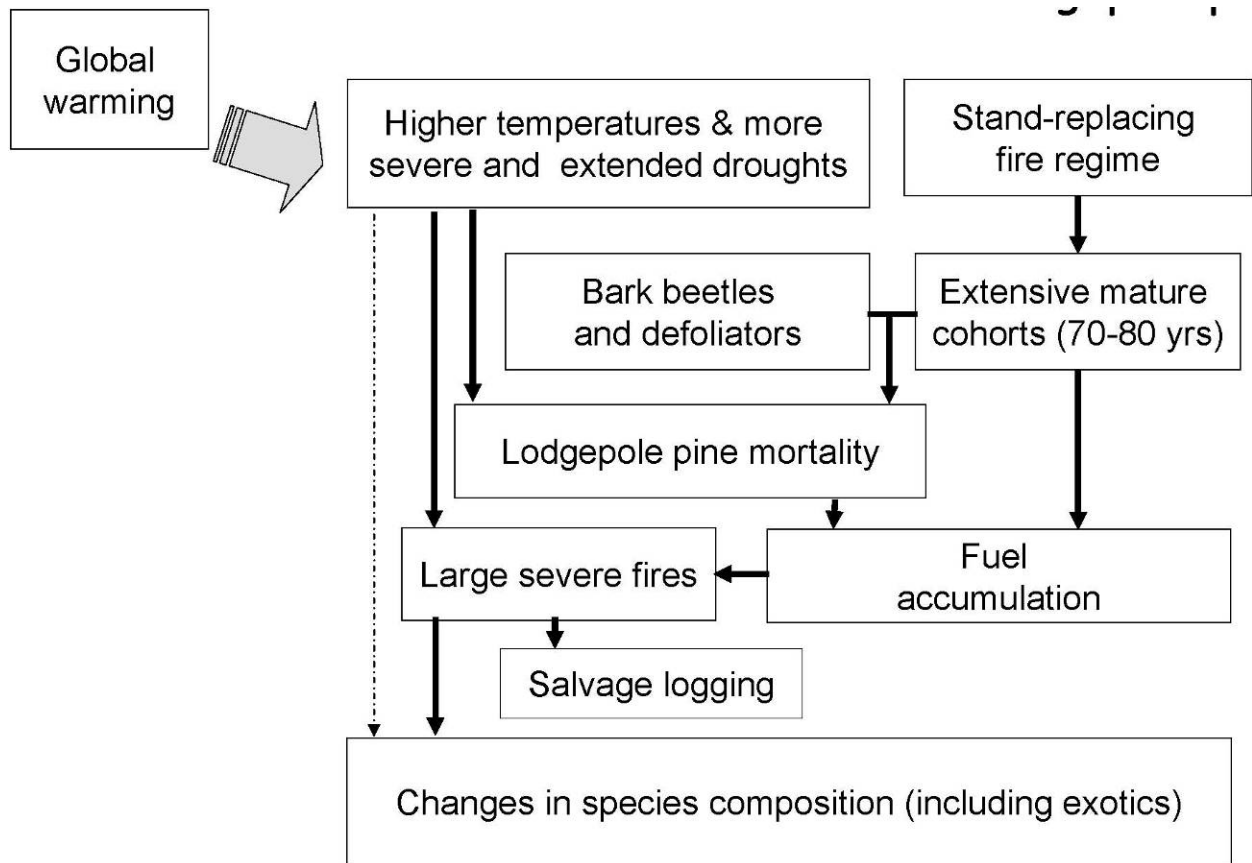
1 **Figure 3.9.** Stress complex in Sierra Nevada and southern Californian mixed-conifer forests.  
2 From McKenzie, Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).

3

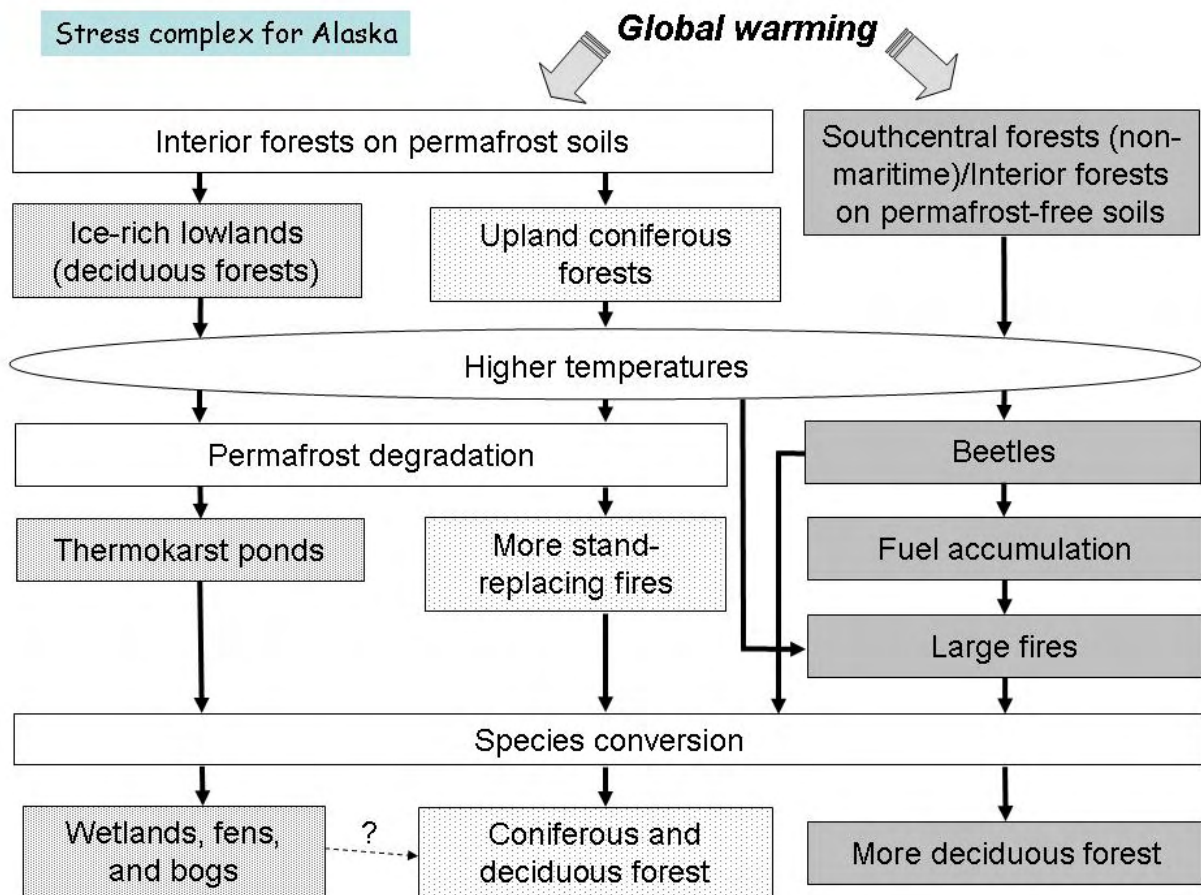


4  
5

1 **Figure 3.10.** Stress complex in interior (BC and USA) lodgepole pine forests. From McKenzie,  
2 Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).



**Figure 3.11.** Stress complex in the interior and coastal forests of Alaska. From McKenzie, Peterson, and Littell (forthcoming).



1 **Figure 3.12.** Anticipatory and reactive adaptation for natural and human systems (IPCC, 2001b).  
 2

		<b>Anticipatory</b>	<b>Reactive</b>
<b>Natural Systems</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes in length of growing season</li> <li>• Changes in ecosystem composition</li> <li>• Wetland migration</li> </ul>
	<i>Private</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purchase of insurance</li> <li>• Construction of house on stilts</li> <li>• Redesign of oil-rigs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes in farm practices</li> <li>• Changes in insurance premiums</li> <li>• Purchase of air-conditioning</li> </ul>
<b>Human Systems</b>	<i>Public</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Early-warning systems</li> <li>• New building codes, design standards</li> <li>• Incentives for relocation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compensatory payments, subsidies</li> <li>• Enforcement of building codes</li> <li>• Beach nourishment</li> </ul>

3  
 4  
 5  
 6  
 7

## 4 National Parks

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18

### **Authors**

#### **Lead Author**

Jill S. Baron, U.S. Geological Survey and Colorado State University

#### **Contributing Authors**

Craig D. Allen, U.S. Geological Survey

Erica Fleishman, National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis

Lance Gunderson, Emory University

Don McKenzie, U.S.D.A. Forest Service

Laura Meyerson, University of Rhode Island

Jill Oropeza, Colorado State University

Nate Stephenson, U.S. Geological Survey

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2		
3	4.1	Chapter Summary ..... 4-3
4	4.2	Background and History ..... 4-6
5	4.2.1	Legal History ..... 4-8
6	4.2.2	Interpretation of Goals ..... 4-10
7	4.3	Current Status of Management Systems ..... 4-12
8	4.3.1	Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend ..... 4-12
9	4.3.2	Stressors of Concern ..... 4-13
10	4.3.3	Current Approaches to NPS Natural Resource Management ..... 4-20
11	4.3.4	Sensitivity of NPS Goals to Climate Change ..... 4-25
12	4.4	Adapting to Climate Change ..... 4-26
13	4.4.1	Coming to Terms with Uncertainty ..... 4-26
14	4.4.2	Approaches to Management Given Uncertainty ..... 4-27
15	4.4.3	Incorporating Climate Change Considerations into Natural Resource
16		Management ..... 4-31
17	4.5	Conclusions ..... 4-38
18	4.6	References ..... 4-40
19	4.7	Acknowledgements ..... 4-49
20	4.8	Boxes ..... 4-50
21	4.9	Case Study Summaries ..... 4-59
22	4.10	Figures ..... 4-61
23		

## 1 **4.1 Summary**

2 Covering about 4% of the United States, the 338,000 km<sup>2</sup> of protected areas in the  
 3 National Park System contain representative landscapes of all of the nation’s biomes and  
 4 ecosystems. The U.S. National Park Service Organic Act established the National Park  
 5 System in 1916 “to conserve the scenery and the natural and historic objects and the wild  
 6 life therein and to provide for the enjoyment of the same in such manner and by such  
 7 means as will leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations.”<sup>1</sup>

8 Approximately 270 national park system areas contain significant natural resources.  
 9 Current National Park Service policy for natural resource parks calls for management to  
 10 preserve fundamental physical and biological processes, as well as individual species,  
 11 features, and plant and animal communities. Parks with managed natural resources range  
 12 from large intact (or nearly intact) ecosystems with a full complement of native species—  
 13 including top predators—to those diminished by disturbances such as within-park or  
 14 surrounding-area legacies of land use, invasive species, pollution, or regional  
 15 manipulation of resources. The significance of national parks as representatives of  
 16 naturally functioning ecosystems and as refugia for natural processes and biodiversity  
 17 increases as surrounding landscapes become increasingly altered by human activities.

18  
 19 *Addressing resilience to climate change in activities and planning will increase the*  
 20 *ability of the National Park Service to meet the mission of the Organic Act.* Climate has  
 21 fundamentally defined national parks. Climate *change* is redefining these parks and will  
 22 continue to do so. Rather than simply adding and ranking the importance of climate  
 23 change against a host of pressing issues, managers are wise to begin to include climate  
 24 change considerations into all activities and plans. There are a number of short-term  
 25 approaches that may help to provide resilience over the next few decades. These include  
 26 reducing habitat fragmentation and loss, invasive species, and pollution; protecting  
 27 important ecosystem and physical features; restoring damaged systems and natural  
 28 processes (recognizing that some restoration may not provide protection of dynamic  
 29 systems); and reducing the risks of catastrophic loss through bet-hedging strategies such  
 30 as establishing refugia, relocating valued species, replicating populations and habitats,  
 31 and maintaining representative examples of populations and species. Short-term  
 32 adaptation may involve prioritizing resources and determining which parks should  
 33 receive immediate attention, while recognizing that the physical and biological changes  
 34 that will accompany warming trends and increasing occurrences of extreme events will  
 35 affect every one of the 270 natural national parks in the coming century.

36  
 37 *Preparing for and adapting to climate change is as much a cultural and intellectual*  
 38 *challenge as it is an ecological one.* Successful adaptation begins by moving away from  
 39 traditional ways of managing resources. Throughout its history, the National Park Service  
 40 has changed its priorities and management strategies in response to increased scientific  
 41 understanding. Today, confronted not only with climate change but with many other  
 42 threats to natural resources from within and outside park boundaries, the Park Service  
 43 again has the opportunity to revisit resource management practices and policies.

---

1 16 U.S.C. 1, 2, 3, and 4

1 Adaptation strategies include broadening the portfolio of management approaches to  
2 include scenario planning and adaptive management, increasing the capacity to learn  
3 from management successes and failures, and examining and responding to the multiple  
4 scales at which species and processes function.

5  
6 Successful adaptation includes encouraging managers to take reasoned risks without  
7 concern for retribution. “Safe-to-fail” policies reward front-line managers for making  
8 decisions to protect resources under uncertainty. Although not desired, failures provide  
9 tremendous opportunities for learning. Learning from mistakes and successes is a critical  
10 part of adaptation to climate change. Learning is further enhanced by providing training  
11 opportunities, supporting continuous inquiry, promoting an atmosphere of respect,  
12 rewarding personal initiative, and as mentioned above, allowing for unintentional failure.

13  
14 *As climate change continues, thresholds of resilience will be overcome, increasing the*  
15 *importance of using methods that address uncertainty in planning and management.*  
16 Technical or scientific uncertainty can be addressed through scenario-based planning and  
17 adaptive management approaches toward learning. First, scenario-based planning  
18 explores a wide set of possible or alternative futures. A finite number of scenarios (*e.g.*,  
19 three to five) that depict a range of possible futures can be extremely useful for helping  
20 managers develop and implement plans, confront and evaluate the inevitable tradeoffs to  
21 be made when there are conflicting management goals, and minimize the anxiety or  
22 frustration that comes from having to deal with uncertainty. Scenarios that evaluate the  
23 feasibility of adaptation against ecological, social, or economic returns will be valuable in  
24 making difficult decisions, and in conveying results of decisions to the public. Public  
25 involvement in scenario building, from individual parks to national policy level, will  
26 prepare people for inevitable changes, and may build support for science-based  
27 management.

28  
29 Second, adaptive environmental assessment and management employs a set of processes  
30 to integrate learning with management actions where uncertainty exists about the  
31 potential ecological responses. Adaptive management either establishes experiments to  
32 test the effectiveness of management approaches, or uses understanding gained from past  
33 management or science to plan and execute management actions. Both require iterative  
34 monitoring and interpretation to gauge the effectiveness of that action in achieving  
35 management goals.

36  
37 *Protecting natural resources and processes may continue to be achieved during the*  
38 *coming decades using science-based principles already familiar to Park Service*  
39 *managers.* Protecting natural resources and processes in the near term begins with the  
40 need to first identify what is at risk. The next steps are to define the baselines (reference  
41 conditions) that constitute “unimpaired” in a changing world, decide the appropriate  
42 scales at which to manage the processes and resources, and set measurable targets of  
43 protection. Finally, monitoring of management results is important for understanding the  
44 degree to which management activities succeed or fail over time, and whether  
45 management activities need to be adjusted accordingly. In the long term, such science-  
46 based management principles will become more important when examples from the past



1 may not serve as guides for future conditions. Some targets for adjusting to future  
2 conditions can be met by the National Park Service with internal strategies for managing  
3 park resources. For example, parks may manage visitor use practices or patterns  
4 differently to prevent people from inadvertently contributing to climate-change-enhanced  
5 damage, or remove infrastructure from floodplains or fire-prone areas to allow natural  
6 disturbances to proceed as naturally as possible.

7  
8 *Many management goals can only be achieved through regional interagency*  
9 *cooperation.* The National Park Service can be a catalyst for regional collaboration with  
10 other land and resource management entities. For example, the National Park Service  
11 alone will not be able to protect and restore native species as distributions change in  
12 response to climate. The Natural Resource Challenge distinguishes between native and  
13 non-native plants, animals, and other organisms, and recommends non-natives are to be  
14 controlled where they jeopardize natural communities in parks. Regional partnerships  
15 with other land and resource management groups can anticipate, and even aid, the  
16 establishment of desirable climate-appropriate species that will take advantage of  
17 favorable conditions. By using species suited to anticipated future climates after  
18 disturbance or during restoration, protecting corridors or removing impediments to  
19 natural migration, and aggressively controlling unwanted species that threaten native  
20 species or impede current ecosystem function, managers may prevent establishment of  
21 less desirable species.

22  
23 *Climate change can best be met by engaging all levels of the National Park Service.*  
24 While resource management is implemented at individual parks, planning and support  
25 can be provided at all management levels, with better integration between planners and  
26 resource management staff. A revision of the National Park Service Management Policies  
27 to incorporate climate change considerations would help to codify the importance of the  
28 issue. Park General Management Plans and resource management plans also could be  
29 amended to include the understanding, goals, and plans that address climate change  
30 issues. Climate change education and coordination efforts at the national level will be  
31 helpful for offering consistent guidance and access to information. Regional- and  
32 network-level workshops and planning exercises will be important for addressing issues  
33 at appropriate scales, as will interagency activities that address climate change impacts to  
34 physical and natural resources regardless of political boundaries.

35  
36

## 1 **4.2 Background and History**

2 The U.S. national parks trace their distinctive origins to the early 19<sup>th</sup> century. The artist  
 3 George Catlin is credited with initiating the uniquely American idea of protected national  
 4 parks. While traveling through the Dakota territories in 1832, he expressed concern over  
 5 the impact of westward expansion on wildlife, wilderness, and Indian civilization; he  
 6 suggested they might be preserved “by some great protecting policy of government...in a  
 7 magnificent park...A nation’s park, containing man and beast, in all the wild and  
 8 freshness of their nature’s beauty” (Pitcaithley, 2001). In 1872, the U.S. Congress created  
 9 the world’s first national park, Yellowstone, in Wyoming and Montana territories “as a  
 10 public park or pleasuring ground for the benefit and enjoyment of the people.”<sup>2</sup> Other  
 11 spectacular natural areas soon followed as Congress designated Sequoia, Yosemite,  
 12 Mount Rainier, Crater Lake, and Glacier as national parks in an idealistic impulse to  
 13 preserve nature (Baron, 2004).

14  
 15 The U.S. National Park System today includes a diverse set of ecological landscapes that  
 16 form an ecological and cultural bridge between the past and the future. Covering about  
 17 4% of the United States, the 338,000 km<sup>2</sup> of protected areas in the park system contain  
 18 representative landscapes of many of the world’s biomes and ecosystems. U.S. national  
 19 parks are found across a temperature gradient from the tropics to the tundra, and across  
 20 an elevational gradient from the sea to the mountains. These parklands are dynamic  
 21 systems, containing features that reflect processes operating over time scales from  
 22 seconds to millennia. For example, over millions of years, seasonal variation in flows and  
 23 sediment in the Colorado River, which flows through Grand Canyon National Park,  
 24 produced an unusual river ecosystem surrounded by rock walls that demonstrate  
 25 countless annual cycles of snowmelt and erosion (Fig. 4.1). At the other end of the  
 26 geologic spectrum are “new” park ecosystems such as the Everglades, which is less than  
 27 10,000 years old. Seasonal patterns of water coursing through the sloughs in the  
 28 Everglades, as in the Grand Canyon, produced an ecosystem with plants and animals that  
 29 requires the ebb and flow of water to persist (Fig. 4.2).

30  
 31  
 32  
 33 **Figure 4.1.** Looking up from the Colorado River at the Grand Canyon. Photo  
 34 courtesy of Jeffrey Lovich, USGS.

35  
 36  
 37  
 38 **Figure 4.2.** Everglades National Park. Photo by Rodney Cammauf, courtesy of  
 39 National Park Service.

40  
 41 As greenhouse gases continue to accumulate in the atmosphere, the effects of climate  
 42 change on the environment will only increase. Ecological changes will range from the  
 43 emergence of new ecosystems to the disappearance of others. Few natural ecosystems

---

<sup>2</sup> H.R. 764

1 remain in the United States; the National Park Service (NPS) is steward of some of the  
 2 most intact representatives of these systems. However, changes in climate that are now  
 3 being driven by human activities are likely to profoundly alter national parks as we know  
 4 them. Some iconic species are at high risk of extinction. For example, the Joshua tree is  
 5 likely to disappear from both Joshua Tree National Monument and the southern two  
 6 thirds of its range, where it is already restricted to isolated areas that meet its fairly  
 7 narrow winter minimum temperature requirements (Fig. 4.3).<sup>3</sup> The distributions of many  
 8 other species of plants and animals are likely to shift across the American landscape,  
 9 independent of the borders of protected areas. National parks that have special places in  
 10 the American psyche will remain parks, but their look and feel may change dramatically.  
 11 For example, the glaciers in Glacier National Park are expected to melt by 2030 (Hall and  
 12 Fagre, 2003). Therefore, the time is ripe for the NPS, the Department of the Interior, and  
 13 the American public to revisit our collective vision of the purpose of parks.

14  
 15  
 16  
 17 **Figure 4.3.** Photograph of Joshua tree in Joshua Tree National Park. Photo courtesy  
 18 of National Park Service.

19  
 20 Now is also the time to evaluate what can and should be done to minimize the effects of  
 21 climate change on park resources, and to maximize opportunities for wildlife, vegetation,  
 22 valued physical features, and the processes that support them to survive in the face of  
 23 climate change. National parks increasingly are isolated by developed lands, and climate  
 24 change is inseparable from the many other phenomena that degrade natural resources in  
 25 national parks. Where national parks share boundaries with other federally or tribally  
 26 managed lands, climate change can serve as a strong incentive to develop and implement  
 27 regional efforts to manage ecosystems with a shared vision. Using climate change  
 28 scenarios, we can realistically reevaluate current management efforts to reduce habitat  
 29 fragmentation, remove or manage invasive species, maintain or restore natural  
 30 disturbance regimes, and maximize air and water quality. Positive and negative feedbacks  
 31 between contemporary changes in climate and resource management priorities must be  
 32 carefully considered.

33  
 34 This chapter is directed specifically at the 270 national park areas with natural resource  
 35 responsibilities, although many of the approaches we suggest are applicable to a diversity  
 36 of resources and sites, including cultural and historical parks and other public and tribal  
 37 lands. In this chapter, we suggest how national park managers might increase the  
 38 probability that their resources and operations will adapt successfully to climate change.  
 39 Successful adaptation begins by moving away from traditional ways of managing  
 40 resources. We discuss strategies to stimulate proactive modes of thinking and acting in  
 41 the face of climate change and other environmental changes. These strategies include  
 42 broadening the portfolio of management approaches, increasing the capacity to learn

---

<sup>3</sup> Cole, K.L., K. Larsen, P. Duffy, and S. Arundel, 2005: Transient dynamics of vegetation response to past and future major climatic changes in the Southwestern United States. *Proceedings of the Workshop on Climate Science in Support of Decision Making*, Online poster report, [http://www.climate-science.gov/workshop2005/posters/P-EC4.2\\_Cole.pdf](http://www.climate-science.gov/workshop2005/posters/P-EC4.2_Cole.pdf).

1 from management successes and failures, and examining and responding to the multiple  
2 scales at which species and processes function. Strategies also include catalyzing  
3 ecoregional coordination among federal, state, and private entities, valuing human  
4 resources, and understanding what climate change means for interpreting the language of  
5 the NPS Organic Act. By modifying and expanding its current monitoring systems, NPS  
6 can expand its capacity to document and understand ecological responses to climate  
7 change and management interventions. By minimizing the negative effects from other  
8 current stressors, NPS may be able to increase the possibility that natural adjustments in  
9 habitats and processes can ease the transition to new climate regimes.

10  
11 There are three critical messages this chapter is meant to convey:

- 12  
13 1. We know climate has fundamentally defined our national parks. Their diversity  
14 and their stunning coastlines, caves, mountains and deserts are all the product of  
15 the interaction of temperature and precipitation, acting on the scale of days and  
16 seasons to eons. Climate *change* is redefining these parks, and will continue to do  
17 so. As such it cannot be considered merely as “one more stressor” to be  
18 considered and dealt with. Changing climate will undermine, or possibly enhance,  
19 efforts to reduce the damage done by other unnatural types of disturbances such  
20 as pollution, invasive species, or habitat fragmentation. *Starting now, the*  
21 *influence of changing climate must therefore be considered in conjunction with*  
22 *every resource management activity planned and executed in national parks.*  
23
- 24 2. The adaptation approaches suggested in this chapter are meant to increase  
25 resilience, which is defined as the amount of change or disturbance that a system  
26 can absorb before it undergoes a fundamental shift to a different set of processes  
27 or structures (Holling, 1973; Gunderson, 2000). *Because, however, the climate is*  
28 *changing and will continue to change, promoting resilience as a management*  
29 *strategy may only be effective until thresholds of resilience are overcome. Our*  
30 *confidence in the effectiveness of the adaptation options proposed is based on*  
31 *near-term responses of perhaps the next several decades.*  
32
- 33 3. *Finally, and perhaps most importantly, the onset and continuance of climate*  
34 *change over the next century requires NPS managers to think differently about*  
35 *park ecosystems than they have in the past. Preparing for and adapting to climate*  
36 *change is as much a cultural and intellectual challenge as it is an ecological one.*

#### 37 **4.2.1 Legal History**

38 The U.S. NPS Organic Act established the National Park System in 1916 “to conserve the  
39 scenery and the natural and historic objects and the wild life therein and to provide for the  
40 enjoyment of the same in such manner and by such means as will leave them unimpaired  
41 for the enjoyment of future generations.”<sup>4</sup> This visionary legislation set aside lands in the  
42 public trust and created “a splendid system of parks for all Americans” (Albright and  
43 Schenck, 1999). The U.S. National Park System today includes more than 390 natural

---

<sup>4</sup> 16 U.S.C. 12 3, and 4

1 and cultural units, and has been emulated worldwide. The National Park System has the  
2 warm support of the American people, and parks are often the embodiment of widespread  
3 public sentiment for conservation and protection of the environment (Winks, 1997).

4  
5 The intent of Congress for management of national parks was initially set out in the  
6 Organic Act (see Fig. 4.4). The 1970 General Authorities Act and the 1978 “Redwood  
7 Amendment” to the Organic Act strengthened the Service’s mission of conservation by  
8 clarifying that the “fundamental purpose” of the National Park System is the mandate to  
9 conserve park resources and values. This mandate is independent of the separate  
10 prohibition on impairment. Park managers have the authority to allow and manage human  
11 uses, provided that those uses will not cause impairment, which is an unacceptable  
12 impact. Enabling legislation and park strategic and general management plans are used to  
13 guide decisions about whether specific activities will cause impairment (National Park  
14 Service, 2006).

15  
16  
17  
18 **Figure 4.4.** Historical timeline of the National Park Service.<sup>5</sup>

19  
20 Other acts passed by Congress have extended the roles and responsibilities of national  
21 parks. National parks are included in the Wilderness Act of 1964 (for parks that include  
22 wilderness or proposed wilderness), the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968, the Clean  
23 Water Act of 1972, the Endangered Species Act of 1973, and the Clean Air Act of 1990.  
24 These acts, along with the Organic Act, are translated into management guidelines and  
25 policies in the 2006 Management Policies guide. Historian Robin Winks identified three  
26 additional acts that help to define the role of NPS in natural resource protection: the  
27 National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1972, the National Forest Management  
28 Act of 1976, and the Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976 (Winks, 1997).

29  
30 Although its overarching mission has remained mostly unchanged, the NPS has  
31 undergone substantial evolution in management philosophy since 1916, and there are  
32 many examples that illustrate unconventional approaches to problems. For instance,  
33 national park status is not necessarily conferred in perpetuity. Twenty-four units of the  
34 National Park System were either deauthorized or transferred to other management  
35 custody for a number of reasons, demonstrating that designation of national park status is  
36 not necessarily permanent. While fifteen areas were transferred to other agencies because  
37 their national significance was marginal, others were deauthorized because their location  
38 was inaccessible to the public, and the management of five reservoirs was handed over to  
39 the Bureau of Reclamation.<sup>6</sup> Fossil Cycad National Monument in South Dakota,  
40 however, was deauthorized by Congress in 1957 due to near-complete loss of the fossil  
41 resource to collectors (National Park Service, 1998).

---

<sup>5</sup>Adapted from **National Park Service**, 2007: History. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/aboutus/history.htm>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

<sup>6</sup>**National Park Service**, 2003: National Park Service history: former National Park System units: an analysis. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/history/history/hisnps/NPSHistory/formerparks.htm>, accessed on 7-13-2007.

1  
2 Prior to the 1960s, the NPS “practiced a curious combination of active management and  
3 passive acceptance of natural systems and processes, while becoming a superb visitor  
4 services agency” (National Park Service, 1999). The parks actively practiced fire  
5 suppression, aggressive wildlife management (which included culling some species and  
6 providing supplemental food to others), and spraying with pesticides to prevent irruptions  
7 of native insects. Development of ski slopes and golf courses within park boundaries was  
8 congruent with visitor enjoyment. During the 1960s, the Leopold Report on Wildlife  
9 Management in National Parks, the 1964 Wilderness Act, and the growth of the  
10 environmental movement ushered in a different management philosophy (Leopold,  
11 1963). Managers began to consider natural controls on the size of wildlife populations.  
12 Some park managers decided skiing and golf were not congruent with their mission, and  
13 closed ski lifts and golf courses. The Wilderness Act of 1964 restricted mechanized and  
14 many other activities in designated or proposed wilderness areas within parks.  
15 Throughout its history, NPS has changed its priorities and management strategies in  
16 response to increased scientific understanding of ecological systems, public opinion, and  
17 new laws and administrative directives. Today, confronted not only with climate change  
18 but with many other threats to natural resources from within and outside park boundaries,  
19 the Park Service again has the opportunity to revisit resource management practices and  
20 policies.

#### 21 **4.2.2 Interpretation of Goals**

22 The aggregate federal laws described above strongly suggest that the intent of Congress  
23 is not only to “conserve unimpaired” but also to minimize human-caused disturbances,  
24 and to restore and maintain the ecological integrity of the national parks. The NPS  
25 mission remains much as it was in 1916 (Box 4.1). In general, the Secretary of the  
26 Interior, and by extension, the Director of the NPS, have been given broad discretion in  
27 management and regulation provided that the fundamental purpose of conservation of  
28 park resources and values is met. Although individual park-enabling legislation may  
29 differ somewhat from park to park, all parks are bound by the NPS Organic Act, the  
30 Redwood National Park Expansion Act, and other legislation described above. The  
31 enabling language of the Organic Act creates a dilemma that complicates the Park  
32 Service’s ability to define key ecosystem characteristics upon which the goals depend: for  
33 example, what is the definition of “unimpaired?” While “impair” is defined as “to cause  
34 to diminish, as in strength, value, or quality,” it requires establishment of a baseline or  
35 reference condition in order to evaluate deviation from that condition.<sup>7</sup> Interpretations of  
36 how to manage parks to maintain unimpaired conditions have changed over time, from  
37 benign neglect early in the history of the national parks to restoring vignettes of primitive  
38 America and enhancing visitor enjoyment through much of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. The  
39 definition of “unimpaired” is central to how well NPS confronts and adapts its resources  
40 to climate change.  
41

---

<sup>7</sup> “Impair” 2003: In: *The American Heritage® Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. New York: Houghton Mifflin Company, 2000.

1 To accomplish its mission, NPS employs more than 14,000 permanent personnel and  
 2 some 4,000 temporary seasonal employees (Fig. 4.5). Parks receive more than 270  
 3 million visitors each year. Operations and management occur at three levels of  
 4 organization: national, regional, and individual park. Service-wide policy is issued by the  
 5 Director of the NPS, and may also be issued by the President, Congress, the Secretary of  
 6 the Interior, or the Assistant Secretary for Fish, Wildlife, and Parks. Many of the  
 7 programs that make up or are supplemented by the Natural Resource Challenge,  
 8 described below, are administered from the national headquarters, called the Washington  
 9 Office. Seven regional offices divide the National Park System by geography (Northeast,  
 10 National Capital, Southeast, Midwest, Intermountain, Pacific West, and Alaska Regions).  
 11 Regional offices provide administrative services and oversight to parks, and serve as  
 12 conduits for information between the Washington Office and parks. Two national-level  
 13 offices, the Denver (Colorado) Service Center and the Interpretive Design Center at  
 14 Harpers Ferry, West Virginia, provide professional architectural and engineering  
 15 services, and media products (*e.g.*, publications, exhibits, interactive presentations, and  
 16 audio-visual displays) to individual parks.

17  
 18  
 19  
 20 **Figure 4.5.** Organizational chart of National Park Service.<sup>8</sup>

21  
 22 There are more than 14 different categories of park units within the National Park  
 23 System, including national parks, national scenic rivers, lakeshores, seashores, historic  
 24 sites, and recreation areas (Fig. 4.6). The parks in each category offer different  
 25 experiences for visitors. In addition to the overarching NPS mission, certain activities can  
 26 take place within individual park units depending on specific Congressional enabling  
 27 legislation at the time of establishment. For example, public hunting is recognized as a  
 28 legitimate recreational activity within the boundaries of many national lakeshores,  
 29 seashores, recreation areas, and preserves because of the legislation that established those  
 30 specific park units.

31  
 32  
 33  
 34 **Figure 4.6.** Map of the National Park System. Data courtesy of National Park  
 35 Service, Harpers Ferry Center.<sup>9</sup>

36  
 37 Approximately 270 National Park System areas contain significant natural resources. The  
 38 Natural Resource Challenge, an action plan for preserving natural resources in national  
 39 parks, was established in 2000 in the recognition that knowledge of the condition and  
 40 trends of NPS natural resources was insufficient to effectively manage them (National  
 41 Park Service, 1999). The Natural Resource Challenge has already enabled a significant  
 42 advancement in inventory, monitoring, and understanding of resources. There are four

<sup>8</sup> Adapted from **National Park Service**, 2007: Organization. National Park Service,  
<http://www.nps.gov/aboutus/organization.htm>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

<sup>9</sup> **National Park Service**, Harpers Ferry Center, 2007: Harpers Ferry Center: NPS maps. National Park  
 Service, <http://home.nps.gov/applications/hafe/hfc/carto-detail.cfm?Alpha=nps>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

1 natural resource action plan goals (Box 4.2). These goals are aligned with the NPS  
2 Strategic Plan, which emphasizes the role of natural resource stewardship and has as its  
3 first goal the preservation of park resources. Central to the Natural Resource Challenge is  
4 the application of scientific knowledge to resource management.

5  
6 The Natural Resource Challenge includes the Inventory and Monitoring Program  
7 (including NPS Resource Inventories and Vital Signs Monitoring Networks), the  
8 Biological Resources Management Program, and the Air Quality, Water Resources, and  
9 Geologic Resources Programs. Natural Resource Challenge programs mostly provide  
10 information, management guidance, and expertise to parks, as opposed to active  
11 management, although an exception is the Invasive Plant Management Teams. Individual  
12 parks set their own resource management agendas, which they carry out with permanent  
13 and seasonal staff and money from the park, the Natural Resource Preservation Program  
14 (a competitive research fund), and Park-Oriented Biological Support (a joint USGS/NPS  
15 program). Many parks also encourage or invite researchers to study specific issues  
16 facilitated by two NPS entities—the Cooperative Ecosystem Studies Units and the  
17 Research Learning Centers.

18  
19 Most parks operate under a General Management Plan, a broad planning document that  
20 creates a vision for the park for a 15- to 20-year period. The General Management Plan  
21 provides guidance for fulfilling the park’s purpose and protecting the park’s fundamental  
22 resources and values. As part of the General Management Plan, or sometimes developed  
23 as an addendum to the General Management Plan, Desired Conditions Plans articulate  
24 ideal future conditions that a park strives to attain. Individual parks may have up to 40  
25 additional specific resource- or place-based management plans (an example is Rocky  
26 Mountain National Park’s Elk and Vegetation Management Plan). These natural resource  
27 management plans are increasingly science driven. However, despite having guidance  
28 and policies for natural resource management planning, there are still many parks that  
29 have no planning documents identifying desired future conditions, and many of the  
30 General Management Plans are out of date.

31  
32 Public input, review, and comment are encouraged, and increasingly required, in all park  
33 planning activities. Increasingly, park planning activities take place in regional contexts  
34 and in consultation with other federal, state, and private land and natural resource  
35 managers.

## 36 **4.3 Current Status of Management Systems**

### 37 **4.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend**

38 National parks are found in every major biome of the United States. Parks with managed  
39 natural resources range from large intact (or nearly intact) ecosystems with a full  
40 complement of native species—including top predators, (*e.g.*, some Alaskan parks,  
41 Yellowstone, Glacier; Stanford and Ellis, 2002)—to those diminished by disturbances  
42 such as within-park or surrounding-area legacies of land use, invasive species, pollution,  
43 or regional manipulation of resources (*e.g.*, hydrologic flow regimes).

44



1 Current NPS policy calls for management to preserve fundamental physical and  
2 biological processes, as well as individual species, features, and plant and animal  
3 communities (National Park Service, 2006). “The Service recognizes that natural  
4 processes and species are evolving, and NPS will allow this evolution to continue—  
5 minimally influenced by human actions” (National Park Service, 2006). Resources,  
6 processes, systems, and values are defined in NPS Management Policies (National Park  
7 Service, 2006) as:

- 8
- 9     ▪ Physical resources such as water, air, soils, topographic features, geologic  
10       features, paleontological resources, and natural soundscapes and clear skies, both  
11       during the day and at night;
- 12     ▪ Physical processes such as weather, erosion, cave formation, and wildland fire;
- 13     ▪ Biological resources such as native plants, animals, and communities;
- 14     ▪ Biological processes such as photosynthesis, succession, and evolution;
- 15     ▪ Ecosystems; and
- 16     ▪ Highly valued associated characteristics such as scenic views.

### 17 **4.3.2 Stressors of Concern**

18 Despite mandates to manage national parks to maintain their unimpaired condition, there  
19 are many contemporary human-caused disturbances (as opposed to natural disturbances)  
20 that create obstacles for restoring, maintaining, or approximating the natural conditions of  
21 ecosystems. The current condition of park resources can be a legacy of past human  
22 activities or can be caused by activities that take place outside park boundaries. We  
23 grouped the most widespread and influential of the disturbances that affect park condition  
24 into four broad classes: altered disturbance regimes, habitat fragmentation and loss,  
25 invasive species, and pollution.

26

27 These four classes of stressors interact. For example, alteration of the nitrogen cycle via  
28 atmospheric nitrogen deposition can facilitate invasion of non-native grasses. In  
29 terrestrial systems, invasion of non-native grasses can alter fire regimes, ultimately  
30 leading to vegetation-type conversions and effective loss or fragmentation of wildlife  
31 habitat (Brooks, 1999; Brooks *et al.*, 2004). Climate change is expected to interact with  
32 these pressures, exacerbating their effects. Climate change is already contributing to  
33 increasing frequency and intensity of wildfires in the western United States, potentially  
34 accelerating the rate of vegetation-type conversions that are being driven by invasive  
35 species (Mckenzie *et al.*, 2004; Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Two illustrations are presented  
36 in Boxes 4.3 and 4.4 of complex stressor interactions: fire and climate interactions in  
37 western parks, and myriad stressor interactions in the Everglades.

#### 38 **4.3.2.1 Altered Disturbance Regimes**

39 Natural disturbance processes such as fire, insect outbreaks, floods, avalanches, and  
40 forest blowdowns are essential drivers of ecosystem patterns (*e.g.*, species composition  
41 and age structure of forests) and processes (*e.g.*, nutrient cycling dynamics). Disturbance  
42 regimes are characterized by the spatial and temporal patterns of disturbance processes,  
43 such as the frequency, severity, and spatial extent of fire. Many natural disturbance

1 regimes are strongly modulated by climate variability, particularly extreme climate  
2 events, as well as by human land uses. Thus, climate change is expected to alter  
3 disturbance regimes in ways that will profoundly change national park ecosystems. Three  
4 types of natural disturbances whose frequency and magnitude have been altered in the  
5 past century include fire, beach and soil erosion, and natural flow regimes.

#### 6 7 **Fire**

8 Historic fire exclusion in or around many national parks has sometimes increased the  
9 potential for higher-severity fires and mortality of fire-resistant species. Fire-resistant tree  
10 species that may have had their natural fire frequencies suppressed include giant sequoias  
11 (*Sequoia giganteum*) in Yosemite, Sequoia, and Kings Canyon National Parks; ponderosa  
12 pine (*Pinus ponderosa*) in Grand Canyon and other southwestern parks; and southwestern  
13 white pine (*Pinus strobiformis*) in Guadalupe Mountains National Park. In other areas,  
14 such as Yellowstone or the subalpine forests of Rocky Mountain National Park (see Case  
15 Study Summary 4.1), fires are driven almost completely by historically infrequent  
16 weather events and post-fire forest regrowth (Romme and Despain, 1989). Recent land  
17 use or fire suppression have had little effect on fire regimes in the latter parks.

#### 18 19 **Coast and Soil Erosion**

20 Coasts are naturally dynamic systems that respond to changes in sea level, storms, wind  
21 patterns, sediment inputs from river systems, and offshore bathymetry. Barrier islands,  
22 which provide protection to coasts, migrate in response to storms and currents and are  
23 replenished by winds, waves, currents, and tides. When sea level rise is gradual,  
24 ecosystems and landforms can adjust via accretion of sediments, and thus keep pace with  
25 the changes. Coastal responses may be nonlinear in response to abrupt natural  
26 disturbances; freshwater and salt marshes, mangroves, or beach regeneration may take  
27 years to decades to recover after severe storms, and irreversible changes can occur if  
28 there is salt-water intrusion or a lack of sediment source for replenishment (IPCC, 2007).  
29 Direct human activities have had significant impacts on coastlines and coastal zones, and  
30 a trend toward increasing coastal development is projected to occur through the next  
31 century (IPCC, 2007). Drainage of coastal wetlands, deforestation and reclamation, and  
32 discharge of pollutants of all kinds are examples of direct alterations of coasts. Extraction  
33 of oil and natural gas can lead to subsidence. Structures such as seawalls and dams  
34 harden the coast, impede natural regeneration of sediments, and prevent natural inland  
35 migration of sand and vegetation after disturbances. Channelization of marshes and  
36 waterways alters freshwater, sediment, and nutrient delivery patterns (IPCC, 2007).

37  
38 Soils provide a critical foundation for ecosystems, and soil development occurs in  
39 geologic time. Natural soil erosion can also occur slowly, over eons, but rapid soil loss  
40 can happen in response to extreme physical and climatic events. Many of the changes in  
41 soil erosion rates in the parks are a legacy of human land use. Soil erosion rates are also  
42 influenced by interacting stressors, such as fire and climate change. Historic land uses  
43 such as grazing by domestic livestock have accelerated water and wind erosion in some  
44 semiarid national parks when overgrazing has occurred. This erosion has had long-term  
45 effects on ecosystem productivity and sustainability (Sydoriak, Allen, and Jacobs, 2000).  
46 In Canyonlands National Park, soils at sites grazed from the late 1800s until the 1970s

1 have lost much of their vegetative cover. These soils have lower soil fertility than soils  
2 that never were exposed to livestock grazing (Belnap, 2003). Erosion after fires also can  
3 lead to soil loss, which reduces options for revegetation, and contributes sediment loads  
4 to streams and lakes. Excessive sediment loading degrades aquatic habitat. Long-term  
5 erosion in a humid environment like that in Redwood National Park is a direct legacy of  
6 intensive logging and road development.<sup>10</sup>

### 7 8 **Altered Flow Regimes**

9 Freshwater ecosystems are already among the most imperiled of natural environments  
10 worldwide, due to human appropriation of freshwater (Gleick, 2006). Few natural area  
11 national parks have rivers that are unaltered or unaffected by upstream manipulations.  
12 Reservoirs in several national parks have flooded valleys where rivers once existed.  
13 Examples of large impoundments include Hetch Hetchy Reservoir in Yosemite National  
14 Park, Lakes Powell and Mead on the Colorado River of Glen Canyon and Lake Mead  
15 National Recreation Areas, and Lake Fontana in Great Smoky Mountains National Park.  
16 There are many smaller dams and reservoirs in other national parks. Parks below dams  
17 and diversions, such as Big Bend National Park, are subject to flow regulation from many  
18 miles upstream. Irrigation structures, such as the Grand Ditch in Rocky Mountain  
19 National Park, divert annual runoff away from the Colorado River headwaters each  
20 year.<sup>11</sup> Volume, flow dynamics, temperature, and water quality are often highly altered  
21 below dams and diversions (Poff *et al.*, 2007). Everglades National Park now receives  
22 much less water than it did before upstream drainage canals and diversions were  
23 constructed to divert water for agriculture. Natural hydrologic cycles have been  
24 disrupted, and the water that Everglades now receives is of lower quality due to  
25 agricultural runoff. Altered hydrologic regimes promote shifts in vegetation; facilitate the  
26 invasion of non-native species such as tamarisk, Russian olive, and watermilfoil; and  
27 promote colonization by native species such as cattail.

28  
29 Groundwater depletion, which influences replenishment of springs, has been suggested as  
30 a cause of decreased artesian flows at Chickasaw National Recreation Area and in desert  
31 parks such as Organ Pipe Cactus and Death Valley (*e.g.*, Knowles, 2003). Groundwater  
32 depletion also directly affects phreatophytes, or water-loving riparian and wetland  
33 species. Groundwater depletion increasingly is occurring throughout the United States,  
34 even in the southeastern parks such as Chattahoochee National River National Recreation  
35 Area (Lettenmaier *et al.*, 1999). Caves, such as Jewel Cave National Monument, and the  
36 processes that maintain them are at special risk from groundwater depletion. Impacts  
37 include drying of cave streams and pools, drying of speleothems (stalactites and other  
38 carbonate formations) so they do not continue to grow, and loss of habitat for aquatic  
39 cave fauna (Ford and Williams, 1989).

40  
41 Land use, particularly urbanization, alters flow regimes through creation of impervious  
42 surfaces. Water that previously percolated through soils and was assimilated by native

---

<sup>10</sup> **National Park Service**, 2006: Redwood National and State Parks. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/redw/naturescience/environmentalfactors.htm>, accessed on 5-15-2007.

<sup>11</sup> **National Park Service**, 2007: Rocky Mountain National Park - hydrologic activity. National Park Service, [http://www.us-parks.com/rocky/hydrologic\\_activity.html](http://www.us-parks.com/rocky/hydrologic_activity.html), accessed on 4-6-2007.

1 vegetation runs rapidly off paved surfaces, increasing the probability that streams and  
2 rivers will flood in response to storms. Flooding is a management concern in urban parks,  
3 such as Rock Creek Park in Washington, DC. When Rock Creek was established in 1890,  
4 it was at the edge of the city; its watershed is now wholly urbanized.

#### 5 **4.3.2.2 Habitat Alteration: Fragmentation and Homogenization**

6 “Wild life” is identified specifically in the NPS enabling legislation, and regardless of  
7 whether the framers of the Organic Act intended the words to mean only birds and  
8 mammals, or all wild living things, large mammals have long been a central focus of NPS  
9 management and public discourse. Many wildlife challenges within parks stem from past  
10 extirpation of predators and overexploitation of game species, such as elk, and furbearers,  
11 such as beaver and wolverine. Restoration of species that were extirpated, and control of  
12 species that in the absence of predators have greatly expanded their populations, are  
13 important issues in many of the 270 natural area parks (Tomback and Kendall, 2002).

14  
15 National parks may be affected by landscape alterations occurring either within or  
16 beyond their boundaries. Both fragmentation and landscape homogenization pose serious  
17 challenges to maintaining biodiversity. Roads, trails, campsites and recreational use can  
18 lead to fragmentation of habitat for various species. Fragmentation can directly or  
19 indirectly deter or prevent animal species from accessing food sources or accessing  
20 mating or birthing grounds (*e.g.*, some species of birds will not return to their nests when  
21 humans are present nearby, *e.g.*, Rodgers, Jr. and Smith, 1995). Moreover, fragmentation  
22 can impede dispersal of plant seeds or other propagules and migration of plant and animal  
23 populations that live along boundaries of national parks. However, fragmentation can  
24 also increase the amount and quality of habitat for some species, such as white-tailed  
25 deer, which, while native, are now considered a nuisance because of high numbers in  
26 many parts of the eastern United States.

27  
28 Causes of fragmentation include road building and resource extraction such as timber  
29 harvest, mines, oil and gas wells, water wells, power lines, and pipelines. Coastal wetland  
30 ecosystems can be constrained by structures that starve them of sediments or prevent  
31 landward migration. In lands adjacent to parks, fragmentation increasingly is driven by  
32 exurban development—low-density rural home development within a landscape still  
33 dominated by native vegetation. Since 1950, exurban development has rapidly outpaced  
34 suburban and urban development in the conterminous United States (Brown *et al.*,  
35 2005).<sup>12</sup> The effects of fragmentation are highly dependent on the spatial scale of  
36 disturbance and the particular taxonomic group being affected. And while there have  
37 been many studies on the effects of fragmentation on biodiversity, results of empirical  
38 studies are often difficult to interpret because they were conducted at patch scales rather  
39 than landscape scales, and did not distinguish between fragmentation and habitat loss  
40 (Fahrig, 2003). However, some known ecological effects include shifts in the distribution  
41 and composition of species, altered mosaics of land cover, modified disturbance regimes,

---

<sup>12</sup> Hansen, L.J., J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman, 2003: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*. World Wildlife Foundation, Washington, DC.

1 and perturbations of biogeochemical cycles. Roads, ornamental vegetation, domestic  
2 animals, and recreational use serve as conduits for non-native invasive species, and the  
3 effects of exurban and other development may extend for large distances from those  
4 features.

5  
6 Management activities that homogenize landscapes have also contributed to changes in  
7 species composition and ecological processes. Landscape homogenization can select  
8 against local adaptation, reducing the ability of species to evolve in response to  
9 environmental change. For example, reductions in the naturally variable rates of  
10 freshwater inflows and increases in nutrients have converted much of the vegetation of  
11 Florida Bay in Everglades National Park from sea grasses to algae (Unger, 1999). Fire  
12 exclusion has created large tracts of even-aged forest and woodland in many western and  
13 midwestern parks, reducing heterogeneity of land cover and species richness (Keane *et*  
14 *al.*, 2002).

#### 15 **4.3.2.3 Invasive Species**

16 The deliberate or inadvertent introduction of species with the capability to become  
17 nuisances or invaders is a major challenge to management throughout the national park  
18 system, and is likely to be exacerbated by climate change. These types of organisms are  
19 defined as invasive, whether or not they are non-native. Invasive species are those that  
20 threaten native species or impede current ecosystem function. Invasive plants are present  
21 across some 2.6 million acres in the national parks. Invasive animals are present in 243  
22 parks.<sup>13</sup> The NPS has identified control of invasive species as one of its most significant  
23 land management issues, and has established a highly coordinated and aggressive  
24 invasive plant management program. Efforts to restore native plants also occur, but at  
25 much lower levels than control of invasive plants.

#### 26 **4.3.2.4 Air and Water Pollution**

##### 27 **Air Pollution**

28 Atmospheric processes link park ecosystems to sources of air and water pollution that  
29 may be hundreds of miles away. These pollutants diminish both the recreational  
30 experience for park visitors and the ecological status of many park and wilderness  
31 ecosystems.

32  
33 Ozone pollution from airsheds upwind of parks compromises the productivity and  
34 viability of trees and other vegetation. Because not all species are equally affected,  
35 competitive relationships are changed, leading to winners as well as losers. Ozone is also  
36 a human health hazard: during 2006, ozone health advisories were posted once each in  
37 Acadia and Great Smoky Mountains National Parks; and multiple times each in Sequoia,  
38 Kings Canyon, and Rocky Mountain National Parks.<sup>14</sup> Ozone concentrations are

---

<sup>13</sup> **National Park Service**, 2004: Invasive species management. National Park Service,  
<http://www.nature.nps.gov/biology/invasivespecies/>, accessed on 5-15-2007.

<sup>14</sup> **National Park Service**, 2006: Ozone health advisory program yearly summaries. National Park Service,  
<http://www2.nature.nps.gov/air/data/O3AdvisSum.cfm>, accessed on 5-15-2007.

1 increasing in Congaree Swamp and 10 western park units, including Canyonlands, North  
2 Cascades, and Craters of the Moon.<sup>15</sup>

3  
4 Acid precipitation is still a concern in many eastern parks. While sulfur dioxide emissions  
5 have decreased significantly in response to the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990, the  
6 legacy of soil, lake, and stream acidification persists (Driscoll *et al.*, 2001). Acadia, Great  
7 Smoky Mountains, and Shenandoah National Parks have active monitoring programs that  
8 track stream acidity and biological responses. Acidic waters from air pollution in  
9 Shenandoah are responsible for the loss of native trout populations and decline in fish  
10 species richness (MacAvoy and Bulger, 1995; Bulger, Cosby, and Webb, 2000). Warmer  
11 future climate conditions, economic growth, and increasing populations will create more  
12 requirements for energy, and if the energy is derived from fossil fuels there is the  
13 potential for increasing acid rain.

14  
15 Atmospheric nitrogen deposition, which is attributable to motor vehicles, energy  
16 production, industrial activities, and agriculture, contributes to acidification and also to  
17 fertilization of ecosystems, because nitrogen is an essential nutrient whose supply is often  
18 limited. Nitrogen saturation, or unnaturally high concentrations of nitrogen in lakes and  
19 streams, is of great concern to many national parks. Although nitrogen oxide emissions  
20 are decreasing in the eastern United States, nitrogen emissions and deposition are  
21 increasing in many western parks as human density increases. Gila Cliff Dwellings,  
22 Grand Canyon, Yellowstone, and Denali National Parks reported increased nitrogen  
23 deposition over the period 1995–2004. Some classes of plants, especially many weedy  
24 herbs, may benefit from N-fertilization (Stohlgren *et al.*, 2002). Effects of excess nitrogen  
25 in Rocky Mountain National Park include changes in the composition of alpine tundra  
26 plant communities, increases in nutrient cycling and the nitrogen content of forests, and  
27 increased algal productivity and changes to species assemblages in lakes (Baron *et al.*,  
28 2000; Bowman *et al.*, 2006).

29  
30 The heavy metal mercury impairs streams and lakes in parks across the United States.  
31 Mercury is a byproduct of coal-fired energy production, incineration, mining, and other  
32 industrial activities. Mercury concentrations in fish are so high that many national parks  
33 are under fish advisories that limit or prohibit fish consumption. Parks in which levels of  
34 mercury in fish are dangerous to human health include Everglades, Big Cypress, Acadia,  
35 Isle Royale, and Voyageurs. Managers at many other parks, including Shenandoah, Great  
36 Smoky Mountains, and Mammoth Cave, have found significant bioaccumulation of  
37 mercury in taxonomic groups other than fish, including amphibians, bats, raptors, and  
38 songbirds. In Everglades, elevated mercury has been linked to mortality of endangered  
39 Florida panthers (Barron, Duvall, and Barron, 2004).

#### 40 41 **Water Quality**

42 Water quality in national parks is influenced not only by air pollution, but also by current  
43 or past land use activities and pollution sources within the watersheds in which national  
44 parks are located. Currently, agricultural runoff that includes nutrients, manure and

---

<sup>15</sup> **National Park Service**, 2006: Performance measures. National Park Service,  
<http://www2.nature.nps.gov/air/who/npsPerfMeasures.cfm>, accessed on 5-15-2007.

1 coliform bacteria, pesticides, and herbicides affects waters in nearly every park  
2 downstream from where agriculture or grazing is located. Discharges from other non-  
3 point sources of pollution—such as landfills, septic systems, and golf courses—also  
4 cause problems for park resources, as they have for Cape Cod National Seashore, which  
5 now has degraded surface and groundwater quality.

6  
7 At least 10 parks, mostly in Alaska, are affected by past land-use activities and are  
8 designated as EPA Superfund sites. Severely polluted waters in Cuyahoga Valley  
9 National Park, in which surface oil and debris ignited in 1969, were an impetus for the  
10 Clean Water Act of 1972. Although the Cuyahoga River has become cleaner in the past  
11 three decades, it still receives discharges of storm water combined-sewer overflows, and  
12 partially treated wastewater from urban areas upstream of the park. Beaches of lakes and  
13 seashores, such as Indiana Dunes National Lakeshore, are sometimes affected by high  
14 levels of bacteria from urban runoff and wastewater after heavy rainfall events.

#### 15 **4.3.2.5 Direct Impacts of Climate Change**

16 There will be some direct effects of climate change on national parks, as well as many  
17 interactive effects of climate change with the other major disruptions of natural processes  
18 described above. In addition to warming trends, climate change will influence the timing  
19 and rate of precipitation events. Both storms and droughts are expected to become less  
20 predictable and more intense. There will be direct effects on glaciers and hydrologic  
21 processes. Worldwide, glaciers are retreating rapidly, and glacier attrition is apparent in  
22 Glacier and North Cascades National Parks (Hall and Fagre, 2003; Granshaw and  
23 Fountain, 2006). The retreating Van Trump glacier on Mount Rainier has produced four  
24 debris flows between 2001-2006, filling the Nisqually River with sediment and raising  
25 the river bed at least six feet. Future high flow events will spread farther from the river  
26 banks because of the raised bed.<sup>16</sup> Data already show that climate change is modifying  
27 hydrologic patterns in seasonally snow-dominated systems (Mote, 2006). Snowmelt now  
28 occurs earlier throughout much of the United States (Huntington *et al.*, 2004; Stewart,  
29 Cayan, and Dettinger, 2005; Hodgkins and Dudley, 2006). Sea level rise has great  
30 potential to disturb coastal ecosystems, by intrusion of saltwater into freshwater marshes  
31 and by inundating coastal wetlands faster than they can compensate. Although coastlines  
32 are highly dynamic though geologic time, structural impediments such as seawalls, roads,  
33 buildings, or agricultural fields may limit the ability of wetlands to retreat (IPCC, 2007).

34  
35 Climatic changes will have both direct and indirect effects on vegetation. With rapidly  
36 warming temperatures, more productive species from lower elevations that are currently  
37 limited by short growing seasons and heavy snowpack may eventually replace upper-  
38 elevation tree species (Hessl and Baker, 1997). Similarly, alpine meadows will be subject  
39 to invasion by native tree species (Fagre, Peterson, and Hessl, 2003). Subalpine fir is  
40 already invading the Paradise flower fields at Mt. Rainier National Park, taking  
41 advantage of mild years to establish, and forming tree islands that buffer individual trees

---

<sup>16</sup> Halmon, S., P. Kennard, S. Beason, E. Beaulieu, and L. Mitchell, 2006: River bed elevation changes and increasing flood hazards in the Nisqually River at Mount Rainier National Park, Washington. *American Geophysical Union, Fall Meeting 2006*.

1 against cold and snow. In Tuolumne Meadows, at 2,900 m in Yosemite National Park,  
 2 lodgepole pine is rapidly establishing, and indeed is colonizing other more remote  
 3 meadows above 3,000 m.<sup>17</sup> Vegetation will be redistributed along north-south gradients,  
 4 as well as along elevation gradients, facilitated by dieback in southern ranges and  
 5 possible expansion to cooler latitudes. Piñon pine forests of the Southwest are illustrative  
 6 of how severe drought and unusual warmth exceeded species-specific physiological  
 7 thresholds, causing piñon mortality across millions of hectares in recent years (Allen,  
 8 2007). Piñon pines are not dying in their northern range, according to the Forest  
 9 Inventory Analysis (Shaw, Steed, and DeBlander, 2005), and model results suggest that  
 10 their range could expand in Colorado over the next 100 years.<sup>18</sup> Where vegetation  
 11 dieback occurs, it can interact with wildfire activity, and both fires and plant mortality  
 12 can enhance erosion (Allen, 2007).

13  
 14 Climate change will influence fire regimes throughout the country. Extended fire seasons  
 15 and increased fire intensity have already been observed to correlate directly with climate  
 16 in the western United States, and these effects are projected to continue (Westerling *et*  
 17 *al.*, 2006). Air quality is likely to be adversely affected by warmer climates, brought  
 18 about by increased smoke from fires and ozone, whose production is enhanced with  
 19 rising temperature (Langner, Bergström, and Foltescu, 2005; McKenzie *et al.*, 2006).  
 20 Water quality is likely to decrease with climate change. Post-fire erosion will introduce  
 21 sediment to rivers, lakes, and reservoirs; warmer temperatures will increase anoxia of  
 22 eutrophic waters and enhance the bioaccumulation of contaminants and toxins (Murdoch,  
 23 Baron, and Miller, 2000). Reduced flows, either from increased evapotranspiration or  
 24 increased human consumptive uses, will reduce the dilution of pollutants in rivers and  
 25 streams (Murdoch, Baron, and Miller, 2000).

### 26 **4.3.3 Current Approaches to NPS Natural Resource Management**

27 To date, only a few individual parks address climate change in their General Management  
 28 Plans, Resource Management Plans, Strategic Plans, or Wilderness Plans. Dry Tortugas'  
 29 General Management Plan lists climate change as an external force that is degrading park  
 30 coral reefs and seagrass meadows, but considers climate change beyond the scope of park  
 31 management authority. Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Park's Resource  
 32 Management Plan specifically references climate change as a restraint to achieving  
 33 desired future conditions, and notes the need for inventory and monitoring to enable  
 34 decision making.

35  
 36 NPS has made significant progress in recent years in gathering basic information,  
 37 developing a rigorous structure for monitoring changes, and raising natural resource  
 38 management to the highest level of importance. Decisions about the extent and degree of  
 39 management actions that are taken to protect or restore park ecosystems are increasingly

---

<sup>17</sup> **Yosemite National Park**, 2006: Tuolumne Meadows lodgepole pine removal. National Park Service, [www.nps.gov/archive/yose/planning/projects/tmtrees.pdf](http://www.nps.gov/archive/yose/planning/projects/tmtrees.pdf), accessed on 4-13-2007.

<sup>18</sup> **Ironside**, K., K.L. Cole, N. Cobb, J.D. Shaw, and P. Duffy, 2007: Modeling the future redistribution of pinyon-juniper woodland species. In: *Climate-Induced Forest Dieback As an Emergent Global Phenomenon: Patterns, Mechanisms, and Projections*. Proceedings of the ESA/SER Joint Meeting, 5, August 2007.



1 supported by management objectives and credible science (National Park Service, 2006).  
2 NPS management approaches to altered disturbance regimes, habitat fragmentation,  
3 invasive species, and pollution are described below.

4  
5 Fire management in the NPS, while conducted in close coordination with other agencies,  
6 is driven by five-year prescribed burn plans in individual parks and suppression responses  
7 to fire seasons that have become increasingly severe. While NPS makes extensive use of  
8 fire as an ecological management tool, the decision to let naturally ignited fires burn is  
9 highly constrained by human settlements and infrastructure. Park managers apply  
10 preemptive approaches, including mechanical thinning and prescribed burns, to reduce  
11 the risk of anomalously severe crown fires in forest ecosystems in which fires historically  
12 have been frequent low-severity events. These treatments appear to work in some  
13 systems, including the Rincon Wilderness in Saguaro National Park (Allen *et al.*, 2002;  
14 Finney, McHugh, and Grenfell, 2004).

15  
16 Erosion is prevented or repaired by necessity on a site-by-site basis. Terrestrial ecosystem  
17 restoration often uses heavy machinery in an effort to repair severely damaged wetlands,  
18 stream banks, and coastal dunes, and to restore landforms and connectivity among  
19 landscapes disturbed by roads. Restoration treatments after severe fire can increase  
20 herbaceous ground cover and thus resistance to accelerated runoff and erosion, as  
21 exemplified by work at Bandelier National Monument in New Mexico (Sydoriak, Allen,  
22 and Jacobs, 2000).

23  
24 There are no national summaries of the extent of hydrologic alteration in national parks.  
25 Technical assistance and research on flow regimes are supplied by the NPS Water  
26 Resource Division and the U.S. Geological Survey to individual parks. For downstream  
27 parks that have extensive upstream watershed development, there is no management of  
28 altered hydrology (*e.g.*, Cuyahoga Valley NRA, Big Bend National Park). In other  
29 locations, research is being conducted on hydrologic alterations and management options.  
30 For example, at Organ Pipe Cactus National Monument, scientists and managers are  
31 identifying groundwater source areas. Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River is  
32 quantifying minimum flows necessary for protecting endangered dwarf wedgemussels.  
33 Adaptive management using experimental flows in Grand Canyon National Park, below  
34 Glen Canyon Dam, is helping to develop a flow regime that supports endangered fish,  
35 sediment, recreation, and hydropower generation. Some park units are actively removing  
36 dams (*e.g.*, Glines Canyon and Elwha Dams in Olympic National Park), purchasing water  
37 rights from previous owners in order to protect water flows (*e.g.*, Zion National Park,  
38 Cedar Breaks National Monument, Craters of the Moon National Monument), and  
39 restoring wetlands, stream banks, and wildlife habitat in areas affected by logging (*e.g.*,  
40 Redwoods National Park, St Croix National Scenic Riverway) or road construction (*e.g.*,  
41 Klondike Gold Rush NHP).

42  
43 Current wildlife management policies in national parks have been shaped by a  
44 combination of strong criticism of past wildlife management practices in Yellowstone  
45 and Rocky Mountain National Parks (Chase, 1987; Sellars, 1999) and by scientific  
46 research that has highlighted the role of parks as refuges for native wildlife. Individual

1 parks manage their wildlife differently on the basis of history, current land use adjacent  
2 to the park, ecological feasibility, public sentiment, and legal directives. Large ungulates  
3 and carnivores attract much management attention, and there have been many studies on  
4 carrying capacity and the feasibility of reintroducing certain species in national parks.  
5 Reintroduction of gray wolves into Yellowstone National Park was accomplished in 1995  
6 and 1996 after extensive study and environmental assessment. The number of packs and  
7 reproduction of individual wolves has increased substantially since the reintroductions.  
8 There have been remarkable effects on the entire trophic cascade and Yellowstone  
9 ecosystem as a result of the wolves' hunting tactics and behavioral changes among  
10 ungulates. Changes have occurred in vegetation and habitat for many other species,  
11 including songbirds, beaver, and willows in response to restructuring the Yellowstone  
12 food chain (Ripple and Beschta, 2005).

13  
14 Restoration of bighorn sheep illustrates another successful application of contemporary  
15 wildlife ecology to park management. A geospatial assessment of the existence and  
16 quality of habitat for bighorn sheep within 14 western national parks from which bighorn  
17 sheep had been extirpated found that only 32% of the available area could support  
18 reintroduced populations (Singer, Bleich, and Gudorf, 2000). By reintroducing bighorn  
19 sheep only to areas with adequate habitat quality and quantity, managers have facilitated  
20 establishment of stable reproducing populations.

21  
22 Many other examples, from restoring nesting populations of Kemp's Ridley sea turtles at  
23 Padre Island National Seashore, to directing more NPS funding toward protecting listed  
24 species whose need is most immediate, illustrate species-specific management activities  
25 that occur within park boundaries (Fig. 4.7). Management summaries have been  
26 completed for almost all of the 284 threatened and endangered species that occur in the  
27 national parks. The summaries that relate basic biological information to recovery goals  
28 for species are posted on a Web site in a form that is accessible to resource managers.<sup>19</sup>

29  
30  
31  
32 **Figure 4.7.** Kemp's Ridley hatchlings heading for the water at a hatchling release.  
33 Photo courtesy National Park Service, Padre Island National Seashore.

34  
35 At least two parks, Great Smoky Mountains and Point Reyes National Seashore, have  
36 embarked on All-Taxa Biodiversity Inventories (ATBIs) to catalog all living species of  
37 plants, vertebrates, invertebrates, bacteria, and fungi. Inventories are a critical first step  
38 toward tracking and understanding changes in species richness and composition. Through  
39 the Natural Resource Challenge, more than 1,750 park inventory data sets have recently  
40 been compiled. For all natural national parks, these sets of data include natural resource  
41 bibliographies, vertebrate and vascular plant species lists, base cartography, air and water  
42 quality measures, the location and type of water bodies, and meteorology. Additional  
43 inventories of geologic and vegetation maps, soils, land cover types, geographic

---

<sup>19</sup> **National Park Service**, 2004: Threatened and endangered species. National Park Service,  
<http://www.nature.nps.gov/biology/endangeredspecies/database/search.cfm>, accessed on 5-15-2007.

1 distributions and status of vertebrates and vascular plants, and location of air quality  
2 monitoring stations are in progress.

3  
4 Efforts to address regional landscape and hydrologic alteration occur in some park areas,  
5 and have been initiated either by individual parks or their regional partners. A pilot  
6 project to understand the role of NPS units in the fragmented landscape was conducted  
7 from 2004–2006. NPS and its partners used geospatial datasets and regional conservation  
8 frameworks to develop over 40 partnership proposals. The Greater Yellowstone  
9 Coordinating Committee (Box 4.5), and the Comprehensive Everglades Restoration  
10 Plan—which includes Everglades, Big Cypress National Preserve, and Biscayne National  
11 Parks—are two examples of large multi-agency efforts targeting landscape and  
12 hydrologic rehabilitation or protection. Some management within park units has also  
13 attempted to alleviate fragmentation. For example, road underpasses have been  
14 constructed for desert tortoises in Joshua Tree National Monument.

15  
16 As part of the NPS commitments within the National Invasive Species Management Plan,  
17 Exotic Plant Management Teams operating under the principles of adaptive  
18 management serve more than 200 park units (National Invasive Species Council, 2001).  
19 Exotic Plant Management Teams identify, develop, conduct, and evaluate invasive  
20 species removal projects. Modeled after rapid response fire management teams, crews  
21 aggressively control unwanted plants. Mechanical, chemical, and cultural management  
22 methods and biological control techniques are all used in the effort to rapidly remove  
23 unwanted plant species. Exotic plant management teams work collaboratively with the  
24 U.S. Department of Agriculture, other bureaus in the Department of the Interior, state and  
25 local governments, and non-governmental organizations such as the Rocky Mountain Elk  
26 Foundation to control invasive plants, many of which are common across extensive areas.  
27 In 2004, 6,782 acres with invasive plants were treated in national park units, and 387  
28 were restored (National Park Service, 2004b).

29  
30 If invasive insects, either native or alien, are considered a threat to structures or the  
31 survival of valued flora, they may be treated aggressively. Direct management  
32 interventions include use of biocides, biological control, and plant removal in  
33 “frontcountry” areas where safety and visitor perception are paramount. Non-native  
34 diseases are another major threat to native plants and animals. White pine blister rust  
35 (*Cronartium ribicola*), for instance, has caused die-offs of five-needled pines in western  
36 and Midwestern parks.

37  
38 Several national parks either actively manage visitor use or are proposing to do so in  
39 order to control the spread of invasive species. Voyageurs National Park proposes to  
40 prohibit use of natural bait, privately owned watercraft, and float plane landings in all  
41 interior waters in order to limit the spread of the spiny water flea.<sup>20</sup> Glen Canyon

---

<sup>20</sup> **National Park Service**, 2007: Voyageurs National Park draft spiny water flea spread prevention plan. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/voya/parkmgmt/upload/FinalDraft%20SWFT%20Spread%20Prevention%20Plan%203-28-07%20.pdf>, accessed on 11-20-2007.

1 National Recreation Area requires all boaters to display a certificate on their dashboard  
2 stating their boat is free of zebra or quagga mussels, or have their boats decontaminated.<sup>21</sup>

3  
4 Because most sources of pollution are outside national park boundaries, NPS air and  
5 water managers work with state and federal regulatory agencies that have the authority to  
6 implement pollution control by requiring best management practices and adhering to air  
7 and water quality standards. Unlike many resource management programs that operate in  
8 individual parks, there is national oversight of air quality issues for all national parks. The  
9 Clean Air Act and the Wilderness Act set stringent standards for air quality in all 48  
10 Class I Parks (those parks with the highest level of air quality protection), and the NPS  
11 Air Quality Program actively monitors and evaluates air quality in these parks, notifying  
12 the states and EPA when impairment or declining trends in air quality are observed.

13  
14 Rocky Mountain National Park provides an example of a successful program to reduce  
15 nitrogen deposition. A synthesis of published research found many environmental  
16 changes in the park caused by increasing atmospheric nitrogen deposition. NPS used the  
17 information to convince the state of Colorado to take action, and NPS, Colorado, and  
18 EPA now have a plan in place to reverse deposition trends at the park. The Air Quality  
19 Program recently completed a risk assessment of the effects of increasing ozone  
20 concentrations to plants for all 270 natural resource parks (Kohut, 2007), and has planned  
21 a similar risk assessment of the potential for damage from atmospheric nitrogen  
22 deposition.

23  
24 A baseline water quality inventory and assessment for all natural resource national parks  
25 is scheduled for completion in 2007, and 235 of 270 park reports were completed as of  
26 2006. Reports are accessible online,<sup>22</sup> and electronic data are provided to individual parks  
27 for planning purposes. Measurement, evaluation of sources of water pollution, and  
28 assessment of biological effects currently are carried out by individual parks, with  
29 support from the NPS and USGS Water Resources Divisions. Most routine water quality  
30 monitoring is related to human health considerations.

31  
32 A number of low-lying coastal areas and islands are at high risk of inundation as climate  
33 changes. The NPS Geologic Resources Division, in partnership with the USGS,  
34 conducted assessments of potential future changes in sea level. The two agencies used  
35 results of the assessments to create vulnerability maps to assist NPS in managing its  
36 nearly 7,500 miles of shoreline along oceans and lakes. Vulnerability was based on risk  
37 of inundation. For example, the USGS coastal vulnerability index has rated six of seven  
38 barrier islands at Gulf Islands National Seashore highly vulnerable to sea level rise; the  
39 seventh island was rated moderately vulnerable.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> **National Park Service**, 2007: Glen Canyon national recreation area. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/glca/parknews/advisories.htm>, accessed on 11-21-2007.

<sup>22</sup> **National Park Service**, 2004: Baseline water quality data inventory & analysis reports. National Park Service, <http://www.nature.nps.gov/water/horizon.cfm>, accessed on 4-6-2007.

<sup>23</sup> **Pendleton**, E.A., E.S. Hammar-Klose, E.R. Thieler, and S.J. Williams, 2007: Relative coastal vulnerability assessment of Gulf Islands National Seashore (GUIS) to sea-level rise. U.S. Geological Survey, <http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/nps-cvi/parks/GUIS.htm>, accessed on 4-6-2007.

#### 1 **4.3.4 Sensitivity of NPS Goals to Climate Change**

2 The features and ecosystems that define national parks were shaped by climate in the  
3 past, and they will be re-shaped in the future by climate change. Efforts to increase  
4 resilience through thoughtful reduction of non-natural disturbances, protection of refugia,  
5 and relocation of valued species to more favorable climates may help NPS meet its  
6 enabling language conservation goals. Even so, management applications that aim to  
7 increase the resilience of physical and biological resources in their current form to  
8 climate change will likely succeed only for the next few decades. As climate change  
9 continues, thresholds of resilience will be overcome. Science-based management  
10 principles will be even more important as park managers begin to manage for change  
11 rather than existing resources (Parsons, 2004).

12  
13 One of the biggest challenges to the national parks revolves around protection and  
14 restoration of native species. The Natural Resource Challenge distinguishes between  
15 native and non-native plants, animals, and other organisms, and recommends that non-  
16 natives be controlled where they jeopardize natural communities in parks. However,  
17 species distributions will change, and indeed are already changing, as the climate warms.  
18 Changing distributions are evident in observations of gradual migrations (*e.g.*, northward  
19 and higher elevation observations of many species; Edwards *et al.*, 2005; Parmesan,  
20 2006) and in massive diebacks (*e.g.*, piñon mortality in Bandelier National Monument;  
21 Allen, 2007). A recent study suggests that by 2100, between 4% and 39% of the world's  
22 land areas will experience combinations of climate variables that do not currently exist  
23 anywhere on Earth, eliciting a biological response unprecedented in human history  
24 (Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach, 2007). Individual species, constrained by different  
25 environmental factors, will respond differently, with the result that some species may  
26 vanish, others stay in place, and new arrivals appear (Saxon *et al.*, 2005). This type of  
27 ecosystem reshuffling will occur in national parks as well as other places, and may  
28 confound the abilities of NPS to restore species assemblages to past (or even existing)  
29 conditions that may no longer be tenable. If, however, NPS accepts the inevitability of  
30 change, it and other collaborating agencies can anticipate, and even aid, the establishment  
31 of desirable climate-appropriate species that will take advantage of favorable conditions.  
32 By using species suited to anticipated future climates after disturbance or during  
33 restoration, for instance, managers may prevent establishment of less desirable species.

34  
35 NPS goals of providing visitor services such as interpretation and protection will not be  
36 directly altered by climate change, although programs will need to adapt. National parks  
37 will remain highly desirable places for people to visit, but climate change may cause  
38 visitation patterns to shift in season or location. Parks may consider managing visitor use  
39 practices or patterns differently in order to prevent people from inadvertently contributing  
40 to climate-change enhanced damage. Climate change will alter the length of visitor  
41 seasons in many parks; coastal and mountain parks may see increased visitation, while  
42 desert parks may see decreased visitation during summer months. Extreme heat and  
43 heavy precipitation events, projected as being very likely by IPCC (2007), may strain  
44 visitor safety services. Interpretation efforts can play an important role in educating park  
45 visitors about changes occurring in national parks and what the park is doing to manage  
46 or reduce the impacts of those changes. Interpretation may also be a good way to engage

1 the public in meaningful discussions about good environmental stewardship, and what  
2 climate change means for ecosystems and valued species within them.

## 3 **4.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

### 4 **4.4.1 Coming to Terms with Uncertainty**

5 Predicting climate change and its effects poses a variety of challenges to park managers.  
6 What is likely to happen? What potentially could happen? Do we have any control over  
7 what happens? The answers to these questions are associated with substantial  
8 uncertainties, including uncertainties particular to management of natural resources  
9 (Rittel and Webber, 1973; Lee, 1993; Regan, Colyvan, and Burgman, 2002). Resource  
10 uncertainties can be separated into two categories (Lee, 1993): the first type, *technical*  
11 *and scientific* uncertainty, centers on what we do and do not know about future climate  
12 change effects and our ability to ameliorate them. The second type, *social uncertainty*,  
13 focuses on our cultural and organizational capability to respond.

14  
15 There is considerable uncertainty in predictions, understanding, and interpretation of  
16 climate change and its effects. Managers must consider at least three different categories  
17 of climate change impacts, each associated with a different level of uncertainty:  
18 foreseeable or tractable changes, imagined or surprising changes, and unknown changes.

19  
20 Predictions of climate change are generally accepted if changes are foreseeable and  
21 evidence already exists that many of these predictions are accurate. For instance, we can  
22 predict with high confidence that atmospheric carbon dioxide concentrations will  
23 increase, sea levels will rise, snow packs across most of North America will shrink,  
24 global temperature will increase, fire seasons will become longer and more severe, and  
25 the severity of storms will increase (IPCC, 2007). We refer to a given change as  
26 foreseeable if there is a fairly robust model (or models) describing relationships between  
27 system components and drivers, and sufficient theory, data, and understanding to develop  
28 credible projections over the appropriate scales. We cannot project precisely the  
29 magnitude of foreseeable changes, but we can quantify the distribution of probable  
30 outcomes. For example, a 40-year record shows that snow is melting increasingly earlier  
31 in the spring in the Sierra Nevada, Cascade Range, and New England (Stewart, Cayan,  
32 and Dettinger, 2005; Hodgkins and Dudley, 2006). We also have understanding from the  
33 physical sciences of why the timing of snowmelt is likely to change in regions with  
34 winter and spring temperatures between -3 and 0°C as the climate warms (Knowles,  
35 Dettinger, and Cayan, 2006). Foreseeable changes are sufficiently certain that park  
36 managers can begin planning now for effects of earlier snowmelt on river flow, fishes  
37 and other aquatic species, and fire potential. Such plans for aquatic organisms could  
38 include establishing refugia for valued species at risk, removing barriers to natural  
39 species migrations, replicating populations as a bet-hedging strategy to reduce overall  
40 risk, restoring riparian vegetation to shade river reaches, or even conducting assisted  
41 migrations. As the risk of fire increases, planners might consider moving infrastructure  
42 out of fire-prone areas and restricting visitor access to fire-prone areas during fire seasons  
43 for safety reasons. Planners may also need to consider how to manage for increased  
44 smoke-related health alerts and possibly increased respiratory emergencies in parks.

1 Many parks, such as Yosemite, have been managing fuels and fire ecology for decades,  
2 and have extensive prescriptive documents that describe where and how to manage in  
3 specific locations, complete with numbers of acres to treat each year and a targeted  
4 natural fire frequency return interval (National Park Service, 2004a). Methods that may  
5 have been effective in the past, however, should be regularly reviewed for their  
6 applicability, since historic ranges of variability in natural disturbance cycles may be less  
7 appropriate targets in a warmer climate.

8  
9 The second category of climate change and its related effects includes changes that are  
10 known or imaginable, but difficult to predict with high certainty. These may include  
11 changes with which we have little or no past experience or history, or effects of changes  
12 in systems for which there is a great deal of experience. For example, nonlinear  
13 interactions among system components and drivers could reduce the certainty of  
14 predictions and generate unexpected or surprising dynamics. Surprises may present crises  
15 when the ecological system abruptly crosses a threshold into a qualitatively different  
16 state. For example, a November 2006 storm that caused severe flooding and damage in  
17 Mount Rainier National Park was surprising, because a storm of this magnitude had not  
18 been observed previously. An example of change that is known but difficult to project is  
19 rapid and extensive dieback of forests and woodlands from climate-induced physiological  
20 stress, and in some cases, associated insect outbreaks. Forest mortality in the Jemez  
21 Mountains of northern New Mexico had occurred before; the lower extent of the  
22 ponderosa pine zone in Bandelier National Monument retreated upslope by as much as 2  
23 km in less than five years in response to severe drought and an associated outbreak of  
24 bark beetles in the 1950s (Allen and Breshears, 1998; Allen, 2007). Planning for these  
25 rare but major events requires that mechanisms be put in place to reduce the damage  
26 caused by those events. In some instances, minimizing the ecological effects of sudden  
27 changes in system state might require removing infrastructure or maintaining corridors  
28 for species migration.

29  
30 The third category of climate change and related effects is unknown or unknowable  
31 changes. This group includes changes and associated effects that have not previously  
32 been experienced by humans. Perhaps the greatest uncertainties in projecting climate  
33 change and its effects are associated with the interaction of climate change and other  
34 human activities. The synergistic and cumulative interactions among multiple system  
35 components and stressors, such as new barriers or pathways to species movement,  
36 disruption of nutrient cycles, or the emergence of new diseases, may create emerging  
37 ecosystems unlike any ever seen before.

#### 38 **4.4.2 Approaches to Management Given Uncertainty**

39 When confronting a complex issue, it is tempting to postpone action until more  
40 information or understanding is gained. Continuing studies and evaluations almost  
41 always are warranted, but not all actions can or should be deferred until there is  
42 unequivocal scientific information. Scenario planning and knowledge gained from  
43 research and adaptive management practices can help with decision-making, and can  
44 point toward implementation of actions to manage natural resources in the face of  
45 substantial uncertainty. Ideally, actions should be taken that are robust to acknowledged

1 uncertainty. So-called “no-regrets” strategies that improve the environment increase  
2 resilience regardless of climate change, and thus are robust to uncertainty. It is critical to  
3 develop and implement frameworks that allow the NPS to learn from implementation of  
4 policies, regulations, and actions.

5  
6 National parks are complex systems within a complex landscape. John Muir wrote  
7 “When we try to pick out anything by itself, we find it hitched to everything else in the  
8 universe” (Muir, 1911). Species co-occur, influenced by physical, chemical, and  
9 biological conditions. Parks are surrounded by lands that are managed with different  
10 goals and objectives. Although few problems can be solved easily, the adoption of a  
11 systems approach to management and a shared environmental protection vision with  
12 adjacent landowners increases the probability of achieving park objectives. The two  
13 major factors that influence selection of strategies for managing complex resource  
14 systems are the degree (and type) of uncertainty and the extent to which key ecological  
15 processes can be controlled (Fig. 4.8). Uncertainty can be qualitatively evaluated on a  
16 scale of low to high. Ability to control an ecological process depends on the process  
17 itself, the responsible management organization or institution, and the available  
18 technology. For example, supply of surface water can be manipulated upstream from  
19 some national parks, such as Everglades or Grand Canyon.

20  
21  
22  
23 **Figure 4.8.** Scenario planning is appropriate for systems in which there is a lot of  
24 uncertainty that is not controllable. In other cases optimal control, hedging, or  
25 adaptive management may be appropriate responses. Reprinted from Peterson,  
26 Cumming, and Carpenter (2003).

### 27 28 **Optimal Control and Hedging**

29 The strategic approaches in Fig. 4.8 provide a broad set of tools for resource  
30 management. Each tool is appropriate for certain types of management, and, while not  
31 interchangeable, the lessons learned from application of one can and should inform the  
32 decisions on whether and how to employ the others. Most approaches toward current  
33 resource management in the NPS are appropriate when uncertainty is low. That is, most  
34 management is based on either an optimal control approach or a hedging approach.  
35 However, the attributes and effects of climate change present sufficient uncertainties to  
36 NPS managers that adaptive management or scenario development are much more  
37 appropriate than optimal control or hedging.

38  
39 Fire and wildlife management as currently practiced are examples of optimal control.  
40 Many fire management plans are developed and implemented by controlling the timing—  
41 and hence the probable impact—of fire to achieve an optimal set of resource conditions.  
42 Control of wildlife populations through culling, birth control, or reintroduction of top  
43 predators is based on concepts about limits such as carrying capacity. Physical removal of  
44 invasive plants exemplifies optimal control. Hedging strategies involve management that  
45 may improve fitness or survival of species. For example, placing large woody debris in a  
46 stream to improve fish habitat is essentially a hedging strategy.



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46

## **Scenario-Based Planning**

Scenario-based planning is a qualitative, or sometimes quantitative process that involves exploration and articulation of a wide set of possible or alternative futures (Carpenter, 2002; Peterson, Cumming, and Carpenter, 2003; Raskin, 2005). Each of these alternative scenarios is developed through a discourse among knowledgeable persons, and is informed by data and either conceptual or simulation models. Scenarios are plausible—yet uncertain—stories or narratives about what might happen in the future. Scenario development is used routinely to assess a variety of environmental resource issues (National Research Council, 1999). Park Service managers, along with subject-matter experts, apply existing knowledge to conduct scenario planning related to climate change and resources of interest. A finite number of scenarios (*e.g.*, three to five) that depict the range of possible futures can be extremely useful for helping managers develop and implement plans, and also minimize the anxiety of frustration that comes from having to deal with uncertainty. Research into the rate, extent, or permanence of climate change-induced impacts on species and ecosystems of interest can inform the scenarios. Either passive or active contingency plans can be deployed for both (1) trends that are observed and have a high probability of continuing, and (2) events with low probability but high risk that result from any combination of climate change and other stressors.

Scenario planning and development of contingency plans can lead to several levels of preparedness. For example, plans can be constructed to trigger action if a threshold is crossed, similar to current air quality regulations for ozone. Mandatory reductions in ozone precursor emissions are imposed on ozone-producing regions by EPA when allowable ozone levels are exceeded. Plans could include management “drills” to prepare for low, but real, probabilities of an extreme event (fire drills are an example we are all familiar with). Scenarios should be built around consideration of how climate change will affect current resource management issues. If current habitat recovery plans for endangered species, for instance, do not take future climate change into account, recovery goals may not be met.

Scenarios provide the opportunity to explore and attempt to resolve the inevitable problems that will arise when management for one goal conflicts with laws or other management goals. Tradeoffs between air quality and the use of fire for ecosystem restoration and maintenance already need to be made, for instance. The prudent decision-maker will conduct planning exercises to identify where potential collisions may occur under various climate change and management scenarios, and address the balance between short-term costs and long-term benefits. Management responses to scenarios should consider the degree of uncertainty attached to impacts, the probable magnitude and character of impact, the resources available, and legal mandates as well as social and economic consequences.

Triage is an extreme form of tradeoff. In a resource- and staff-limited world, there will be a need to prioritize. Scenarios that evaluate the feasibility of adaptation against ecological, social, or economic returns will be valuable in making difficult decisions, and importantly, in conveying results of these decisions to the public. Public involvement in

1 scenario building at all levels, from individual park or region up to national, will not only  
2 prepare people for the inevitable, but will help build support if goals need to be modified.

### 4 **Adaptive Environmental Assessment and Management**

5 Adaptive environmental assessment and management refers to a set of processes to  
6 integrate learning with management actions (Holling, 1978; Walters, 1986; Lee, 1993).  
7 The processes focus on developing hypotheses or explanations to describe (1) how  
8 specific ecological dynamics operate and (2) how human interventions may affect the  
9 ecosystem. Adaptive environmental assessment is substantially different from  
10 environmental assessments routinely conducted within frameworks such as NEPA. The  
11 NEPA process presumes certainty of impacts and outcomes, and generally minimizes or  
12 ignores uncertainties. Adaptive environmental assessment and management, by contrast,  
13 highlights uncertainty. Managers design actions that specifically test uncertainties about  
14 ecosystem dynamics and outcomes of proposed interventions. The objectives of  
15 management actions explicitly include learning (hence reduction of uncertainty).  
16 Adaptive management views policies as hypotheses and management actions as  
17 treatments that are structured to “test” desired outcomes.

18  
19 Adaptive management can be either active or passive. Active adaptive management  
20 involves direct manipulation of key ecological processes to test understanding of  
21 relationships among system components and drivers and to examine the effects of  
22 policies or decisions, such as the flood release experiments of 1996 and 2004 in the  
23 Grand Canyon (Walters *et al.*, 2000). Passive adaptive management, instead of direct  
24 hypothesis-testing, relies on historical information to construct a “best guess” conceptual  
25 model of how a system works and how it will respond to changing conditions.  
26 Management choices are made on the assumption that the ecosystem will respond  
27 according to the model (National Research Council, 2003). Whether active or passive,  
28 information gathered throughout the iterative adaptive management cycle is used to  
29 increase ecological understanding, and adjust and refine management (Walters and  
30 Holling, 1990).

31  
32 Adaptive management has been successful in large-scale systems that meet both  
33 ecological and social criteria: sufficient ecological resilience to deterministic and  
34 stochastic change, and a willingness to experiment and participate in a formal structure  
35 for learning. Ecological resilience, or the capacity for renewal in a dynamic environment,  
36 buffers the system from the potential failure of management actions that unavoidably  
37 were based upon incomplete understanding. Resilience allows managers the latitude to  
38 learn and change. Trust, cooperation, and other forms of social capital are necessary for  
39 implementing management actions that are designed to meet learning and other social  
40 objectives.

### 42 **Safe-to-Fail Strategies**

43 Because the uncertainties associated with predictions of climate change and its effects are  
44 substantial, expected outcomes or targets of agency policies and actions have some  
45 probability of being incorrect. Accordingly, NPS could take the robust approach of

1 designing actions that are “safe to fail.” That is, even though managers intend to  
2 implement a “correct” action, they and their supervisors recognize that failure may occur.

3  
4 Safe-to-fail policies apply to both natural resources and to human resources. For natural  
5 resource management, a safe-to-fail experiment or action is undertaken only where there  
6 is confidence the system can recover without irreversible damage to the targeted  
7 resource. This type of approach is employed in other fields, such as engineering systems  
8 (*e.g.*, air traffic control, or electric power distribution) where uncertainty is actively  
9 managed through flexible designs that adjust to changing conditions (Neufville, 2003).  
10 One low-tech example of where safe-to-fail strategies are already used in NPS resource  
11 management is in attempting to control invasive feral hogs. Feral hogs are common to  
12 many parks in the southeastern United States, California, the Virgin Islands, and Hawaii.  
13 The hogs are opportunistic omnivores whose rooting profoundly disrupts natural  
14 communities and individual populations, and facilitates establishment of invasive plants.  
15 Hogs compete directly with native wildlife for mast, prey on nests of ground-nesting  
16 birds and sea turtles, and serve as reservoirs for a variety of serious wildlife diseases and  
17 parasites. Fencing, hunting, and trapping efforts to eliminate feral hog populations in  
18 national parks often fail; either removal operations are unsuccessful or native plant and  
19 animal populations do not recover. Yet control tactics and restoration activities can be  
20 modified and managed adaptively as information accrues on probabilities of success  
21 associated with different sets of ecological conditions and interventions.

22  
23 Safe-to-fail policies for human resources (*e.g.*, careers and livelihoods) empower  
24 managers to take reasoned management risks without concern for retribution. Although  
25 not desired, failures provide tremendous opportunities for learning. Learning from  
26 mistakes and successes is a critical part of adaptation to climate change. As climate  
27 changes, even the most well-reasoned actions have some potential to go awry. The  
28 wisdom, experience, and empirical data of front line managers, resource management  
29 personnel, and scientific staff need to be protected, preserved, and expanded. Public  
30 education about the complexity of resource management, transparency in the decision-  
31 making process, frequent public updates on progress or setbacks, and internal agency  
32 efforts that promote trust and respect for professionals within the agency are all important  
33 methods for promoting more nuanced and potentially unsuccessful management efforts.

34  
35 Acceptance of a gradient between success and failure might foster greater creativity in  
36 resource management and remove the need to assign blame. Shifting attitudes about  
37 failure increases institutional capacity to capture and expand learning. Punishing  
38 managers whose proactive management efforts fail may create an environment in which  
39 managers are risk-averse and act only on the basis of what is known with certainty.

#### 40 **4.4.3 Incorporating Climate Change Considerations into Natural Resource** 41 **Management**

42 Given that recent climate changes and climate variations are already beginning to have  
43 effects on natural systems, and warming trends are projected into the next century (IPCC,  
44 2007), it is prudent to begin to implement adaptation strategies as soon as possible. Note  
45 that the kinds of management actions that increase resilience will be most effective in the

1 near term, but will need to be re-evaluated as the climate, and environmental response,  
2 move into realms for which there is no historical analog. Clearly, methods manuals and  
3 handbooks of adaptation strategies should be used with caution and reviewed regularly to  
4 determine if they are still appropriate, since analogs from the past may not be effective  
5 for managing future environments.

6  
7 The importance of action in national parks extends well beyond the parks themselves.  
8 The value of national parks as minimally disturbed refugia for natural processes and  
9 biodiversity becomes more important with increasing alteration of other lands and waters.  
10 Many parks have received international recognition as Biosphere Reserves or World  
11 Heritage sites because of their transcendent value worldwide. If protection of natural  
12 resources and processes is to be achieved during the coming decades of climate change,  
13 NPS managers need to first identify what is at risk; define the baselines, or reference  
14 conditions, that constitute “unimpaired” in a changing world; monitor and evaluate  
15 changes over time; decide the appropriate scales at which to manage the processes and  
16 resources of national parks; and finally set measurable targets of protection by which to  
17 measure success or failure over time (Box 4.6). All of these actions require intimate and  
18 iterative connections among scientists, resource managers, other resource management  
19 partners, and the public. Dialog on management goals and resources at risk should  
20 include members of the public, adjacent land and resource managers, and state and local  
21 authorities. Moreover, efforts should be made to engage the full diversity of public  
22 opinion, rather than a selected set of public interests. Continuous dialog between  
23 scientists, managers, and the interested public will build the greatest possible  
24 understanding of the threats, consequences, and possible actions related to climate change  
25 (Box 4.7). Climate change literacy at all levels is a worthy goal, and one that is currently  
26 actively pursued by NPS. Climate change literacy will become even more important in  
27 the future in order to manage public expectations, since even the best management  
28 practices will not be able to prevent change.

29  
30 While resource management is implemented at individual parks, planning and support  
31 can and should be provided at all management levels, with better integration between  
32 planners and resource management staff. A revision of NPS Management Policies to  
33 incorporate climate change considerations would help to codify the importance of the  
34 issue. Park General Management Plans and resource management plans also should be  
35 amended to include the understanding, goals, and plans that address climate change  
36 issues. Climate change education and coordination efforts at the national level will be  
37 helpful for offering consistent guidance and access to information. Regional and network  
38 level workshops and planning exercises will be important for addressing issues at  
39 appropriate scales, as will interagency activities that address climate change impacts to  
40 physical and natural resources regardless of political boundaries.

#### 41 42 **Identify Resources and Processes at Risk from Climate Change**

43 The first activity is to identify the important park processes and resources that are likely  
44 to change as a result of climate change and from the interactions of climate change with  
45 existing causes of stress. This should take place within each park, but the exercise should  
46 occur at the network, regional, and national scales as well, in order to prioritize which

1 resources will respond most rapidly, thus warranting immediate attention. The process  
2 begins with characterizing potential future climate changes and systematically  
3 considering resources, as well as their current stressors, susceptible to change under  
4 future climates. This can be accomplished through summaries of the literature, guided  
5 research, gatherings of experts, and workshops where scientists and managers engage in  
6 discussing risks to resources. Some of these activities may have already been done during  
7 the process of identifying vital signs for the Inventory and Monitoring Program. Park  
8 managers may wish to rank resources and processes according to how susceptible they  
9 are to changes in climate, based on the rapidity of expected response, the potential for  
10 adaptation opportunities (or conversely, the threat of endangerment), the “keystone”  
11 effect (*i.e.*, species or processes that have disproportionate effects on other resources),  
12 and the importance of the species or resources to meeting the park’s management goals.  
13 The direct and indirect influence of climate change itself on specific resources will vary  
14 in comparison with other resource management issues, but this exercise will ensure the  
15 potential effects are not ignored.

### 17 **Develop Monitoring and Assessment Programs for Resources at Risk from Climate** 18 **Change**

19 In periods of accelerated change, it is critical to understand and evaluate the nature of  
20 change. As part of the NPS Inventory and Monitoring Program, every national park has  
21 established a number of vital signs for monitoring change over time; these vital signs lists  
22 should be reviewed in order to ensure they are adequate to capture climate-caused  
23 changes. If they are not, the list of vital signs and the frequency with which they are  
24 measured may need to be amended. Increasingly, ground-based monitoring can and  
25 should be augmented with new technologies and remote sensing. NPS maintains 64 sites  
26 as part of the Global Fiducial Program, which collects high-resolution geospatial data for  
27 predetermined sites over a period of years to decades.<sup>24</sup> Global Fiducial is an example of  
28 an important, and underutilized, type of information that has much to offer to national  
29 parks. Collaborations with universities and other agencies can accelerate the ability of  
30 NPS to obtain useful data that can be incorporated into adaptive management.  
31 Collaborations with other information gathering and assessment programs—such as  
32 programs of the USGS and National Science Foundation, including the National  
33 Ecological Observatory Network (NEON) and the Long-Term Ecological Research  
34 (LTER) networks—present benefits to all partners by developing broad integrated  
35 analyses.

36  
37 Assessment involves tracking the vital signs and their major drivers of change to evaluate  
38 the presence of trends or thresholds. While it is important to look at the data that show  
39 what happened in the past, it is critically important to use monitored information to  
40 anticipate potential future trends or events. Projections of possible futures allow  
41 management intervention in advance of some undesired change, and can be conducted  
42 with simple extrapolations of monitored data. Simulation and statistical models are  
43 invaluable tools for projecting future events, but they need to be parameterized with  
44 physical and biological information, and validated against existing records. The data

---

<sup>24</sup> **National Park Service**, 2007: OCIO factsheets, Global Fiducial Program. National Park Service,  
<http://www.nps.gov/gis/factsheets/fiducial.html>, accessed on 5-16-2007.

1 requirements for models, therefore, need to be considered when choosing which  
2 environmental attributes to monitor.

#### 3 4 **Define Baselines or Reference Conditions for Protection or Restoration**

5 As the change in biological assemblages and physical processes plays out in our national  
6 parks, certain common sense actions should be undertaken, among them establishment of  
7 quantifiable and measurable baseline conditions that describe unimpaired or current (not  
8 necessarily the same thing) conditions, and routine monitoring of select indicators that  
9 can be used to measure change. Management goals should be used to establish baselines  
10 for species, communities, or processes. Much can be learned from surveys of the  
11 literature on past conditions (including the geologic past as determined by  
12 paleoenvironmental records; Willis and Birks, 2006). Historic or prehistoric baselines  
13 may be unattainable, however, if the climates that produced them will not occur again, so  
14 caution needs to be employed in extrapolating from a past baseline condition to a  
15 management goal. Shifting baselines, or the circumstance by which a reference condition  
16 changes according to the perspective of the manager, can lead to acceptance of degraded  
17 conditions and loss of resource integrity (Pauly, 1995). Careful monitoring and clear  
18 resource protection goals are necessary for incorporating climate change into  
19 management.

20  
21 Philosophical discussions will need to take place regarding the legitimacy of novel  
22 ecosystems made up of previously unrepresented species (Hobbs *et al.*, 2006). Natural  
23 migrations of plants and animals from outside park boundaries will occur, indeed will  
24 need to occur, as individual species seek favorable climatic conditions. Because of this,  
25 the definition of invasive may need to be relaxed so that natural species assemblages can  
26 develop in response to new climates. National park boundaries are porous, and corridors  
27 for naturally migrating species, either in or out of a national park, should be protected or  
28 restored. The dispersal of species does not only occur through migration to adjacent lands  
29 or waters, of course, and there are many dispersal mechanisms that species will employ to  
30 locate favorable new habitats. A more nuanced understanding of the constraints and  
31 selective pressures on dispersal will be important for deciding which new residents are  
32 unwelcome (Kokko and López-Sepulcre, 2006).

33  
34 As part of this exercise, national park managers may need to address whether protecting  
35 or recovering certain processes or resources will be possible and what the ramifications  
36 are if such ends are not attainable. Individual species, such as the pika—a small-bodied  
37 mammal related to rabbits and hares that lives on isolated mountains in the Great Basin,  
38 Rocky Mountains, and Sierra Nevada—or features, such as glaciers in Glacier National  
39 Park, are extremely vulnerable to climate change (Beever, Brussard, and Berger, 2003;  
40 Hall and Fagre, 2003; Grayson, 2005). Establishment or protection of refugia for  
41 vulnerable species, or actively translocating them to new favorable habitats, may enable  
42 some highly vulnerable species to persist. Ramifications are economic as well as  
43 ecological. With limited resources, NPS will have hard decisions in the coming years  
44 over how to manage most effectively.

#### 45 46 **Develop and Implement Management Strategies for Adaptation**

1 Developing and implementing strategies for adaptation to climate change will require  
2 NPS managers to adopt a broad array of tools well beyond control and hedging strategies.  
3 Current management practices may not be effective under future climates. Some  
4 strategies include:

- 5  
6     ▪ *Diversify the portfolio of management approaches.* Because climate change is  
7 complex and predictions often have high levels of uncertainty, diverse  
8 management strategies and actions will be needed. It is important to think broadly  
9 about potential environmental changes and management responses and not be  
10 constrained by history, existing policies and their interpretation, current practices,  
11 and traditions. Initial assessments of effective approaches in general or specific  
12 environmental circumstances can be informed by the degree of uncertainty in  
13 management outcomes and the potential for control through human intervention.  
14 Managers can hedge bets and optimize practices in situations where system  
15 dynamics and responses are fairly certain. In situations with greater uncertainty,  
16 adaptive management can be undertaken if key ecosystem processes can be  
17 manipulated. In all situations, capacity to project changes and manage adaptively  
18 will be enhanced by scenario development, planning, and clear goals. Scenario  
19 development can rely primarily on qualitative conceptual models, but is more  
20 likely to be effective when data are available to characterize key system  
21 components, drivers, and mechanisms of responses.  
22
- 23     ▪ *Plan, and manage, for inevitable changes.* Sea level will rise, and the removal of  
24 barriers to landward migration of coastal wetlands may offer the chance that  
25 wetlands may persist. New climate conditions and assemblages are likely to favor  
26 opportunistic species, pests, and diseases in marine, freshwater, and terrestrial  
27 environments.<sup>25</sup> It is possible that invasive species cannot be controlled before  
28 native species are extirpated (Box 4.8). Potential responses may include  
29 aggressive efforts to prevent invasion of non-native species in specific locations at  
30 which they currently are absent and where future conditions may remain  
31 favorable for native species. Managers might relocate individuals or populations,  
32 or even consider conceding the loss of the species.  
33

34 Although in many cases restoration and maintenance of historic communities may  
35 become impossible, useful efforts might be directed toward maintenance of  
36 ecosystem function. The protection of ecosystem services that supply food and  
37 habitat for wildlife, preserve beaches or soil, and regulate hydrologic processes is  
38 critically important to the NPS mission of conservation..  
39

- 40     ▪ *Accelerate the capacity for learning.* Given the magnitude of potential climate  
41 changes and the degree of uncertainties about specific changes and their effects on  
42 national parks, park managers, decision makers, scientists, and the public will  
43 need to learn quickly. Some amount of uncertainty should not be an excuse for  
44 inaction, since inaction can sometimes lead to greater harm than actions based on

---

<sup>25</sup> **Lovejoy**, T.E., 2007: Testimony to congressional hearing on climate change and wildlife. United States Senate Committee on Environment and Public Works.

1 incomplete knowledge. Adaptive management—the integration of ongoing  
2 research, monitoring, and management in a framework of testing and  
3 evaluation—will facilitate that learning. Scenario planning exercises are effective  
4 ways of synthesizing much information for learning. Bringing together experts at  
5 issue-specific workshops can rapidly build understanding. Application of safe-to-  
6 fail approaches also will increase capacity for learning and effective management.  
7

- 8 ■ *Assess, plan, and manage at multiple scales.* Complex ecological systems in  
9 national parks operate and change at multiple spatial and temporal scales. As  
10 climate changes, it will be important to match the management or intervention  
11 effort with the appropriate scale where environmental changes occur. The scales  
12 at which ecological processes operate often will dictate the scales at which  
13 management institutions must be developed. Migratory bird management, for  
14 instance, requires international collaboration; large ungulates and carnivores  
15 require regional collaboration; marine preserves require cooperation among many  
16 stakeholders; all are examples of cases in which park managers cannot be  
17 effective working solely within park boundaries. Similarly, preparation for rapid  
18 events such as floods will be managed very differently than responses to climate  
19 impacts that occur over decades. Species may be able to move to favorable  
20 climates and habitats over time if there is appropriate habitat and connectivity.  
21 There are several examples of management of park resources within larger  
22 regional or ecosystem contexts. The Greater Yellowstone Coordinating  
23 Committee, and the Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere (SAMAB)  
24 Program are building relationships across jurisdictional boundaries that will allow  
25 effective planning for species and processes to adapt to climate change. Olympic,  
26 Channel Islands, American Samoa, Everglades, Point Reyes, and other coastal  
27 parks cooperate with many other state and federal agencies in advising and  
28 managing national marine sanctuaries. These ecoregional consortia should serve  
29 as models for other park areas as they begin to address the multiple challenges  
30 that emanate from outside park boundaries (Box 4.9).  
31
- 32 ■ *Reduce other human-caused stressors to park ecosystems.* In addition to the direct  
33 consequences of climate change to park resources, we know that interactions of  
34 climate with other stressors will have major influences on national park resources  
35 (McKenzie *et al.*, 2006). Therefore, one of the most basic actions park managers  
36 can take to slow or mitigate some effects of climatic change is to reduce the  
37 magnitude of other disturbances to park ecosystems.<sup>26</sup> Minimizing sources of  
38 pollution, competition between non-native and native species, spread of disease,  
39 and alteration of natural disturbance regimes should increase ecosystem resilience  
40 to changing climate. Some combination of these stressors affects every one of the  
41 270 natural national parks either directly or indirectly. Reducing threats and

---

<sup>26</sup> *E.g.*, **Hansen**, L.J., J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman, 2003: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*. World Wildlife Foundation, Washington, DC. and

**Welch**, D., 2005: What should protected areas managers do in the face of climate change? *The George Wright Forum*, 22(1), 75-93.



1 repairing damage to natural resources is the major purpose of the Natural  
2 Resource Challenge, among other NPS programs; the synergistic effect of other  
3 disturbances with climate change increases the urgency for getting other threats  
4 under control. The interactions between these drivers and climate change can lead  
5 to nonlinear ecological dynamics, sometimes causing unexpected or undesired  
6 changes in populations or processes (Burkett *et al.*, 2005). Once an ecosystem  
7 shifts from one state to another, it may be difficult, if not impossible, to return it  
8 to its prior desirable state (Gunderson and Holling, 2002). While it may be  
9 tempting to promote a return to some range of natural variability, this option must  
10 be considered very carefully. Ecosystems change in many ways as a result of  
11 management, and unexpected results may occur if management is focused on  
12 restoring only one kind of process. A historic flow and temperature regime for the  
13 Colorado River below Glen Canyon Dam, for instance, will allow non-native  
14 warm water fishes that are now established to move upstream to compete with  
15 endangered fishes (U.S. Geological Survey, 2005).

- 16
- 17 ■ *Nurture and cultivate human resources.* NPS is endowed with a wealth of human  
18 resources in terms of the wisdom, experience, dedication and understanding of its  
19 staff and affiliated personnel (such as advisory groups, research scientists, and  
20 volunteers). That human capital should be protected and preserved concurrent  
21 with natural resources. NPS can accomplish this by promoting training,  
22 continuous inquiry, an atmosphere of respect, allowance for periodic failure, and  
23 personal initiative. NPS could also allow time for managers and resource  
24 practitioners to step back from their daily routines once or twice a year to take in  
25 broad strategic views of national park resources, their stressors, and management  
26 approaches.
- 27

### 28 **Use Parks to Demonstrate Responses to Climate Change**

29 The goodwill of Americans toward national parks means that they can be used as  
30 examples for appropriate behavior, including mitigation strategies, education, and  
31 adaptive natural resource management. The NPS is well aware of its ability to serve as an  
32 example, and is rapidly becoming a “green” leader through its Climate Friendly Parks  
33 program, a partnership between NPS and EPA (Box 4.10). There is an initial cost to  
34 change operations in response to climate change, but the tradeoff between that cost and a  
35 high certainty of long-term tangible benefits makes decisions easier to make and  
36 implement. It is also fairly easy to incorporate information about the causes and effects of  
37 climate change into park education and interpretation activities. National parks offer  
38 tremendous opportunities for increasing ecological literacy, and park staff rely on sound  
39 science in their public education efforts.

40

41 No-regrets activities for national park operations, education, and outreach have already  
42 begun. The Climate Friendly Parks program is visionary in its efforts to inventory  
43 greenhouse gas emissions from parks, provide park-specific suggestions to reduce  
44 greenhouse gas emissions, and help parks set realistic emissions reduction goals.  
45 Education and outreach are addressed in the Climate Friendly Parks program with  
46 materials for educating staff and visitors about climate change. NPS’s Pacific West

1 Regional Office has been proactive in educating western park managers on issues related  
2 to climate change, as well as promoting messages for communication to the public and  
3 actions for addressing the challenge of climate change. Expansion of this type of  
4 proactive leadership is needed.

## 5 **4.5 Conclusions**

6 The National Park System contains some of the least degraded ecosystems in the United  
7 States. Protecting national parks for their naturally functioning ecosystems becomes  
8 increasingly important as these systems become more rare (Baron, 2004). However, all  
9 ecosystems are changing due to climate change and other human-caused disturbances,  
10 including those in national parks. Climate changes that have already been documented,  
11 and coupled with existing threats to national parks—including invasive species, habitat  
12 fragmentation, pollution, and alteration of natural disturbance regimes—constitute true  
13 global change. Climate change will overlay and influence all current resources and how  
14 they are managed. Rather than simply adding and ranking the importance of climate  
15 change against a host of pressing issues, managers need to begin to include climate  
16 change considerations into all activities. Natural resource managers are challenged to  
17 evaluate the possible ramifications, both desirable and undesirable, to the resources under  
18 their protection, and to develop strategies for minimizing harm under changing  
19 environmental conditions.

20  
21 The definition of what is “unimpaired” may need to be reviewed in a future for which  
22 there is no past analog. Managing for resilience through protection, restoration, and  
23 reducing risks may be effective for protecting valued ecosystems in the short term. These  
24 efforts might buy some time for developing new methods and strategies for addressing  
25 longer-term ecosystem and environmental responses of continued climate change.

26  
27 Within NPS, adaptation may involve prioritizing which resources, and possibly which  
28 parks, should receive immediate attention, while recognizing that the physical and  
29 biological changes that will accompany warming trends and increasing occurrences of  
30 extreme events will affect every one of the 270 natural national parks in the coming  
31 century. NPS can be a catalyst for regional collaboration with other land and resource  
32 management entities. Regional partnerships together can evaluate alternative scenarios of  
33 change and plausible collective responses. Uncertainties about how ecosystems will  
34 change, as well as the organizational responses to climate change, will need to be  
35 confronted, acknowledged, and incorporated into decision-making processes. Adaptation  
36 will be facilitated by the use of adaptive management, where management actions  
37 generate data that are used to evaluate the effects of alternative, feasible, management  
38 interventions. Flexibility, and institutionalizing trust in resource managers that can, and  
39 must, take some risks, will need to become more common than traditional management  
40 methods that emphasize control over nature.

41  
42 This chapter has addressed how climate change challenges both the natural resources  
43 within parks and the social system linked to those parks. Effective adaptations require  
44 that agencies, scientists, and the public think differently about how to manage natural  
45 resources. There are many strategies available to confront the uncertainties and

- 1 complexities of climate change, but with climate change upon us, there is precious little
- 2 time to wait.
- 3

## 1 **4.6 References**

- 2 **Albright**, H.M. and M.A. Schenck, 1999: *Creating the National Park Service*. Norman  
3 Publishing.
- 4 **Allen**, C.D., 2007: Interactions across spatial scales among forest dieback, fire, and  
5 erosion in northern New Mexico landscapes. *Ecosystems*, **10(5)**, 797-808.
- 6 **Allen**, C.D., M. Savage, D.A. Falk, K.F. Suckling, T. Schulke, T.W. Swetnam, P.B.  
7 Stacey, P. Morgan, M. Hoffman, and J.T. Klingel, 2002: Ecological restoration of  
8 southwestern ponderosa pine ecosystems: a broad perspective. *Ecological*  
9 *Applications*, **12(5)**, 1418-1433.
- 10 **Allen**, C.D. and D.D. Breshears, 1998: Drought-induced shift of a forest-woodland  
11 ecotone: rapid landscape response to climate variation. *Proceedings of the*  
12 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **95(25)**, 14839-  
13 14842.
- 14 **Baron**, J.S., 2004: Research in National Parks. *Ecological Applications*, **14(1)**, 3-4.
- 15 **Baron**, J.S., H.M. Rueth, A.M. Wolfe, K.R. Nydick, E.J. Allstott, J.T. Minear, and B.  
16 Moraska, 2000: Ecosystem responses to nitrogen deposition in the Colorado Front  
17 Range. *Ecosystems*, **3(4)**, 352-368.
- 18 **Barron**, M.G., S.E. Duvall, and K.J. Barron, 2004: Retrospective and current risks of  
19 mercury to panthers in the Florida Everglades. *Ecotoxicology*, **13(3)**, 223-229.
- 20 **Beckage**, B., L.J. Gross, and W.J. Platt, 2006: Modelling responses of pine savannas to  
21 climate change and large-scale disturbance. *Applied Vegetation Science*, **9(1)**, 75-  
22 82.
- 23 **Beever**, E.A., P.F. Brussard, and J. Berger, 2003: Patterns of apparent extirpation among  
24 isolated populations of pikas (*Ochotona princeps*) in the Great Basin. *Journal of*  
25 *Mammalogy*, **84(1)**, 37-54.
- 26 **Belnap**, J., 2003: The world at your feet: desert biological soil crusts. *Frontiers in*  
27 *Ecology and the Environment*, **1(4)**, 181-189.
- 28 **Bowman**, W.D., J.R. Gartner, K. Holland, and M. Wiedermann, 2006: Nitrogen critical  
29 loads for alpine vegetation and terrestrial ecosystem response: are we there yet?  
30 *Ecological Applications*, **16(3)**, 1183-1193.

- 1 **Brooks, M.L.**, 1999: Habitat invasibility and dominance by alien annual plants in the  
2 western Mojave Desert. *Biological Invasions*, **1(4)**, 325-337.
- 3 **Brooks, M.L.**, C.M. D'Antonio, D.M. Richardson, J.B. Grace, J.E. Keeley, J.M.  
4 DiTomaso, R.J. Hobbs, M. Pellant, and D. Pyke, 2004: Effects of invasive alien  
5 plants on fire regimes. *BioScience*, **54(7)**, 677-688.
- 6 **Brown, D.G.**, K.M. Johnson, T.R. Loveland, and D.M. Theobald, 2005: Rural land-use  
7 trends in the conterminous United States, 1950-2000. *Ecological Applications*,  
8 **15(6)**, 1851-1863.
- 9 **Bulger, A.J.**, B.J. Cosby, and J.R. Webb, 2000: Current, reconstructed past, and projected  
10 future status of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) streams in Virginia. *Canadian*  
11 *Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **57(7)**, 1515-1523.
- 12 **Burkett, V.**, D. Wilcox, R. Stottlemeyer, W. Barrow, D. Fagre, J. Baron, J. Price, J.L.  
13 Nielsen, C.D. Allen, D.L. Peterson, G. Ruggione, and T. Doyle, 2005: Nonlinear  
14 dynamics in ecosystem response to climatic change: case studies and policy  
15 implications. *Ecological Complexity*, **2(4)**, 357-394.
- 16 **Carpenter, S.R.**, 2002: Ecological futures: building an ecology of the long now.  
17 *Ecology*, **83(8)**, 2069-2083.
- 18 **Chase, A.**, 1987: *Playing God in Yellowstone: the Destruction of America's First*  
19 *National Park*. Harcourt Brace, Orlando, FL.
- 20 **Dale, V.H.**, L.A. Joyce, S. McNulty, R.P. Neilson, M.P. Ayres, M.D. Flannigan, P.J.  
21 Hanson, L.C. Irland, A.E. Lugo, and C.J. Peterson, 2001: Climate change and  
22 forest disturbances. *BioScience*.
- 23 **Davis, S.M.**, D.L. Childers, J.J. Lorenz, H.R. Wanless, and T.E. Hopkins, 2005: A  
24 conceptual model of ecological interactions in the mangrove estuaries of the  
25 Florida Everglades. *Wetlands*, **25(4)**, 832-842.
- 26 **Driscoll, C.T.**, G.B. Lawrence, A.J. Bulger, T.J. Butler, C.S. Cronan, C. Eagar, K.F.  
27 Lambert, G.E. Likens, J.L. Stoddard, and K.C. Weathers, 2001: Acidic deposition  
28 in the Northeastern United States: Sources and inputs, ecosystem effects, and  
29 management strategies. *BioScience*, **51(3)**, 180-198.
- 30 **Edwards, M.E.**, L.B. Brubaker, A.V. Lozhkin, and P.M. Anderson, 2005: Structurally  
31 novel biomes: a response to past warming in Beringia. *Ecology*, **86(7)**, 1696-  
32 1703.

- 1 **Fagre, D.B., D.L. Peterson, and A.E. Hessler, 2003: Taking the pulse of mountains:**  
 2 ecosystem responses to climatic variability. *Climatic Change*, **59(1-2)**, 263-282.
- 3 **Fahrig, L., 2003: Effects of habitat fragmentation on biodiversity. *Annual Review of***  
 4 *Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **34**, 487-515.
- 5 **Finney, M.A., C.W. McHugh, and I.C. Grenfell, 2004: Stand- and landscape-level effects**  
 6 of prescribed burning on two Arizona wildfires. *Canadian Journal of Forest*  
 7 *Research*, **35(7)**, 1714-1722.
- 8 **Ford, D. and P. Williams, 1989: *Karst Geomorphology and Hydrology*. Chapman and**  
 9 Hall, Winchester, MA, pp. 1-320.
- 10 **Gleick, P.H., 2006: *The World's Water 2006-2007: the Biennial Report on Freshwater***  
 11 *Resources*. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 12 **Granshaw, F.D. and A.G. Fountain, 2006: Glacier change (1958-1998) in the North**  
 13 Cascades National Park Complex, Washington, USA. *Journal of Glaciology*,  
 14 **52(177)**, 251-256.
- 15 **Grayson, D.K., 2005: A brief history of Great Basin pikas. *Journal of Biogeography*,**  
 16 **32(12)**, 2103-2111.
- 17 **Gunderson, L.H., 2000: Ecological resilience-in theory and application. *Annual Review***  
 18 *of Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 19 **Gunderson, L.H., 2001: Managing surprising ecosystems in southern Florida. *Ecological***  
 20 *Economics*, **37(3)**, 371-378.
- 21 **Gunderson, L.H. and C.S. Holling, 2002: *Panarchy: Understanding Transformations in***  
 22 *Systems of Humans and Nature*. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 23 **Hall, M.H.P. and D.B. Fagre, 2003: Modeled climate-induced glacier change in Glacier**  
 24 National Park, 1850-2100. *BioScience*, **53(2)**, 131-140.
- 25 **Hessler, A.E. and W.L. Baker, 1997: Spruce-fir growth form changes in the forest-tundra**  
 26 ecotone of Rocky Mountain National Park, Colorado, USA. *Ecography*, **20(4)**,  
 27 356-367.
- 28 **Hobbs, R.J., S. Arico, J. Aronson, J.S. Baron, P. Bridgewater, V.A. Cramer, P.R.**  
 29 Epstein, J.J. Ewel, C.A. Klink, A.E. Lugo, D. Norton, D. Ojima, D.M.  
 30 Richardson, E.W. Sanderson, F. Valladares, M. Vilà, R. Zamora, and M. Zobel,

- 1           2006: Novel ecosystems: theoretical and management aspects of the new  
2           ecological world order. *Global Ecology and Biogeography*, **15**, 1-7.
- 3   **Hodgkins**, G.A. and R.W. Dudley, 2006: Changes in the timing of winter-spring  
4           streamflows in eastern North America, 1913-2002. *Geophysical Research Letters*,  
5           **33(6)**.
- 6   **Holling**, C.S., 1973: Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Annual Review of*  
7           *Ecology and Systematics*, **(4)**, 1-23.
- 8   **Holling**, C.S., 1978: *Adaptive Environmental Assessment and Management*. Blackburn  
9           Press, Caldwell, NJ.
- 10 **Huntington**, T.G., G.A. Hodgkins, B.D. Keim, and R.W. Dudley, 2004: Changes in the  
11          proportion of precipitation occurring as snow in New England (1949-2000).  
12          *Journal of Climate*, **17(13)**, 2626-2636.
- 13 **IPCC**, 2007: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science*  
14          *Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
15          *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning,  
16          Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
17          Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY,  
18          USA.
- 19 **Keane**, R.E., K.C. Ryan, T.T. Veblen, C.D. Allen, J. Logan, and B. Hawkes, 2002:  
20          *Cascading Effects of Fire Exclusion in the Rocky Mountain Ecosystems: a*  
21          *Literature Review*. General Technical Report RMRS-GTR-91, U.S. Department of  
22          Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, Fort Collins, CO,  
23          pp.1-24.
- 24 **Knowles**, G., 2003: Aquatic life in the Sonoran Desert. *Endangered Species Bulletin*,  
25          **28(3)**, 22-23.
- 26 **Knowles**, N., M.D. Dettinger, and D.R. Cayan, 2006: Trends in snowfall versus rainfall  
27          in the Western United States. *Journal of Climate*, **19(18)**, 4545-4559.
- 28 **Kohut**, R.J., 2007: *Ozone Risk Assessments for Vital Signs Monitoring Networks,*  
29          *Appalachian National Scenic Trail, and Natchez Trace National Scenic Trail.*  
30          Natural Resource Report NPS/NRPC/ARD/NRTR-2007/001, US Department of  
31          Interior, National Park Service, Fort Collins, Colorado.
- 32 **Kokko**, H. and A. López-Sepulcre, 2006: From individual dispersal to species ranges:  
33          perspectives for a changing world. *Science*, **313(5788)**, 789-791.

- 1 **Langner, J., R. Bergström, and V. Foltescu, 2005:** Impact of climate change on surface  
2 ozone and deposition of sulphur and nitrogen in Europe. *Atmospheric*  
3 *Environment*, **39(6)**, 1129-1141.
- 4 **Lee, K.N., 1993:** *Compass and Gyroscope: Integrating Science and Politics for the*  
5 *Environment*. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 6 **Leopold, A.S., 1963:** *Wildlife Management in the National Parks*. Report submitted by  
7 Advisory Board on Wildlife Management, appointed by Secretary of the Interior  
8 Udall, pp.1-23.
- 9 **Lettenmaier, D.P., A.W. Wood, R.N. Palmer, E.F. Wood, and E.Z. Stakhiv, 1999:** Water  
10 resources implications of global warming: a U.S. regional perspective. *Climatic*  
11 *Change*, **43(3)**, 537-579.
- 12 **MacAvoy, S.E. and A.J. Bulger, 1995:** Survival of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*)  
13 embryos and fry in streams of different acid sensitivity in Shenandoah National  
14 Park, USA. *Water, Air, & Soil Pollution*, **85(2)**, 445-450.
- 15 **Mckenzie, D., Z. Gedalof, D.L. Peterson, and P. Mote, 2004:** Climatic change, wildfire,  
16 and conservation. *Conservation Biology*, **18(4)**, 890-902.
- 17 **McKenzie, D.H., S. O'Neill, N.K. Larkin, and R.A. Norheim, 2006:** How will climatic  
18 change affect air quality in parks and wilderness? In: *Proceedings of the 2005*  
19 *George Wright Society Annual Meeting* [Harmon, D. (ed.)].
- 20 **Mote, P.W., 2006:** Climate-driven variability and trends in mountain snowpack in  
21 western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **19(23)**, 6209-6220.
- 22 **Muir, J., 1911:** *My First Summer in the Sierra*. Houghton Mifflin Company, New York.
- 23 **Murdoch, P.S., J.S. Baron, and T.L. Miller, 2000:** Potential effects of climate change on  
24 surface-water quality in North America. *Journal of the American Water*  
25 *Resources Association*, **36(2)**, 347-366.
- 26 **National Invasive Species Council, 2001:** *Meeting the Invasive Species Challenge:*  
27 *National Invasive Species Management Plan*. pp.1-80.
- 28 **National Park Service, 1998:** *Natural Resource Year in Review, 1997*. Publication D-  
29 1247, Department of the Interior.



- 1 **National Park Service**, 1999: *Natural Resource Challenge: The National Park Service's*  
2 *Action Plan for Preserving Natural Resources*. Natural Resource Information  
3 Division, National Park Service, Fort Collins, CO.
- 4 **National Park Service**, 2004a: *Final Yosemite Fire Management Plan: Environmental*  
5 *Impact Statement*.
- 6 **National Park Service**, 2004b: *Funding the Natural Resource Challenge*. Report to  
7 Congress Fiscal Year 2004, National Park Service, US Department of Interior.,  
8 Washington, D.C..
- 9 **National Park Service**, 2006: *Management Policies 2006*. U.S. Department of the  
10 Interior, National Park Service.
- 11 **National Research Council**, 1999: *Our Common Journey: a Transition Toward*  
12 *Sustainability*. National Academy Press, Washington, DC.
- 13 **National Research Council**, 2003: *Adaptive Monitoring and Assessment for the*  
14 *Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan*. National Academy Press, pp.1-122.
- 15 **Neufville, R.**, 2003: Real options: dealing with uncertainty in systems planning and  
16 design. *Integrated Assessment*, **4(1)**, 26-34.
- 17 **Paine, R.T., M.J. Tegner, and E.A. Johnson**, 1998: Compounded perturbations yield  
18 ecological surprises. *Ecosystems*, **1(6)**, 535-545.
- 19 **Parmesan, C.**, 2006: Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change.  
20 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 637-669.
- 21 **Parsons, D.J.**, 2004: Supporting basic ecological research in U. S. National Parks:  
22 challenges and opportunities. *Ecological Applications*, **14(1)**, 5-13.
- 23 **Pauly, D.**, 1995: Anecdotes and the shifting baseline syndrome of fisheries. *Trends in*  
24 *Ecology and Evolution*, **10(10)**, 430-430.
- 25 **Peterson, G.D., G.S. Cumming, and S.R. Carpenter**, 2003: Scenario planning: a tool for  
26 conservation in an uncertain world. *Conservation Biology*, **17(2)**, 358-366.
- 27 **Pitcaithley, D.T.**, 2001: Philosophical underpinnings of the National Park idea. *Ranger*.
- 28 **Poff, N.L.R., J.D. Olden, D.M. Merritt, and D.M. Pepin**, 2007: Homogenization of  
29 regional river dynamics by dams and global biodiversity implications.

- 1            *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
2            **104(14)**, 5732-5737.
- 3    **Raskin**, P.D., 2005: Global scenarios: background review for the Millennium Ecosystem  
4            Assessment. *Ecosystems*, **8(2)**, 133-142.
- 5    **Regan**, H.M., M. Colyvan, and M.A. Burgman, 2002: A taxonomy and treatment of  
6            uncertainty for ecology and conservation biology. *Ecological Applications*, **12(2)**,  
7            618-628.
- 8    **Ripple**, W.J. and R.L. Beschta, 2005: Linking wolves and plants: Aldo Leopold on  
9            trophic cascades. *BioScience*, **55(7)**, 613-621.
- 10   **Rittel**, H.W.J. and M.M. Webber, 1973: Dilemmas in a general theory of planning.  
11            *Policy Sciences*, **4(2)**, 155-169.
- 12   **Rodgers**, J.A., Jr. and H.T. Smith, 1995: Set-back distances to protect nesting bird  
13            colonies from human disturbance in Florida. *Conservation Biology*, **9(1)**, 89-99.
- 14   **Romme**, W.H. and D.G. Despain, 1989: Historical perspective on the Yellowstone firs of  
15            1988. *BioScience*, **39(10)**, 695-699.
- 16   **Saxon**, E., B. Baker, W. Hargrove, F. Hoffman, and C. Zganjar, 2005: Mapping  
17            environments at risk under different global climate change scenarios. *Ecology*  
18            *Letters*, **8(1)**, 53-60.
- 19   **Sellars**, R.W., 1999: *Preserving Nature in the National Parks: a History*. Yale University  
20            Press.
- 21   **Shaw**, J.D., B.E. Steed, and L.T. DeBlander, 2005: Forest inventory and analysis (FIA)  
22            annual inventory answers the question: what is happening to pinyon-juniper  
23            woodlands? *Journal of Forestry*, **103(6)**, 280-285.
- 24   **Singer**, J.F., C.V. Bleich, and A.M. Gudorf, 2000: Restoration of bighorn sheep  
25            metapopulations in and near western National Parks. *Restoration Ecology*, **8(4)**,  
26            14-24.
- 27   **Smith**, S.M., D.E. Gawlik, K. Rutchey, G.E. Crozier, and S. Gray, 2003: Assessing  
28            drought-related ecological risk in the Florida Everglades. *Journal of*  
29            *Environmental Management*, **68(4)**, 355-366.
- 30   **Stanford**, J.A. and B. K. Ellis, 2002: Natural and cultural influences on ecosystem  
31            processes in the Flathead River Basin (Montana, British Columbia), In: *Rocky*

- 1            *Mountain Futures: an Ecological Perspective*, Island Press, Covelo, CA, pp. 269-  
2            284.
- 3    **Stewart**, I.T., D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2005: Changes toward earlier streamflow  
4            timing across western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **18(8)**, 1136-1155.
- 5    **Stohlgren**, T.J., G.W. Chong, L.D. Schell, K.A. Rimar, Y. Otsuki, M. Lee, M.A.  
6            Kalkhan, and C.A. Villa, 2002: Assessing vulnerability to invasion by nonnative  
7            plant species at multiple spatial scales. *Environmental Management*, **29(4)**, 566-  
8            577.
- 9    **Sydoriak**, C.A., C.D. Allen, and B.F. Jacobs, 2000: Would ecological landscape  
10           restoration make the Bandelier Wilderness more or less of a wilderness?  
11           *Proceedings: Wilderness Science in a Time of Change Conference-Volume 5:*  
12           *Wilderness Ecosystems, Threats, and Management*, **Proceedings RMRS-P-15-**  
13           **VOL-5**, 209-215.
- 14   **Tomback**, D.F. and K. C. Kendall, 2002: Rocky road in the Rockies: challenges to  
15           biodiversity, In: *Rocky Mountain Futures, an Ecological Perspective*, [Baron, J.  
16           (ed.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 153-180.
- 17   **U.S. Geological Survey**, 2005: *The State of the Colorado River Ecosystem in Grand*  
18           *Canyon*. USGS Circular 1282, U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological  
19           Survey, pp.1-220.
- 20   **Unger**, S., 1999: *The Restoration of an Ecosystem*. Everglades National Park.
- 21   **Walters**, C., 1986: *Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources*. McGraw Hill, New  
22           York.
- 23   **Walters**, C., J. Korman, L.E. Stevens, and B. Gold, 2000: Ecosystem modeling for  
24           evaluation of adaptive management policies in the Grand Canyon. *Conservation*  
25           *Ecology*, **4(2)**1 (online).
- 26   **Walters**, C.J. and C.S. Holling, 1990: Large-scale management experiments and learning  
27           by doing. *Ecology*, **71(6)**, 2060-2068.
- 28   **Weiss**, J.L. and J.T. Overpeck, 2005: Is the Sonoran Desert losing its cool? *Global*  
29           *Change Biology*, **11(12)**, 2065-2077.
- 30   **Westerling**, A.L., H.G. Hidalgo, D.R. Cayan, and T.W. Swetnam, 2006: Warming and  
31           earlier spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. *Science*, **313(5789)**,  
32           940-943.

1 **Williams, J.W., S.T. Jackson, and J.E. Kutzbach, 2007: Projected distributions of novel**  
2 **and disappearing climates by 2100 AD. *Proceedings of the National Academy of***  
3 ***Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5738-5742.**

4 **Willis, K.J. and H.J.B. Birks, 2006: What is natural? The need for a long-term**  
5 **perspective in biodiversity conservation. *Science*, **314(5803)**, 1261.**

6 **Winks, R.W., 1997: The National Park Service Act of 1916: a contradictory mandate?**  
7 ***Denver University Law Review*, **74(3)**, 575-623.**

8  
9

## 1 **4.7 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 We wish to acknowledge the USGS Western Mountain Initiative, and advice, comments,  
4 and reviews from Abby Miller, Bob Krumenaker, David Graber, Vaughn Baker, Jeff  
5 Connor, and Ben Bobowski. Participants in the November 2006 workshop provided  
6 valuable comments and context.

7

### 8 **Workshop Participants**

9

- 10     ▪ Stan Austin, Rocky Mountain National Park
- 11     ▪ Gillian Bowser, National Park Service and Texas A&M University
- 12     ▪ John Dennis, National Park Service
- 13     ▪ David Graber, Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks
- 14     ▪ John Gross, National Park Service Vital Signs Program
- 15     ▪ Elizabeth Johnson, National Park Service Northeast Regional Office
- 16     ▪ Sharon Klewinsky, National Park Service
- 17     ▪ Bob Krumenaker, Apostle Islands National Lakeshore
- 18     ▪ Abby Miller, The Coalition of National Park Service Retirees
- 19     ▪ Shawn Norton, National Park Service
- 20     ▪ Mike Soukup, National Park Service
- 21     ▪ Lee Tarnay, Yosemite National Park
- 22     ▪ Julie Thomas, National Park Service
- 23     ▪ Leigh Welling, Crown of the Continent Research Learning Center
- 24     ▪ Mark Wenzler, National Parks Conservation Association

25

26

27

1 **4.8 Boxes**

2

3

4

**Box 4.1. The National Park Service Mission**

5

6

7

8

9

The National Park Service preserves unimpaired the natural and cultural resources and values of the National Park System for the enjoyment, education, and inspiration of this and future generations. The Park Service cooperates with partners to extend the benefits of natural and cultural resource conservation and outdoor recreation throughout this country and the world.

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

**Box 4.2. Natural Resource Action Plan Goals**

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

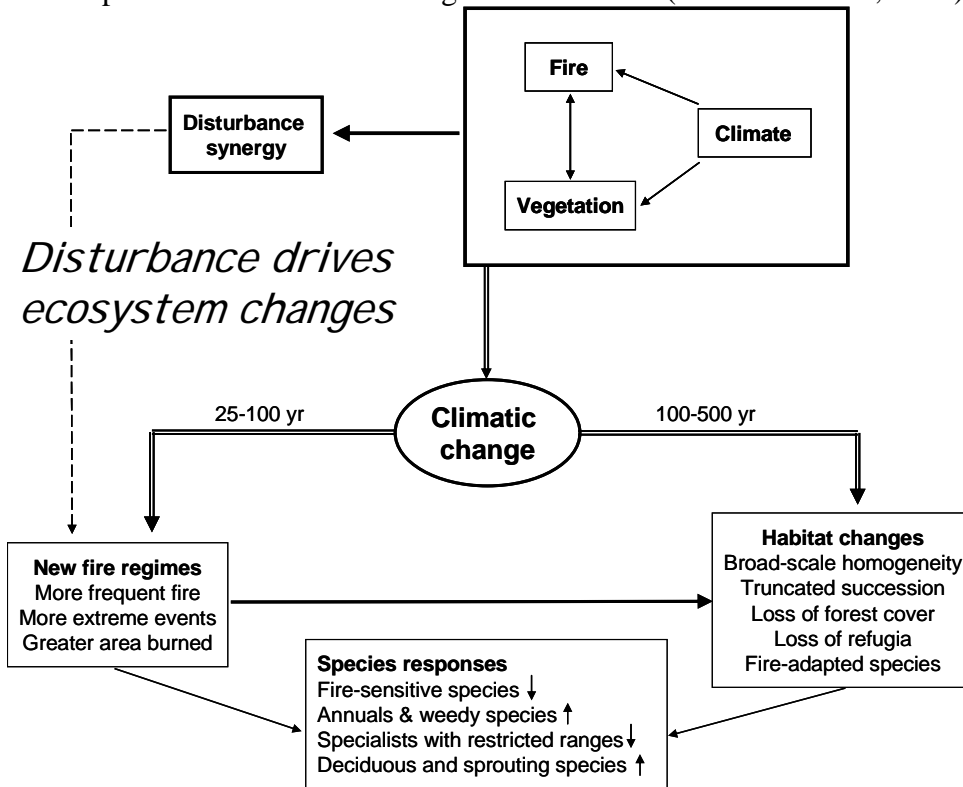
28

29

1. National parks are preserved so that this generation and future generations can enjoy, benefit, and learn from them.
2. Management of the national parks is improved through a greater reliance on scientific knowledge.
3. Techniques are developed and employed that protect the inherent qualities of national parks and restore natural systems that have been degraded; collaboration with the public and private sectors minimizes degrading influences.
4. Knowledge gained in national parks through scientific research is promulgated broadly by the National Park Service and others for the benefit of society.

**Box 4.3. Interactions of Fire with Other Stressors and Resources**

Future increases in the size and severity of wildland fires are likely not just in the western park areas, but across the United States (Dale *et al.*, 2001). Such increases would have direct impacts on infrastructure and air quality. There would also be short- and long-term consequences for conservation of valued species and their habitats. McKenzie *et al.* (2004) presented a conceptual model of how interactions between naturally functioning ecosystems with some recurrence interval of fire can be perturbed under conditions of climate change (see below). Warmer and drier summers are likely to produce more frequent and more extensive fires. Trees and other vegetation are also likely to be stressed by drought and increasing insect attacks, since stressed vegetation is predisposed toward other stressors (Paine, Tegner, and Johnson, 1998). Insect-caused mortality can lead to large areas with accumulations of woody fuels, enhancing the probability of large fires. More frequent and more extensive fires will lead to greater area burned. Over time this can alter existing forest structure. Depending on the location, homogeneous forest stands can regenerate. Savannahs or grasslands may replace trees in some areas. Increased erosion on slopes may affect forest fertility and stream or lake water quality. Increased fire frequency—indeed, any kind of land disturbance—favors opportunistic and weedy species. Annual weeds, such as cheatgrass and buffelgrass in the western United States, regenerate rapidly after fire and produce abundant fuel for future fires. The number of native fire-sensitive species decreases. Vegetation types that are at risk from either fire or the combination of fire and invasive species put obligate bird, mammal, and insect species at risk of local or regional extinction (Mckenzie *et al.*, 2004).



24  
25

1  
2 **Box 4.4.** Altered Flow Regimes, Increased Nutrients, Loss of Keystone Species, and  
3 Climate Change  
4

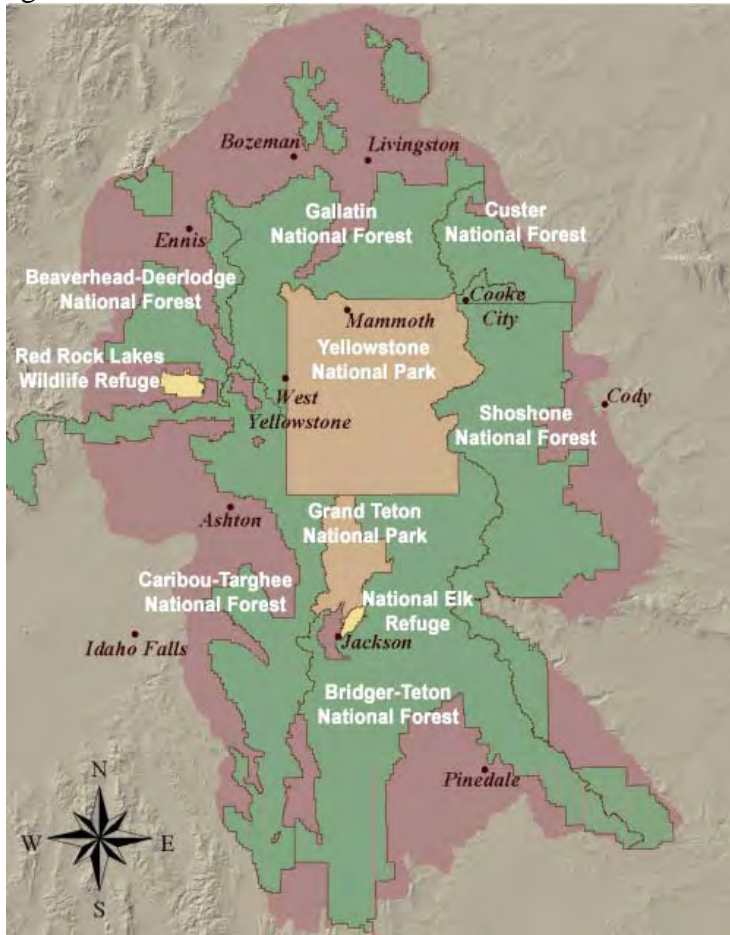
5 From the freshwater marshes of the Everglades to the shallow waters of Florida Bay,  
6 human alterations have resulted in dramatic ecosystem changes—changes that are likely  
7 to become exaggerated by climate change. Nutrient enrichment of freshwater sawgrass  
8 marshes have led to marshes now dominated by cattails (Unger, 1999). The soil  
9 phosphorous content defines these alternate sawgrass or cattail states, and several types  
10 of disturbances (fires, drought, or freezes) can trigger a switch between states  
11 (Gunderson, 2001). Downstream, the Florida Bay system has flipped from a clear-water,  
12 seagrass-dominated state to one of murky water, algal blooms, and recurrently stirred-up  
13 sediments. Hurricane frequency, reduced freshwater flow entering the Bay, higher  
14 nutrient concentrations, removal of large grazers such as sea turtles and manatees, sea  
15 level rise, and construction activities that restrict circulation in the Bay have all  
16 contributed to the observed changes (Gunderson, 2001). A balance between freshwater  
17 inflows and sea levels maintains the salinity gradients necessary for mangrove  
18 ecosystems, which are important for mangrove fish populations, wood stork (*Mycteria*  
19 *americana*) and roseate spoonbill (*Platylea ajaja*) nesting colonies, and estuarine  
20 crocodiles.  
21

22 Although there are intensive efforts to increase hydrologic flows to and through the  
23 Everglades, climate change is expected to increase the difficulty of meeting restoration  
24 goals. Interactions of fire, atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>, and hurricanes may favor certain tree  
25 species, possibly pushing open Everglades pine savannahs toward closed pine forests  
26 (Beckage, Gross, and Platt, 2006). Tree islands, which are hotspots of biodiversity, and  
27 peatlands that make up much of the Everglades landscape, may be additionally stressed  
28 by drought and peat fires. Animals that rely on these communities may see their habitat  
29 decrease (Smith *et al.*, 2003). Mangroves may be able to persist and move inland with  
30 climate change, but that will depend on the rates of sea level rise (Davis *et al.*, 2005).



**Box 4.5. The Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee**<sup>27</sup>

The Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee, established in 1964, has been highly effective at working on public lands issues for the nearly 14 million acres of public lands that include Yellowstone and Grand Teton National Parks, John D. Rockefeller, Jr. Memorial Parkway, five national forests, and two national wildlife refuges (see map below). Subcommittees of managers from federal agencies as well as state and private entities work on a wide variety of cross-boundary issues, including land cover and land use patterns and fragmentation, watershed management, invasive species, conservation of whitebark pine and cutthroat trout, threatened and endangered species, recreation, and air quality. Shared data, information, and equipment have been effective in coordinating specific activities including acquiring and protecting private lands through deeds and conservation easements, raising public awareness, providing tools such as a vehicle washer, and increasing purchasing power. These activities have helped combat the spread of invasive plants, restore fish passageways, conserve energy, reduce waste streams, educate the public, and develop a collective capacity for sustainability across the federal agencies.



<sup>27</sup> **Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee**, 2007: Greater Yellowstone area: Administrative boundaries. Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee Website, <http://bsi.montana.edu/web/gycc>, accessed on 5-21-2007.

1  
2

**Box 4.6.** Process for Adaptations of Parks and the Park Service to Climate Change

- Identify resources and processes at risk from climate change.
  - Characterize potential future climate changes, including inherent uncertainty and possible ranges.
  - Identify which resources are susceptible to change under future climates.
- Develop monitoring and assessment programs for resources and processes at risk from climate change.
- Define baselines or reference conditions for protection or restoration.
- Develop and implement management strategies for adaptation.
  - Consider whether current management practices will be effective under future climates.
  - Diversify the portfolio of management approaches.
  - Accelerate the capacity for learning.
  - Assess, plan, and manage at multiple scales.
    - Let the issues define appropriate scales of time and space.
    - Form partnerships with other resource management entities.
  - Reduce other human-caused stressors to park ecosystems.
  - Nurture and cultivate human and natural capital.

3  
4  
5  
6

**Box 4.7.** Examples of Adaptation Options for Resource Managers

- ✓ Remove structures that harden the coastlines, impede natural regeneration of sediments, and prevent natural inland migration of sand and vegetation after disturbances.
- ✓ Move or remove human infrastructure from floodplains to protect against extreme events.
- ✓ Remove barriers to upstream migration in rivers and streams.
- ✓ Reduce or eliminate water pollution by working with watershed coalitions to reduce non-point sources and with local, state and federal agencies to reduce atmospheric deposition.
- ✓ Reduce fragmentation and maintain or restore species migration corridors to facilitate natural flow of genes, species and populations.
- ✓ Use wildland fire, mechanical thinning, or prescribed burns where it is documented to reduce risk of anomalously severe fires.
- ✓ Minimize alteration of natural disturbance regimes, for example through protection of natural flow regimes in rivers or removal of infrastructure that prohibits the allowance of wildland fire
- ✓ Minimize soil loss after fire or vegetation dieback with native vegetation and debris.
- ✓ Aggressively prevent establishment of invasive non-native species where they are documented to threaten native species or current ecosystem function.
- ✓ Allow the establishment of species that are non-native locally, but maintain native biodiversity or enhance ecosystem function in the overall region.
- ✓ Actively plant or introduce desired species after disturbances or in anticipation of the loss of some species.
- ✓ Manage Park Service and visitor use practices to prevent people from inadvertently contributing to climate change.
- ✓ Practice bet-hedging by replicating populations and gene pools of desired species.
- ✓ Restore vegetation where it confers biophysical protection to increase resilience, including riparian areas that shade streams and coastal wetland vegetation that buffers shorelines.
- ✓ Create or protect refugia for valued aquatic species at risk to the effects of early snowmelt on river flow.
- ✓ Assist in species migrations.

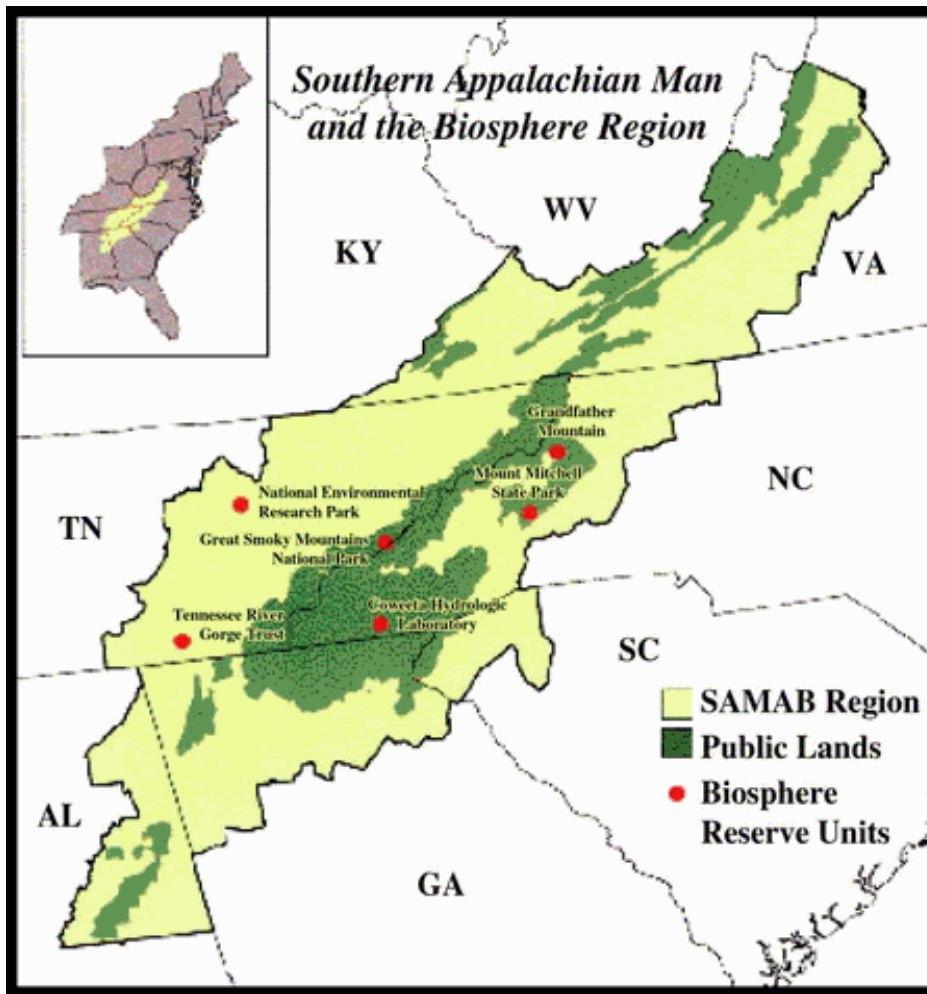
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12

**Box 4.8.** Examples of Invasive Species Impacts

Buffelgrass (*Pennisetum ciliare*), an African bunchgrass, is spreading rapidly across the Sonoran Desert in southern and central Arizona. The Mojave Desert and Great Basin counterparts to buffelgrass, the brome grasses (*Bromus* spp.) and Arabian Schismus (*Schismus* spp.), cover millions of acres. Brome and Schismus grasses are highly flammable and spread rapidly after fires; their invasion into deserts that evolved with infrequent, low-intensity fires is hastening loss of native species. Among the many charismatic species at risk are saguaro cactuses, Joshua trees, and desert tortoises. Buffelgrass and the Mediterranean annual grasses thrive under most temperature regimes so they are likely to continue expanding (Weiss and Overpeck, 2005).

**Box 4.9. Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere Program<sup>28</sup>**

The Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere (SAMAB) Program is a public/private partnership that focuses on the Southern Appalachian Biosphere Reserve. The program encourages the use of ecosystem and adaptive management principles. SAMAB’s vision is to foster a harmonious relationship between people and the Southern Appalachian environment. Its mission is to promote the environmental health and stewardship of natural, economic, and cultural resources in the Southern Appalachians. It encourages community-based solutions to critical regional issues through cooperation among partners, information-gathering and sharing, integrated assessments, and demonstration projects. The SAMAB Reserve was designated by the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) in 1988 as a multi-unit regional biosphere reserve. Its “zone of cooperation” covers the Appalachian parts of six states: Tennessee, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, and Virginia, and includes Great Smoky Mountains National Park.



<sup>28</sup> Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere, 2007: SAMAB home page. Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere Website, <http://samab.org/>, accessed on 5-21-2007.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21

**Box 4.10.** Climate Friendly Parks

With support from EPA, the National Park Service began the Climate Friendly Parks initiative in 2002.<sup>29</sup> The Climate Friendly Parks program provides tools for parks to mitigate their own contributions to climate change and increase energy efficiency. The program also aims to provide park visitors with examples of environmental excellence and leadership that can be emulated in communities, organizations, and corporations across the country. Parks begin with a baseline inventory of their own greenhouse gas emissions, using inventories and models developed by EPA. The baseline assessment is used to set management goals, prioritize activities, and demonstrate how to reduce emissions, both at the level of individual parks and service-wide. Solid waste reduction, environmental purchasing, management of transportation demands (*e.g.*, increasing vehicle efficiency, reducing motorized vehicle use and total miles traveled), and alternative energy and energy conservation measures are considered in developing action plans for emissions reductions by individual parks. In addition, the NPS will extend these efforts to air pollutants regulated under the Clean Air Act, including hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide, sulfur dioxide, nitrogen dioxide, and particulate matter. Education and outreach are strong components of the Climate Friendly Parks program.

---

<sup>29</sup> **National Park Service**, 2007: Climate Friendly Parks. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/climatefriendlyparks/>, accessed on 7-12-2007.

## 1 **4.9 Case Study Summaries**

2 The summary below provides an overview of the case study prepared for this chapter.  
3 The case study is available in Annex A2.

### 4 **Case Study Summary 4.1**

#### 5 **Rocky Mountain National Park, Colorado**

6 Western United States

---

#### 7 **Why this case study was chosen**

8 Rocky Mountain National Park:

- 9 • Serves as a good example of the state in which most parks find themselves as they confront resource management in the face of climate change: regardless of the apparent urgency in some parks, *all* of them will have to initiate adaptation actions in order to meet the National Park Service mission and goals;
- 10 • Contains biomes that are vulnerable to climate change such that the distribution, condition, and abundance of ecological resources could be drastically altered;
- 11 • Is staffed with personnel who are already engaged in early stages of adaptation planning.
- 12 • Is a major destination for more than three million visitors per year from Colorado, the United States, and abroad, who come to experience the unique high-elevation environment and escape summer heat;
- 13 • Is a crucial component of the greater Southern Rockies Ecosystem, and nearly surrounded by other public lands, including wilderness.

#### 14 **Management context**

15 Located in the Front Range of the Rocky Mountains, the 415-square-mile Rocky Mountain National Park (RMNP) was established in 1915 as a public park for the benefit and enjoyment of the people of the United States, with regulations primarily aimed at the freest use of the park and the preservation of natural conditions and scenic beauties. A primary management goal is to maintain the park in its natural condition. RMNP's wide elevation gradient—from 8,000 to more than 14,000 feet—includes montane forests and grasslands, old-growth subalpine forests, and the largest expanse of alpine tundra in the lower 48 states. More than 150 lakes and 450 miles of streams form the headwaters of the Colorado River to the west and the South Platte River to the east. Rich wetlands and riparian areas are regional hotspots of native biodiversity. Several small glaciers and rock glaciers persist in east-facing cirque basins along the Continental Divide. The park is home to populations of migratory elk, mule deer, and bighorn sheep; alpine plant and animal species such as white-tailed ptarmigan, pika, and yellow-bellied marmot; and several endangered species such as the boreal toad and the greenback cutthroat trout.

#### 16 **Key climate change impacts**

- 17 • Projected biome shifts, fragmentation, and losses as temperatures warm and major habitats shift upward in elevation;
- 18 • Projected ecosystem disruptions due to increased risks of fire, insect pest outbreaks, invasion by non-native species, and population changes in native species (*e.g.*, grazers and browsers);
- 19 • Projected reduction of snowpack;
- 20 • Projected warming of water bodies with resulting impacts to aquatic life;
- 21 • Projected species losses (*e.g.*, white-tailed ptarmigan and other tundra obligates);
- 22 • Projected population increases in organisms that can stress the system (*e.g.*, elk);
- 23 • Observed increases in summer temperatures (average increase of 3°C from 1991–2001) as well as increases in extreme heat events;
- 24 • Observed earlier melting of winter snowpack;

- 1 • Observed early emergence of animals from hibernation and early arrival of migratory species;
- 2 • Observed thinning of nearby Arapahoe Glacier (by more than 40 m since 1960).

#### 4 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 5 • RMNP has benefited from long-term research and monitoring projects and climate change  
6 assessments that will be vital to ongoing adaptation planning.
- 7 • Park managers have been proactive in removing or preventing invasive species, managing fire  
8 through controlled burns and thinning, reducing regional air pollution through partnerships with  
9 regulatory agencies, purchasing water rights, restoring streams and lakes to free-flowing  
10 status, and preparing a plan to reduce elk populations to appropriate numbers.
- 11 • Managers have identified a strategy for increasing their ability to adapt to climate change built  
12 on their current activities, what they know, and what they do not know about upcoming  
13 challenges related to climate change.
- 14 • Regular workshops with scientific experts offer opportunities to develop planning scenarios,  
15 propose adaptive experiments and management options, learn from high resolution models of  
16 species and process responses to possible climates and management activities, and keep  
17 abreast of the state of knowledge regarding climate change and its effects.
- 18 • A RMNP Science Advisory Board has been proposed to contribute strategic thinking to enable  
19 park managers to anticipate climate-related events.
- 20 • By developing a regional-scale approach toward adaptation with neighboring and regional  
21 resource managers, the park keeps its options open for allowing species to migrate in and out  
22 of the park and protects an important part of the greater Southern Rockies Ecosystem.
- 23 • Managers have recognized the need for learning activities and opportunities for all park  
24 employees to increase their knowledge of climate change-related natural resource issues  
25 within RMNP.

#### 27 **Conclusions**

28 RMNP is home to a wide diversity of valued ecosystems and species. As such, it attracts large  
29 numbers of visitors. RMNP is also potentially highly vulnerable to climate change. Adaptation  
30 planning is vital if the health of RMNP biomes and the greater Southern Rockies Ecosystem is to  
31 be protected, and such planning has already begun. However, much remains to be  
32 accomplished. Complex climate change issues require flexible ways of thinking, and enough time  
33 and systems-level training to approach them with broad, strategic vision. Expanded monitoring  
34 programs within the park could ensure that early signs of impacts are detected in all biomes.  
35 Forums for identifying problems and solutions are already being initiated between park managers  
36 and regional scientists. Acceleration of these dialogues would speed identification of specific and  
37 realistic adaptation options for each of the major resources within the park.



1 **4.10 Figures**

2 **Figure 4.1.** Photograph looking up from the Colorado River at the Grand Canyon,  
3 courtesy of Jeffrey Lovich, USGS.



4

1 **Figure 4.2.** Everglades National Park. Photo courtesy of National Park Service; photo by  
2 Rodney Cammauf.



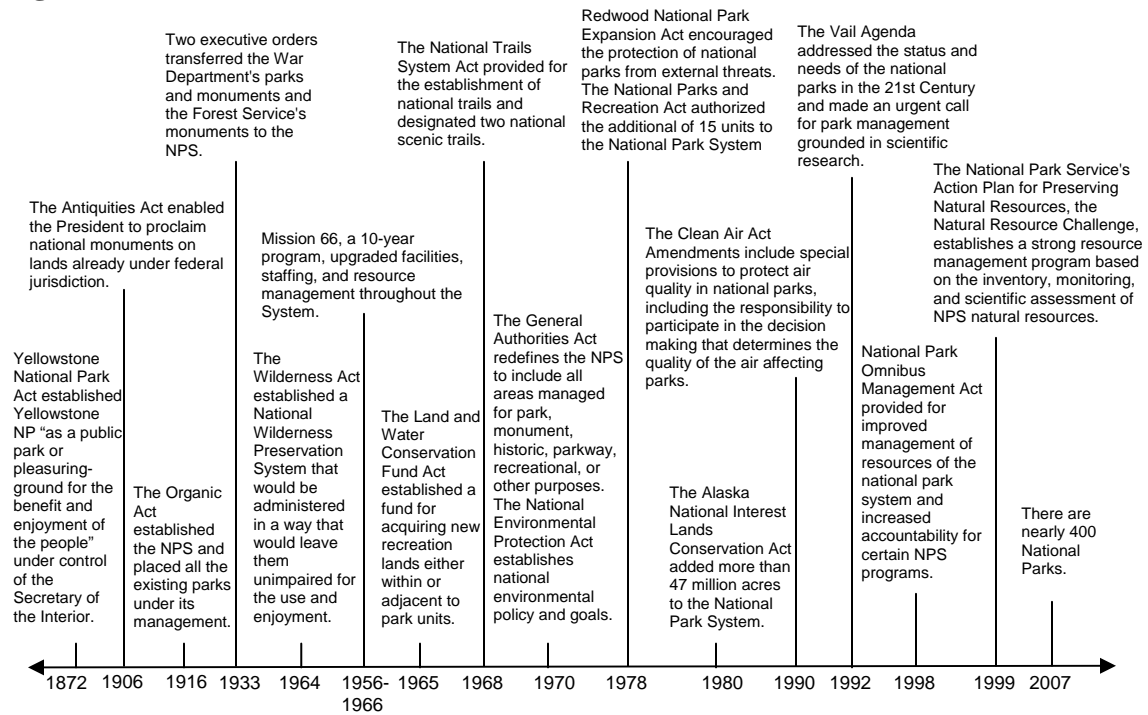
3

- 1 **Figure 4.3.** Photograph of Joshua tree in Joshua Tree National Park. Photo courtesy of
- 2 National Park Service.



3

1 **Figure 4.4. Historical timeline of the National Park Service.**<sup>30</sup>

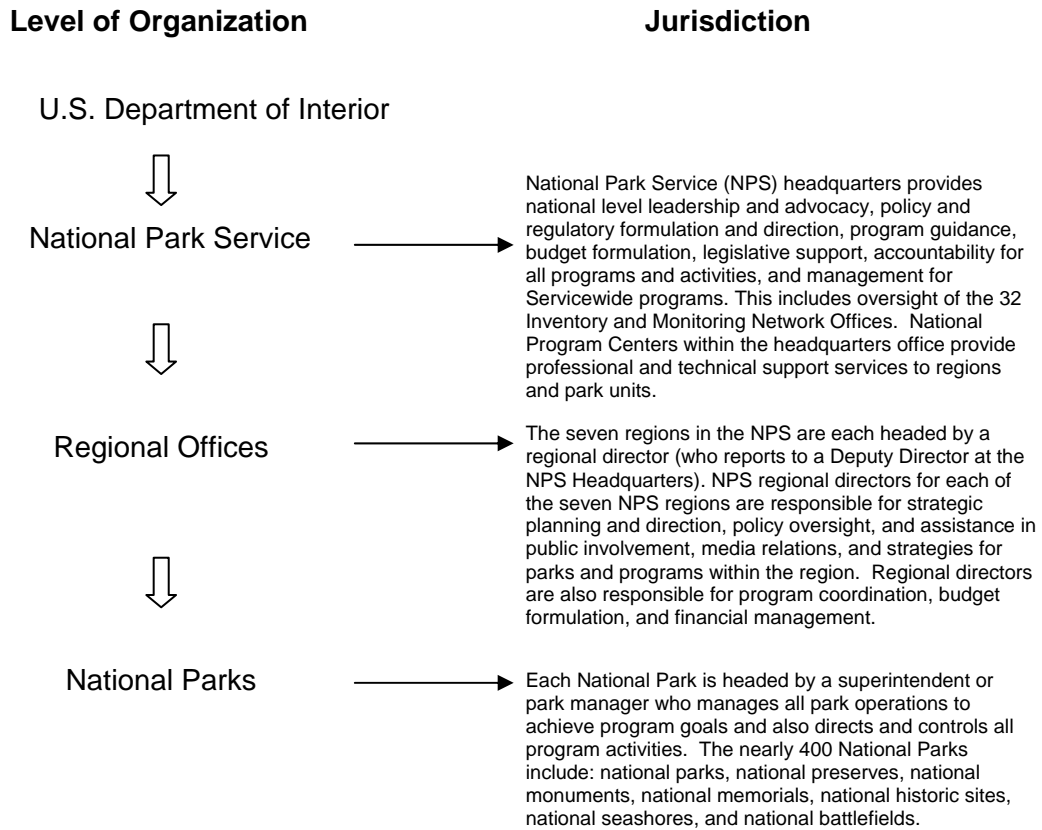


2

<sup>30</sup> Adapted from **National Park Service**, 2007: History. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/aboutus/history.htm>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

1

2 **Figure 4.5.** Organizational chart of National Park Service.<sup>31</sup>



Adapted from <http://www.nps.gov/aboutus/organization.htm>

3

<sup>31</sup> Adapted from **National Park Service**, 2007: Organization. National Park Service, <http://www.nps.gov/aboutus/organization.htm>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

- 1 **Figure 4.6.** Map of the National Park System. Data courtesy of National Park Service,
- 2 Harpers Ferry Center.<sup>32</sup>
- 3



- 4
- 5

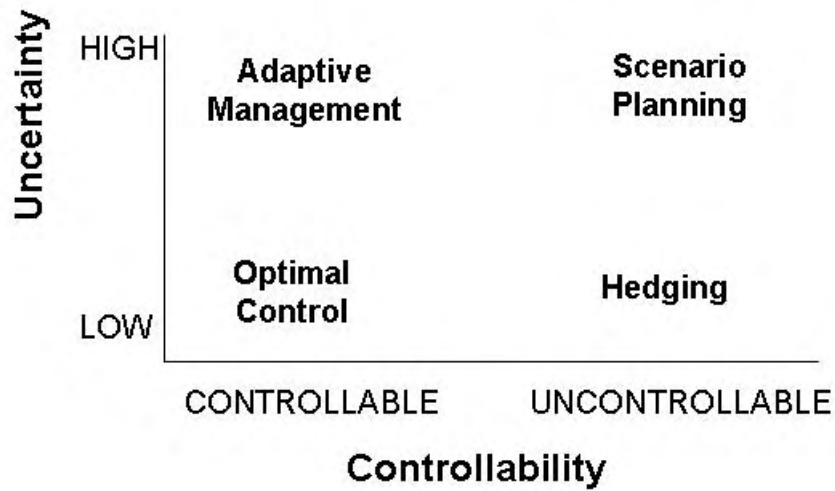
<sup>32</sup> National Park Service, Harpers Ferry Center, 2007: Harpers Ferry Center: NPS maps. National Park Service, <http://home.nps.gov/applications/hafe/hfc/carto-detail.cfm?Alpha=nps>, accessed on 4-10-2007.

- 1 **Figure 4.7.** Kemp's Ridley hatchlings heading for the water at a hatchling release. Photo
- 2 courtesy National Park Service, Padre Island National Seashore.



3

- 1 **Figure 4.8.** Scenario planning is appropriate for systems in which there is a lot of
- 2 uncertainty that is not controllable. In other cases optimal control, hedging, or adaptive
- 3 management may be appropriate responses. Reprinted from Peterson, Cumming, and
- 4 Carpenter (2003).



- 5
- 6
- 7



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20

## **5 National Wildlife Refuges**

### **Authors**

#### **Lead Authors**

J. Michael Scott, U.S. Geological Survey and University of Idaho  
Brad Griffith, U.S. Geological Survey

#### **Contributing Authors**

Robert S. Adamcik, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Daniel M. Ashe, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Brian Czech, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Robert L. Fischman, Indiana University School of Law  
Patrick Gonzalez, The Nature Conservancy  
Joshua J. Lawler, University of Washington  
A. David McGuire, U.S. Geological Survey  
Anna Pidgorna, University of Idaho

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2	<b>5.1 Summary</b> .....	<b>5-3</b>
3	<b>5.2 Background and History</b> .....	<b>5-7</b>
4	5.2.1 Introduction .....	5-7
5	5.2.2 Mission, Establishing Authorities, and Goals.....	5-10
6	5.2.3 Origins of the NWRS .....	5-11
7	5.2.4 The 1997 NWRS Improvement Act.....	5-12
8	<b>5.3 Current Status of the NWRS</b> .....	<b>5-15</b>
9	5.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend .....	5-15
10	5.3.2 Challenges to the NWRS.....	5-17
11	5.3.3 Ecoregional Implications of Climate Change for the NWRS.....	5-26
12	<b>5.4 Adapting to Climate Change</b> .....	<b>5-33</b>
13	5.4.1 Adaptive Management as a Framework for Adaptation Actions.....	5-34
14	5.4.2 Adaptation Strategies within Refuge Borders .....	5-35
15	5.4.3 Adaptation Strategies Outside Refuge Borders .....	5-38
16	5.4.4 Steps for Determining Research and Management Actions .....	5-46
17	<b>5.5 Conclusions</b> .....	<b>5-55</b>
18	5.5.1 Take Away Messages.....	5-57
19	<b>5.6 References</b> .....	<b>5-61</b>
20	<b>5.7 Acknowledgements</b> .....	<b>5-78</b>
21	<b>5.8 Appendix: Actions to Assist Managers in Meeting the Challenges Posed by the Challenge of Climate Change</b> .....	<b>5-79</b>
22		
23	<b>5.9 Text Boxes</b> .....	<b>5-86</b>
24	<b>5.10 Case Study Summaries</b> .....	<b>5-88</b>
25	<b>5.11 Tables</b> .....	<b>5-90</b>
26	<b>5.12 Figures</b> .....	<b>5-91</b>
27		
28		
29		

## 1 **5.1 Summary**

2 The U.S. National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS) is the largest system of protected  
3 areas in the world. It encompasses more than 93 million acres (37.6 M ha) and is  
4 composed of 584 refuges plus 37 wetland management districts that include waterfowl  
5 production areas in 193 counties. Compared with other federal conservation estates, the  
6 units are relatively small, typically embedded in a matrix of developed lands, and situated  
7 at low elevations on productive soils. The key mandate of the NWRS Improvement Act  
8 of 1997 is to maintain the integrity, diversity, and health of trust species and populations  
9 of wildlife, fish and plants. This species mandate provides the system with substantial  
10 legal latitude to respond to conservation challenges. The system has emerged and evolved  
11 in response to crises that have included market hunting at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup>  
12 century, dust-bowl drought during the 1930s, and recognition of dramatic reductions in  
13 biodiversity in the 1970s. Ongoing conservation challenges include habitat conversion  
14 and fragmentation, invasive species, pollution, and competition for water. The most  
15 recent pervasive and complex conservation challenge is climate change.

16  
17 *Climate change will have NWRS-wide effects on species and their habitats.* Mean global  
18 temperature has risen rapidly during the past 50 years and is projected to continue  
19 increasing throughout the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Changes in precipitation, diurnal temperature  
20 extremes, and cloudiness—as well as sea level rise—are some of the factors that are  
21 projected to accompany the warming. A coherent pattern of poleward and upward  
22 (elevation) shifts in species distributions, advances in phenology of plants, and changes in  
23 the timing of arrival of migrants on seasonal ranges in concert with recent climate  
24 warming has been well documented and is expected to have NWRS-wide effects.

25  
26 *The effects of most concern are those that may occur on NWRS trust species that have*  
27 *limited dispersal abilities.* Climate related changes in the distribution and timing of  
28 resource availability may cause species to become decoupled from their resource  
29 requirements. For example, the projected drying of the Prairie Pothole Region—the  
30 single most important duck production area in North America—will significantly affect  
31 the NWRS’s ability to maintain migratory species in general and waterfowl in particular.  
32 Maintaining endangered aquatic species, such as the Devil’s Hole pupfish, which occurs  
33 naturally in a single cave in Ash Meadows NWR in Nevada, will present even more  
34 challenges because, unlike waterfowl that can shift their breeding range northward, most  
35 threatened and endangered species have limited dispersal abilities and opportunities.  
36 Projected sea level rise has substantial negative implications for 161 coastal refuges,  
37 particularly those surrounded by human developments or steep topography. Projected  
38 climate-related changes in plant communities are likely to alter habitat value for trust  
39 species on most refuges; *e.g.*, grasslands and shrublands may become forested. Habitats  
40 for trust species at the southern limits of ecoregions and in the Arctic, as well as rare  
41 habitats of threatened or endangered species, are most likely to show climate-related  
42 changes.

43

1 *Managing the “typical” challenges to the NWRS requires accounting for the interaction*  
2 *of climate change with other stressors in the midst of substantial uncertainties about how*  
3 *stressors will interact and systems will respond. Many NWRS trust species are migratory.*  
4 *Breeding, staging, and wintering habitats are typically dispersed throughout the system*  
5 *and on non-NWRS lands. The superimposition of spatially and temporally variable*  
6 *warming on spatially separated life history events will add substantial complexity to*  
7 *understanding and responding to ongoing conservation challenges. Climate change will*  
8 *act synergistically with other system stressors, and is likely to impose complex non-linear*  
9 *system responses to the “typical” challenges. It will be extremely difficult to clearly*  
10 *understand the influence of non-climate stressors on habitats, populations, and*  
11 *management actions without accounting for the effects of climate change. Local- to*  
12 *national-scale managers will face the dilemma of managing dynamic systems without*  
13 *fully understanding what, where, or when the climate related changes will occur, or how*  
14 *they might best be addressed. The actions suggested below will increase the chances of*  
15 *effectively resolving this dilemma.*

16  
17 *Actions taken now may help avoid irreversible losses. Lost opportunities cannot be*  
18 *regained. The system is changing, and delaying action could result in irreversible losses*  
19 *to the integrity, diversity, and health of the NWRS. Heterogeneity in climate change*  
20 *effects will require diverse and innovative adaptations, increased emphasis on rigorous*  
21 *modeling projections at multiple scales, effective application of the experimental*  
22 *concepts fundamental to adaptive management, and enhanced collaboration with public*  
23 *and private stakeholders. However, expert opinion will need to be used in the initial*  
24 *response stages, and mistakes will be made while adaptation capabilities are being*  
25 *developed. Waiting for improved climate effect projections before acting would be*  
26 *inappropriate in view of the pervasive and immediate nature of the problem; developing a*  
27 *culture that rewards risk taking would enhance the speed of adaptation to climate change*  
28 *challenges. Expected decadal persistence of climate change effects suggests that a*  
29 *revision of contemporary planning and budgeting horizons will be necessary.*

30  
31 *Knowing which species will be affected positively and negatively will allow NWRS*  
32 *managers to take advantage of positive outcomes and prepare for the management*  
33 *challenges of negative outcomes. If the near-term historical record is an accurate*  
34 *indicator, there will be substantial spatial heterogeneity in temperature and precipitation*  
35 *trends across the NWRS accompanying the system-wide increase in mean temperatures.*  
36 *As a result of this heterogeneity in regional- and local-scale climate change effects, some*  
37 *species will be “winners” and others will be “losers.” Opportunities to capitalize on*  
38 *positive effects of climate change should be exploited. However, the scientific literature*  
39 *primarily documents negative effects. These negative effects of climate change present*  
40 *the NWRS with the most difficult management challenges. Once lost, conservation*  
41 *opportunities are extremely difficult to regain.*

42  
43 *Responding to ecological effects may also be improved by projecting the possible futures*  
44 *of trust species, their NWRS habitats, and management options at all relevant*  
45 *management scales using the most rigorous scientific modeling tools, climate change*  
46 *scenarios, and suite of expected non-climate stressors. This activity would have several*

1 components: (1) clearly identifying conservation targets for the coming decades, and  
2 implementing effective and efficient monitoring programs to detect climate-related  
3 system changes; (2) identifying the species and systems most vulnerable to climate  
4 change, in the context of other system stressors, at the refuge, regional, and national  
5 scales, and prioritizing planning, budgeting, and management accordingly; (3) evaluating  
6 scale-specific (refuge > region > NWRS) suites of management and policy responses to  
7 alternative climate change scenarios; (4) developing objective criteria for choosing  
8 among these responses; and (5) proactively developing, comparing, executing, and  
9 evaluating multi-scale plans to mitigate vulnerability to climate change using adaptive  
10 management principles. Climate change can serve as a catalyst to develop an increased  
11 understanding of the ecological mechanisms affecting trust species and to improve the  
12 rigor of adaptive management programs.

13  
14 *A key requirement for adaptation to climate change is recognition that management for*  
15 *static conservation targets is impractical.* The historical concept of refuges as fixed  
16 islands of safe haven for species is no longer viable. Except in special situations, such as  
17 the sole remaining habitat for a threatened or endangered species, management for the  
18 status quo will not be appropriate to the challenge of climate change. Managers and  
19 researchers will need to define and focus on a dynamic system “state” that provides  
20 representative, redundant, and resilient populations of trust species that fulfill the key  
21 legal mandate to maintain the integrity, diversity, and health of NWRS conservation  
22 targets. Managing for a dynamic system “state” that provides representative, redundant,  
23 and resilient populations of trust species provides the best opportunity to fulfill NWRS  
24 legal mandates in an environment that allows for evolutionary response to the effects of  
25 climate change and other selective forces.

26  
27 *The effective conservation footprint of the NWRS may be increased by using all available*  
28 *tools and partnerships.* Maintaining and enhancing connectivity of system units is critical  
29 and may be accomplished by increasing the effective conservation footprint of NWRS.  
30 Approaches for increasing this footprint include new institutional partnerships;  
31 management responses that transcend traditional political, cultural, and ecological  
32 boundaries; greater emphasis on trans-refuge and trans-agency management and research;  
33 strong political leadership; and re-energized collaborations between the NWRS and its  
34 research partners at multiple spatial scales. Increasing the conservation footprint may  
35 bring about greater resilience of the NWRS to the challenge of climate change.

36  
37 *Actions that will enable more effective responses to climate change include initiating*  
38 *multi-scale communication, education, and training programs, and strengthening*  
39 *collaborations between USFWS and all conservation management and research partners.*  
40 Effectively responding to climate-related complexity will be aided by substantial  
41 education and training, along with multi-scale, coordinated, and focused efforts by all  
42 NWRS partners (management, research, and other public and private land managers).  
43 Stronger management-research collaborations will help identify management- and policy-  
44 relevant climate-related ecological changes and responses, will keep decision makers  
45 informed, and will thus increase the likelihood that an effective response to climate  
46 change will be made. All levels and jurisdictions of management and research need to be

1 integrated and empowered to meet the challenge of climate change. Climate change  
2 ignores administrative boundaries. Therefore it will be important to explore means of  
3 facilitating collaboration and communication among government and private land  
4 managers, such as an inter-agency climate information center that serves as a clearing  
5 house for documented climate change effects and available management tools.

6  
7 *A clearly elucidated vision of the desired state of the NWRS on the 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary of*  
8 *the system in 2053 would enhance the development of a framework for adaptation.* This  
9 vision needs to explicitly incorporate the expected challenges of climate change and  
10 define the management philosophy necessary to meet this challenge. The complexity of  
11 expected climate effects and necessary management responses offers an opportunity to  
12 re-energize a focus on the interconnection of spatially separated units of the NWRS and  
13 to foster an integrated refuge-to-NWRS vision for managing climate change effects on  
14 system trust species.

15  
16 *Because climate change is a global phenomenon with national, regional, and local*  
17 *effects, it may be the largest challenge faced by the NWRS.* Climate change adds a known  
18 forcing trend in temperature to all other stressors, and likely creates complex non-linear  
19 challenges that will be exceptionally difficult to understand and mitigate. New tools, new  
20 partnerships, and new ways of thinking will be required to maintain the integrity,  
21 diversity, and health of the refuges in the face of this complexity. The historic vision of  
22 refuges as fixed islands of safe haven for species met existing needs at a time when the  
23 population of the United States was less than half its current size and construction of the  
24 first interstate highway was a decade away. At that time, climates and habitats were  
25 perceived to be in dynamic equilibrium, and species were able to move freely among  
26 refuges. Today, the landscape is highly fragmented, much of the wildlife habitat present  
27 in the 1930s and 1940s has been lost, and climate-related trends in ecological systems are  
28 well documented. While Congress' aspiration for the refuges to serve as a national  
29 network for the support of biological diversity remains sound, the challenge now is to  
30 make the refuge network more resilient and adaptive to a changing environment.

31  
32  
33

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43

## **5.2 Background and History**

### **5.2.1 Introduction**

The National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS)—the largest system of protected areas in the world established primarily to manage and protect wildlife—was born in and has evolved in crises. The first crisis was the threat to egrets, herons, and other colonial nesting waterbirds caused by hunting for feathers and plumes for the millinery trade; the second was the loss of wildlife habitat, accelerated by the Great Depression, drought, and agricultural practices in the dust bowl era. The third—still ongoing—is species extinction triggered by a growing human population and its demand on natural resources. The first two crises were largely regional in their influence and effect. Although the third crisis—extinction—is international, the response to it is local. The influence of the fourth crisis—climate change—is global and covers the full breadth and depth of the NWRS. It will require national to local responses.

In response to the first challenge, President Theodore Roosevelt established America’s first national wildlife refuge (NWR), Pelican Island, Florida. Nearly three decades later, in response to depression-era challenges, Ira Gabrielson and Ding Darling had a vision for a system of refuges that would ensure the survival of recreationally viable populations of waterfowl for future generations of Americans. Whereas the first response resulted in an *ad hoc* collection of refuges, the second was the birth of the NWRS as the vision of Gabrielson and Darling, carried forward by three generations of wildlife biologists and managers. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), which manages the NWRS, has responded to the current extinction crisis in a number of ways, including the establishment and management of 61 refuges to recover threatened and endangered species. That response has been insufficient to meet the challenge of biodiversity loss, which will only progress as it is exacerbated by climate change.

Now, more than a century after Theodore Roosevelt established Pelican Island NWR, 584 refuges and nearly 30,000 waterfowl production areas encompassing 93 million acres and spanning habitats as diverse as tundra, tropical rainforests, and coral reefs, dot the American landscape (Figs. 5.1 and 5.2). However, rapidly increasing mean global temperature during the past 100 years, which is predicted to continue throughout the coming century (*i.e.*, climate change, IPCC, 2007a), challenges not only the existence of species and ecosystems on individual refuges, but also across the entire U.S. landscape—and thus the diversity, integrity, and health of the NWRS itself. If the historical record is an indicator (Figs. 5.3a; 5.3b), there will be substantial heterogeneity in future trends for temperature and precipitation across the NWRS. These refuges—conservation lands—support many activities, especially wildlife-dependent outdoor recreation, which attracts more than 35 million visitors a year (Caudill and Henderson, 2003), and other economic activities where compatible with refuge purposes.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

**Figure 5.1.** Structure of the NWRS. Adapted from Fischman (2003), Refuge Administration Act,<sup>1</sup> and FWS Regulations.<sup>2</sup>

**Figure 5.2.** The National Wildlife Refuge System. Adapted from Pidgorna (2007).

**Figure 5.3.** Observed annual trends in a) temperature and b) precipitation, 1901-2006, for the coterminous United States and Alaska. Data and mapping courtesy of NOAA’s National Climate Data Center.

Direct uses of the NWRS, such as wildlife-dependent outdoor recreation and farming, are the most readily valued in monetary terms. Ecological functions of the refuges that provide services to humans include water filtration in wetlands and aquifers, buffering from hurricanes by coastal wetlands, and maintenance of pollinator species that pollinate agricultural plants off the NWRS. A recent estimate of the value of ecosystem services provided by the NWRS was \$26.9 billion/year.<sup>3</sup>

Refuges were established as fixed protected areas, conservation fortresses, set aside to conserve fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their habitats. The NWRS design principles assumed an environment that varied but did not shift. Populations and ecosystems were thought to be in dynamic equilibrium, where species could move freely among the refuges and challenges could be dealt with through local management actions. Much has changed since then. The population of the United States in 1903 was 76 million, and gross domestic product (GDP) was \$300 billion<sup>4</sup> with no interstate highways. On the 100<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Pelican Island NWR, America’s population reached 290 million, its GDP increased by a factor of 36, and more than 46,000 miles of interstate highways both linked and fragmented America’s landscape. The assumption of plant and animal populations moving freely among refuges could no longer be made. Yet with climate change, the need for such free movement is greater. It is now apparent that species’ ranges are dynamic, varying in space and time, but showing a globally coherent response to climate change (Parmesan and Yohe, 2003). Climate change may exacerbate the misfits between the existing NWRS and ecological realities. Coastal refuges are likely to become inundated, migrations supported by refuges may become asynchronous with the changing seasons, non-native invasive species will likely extend their ranges into new

---

<sup>1</sup> P. L. No. 89-669, 16 U.S.C. '668dd  
<sup>2</sup> FWS Regulations – CFR 50  
<sup>3</sup> **Ingraham**, M.W., and S.G. Foster, in press: The indirect use value of ecosystem services provided by the U.S. National Wildlife Refuge System. *Ecological Economics*.  
<sup>4</sup> In 1992 dollars.



1 refuges, and vegetation types may shift to plant communities that are inappropriate for  
2 refuge trust species.

3  
4 Today, a system established to respond to local challenges is faced with a global  
5 challenge, but also—as with the first three crises—with an opportunity. The NWRS is  
6 only beginning to consider how to address projected climate change effects through  
7 management activities; however, using our new understanding of how nature works and  
8 the administrative mandates of the NWRS Improvement Act of 1997, the USFWS is  
9 better equipped to take on this new crisis. Success will demand new tools, new ways of  
10 thinking, new institutions, new conservation partnerships, and renewed commitment for  
11 maintaining the biological integrity, diversity, and health of America’s wildlife resources  
12 on the world’s largest system of dedicated nature reserves. No longer can refuges be  
13 managed as independent conservation units. Decisions require placing individual refuges  
14 in the context of the NWRS. The response must be system-wide as well as local to match  
15 the scale and effects of the challenge. Such a response is unprecedented in the history of  
16 conservation biology.

17  
18 The ability of individual refuges and the entire NWRS to respond to the challenge of  
19 climate change is a function of the system’s distribution, unit size, and ecological context.  
20 Familiarity with the legal, ecological, geographical and political nature of the NWRS is  
21 necessary for understanding both challenges and opportunities to adapting to climate  
22 change on the NWRS. It is equally important to understand that existing legal and policy  
23 guidelines direct refuge managers to manage for a set of predetermined conservation  
24 targets (trust species). Meeting legal and policy guidelines for maintaining biological  
25 integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the NWRS will require careful  
26 evaluation of the continuing role of individual refuges in the face of climate change.

27  
28 With climate change there is a renewed realization that species’ distributions are  
29 dynamic. This requires the NWRS to manage for change in the face of uncertainty.  
30 Climate change effects will be enduring, but existing models and projections typically  
31 span decades to a century. Unless otherwise specified, we focus on the decadal time  
32 frame for adaptation measures described in this chapter. The scientific literature is  
33 dominated by reports of negative effects of climate change, and this dominance is  
34 reflected in our treatment of effects on refuges because the negative effects of climate  
35 change will present the greatest challenges to managers and policy makers.

36  
37 In the pages that follow we focus on regional and national scales, and: (1) describe the  
38 institutional capacity of the NWRS to respond to the challenge of climate change; (2)  
39 document challenges to integrity, diversity, and health of species, refuges, and the  
40 NWRS; (3) describe projected effects of climate change on components of the NWRS;  
41 (4) identify research themes and priorities, most vulnerable species and regions, and  
42 important needs; and (5) suggest new partnerships for conservation success.

1 **5.2.2 Mission, Establishing Authorities, and Goals**

2 The NWRS is managed by the USFWS (Fig. 5.4) under two sets of “purposes”  
3 (Fischman, 2003). The first is the generic (or System) purpose, technically called the  
4 “mission,” defined in the NWRS Improvement Act of 1997: “The mission of the NWRS  
5 is to administer a national network of lands and waters for the conservation, management,  
6 and where appropriate, restoration of the fish, wildlife, and plant resources and their  
7 habitats within the United States for the benefit of present and future generations of  
8 Americans.” The Act goes on to define the two most flexible terms of the mission,  
9 conservation and management, as a means “to sustain and, where appropriate, restore and  
10 enhance, healthy populations” of animals and plants using methods associated with  
11 “modern scientific resource programs.”<sup>5</sup> In 2006, the USFWS interpreted this first  
12 congressional purpose in a policy (601 FW1),<sup>6</sup> which lists five goals that derive from the  
13 mission and other objectives stated in statute (see Box 5.1). The USFWS policy gives top  
14 priority to the first three goals listed in Box 5.1, which focus most directly on the  
15 ecological concerns that impel adaptation to climate change.

16  
17  
18  
19  
20 **Figure 5.4.** Organizational chart.<sup>7</sup>

21  
22 The second set of purposes is individual purposes specific to individual refuges or  
23 specific tracts or units within a refuge that may have been acquired under different  
24 authorities (Fig. 5.1). These are the authorities under which the refuge was originally  
25 created, as well as possibly additional ones under which individual later acquisitions may  
26 have been made. While it is difficult to conceive of a conflict between the NWRS  
27 mission and individual refuge purposes, in such an event the latter, or more specific,  
28 refuge purpose takes precedence. Furthermore, where designated wilderness (or some  
29 other overlay system, such as a segment of a wild and scenic river) occurs within a refuge  
30 boundary, the purposes of the wilderness (or any other applicable overlay statute) are  
31 additional purposes of that portion of the refuge.

32  
33 Establishing authorities for a specific refuge may derive from one of three categories:  
34 presidential, congressional, and administrative (Fischman, 2003). Refuges established by  
35 presidential proclamation have very specific purposes, such as that for the first refuge,  
36 Pelican Island (a “preserve and breeding ground for native birds”). Congressional  
37 authorities stem from one or more of 15 different statutes providing generally for new  
38 refuges, such as the Migratory Bird Conservation Act (“for use as an inviolate sanctuary  
39 or for any other management purpose for migratory birds”).<sup>8</sup> Or, they may be specific to  
40 a single refuge, such as the Upper Mississippi River NWR (as a refuge for birds, game,

---

<sup>5</sup> 16 USC 668dd P. L. 105–57

<sup>6</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 1

<sup>7</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: America's national wildlife refuge system. FWS Website, <http://www.fws.gov/refuges>, accessed on 7-18-2007.

<sup>8</sup> 16 U.S.C. 715-715r; 45 Stat. 1222

1 fur-bearing animals, fish, other aquatic animal life, wildflowers and aquatic plants).<sup>9</sup> The  
2 third source of refuge purposes are administrative documents such as public land orders,  
3 donation documents, and administrative memoranda (Fischman, 2003). These, however,  
4 are less clearly understood and documented, and are not addressed further in this  
5 document.

### 6 **5.2.3 Origins of the NWRS**

7 The first significant legislative innovation to systematically assemble protected areas was  
8 the Migratory Bird Conservation Act of 1929,<sup>10</sup> which authorized acquisition of lands to  
9 serve as “inviolable sanctuaries” for migratory birds (Fig. 5.5). But funds to purchase  
10 refuges were scarce. In the early 1930s, waterfowl populations declined precipitously.  
11 Congress responded with the Migratory Bird Hunting Stamp Act of 1934.<sup>11</sup> It created a  
12 dedicated fund for acquiring waterfowl conservation refuges from the sales of federal  
13 stamps that all waterfowl hunters would be required to affix to their state hunting licenses.  
14 This funding mechanism remains the major source of money for purchasing expansions to  
15 the NWRS. A quick glance at a map of today’s NWRS (Fig. 5.2) confirms the legacy of the  
16 research findings and funding mechanism of the 1930s: refuges are concentrated in four  
17 corridors. The geometry of the NWRS conservation shifted from the enclave points on the  
18 map to the flyway lines across the country (Gabrielson, 1943; Fischman, 2005; Pidgorna,  
19 2007).

20  
21  
22  
23 **Figure 5.5.** Timeline of milestone events of the NWRS.<sup>12</sup>

24  
25 After the push for protecting habitat of migratory waterfowl, the next impetus for NWRS  
26 growth came in the 1960s as Congress recognized that a larger variety of species other than  
27 just birds, big game, and fish needed protection from extinction. The Endangered Species  
28 Preservation Act of 1966 sought to protect species, regardless of their popularity or evident  
29 value, principally through habitat acquisition and reservation. In doing so, the law provided  
30 the first statutory charter for the NWRS as a whole. Indeed, the part of the 1966 law  
31 dealing with the refuges is often called the Refuge Administration Act.<sup>13</sup>

32  
33 The 1966 statute consolidated the conservation land holdings of the USFWS: it was the  
34 first statute to refer to this hodgepodge as the “NWRS” and it prohibited all uses not  
35 compatible with the purpose of the refuge. The compatibility criterion, established by  
36 statute in 1966, but practiced by the USFWS for decades before that, would become a  
37 byword of international sustainable development in the 1980s. In 1973 the Endangered  
38 Species Act<sup>14</sup> replaced the portion of the 1966 law dealing with imperiled species, and

---

<sup>9</sup> 16 USC § 721

<sup>10</sup> 16 U.S.C. 715-715r; 45 Stat. 1222

<sup>11</sup> 16 U.S.C. § 718-718h

<sup>12</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: History of the national wildlife refuge system. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://www.fws.gov/refuges/history/index.html>, accessed on 7-10-2007.

<sup>13</sup> P. L. No. 89-669, 16 U.S.C. § 668dd

<sup>14</sup> P. L. 93-205, 16 U.S.C. § 1531-1544, 87 Stat. 884

1 succeeded it as an important source of refuge establishment authority. The ESA also  
2 provides a broad mandate for the Interior Department to review the NWRS and other  
3 programs and use them in furtherance of imperiled species recovery.  
4

5 In 1980 Congress enacted the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act. This added  
6 over 54 million acres to the NWRS.

#### 7 **5.2.4 The 1997 NWRS Improvement Act**

8 The NWRS Improvement Act (NWRISIA) of 1997<sup>15</sup> marked the first comprehensive  
9 overhaul of the statutory charter for the NWRS since 1966. It is also the only significant  
10 public land “organic legislation” since the 1970s (Fischman, 2003). The term “organic  
11 legislation” describes a fundamental piece of legislation that either signifies the  
12 organization of an agency and/or provides a charter for a network of public lands. The  
13 key elements of the NWRISIA are described below.  
14

15 The NWRISIA sets a goal of conservation, defined in ecological terms (*e.g.*, sustaining,  
16 restoring, and enhancing populations). The 1997 statute envisions the NWRS as a  
17 national network of lands and waters to sustain plants and animals. This realigns the  
18 geometry of refuge conservation from linear flyways to a more complex web of  
19 relationships. The NWRISIA requires each refuge to achieve the dual system-wide and  
20 individual refuge purposes, with the individual establishment purpose receiving priority  
21 in the event of a conflict with the NWRS mission.

##### 22 **5.2.4.1 Designated Uses**

23 The NWRISIA constructs a dominant use regime, where most activities must either  
24 contribute to the NWRS goal or at least avoid impairing it. The primary goals that  
25 dominate the NWRS are individual refuge purposes and the conservation mission. The  
26 next level of the hierarchy are the “priority public uses” of wildlife-dependent recreation,  
27 which the statute defines as “hunting, fishing, wildlife observation, and photography, or  
28 environmental education and interpretation.”<sup>16</sup> These uses may be permitted where they  
29 are compatible with primary goals. The statute affirmatively encourages the USFWS to  
30 promote priority public uses on refuges.

##### 31 **5.2.4.2 Comprehensive Conservation Plans (CCPs)**

32 The NWRISIA requires comprehensive conservation plans (“CCP”) for each refuge unit  
33 (usually a single refuge or cluster of them). The CCPs zone refuges into various areas  
34 suitable for different purposes and set out desired future conditions. The NWRISIA  
35 requires the USFWS to prepare a CCP for each non-Alaskan unit within 15 years and to  
36 update each plan every 15 years, or sooner if conditions change significantly. Planning  
37 focuses on habitat management and visitor services. The planning policy models its  
38 procedure on adaptive management.<sup>17</sup> Once approved, the CCP becomes a source of

---

<sup>15</sup> P.L. 105-57, 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>16</sup> P.L. 105-57, 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>17</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 602

1 management requirements that bind the USFWS, though judicial enforcement may not be  
2 available.<sup>18</sup>

3  
4 The majority of refuges are still in the process of completing their CCPs. In a review of  
5 100 completed refuge CCPs available online as of February 1, 2007, only 27 CCPs  
6 included terms such as “climate change,” “climate variability,” “global change,” or  
7 “global warming.” None of these CCPs have identified explicit adaptation management  
8 strategies that are currently being implemented. This suggests that the perception of  
9 climate variability and change as a challenge is just emerging in the refuge management  
10 community. Much of the information needed to implement an effective response to  
11 climate change is unavailable to refuge managers. Furthermore, the system-wide nature  
12 of the climate change challenge will require system-wide responses. The magnitude of  
13 the challenge posed by climate change is unprecedented in scale and intensity, and the  
14 challenges exceed the capabilities of individual refuges. National coordination and  
15 guidance are needed. The CCPs provide a vehicle for engaging refuges in planning for  
16 response to climate change within the context of the NWRS.

#### 17 **5.2.4.3 Cross-Jurisdictional Cooperation**

18 Like all of the modern public land organic laws, the NWRSIA calls for coordination with  
19 states, each of which has a wildlife protection program. This partnership with states is, of  
20 course, limited by federal preemption of state law that conflicts with USFWS  
21 management control on refuges. For instance, a state may not impose its own  
22 management programs or property law restrictions on the NWRS under circumstances  
23 where they would frustrate decisions made by the USFWS or Congress.<sup>19</sup> USFWS policy  
24 emphasizes state participation in most refuge decision-making, especially for  
25 comprehensive conservation planning and for determination of appropriate uses.

#### 26 **5.2.4.4 Substantive Management Criteria**

27 The NWRSIA imposed many substantive management criteria, some of which are  
28 unprecedented in public land law. First, the Act expanded the compatibility criterion as a  
29 basic tool for determining what uses are allowed on refuges. The USFWS may not permit  
30 uses to occur where they are incompatible with either the conservation mission or  
31 individual refuge purposes. The Act defines “compatible use” to mean “a  
32 wildlife-dependent recreational use or any other use of a refuge that, in the sound  
33 professional judgment of the Director, will not materially interfere with or detract from  
34 the fulfillment of the mission of the NWRS or the purposes of the refuge.”<sup>20</sup> The USFWS  
35 compatibility policy promises to assure that “densities of endangered or otherwise rare  
36 species are sufficient for maintaining viable populations.”<sup>21</sup> The USFWS interprets its  
37 policy to prohibit uses that reasonably may be anticipated to fragment habitats.<sup>22</sup> Second,

---

<sup>18</sup> Norton v. Southern Utah Wilderness Alliance, 2004. 542 U.S. 55.

<sup>19</sup> North Dakota v. United States, 1983. 460 U.S. 300. and State of Wyoming v. United States, 2002. D.C. No. 98-CV-37-B, 61 F. Supp. 2d 1209-1225.

<sup>20</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>21</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 1 - FW 6.

<sup>22</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 603, 65 Federal Register 62486

1 the NWRSA requires that the USFWS maintain “biological integrity, diversity, and  
2 environmental health” on the refuges.<sup>23</sup> This element of the 1997 Act, discussed in more  
3 detail directly below, is the closest Congress has ever come to requiring a land system to  
4 ensure ecological sustainability, and creates a mandate unique to federal land systems in  
5 the United States.

#### 6 **5.2.4.5 New Emphasis on Biological Integrity, Diversity, and Environmental Health**

7 The Policy on Biological Integrity, Diversity, and Environmental Health<sup>24</sup> presents the  
8 process by which the NWRS fulfills the NWRSA mandate to “...ensure that the  
9 biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the System are maintained...”  
10 The 2001 USFWS policy correspondingly focuses on the three distinct yet largely  
11 overlapping concepts of biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health. The  
12 core idea of the policy is maintaining composition and function of ecosystems (Fischman,  
13 2004). Though climate change may make that impossible within the boundary of some  
14 refuges, it remains an appropriate guiding principle for the system as a whole. The  
15 policy’s guidance on the biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health mandate  
16 is the single most important legal foundation for leadership in shifting NWRS  
17 management toward needed adaptations. There are other path-breaking criteria especially  
18 relevant to adaptation, but the USFWS has yet to implement them through new policies  
19 or other major initiatives. However, as climate change increases in importance to the  
20 public and refuge managers, the USFWS will find itself increasingly challenged by its  
21 1997 duty to: (1) acquire water rights needed for refuge purposes; (2) engage in  
22 biological monitoring; and (3) implement its stewardship responsibility.<sup>25</sup> While the 2001  
23 policy provides a basis for ecological sustainability, climate change presents new  
24 challenges at unprecedented scales for maintaining biological integrity, diversity, and  
25 environmental health of refuges and the refuge system. Explicit performance goals and  
26 objectives tied to biological integrity, diversity and environmental health of refuges and  
27 the services conservation targets will be needed to assess the degree and effectiveness of  
28 NWRS response to the challenges of climate change.

29  
30 Rather than compare refuge conditions with existing reference sites, the USFWS policy  
31 encourages managers to use “historic conditions” (for integrity and health, but not  
32 diversity) as a benchmark for success. “Historic conditions” are those present before  
33 significant European intervention. This policy assumes a range of variation that is  
34 constant. That assumption is not consistent with projected environmental changes that  
35 may result from climate change. Rather, historical benchmarks and their variability may  
36 provide long-term perspective for developing strategies for the management of self-  
37 sustaining native populations and ecosystems in the face of change and uncertainty.

38  
39 With climate change, the future species composition of the community may be quite  
40 different from that of the time when the refuge was established. However, the opportunity  
41 to manage biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of refuges and the

---

<sup>23</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>24</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 3

<sup>25</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

1 NWRS, regardless of changes in species composition, remains. The policy on biological  
2 integrity, diversity, and environmental health does not insist on a return to conditions no  
3 longer climatically appropriate. Instead, it views historical conditions as a frame of  
4 reference from which to understand the successional shifts that occur within ecological  
5 communities as a result of climate change. The policy also implies that we can use the  
6 knowledge and insights gained from such analysis to develop viable site-specific  
7 management targets for biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health despite  
8 the changing climate.

9  
10 In addition to addressing ecosystems or ecological communities, the policy also governs  
11 target fauna and flora, stressing that native populations in historic sex and age ratios are  
12 generally preferable over artificial ones, and that invasive or non-indigenous species or  
13 genotypes are discouraged. In general, except for species deemed beneficial (*e.g.*,  
14 pheasants), managers would consistently work to remove or suppress invasive and exotic  
15 species of both plants and animals. The policy directs special attention to target densities  
16 on refuges for rare species (viable densities) and migratory birds (higher-than-natural  
17 densities to accommodate loss of surrounding habitat). These targets, where extended to a  
18 broader spatial scale, provide good starting points for NWRS adaptation to climate  
19 change.

20  
21 Meeting the NWRS’s statutory and policy mandates will require an approach and  
22 philosophy that sees the “natural” condition of a given community as a moving target. A  
23 refuge manager must plan for the future in the context of past and present conditions and  
24 the likelihood of an altered community within the bounds of a new climate regime.

## 25 **5.3 Current Status of the NWRS**

### 26 **5.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend**

27 One of the primary goals of the NWRS—to conserve the diversity of fish, wildlife,  
28 plants, and their habitats—is reflected in the design of the NWRS, which is the largest  
29 system of protected areas in the world primarily designated to manage and protect  
30 wildlife (Curtin, 1993). The NWRS includes 584 refuges and more than 30,000  
31 waterfowl production areas<sup>26</sup> (Fig. 5.1) that encompass an area of over 93 million acres,  
32 distributed across the United States (Fischman, 2003; Scott *et al.*, 2004). The NWRS  
33 contains a diverse array of wildlife, with more than 220 species of mammals, 250 species  
34 of amphibians and reptiles, more than 700 species of birds, and 200 species of fish  
35 reported.

36  
37 Another important goal of the NWRS is to maintain its trust species, which include  
38 threatened and endangered species, marine mammals, anadromous and interjurisdictional  
39 fish, and migratory birds. Of these, the latter remain the NWRS’s largest beneficiary,  
40 with over 200 refuges established for the conservation of migratory birds (Gergely, Scott,  
41 and Goble, 2000). Shorebirds and waterfowl are better represented on refuges compared  
42 with landbirds and waterbirds (Pidgorna, 2007).

---

<sup>26</sup> Grouped into 37 wetland management districts.

1  
2 Twenty percent of refuges were established in the decade immediately following the  
3 enactment of the Migratory Bird Treaty Act (1930–1940). The NWRS captures the  
4 distribution of 43 waterfowl species in the continental United States at a variety of  
5 geographic, ecological, and temporal scales (Pidgorna, 2007).

6  
7 The fact that many refuges were established in areas important to migratory birds, and  
8 especially waterfowl, can account for the abundance of wetland habitat found in the  
9 NWRS today and for the fact that refuges are found at lower elevations and on more  
10 productive soils compared with other protected areas in the United States (Scott *et al.*,  
11 2004). Besides wetlands, other commonly occurring landcover types include shrublands  
12 and grasslands (Scott *et al.*, 2004).

13  
14 The NWRS is characterized by an uneven geographic and size distribution. Larger refuge  
15 units are found in Alaska, with Alaskan refuges contributing 82.5% of the total area in  
16 the NWRS and average sizes more than two orders of magnitude greater than the average  
17 size of refuges found in the lower 48 states. Nearly 20% of the refuges are less than 1,000  
18 acres in size, and effectively even smaller because more than half of the refuges in the  
19 system consist of two or more parcels. Median refuge area is 5,550 acres and the mean  
20 area is 20,186 acres (Scott *et al.*, 2004). In contrast, the median area of Alaskan refuges is  
21 2.7 million acres.

22  
23 Approximately one sixth of the nation’s threatened and endangered species are found on  
24 refuges. More than 50% of all listed mammals, birds, and reptiles are found on refuges  
25 (Davison *et al.*, 2006), while the percentage of listed invertebrates and plants is much  
26 lower. These, and the 10% of the threatened and endangered species for which refuges  
27 have been established, realize a conservation advantage over species not found on refuges  
28 (Blades, 2007). The NWRS plays an important role in the conservation of threatened and  
29 endangered species, providing core habitat, protection, and management. However, as  
30 most refuges are small, fragmented, and surrounded by anthropogenic habitats (Scott *et*  
31 *al.* 2004 and Pidgorna 2007), it may prove difficult for the NWRS to support and restore  
32 a diverse range of taxonomic groups and to maintain viable populations of some larger  
33 threatened and endangered species (Czech, 2005; Blades, 2007).

34  
35 The distribution of refuges in geographical and geophysical space has given Americans a  
36 network of protected areas that function differently from other protected areas in the  
37 United States. In a nutshell, most refuges, with the exception of those in Alaska, are small  
38 islands of habitat located in a predominantly and increasingly anthropogenic landscape.  
39 Refuges contain lower-elevation habitat types important to the survival of a large number  
40 of species that are not included in other protected areas. Their small size and close  
41 proximity to anthropogenic disturbance sites (such as roads and cities) makes refuges  
42 vulnerable to external challenges and highly susceptible to a wide array of stressors. The  
43 lands surrounding individual refuge units (matrix lands) in the lower 48 states and Hawaii  
44 also decrease the ability of species to move from refuge to refuge; the barriers are far  
45 greater for species that cannot fly than for those that can. The positive side is that their  
46 proximity to population centers provides them with an opportunity to serve as educational



1 centers for the public to learn more about the diversity of fish, wildlife, plants, and their  
2 habitats, as well as ecological processes and the effects of climate change. They also  
3 provide sites for researchers to develop new understanding of the ecology and  
4 management of conservation landscapes.

5  
6 However, the ability of individual refuges to meet the first three of the USFWS goals, as  
7 well as the biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health clause of the  
8 NWRSA, will depend upon the ability of refuge managers to increase habitat viability  
9 through restoration and through reduction of non-climate stressors. Other tools include  
10 integrating inholdings into refuge holdings, strategically increasing refuge habitat through  
11 CCPs, increased incentive programs, establishment of conservation easements with  
12 surrounding landowners, and, when desired by all parties, fee-title acquisitions of  
13 adjacent lands. These actions would in turn provide species with increased opportunities  
14 to adapt to a changing environment.

15  
16 At the level of the NWRS, the integration of the USFWS's five goals and the biological  
17 integrity, diversity, and environmental health of species, ecosystems, and plant and  
18 animal communities may be achieved through increased representation and redundancy  
19 of target species and populations on refuge lands through strategic growth of the NWRS.  
20 The need for any such strategic growth has to be carefully evaluated in the context of  
21 maintaining the biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the NWRS  
22 trust species today and the uncertain effects of climate change. A national plan should be  
23 developed to assess the projected shifts in biomes and develop optimal placement of  
24 refuge lands on a landscape that is likely to exist 100 or more years into the future.  
25 Waterfowl species provide exemplars of what might be achieved for other trust species.  
26 Robust populations of ducks and geese have been achieved through seven decades of  
27 strategic acquisitions and cooperative conservation (Pidgorna, 2007), and a vision of a  
28 NWRS that conserved recreationally viable populations of North American waterfowl—a  
29 vision that was shared with many others (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and Canadian  
30 Wildlife Service, 1986). However, the ability to meet the objectives of the USFWS's five  
31 goals and the mandate of the NWSRIA necessitates strategic growth of the effective  
32 conservation footprint of the NWRS to increase the biological integrity, diversity, and  
33 environmental health of threatened and endangered species and at-risk ecosystems and  
34 plant communities.

### 35 **5.3.2 Challenges to the NWRS**

#### 36 **5.3.2.1 2002 Survey of Challenges to NWRS**

37 In an effort to quantify challenges to the refuges, the NWRS surveyed all refuges and  
38 wetland management districts in 2002 with an extensive questionnaire. The result was a  
39 large database of challenges and management conflicts experienced by the NWRS. It  
40 contains 2,844 records, each representing a different challenge to a refuge or a conflict  
41 with its operations.

42  
43 The most common challenges to refuges that could be exacerbated by climate change are  
44 ranked by frequency of reporting in Table 5.1. Each record covers a specific challenge, so

1 a single refuge could have reported multiple records for the same category (*e.g.*, invasive  
2 species or wildlife disease), which are grouped for discussion purposes. The responses  
3 from the survey regarding challenges generally fall into four themes: off-refuge activities,  
4 on-refuge activities, flora and fauna imbalances, and uncontrollable natural events.

5  
6 Off-refuge activities such as mining, timber harvest, industrial manufacturing, urban  
7 development, and farming often produce products or altered ecological processes that  
8 influence numbers and health of refuge species. The off-refuge activities often result in a  
9 range of environmental damage that affects the refuge, including erosion; degraded air  
10 and water quality; contaminants; habitat fragmentation; competition for water; expansion  
11 of the wildland-urban interface that creates conflicts over burning and animal control;  
12 noise and light pollution; and fragmentation of airspace with communication towers,  
13 wind turbines, and power lines.

14  
15 Other activities that challenge refuges occur within refuge boundaries but are beyond  
16 USFWS jurisdiction. These activities include military activities on overlay refuges;  
17 development of mineral rights not owned by the USFWS; commercial boat traffic in  
18 navigable waters not controlled by USFWS; off-road vehicles; some recreational  
19 activities beyond USFWS jurisdiction; illegal activities such as poaching, trespassing,  
20 dumping, illegal immigration, and drug trafficking; and other concerns.

21  
22 Imbalances in flora and fauna on and around the refuge also challenge refuges and the  
23 NWRS. Such concerns take the form of invasive non-native species, disease vectors such  
24 as mosquitoes, or unnaturally high populations of larger animals, usually mammals. The  
25 latter group includes small predators that take waterfowl or endangered species, beaver  
26 and muskrat that damage impoundments, and white-tailed deer that reduce forest  
27 understory (Garrott, White, and White, 1993; Russell, Zippin, and Fowler, 2001).

28 Invasive plant species are far and away of the most concern, both within this category and  
29 within the NWRS overall (Table 5.1).

30  
31 Extreme events such as hurricanes, floods, earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions also  
32 challenge refuges. While far less common than other challenges, the ecological and  
33 economic damage wrought by such events can be significant. For example, hurricanes  
34 can affect large coastal areas and multiple refuges, and cause habitat change (*e.g.*, from  
35 forest blowdowns), saline intrusion into freshwater wetlands, and loss of coastal wetlands  
36 and barrier islands. Equipment and infrastructure damage and loss can be significant and  
37 costly to repair or replace. The increasing ecological isolation of refuges and the species  
38 that reside on them decreases the ability of refuge managers to respond to effects of  
39 climate change and other stressors. Tools and strategies used to respond to past stressors  
40 and challenges are many of the same tools that can be used to mitigate projected effects  
41 of global climate change.

#### 42 **5.3.2.2 Interactions of Climate Change with Other Stressors of Concern**

43 Over the last 100 years, average annual temperatures in the United States have risen  
44 0.8°C, with even greater increases in Alaska over the same period (2–4°C) (Houghton *et*  
45 *al.*, 2001). Global average surface temperatures are projected to rise an additional 1.1–

1 6.4°C by 2100 (IPCC, 2007b). Most areas in the United States are projected to experience  
2 greater-than-average warming, with exceptional warming projected for Alaska  
3 (Houghton *et al.*, 2001). Coastal areas have experienced sea level rise as global average  
4 sea level has risen by 10–25 cm over the last 100 years (Watson, Zinyowera, and Moss,  
5 1996). Global average sea level is projected to increase by 18–59 cm by 2100 (IPCC,  
6 2007b). Due to thermal expansion of the oceans, even if greenhouse gas emissions were  
7 stabilized at year-2000 levels, the committed sea level rise would still likely be 6–10 cm  
8 by 2100, and sea level would continue to rise for four more centuries (Meehl *et al.*,  
9 2005).

10  
11 Other effects of climate change include altered hydrological systems and processes,  
12 affecting the inland hydrology of streams, lakes, and wetlands (Frederick and Gleick,  
13 1999; Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002). Warmer temperatures will mean reduced  
14 snowpack and earlier spring melts (Barnett, Adam, and Lettenmaier, 2005; Milly, Dunne,  
15 and Vecchia, 2005), changes in flood magnitudes (Knox, 1993), and redistribution of  
16 lakes and wetlands across the landscape (Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002). Climate  
17 change is also likely to affect other physical factors, such as fire and storm intensity  
18 (Westerling *et al.*, 2006; IPCC, 2007b).

19  
20 Climate changes may have cascading effects on ecological systems (Walther *et al.*, 2002;  
21 Parmesan and Yohe, 2003; Root *et al.*, 2003; Parmesan, 2006). These include changes in  
22 species' phenologies, distributions, and physiologies.

23  
24 Climate change is likely to magnify the influences of other challenges—including habitat  
25 loss and fragmentation, changes in water quality and quantity, increased transportation  
26 corridors, etc.—on the NWRS. Climate change will also introduce new challenges or  
27 variations on existing ones, primarily by accelerating a convergence of issues (*e.g.*, water  
28 scarcity, non-native invasive species, off-refuge land-use change, and energy  
29 development), or creating such convergences where none existed before. Current and  
30 projected challenges have the potential to undermine the mission of the NWRS and the  
31 achievement of its goals.

32  
33 The following pages of this section summarize the main challenges to the NWRS that  
34 could be exacerbated by climate change (see also Section 5.8, the Appendix). There is,  
35 however, a great deal of uncertainty associated with these projections, making it possible  
36 to show the overall trend but not the specific effect on an individual refuge. For example,  
37 IPCC (2007a) projects future increases in wind speeds of tropical cyclones, but does not  
38 yet offer detailed spatial data on projected terrestrial surface wind patterns. Changes in  
39 wind patterns may affect long-distance migration of species dependent on tailwinds.

#### 40 41 **Invasive Non-Native Species**

42 Invasive non-native species are currently one of the most common challenges to the  
43 NWRS and could become even more serious with climate changes (Table 5.1) (Sutherst,  
44 2000). Since species are projected to experience range shifts as a result of climate change  
45 and naturally expand and contract their historic ranges, it is important to distinguish  
46 between non-native species and native species. There is distinction in state and federal

1 law between native and non-native species.<sup>27</sup> The text of this report reflects those  
2 differences. We consider non-native species to be those species that have been introduced  
3 to an area as a result of human intervention, whether accidental or purposeful. Native  
4 species moving into new areas as a result of climate-change-induced range expansions  
5 continue to be native. Both native and non-native species can be considered to be  
6 invasive. It is, however, the non-native invasive species that present the greatest  
7 challenge and are discussed here and elsewhere in this chapter.

8  
9 An increase in the number and spread of non-native invasive species could undermine the  
10 NWRS's goal of maintaining wildlife diversity and preserving rare ecosystems and plant  
11 communities. By replacing native organisms, non-native invasive species often alter the  
12 ecological structure of natural systems by modifying predator-prey, parasite, and  
13 competitive relationships of species. Shifting distribution of native species in response to  
14 climate change will further increase the rate of change in species' composition, structure,  
15 and function on refuges.

16  
17 Range shifts that result in range contractions and range expansions are the best-studied  
18 effects of climate change on invasive non-native species. Range expansions refer to the  
19 expansion of established invasive non-native species into previously unoccupied habitats.  
20 A rise in temperatures could allow invasive non-native species to expand their ranges into  
21 habitats that previously were inaccessible to them. For example, Westbrooks (2001)  
22 describes the expansion of the balsam wooly aphid (*Adelges piceae*) into stands of  
23 subalpine fir (*Abies amabilis*). Currently the aphid is restricted to areas of low and middle  
24 elevation because of its temperature requirements; however, an increase of 2.5°C would  
25 allow the aphid to expand its range to higher elevations where it would affect native  
26 subalpine fir. Species that are considered tropical today may also expand their ranges into  
27 more northern latitudes if the climate grows warmer. When temperatures become  
28 suitable, non-native invasive species could spread into new habitats and compete with  
29 stressed native species (Westbrooks, 2001).

30  
31 Although climate change might not benefit non-native invasive species over native  
32 species in all cases, it is likely that non-native invasive species will benefit from a  
33 transitional climate (Dukes and Mooney, 1999). Non-native invasive species are highly  
34 adaptable and spread quickly. Many such non-native invasive species may extirpate  
35 native plants or even lead to complete regime shifts within vegetative communities. All  
36 of these traits make non-native invasive species much more likely to survive projected  
37 climate change effects compared to many of the native species.

### 38 39 **Disease**

40 Climate change has the potential to affect the prevalence and intensity of both plant and  
41 animal diseases in several ways. First, changes in temperature and moisture may shift the  
42 distribution of disease vectors and of the pathogens themselves (Harvell et al., 2002;  
43 Logan, Regniere, and Powell, 2003; Pounds et al., 2006). For example, Hakalau Forest  
44 NWR, now largely free of avian malaria, harbors one of the few remaining population

---

<sup>27</sup> P.L. 101-646, 104 Stat. 4761; 16 U.S.C. 4701; and P.L. 104-332, 16 USC 4701.

1 centers of endangered Hawaiian forest birds. Climate change may eliminate this and  
2 other such refugia by changing conditions to favor avian malaria (LaPointe, Benning, and  
3 Atkinson, 2005). Second, climate-induced changes in hydrology can alter the spread and  
4 intensity of diseases in two key ways. First, in wetlands or other water bodies with  
5 reduced water levels and higher water temperatures, diseases may be able to spread much  
6 more quickly and effectively within a population. Increased temperatures have been  
7 demonstrated to speed pathogen and/or vector development (Rueda *et al.*, 1990). Second,  
8 increases in precipitation may result in increased connectivity among aquatic systems in  
9 some areas, potentially facilitating the spread of diseases among populations. Finally,  
10 climate change may also indirectly increase the prevalence and the magnitude of disease  
11 effects by affecting host susceptibility. Many organisms that are stressed due to changes  
12 in temperature or hydrology will be more susceptible to diseases. Corals are an excellent  
13 example of increased temperatures leading to increased disease susceptibility (Harvell *et*  
14 *al.*, 2001).

#### 15 **Urbanization and Increased Economic Pressure**

16 Urbanization has the potential to further isolate refuges by altering the surrounding  
17 matrix, increasing habitat loss and fragmentation, and introducing additional barriers to  
18 dispersal. Roads and human-built environments pose significant barriers to the movement  
19 of many species. Poor dispersers (*e.g.*, many amphibians, non-flying invertebrates, small  
20 mammals, and reptiles) and animals that avoid humans (*e.g.*, lynx) will be more isolated  
21 by increased urbanization than more mobile or more human-tolerant species. This  
22 increased isolation of wildlife populations on refuges will prevent many species from  
23 successfully shifting their distributions in response to climate change.  
24

25  
26 Urbanization has the potential to interact with climate change in two additional ways.  
27 First, increased urbanization creates more impervious surfaces, increasing runoff and  
28 potentially confounding the effects of climate-altered hydrological regimes. Second,  
29 urbanization has the potential to affect local climatic conditions by creating heat islands,  
30 further exacerbating the increases in temperature and increased evaporation.

31  
32 Refuges are highly susceptible to the effects of management activities on surrounding  
33 landscapes. More pressure will likely be put on the U.S. economy with rising energy  
34 demands, which will result in a push for increased oil and gas development in the western  
35 states. This will also increase habitat loss and fragmentation on lands surrounding refuges  
36 and could result in extraction activities within refuges themselves. Economic and social  
37 pressure for alternative energy sources may increase efforts to establish wind plants near  
38 refuges, or promote agricultural expansion or conversions to produce bio-fuels, including  
39 nearby biofuel production and transport facilities.

40  
41 Although habitat loss and fragmentation will likely have a negative effect on the  
42 NWRS's biodiversity conservation goals, it could provide additional recreational and  
43 educational opportunities for people who will become attracted to the NWRS as open  
44 space becomes scarce. This could increase the number of visitors to the NWRS, which  
45 would raise public visibility of the refuges. Management of visitors and their activities to  
46 minimize effect on refuges and refuge species will be a challenge.

1  
2 **Altered Hydrological Regimes**

3 Water is the lifeblood of the NWRS (Satchell, 2003) because much of the management of  
4 fish, migratory waterfowl, and other wildlife depends upon a reliable source of clean  
5 freshwater. Climate change is likely to result in significant changes to water resources at  
6 local, regional, and national scales, with varying effects on economies and ecosystems at  
7 all levels. The primary effects to water resources within the NWRS from climate change  
8 can be placed into two broad categories: changes in the amount of precipitation and  
9 changes in seasonality of surface water flows.

10  
11 While climate change models vary in projecting changes to precipitation to any given  
12 geographical area, at least some parts of the United States are projected to experience  
13 reduced precipitation (*e.g.*, Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia, 2005). Parts of the country where  
14 current water supplies are barely meeting demand—in particular, portions of the western  
15 United States—are especially vulnerable to any reduction in the amount, or change in  
16 timing, of precipitation. In 1995, central and southern California and western Washington  
17 experienced some of the largest water-withdrawal deficits in the United States (Roy *et*  
18 *al.*, 2005). Future projected increases in deficits are not just limited to the western United  
19 States, but are spread across much of the eastern part of the country as well (Roy *et al.*,  
20 2005). Less precipitation would mean less water available for ecosystem and wildlife  
21 management, even at refuges with senior water rights. Refuges possessing junior water  
22 rights would be particularly susceptible to losing use of water as demand exceeds supply.  
23

24 The other major consequence of climate change to water resources is a seasonal shift in  
25 the availability of water. Mountain snowpacks act as natural reservoirs, accumulating  
26 vast amounts of snow in the winter and releasing this stored precipitation in the spring as  
27 high flows in streams. Many wildlife life histories and agricultural economies are closely  
28 tied to this predictable high volume of water. Warmer temperatures would result in earlier  
29 snowmelt at higher elevations as well as more precipitation falling in the form of rain  
30 rather than snow in these areas. The result would be both high and low flows occurring  
31 earlier in the year, and an insufficient amount of water when it is needed. This effect is  
32 most likely to affect the western United States (Barnett, Adam, and Lettenmaier, 2005).  
33

34 Water quality is also likely to decline with climate change as contaminants become more  
35 concentrated in areas with reduced precipitation and lower stream flows. In addition,  
36 warmer surface water temperatures would result in lower dissolved oxygen  
37 concentrations and could jeopardize some aquatic species. In the far north, current  
38 thawing of permafrost has resulted in an increase in microbial activity within the active  
39 soil layer. This has reduced the amount of dissolved organic carbon reaching estuaries,  
40 lowering productivity (Striegl *et al.*, 2005).  
41

42 Climate change will offer a challenge for the NWRS to maintain adequate supplies of  
43 water to achieve wildlife management objectives. Although it is not currently possible to  
44 project precisely where the greatest effects to water resources will occur, refuges in areas  
45 where demand already exceeds supply—as well as those in areas highly dependent upon  
46 seasonal flows from snowmelt—appear to be especially vulnerable.

1  
2 Waterfowl occurring on refuges in areas such as the Prairie Pothole Region (PPR), for  
3 which warmer and drier conditions are projected (Poiani and Johnson, 1991; Sorenson *et*  
4 *al.*, 1998), may be expected to face more stressful conditions than those in areas that are  
5 projected to be warmer and wetter, such as the Northeast. The projected drying of the  
6 PPR—the single most important duck production area in North America—will  
7 significantly affect the NWRS’s ability to maintain migratory species in general and  
8 waterfowl in particular. Maintaining endangered aquatic species, such as the desert hole  
9 pupfish, which occurs naturally in a single cave in Ash Meadows NWR in Nevada, will  
10 present even more challenges because, unlike waterfowl that can shift their breeding  
11 range northward, most threatened and endangered species have limited dispersal abilities  
12 and opportunities.

#### 13 **Sea Level Rise**

14 The NWRS includes 161 coastal refuges. Approximately 1 million acres of coastal  
15 wetlands occur on refuges in the lower 48 states. Sea level rise is the result of several  
16 factors, including land subsidence, thermal expansion of the oceans, and ice melt (IPCC,  
17 2007a). The sea-level rise at any given location depends on the local rate of land  
18 subsidence or uplift relative to the other drivers of sea level rise. On a given refuge, the  
19 extent of coastal inundation resulting from sea level rise will be influenced by hydrology,  
20 geomorphology, vertical land movements, atmospheric pressure, and ocean currents  
21 (Small, Gornitz, and Cohen, 2000).  
22

23  
24 Historically, accretions of sediments and organic matter have allowed coastal wetlands to  
25 “migrate” to adjacent higher ground as sea levels have risen. However, wetland migration  
26 may not keep pace with accelerating rates of sea level rise because of upstream  
27 impoundments and bulkheaded boundaries. Also, in many cases topography or the  
28 structures and infrastructure of economically developed areas (essentially bulkheaded  
29 refuges) impede migration (Titus and Richman, 2001). In both scenarios, coastal  
30 wetlands will be lost, along with the habitat features that make them valuable to species  
31 the NWRS is intended to conserve, *e.g.*, waterfowl.  
32

33 Along the mid-Atlantic coast, the highest rate of wetland loss is in the middle of the  
34 Chesapeake Bay region of Maryland. One example is Blackwater NWR, part of the  
35 Chesapeake Marshlands NWR Complex. This refuge has been affected by sea level rise  
36 for the past 60 years. Models project that in 50 years, continued sea level rise in  
37 conjunction with climate change will completely inundate existing marshes (Fig. 5.6)  
38 (Larsen *et al.*, 2004b; see also U.S. Climate Change Science Program, 2007). Along the  
39 Gulf Coast, substantial wetland loss is also occurring. For example, in Louisiana, the  
40 combination of sea level rise, high rates of subsidence, economic growth, and hurricanes  
41 has contributed to an annual loss of nearly 25,000 acres of wetlands, even prior to  
42 Hurricane Katrina (2005) (Erwin, Sanders, and Prosser, 2004). Sea level rise challenges a  
43 lesser extent of NWRS wetlands along the Pacific coast because few refuges there have  
44 extensive coastal wetlands, in part due to steep topography. Conversely, a higher  
45 proportion of these wetlands have limited potential for migration for the same  
46 topographical reasons. Additionally, up-elevation movements of plant and animal species

1 among these refuges are prevented by presence of highways, industrial and urban areas,  
2 and other products of development. They are, in effect, “bulkheaded.” Alaskan refuge  
3 wetlands appear to be least at risk of sea level rise effects because of countervailing  
4 forces, most notably isostatic uplift (Larsen *et al.*, 2005), which has accelerated as a  
5 function of climate change and melting of glaciers (Larsen *et al.*, 2004a). In Alaska,  
6 permafrost thawing and resulting drainage of many of the lakes is a greater challenge to  
7 wetlands, both coastal and non-coastal. In Florida, Pelican Island NWR, the system’s first  
8 refuge, is among the 161 coastal refuges challenged by sea level rise.

9  
10  
11  
12 **Figure 5.6.** Blackwater National Wildlife Refuge, Chesapeake Bay, Maryland.  
13 Current land areas and potential inundation due to climate change (Larsen *et al.*,  
14 2004b).

15  
16 Recent studies have attempted to quantitatively project the potential effect of sea level  
17 rise on NWRs wetlands. For example, the Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model  
18 (SLAMM) was used to project coastal wetland losses for four refuges in Florida: Ding  
19 Darling (Fig. 5.7), Egmont Key, Pine Island, and Pelican Island. Significant wetland  
20 losses are projected at each refuge, but the types and extent of changes to wetlands may  
21 vary considerably. SLAMM was also used to model sea level rise at San Francisco Bay  
22 NWR (Galbraith *et al.*, 2002). The projections suggested that the refuge will be inundated  
23 in the next few decades. The projected inundation is a result of a combination of global  
24 sea level rise and aquifer depletion, land compaction and subsidence. There is a need to  
25 model projected sea level rise, using a suite of models to address uncertainty, for each of  
26 the 161 coastal refuges to assess system-wide potential effects on refuge species and  
27 habitats.

28  
29  
30  
31 **Figure 5.7.** Results of the Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model (SLAMM) for Ding  
32 Darling National Wildlife Refuge. Source: USFWS unpublished data.<sup>28</sup>

33  
34 The effects of climate change on wetlands will not be uniform. For example, sea level  
35 rise could create new wetlands along the coast. However, changes in hydrological  
36 regimes and precipitation patterns will cause some existing wetlands to dry out and  
37 change the geomorphology and sedimentation of wetlands.

### 38 39 **Extreme Weather Events**

40 Increased frequency of extreme weather events, such as hurricanes, floods, or unusually  
41 high tides, could significantly alter coastal and other habitats. Observed and projected  
42 effects include loss of barrier islands and coastal marshes; damage or loss of storm- and  
43 tide-dampening mechanisms and other refuge equipment and infrastructure; and pollution  
44 of refuge habitats from storm-borne pollutants from nearby urban centers and industrial

---

<sup>28</sup> **McMahon**, S., Undated: USFWS unpublished data.



1 sites, increasing the strain on tight budgets. The loss of equipment and property damage  
2 could hinder both recreational and educational activities on refuges, thus affecting the  
3 ability of the NWRs to fulfill its relevant mandates as well as cutting individual refuges’  
4 income.

5  
6 The potential effects of hurricanes and other extreme weather events on the NWRs’s  
7 conservation target species and their habitats are complex and difficult to prevent and  
8 mitigate. Threatened and endangered species are likely to be the most affected.  
9 Documented negative effects of extreme weather events on threatened and endangered  
10 species and their habitats include the loss of 95% of breeding habitat of the red-cockaded  
11 woodpecker, loss of habitat for five red wolves in South Carolina, and diminished food  
12 supply for the Puerto Rican parrot as a result of hurricane Hugo (U.S. Fish and Wildlife  
13 Service, 1989).

14  
15 The effects of storms and hurricanes are not limited to terrestrial species. Aquatic species  
16 managed by the USFWS on the NWRs could also be affected by some of the side effects  
17 of storms and hurricanes, such as oxygen depletion, retreating salt water, mud  
18 suffocation, and turbulence (Tabb and Jones, 1962). Such effects could also severely  
19 damage recreational fishing opportunities on affected refuges. Projected effects of  
20 tropical storms on southeastern wetlands (Michener *et al.*, 1997) could pose additional  
21 challenges to other NWRs trust species, such as migratory birds, that use those wetlands.  
22 Hurricane Hugo caused soil erosion on Sandy Point NWR, which had an adverse affect  
23 on nesting leatherback turtles (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 1989).

#### 24 **5.3.2.3 Regime Shifts**

25 Much of the NWRs lies in areas that could experience vegetation shifts by 2100  
26 (Gonzalez, Neilson, and Drapek, 2005). Species may respond to climate change in  
27 several ways: ecologically (by shifting distributions), evolutionarily/genetically,  
28 behaviorally, and/or demographically. One of the more profound effects of climate  
29 change is total “regime shift,” where entire ecological communities are transformed from  
30 their “historical” conditions. Such shifts are even now being witnessed in the black  
31 spruce forests of southern Alaska due to northern expansion of the spruce bark beetle,  
32 and the coastal shrublands of central and southern California, due to increased frequency  
33 of wildfires. Similar changes, though difficult to project, will likely occur with changing  
34 rainfall patterns. Increased moisture may create wetlands where none existed before,  
35 whereas declining rainfall may eliminate prairie potholes or other significant wetlands,  
36 especially in marginally wet habitats such as vernal pools and near-deserts.

37  
38 Where such regime shifts occur, even on smaller scales, it may become impossible to  
39 meet specific refuge purposes. For example, the habitats of a highly specialized refuge  
40 (such as one established for an endangered species) might shift away from the habitat  
41 occupied by the species for which the refuge was established; *e.g.*, Kirtland’s Warbler  
42 Wildlife Management Area (Botkin, 1990). Likewise, shifts in migratory bird habitats in  
43 the prairie potholes of the Midwest might diminish available breeding habitat for  
44 waterfowl (Sorenson *et al.*, 1998; Johnson *et al.*, 2005). Less obviously, increasing  
45 competition for water in areas such as California’s Central Valley, southern New Mexico,

1 or Arizona may restrict a refuge’s access to that critical resource, thus making attainment  
2 of its purposes virtually impossible. As suggested by emerging research, there will be  
3 winners and losers among the species and habitats currently found on the NWRS  
4 (Peterson and Vieglais, 2001; Peterson, Ball, and Cohoon, 2002; Parmesan and Yohe,  
5 2003; Peterson *et al.*, 2005; Parmesan, 2006). Existing species’ compositions in refuges  
6 may change; however, it will be possible to maintain the integrity, diversity, and  
7 environmental health of the NWRS, albeit with a focus on the composition, structure, and  
8 function of the habitat supported by the refuges, rather than any particular species or  
9 group of species that uses that habitat.

10  
11 The prospect of regime shifts makes it more crucial that the USFWS train and educate  
12 refuge managers in methods of ascertaining how specific refuges can assess changing  
13 climate and their role in support of the system-wide response. Without such guidance it  
14 will be increasingly challenging to define what a refuge should “conserve and manage,”  
15 and impossible in most cases to “restore” a habitat in an ecological milieu that no longer  
16 supports key species. This raises the question of what refuge managers are actually  
17 managing for: single species occurrences or maintenance of capacity for evolutionary and  
18 ecological change in self-sustaining ecosystems.

### 19 **5.3.3 Ecoregional Implications of Climate Change for the NWRS**

20 The NWRS is characterized by an uneven geographic and ecological distribution (Scott *et*  
21 *al.*, 2004). There are 84 ecoregions in North America (Omernik, 1987), ranging from  
22 temperate rainforests to the Sonoran desert. Eleven of these ecoregions host almost half  
23 of all refuges (Scott *et al.*, 2004). Over all the ecoregions, Alaskan ecoregions dominate;  
24 however, the Southern Florida Coastal Plain ecoregion has the largest area representation  
25 within the NWRS in the lower 48 states: 3.7%.

26  
27 This section describes some of the implications of climate change on an ecoregion-by-  
28 ecoregion basis, based on a hierarchical agglomeration of the 84 ecoregions mentioned  
29 above (Omernik, 1987; level 1 ecoregions) (Fig. 5.8).

30  
31  
32  
33 **Figure 5.8.** Ecoregions of North America (Level 1).<sup>29</sup>

#### 34 **5.3.3.1 Arctic Cordillera, Tundra, Taiga, and the Hudson Plain (18 NWRs)**

35 Although there are only 18 refuges in this ecoregion, they capture more than 80% of the  
36 area of the NWRS, provide important breeding habitat for waterfowl, and offer key  
37 habitat for many high-latitude species. The high latitudes have experienced some of the  
38 most dramatic recent climatic changes in the world. Arctic land masses have warmed  
39 over the last century by at least 5°C (IPCC, 2001). In North America, the most warming

---

<sup>29</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007: Ecoregions of North America. Environmental Protection Agency Website, [http://www.epa.gov/wed/pages/ecoregions/na\\_eco.htm#Level%20I](http://www.epa.gov/wed/pages/ecoregions/na_eco.htm#Level%20I), accessed on 7-12-2007.

1 has occurred in the western Arctic region, including Alaska, and has been concentrated in  
2 the winter and spring (Serreze *et al.*, 2000). This warming has resulted in a decrease in  
3 permafrost (IPCC, 2001). Melting permafrost has implications for vegetation, hydrology,  
4 and ecosystem functioning. The thawing permafrost also releases carbon, which results in  
5 a positive feedback loop generating further warming (Zimov, Schuur, and Chapin, III,  
6 2006). Furthermore, the melting of permafrost may connect shallow lakes and wetlands  
7 to groundwater, resulting in draining and the loss of many shallow-water systems (Marsh  
8 and Neumann, 2001).

9  
10 Due to the rugged coast and lack of low-lying coastal areas, sea level rise is not projected  
11 to strongly affect Alaska except where sea ice affects the shoreline. The extent of Arctic  
12 sea ice has been decreasing at a rate of 2.7 % per decade from 1980 to 2005 (Lemke *et*  
13 *al.*, 2007). Loss of Arctic ice in areas near NWRs will decrease and eliminate foraging  
14 opportunities for those seabirds and mammals that congregate at the sea-ice interface.

15  
16 Climate change will likely have large effects on the composition of ecological  
17 communities on many refuges in the northern ecoregions. As temperatures increase,  
18 many species will continue to shift their ranges to the north. For example, the boreal  
19 forest is projected to expand significantly into the tundra (Payette, Fortin, and Gamache,  
20 2001). In the tundra itself, mosses and lichens will likely be replaced by denser vascular  
21 vegetation, resulting in increased transpiration and further altering hydrology (Rouse *et*  
22 *al.*, 1997). There will also be changes in animal communities as range shifts introduce  
23 new species. Some native species will likely be affected by new predators and new  
24 competitors. For example, red foxes have expanded their range to the north (Hersteinsson  
25 and Macdonald, 1992), potentially increasing competition with Arctic foxes for  
26 resources. This range expansion is likely to continue (MacPherson, 1964; Pamperin,  
27 Follmann, and Petersen, 2006).

28  
29 Climate change also will amplify a number of the factors that already affect refuges in  
30 these ecoregions. The large projected increases in temperature may result in the  
31 introduction of new diseases and an increase in the effects of diseases already present on  
32 the refuges. For example, recent warming has already led to a shortening of the lifecycle  
33 of a specific nematode parasite, resulting in decreased fecundity and survival in musk  
34 oxen (Kutz *et al.*, 2005). Higher temperatures will potentially increase the role that fire  
35 plays in northern ecoregions and increase the frequency of ignition by dry lightning. Fires  
36 in the boreal forest are, for example, projected to increase in frequency with further  
37 warming (Rupp, Chapin, and Starfield, 2000). Finally, the combination of warming and  
38 acidification of streams and lakes in the boreal forest will have combined negative effects  
39 on freshwater fauna (Schindler, 1998).

40  
41 Because the refuges of the northernmost ecoregions cover more than 80% of the area of  
42 the NWRs, and because the high latitudes are expected to undergo some of the most  
43 dramatic changes in climate, climate-driven effects to these refuges will greatly affect the  
44 ability of the NWRs to meet many of its mandated goals to maintain existing species  
45 assemblages. As a result of range shifts, recreational and conservation targets may

1 change. This yet again raises the question of where conservation and management  
2 activities should be directed—at species, ecosystem, or conservation landscape scales.

### 3 **5.3.3.2 Northern Forests and Eastern Temperate Forests (207 NWRs)**

4 These two ecoregions cover almost all of the eastern United States (Fig. 5.8). In the  
5 northeastern United States, recent documented seasonal warming patterns, extended  
6 growing seasons, high spring stream flow, and decreases in snow depth are projected to  
7 continue; new trends such as increased drought frequency, decreased snow cover, and  
8 extended periods of low summer stream flow are projected for the coming century  
9 (Hayhoe *et al.*, 2007). Changes in stream flow, drought frequency, snow cover, and snow  
10 depth have significant implications for precipitation-fed wetlands on many northeastern  
11 refuges. Decreases in water availability will affect breeding habitat for amphibians, and  
12 feeding and nesting habitat for wading birds, ducks, and some migratory songbirds  
13 (Inkley *et al.*, 2004).

14  
15 In both the northern forests and the eastern temperate forests, climate change will likely  
16 result in shifts in forest composition and structure (Iverson and Prasad, 1998). In addition,  
17 global vegetation models project the conversion of many southeastern forests to  
18 grasslands and open woodlands in response to changes in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> and climate  
19 (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). Shifts of this magnitude will greatly change the availability of  
20 habitat for many species on national wildlife refuges. Shifts in the dominant vegetation  
21 type or even small changes in the understory composition may result in significant  
22 changes in animal communities. In addition, climatic changes in these regions will have  
23 implications for both terrestrial and aquatic ecosystem functioning (Allan, Palmer, and  
24 Poff, 2005) which, in turn, will affect wildlife. For example, increases in temperature will  
25 affect dissolved oxygen levels in the many lakes of this region, resulting in changes in  
26 lake biota (Magnuson *et al.*, 1997).

27  
28 Urbanization continues across much of the eastern United States, and most significantly  
29 across the East Coast states. Urbanization and residential development have the potential  
30 to further isolate refuges and reduce the ability of organisms to move from one protected  
31 area to another. Concurrent warming, reduced stream flow, and increased urbanization  
32 may lead to increased bioaccumulation and potentially biomagnifications of organic and  
33 inorganic contaminants from agriculture, industry, and urban areas (Moore *et al.*, 1997).  
34 Finally, climate change will likely accelerate the spread of some exotic invasive species  
35 and shift the ranges of others (Alward, Detling, and Milchunas, 1999).

### 36 **5.3.3.3 Great Plains (139 NWRs)**

37 Changes in hydrology likely present the largest threat to refuges in the Great Plains.  
38 Several of these refuges encompass portions of the PPR, which is the most productive  
39 waterfowl habitat in the world. Population numbers for many waterfowl species in the  
40 area are positively correlated with the number of May ponds available in the PPR in the  
41 beginning of the breeding season (Batt *et al.*, 1989). For example, the number of May  
42 ponds in the PPR dropped from approximately 7 million in 1975 to a little over 3 million  
43 in 1990, and then rose again to roughly 7 million by 1997. Mallard duck numbers tracked

1 this trend, dropping from roughly 5 million in 1975 to a little under 3 million in 1990 and  
2 rising to roughly 6 million in 1997.<sup>30</sup> Hydrological models have been used to accurately  
3 simulate the effect of changing climate on wetland stage (Johnson *et al.*, 2005). The  
4 projected continued rise in temperatures will likely cause severe drought in the central  
5 part of the PPR and a significant drop in waterfowl population numbers (Johnson *et al.*,  
6 2005). Increased temperatures will result in increased evaporation, and lead to decreased  
7 soil moisture and the likely shrinkage and drying of many wetlands in the region  
8 (Sorenson *et al.*, 1998). More specifically, these changes have been projected to result in  
9 fewer wetlands (Larson, 1995), along with changes in hydroperiod, water temperature,  
10 salinity, dissolved oxygen levels, and aquatic food webs (Poiani and Johnson, 1991;  
11 Inkley *et al.*, 2004). The likely cascading effects on waterfowl in refuges across the  
12 region include reduced clutch sizes, fewer renesting attempts, and lower brood survival  
13 (Inkley *et al.*, 2004). Earlier projections of potential population declines for waterfowl  
14 have ranged from 9–69% by 2080 (Sorenson *et al.*, 1998). In addition, stresses from  
15 agricultural lands surrounding refuges in the Great Plains will likely be exacerbated by  
16 future climatic changes. In particular, decreases in precipitation and increases in  
17 evaporation have the potential to increase demands for water for agriculture and for  
18 refuges. In contrast, increases in precipitation have the potential to increase agricultural  
19 runoff.

20  
21 In addition, stresses from agricultural lands surrounding refuges in the Great Plains will  
22 likely be exacerbated by future climatic changes. In particular, decreases in precipitation  
23 and increases in evaporation have the potential to increase demands for water for  
24 agriculture and for refuges. In contrast, increases in precipitation have the potential to  
25 increase agricultural runoff.

26  
27 The loss of waterfowl habitat in the PPR could greatly limit the ability of the NWRS to  
28 provide viable populations of many species for which it currently manages.

#### 29 **5.3.3.4 Northwestern Forested Mountains and Marine West Coast Forest (59 NWRs)**

30 Together, these two ecoregions account for most of the mountainous areas in the western  
31 United States (Fig. 5.8). The Marine West Coast Forest ecoregion is generally relatively  
32 wet, with temperate ocean-influenced climates. The Northwestern Forest Mountains  
33 ecoregion is generally drier. Future projections for the region are for intermediate  
34 temperature increases and increased precipitation.

35  
36 Some of the largest effects to this region are likely to come from changes in hydrological  
37 regimes resulting from reduced snowpack and earlier snowmelt. The resulting changes in  
38 stream flow and temperature will negatively affect salmon and other coldwater fish (Mote  
39 *et al.*, 2003). In addition, competition among different users for scarce summer water  
40 supplies will be intensified as snowpack is reduced and spring melts come earlier (Mote  
41 *et al.*, 2003). Water-use conflicts are already a major issue (National Research Council,

---

<sup>30</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: Migratory Bird Data Center. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://mbdcapps.fws.gov/>, accessed on 11-20-2007.

1 2007) in dry summers following winters with minimal snowpack (*e.g.*, Klamath Basin  
2 NWR Complex).

3  
4 Climate change is also likely to affect fire regimes in the mountains of the western United  
5 States (Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Larger and more intense fires have implications for  
6 refuges at lower elevations that receive much of their water from the forested mountains.  
7 These fires will alter stream flows and sediment loads, changing the hydrology and  
8 vegetation in downstream wetlands. Changes in wetland habitats in the western  
9 mountains, whether driven by changing hydrology, fire regimes, or shifting vegetation  
10 patterns, have the potential to affect the ability of the NWRS to protect habitat and  
11 provide viable populations of species on refuges.

### 12 **5.3.3.5 Mediterranean California (28 NWRs)**

13 As in the two mountainous ecoregions of the western United States, changes in snowpack  
14 in the Sierra Mountains have the potential to affect the hydrology and habitat of refuges  
15 in the central valley and on the coast of California. Based on projections from two  
16 general circulation models, under the lower SRES B1 greenhouse gas emissions scenario,  
17 the Sierra Mountains will experience 30–70% less snowpack. Under the higher SRES  
18 A1FI emissions scenario, the Sierras are projected to have 73–90% less snowpack  
19 (Hayhoe *et al.*, 2004). The snow-fed streams draining the Sierras into the Central Valley  
20 of California will have lower summer flows and earlier spring flows, significantly  
21 changing the hydrology of the valley. Reduced stream flows and higher temperatures  
22 may result in increased salinity in bays and estuaries such as San Francisco Bay,  
23 significantly affecting the biological integrity, diversity, and health of species and  
24 populations in the San Francisco Bay NWR Complex. Sea level rise will compound these  
25 effects for refuges in low-lying estuaries and bays along the California coast.

26  
27 As in the Northwest Forested Mountains ecoregion, the competition for water for  
28 agricultural, residential, industrial, and natural resource use will intensify (Hayhoe *et al.*,  
29 2004).

### 30 **5.3.3.6 North American Deserts and Southern Semiarid Highlands (53 NWRs)**

31 Like most of the rest of the United States, the arid Southwest has been warming over the  
32 last century. Parts of southern Utah and Arizona have had greater than average increases  
33 in temperature (*e.g.*, 2–3°C) (Figure 5.3a). The southwestern United States has  
34 experienced the smallest increase in precipitation in the last 100 years of any region in  
35 the coterminous United States (Figure 5.3b).

36  
37 Climate models project drying and continued warming in the arid ecoregions of the  
38 United States, which could have significant effects on many refuges. These projected  
39 climate trends could lead to changes in hydrology that, in turn, may have large effects on  
40 wetlands and other shallow water bodies. Although precipitation-fed systems are most at  
41 risk, groundwater-fed systems in which aquifer recharge is largely driven by snowmelt  
42 may also be heavily affected (Winter, 2000; Burkett and Kusler, 2000). Reductions in  
43 water levels and increases in water temperatures will potentially lead to reduced water

1 quality, in terms of increased turbidity and decreases in dissolved oxygen concentrations  
2 (Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002). Increased productivity, driven by increased  
3 temperature, may lead to increases in algal blooms and more frequent anoxic conditions  
4 (Allan, Palmer, and Poff, 2005).

5  
6 More so than in the other ecoregions, water resources in the arid portions of the western  
7 United States are already in high demand. Decreases in available water will exacerbate  
8 the competition for water for agriculture, urban centers, and wildlife (Hurd *et al.*, 1999).  
9 Competition for water already challenges the Moapa dace on the Desert NWR Complex  
10 in the Moapa Valley of Nevada and the wildlife of the Sonny Bono Salton Sea NWR in  
11 southern California.

12  
13 Dams and other small water diversions, combined with the prevalence of east-west  
14 flowing rivers, will hinder migration of aquatic species to cooler waters (Allan, Palmer,  
15 and Poff, 2005). In addition, many endemic fish in arid ecoregions are highly adapted to  
16 local conditions and quite limited in distribution. Many of these species are projected to  
17 go extinct in response to temperature increases of just a few degrees (Matthews and  
18 Zimmerman, 1990). Reduced water levels and increased water temperatures may also  
19 lead to increases in disease outbreaks.

20  
21 Grazing by cattle on refuges in the arid ecoregions will likely exacerbate the effects of  
22 drought stress and aid in the spread of exotic species. Furthermore, refuges may be  
23 sources of scarce water resources in the future, making them even more attractive to  
24 cattle. Grazing will also likely interact with climate-driven vegetation changes to further  
25 alter plant communities and wildlife habitat on refuges in arid regions (Donahue, 1999).

26  
27 Although reduced precipitation and increased temperatures may reduce productivity in  
28 some arid regions, global vegetation models have projected an expansion of grasslands,  
29 shrublands, and woodlands into arid regions in response to increased water-use efficiency  
30 driven by increased atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations. Increased abundance of invasive  
31 non-native grasses has altered fire regimes, increasing the frequency, intensity, and  
32 extent of fires in the American Southwest (D'Antonio and Vitousek, 1992; Brooks *et al.*,  
33 2004).<sup>31</sup> These shifts could result in dramatic changes in wildlife communities in the  
34 affected areas. Overall, we would see a reduction in the number of desert species and an  
35 increase in species that inhabit dry grasslands, shrublands, and woodlands.

#### 36 **5.3.3.7 Sub-Tropical and Tropical Ecosystems (7 NWRs)**

37 In the continental United States, the tropical wet forest ecoregion occurs only in southern  
38 Florida. The largest climate-driven challenge to the refuges in this ecoregion is sea level  
39 rise. With its extensive low-lying coastal areas, much of this region will be underwater or

---

<sup>31</sup> **Brooks, M.L. and D.A. Pyke, 2002: Invasive plants and fire in the deserts of North America. In: *Proceedings of the Invasive Species Workshop: the Role of Fire in the Control and Spread of Invasive Species* [Gallery, K.E.M. and T.P. Wilson (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Fire Conference 2000: The First National Congress on Fire Ecology, Prevention, and Management, Tall Timbers Research Station, pp. 1-14.**

1 inundated with salt water in the coming century. The several refuges in the Florida Keys,  
2 Florida Panther NWR, and Key Deer NWR are all particularly at risk.

3  
4 Invasive native and non-native species are also a major challenge in this ecoregion. As  
5 temperatures rise, South Florida will likely be the entry point of many new tropical  
6 species into the United States. Five new species of tropical dragonfly had established  
7 themselves in the country by 2000—each suspected to be the result of a northward range  
8 shift from populations in the Caribbean. Loss of land due to sea level rise in southern  
9 Florida will increase development pressure inland and in the north, potentially  
10 accelerating urbanization and exacerbating the isolating and fragmenting effects of  
11 development.

### 12 **5.3.3.8 Coastal and Marine Systems: Marine Protected Areas (161 NWRs)**

13 Low-lying coastal refuges face several climate-driven challenges. Sea level rise will  
14 likely be the largest challenge to refuges in the southeastern United States (Daniels,  
15 White, and Chapman, 1993; Ross, O'Brien, and Sternberg, 1994). Low-lying coastal  
16 areas on the East and Gulf Coasts are some of the most vulnerable in the country. Some  
17 of the most vulnerable refuges include the Chincoteague NWR, on the Delmarva  
18 Peninsula; the Alligator River NWR, on the Albemarle Peninsula of North Carolina; San  
19 Francisco Bay NWR in California; and Merritt Island NWR in Florida. In fact, many of  
20 the refuges in New England, the Middle Atlantic states, North Carolina, South Carolina,  
21 and Florida are coastal and susceptible to sea level rise (Daniels, White, and Chapman,  
22 1993; Titus and Richman, 2001). For many of these refuges, sea level rise will  
23 dramatically alter habitats by inundating estuaries and marshes and converting forests to  
24 marshes. Beach-nesting birds such as the piping plover, migratory birds using the refuges  
25 as stopovers, and species using low-lying habitats such as the red wolf and Florida  
26 panther will likely lose habitat to sea level rise.<sup>32</sup> In addition, sea level rise may destroy  
27 coastal stopover sites used by birds migrating up and down the East Coast (Galbraith *et*  
28 *al.*, 2002; Huntley *et al.*, 2006).

29  
30 Warming ocean temperatures also challenge coastal and marine refuges. In fact, warming  
31 ocean temperatures are already having severe effects on many marine organisms. For  
32 example, increased water temperatures have resulted in increases in the frequency of  
33 toxic algal blooms (Harvell *et al.*, 1999), and future climate changes are projected to  
34 result in more intense tropical storms, resulting in increased disturbance for many coastal  
35 refuges (IPCC, 2007b). Coral bleaching is another effect of increased ocean temperatures,  
36 and has had profound effects on reefs in the Caribbean. Increased ocean acidity (from the  
37 accumulation of carbonic acid in the water—a direct result of more CO<sub>2</sub> entering the  
38 ocean from the atmosphere and combining with water) will dissolve calcium-rich shells,  
39 dramatically changing the species composition of zooplankton and having cascading  
40 effects on entire marine ecosystems (Guinotte *et al.*, 2006).

---

32 **Schlyer, K.**, 2006: *Refuges at Risk: the Threat of Global Warming and America's Ten Most Endangered National Wildlife Refuges*. Defenders of Wildlife, Washington, DC.



1 Over-fishing, eutrophication, and increasing temperatures may lead to toxic algal and  
2 jellyfish blooms (Jackson *et al.*, 2001). Temperature-stressed corals will be more  
3 susceptible to disease. Invasive species are likely to expand their ranges as water  
4 temperatures rise. And finally, pathogens and disease vectors may move with climate  
5 change. An example of this latter challenge is given by the expansion of an oyster  
6 parasite, *Perkinsus marinus*, up the East Coast of the United States in response to warmer  
7 waters (Ford, 1996).

## 8 **5.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

9 Adaptation measures aim to increase the resilience of species, communities, and  
10 ecosystems to climate change (Turner, II *et al.*, 2003; Tompkins and Adger, 2004). The  
11 law governing management of the NWRS affords the USFWS great latitude in deciding  
12 what is best for the system. Especially in dealing with the scientific uncertainty  
13 associated with the effects of climate change, the USFWS can act assertively within the  
14 broad power Congress delegated to make judgments about how best to achieve the  
15 system's objectives. Maintaining biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health,  
16 and sustaining healthy populations of species, two of the chief goals for the NWRS,  
17 provide ample bases to support adaptation.<sup>33</sup> The uncertainty associated with climate  
18 change influences on refuges, the NWRS, and ecosystems, along with the complexity of  
19 conservation targets and their interactions, requires a structured and integrative approach  
20 to decision-making and management actions. The scale of the effects of climate change is  
21 global, and the scale of desired conservation responses—flyways, entire species'  
22 ranges—requires that management actions be implemented and conservation target  
23 responses be measured in areas unprecedented in their size and in their area of extent  
24 (Anderson *et al.*, 1987; Nichols, Johnson, and Williams, 1995; Johnson, Kendall, and  
25 Dubovsky, 2002).

26  
27 National wildlife refuges are not yet implementing adaptation strategies to explicitly  
28 address climate change. However, various management approaches (*e.g.*, riparian  
29 reforestation, assisted dispersal) currently used to address other stresses could also be  
30 used to address climate change stresses within individual refuges. More importantly,  
31 beyond the scale of individual refuges, climate change warrants system-wide adaptive  
32 management.

33  
34 Representation, redundancy, and resilience are key conservation principles that could be  
35 used to strengthen the NWRS in the face of climate change, both within and beyond  
36 existing refuge boundaries (Shaffer and Stein, 2000). The resilience/viability of  
37 populations and ecosystems on an individual refuge level may be increased through  
38 habitat augmentation, restoration, reduction/elimination of environmental stressors,  
39 acquisition of inholdings, and by enhancing the surrounding matrix through conservation  
40 partnerships, conservation easements, fee-title acquisitions, etc. At the NWRS scale,  
41 opportunities for refuge species to respond and adapt to climate change effects can be  
42 enhanced by capturing the full geographical, geophysical, and ecological ranges of a

---

<sup>33</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

1 species on as many refuges as possible. The goal of these management responses is not to  
2 create artificial habitats for species, but to restore and increase habitat availability and  
3 reduce stressors to provide species maximum opportunity to respond and adapt to climate  
4 change.

5  
6 The adaptation measures presented in the following sections will most effectively  
7 facilitate ecosystem adaptation to climate change when implemented within the  
8 framework of adaptive management.

#### 9 **5.4.1 Adaptive Management as a Framework for Adaptation Actions**

10 Response to climate change challenges must occur at multiple integrated scales within the  
11 NWRS and among partner entities. Individual symptomatic challenges of climate change  
12 must be addressed at the refuge level, while NWRS planning is the most appropriate level  
13 for addressing systemic challenges to the system.

14  
15 Adaptive management lends itself well to the adaptation of natural resource management  
16 actions to climate change. Adaptive management is an iterative approach that seeks to  
17 improve natural resource management by testing management hypotheses and learning  
18 from the results (Holling, 1978; Walters, 1986; Salafsky, Margoluis, and Redford, 2001).  
19 A management action can have the desired effect on the distribution and abundance of  
20 the target species. However, depending on the type of management action, there can also  
21 be a number of unintended consequences. Adaptive management provides a  
22 research/management tool to assess the frequency and intensity of unintended effects. It is  
23 an approach that is useful in situations where uncertainty about ecological responses is  
24 high, such as climate change.

25  
26 Adaptive management proceeds generally through seven steps: (1) Establish a clear and  
27 common purpose; (2) Design an explicit model of the system; (3) Develop a management  
28 plan that maximizes results and learning; (4) Develop a monitoring plan to test the  
29 assumptions; (5) Implement management and monitoring plans; (6) Analyze data and  
30 communicate results; and (7) Iteratively use results to adapt and learn (Salafsky,  
31 Margoluis, and Redford, 2001). Public participation, scientific monitoring, and  
32 management actions based on field results form the core principles of adaptive  
33 management.

34  
35 Adaptive management also incorporates a research agenda into plans and actions, so that  
36 they may yield useful information for future decision-making. For instance, the planning  
37 process for refuges and the NWRS does not end when a plan is adopted. It continues into  
38 a phase of implementation and evaluation.<sup>34</sup> Under adaptive management, each step of  
39 plan implementation is an experiment requiring review and adjustment.

40  
41 In general, the law provides authority to USFWS for adaptive management. The general  
42 principles of administrative law give the USFWS wide latitude for tailoring adaptive  
43 management to the circumstances of the refuges. One element of adaptive management,

---

<sup>34</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 602

1 monitoring, is affirmatively required by the NWRSA of 1997.<sup>35</sup> The only legal hurdle  
2 for adaptive management is the need for final agency action in adopting CCPs and  
3 making certain kinds of decisions involving findings of no significant effect under the  
4 National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA).

5  
6 Although the USFWS policy implementing its planning mandate makes a strong effort to  
7 employ adaptive management through modeling, experimentation, and monitoring, legal  
8 hurdles remain for the insertion of truly adaptive strategies into CCPs. These hurdles are  
9 acknowledged in DOI policy on adaptive management (Williams, Szaro, and Shapiro,  
10 2007). Not only do the Administrative Procedure Act, NEPA, and the NWRSA all  
11 emphasize finality in approval of a document, but the relative formality of the  
12 development of an administrative record, the preparation of an environmental impact  
13 statement for proposals significantly affecting the environment, and the need to prepare  
14 initial plans for all refuges by the statutory deadline of 2012 all tend to front-load  
15 resources in planning. Once the USFWS adopts an initial CCP for a refuge, adaptive  
16 management would call for much of the hard work to come in subsequent  
17 implementation. However, from a legal, budgetary, and performance-monitoring  
18 standpoint, few resources are available to support post-adoption implementation,  
19 including monitoring, experimentation, and iterative revisions. Despite these drawbacks,  
20 adaptive management remains the most promising management strategy for the NWRSA in  
21 the face of climate change. The research and management objectives described below are  
22 thought out within the framework of adaptive management.

#### 23 **5.4.2 Adaptation Strategies within Refuge Borders**

24 One of the most important comparative advantages of the NWRSA for adaptation  
25 (compared with other federal agencies) is its long experience with intensive management  
26 techniques to improve wildlife habitat and populations. The NWRSA of 1997 provides  
27 for vast discretion in refuge management activities designed to achieve the conservation  
28 mission. Some regulatory constraints, such as the duty not to jeopardize the continued  
29 existence of listed species under the ESA, occasionally limit this latitude. Generally,  
30 intensive management occurs within the boundaries of an existing refuge, but ambitious  
31 adaptation projects may highlight certain locations as high priority targets for acquisition,  
32 easement, or partnerships. Also, programs such as animal translocations will require  
33 cooperation with all the involved parties within the organism's range (McLachlan,  
34 Hellmann, and Schwartz, 2007).

35  
36 The chief legal limitation in using intensive management to adapt to climate change is the  
37 limited jurisdiction of many refuges over their water. Both the timing of water flows as  
38 well as the quantity of water flowing through the refuge are often subject to state  
39 permitting and control by other federal agencies, as discussed above. But, in general, the  
40 USFWS has ample proprietary authority to engage in transplantation-relocation, habitat  
41 engineering (including irrigation-hydrologic management), and captive breeding.  
42

---

<sup>35</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

1 Because government agencies and private organizations already protect a network of  
2 remarkable landscapes across the United States, resource managers will need to develop  
3 specific land management actions that will help species adapt to changes associated with  
4 sea level rise, changes in water availability, increased air and water temperatures, etc.  
5 These measures may provide time for populations to adapt and evolve, as observed in  
6 select plant and animal species in the past few decades of increasing temperatures  
7 (Berteaux *et al.*, 2004; Davis, Shaw, and Etersson, 2005; Jump and Peñuelas, 2005).  
8 Strategic growth of the NWRS to capture the full ecological, genetic, geographical,  
9 behavioral, and morphological variation in species will increase the ability of refuge  
10 managers and the NWRS to meet legal mandates of maintaining biological integrity,  
11 diversity, and environmental health of biological systems on NWRS lands. These habitats  
12 will increase chances that species will be more resilient to the challenges posed by  
13 climate change (Scott *et al.*, 1993).

14  
15 The tools available to the NWRS to confront and adapt to climate change are those it has  
16 historically used so successfully to address past crises: prescribed burning, water  
17 management, land acquisition, inventory and monitoring, research, in some cases grazing  
18 and haying, etc. Critically, however, the NWRS needs to regroup and reassess in a  
19 collective way the value of these tools—as well as where and how to apply them—in the  
20 context of the current dynamic environmental conditions. For example, 2007 has  
21 presented a dramatic shift in historic wildfire patterns in the contiguous United States, as  
22 the “fire season” and fire risk areas have expanded to the East Coast in addition to the  
23 traditionally notorious West. As of June, 2007, the Big Turnaround Complex Fire  
24 burning on and around Okefenokee NWR in southeastern Georgia had surpassed 600,000  
25 acres, and was the largest wildfire in history within the lower 48 states. This suggests that  
26 the application of fire to habitat management fuel reduction on refuges throughout the  
27 eastern United States may need reconsideration. Some potential climate adaptation  
28 measures that could be used by the NWRS include:

- 30 • *Prescribed burning to reduce risk of catastrophic wildfire.* Climate change is  
31 already increasing fire frequency and extent by altering the key factors that  
32 control fire temperature, precipitation, wind, biomass, vegetation species  
33 composition and structure, and soil moisture (IPCC, 2001; IPCC, 2007a). In the  
34 western United States, increasing spring and summer temperatures of 1°C since  
35 1970 have been correlated to increased fire frequency of 400% and burned area of  
36 650% (Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Analyses project that climate change may  
37 increase future fire frequencies in North America (Flannigan *et al.*, 2005).  
38 Wildfires may also create a positive feedback for climate change through  
39 significant emissions of greenhouse gases (Randerson *et al.*, 2006). Prescribed  
40 burns could prevent catastrophic effects of stand-replacement fires in ecosystems  
41 characterized by less intense fire regimes. Fire management could also increase  
42 the density of large-diameter trees and long-term standing biomass. Refuge  
43 managers have played a leadership role in the prescriptive use of fire to achieve  
44 management objectives and are well positioned to continue that role.

- 1 • *Facilitate the growth of plant species more adapted to future climate conditions.*  
2 Future conditions may favor certain types of species; for example, broadleaved  
3 trees over conifers. Favoring the natural regeneration of species better adapted to  
4 projected future conditions could facilitate the development of functional  
5 ecosystems. Nevertheless, high genetic diversity of species at the low-latitude  
6 edge of their range may require special protection in those areas (Hampe and  
7 Petit, 2005). Additional research is needed to better understand the long-term  
8 effects that such regeneration might have on natural communities.  
9
- 10 • *Assisted dispersal.* Endemic species that occur in a limited area challenged with  
11 complete conversion by climate change may face extinction. Assisted dispersal is  
12 the deliberate long-distance transport by people of plants or animals in their  
13 historically occupied range and introduction into new geographic areas. Assisted  
14 dispersal offers an extreme measure to save such species (Hulme, 2005;  
15 McLachlan, Hellmann, and Schwartz, 2007). It risks, however, the release of non-  
16 native species into new areas and may not be as effective in altered environments.  
17 It also raises social and ethical issues, and should be viewed only as a last resort  
18 and considered on a case-by-case basis.  
19
- 20 • *Interim food propagation for mistimed migrants.* The decline of long-distance  
21 migratory birds in Europe and the United States may originate in mistiming of  
22 breeding and food abundance due to differences in phenological shifts in response  
23 to climate change (Sauer, Pendleton, and Peterjohn, 1996; Both *et al.*, 2006). To  
24 compensate for the resource, it may become necessary to propagate food sources  
25 in the interim. The USFWS has provided food for waterfowl wintering on various  
26 refuges. For example, at Wheeler NWR, water levels are regulated in order to  
27 promote additional vegetation growth on the refuge. Parts of Columbia NWR are  
28 devoted to crop production, which is then available for waterfowl and other birds.  
29 Although a common practice on many refuges, it is important to remember that  
30 food propagation does not promote the biological integrity, diversity, and health  
31 of the refuges and the NWRs, nor the ability of the species to adjust to a changing  
32 landscape.  
33
- 34 • *Riparian reforestation.* Reforestation of native willows, alders, and other native  
35 riparian tree species along river and stream banks will provide shade to keep  
36 water temperatures from warming excessively during summer months, while  
37 providing dispersal corridors for many species. This will create thermal refugia  
38 for fish and other aquatic species while also providing habitat for many terrestrial  
39 species. This adaptation strategy will only be sustainable if the riparian species  
40 are tolerant to the effects of climate change.  
41
- 42 • *Propagation and transplantation of heat-resistant coral.* Climate change has  
43 increased sea surface temperatures that, in turn, have caused bleaching and death  
44 of coral reefs. The Nature Conservancy leads a consortium of 11 government and  
45 private organizations in the Florida Reef Resilience Program, a program to survey  
46 coral bleaching and test adaptation measures in the Florida Keys, an area that

1 includes four refuges. The program has identified heat-resistant reefs and  
2 established nurseries to propagate live coral from those reefs. The program plans  
3 to transplant the heat-resistant coral to bleached and dead reefs.  
4

5 On many refuges, external challenges are controlled principally by federal agencies other  
6 than the USFWS. Water flows may be dependent on decisions of sister federal agencies,  
7 such as the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (for hydropower dams), the U.S.  
8 Army Corps of Engineers (for navigational and impoundment operations), and the  
9 Bureau of Reclamation (dam and water supply projects). Adaptation to climate change  
10 will require increased cooperation of these agencies with the USFWS if refuge goals are  
11 to be met.  
12

13 Other possible management actions that could be applied to address climate change  
14 effects include building predator-free nest boxes, predator control programs, nest parasite  
15 control programs, translocation to augment genetics or demographics, prescribed burns to  
16 maintain preferred habitat types, creation of dispersal bridges, removal of migration  
17 barriers, habitat restoration, etc. Caution should be observed when any actions that assist  
18 one species over another are taken. There is always the risk of unintended consequences.  
19 The degree of assistance has to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis.

### 20 **5.4.3 Adaptation Strategies Outside Refuge Borders**

21 Adaptation to climate change requires the USFWS to consider lands and waters outside  
22 of refuge boundaries. In some instances acquisition of property for refuge expansion will  
23 best serve the conservation mission of the NWRS. In most cases, however, coordination  
24 with other land managers and governmental agencies (*e.g.*, voluntary land exchanges and  
25 conservation easements) will be more practical than acquisition. Coordination, like  
26 acquisition, can both reduce an external challenge generated by a particular land or water  
27 use and increase the effective conservation area through cooperative habitat management.  
28 Though the NWRSIA does little to compel neighbors to work with the USFWS on  
29 conservation matters external to the NWRS boundary, there are some regulatory hooks  
30 that USFWS managers can leverage. There are also several partnership incentive  
31 programs that could be used to create collaborative conservation partnerships (such as the  
32 Partners for Fish and Wildlife Program,<sup>36</sup> Refuge Partnership Programs,<sup>37</sup> Safe Harbor  
33 agreements,<sup>38</sup> Habitat Conservation Plans,<sup>39</sup> Candidate Conservation Agreements,<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>36</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007: Partners for fish and wildlife program. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://ecos.fws.gov/partners>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>37</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007: Refuge partnership programs. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://www.fws.gov/refuges/generalInterest/partnerships.html>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>38</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007: Safe harbor agreements. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://www.fws.gov/ncsandhills/safeharbor.htm>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>39</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007: Endangered species habitat conservation planning. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://www.fws.gov/Endangered/hcp/>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>40</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2002: Candidate conservation agreements with assurances for non-federal property owners. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, <http://www.fws.gov/endangered/listing/cca.pdf>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

1 Natural Resources Conservation Service,<sup>41</sup> etc.) Increased partnerships of refuges with  
2 other service programs—the Endangered Species programs, in particular—could result in  
3 cost savings and increased achievement of the USFWS’s five goals that they could not  
4 achieve acting individually.

5  
6 *Abating External Challenges through Increased Coordination.* The 2001 USFWS  
7 biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health policy tells refuge managers to  
8 seek redress before local planning and zoning boards, and state administrative and  
9 regulatory agencies, if voluntary or collaborative attempts to forge solutions do not  
10 work.<sup>42</sup> In 2004, USFWS officials helped stop development of a 19,250-seat concert  
11 amphitheater on a tract of land adjacent to the Minnesota Valley NWR by testifying  
12 before the local county commissioners in opposition to a permit application. NWRS  
13 leaders may take such actions to achieve conservation as climate changes.

14  
15 *Abating External Challenges through the Regulatory Process.* In addition to land use  
16 planning, other state legal procedures can offer refuge managers opportunities to address  
17 external challenges. The Clean Water Act requires states to revise water quality standards  
18 every three years.<sup>43</sup> The USFWS participation in this process could work to ensure that  
19 water quality does not limit adaptation to climate change. Designation of “outstanding  
20 national resource waters” in refuges, strengthening of water quality criteria, and  
21 establishment of total maximum daily loads of key stressors are three state tasks that can  
22 enhance the NWRS’s adaptive capacity (see water quality standards, antidegradation  
23 policy<sup>44</sup>). Also, some states establish minimum stream flows or acquire instream water  
24 rights. Federal law requires the Secretary of the Interior to acquire water rights needed for  
25 refuge purposes.<sup>45</sup>

26  
27 The ESA regulates private activities that may harm listed species and may be an  
28 important tool, particularly for listed species on refuges that suffer from external  
29 challenges.<sup>46</sup> Over the past 15 years, the ESA prohibitions have induced private  
30 cooperation to enhance conservation of species through tools such as habitat conservation  
31 plans and safe harbor agreements. The USFWS can encourage incorporation of  
32 adaptation terms into these tools.

### 33 **5.4.3.1 Building Buffers, Corridors, and Improving the Matrix**

34 Resilience is the capacity of an ecosystem to tolerate disturbance without changing into a  
35 different state controlled by a different set of processes (Holling, 1973). Fundamental  
36 ecosystem functions, including nutrient cycling, natural fire processes, maintenance of  
37 food webs, and the provision of habitat for animal species, often require land areas of  
38 thousands of square kilometers (Soulé, 1987; Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2006).

---

<sup>41</sup> U.S. Department of Agriculture, 2007: Natural resources conservation service. U.S. Department of Agriculture Website, U.S. Department of Agriculture, <http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>42</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 1

<sup>43</sup> 33 U.S.C. § 1251-1376

<sup>44</sup> 40 C.F.R. § 131.12, Parts 87-135

<sup>45</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>46</sup> 16 U.S.C. § 1531-1544, 87 Stat. 884

1 Consequently, the relatively small size of most refuges and other conservation areas in  
2 the United States; their location in landscapes often altered by human activity; incomplete  
3 representation of imperiled species across the full range of their geographical, ecological,  
4 and geophysical range; and incomplete life history support on those refuges where it  
5 occurs; raise fundamental obstacles to achieving resilience on individual refuges and the  
6 NWRS (Grumbine, 1990). Indeed, the existing NWRS cannot fully support even  
7 genetically viable populations for a majority of threatened and endangered species  
8 (Czech, 2005). For those threatened and endangered species for which refuges were  
9 specifically established, the numbers are similar (Blades, 2007).

10  
11 In response to the obstacle of small reserve size, the USFWS and other organizations  
12 engage in landscape-scale natural resource and conservation planning. A bolder strategic  
13 initiative to increase the effective conservation footprint of the NWRS may be needed to  
14 mitigate the projected effect of climate change on refuge species if the biological  
15 integrity, diversity, and health of the NWRS are all to be maintained. For example, the  
16 biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the least Bell's vireo (*Vireo*  
17 *bellii*) could be enhanced through restoration of riparian habitats on those refuges where  
18 it is found. Conservation partnerships with adjacent land managers and owners to  
19 increase the area and quality of least Bell's vireo habitat would include conservation  
20 easement and fee simple acquisition, where appropriate, and strategic acquisition of new  
21 refuges within the least Bell's vireo habitat range. The potential applications of these  
22 approaches to facilitate ecosystem adaptation to climate change concentrate on the  
23 optimum size and configuration of new and existing conservation areas at a landscape  
24 scale. State Wildlife Action Plans also provide an opportunity to create more favorable  
25 environment adjacent to refuges through which species disperse, by identifying strategic  
26 habitat parcels within the range of the least Bell's vireo.

27  
28 The USFWS already engages in planning to prioritize land acquisition (U.S. Fish and  
29 Wildlife Service, 1996). Acquisition of easements often represents an attractive option  
30 for building a support network around refuges to facilitate adaptation. The USFWS has  
31 great flexibility in crafting easements to address the particular dynamic circumstances of  
32 climate uncertainty. Federal courts have consistently upheld federal easements, even in  
33 the face of state laws that imposed term limitations or contravened negotiated property  
34 restrictions.<sup>47</sup> However, given the projected increases in the American population and its  
35 demands on natural resources, options for easements may be fewer and pressure to  
36 remove existing easement restrictions may increase in the future. This potential currently  
37 is playing out as the U.S. Department of Agriculture considers policy proposals to reduce  
38 enrollment in the Conservation Reserve Program in order to stimulate crop production for  
39 biofuels. These factors attest to the necessity of creating a strategically planned  
40 conservation network today capable of meeting the challenges posed by climate change  
41 tomorrow.

42  
43 Opportunities for maintaining the viability of refuge species, ecosystems, and ecosystem  
44 processes may be achieved through conservation partnerships, incentive programs,

---

<sup>47</sup> See *North Dakota v. United States*, 1983. 460 U.S. 300.



1 conservation easements, and fee simple acquisitions with willing sellers on refuge  
2 inholdings and adjacent properties. The USFWS already plays a leadership role in these  
3 best practices for conserving wildlife within watersheds and regions. The aspirational  
4 goals of refuge law along with the expertise of USFWS personnel are consistent with  
5 these outreach efforts, which may be informal or memorialized in memoranda or  
6 agreement among local landowners and jurisdictions surrounding refuges.

7  
8 The alteration of habitat from climate change vegetation shifts produces one of the most  
9 significant challenges to conservation, because it reduces the viability of existing  
10 conservation areas. The targeted acquisition of new conservation areas, together with a  
11 structured configuration of the network of new and existing conservation areas across the  
12 landscape, offers an important approach to facilitating ecosystem adaptation. Landscape-  
13 scale adaptation strategies and tools—drawn from the literature and expert opinion—  
14 could include:

- 15  
16 • *Establish and maintain wildlife corridors.* Connectivity among habitat patches is  
17 a fundamental component of ecosystem management and refuge design (Harris,  
18 1984; Noss, 1987). Corridors provide connectivity and improve habitat viability  
19 in the face of conventional challenges such as deforestation, urbanization,  
20 fragmentation from roads, and invasive species. Because dispersal and migration  
21 become critical as vegetation shifts in response to climate changes, corridors offer  
22 a key adaptation tool (*e.g.*, highway over- and underpasses, Yellowstone to  
23 Yukon corridor) and help maintain genetic diversity and higher populations size  
24 (Hannah *et al.*, 2002). In many areas, riparian corridors provide connectivity  
25 among conservation units.
- 26  
27 • *Expand the effective conservation footprint in climate change refugia.* Climate  
28 change refugia are locations more resistant to vegetation shifts, due to wide  
29 climate tolerances of individual species, to the presence of resilient assemblages  
30 of species or to local topographic and environmental factors. Because of the lower  
31 probability of dramatic change, these refugia will likely require less-intense  
32 management interventions to maintain viable habitat, and should cost less to  
33 manage than vulnerable areas outside refugia. Acquisition of new land in potential  
34 climate change refugia will likely change past priorities for new conservation  
35 areas. This will require integration of climate change data from tools identified  
36 below into the USFWS Land Acquisition Priority System. Currently, The Nature  
37 Conservancy is analyzing effects of climate change in the seven ecoregions that  
38 cross the State of New Mexico in order to identify climate change refugia and to  
39 guide the development of new conservation areas under ecoregional plans  
40 developed in collaboration with government and private partners. Identification of  
41 refugia requires field surveys of refugia from past climate change events, or  
42 spatial analytical tools that include dynamic global vegetation models (DGVMs),  
43 bioclimatic models of individual species, and sea level rise models; each of these  
44 are described in more detail below.
- 45

- 1 • *Eliminate dispersal barriers and create dispersal bridges.* This topic was  
2 addressed to some extent previously, but additional opportunities exist, including  
3 removal of dispersal barriers in and near refuges, establishing dispersal bridges by  
4 eliminating hanging culverts, building highway under- and overpasses,  
5 modification of land use practices on adjacent lands through incentive programs,  
6 habitat restoration, enhancement, and conservation partnerships with other public  
7 land managers.  
8
- 9 • *Improve compatibility of matrix lands.* Strict preservation of a core reserve, and  
10 multiple-use management reflecting decreasing degrees of preservation in  
11 concentric buffer zones around the core, constitutes another climate change  
12 adaptation tool. These land use changes may be achieved through new  
13 acquisitions, conservation partnerships, or conservation incentives programs, all  
14 focused on meeting the needs of NWRS species subject to climate change  
15 stresses. In the United States, a national park, wilderness area, or national wildlife  
16 refuge often serves as the core area, with national forests serving as an immediate  
17 buffer zone, and non-urbanized state and private lands forming the outermost  
18 buffer zone. A conservation easement is a legal agreement that restricts building  
19 on open land in exchange for lower taxes for the landowner. It offers a  
20 mechanism for habitat conservation without the great expense and governmental  
21 processes required to purchase additional land for federal agencies through fee  
22 title acquisitions. As climate change shifts vegetation and animal ranges,  
23 conservation easements offer an adaptation tool to provide room for dispersal of  
24 species and maintenance of ecosystem function. If the ecosystem(s) maintained  
25 within a core conservation area and on lands adjacent to it is resilient, then—even  
26 if climate changes cause a shift in species composition—that core conservation  
27 area will remain an important part of a conservation network because new species  
28 will be able to expand their ranges into it.  
29
- 30 • *Restore existing and establish new marshland vegetation as sea level rise*  
31 *inundates coastal land.* The Nature Conservancy and USFWS are collaborating  
32 on a project in Alligator River NWR and on adjacent private land on the  
33 Albemarle Peninsula, North Carolina, to establish saltwater tidal marsh as the  
34 ocean inundates coastal land. The Nature Conservancy also plans to establish  
35 dune shrub vegetation in upland areas as coastal dunes move inland. In the  
36 Blackwater NWR in Chesapeake Bay, Maryland, the USFWS may be restoring  
37 marshland that oceans have recently inundated, by using clean dredging material  
38 from ship channels to recreate land areas.  
39
- 40 • *Establish other marshland vegetation where freshwater lake levels fall.*  
41 Decreasing summer precipitation and increasing evapotranspiration may decrease  
42 water levels in the Great Lakes by 0.2–1.5 m (Chao, 1999). Depending on the  
43 slope of shoreline areas, the drop in lake level could translate into shore  
44 extensions 3 m wide or more. Managers of the Ottawa NWR at Lake Erie, Ohio,  
45 and other refuges on the Great Lakes may need to preemptively establish  
46 freshwater marshes as shoreline areas become shallower.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42

- *Reduce human water withdrawals to restore natural hydrologic regimes.* Water conservation in agricultural or urban areas may free up enough water to compensate for projected decreases in runoff due to climate change. NWR managers could work with water managers to change the timing of water flows as climate change alters fish behavior. For example, a half-day earlier migration of adult Atlantic salmon over the course of 23 years was associated with climate change (Juanes, Gephard, and Beland, 2004).
- *Install levees and other engineering works.* Levees, dikes, and other engineering works have been used widely to alter water availability and flows to the benefit of refuge species. Their use to hold back the changes brought by sea level rise and increases in storm intensity remains largely untested.

**5.4.3.2 Reducing the Rate of Change**

These actions are primarily about reducing greenhouse gases. Refuges can participate by being educational centers for solutions to climate change, developing and showcasing energy-saving practices on refuges (*e.g.*, using fuel-efficient vehicles (Eastern Neck NWR) or electrical vehicles, use of solar (Imperial NWR, Mississquoi NWR) and wind (Eastern Neck NWR, Mississquoi NWR) energy, geothermal heating and cooling (The John Heinz NWR at Tinicum, Chincoteague NWR), and, possibly, sequestering carbon through reforestation actions when consistent with refuge objectives, although the latter needs to be further researched.

**5.4.3.3 Managing to Accommodate Change**

Rather than managing in order to retain species currently on refuges, refuges could manage to provide trust species the opportunity to respond to and evolve in response to emerging selective forces. Managing for change in the face of uncertainty is about buying time while planning for change. It also means working with other conservation land managers to increase linkages between protected areas, and with conservation partners on matrix lands, to increase suitability of these lands for the services to conservation targets. The scientific literature and expert opinion suggest the following possible management actions to improve the surrounding matrix:

- Creating artificial water bodies;
- Gaining access to new water rights;
- Reducing or eliminating stressors on conservation targets, *e.g.*, predator control, nest parasite control, control of non-native competitors;
- Introducing temperature-tolerant individuals, *e.g.*, resistant corals (see previous discussion) (Urban, Cole, and Overpeck, 2000);
- Eliminating barriers to dispersal;
- Building bridges for dispersal; and
- Increasing food availability.

1 Additional measures to help mitigate the effect of climate change on refuges could  
2 include building new aquatic habitats, acquiring new water sources, creating habitat  
3 islands near sea-ice foraging sites for seabirds, adding drip irrigation to increase humidity  
4 and moisture levels in amphibian microhabitats, etc. The possible unintended effects and  
5 side effects of these and other management actions need to be further studied.

6  
7 Management/conservation partnerships with adjacent landowners to establish more  
8 refuge-compatible land are another useful tool for dealing with the effects of climate  
9 change on the NWRs. For example, refuges could enter into partnerships with  
10 organizations such as the Natural Resources Conservation Service in the USDA,<sup>48</sup> which  
11 offers an extensive list of programs and opportunities to manage and improve the  
12 landscape and to better meet challenges of climate change. Also, refuges could use  
13 existing general statutory (programmatic) authorities to manage collaboratively with  
14 federal, state, tribal, and local governments to meet the challenges of climate change. The  
15 NWRs has approximately six such resource-related (non-administrative) programs. Each  
16 program has one or more statutes that guide or govern its activities, and some of these  
17 statutes overlap among programs. Examples include the Migratory Birds and State  
18 Programs (guided by the Migratory Bird Treaty Act, Pittman-Robertson, Dingell-  
19 Johnson) and the Endangered Species program (Endangered Species Act of 1973, Marine  
20 Mammals Act, etc.).

21  
22 It is probable that the stress from climate change will continue to increase over time,  
23 forcing national wildlife refuge managers and scientists to communicate, collaborate,  
24 manage, and plan together with managers and scientists from adjacent lands. One  
25 possible mechanism that the Department of the Interior could consider to enhance such  
26 collaboration is establishing national coordination entities for both management and  
27 informational aspects of responding to climate change. The National Interagency Fire  
28 Center, in Boise, Idaho,<sup>49</sup> is a potential model to consider. Establishing entities such as a  
29 national interagency climate change council and a national interagency climate change  
30 information network could help ensure that refuges are managed as a system, which will  
31 be a key element in climate change adaptation, as the scale of climate change effects are  
32 such that refuges must be managed in concert with all public lands, not in isolation. A  
33 cabinet-level interagency committee on climate change science and technology  
34 integration has already been created by the current administration.<sup>50</sup> This committee, co-  
35 chaired by the secretaries of commerce and energy, oversees subcabinet interagency  
36 climate change programs.

37  
38 A coordinated information network could assemble information on successful and  
39 unsuccessful management actions and adaptations, and provide extensive literature

---

<sup>48</sup> **U.S. Department of Agriculture**, 2007: NRCS conservation programs. U.S. Department of Agriculture Website, U.S. Department of Agriculture, <http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/Programs/>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>49</sup> **National Interagency Fire Center**, 2007: Welcome, National Interagency Fire Center. National Interagency Fire Center Website, National Interagency Fire Center, Boise, Idaho, [www.nifc.gov](http://www.nifc.gov), accessed on 6-7-2007.

<sup>50</sup> **The White House**, 2007: Addressing global climate change. The White House Website, <http://www.whitehouse.gov/ceq/global-change.html>, accessed on 6-7-2007.

1 information and overviews of all climate-change related research. It could also offer  
2 technical assistance in the use of all available climate change projection models, as well  
3 as support for geographic information systems, databases, and remote sensing for  
4 managers within each of the participating agencies.

5  
6 The scale of the challenge presented by climate change and its intersection with land-use  
7 changes and expanding human populations necessitates new research and management  
8 partnerships. Building on existing partnerships between USGS and the USFWS, agencies  
9 could convene a national research and management conference bringing together  
10 managers and researchers to identify research priorities that are management-relevant and  
11 conducted at scales that are ecologically relevant (Box 5.2). The biannual Colorado  
12 Plateau Research conference provides a model to emulate (van Riper, III and Mattson,  
13 2005).

14  
15 The relatively small size and disjunct distribution of refuges presents a challenge to  
16 maintaining biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health. Yet, the NWRS has  
17 a great deal of experience with land- and water-intensive management, habitat  
18 restoration, and working across jurisdictional boundaries to achieve population  
19 objectives. These skills are critical to effective climate change adaptation. External  
20 challenges to refuge goals have forced refuge managers to deal with transboundary issues  
21 more than most other land managers. Also, because refuge land management is often  
22 similar to private land management in a surrounding ecoregion, refuges can demonstrate  
23 practices that private landowners might adopt in responding to climate change.

24  
25 In order to be efficient in managing refuges in the face of changing climate, the NWRS  
26 should produce a strategic plan for adaptation to global climate change. This plan would  
27 include research priorities, management strategies, and adaptation scenarios that will  
28 guide the USFWS in its task of managing refuges.

29  
30 The collaborative science paradigm must guide the management-science relationship in  
31 order to meet the challenge of global climate change. A beginning would be a small (8–  
32 12 individuals) workshop of service managers and scientists to flesh out the dimensions  
33 of the challenge, using this report and those prepared for other public land managers.  
34 Further collaboration could be facilitated by a national conference of managers and  
35 researchers on challenges of climate change to conservation areas. A central piece of the  
36 conference would be the use of alternative refuge scenarios, documenting the past and  
37 current characteristics of the refuge (including their ecological content and context) and  
38 what they might become, under three alternative climate change scenarios and perhaps  
39 two to three different management scenarios. The fundamental questions throughout this  
40 conference would be: what are we managing toward? What do we expect the NWRS to  
41 be 100 years from now? Which will be the target species and where will they be? What  
42 will be the optimal configuration of refuges under such a climate shift and large scale  
43 changes in vegetation? This national conference could be followed by regional  
44 conferences hosted by each of the USFWS regions. A manager/researcher conference  
45 would need to include thematic breakout sessions to frame management-relevant  
46 questions, identify possible funding sources, and develop collaborative relationships.

1 Ultimately these conferences would be focused on building bridges between research and  
2 management. To be successful, they would be convened every two years. The highly  
3 successful manager/researcher partnership on the Colorado Plateau (van Riper, III and  
4 Mattson, 2005) and the recent (February 2007) joint USGS-USFWS Alaska Climate  
5 Change Forum offer models for such efforts.

#### 6 **5.4.4 Steps for Determining Research and Management Actions**

7 Modeling efforts are one tool that researchers and managers may use to project the effects  
8 of climate change on conservation target species and ecosystems. The following section  
9 describes the different tasks that can be accomplished using modeling tools, highlights  
10 research and management priorities in the face of climate change, and provides examples  
11 of the successful application of these tools (Box 5.3).

##### 12 **5.4.4.1 Modeling and Experimentation**

13 In general, federal law encourages public agencies to employ science in meeting their  
14 mandates. The USFWS has a stronger mandate than most. Indicative of the congressional  
15 encouragement to partner with scientists and use refuges as testing grounds for models is  
16 the statutory definition of key terms in the NWRS mission:

17  
18 *The terms “conserving,” “conservation,” “manage,” “managing,” and*  
19 *“management,” mean to sustain and, where appropriate, restore and enhance,*  
20 *healthy populations of fish, wildlife, and plants utilizing ... methods and*  
21 *procedures associated with modern scientific resource programs. Such methods*  
22 *and procedures include, ... research, census, ... habitat management,*  
23 *propagation, live trapping and transplantation, and regulated taking.<sup>51</sup>*  
24

25 This definition provides ample authority and encouragement for modeling and  
26 experimentation.

##### 27 28 **Inventorying and Monitoring**

29 The NWRS is unique among federal public lands in having a legislative mandate for  
30 monitoring. Congress requires the USFWS to “monitor the status and trends of fish,  
31 wildlife, and plants in each refuge.”<sup>52</sup> However, as with other federal land management  
32 agencies, chronic budget shortfalls severely restrict implementation of monitoring.  
33 Enlisting outside researchers can leverage resources and help achieve mutual goals for  
34 monitoring, but this cannot substitute for a systematic effort to monitor key indicators  
35 identified in unit plans and consistent with a national (or international) system of data  
36 collection. The USFWS policy guiding comprehensive refuge planning is rife with  
37 monitoring mandates, including exhortations to establish objectives that can be  
38 measured,<sup>53</sup> to create monitoring strategies (ibid. at 3.4C(4)(e)), and to perform the  
39 monitoring (ibid. at 3.4C(7)). The National Park Service has developed an extensive  
40 survey monitoring program as well as one suitable for adaptive management (Oakley,

---

<sup>51</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>52</sup> 16 USC § 668dd

<sup>53</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 1 - FW 6

1 Thomas, and Fancy, 2003). Information from monitoring efforts may be used to  
2 document how species respond to alternative management actions and thus inform  
3 adaptive management decisions for the next generation of management actions. Thus,  
4 well-designed and -implemented monitoring programs are absolutely necessary to  
5 conducting rigorous adaptive management efforts.

#### 6 **Understanding and Modeling Interactions between Populations and Habitat**

7 As climate change drives habitat transformation, the abundance and distribution of  
8 wildlife populations will shift—often in unanticipated ways. Therefore, it will become  
9 increasingly important to support adaptive management efforts with greater  
10 understanding of the relationships between habitat and focal species or groups of focal  
11 species. By modeling these relationships at management-relevant scales, the work to  
12 protect and restore additional habitat, promote connectivity, and manipulate habitat  
13 through intensive management can be evaluated against population objectives.

14  
15  
16 There will be winners and losers among the species currently found on the NWRS. The  
17 challenge is to project possible shifts in species distributions, phenologies, and  
18 interspecific relationships, and shifts in ecological and hydrological regimes, and then to  
19 manage toward these new assemblages and distributions. Essential to that process will be  
20 a comprehensive review of the literature. The NWRS is operating in a data-deficit  
21 environment. It does not have an all-taxa survey of refuges; while 85% of refuges have  
22 presence/absence information for birds, many of those that do have no information on  
23 abundance or seasonal occurrence (Pidgorna, 2007). It is the rare refuge that has even  
24 presence/absence data for lesser-known vertebrates. Checklists for plants and  
25 invertebrates are almost unknown. The initial survey effort should be directed at refuges  
26 in which the greatest change is anticipated, and at those species that are identified as most  
27 vulnerable to the effects of climate change, *e.g.*, species occurring on a refuge that is at  
28 the southernmost extreme of a species' range. More explicitly, the NWRS could carry out  
29 the following tasks to target adaptation efforts:

- 30  
31 • *Task:* Facilitate identification of species that occur on refuges.

32  
33 *Tools:* Different tools are available to help facilitate the identification of species  
34 that occur on refuges (Pidgorna, 2007). The Cornell Lab of Ornithology and  
35 Audubon have created an interactive database called “eBird.”<sup>54</sup> It allows birders  
36 from North America to add their observations to existing data on bird occurrences  
37 across the continent. The data can then be queried to reveal information on birds  
38 sighted at specific locations, *e.g.*, the NWRS. Refuge employees could also be  
39 engaged in providing species occurrence information for refuges, and this  
40 database could later be expanded to include other taxonomic groups.

- 41  
42 • *Task:* Develop detailed inventory of species, communities, and unique ecological  
43 features. Few, if any, detailed inventories of the species, communities, and unique  
44 ecological features on refuges have been conducted. The exceptions, *e.g.*,

---

<sup>54</sup> **National Audubon Society and Cornell Lab of Ornithology**, 2007: North America's destination for birding on the web. eBird Website, [www.eBird.org](http://www.eBird.org), accessed on 10-20-2006.

1 waterfowl numbers and reproductive success, provide valuable information by  
2 which refuge managers may measure the effects of climate change on this group  
3 of species. Without these data it will be impossible to monitor changes and to  
4 determine how to allocate resources to protect the biota of the different refuges.

5  
6 *Tools:* Traditional inventory and monitoring methods (Anderson *et al.*, 1987;  
7 Nichols, Johnson, and Williams, 1995) could be used to develop information (in a  
8 database) on sensitivity of all management targets to climate change. These  
9 sensitivities are described in the previous section. Additional information may be  
10 derived from literature searches and existing digital databases. The species  
11 monitoring program used by the National Park Service and the eBird database  
12 (described above) could also be used to facilitate this effort. This will also help  
13 fulfill the USFWS mandate to determine the biological integrity, diversity, and  
14 environmental health of the NWRS, another important research priority.

- 15  
16 • *Task:* Develop more detailed coastal elevation maps. Addressing sea level rise  
17 will require more detailed maps of coastal elevations and accurate, easily applied  
18 models to integrate these maps with projected sea level increases. These maps and  
19 models are also needed to translate projected habitat changes into population  
20 changes and remedies for conservation targets. Expansion of sea water as climate  
21 change raised sea temperatures, along with increases in ocean water volume as  
22 terrestrial ice melted, increased global mean sea level by  $17 \pm 5$  cm in the 20th  
23 century and may raise sea level another 18–59 cm by 2100 (IPCC, 2007a). As a  
24 first approximation, reserve managers can use topographic maps and local surveys  
25 of high tide levels and add 18–59 cm to estimate areas subject to inundation from  
26 climate change.

27  
28 *Tools:* Coastal geomorphology and other factors determine local patterns of sea  
29 level rise. The U.S. Geological Survey has analyzed sea level rise projections,  
30 geomorphology, shoreline erosion and accretion, coastal slope, mean tidal range,  
31 and mean wave height to generate a coastal vulnerability index for the entire coast  
32 of the lower 48 states (Thieler and Hammar-Klose, 1999; 2000a; 2000b). The GIS  
33 data are available online.<sup>55</sup>

34  
35 Because local topography determines actual inundation patterns, only detailed  
36 elevation surveys can identify exact areas subject to flooding from climate  
37 change. USGS has flown light detection and ranging (LIDAR) surveys and  
38 produced a topographic data layer with a 30 cm contour interval for the  
39 Blackwater NWR on Chesapeake Bay, Maryland, which lies entirely below 1  
40 meter above sea level and has lost land area since at least 1938 (Larsen *et al.*,  
41 2004b). The Blackwater inundation model identifies the land areas that may be  
42 submerged by 2100 (Fig. 5.6), providing USFWS staff with the information  
43 needed to plan potential new fee title acquisitions or conservation easements in  
44 contiguous upland areas and potential restoration of inundated wetlands using

---

<sup>55</sup> <http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/cvi>



1 clean dredging material from ship channels.

2  
3 In order to estimate local effects of subsidence, isostatic adjustment,  
4 sedimentation, and hydrologic structures on sea level rise in the Ding Darling,  
5 Egmont Key, Pelican Island, and Pine Island refuges in Florida, the USFWS, the  
6 National Wildlife Federation, and Virginia Polytechnic State University used the  
7 Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model (SLAMM) (Park *et al.*, 1989). The output of  
8 this and similar models include maps that provide “before and after” images of  
9 coastal habitats and tables that provide data on habitat transformations  
10 corresponding to a specific period of time. However, SLAMM requires  
11 considerable skill with GIS and is expensive to use.

- 12  
13 • *Task:* Provide estimates of uncertainty and model concurrence for climate  
14 projections.

15  
16 *Tools:* This task can be accomplished with comprehensive analyses of the  
17 variability across different climate model projections. Specifically, maps of model  
18 agreement and disagreement can be produced using recently derived methods  
19 (*e.g.*, Dettinger, 2005; Araújo and New, 2007). Both maps and concise summaries  
20 of the future projections written for managers and field biologists need to be made  
21 readily available on an easily accessed website and easily downloaded for any  
22 given region.

- 23  
24 • *Task:* Obtain projections of future climate at management-relevant scales.  
25 Projected trends in climate must be summarized and made available to refuge  
26 managers at scales and in forms that are useful to them. The USFWS raw climate  
27 projections from climate models are at a coarse spatial resolution (on the order of  
28 thousands of km<sup>2</sup>). Finer resolution projections of future climate for all of the  
29 most recent model outputs are needed. All downscaled climate data will require  
30 peer review and validation against actual observations.

31  
32 *Tools:* Finer-resolution projections could be generated from downscaled climate  
33 model output using statistical downscaling approaches (*e.g.*, Wilby *et al.*, 1998),  
34 but more preferably would be generated using regional climate models (*e.g.*,  
35 Giorgi, 1990) capable of running off of boundary conditions generated by one or  
36 more global climate models.

- 37  
38 • *Task:* Project climate-induced shifts in vegetation, individual species ranges, and  
39 ranges of invasive and exotic species and summarize data for managers and field  
40 biologists. These projections of climate-induced shifts will aid managers in  
41 determining how specific species or communities on refuges are likely to change  
42 in response to climate change. The projections should quantify uncertainty in  
43 order to account for the variability among future scenarios of climate change. The  
44 challenge of climate change to biotic interactions has been a focus of attention for  
45 over a decade (Kareiva, Kingsolver, and Huey, 1993; Peters and Lovejoy, 1994;  
46 Parmesan and Yohe, 2003; Parmesan, 2006; Lovejoy and Hannah, 2006). These

1 types of projections for both plants (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001; Shafer, Bartlein, and  
2 Thompson, 2001) and animals (Price and Glick, 2002) in North America are now  
3 becoming available, but more projections at management-relevant resolutions are  
4 needed. As with the climate data, these data need to be summarized and made  
5 available to managers and field biologists. In addition to projecting shifts in the  
6 distributions of species that are currently protected on the refuges, models can be  
7 used to project the expansion of ranges of invasive and exotic species (*e.g.*,  
8 Peterson and Vieglais, 2001; Scott *et al.*, 2002).

9  
10 *Tools:* Dynamic global vegetation models (DGVMs) simulate the spatial  
11 distribution of vegetation types, biomass, nutrient flows, and wildfire by iterative  
12 analysis of climate and soil characteristics against observed characteristics of  
13 plant functional types and of biogeochemical, hydrologic, and fire processes. The  
14 LPJ DGVM (Sitch *et al.*, 2003) and the MC1 DGVM (Daly *et al.*, 2000) are the  
15 two most extensively tested and applied DGVMs (Neilson *et al.*, 1998; Bachelet  
16 *et al.*, 2003; Lenihan *et al.*, 2003; Scholze *et al.*, 2006). The Nature Conservancy,  
17 the USDA Forest Service, and Oregon State University are currently engaged in a  
18 collaborative research effort to run MC1 globally at a spatial resolution of 0.5  
19 geographic degrees, approximately 50 km at the Equator, in order to estimate  
20 spatial probabilities of climate change vegetation shifts and to identify climate  
21 change refugia (Gonzalez, Neilson, and Drapek, 2005). The Nature Conservancy  
22 is using these data in order to help set global ecoregional priorities for site-based  
23 conservation, based on climate change and other challenges to habitat (Hoekstra  
24 *et al.*, 2005).

25  
26 The Nature Conservancy-USDA Forest Service-Oregon State University project  
27 is analyzing potential effects from a set of general circulation models of the  
28 atmosphere and Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (2000) greenhouse  
29 gas emissions scenarios. This analysis is producing four spatial indicators of  
30 climate change: temperature change, precipitation change, estimated probability  
31 of vegetation shift at the biome level, and refugia, defined as areas that all  
32 emission scenarios project as stable (Fig. 5.9). Many of the refuges in the NWRS  
33 are projected to experience a biome shift and thus be outside refugia by 2100, and  
34 there is substantial heterogeneity among administrative regions. Even vegetation  
35 changes that do not constitute a biome shift may have substantial implications for  
36 trust species populations as well.

37  
38  
39  
40 **Figure 5.9.** Potential climate change vegetation shifts across North America. A.  
41 Vegetation 1990. B. Projected vegetation 2100, HadCM3 general circulation  
42 model, IPCC (2000) SRES A2 emissions scenario. C. Projected change as fraction  
43 of ecoregion area. D. Potential refugia (Gonzalez, Neilson, and Drapek, 2005).

44  
45 Several other modeling tools and mapping efforts will be required to address the  
46 challenges posed by climate change. An easily applied hydrological model is

1 needed to assess the relative vulnerability of all refuges to changes in temperature  
2 and precipitation. Several hydrological models exist and could be applied to  
3 individual refuges. This would be a major, but important, undertaking. It will also  
4 be critical to assess the current and projected future level of connectivity among  
5 refuges and among all protected lands in general. Maps of current land-cover can  
6 be used to derive estimates of which refuges are most isolated from other  
7 protected lands, and where potential future corridors should be located to connect  
8 protected lands. These maps can be integrated with projections of future  
9 development to determine where additional reductions in connectivity will likely  
10 occur. Land-cover analyses can also be used to identify areas where there will  
11 likely be increased conflicts over water-use for agriculture, residences, and  
12 refuges.

13  
14 While DGVMs model the biogeography of vegetation types, bioclimatic models  
15 for individual species simulate the range of single species (Pearson *et al.*, 2002;  
16 Thomas *et al.*, 2004b; Thuiller, Lavorel, and Araujo, 2005). These models  
17 generally identify areas that fall within the climate tolerance, or envelope, of a  
18 species. Alternatively, some bioclimatic models define species-specific climate  
19 envelopes by correlating field occurrence and climate data. Like DGVMs,  
20 bioclimatic models generally do not simulate dispersal, interspecific interactions,  
21 or evolutionary change (Pearson and Dawson, 2003). Analysis of climate  
22 envelopes for 1,103 plant and animal species and the effect of climate change on  
23 habitat areas defined by species-area relationships indicates that climate change  
24 places 15–37 % of the world’s species at risk of extinction (Thomas *et al.*, 2004a).  
25

26 The USDA Forest Service has analyzed climate envelopes and projected potential  
27 range shifts for 80 North American tree species (Iverson, Schwartz, and Prasad,  
28 2004) and has posted all of the spatial data.<sup>56</sup> These data are available for anyone  
29 proficient in GIS. Natural resource managers could use these species-specific data  
30 to locate refugia or to anticipate migration of new species into an area.

31  
32 Intercomparisons of bioclimatic models for animal and plant species (Lawler *et al.*  
33 *et al.*, 2006; Elith *et al.*, 2006) show variation among models, although MARS-  
34 COMM (Elith *et al.*, 2006) and random forests estimators (Breiman, 2001) have  
35 demonstrated abilities to correctly simulate current species occurrences.  
36 Moreover, ensemble forecasting of species distributions can reduce the  
37 uncertainty of future projections (Araújo and New, 2007). Nevertheless, research  
38 has not adequately tested the ability of bioclimatic models to simulate the new  
39 and unforeseen distributions and assemblages of species that climate change may  
40 generate (Araújo and Rahbek, 2006). The computer-intense and specialized nature  
41 of bioclimatic models has restricted them to academic research.

42  
43 Documenting species’ responses to climate change will be crucial for developing  
44 models to project responses in abundance, migration arrival and departure dates,

---

<sup>56</sup> <http://www.fs.fed.us/ne/delaware/atlas>

1 and distribution for those species that have not yet responded to climate change  
2 (Root *et al.*, 2003). Once the projected responses are available, it will be possible  
3 to identify relevant management options and strategies. It may also be important  
4 to project responses of competitors, parasites, and host species of conservation  
5 targets in order to better manage conservation targets and also prevent invasions  
6 of refuges by non-native weedy species. Quantification of the uncertainty of  
7 projections of climate change, biome shifts, and changes in species ranges will  
8 allow natural resource managers to appropriately weight the results of modeling  
9 efforts that currently show moderate skill and will increase in skill over time.  
10 Validation against field observations will allow objective assessment of climate,  
11 biome, and species data.

12  
13 Paleoclimatic and paleobiological information may be used to estimate the range  
14 of historical changes in species and ecosystem distributions, as well as rates of  
15 past change and their possible implications for future management. However, past  
16 rates of change, and the conditions that caused them, may not be indicative of  
17 future conditions or rates of change. The future will be uncertain. Thus we  
18 suggest that, rather than managing for historical range of variation, or against  
19 historical benchmarks, refuges and the refuge system be managed to maintain  
20 self-sustaining native populations and ecosystems. Refuge managers can increase  
21 their options at the refuge level by reducing non-climatic stressors and increasing  
22 habitat quality and quantity. At the systems level, chances of species surviving on  
23 the refuge system are increased by insuring that the full range of a species'  
24 ecological, geographical, genetic and behavioral variation is found on refuges,  
25 and that it occurs in more than one refuge. For example occurrence of mallard  
26 ducks on a single refuge in the central flyway would be insufficient to insure the  
27 integrity, diversity, and health of mallards in the refuge system.

- 28  
29 • *Task:* Identify those species and ecosystems most vulnerable to effects of climate  
30 change in the context of other pressures on the system(s). Strategic decisions for  
31 refuges and the NWRS regarding the biological integrity, diversity, and health of  
32 refuge species require understanding which occurrences of a species on NWRS  
33 lands are most or least likely to be affected by climate change.

34  
35 *Tools:* Species/populations that will be most vulnerable can be identified through  
36 reviews of the literature to identify species that have already shown shifts in  
37 phenology, distribution, or abundance consistent with climate change, and  
38 through vulnerability assessment to identify the species likely to be most  
39 vulnerable to climate change, *i.e.*, species with poor dispersal capabilities; those  
40 that occur at the extremes of their ecological, geophysical, or geographical ranges;  
41 narrowly distributed species; species with small populations and/or fragmented  
42 distributions; and species susceptible to predation or crowding out by invasive  
43 non-native species.

- 44  
45 • *Task:* Identify those regions and refuges within the NWRS that are most  
46 vulnerable to climate change in the context of other pressures on the system(s).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45

*Tools:* In considering system-wide responses to the challenge of global climate change, managers need to think about management actions necessary to maintain the integrity, diversity, and health of the NWRS as well as that of individual refuges. This will require identifying those refuges that are most vulnerable to climate change through a system-wide vulnerability assessment. A quick review of work to date suggests that the 161 refuges that are characterized as Marine Protected Areas, the 16 refuges in Alaska that account for 82% of the total area in refuges, and the 70 refuges in the Prairie Pothole Region—thus nearly 250 refuges and perhaps 90% of the area of refuges—occur in areas subject to significant climate changes.

- *Task:* Use designated wilderness areas to track environmental changes that result from climate change.

*Tools:* The larger, more intact wilderness tracts would be key elements in our ability to track environmental changes due to climate change. The larger wilderness tracts are predominantly free of the “environmental noise” of more developed areas; therefore, observed changes in ecosystems within wilderness areas could more easily and reliably be attributed to climate change rather than some other factor. Selected wilderness areas should be considered as priority locations to institute baseline inventory work and long-term monitoring.

- *Task:* Weigh projected losses of waterfowl, other conservation targets, and their habitat with possible acquisition of new refuges, and establish new conservation partnerships outside refuge lands as future conditions dictate.

*Tools:* If and when refuges are managed as part of a larger conservation landscape, gains and losses will have to be weighed in terms of the refuges’ conservation partners’ activities (*e.g.*, the Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Forest Service, The Nature Conservancy, National Park Service), the continental or ecoregion system of public and private reserves, as well as land-use practices on matrix lands.

- *Task:* Develop renewed and enhanced management/science partnerships between USFWS, USGS, other state and federal agencies, and academia.

*Tools:* Collaborative relationships could be fostered through host researcher/manager conferences locally, regionally, nationally, and internationally that would allow researchers/managers working together to frame management-relevant research questions. The answers to such questions would increase the ability of refuges and the NWRS to meet the legal mandate of maintaining biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health in the face of the change and uncertainty projected to occur with climate change.

1 Because the ecological needs of many refuge species are more complex than what  
2 is supported by the current NWRS design, their biological integrity, diversity, and  
3 environmental health can only be managed through partnerships with the National  
4 Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, and other public and private managers with  
5 stewardship responsibilities for America’s publicly held conservation lands. For  
6 example, the harlequin duck breeds in clear and sparkling mountain stream  
7 habitats of Olympic National Park and in the U.S. Forest Service’s Frank Church  
8 Wilderness, and it may be found wintering in the marine waters of Willapa NWR  
9 and Oregon Islands NWR. As another example, the State of California has taken  
10 account of climate change in its latest state wildlife action plan (Bunn *et al.*,  
11 2007), which identifies management opportunities for natural habitat that crosses  
12 state, federal, and private land boundaries.

- 14 • *Task:* Develop a vision for the NWRS on its 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary in 2053.

16 *Tools:* What will the conservation targets be: those species that currently occur on  
17 the NWRS, those species for which refuges were established, or threatened and  
18 endangered species for which refuges were established? Or, possibly, some subset  
19 of one of those categories, *e.g.*, waterfowl of North America? Threatened and  
20 endangered species? Invertebrates? Once target species are selected, what level of  
21 abundance will be targeted: minimally viable, ecologically viable, evolutionarily  
22 viable populations, recreationally viable, or something else? It is important to also  
23 consider species that are currently absent from the NWRS, but that could expand  
24 their ranges into the NWRS and become conservation targets in the future, *e.g.*,  
25 Mexican songbirds and hummingbirds. Much of the success of the NWRS’s  
26 efforts to conserve waterfowl species can be attributed to the clearly articulated  
27 vision of Ira Gabrielson and Ding Darling for a system of refuges that would  
28 provide habitat for recreationally viable populations of ducks and geese for the  
29 enjoyment of the American public.

31 Due to the uncertainty associated with climate change, it is essential that  
32 conservation targets not be static. Stopgap targets eventually will contribute to  
33 failure of the adaptation process. Ambiguity and conflict among targets are  
34 potential problems. Regulations and statutes may need to be assessed and  
35 amended in some cases. Refuges with broad mission statements, such as those  
36 created as a result of the Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act  
37 (ANILCA), will have the greatest flexibility to accommodate future change in  
38 species composition. Non-ANILCA refuges will be required to emphasize species  
39 identified in refuge creation mission statements.

41 There are four other key research priorities that will likely involve a combination of  
42 modeling and empirical studies. First, managers need information on how climate change  
43 will affect the prevalence and the intensity of wildlife and plant diseases and pathogens  
44 that pose challenges to refuge species. Are outbreaks of certain diseases mediated by  
45 changes in temperature and moisture? How will a given disease respond to a change in  
46 temperature? How will the geographic ranges of diseases change with climate?

1  
2 A second research need is projections of how the disturbance regimes on refuges will  
3 change. For example, how sensitive to an increase in temperature is the current fire  
4 regime or drought cycle at a given refuge?  
5  
6 A third priority is to investigate the implications of key translocations or “assisted  
7 dispersals.” For species that will likely need to be moved to new sites or other refuges,  
8 where are these new sites, and what are the ecological implications of introducing the  
9 new species?  
10  
11 Finally, research priorities that include developing and enhancing methods and tools to  
12 identify and select the best possible management actions under alternative climate change  
13 scenarios would provide managers with badly needed information. The use of rigorously  
14 tested models, and enhanced species occurrence information for assessing the costs and  
15 benefits of alternative climate change scenarios, would enhance the ability to anticipate  
16 and proactively respond to changes projected under different climate scenarios at both the  
17 refuge and NWRS scales. One could also project species and ecosystem effects with  
18 current or alternate management practices, strategic growth of the refuge, strategic  
19 growth of the NWRS, or establishment of coastal barriers. Developing these and other  
20 research questions in collaborative workshops of managers and researchers will likely  
21 increase chances that results of research will be relevant to managers and increase  
22 chances that the information will be used to make a difference on refuges.

## 23 **5.5 Conclusions**

24 Climate change may be the largest challenge ever faced by the NWRS. It is a global  
25 phenomenon with national, regional, and local effects. It adds a known forcing trend in  
26 temperature to all other stressors and likely creates complex non-linear challenges that  
27 will be exceptionally difficult to understand and to mitigate. New tools, new partnerships  
28 and new ways of thinking will be required to maintain the integrity, diversity, and health  
29 of the refuges in the face of this complexity. The historic vision of refuges as fixed  
30 islands of safe haven for species met existing needs at a time when the population of the  
31 United States was less than half its current size and construction of the first interstate  
32 highway was a decade away. At that time, climates and habitats were perceived to be in  
33 dynamic equilibrium, and species were able to move freely among refuges. Today, the  
34 landscape is highly fragmented, much of the wildlife habitat present in the 1930s and  
35 1940s has been lost, and the dynamic nature of ecological systems is well known. While  
36 Congress’ aspiration for the refuges to serve as a national network for the support of  
37 biological diversity remains sound, the challenge now is to make the refuge network  
38 more resilient and adaptive to a changing environment. Changes have already occurred  
39 that are consistent with those projected under climate change, thus increasing confidence  
40 that future changes in species distribution and behavior will occur with increasing  
41 frequency. Refuge managers are faced with the dilemma of managing for a future  
42 challenge without fully understanding where and when the changes will occur and how  
43 they might best be addressed. How can USFWS fulfill the key legal mandate to maintain

1 the integrity, diversity, and health of conservation targets in an environment that allows  
2 for evolutionary response to the effects of climate change and other selective forces?

3  
4 In this chapter we have identified research initiatives, management/research partnerships,  
5 and efforts that may be used to meet the challenges of climate change. Alaskan refuges,  
6 where effects of climate change are already apparent, have been used to illustrate some of  
7 the challenges facing researchers and managers locally, regionally, and nationally (see  
8 Case Study Summary 5.1). While there is uncertainty about the scale of the projected  
9 effects of climate change on sea level rise, species distributions, phenologies, regime  
10 shifts, precipitation, and temperature, most of these changes have already begun and will  
11 most likely significantly influence the biological integrity, diversity, and health of the  
12 NWRS. These changes will require management actions on individual refuges to restore  
13 habitat; build dispersal bridges for species; eliminate dispersal barriers; increase available  
14 habitat for species through strategic fee title acquisitions, easements or other tools; and  
15 increase cooperative, consultative conservation partnerships if biological integrity,  
16 diversity, and environmental health of refuge populations and systems is to be  
17 maintained. National wildlife refuges, especially those near urban centers, could increase  
18 public awareness of the challenges facing wildlife by developing educational kiosks that  
19 provide information on the effects of climate change, habitat loss and fragmentation on  
20 refuge species.

21  
22 However, actions on individual refuges will be insufficient. NWRS-wide challenges  
23 require system-wide responses. The USFWS's response to the three previous challenges  
24 faced by the NWRS (overhunting in the late 1800s, dust bowl era effects, and the  
25 ongoing loss of biodiversity that began in the second half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century) helped  
26 shape the current system, which is viewed worldwide as a model of what a natural areas  
27 system can be. Climate change, the fourth crisis facing the NWRS, offers us the  
28 opportunity to build on past successes and to do so with a more complete understanding  
29 of ecological systems. While the scale of climate change is unprecedented, so are the  
30 opportunities to make a difference for the future of wildlife and the ecosystems on which  
31 they depend. A response sufficient to the challenge will require new institutional  
32 partnerships; management responses that transcend traditional political, cultural, and  
33 ecological boundaries; greater emphasis on trans-refuge and trans-agency management  
34 and research; strong political leadership and reenergized collaborations between the  
35 USFWS and its research partners in USGS, other federal, state, tribal, and private  
36 organizations, and academic institutions. The scope and magnitude of expected  
37 changes—inundation of coastal refuges, regime shifts, shifts in species distributions and  
38 phenologies—challenges the viability of populations on single refuges as well as the  
39 existence of trust species (threatened and endangered species, migratory birds, marine  
40 mammals, and anadromous and interjurisdictional fish) in the refuge system. The most  
41 important tools available are the species themselves and their abilities to evolve genetic,  
42 physiological, morphological, and behavioral responses to changing climates, site-  
43 specific relationships, and environments. The opportunities for species to evolve in  
44 response to changing environments can be enhanced by ensuring that the full range of the  
45 target species' biogeographical, ecological, geophysical, morphological, behavioral, and  
46 genetic expression is captured in the NWRS (Scott *et al.*, 1993; Shaffer and Stein, 2000).



1  
2 A national interagency climate change council, a national interagency climate change  
3 information network, researcher/manager conferences, research themes and management  
4 strategies, and the species inventories and monitoring programs identified in this chapter  
5 represent some of the initial tools that could enable the USFWS to best meet the  
6 challenge of global climate change. In particular, there is a need for in-depth studies of  
7 the projected effects of climate change on refuges in different ecoregions. Comparing and  
8 contrasting effects in different ecoregional setting may provide insights to future  
9 management, partnership and research opportunities.<sup>57</sup> The most important take-away  
10 messages about the management of the NWRS in the face of climate change are  
11 summarized below.

### 12 **5.5.1 Take Away Messages**

- 13 □ *Response to climate change challenges must occur at multiple integrated scales.*  
14 This must occur both within the NWRS and among partner entities. Individual  
15 symptomatic challenges of climate change must be addressed at the refuge level,  
16 while NWRS planning is the most appropriate level for addressing systemic  
17 challenges to the system. Both top-down and bottom-up approaches must be  
18 integrated. Due to the heterogeneous nature of observed (Figs. 5.3a and 5.b) and  
19 predicted changes in temperature and precipitation, a “one-size-fits-all” solution  
20 will not be appropriate.
- 21 □ *Immediately convene a national research-management workshop.* At this  
22 workshop, researchers and managers could identify and discuss the challenges  
23 presented by projected effects of climate change and collectively identify, frame,  
24 and prioritize management-relevant research questions. Similar workshops could  
25 be convened regionally.
- 26 □ *Establish coordinating bodies, such as a national interagency climate change*  
27 *information network, to provide information and advice on the management of*  
28 *ecosystems and resources.* The scale of climate change is such that public lands  
29 (including refuges) and private lands may be best managed in concert rather than  
30 in isolation. Management and information mechanisms could be established to  
31 support this new level of cooperation. Adaptation to climate change will likely  
32 require an entirely new level of coordination among public lands at multiple  
33 spatial scales. Such coordination could involve national and regional councils that  
34 bring together federal, state, county, and private land owners to share information,  
35 and resources to develop cooperative management/research responses to climate  
36 change. Essential to this effort would be a center that would serve as a  
37 clearinghouse for information on climate change, its effects, and available  
38 management tools. Increased international cooperation will also be necessary,  
39 since climate change does not respect political borders. Lessons could be learned  
40  
41

---

<sup>57</sup> **U.S. Global Change Research Program**, 1997: Impact of land use and climate change in the southwestern United States. U.S. Geological Survey Website, <http://geochange.er.usgs.gov/sw/>, accessed on 11-17-2007.

- 1 from the work done by the intergovernmental Arctic Council and its six working  
2 groups.  
3
- 4 □ *Conduct vulnerability assessments and identify conservation targets.* Peer  
5 reviewed and validated national and regional assessments could be carried out to  
6 identify ecosystems, species, and protected areas facing the greatest risks; this  
7 information then could be used to develop shared conservation targets and  
8 objectives. The most vulnerable species on refuges include those with restricted  
9 ranges, limited dispersal capabilities, and those that occur on a refuge that is at the  
10 geographical, ecological, or geophysical extreme of a species range and/or on a  
11 refuge that provides incomplete life history support.  
12
  - 13 □ *Conduct a series of workshops that compare the costs and benefits of alternative*  
14 *management scenarios.* A series of workshops that evaluate alternative  
15 management scenarios in the face of climate change would provide refuge  
16 managers with a portfolio of tools, solutions, and actions to both proactively and  
17 reactively respond to the effects of climate change.  
18
  - 19 □ *Manage lands as dynamic systems.* It may not be possible to manage for static  
20 conservation targets. Species ranges will shift, disturbance regimes will change,  
21 and ecological processes will be altered. Management actions to decrease non-  
22 climate stressors and enhance the biological integrity, diversity, and health of  
23 refuge species, ecosystems, and ecological processes could include water  
24 impoundment; control of water flow; control of predators, competitors, and nest  
25 parasites on conservation targets; and enhancement of food resources and  
26 breeding habitat (e.g., red-cockaded woodpecker).  
27
  - 28 □ *Ensure that conservation targets provide a representative, resilient, and*  
29 *redundant sample of trust species and communities.* If the conservation targets are  
30 managed through adequate and well-coordinated interagency efforts, their  
31 evolutionary capabilities will be enhanced, viable populations will be maintained,  
32 and the potential for recreational and subsistence uses will be maximized.  
33
  - 34 □ *Strategically increase the effective conservation footprint of the NWRS.*  
35 Adaptation to climate change may require strategic growth of individual refuges  
36 and the NWRS, to increase resilience of populations and the conservation value of  
37 the NWRS through increased representation and redundancy of conservation  
38 target populations in the NWRS. Increased emphasis on providing connectivity  
39 and dispersal corridors among units, especially for trust species that cannot fly,  
40 will be critical. A refuge that has “lost” its establishment and/or acquisition  
41 purpose could still be valuable to the NWRS, if it provides connectivity or is  
42 resilient enough to support different species and processes. The strategic growth  
43 of the NWRS and successful adaptation to climate change will require refuge  
44 managers, scientists, government officials and other stakeholders to look beyond  
45 any one species and any single refuge purpose. The mandate of the NWRS—to  
46 maintain biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of the Refuge

1 System—is so complex and broad that it would be difficult if not impossible to  
2 state that a refuge has lost its larger purpose and will no longer contribute to the  
3 fulfillment of this mandate. The size and distribution of refuges in the NWRS, and  
4 the question of whether individual refuges continue to be capable of contributing  
5 to maintenance of biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health of  
6 various conservation targets need to be vigorously assessed before any decisions  
7 regarding divestiture of existing refuge lands can be made.

8

9 □ *The NWRS was designed principally as a migratory bird network.* The widely  
10 dispersed units provide for the seasonally variable life history requirements for  
11 trust species. Because many birds make use of different parts of the NWRS  
12 throughout the year, the performance of birds on any one component of the  
13 NWRS will be affected by climate-induced changes throughout the NWRS. Thus,  
14 innovative inter- and intra-flyway, inter- and intra-agency, and inter-regional  
15 communication and coordination are needed to understand and adapt to climate  
16 change.

17

18 □ *The policy of managing toward pre-settlement biological integrity, diversity, and*  
19 *environmental health will be more problematic under projected future climate*  
20 *conditions.* Historical benchmarks and their variability may provide long-term  
21 perspective for managers, but historical conditions (species composition,  
22 abundance, distribution, and their variability) are unlikely to be reasonable  
23 management goals in the face of climate change. Pursuing such goals would force  
24 managers to attempt to sustain species in areas where environmental conditions  
25 were no longer suitable. However management for self-sustaining native  
26 populations and ecosystems in the face of change and uncertainty as the standard  
27 would be consistent with maintaining integrity diversity and health of native  
28 species and ecosystems.

29

30 □ *The NWRS has extensive experience working with private landowners and can be*  
31 *a model for private landowner responses to climate change.* With 4 million acres  
32 in easements, the NWRS has developed valuable experience working with  
33 landowners to develop collaborative conservation projects, conservation incentive  
34 programs, and agreements that support system-wide objectives. Because refuge  
35 lands are more productive and at lower elevation than other protected areas, they  
36 are more similar in these characteristics to private lands and thus better suited to  
37 demonstrate practices that private landowners might adopt in responding to  
38 climate change. All public lands should be models for other landowners, but the  
39 refuges may be the most relevant models in many parts of the country.

40

41 □ *Refuges are more disturbed and fragmented than other public land*  
42 *units.* These characteristics may exacerbate the challenges presented by climate-  
43 induced habitat changes. However, the NWRS has substantial experience with  
44 intensive management, a wide range of habitat restoration methods, and cross-  
45 jurisdictional partnerships that should enhance the refuges' ability to achieve  
46 objectives compared with other federal land management systems.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27

- *Education and training of NWRS staff, at all levels, regarding potential implications of climate change for NWRS planning and sustainability is critical.* To facilitate inclusion of climate change considerations into CCPs we suggest that workshops be held that instruct national, regional, and refuge staff on ways to identify options for responding to effects of climate change and means to incorporate this information in planning documents.

The challenge today is to manage to accommodate change in the face of uncertainty. If responses to projected climate change effects fail to match the scale of the challenges, it may not be possible to meet the legal mandate of managing refuges and the NWRS to maintain their biological integrity, diversity, and environmental health. The USGS and USFWS cross-programmatic, strategic, habitat conservation initiative illustrates the type of thinking and planning that will be needed to tackle climate change within the NWRS, across the USFWS, and in collaboration with other agencies (National Ecological Assessment Team, 2006). The integrity and functioning of ecological systems will be maintained only if USFWS manages to accommodate change and reintegrates refuges into the American mind and the American landscape. Our challenge is no different than that faced by Ira Gabrielson, Ding Darling, and other professionals in the 1930s. Isolated conservation fortresses managed to resist change will not fulfill the promise (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 1999) of the NWRSA, nor will they meet the needs of American wildlife. We must articulate a vision of the NWRS that focuses on system status in 2053, the 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary of establishment of the first refuge. What will the NWRS contain, how healthy will it be, and what must we do to fulfill that vision?

1 **5.6 References**

- 2 **Allan**, J.D., M. A. Palmer, and N. L. Poff, 2005: Climate change and freshwater  
3 ecosystems, In: *Climate Change and Biodiversity*, [Lovejoy, T.E. and L. Hannah  
4 (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New Haven.
- 5 **Alward**, R.D., J.K. Detling, and D.G. Milchunas, 1999: Grassland vegetation changes  
6 and nocturnal global warming. *Science*, **283(5399)**, 229-231.
- 7 **Anderson**, D.R., K.P. Burnham, J.D. Nichols, and M.J. Conroy, 1987: The need for  
8 experiments to understand population dynamics of American black ducks.  
9 *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, **15(2)**, 282-284.
- 10 **Araújo**, M.B. and M. New, 2007: Ensemble forecasting of species distributions. *Trends*  
11 *in Ecology and Evolution*, **22**, 42-47.
- 12 **Araújo**, M.B. and C. Rahbek, 2006: How does climate change affect biodiversity?  
13 *Science*, **313(5792)**, 1396-1397.
- 14 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, J.M. Lenihan, and R.J. Drapek, 2001: Climate change effects  
15 on vegetation distribution and carbon budget in the United States. *Ecosystems*, **4**,  
16 164-185.
- 17 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, T. Hickler, R.J. Drapek, J.M. Lenihan, M.T. Sykes, B. Smith,  
18 S. Sitch, and K. Thonicke, 2003: Simulating past and future dynamics of natural  
19 ecosystems in the United States. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **17(2)**, 1045-  
20 1066.
- 21 **Barnett**, T.P., J.C. Adam, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Potential impacts of a warming  
22 climate on water availability in snow-dominated regions. *Nature*, **438(7066)**, 303-  
23 309.
- 24 **Batt**, B.D.J., M. G. Anderson, C. D. Anderson, and F. D. Caswell, 1989: The use of  
25 prairie potholes by North American ducks, In: *Northern Prairie Wetlands*, Iowa  
26 State University Press, Ames, IA, pp. 204-227.
- 27 **Berteaux**, D., D. Reale, A.G. McAdam, and S. Boutin, 2004: Keeping pace with fast  
28 climate change: can arctic life count on evolution? *Integrative and Comparative*  
29 *Biology*, **44(2)**, 140-151.
- 30 **Bildstein**, K.L., 1998: Long-term counts of migrating raptors: a role for volunteers in  
31 wildlife research. *Journal of Wildlife Management*, **62(2)**, 435-445.

- 1 **Blades, E.**, 2007: The National Wildlife Refuge System: providing a conservation  
2 advantage to threatened and endangered species in the United States. *Thesis*.
- 3 **Both, C., S. Bouwhuis, C.M. Lessells, and M.E. Visser**, 2006: Climate change and  
4 population declines in a long-distance migratory bird. *Nature*, **441(7089)**, 81-83.
- 5 **Botkin, D.B.**, 1990: *Discordant Harmonies: a New Ecology for the Twenty-First*  
6 *Century*. Oxford University Press, New York.
- 7 **Breiman, L.**, 2001: Random forests. *Machine Learning*, **45(1)**, 5-32.
- 8 **Brooks, M.L., C.M. D'Antonio, D.M. Richardson, J.B. Grace, J.E. Keeley, J.M.**  
9 **DiTomaso, R.J. Hobbs, M. Pellant, and D. Pyke**, 2004: Effects of invasive alien  
10 plants on fire regimes. *BioScience*, **54**, 677-688.
- 11 **Bunn, D., A. Mummert, M. Hoshovsky, K. Gilardi, and S. Shanks**, 2007: *California*  
12 *Wildlife: Conservation Challenges*. California's Wildlife Action Plan. California  
13 Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.
- 14 **Burkett, V. and J. Kusler**, 2000: Climate change: potential impacts and interactions in  
15 wetlands of the United States. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*,  
16 **36(2)**, 313-320.
- 17 **Caudill, J. and E. Henderson**, 2003: *Banking on Nature 2002: the Economic Benefits to*  
18 *Local Communities of National Wildlife Refuge Visitation*. U.S. Fish and Wildlife  
19 Service, Division of Economics, Washington, DC.
- 20 **Chao, P.**, 1999: Great Lakes water resources: climate change impact analysis with  
21 transient GCM scenarios. *Journal of American Water Resources Association*, **35**,  
22 1499-1507.
- 23 **Cinq-Mars, J. and A.W. Diamond**, 1991: The effects of global climate change on fish  
24 and wildlife resources. *Transactions of the North American Wildlife and Natural*  
25 *Resources Conference*, **NAWTA 6**, 171-176.
- 26 **Curtin, C.G.**, 1993: The evolution of the U.S. National Wildlife Refuge System and the  
27 doctrine of compatibility. *Conservation Biology*, **7(1)**, 29-38.
- 28 **Czech, B.**, 2005: The capacity of the National Wildlife Refuge System to conserve  
29 threatened and endangered animal species in the United States. *Conservation*  
30 *Biology*, **19(4)**, 1246-1253.

- 1 **D'Antonio**, C.M. and P.M. Vitousek, 1992: Biological invasions by exotic grasses, the  
2 grass/fire cycle, and global change. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*,  
3 **23**, 63-87.
- 4 **Daly**, C., D. Bachelet, J.M. Lenihan, R.P. Neilson, W. Parton, and D. Ojima, 2000:  
5 Dynamic simulation of tree-grass interactions for global change studies.  
6 *Ecological Applications*, **10(2)**, 449-469.
- 7 **Daniels**, R.C., T.W. White, and K.K. Chapman, 1993: Sea-level rise: destruction of  
8 threatened and endangered species habitat in South Carolina. *Environmental*  
9 *Management*, **17(3)**, 373-385.
- 10 **Davis**, M.B., R.G. Shaw, and J.R. Etterson, 2005: Evolutionary responses to changing  
11 climate. *Ecology*, **86(7)**, 1704-1714.
- 12 **Davison**, R.P., A. Falcucci, L. Maiorano, and J. M. Scott, 2006: The National Wildlife  
13 Refuge System, In: *The Endangered Species Act at Thirty*, [Goble, D.D., J.M.  
14 Scott, and F.W. Davis (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, Covelo, London, pp. 90-  
15 100.
- 16 **Dettinger**, M.D., 2005: From climate-change spaghetti to climate-change distributions  
17 for 21st century California. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science*, **3(1)**,  
18 Article 4.
- 19 **Donahue**, D.L., 1999: *Western Range Revisited: Removing Livestock From Public Lands*  
20 *to Conserve Native Biodiversity*. University of Oklahoma Press, pp. 1-388.
- 21 **Dukes**, J.S. and H.A. Mooney, 1999: Does global change increase the success of  
22 biological invaders? *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **14(4)**, 135-139.
- 23 **Elith**, J., C.H. Graham, R.P. Anderson, M. Dudík, S. Ferrier, A. Guisan, R.J. Hijmans, F.  
24 Huettmann, J.R. Leathwick, A. Lehmann, J. Li, L.G. Lohmann, B.A. Loiselle, G.  
25 Manion, C. Moritz, M. Nakamura, Y. Nakazawa, J.M. Overton, A.T. Peterson,  
26 S.J. Phillips, K.S. Richardson, R. Scachetti-Pereira, R.E. Schapire, J. Soberón, S.  
27 Williams, M.S. Wisz, and N.E. Zimmermann, 2006: Novel methods improve  
28 prediction of species' distributions from occurrence data. *Ecography*, **29(2)**, 129-  
29 151.
- 30 **Erwin**, R.M., G.M. Sanders, and D.J. Prosser, 2004: Changes in lagoonal marsh  
31 morphology at selected northeastern Atlantic coast sites of significance to  
32 migratory waterbirds. *Wetlands*, **24(4)**, 891-903.

- 1 **Fischman**, R.L., 2003: *The National Wildlife Refuges: Coordinating a Conservation*  
2 *System Through Law*. Island Press, Washington, Covelo, and London.
- 3 **Fischman**, R.L., 2004: The meanings of biological integrity, diversity, and  
4 environmental health. *Natural Resources Journal*, **44**, 989-1026.
- 5 **Fischman**, R.L., 2005: The significance of national wildlife refuges in the development  
6 of U.S. conservation policy. *The Journal of Land Use and Environmental Law*,  
7 **21**, 1-22.
- 8 **Flannigan**, M.D., K.A. Logan, B.D. Amiro, W.R. Skinner, and B.J. Stocks, 2005: Future  
9 area burned in Canada. *Climatic Change*, **72(1)**, 1-16.
- 10 **Ford**, S.E., 1996: Range extension by the oyster parasite *Perkinsus marinus* into the  
11 northeastern United States: response to climate change? *Journal of Shellfish*  
12 *Research*, **15**, 45-56.
- 13 **Frederick**, K.D. and P.H. Gleick, 1999: *Water and Global Climate Change: Potential*  
14 *Impacts on U.S. Water Resources*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change,  
15 Arlington, VA, pp.1-55.
- 16 **Gabrielson**, I.N., 1943: *Wildlife Refuges*. The Macmillan Company, New York.
- 17 **Galbraith**, H., R. Jones, R. Park, J. Clough, S. Herrod-Julius, B. Harrington, and G.  
18 Page, 2002: Global climate change and sea level rise: potential losses of intertidal  
19 habitat for shorebirds. *Waterbirds*, **25(2)**, 173-183.
- 20 **Garrott**, R.A., P.J. White, and C.A.V. White, 1993: Overabundance: an Issue for  
21 conservation biologists? *Conservation Biology*, **7(4)**, 946-949.
- 22 **Gergely**, K., J.M. Scott, and D. Goble, 2000: A new direction for the U.S. National  
23 Wildlife Refuges: the National Wildlife Refuge System Improvement Act of  
24 1997. *Natural Areas Journal*, **20(2)**, 107-118.
- 25 **Giorgi**, F., 1990: Simulation of regional climate using a limited area model nested in a  
26 general circulation model. *Journal of Climate*, **3(9)**, 941-963.
- 27 **Gonzalez**, P., R.P. Neilson, and R.J. Drapek, 2005: Climate change vegetation shifts  
28 across global ecoregions. *Ecological Society of America Annual Meeting*  
29 *Abstracts*, **90**, 228.



- 1 **Grumbine**, R.E., 1990: Viable populations, reserve size, and federal lands management:  
2 a critique. *Conservation Biology*, **4(2)**, 127-134.
- 3 **Guinotte**, J.M., J. Orr, S. Cairns, A. Freiwald, L. Morgan, and R. George, 2006: Will  
4 human-induced changes in seawater chemistry alter the distribution of deep-sea  
5 scleractinian corals? *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **4(3)**, 141-146.
- 6 **Hampe**, A. and R.J. Petit, 2005: Conserving biodiversity under climate change: the rear  
7 edge matters. *Ecology Letters*, **8(5)**, 461-467.
- 8 **Hannah**, L., G.F. Midgley, G.O. Hughes, and B. Bomhard, 2005: The view from the  
9 Cape: extinction risk, protected areas, and climate change. *BioScience*, **55(3)**.
- 10 **Hannah**, L., G.F. Midgley, T. Lovejoy, W.J. Bond, M. Bush, J.C. Lovett, D. Scott, and  
11 F.I. Woodward, 2002: Conservation of biodiversity in a changing climate.  
12 *Conservation Biology*, **16(1)**, 264-268.
- 13 **Harris**, L.D., 1984: *The Fragmented Forest: Island Biogeography Theory and the*  
14 *Preservation of Biotic Diversity*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.
- 15 **Harvell**, C.D., K. Kim, J.M. Burkholder, R.R. Colwell, P.R. Epstein, D.J. Grimes, E.E.  
16 Hofmann, E.K. Lipp, A. Osterhaus, and R.M. Overstreet, 1999: Emerging marine  
17 diseases--climate links and anthropogenic factors. *Science*, **285**, 1505-1510.
- 18 **Harvell**, C.D., C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.  
19 Samuel, 2002: Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota.  
20 *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 21 **Harvell**, D., K. Kim, C. Quirolo, J. Weir, and G. Smith, 2001: Coral bleaching and  
22 disease: contributors to 1998 mass mortality in *Briareum asbestinum*  
23 (*Octocorallia, Gorgonacea*). *Hydrobiologia*, **460(1)**, 97-104.
- 24 **Hayhoe**, K., C.P. Wake, T.G. Huntington, L. Luo, M.D. Schwartz, J. Sheffield, E. Wood,  
25 B. Anderson, J. Bradbury, A. DeGaetano, T.J. Troy, and D. Wolfe, 2007: Past and  
26 future changes in climate and hydrological indicators in the US Northeast.  
27 *Climate Dynamics*, **28(4)**, 381-407.
- 28 **Hayhoe**, K., D. Cayan, C.B. Field, P.C. Frumhoff, E.P. Maurer, N.L. Miller, S.C. Moser,  
29 S.H. Schneider, K.N. Cahill, E.E. Cleland, L. Dale, R. Drapek, R.M. Hanemann,  
30 L.S. Kalkstein, J. Lenihan, C.K. Lunch, R.P. Neilson, S.C. Sheridan, and J.H.  
31 Verville, 2004: Emissions pathways, climate change, and impacts on California.  
32 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
33 **101(34)**, 12422-12427.

- 1 **Hersteinsson**, P. and D.W. Macdonald, 1992: Interspecific competition and the  
2 geographical distribution of red and arctic foxes *Vulpes vulpes* and *Alopex*  
3 *lagopus*. *Oikos*, **64(3)**, 505-515.
- 4 **Hoekstra**, J.M., T.M. Boucher, T.H. Ricketts, and C. Roberts, 2005: Confronting a  
5 biome crisis: global disparities of habitat loss and protection. *Ecology Letters*,  
6 **8(1)**, 23-29.
- 7 **Holling**, C.S., 1973: Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Annual Review of*  
8 *Ecology and Systematics*, **4**, 1-23.
- 9 **Holling**, C.S., 1978: *Adaptive Environmental Assessment and Management*. Blackburn  
10 Press, Caldwell, NJ.
- 11 **Houghton**, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K.  
12 Maskell, and C.A. Johnson, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: the Scientific Basis*.  
13 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- 14 **Hulme**, P.E., 2005: Adapting to climate change: is there scope for ecological  
15 management in the face of a global threat? *Journal of Applied Ecology*, **42(5)**,  
16 784-794.
- 17 **Huntley**, B., Y.C. Collingham, R.E. Green, G.M. Hilton, C. Rahbek, and S.G. Willis,  
18 2006: Potential impacts of climatic change upon geographical distributions of  
19 birds. *Ibis*, **148**, 8-28.
- 20 **Hurd**, B., N. Leary, R. Jones, and J. Smith, 1999: Relative regional vulnerability of water  
21 resources to climate change. *Journal of the American Planning Association*,  
22 **35(6)**, 1399-1409.
- 23 **Inkley**, D.B., M.G. Anderson, A.R. Blaustein, V.R. Burkett, B. Felzer, B. Griffith, J.  
24 Price, and T.L. Root, 2004: *Global Climate Change and Wildlife in North*  
25 *America*. The Wildlife Society, Bethesda, MD.
- 26 **IPCC**, 2000: *Special Report on Emissions Scenarios*. [Nakicenovic, N. and R. Swart  
27 (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 1-570.
- 28 **IPCC**, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability*.  
29 *Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the*  
30 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani,  
31 N.A. Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S. White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
32 Cambridge, UK.

- 1 **IPCC**, 2007a: *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of*  
2 *Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel*  
3 *on Climate Change*. [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis,  
4 K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
5 Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp. 1-996.
- 6 **IPCC**, 2007b: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical*  
7 *Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report*  
8 *of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M.  
9 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
10 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY,  
11 USA.
- 12 **Iverson**, L.R., M.W. Schwartz, and A.M. Prasad, 2004: How fast and far might tree  
13 species migrate in the eastern United States due to climate change? *Global*  
14 *Ecology and Biogeography*, **13(3)**, 209-219.
- 15 **Iverson**, L.R. and A.M. Prasad, 1998: Predicting abundance of 80 tree species following  
16 climate change in the eastern United States. *Ecological Monographs*, **68(4)**, 465-  
17 485.
- 18 **Jackson**, J.B.C., M.X. Kirby, W.H. Berger, K.A. Bjorndal, L.W. Botsford, B.J. Bourque,  
19 R.H. Bradbury, R. Cooke, J. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, T.P. Hughes, S. Kidwell, C.B.  
20 Lange, H.S. Lenihan, J.M. Pandolfi, C.H. Peterson, R.S. Steneck, M.J. Tegner,  
21 and R.R. Warner, 2001: Historical overfishing and the recent collapse of coastal  
22 ecosystems. *Science*, **293**, 629-638.
- 23 **Johnson**, F.A., W.L. Kendall, and J.A. Dubovsky, 2002: Conditions and limitations on  
24 learning in the adaptive management of mallard harvests. *Wildlife Society*  
25 *Bulletin*, **30**, 176-185.
- 26 **Johnson**, W.C., B.V. Millett, T. Gilmanov, R.A. Voldseth, G.R. Guntenspergen, and  
27 D.E. Naugle, 2005: Vulnerability of northern prairie wetlands to climate change.  
28 *BioScience*, **55(10)**, 863-872.
- 29 **Juanes**, F., S. Gephard, and K.F. Beland, 2004: Long-term changes in migration timing  
30 of adult Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) at the southern edge of the species  
31 distribution. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **61(12)**, 2392-  
32 2400.
- 33 **Jump**, A.S. and J. Peñuelas, 2005: Running to stand still: adaptation and the response of  
34 plants to rapid climate change. *Ecology Letters*, **8(9)**, 1010-1020.

- 1 **Kareiva**, P.M., J. G. Kingsolver, and R. B. Huey, 1993: Introduction, In: *Biotic*  
2 *Interactions and Global Change*, Sinauer Associates Inc., Sunderland, MA, pp. 1-  
3 6.
- 4 **Knox**, J.C., 1993: Large increases in flood magnitude in response to modest changes in  
5 climate. *Nature*, **361(6411)**, 430-432.
- 6 **Kutz**, S.J., E.P. Hoberg, L. Polley, and E.J. Jenkins, 2005: Global warming is changing  
7 the dynamics of Arctic host-parasite systems. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of*  
8 *London, Series B: Biological Sciences*, **272(1581)**, 2571-2576.
- 9 **LaPointe**, D., T. L. Benning, and C. T. Atkinson, 2005: Avian malaria, climate change,  
10 and native birds of Hawaii, In: *Climate Change and Biodiversity*, [Lovejoy, T.E.  
11 and L. Hannah (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New Haven, pp. 317-321.
- 12 **Larsen**, C.F., R.J. Motyka, J.T. Freymueller, and K. Echelmeyer, 2004a: Rapid uplift of  
13 southern Alaska caused by recent ice loss. *Geophysical Journal International*,  
14 **158(3)**, 1118-1133.
- 15 **Larsen**, C.F., R.J. Motyka, J.T. Freymueller, K.A. Echelmeyer, and E.R. Ivins, 2005:  
16 Rapid viscoelastic uplift in southeast Alaska caused by post-Little Ice Age glacial  
17 retreat. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, **237(3)**, 548-560.
- 18 **Larsen**, C.I., G. Clark, G. Guntenspergen, D.R. Cahoon, V. Caruso, C. Huppo, and T.  
19 Yanosky, 2004b: *The Blackwater NWR Inundation Model. Rising Sea Level on a*  
20 *Low-Lying Coast: Land Use Planning for Wetlands*. U.S. Geological Survey,  
21 Reston, VA.
- 22 **Larson**, D.L., 1995: Effects of climate on numbers of northern prairie wetlands. *Climatic*  
23 *Change*, **30(2)**, 169-180.
- 24 **Lawler**, J.J., D. White, R.P. Neilson, and A.R. Blaustein, 2006: Predicting climate-  
25 induced range shifts: model differences and model reliability. *Global Change*  
26 *Biology*, **12**, 1568-1584.
- 27 **Lemke**, P., J. Ren, R. B. Alley, I. Allison, J. Carrasco, G. M. Flato, Y. Fujii, G. Kaser, P.  
28 Mote, R. H. Thomas, and T. Zhang, 2007: Observations: changes in snow, ice and  
29 frozen ground, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis.*  
30 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
31 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Quin, M.  
32 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
33 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

- 1 **Lenihan, J.M., R. Drapek, D. Bachelet, and R.P. Neilson, 2003: Climate change effects**  
2 **on vegetation distribution, carbon, and fire in California. *Ecological Applications,***  
3 **13(6), 1667-1681.**
- 4 **Logan, J.A., J. Regniere, and J.A. Powell, 2003: Assessing the impacts of global**  
5 **warming on forest pest dynamics. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment,***  
6 **1(3), 130-137.**
- 7 **Lovejoy, T.E. and L. Hannah, 2006: *Climate Change and Biodiversity.* [Lovejoy, T.E.**  
8 **and L. Hannah (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.**
- 9 **MacPherson, A.H., 1964: A northward range extension of the red fox in the eastern**  
10 **Canadian arctic. *Journal of Mammalogy,* 45(1), 138-140.**
- 11 **Magnuson, J.J., K.E. Webster, R.A. Assel, C.J. Bowser, P.J. Dillon, J.G. Eaton, H.E.**  
12 **Evans, E.J. Fee, R.I. Hall, L.R. Mortsch, D.W. Schindler, and F.H. Quinn, 1997:**  
13 **Potential effects of climate changes on aquatic systems: Laurentian Great Lakes**  
14 **and Precambrian shield region. *Hydrological Processes,* 11, 825-871.**
- 15 **Marsh, P. and N.N. Neumann, 2001: Processes controlling the rapid drainage of two ice-**  
16 **rich permafrost-dammed lakes in NW Canada. *Hydrological Processes,* 15(18),**  
17 **3433-3446.**
- 18 **Matthews, W.J. and E.G. Zimmerman, 1990: Potential effects of global warming on**  
19 **native fishes of the southern Great Plains and the Southwest. *Fisheries,* 15, 26-32.**
- 20 **McLachlan, J.S., J.J. Hellmann, and M.W. Schwartz, 2007: A framework for debate of**  
21 **assisted migration in an era of climate change. *Conservation Biology,* 21(2), 297-**  
22 **302.**
- 23 **Meehl, G.A., W.M. Washington, W.D. Collins, J.M. Arblaster, A. Hu, L.E. Buja, W.G.**  
24 **Strand, and H. Teng, 2005: How much more global warming and sea level rise?**  
25 ***Science,* 307(5716), 1769-1772.**
- 26 **Michener, W.K., E.R. Blood, K.L. Bildstein, M.M. Brinson, and L.R. Gardner, 1997:**  
27 **Climate change, hurricanes and tropical storms, and rising sea level in coastal**  
28 **wetlands. *Ecological Applications,* 7(3), 770-801.**
- 29 **Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2006: *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Current***  
30 ***State and Trends.* Island Press, Washington, DC.**

- 1 **Milly**, P.C.D., K.A. Dunne, and A.V. Vecchia, 2005: Global pattern of trends in  
2 streamflow and water availability in a changing climate. *Nature*, **438(7066)**, 347-  
3 350.
- 4 **Moore**, M.V., M.L. Pace, J.R. Mather, P.S. Murdoch, R.W. Howarth, C.L. Folt, C.Y.  
5 Chen, H.F. Hemond, P.A. Flebbe, and C.T. Driscoll, 1997: Potential effects of  
6 climate change on freshwater ecosystems of the New England/Mid-Atlantic  
7 Region. *Hydrological Processes*, **11**, 925-947.
- 8 **Mote**, P.W., E.A. Parson, A.F. Hamlet, W.S. Keeton, D. Lettenmaier, N. Mantua, E.L.  
9 Miles, D.W. Peterson, D.L. Peterson, R. Slaughter, and A.K. Snover, 2003:  
10 Preparing for climatic change: the water, salmon, and forests of the Pacific  
11 Northwest. *Climatic Change*, **61(1)**, 45-88.
- 12 **National Ecological Assessment Team**, 2006: *Strategic Habitat Conservation Initiative*  
13 *Final Report*. U.S. Geological Survey and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.
- 14 **National Research Council**, 2007: *Endangered and Threatened Fishes in the Klamath*  
15 *River Basin: Causes of Decline and Strategies for Recovery*. National Research  
16 Council, Washington, DC.
- 17 **Neilson**, R.P., I. C. Prentice, B. Smith, T. G. F. Kittel, and D. Viner, 1998: Simulated  
18 changes in vegetation distribution under global warming, In: *The Regional*  
19 *Impacts of Climate Change: an Assessment of Vulnerability*, Intergovernmental  
20 Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 439-  
21 456.
- 22 **Nichols**, J.D., F.A. Johnson, and B.K. Williams, 1995: Managing North American  
23 waterfowl in the face of uncertainty. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*,  
24 **26**, 177-199.
- 25 **Noss**, R.F., 1987: Protecting natural areas in fragmented landscapes. *Natural Areas*  
26 *Journal*, **7(1)**, 2-13.
- 27 **Oakley**, K.L., L.P. Thomas, and S.G. Fancy, 2003: Guidelines for long-term monitoring  
28 protocols. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, **31(4)**, 1000-1003.
- 29 **Omernik**, J.M., 1987: Ecoregions of the conterminous United States. *Annals of the*  
30 *Association of American Geographers*, **77(1)**, 118-125.
- 31 **Pamperin**, N.J., E.H. Follmann, and B. Petersen, 2006: Interspecific killing of an arctic  
32 fox by a red fox at Prudhoe Bay, Alaska. *Arctic*, **59(4)**, 361-364.

- 1 **Park, R.A., M. S. Treehan, P. W. Mausel, and R. C. Howe, 1989:** The effects of sea level  
2 rise on US coastal wetlands, In: *Potential Effects of Global Climate Change on*  
3 *the United States*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- 4 **Parmesan, C. and G. Yohe, 2003:** A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change  
5 impacts across natural systems. *Nature*, **421**, 37-42.
- 6 **Parmesan, C., 2006:** Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change.  
7 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 637-669.
- 8 **Payette, S., M.J. Fortin, and I. Gamache, 2001:** The subarctic forest tundra: the structure  
9 of a biome in a changing climate. *BioScience*, **51(9)**, 709-718.
- 10 **Pearson, R.G. and T.P. Dawson, 2003:** Predicting the impacts of climate change on the  
11 distribution of species: are climate envelope models useful? *Global Ecology and*  
12 *Biogeography*, **12**, 361-371.
- 13 **Pearson, R.G., T.P. Dawson, P.M. Berry, and P.A. Harrison, 2002:** SPECIES: A spatial  
14 evaluation of climate impact on the envelope of species. *Ecological Modelling*,  
15 **154(3)**, 289-300.
- 16 **Peters, R.L. and T. E. Lovejoy, 1994:** Global warming and biological diversity,  
17 [Lovejoy, T.E. and R.L. Peters (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.
- 18 **Peterson, A.T., L.G. Ball, and K.C. Cohoon, 2002:** Predicting distributions of tropical  
19 birds. *Ibis*, **144**, e27-e32.
- 20 **Peterson, A.T., H. Tian, E. Martinez-Meyer, J. Soberon, V. Sanchez-Cordero, and B.**  
21 **Huntley, 2005:** Modeling distributional shifts of individual species and biomes,  
22 In: *Climate Change and Biodiversity*, [Lovejoy, T.E. and L. Hannah (eds.)]. Yale  
23 University Press, New Haven, pp. 211-228.
- 24 **Peterson, A.T. and D.A. Vieglais, 2001:** Predicting species invasions using ecological  
25 niche modeling: new approaches from bioinformatics attack a pressing problem.  
26 *BioScience*, **51(5)**, 363-371.
- 27 **Pidgorna, A.B., 2007:** Representation, redundancy, and resilience: waterfowl and the  
28 National Wildlife Refuge System. *Dissertation*.
- 29 **Poff, N.L., M.M. Brinson, and J.W. Day, Jr., 2002:** *Aquatic Ecosystems & Global*  
30 *Climate Change: Potential Impacts on Inland Freshwater and Coastal Wetland*  
31 *Ecosystems in the United States*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change,  
32 Arlington, VA, pp.1-56.

- 1 **Poiani**, K.A. and W.C. Johnson, 1991: Global warming and prairie wetlands: potential  
2 consequences for waterfowl habitat. *BioScience*, **41(9)**, 611-618.
- 3 **Pounds**, A.J., M.R. Bustamante, L.A. Coloma, J.A. Consuegra, M.P.L. Fogden, P.N.  
4 Foster, E. La Marca, K.L. Masters, A. Merino-Viteri, R. Puschendorf, S.R. Ron,  
5 G.A. Sanchez-Azofeifa, C.J. Still, and B.E. Young, 2006: Widespread amphibian  
6 extinctions from epidemic disease driven by global warming. *Nature*, **439(7073)**,  
7 161-167.
- 8 **Price**, J. and P. Glick, 2002: *The Bird Watcher's Guide to Global Warming*. National  
9 Wildlife Federation and the American Bird Conservancy, Reston, Virginia.
- 10 **Randerson**, J.T., H. Liu, M.G. Flanner, S.D. Chambers, Y. Jin, P.G. Hess, G. Pfister,  
11 M.C. Mack, K.K. Treseder, L.R. Welp, F.S. Chapin, III, J.W. Harden, M.L.  
12 Goulden, E. Lyons, J.C. Neff, E.A.G. Schuur, and C.S. Zender, 2006: The impact  
13 of boreal forest fire on climate warming. *Science*, **314(5802)**, 1130-1132.
- 14 **Root**, T.L., J.T. Price, K.R. Hall, S.H. Schneider, C. Rosenzweig, and J.A. Pounds, 2003:  
15 Fingerprints of global warming on wild animals and plants. *Nature*, **421**, 57-60.
- 16 **Ross**, M.S., J.J. O'Brien, and L.d.S.L. Sternberg, 1994: Sea-level rise and the reduction in  
17 pine forests in the Florida Keys. *Ecological Applications*, **4(1)**, 144-156.
- 18 **Rouse**, W.R., M.S.V. Douglas, R.E. Hecky, A.E. Hershey, G.W. Kling, L. Lesack, P.  
19 Marsh, M. McDonald, B.J. Nicholson, N.T. Roulet, and J.P. Smol, 1997: Effects  
20 of climate change on the freshwaters of Arctic and subarctic North America.  
21 *Hydrological Processes*, **11**, 873-902.
- 22 **Roy**, S.B., P.F. Ricci, K.V. Summers, C.F. Chung, and R.A. Goldstein, 2005: Evaluation  
23 of the sustainability of water withdrawals in the United States, 1995 to 2025.  
24 *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, **41(5)**, 1091-1108.
- 25 **Rueda**, L.M., K.J. Patel, R.C. Axtell, and R.E. Stinner, 1990: Temperature-dependent  
26 development and survival rates of *Culex quinquefasciatus* and *Aedes aegypti*  
27 (Diptera: Culicidae). *Journal of Medical Entomology*, **27(5)**, 892-898.
- 28 **Rupp**, T.S., F.S. Chapin, and A.M. Starfield, 2000: Response of subarctic vegetation to  
29 transient climatic change on the Seward Peninsula in north-west Alaska. *Global  
30 Change Biology*, **6(5)**, 541-555.
- 31 **Russell**, F.L., D.B. Zippin, and N.L. Fowler, 2001: Effects of white-tailed deer  
32 (*Odocoileus virginianus*) on plants, plant populations and communities: a review.  
33 *American Midland Naturalist*, **146(1)**, 1-26.



- 1 **Salafsky**, N., R. Margoluis, and K.H. Redford, 2001: *Adaptive Management: a Tool for*  
2 *Conservation Practitioners*. Biodiversity Support Program, Washington, DC.
- 3 **Satchell**, M., 2003: Troubled waters. *National Wildlife*, **41(2)**, 35-41.
- 4 **Sauer**, J.R., G.W. Pendleton, and B.G. Peterjohn, 1996: Evaluating causes of population  
5 change in North American insectivorous songbirds. *Conservation Biology*, **10(2)**,  
6 465-478.
- 7 **Schindler**, D.W., 1998: A dim future for boreal waters and landscapes. *BioScience*,  
8 **48(3)**, 157-164.
- 9 **Schoennagel**, T., T.T. Veblen, and W.H. Romme, 2004: The interaction of fire, fuels,  
10 and climate across rocky mountain forests. *BioScience*, **54(7)**, 661-676.
- 11 **Scholze**, M., W. Knorr, N.W. Arnell, and I.C. Prentice, 2006: A climate-change risk  
12 analysis for world ecosystems. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*  
13 *of the United States of America*, **103**, 13116-13120.
- 14 **Scott**, J.M., F. Davis, B. Csuti, R. Noss, B. Butterfield, C. Groves, H. Anderson, S.  
15 Caicco, F. Derchia, T.C. Edwards Jr, J. Ulliman, Jr., and R.G. Wright, 1993: GAP  
16 analysis: a geographical approach to protection of biological diversity. *Wildlife*  
17 *monographs*, **123**, 1-41.
- 18 **Scott**, J.M., P.J. Heglund, M.L. Morrison, J.B. Haufler, M.G. Raphael, W.A. Wall, and  
19 F.B. Samson, 2002: *Predicting Species Occurrences: Issues of Accuracy and*  
20 *Scale*. Island Press, Washington, pp. 1-868.
- 21 **Scott**, J.M., T. Loveland, K. Gergely, J. Strittholt, and N. Staus, 2004: National Wildlife  
22 Refuge System: ecological context and integrity. *Natural Resources Journal*,  
23 **44(4)**, 1041-1066.
- 24 **Serreze**, M.C., J.E. Walsh, F.S. Chapin III, T. Osterkamp, M. Dyurgerov, V.  
25 Romanovsky, W.C. Oechel, J. Morison, T. Zhang, and R.G. Barry, 2000:  
26 Observational evidence of recent change in the northern high-latitude  
27 environment. *Climatic Change*, **46(1-2)**, 159-207.
- 28 **Shafer**, S.L., P.J. Bartlein, and R.S. Thompson, 2001: Potential changes in the  
29 distribution of western North America tree and shrub taxa under future climate  
30 scenarios. *Ecosystems*, **4**, 200-215.

- 1 **Shaffer**, M.L. and B. A. Stein, 2000: Safeguarding our precious heritage, In: *Precious*  
2 *Heritage: the Status of Biodiversity in the United States*, [Stein, B.A., L.S. Kutner,  
3 and J.S. Adams (eds.)]. Oxford University Press, New York, pp. 301-321.
- 4 **Sitch**, S., B. Smith, I.C. Prentice, A. Arneth, A. Bondeau, W. Cramer, J.O. Kaplan, S.  
5 Levis, W. Lucht, M.T. Sykes, K. Thonicke, and S. Venevsky, 2003: Evaluation of  
6 ecosystem dynamics, plant geography and terrestrial carbon cycling in the LPJ  
7 dynamic global vegetation model. *Global Change Biology*, **9**, 161-185.
- 8 **Small**, C., V. Gornitz, and J.E. Cohen, 2000: Coastal hazards and the global distribution  
9 of human population. *Environmental Geosciences*, **7(1)**, 3-12.
- 10 **Sorenson**, L.G., R. Goldberg, T.L. Root, and M.G. Anderson, 1998: Potential effects of  
11 global warming on waterfowl populations breeding in the Northern Great Plains.  
12 *Climatic Change*, **40(2)**, 343-369.
- 13 **Soulé**, M.E., 1987: *Viable Populations*. Cambridge University Press, New York, NY.
- 14 **Striegl**, R.G., G.R. Aiken, M.M. Dornblaser, P.A. Raymond, and K.P. Wickland, 2005:  
15 A decrease in discharge-normalized DOC export by the Yukon River during  
16 summer through autumn. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **32(21)**, L21413.
- 17 **Sutherst**, R., 2000: Climate change and invasive species: a conceptual framework, In:  
18 *Invasive Species in a Changing World*, [Mooney, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs (eds.)].  
19 Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 211-240.
- 20 **Tabb**, D.C. and A.C. Jones, 1962: Effect of Hurricane Donna on the aquatic fauna of  
21 North Florida Bay. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, **91(4)**, 375-  
22 378.
- 23 **Thieler**, E.R. and E.S. Hammar-Klose, 1999: *National Assessment of Coastal*  
24 *Vulnerability to Future Sea-Level Rise: Preliminary Results for the U.S. Atlantic*  
25 *Coast*. U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 99-593, U.S. Geological Survey,  
26 Woods Hole, MA.
- 27 **Thieler**, E.R. and E.S. Hammar-Klose, 2000a: *National Assessment of Coastal*  
28 *Vulnerability to Future Sea-Level Rise: Preliminary Results for the U.S. Gulf of*  
29 *Mexico Coast*. U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 00-179, U.S. Geological  
30 Survey, Woods Hole, MA.
- 31 **Thieler**, E.R. and E.S. Hammar-Klose, 2000b: *National Assessment of Coastal*  
32 *Vulnerability to Future Sea-Level Rise: Preliminary Results for the U.S. Pacific*

- 1            *Coast*. U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 00-178, U.S. Geological Survey,  
2            Woods Hole, MA.
- 3    **Thomas, C.D., A. Cameron, R.E. Green, M. Bakkenes, L.J. Beaumont, Y.C. Collingham,**  
4            **B.F.N. Erasmus, M.F. de Siqueira, A. Grainger, L. Hannah, L. Hughes, B.**  
5            **Huntley, A.S. Van Jaarsveld, G.F. Midgley, L. Miles, M.A. Ortega-Huerta, A.T.**  
6            **Peterson, O.L. Phillips, and S.E. Williams, 2004a: Extinction risk from climate**  
7            **change. *Nature*, **427(6970)**, 145-148.**
- 8    **Thomas, C.D., A. Cameron, R.E. Green, M. Bakkenes, L.J. Beaumont, Y.C. Collingham,**  
9            **B.F.N. Erasmus, M.F. de Siqueira, A. Grainger, L. Hannah, L. Hughes, B.R.I.A.**  
10           **Huntley, A.S. Van Jaarsveld, G.F. Midgley, L. Miles, M.A. Ortega-Huerta, A.T.**  
11           **Peterson, O.L. Phillips, and S.E. Williams, 2004b: Extinction risk from climate**  
12           **change. *Nature*, **427**, 145-148.**
- 13    **Thuiller, W., S. Lavorel, and M.B. Araujo, 2005: Niche properties and geographical**  
14           **extent as predictors of species sensitivity to climate change. *Global Ecology and***  
15           ***Biogeography*, **14(4)**, 347-357.**
- 16    **Titus, J.G. and C. Richman, 2001: Maps of lands vulnerable to sea level rise: modeled**  
17           **elevations along the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf Coasts. *Climate Research*, **18**, 205-**  
18           **228.**
- 19    **Tompkins, E.L. and N.W. Adger, 2004: Does adaptive management of natural resources**  
20           **enhance resilience to climate change? *Ecology and Society*, **19(2)**.**
- 21    **Turner, B.L., II, R.E. Kasperson, P.A. Matsone, J.J. McCarthy, R.W. Corell, L.**  
22           **Christensene, N. Eckley, J.X. Kasperson, A. Luerse, M.L. Martello, C. Polsky, A.**  
23           **Pulsipher, and A. Schiller, 2003: A framework for vulnerability analysis in**  
24           **sustainability science. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the***  
25           ***United States of America*, **100(14)**, 8074-8079.**
- 26    **U.S. Climate Change Science Program, 2007: *Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.1:***  
27           ***Coastal Elevation and Sensitivity to Sea Level Rise*. A report by the U.S. Climate**  
28           **Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research,**  
29           **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.**
- 30    **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 1989: Endangered species in the wake of hurricane**  
31           **Hugo. *Endangered Species Technical Bulletin*, **XIV(9-10)**, 3-7.**
- 32    **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 1996: *Land Acquisition Planning*. 341 FW2.**

- 1 **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 1999: *Fulfilling the Promise: the National Wildlife*  
2 *Refuge System*. The National Wildlife Refuge System, U.S. Fish and Wildlife  
3 Service, Department of Interior, Washington, DC.
- 4 **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and Canadian Wildlife Service**, 1986: *North American*  
5 *Waterfowl Management Plan*. US Department of the Interior, Environment  
6 Canada.
- 7 **Urban**, F.E., J.E. Cole, and J.T. Overpeck, 2000: Influence of mean climate change on  
8 climate variability from a 155-year tropical Pacific coral record. *Nature*,  
9 **407(6807)**, 989-993.
- 10 **van Riper**, C., III and D.J. Mattson, 2005: *The Colorado Plateau: Biophysical,*  
11 *Socioeconomic, and Cultural Research*. University of Arizona Press.
- 12 **Walters**, C., 1986: *Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources*. McGraw Hill, New  
13 York.
- 14 **Walther**, G.R., E. Post, P. Convey, A. Menzel, C. Parmesan, T.J.C. Beebee, J.M.  
15 Fromentin, O. Hoegh-Guldberg, and F. Bairlein, 2002: Ecological responses to  
16 recent climate change. *Nature*, **416**, 389-395.
- 17 **Watson**, R.T., M.C. Zinyowera, and R.H. Moss, 1996: *Climate Change 1995 - Impacts,*  
18 *Adaptations and Mitigation of Climate Change: Scientific-Technical Analyses*.  
19 Contribution of Working Group II to the Second Assessment Report of the  
20 Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, Cambridge University Press,  
21 Cambridge, MA.
- 22 **Westbrooks**, R.G., 2001: Potential impacts of global climate changes on the  
23 establishment and spread on invasive species. *Transactions of the North American*  
24 *Wildlife and Natural Resources Conference*, **66**, 344-370.
- 25 **Westerling**, A.L., H.G. Hidalgo, D.R. Cayan, and T.W. Swetnam, 2006: Warming and  
26 earlier spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. *Science*, **313(5789)**,  
27 940-943.
- 28 **Wilby**, R.L., T.M.L. Wigley, D. Conway, P.D. Jones, B.C. Hewitson, J. Main, and D.S.  
29 Wilks, 1998: Statistical downscaling of general circulation model output: a  
30 comparison of methods. *Water Resources Research*, **34(11)**, 2995-3008.
- 31 **Williams**, B.K., R.C. Szaro, and C.D. Shapiro, 2007: *Adaptive Management: The U.S.*  
32 *Department of the Interior Technical Guide*. Adaptive Management Working  
33 Group, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, DC.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Wildlife Refuges**

1 **Winter**, T.C., 2000: The vulnerability of wetlands to climate change: a hydrologic  
2 landscape perspective. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*,  
3 **36(2)**, 305-311.

4 **Zimov**, S.A., E.A.G. Schuur, and F.S. Chapin, III, 2006: Climate change: permafrost and  
5 the global carbon budget. *Science*, **312(5780)**, 1612-1613.  
6  
7

## 1 **5.7 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 We extend our sincere thanks to Michael Higgins for writing the section on Water  
4 Quality and Quantity; David Rupp and Emmi Blades for use of their unpublished  
5 information; Jane Austin for reviewing earlier versions of this manuscript; Jennifer  
6 Roach for GIS assistance; Jenn Miller and Gina Wilson for citation assistance; and Mark  
7 Bertram, Larry Bright, Vernon Byrd, Danielle Jerry, Rex Reynolds, Ron Reynolds, and  
8 David Stone for their invaluable comments and suggestions for the development of this  
9 report.

10

### 11 **Workshop Participants**

12

- 13     ▪ Dawn Browne, Ducks Unlimited
- 14     ▪ Tom Franklin, Izaak Walton League
- 15     ▪ Doug Inkley, National Wildlife Federation
- 16     ▪ Danielle G. Jerry, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 17     ▪ Kurt Johnson, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 18     ▪ James Kurth, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 19     ▪ Noah Matson, Defenders of Wildlife
- 20     ▪ Sean McMahon, National Wildlife Federation
- 21     ▪ Maribeth Oakes, The Wilderness Society
- 22     ▪ Michael Woodbridge, National Wildlife Refuge Association

23

### 24 **Alaska Refuges Workshop Participants**

25

- 26     ▪ Mark Bertram, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 27     ▪ Philip Martin, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 28     ▪ Julian Fischer, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 29     ▪ Vernon Byrd, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 30     ▪ Keith Mueller, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 31     ▪ David Douglas, U. S. Geological Survey
- 32     ▪ Bill Hanson, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 33     ▪ Cynthia Wentworth, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 34     ▪ Patrick Walsh, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 35     ▪ Cathy Rezabeck, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

1 **5.8 Appendix: Actions to Assist Managers in Meeting the Challenges Posed by the Challenge of**  
 2 **Climate Change**<sup>58</sup>  
 3

Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
Changes in invasive species (increases or shifts in the types)	New invasive species may affect refuges; warming temperatures may enable the survival of exotic species that previously were controlled by cold winter temperatures.			Remove exotics; prevent and control invasive pests. <sup>59</sup>		
Sea level rise	Loss of high and intertidal marsh; species affected: migratory waterfowl, shorebirds, threatened and endangered species, anadromous fish.	Need better models and projections of sea level rise; more extensive use of SLAMM (Sea Level and Marsh Migration Model).	Refuge boundaries may need to be established in a different way (e.g., Arctic refuge has ambulatory boundaries that are going to shift with sea level rise—	Avoid acquiring additional bunkered/coastal lands; do acquire land further inland in areas where sea level projected to rise; avoid maladaptive activities such as moving wetland grasses/removing peat content.	Expand collaboration with other federal agencies, state agencies, private organizations to increase/share knowledge.	Need better monitoring system. Managers need adaptation tools.

<sup>58</sup> The content of this table was taken from the ideas that emerged during the stakeholder workshop.

<sup>59</sup> **Combes, S.**, 2003: Protecting freshwater ecosystems in the face of global climate change, In: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*, [Hansen, L.J., J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman (eds.)]. World Wildlife Foundation, Washington, DC, pp. 1-244 as cited in: **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan*. Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10–11, 2006.

Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
Salt water intrusion	Flooding of coastal marshes and other low-lying lands and loss of species that rely on marsh habitat, beach erosion, increases in the salinity of rivers and groundwater. <sup>60</sup>		meaning that the islands and lagoon will be lost); dikes and impoundments are temporary, so longer term solutions need to be sought. Yes, but will need to decide if managers should manage for original conditions or regime shift.	Restoration of saltmarshes may be facilitated by removal of existing coastal armoring structures such as dikes and seawalls, which may create new coastal habitat in the face of sea level rise. Presence of seawalls at one site in Texas increased the rate of habitat loss by about 20% (Galbraith <i>et al.</i> , 2002).		
Hydrologic changes	See Cinq-Mars and Diamond (1991) for discussion of how changes in precipitation may affect fish and wildlife resources. See Larson (1995) for a discussion on the effects of changes in precipitation on	Need better models and projections of hydrological changes.		Use projected changes in hydrology to help manage impacts caused by hydrologic changes. Cinq-Mars and Diamond (1991) recommend that “monitoring programs must be established for fish		

<sup>60</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan*. Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10–11, 2006.



Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
Melting ice and snow	<p>northern prairie wetland basins. Van Riper III, Sogge, and Willey discuss the effects of lower precipitation on bird communities in the southwestern United States.<sup>61</sup></p> <p>Polar bears are increasingly using coastal areas as habitat changes due to sea ice melting; there also have been changes in wintering patterns for waterfowl due to food availability. Bildstein (1998) describes observations about how timing of cold fronts affects raptor migration. Changes in snowpack in the West will result in reduced summer streamflow, which could affect habitat.</p>			<p>and wildlife resources; migration corridors must be identified and protected; and new concepts must be developed for habitat conservation.”</p>		
Diseases	<p>Diseases may move around or enter new areas (e.g., avian malaria in Hawaii may move upslope as climate changes). Diseases would seem to be a major concern considering shift in migration ranges, the changes</p>					

<sup>61</sup> van Riper, C., III, M.K. Sogge, and D.W. Willey, 1997: Potential impacts of global climate change on bird communities of the Southwest. In: *Proceedings of the U.S. Global Change Research Program Conference hosted by US DOI and USGS: Impact of Climate Change and Land Use in the Southwestern United States.*

Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
	in endemic disease patterns (northern shifts of traditionally “tropical” diseases, for example), and the ability for certain diseases to be spread rapidly through migratory bird populations.					
Warming temperatures	Species range shifts/phenology: loss of keystone species ( <i>e.g.</i> , polar bears and seals, salmon, beaver); 90% decline in population of sooty shearwater; habitat loss for cold water fishes. Breeding range of songbirds may migrate north, which could negatively affect forests (the birds eat gypsy moths and other pests). <sup>62</sup> Trees will become sterile, and dying trees will become more susceptible to invasive pathogens. <sup>63</sup> Native species will be affected by the change in tree	Need better models and projections of species shifts.	Yes; if species that are the purpose of a refuge shift out of the refuge area, management must be changed either to focus on management of different species or thinking about the refuge boundaries.	(1) Baseline inventorying: need to determine what species are where; an available tool for doing this is eBIRD; (2) monitoring along gradient such as latitude, longitude, distance to sea; GLORIA: mountain top assessments of species shifts; GIS layers on land prices, LIDAR data (3) build redundancy into system (4) establish new refuges for single species (5) build connectivity into the conservation landscape (change where agriculture is	Expand collaboration with other federal agencies, state agencies, private organizations to increase/share knowledge.	Need better monitoring system. Fifteen-year planning cycle may limit ability to think about long-term implications. Managers need adaptation tools. Cannot deal with this issue in a piecemeal

<sup>62</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

<sup>63</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
	species. <sup>64</sup> Warmer conditions can lead to food spoiling prematurely for species that rely on freezing winter temperatures to keep food fresh until spring. <sup>65</sup> Prolonged autumns can also delay breeding, which can lead to lower reproductive success. See also Hannah <i>et al.</i> (2005).			located and what crops are planted to allow migratory corridors to exist); (6) acquire land to north when projected species shifts northward; (7) identify indicator species that will help detect changes in ambient temperatures.		fashion because will likely be a great deal of spatial redistribution in and out of refuge system.
Wildfires	Fires are becoming more intense and longer in Alaska and elsewhere. Schoennagel, Veblen, and Romme (2004) discuss the interaction of fires, fuels, and climate in the Rocky Mountains.	It is known that fires are becoming more intense and longer, but managers are not sure what to do about it.		Pre-emptive fire management: use prescribed burning to mimic typical fires (increase fire frequency cycle to prevent more catastrophic fire later).		Need to tie into wildlife management goals, but managers are not sure how to do that.
More frequent and extreme storm events	Debris from human settlements may be blown in or washed into refuges, and may include hazardous substances.	It is uncertain what the refuge system can		Space populations widely apart; if a catastrophic weather event occurs, population loss may be less. <sup>67</sup>		Hulme (2005): Species translocation can lead to

<sup>64</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

<sup>65</sup> **Waite, T.** and D. Strickland, 2006: Climate change and the demographic demise of a hoarding bird living on the edge. In: *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, **273(1603)**, 2809-2813 as cited in: **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

Climate-related stressor	Ecological Impacts	Information Needed	Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?	Management Approach/ Activity	Opportunities	Barriers or Constraints
	<p>Eutrophication due to excess nutrients coming in from flood events could stimulate excessive plant growth and negatively affect habitats.<sup>66</sup></p> <p>Soils could be affected through erosion, changes in nutrient concentrations, seed losses, etc.</p> <p>Hydrology could be affected through stream downcutting, changes in bedload dynamics, loss of bank stability, changes in thermal dynamics, etc.</p>	do to manage for this issue.				<p>unpredictable consequences, so should only be used in extreme situations.</p>

<sup>66</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

<sup>67</sup> **Matson, N.**, 2006: *Letter From Defenders of Wildlife to Beth Goldstein, Refuge Planner at the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Comments on the Silvio O. Conte National Fish and Wildlife Refuge Comprehensive Conservation Plan.* Noah Matson, director of Defenders of Wildlife, provided this letter at the SAP 4.4 NWR Stakeholder Workshop, January 10-11, 2006.

<b>Climate-related stressor</b>	<b>Ecological Impacts</b>	<b>Information Needed</b>	<b>Would it Require a Change in Management/ Can it be addressed?</b>	<b>Management Approach/ Activity</b>	<b>Opportunities</b>	<b>Barriers or Constraints</b>
Alaska central flyway (see Case Study Summary 5.1): stressors include early thaw/late freeze, sea level rise, storm events, warming temperatures	Early thaw/late freeze: resource access; increased rearing season length, crop mix, early spring migration, delayed fall migration, short-stopping, northward-shifted harvest, redistribution; warming: habitat access, disease.			Recognition and monitoring; establish secure network of protected areas.		Lack of a national vision; uncertainty; resources/ political climate; non-climate stressors: agricultural disturbances, urbanization, fragmentation, pollution.

1

1 **5.9 Text Boxes**

2  
3  
4 **Box 5.1. USFWS Goals for the NWRS (601 FW1)<sup>68</sup>**

- 5  
6 1. Conserve a diversity of fish, wildlife, and plants and their habitats, including species  
7 that are endangered or threatened with becoming endangered.  
8 2. Develop and maintain a network of habitats for migratory birds, anadromous and  
9 interjurisdictional fish, and marine mammal populations that is strategically  
10 distributed and carefully managed to meet important life history needs of these  
11 species across their ranges.  
12 3. Conserve those ecosystems, plant communities, wetlands of national or international  
13 significance, and landscapes and seascapes that are unique, rare, declining, or  
14 underrepresented in existing protection efforts.  
15 4. Provide and enhance opportunities to participate in compatible wildlife-dependent  
16 recreation (hunting, fishing, wildlife observation and photography, and environmental  
17 education and interpretation).  
18 5. Foster understanding and instill appreciation of the diversity and interconnectedness  
19 of fish, wildlife, and plants and their habitats.

20  
21  
22  
23 **Box 5.2. Research Priorities for NWRS**

- 24  
25 1. Identify  
26 a. Conservation targets;  
27 b. Vulnerable species.  
28 2. Monitor and predict responses.  
29 3. Select best management strategies.  
30 4. Game alternative climate change scenarios.

31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  

---

<sup>68</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service manual 601 FW 1 - FW 6.

**Box 5.3. National Wildlife Refuges: Adaptation Options for Resource Managers**

- ✓ Manage risk of catastrophic fires through prescribed burns.
- ✓ Reduce or eliminate stressors on conservation target species.
- ✓ Improve the matrix surrounding the refuge by partnering with adjacent owners to improve existing habitats or build new habitats.
- ✓ Install levees and other engineering works to alter water flows to benefit refuge species.
- ✓ Remove dispersal barriers and establish dispersal bridges for species.
- ✓ Use conservation easements around the refuge to provide room for species dispersal and maintenance of ecosystem function.
- ✓ Facilitate migration through the establishment and maintenance of wildlife corridors.
- ✓ Reduce human water withdrawals to restore natural hydrologic regimes.
- ✓ Reforest riparian boundaries with native species to create shaded thermal refugia for fish species in rivers and streams.
- ✓ Identify climate change refugia and acquire necessary land.
- ✓ Facilitate long-distance transport of threatened endemic species.
- ✓ Strategically expand the boundaries of NWRs to increase ecological, genetic, geographical, behavioral, and morphological variation in species.
- ✓ Facilitate the growth of plant species more adapted to future climate conditions.
- ✓ Provide redundant refuge types to reduce risk to trust species.
- ✓ Restore and increase habitat availability, and reduce stressors, in order to capture the full geographical, geophysical, and ecological ranges of species on as many refuges as possible.
- ✓ Facilitate interim propagation and sheltering or feeding of mistimed migrants, holding them until suitable habitat becomes available.

## 1 **5.10 Case Study Summaries**

2 The summary below provides an overview of the case study prepared for this chapter.  
3 The case study is available in Appendix A5.

### 4 5 **Case Study Summary 5.1**

#### 6 7 **Alaska and the Central Flyway**

8 Alaska and Central United States

---

#### 9 10 **Why this case study was chosen**

11 Alaska and the Central Flyway:

- 12 • Together produce 50–80% of North American ducks, as well as a variety of other migratory waterfowl that are National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS) trust species;
- 13 • Support migratory species that have an energetically costly and complex life history strategy, with separate breeding, migratory stopover, and wintering habitats dispersed throughout the system;
- 14 • Show strong historical and projected warming in migratory species breeding areas (most of Alaska and the Prairie Pothole Region of the Central Flyway);
- 15 • Demonstrate heterogeneity in non-climate stressors that creates substantial complexity in both documenting and developing an understanding of the potential effects of climate warming on major trust species;
- 16 • Differ in the expected relative magnitude of climate and non-climate stressors as drivers of populations; climate is expected to be the dominant driver of migratory trust species performance in Alaska, whereas pervasive non-climate stressors such as habitat conversion and fragmentation, invasive species, pollution, and competition for water are expected to complicate estimation of the net effects of climate change on migrants in the Central Flyway.

#### 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 **Management context**

29  
30 The first unit of the NWRS was established in 1903, and the system has since grown to encompass 586 units distributed throughout the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii, and the Trust Territories. These refuges provide the seasonal habitats necessary for migratory waterfowl to complete their annual life cycles, and conditions on one seasonal habitat may affect waterfowl performance in subsequent life history stages at remote locations within the NWRS. The key mandate of the NWRS is to maintain the integrity, diversity, and health of trust species and populations of wildlife, fish and plants, and this species mandate provides the system with substantial legal and cooperative latitude to respond to conservation challenges. Individual symptomatic challenges of climate change can be addressed at the refuge level, while NWRS planning is the more appropriate level for addressing systemic challenges to the system using all legal and partnership tools that are available.

#### 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 **Key climate change effects**

- 43 • Observed warming that is more pronounced in Alaska than in southerly regions of the United States;
- 44 • Observed earlier thaw in Alaska that increases the length of the ice-free season;
- 45 • Observed increases in summer water deficits in Alaska;
- 46 • Observed lake drying in Alaska;
- 47 • Observed shifts to later freeze-up and longer growing seasons in the Central Flyway in Canada and in the Northern United States;



## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Wildlife Refuges**

- 1 • Observed increases in temperatures that account for 60% of the variation in the number of  
2 wet basins in the Prairie Pothole Region of the Central Flyway;
- 3 • Projected further increases in temperature for much of the Central Flyway, with northerly  
4 regions expected to warm more than southern regions;
- 5 • Projected drying of the Prairie Pothole Region in the Central Flyway, the single most  
6 important duck production area in North America, which may significantly affect the NWRS's  
7 ability to maintain migratory species in general and waterfowl in particular;
- 8 • Projected sea level rise and increased urbanization in southern regions of the Central Flyway,  
9 which are expected to cause reductions in refuge area and increased insularity of remaining  
10 fragments, respectively;
- 11 • Projected changes in vegetation , which suggest that most of the Central Flyway will  
12 experience a biome shift by the latter part of the 21st century while interior Alaska will remain  
13 relatively stable.

### 14 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 15 • Increased emphasis on design of inventory and monitoring programs could enhance early  
16 detection of climate change effects;
- 17 • A focus on climate change in Comprehensive Plans and Biological Reviews could allow early  
18 identification of potential mechanisms for adaptation;
- 19 • Enhanced education, training, and long-term research-management partnerships could  
20 increase the likelihood that adaptive management responses to climate change will be  
21 implemented and be successful;
- 22 • Emphasis on multiple integrated-scale responses to climate change and developing  
23 enhanced formal mechanisms to increase inter- and intra- agency communication may be  
24 particularly effective for migratory species.

### 25 **Conclusions**

26 The integrity, diversity, and health of NWRS migratory trust species populations are affected by  
27 habitat conditions throughout the system. The value of seasonal refuges can be evaluated only in  
28 the context of their relative contribution to trust species populations. Breeding areas in Alaska  
29 contribute birds to all four flyways from the Pacific to the Atlantic, but the status of staging and  
30 wintering habitats throughout these flyways also influences the number and condition of birds  
31 returning to Alaska to breed. Climate change adds substantial uncertainty to the problems  
32 associated with accessing resources necessary to meet energy requirements for migration and  
33 reproduction, and this climate challenge may interact synergistically in unexpected ways with  
34 non-climate stressors. For example, depending on the migratory species, lengthened access to  
35 migratory stopover areas that is caused by climate change combined with changing agricultural  
36 crop mixes that are driven by market forces may eventually result in either reduced or increased  
37 reproduction on breeding areas. The primary climate challenge to migratory waterfowl is that  
38 resource availability may become spatially or temporally decoupled from need, and, in a warming  
39 climate, individual refuges may no longer meet the purposes for which they were established. An  
40 emphasis on the contribution of all conservation lands to the NWRS mission and strategic system  
41 growth, using all available tools, will likely provide the greatest latitude for migratory trust species  
42 and the NWRS to adapt to climate change. The unresolved complexity of understanding the net  
43 effects of variable climate and non-climate stressors throughout the NWRS represents an  
44 opportunity to focus on the importance of strong interconnections among system units, and to  
45 foster a national vision for accommodating net climate warming effects on system trust species.

1

2 **5.11 Tables**

3 **Table 5.1.** The most common challenges to national wildlife refuges that could be  
4 exacerbated by climate change.<sup>69</sup>

5

<b>Challenge</b>	<b>Number of Records</b>	<b>%</b>
Invasive, exotic, and native pest species	902	32
Urbanization	213	7
Agricultural conflicts	170	6
Natural disasters	165	6
Rights-of-way	153	5
Industrial/commercial interface	145	5
Predator-prey imbalances	93	3
Wildlife disease	93	3

6

7

---

<sup>69</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2002: USFWS unpublished data.

1 **5.12 Figures**

2 **Figure 5.1.** Structure of the NWRs. Adapted from Fischman (2003), Refuge  
 3 Administration Act,<sup>70</sup> and FWS Regulations.<sup>71</sup>

**National Wildlife Refuge System**

"... various categories of areas that are administered ... for the conservation of fish and wildlife, including species that are threatened with extinction, all lands, waters, and interests therein administered ... as wildlife refuges, areas for the protection and conservation of fish and wildlife that are threatened with extinction, wildlife ranges, game ranges, wildlife management areas, or waterfowl production areas ..."  
 16 USC 668dd(a)(1)

**National Wildlife Refuge**

The term "refuge" means a designated area of land, water, or an interest in land or water within the System but does not include Coordination Areas.  
 16 USC 668ee(11)  
 FWS Regulations - CFR 50

**Coordination Area**

"... a wildlife management area ... made available to a State by cooperative agreement ..."  
 16 USC 668ee(5)  
 FWS Regulations - CFR 50

**Other Named Refuges**

586 units with seventeen types of names

- 524 - National Wildlife Refuges
- 38 - Farm Service Administration (FSA)
- 9 - Wildlife Management Areas
- 2 - Fish and Wildlife Refuge
- 1 - Antelope Refuge
- 1 - Bison Range
- 1 - Conservation Area
- 1 - Elk Refuge
- 1 - Game Preserve
- 1 - International Wildlife Refuge
- 1 - Key Deer Refuge
- 1 - Migratory Bird Refuge
- 1 - Refuge for Columbian White-tail Deer
- 1 - Research Refuge
- 1 - Wildlife and Fish Refuge
- 1 - Wildlife Range
- 1 - Wildlife Refuge

**Waterfowl Production Areas**

"...any wetland or pothole area acquired pursuant to section 4(c) of the amended Migratory Bird Hunting Stamp Act" FWS Regulations - CFR 50

Over 36,494 individual units consisting of waterfowl production areas, wetland easements, wildlife management areas, easements from Farm Service Administration and other properties that are grouped into counties which are further grouped into wetland management districts.  
*Note: not all the areas included in this category were acquired under the Migratory Bird Hunting Stamp Act.*

205 Waterfowl Production Area Counties  
*Note: not all of these counties have approved wetland acquisition targets*

37 Wetland Management Districts

50 units with sixteen types of names  
*Note: not all of the areas included in this category are managed by States.*

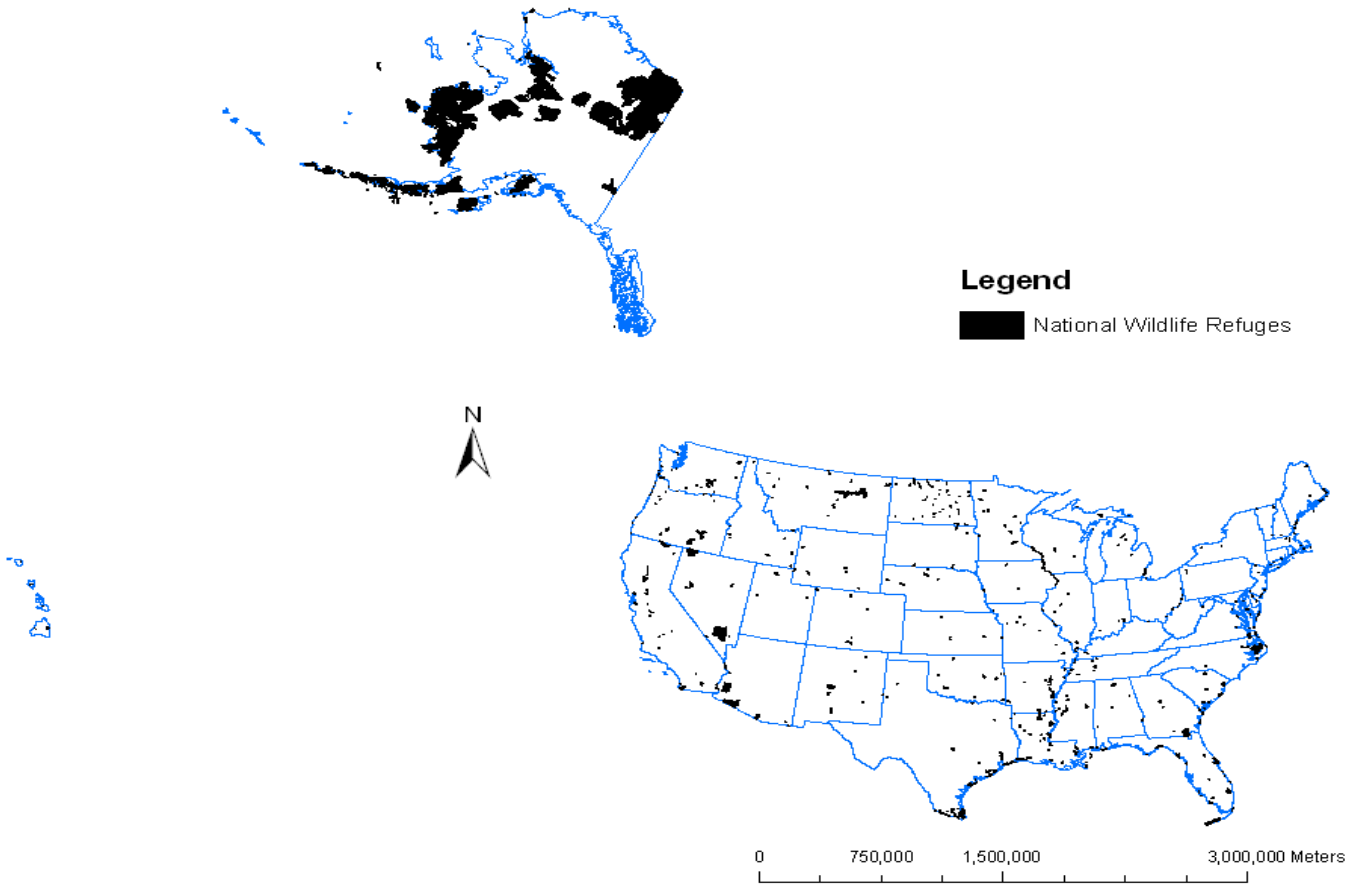
- 22 - Wildlife Management Areas
- 5 - Game Ranges
- 3 - Elk Winter Pastures
- 3 - Public Fishing Areas
- 3 - Waterfowl Management Areas
- 2 - Elk Refuges
- 2 - Winter Range and Wildlife Refuges
- 1 - Deer-Elk Range
- 1 - Deer Refuge and Winter Pasture
- 1 - Deer Winter Pasture
- 1 - Game and Fish Management Unit
- 1 - Game Management Area
- 1 - Migratory Bird Management Area
- 1 - Migratory Waterfowl and Game Management Area
- 1 - State Game Range
- 1 - Waterfowl Project
- 1 - Wildlife Conservation Area

Current as of 26 September 2007

<sup>70</sup> P. L. No. 89-669, 16 U.S.C. '668dd

<sup>71</sup> FWS Regulations – CFR 50

1 **Figure 5.2.** The National Wildlife Refuge System. Adapted from Pidgorna (2007).



2

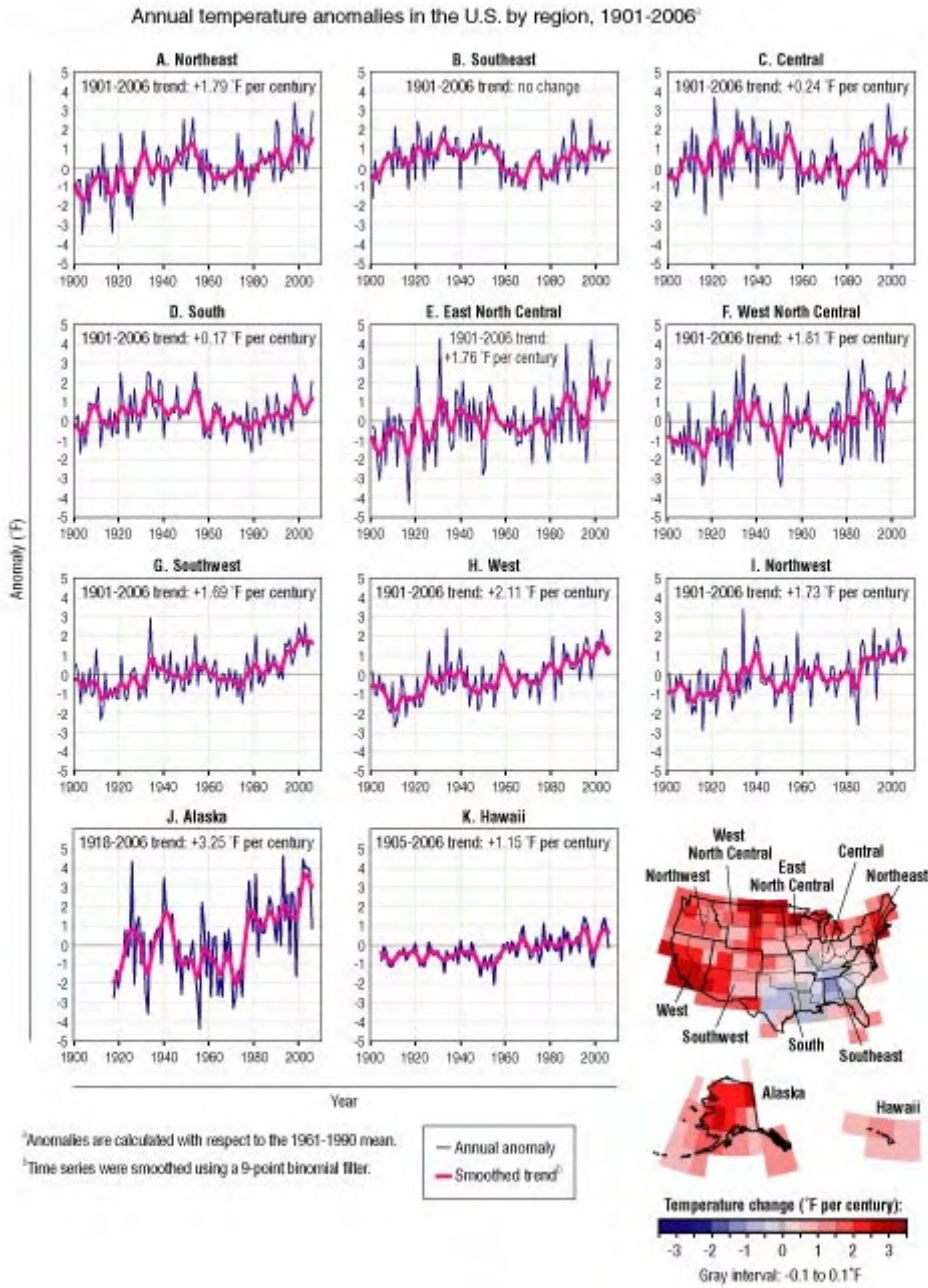
3

4

5

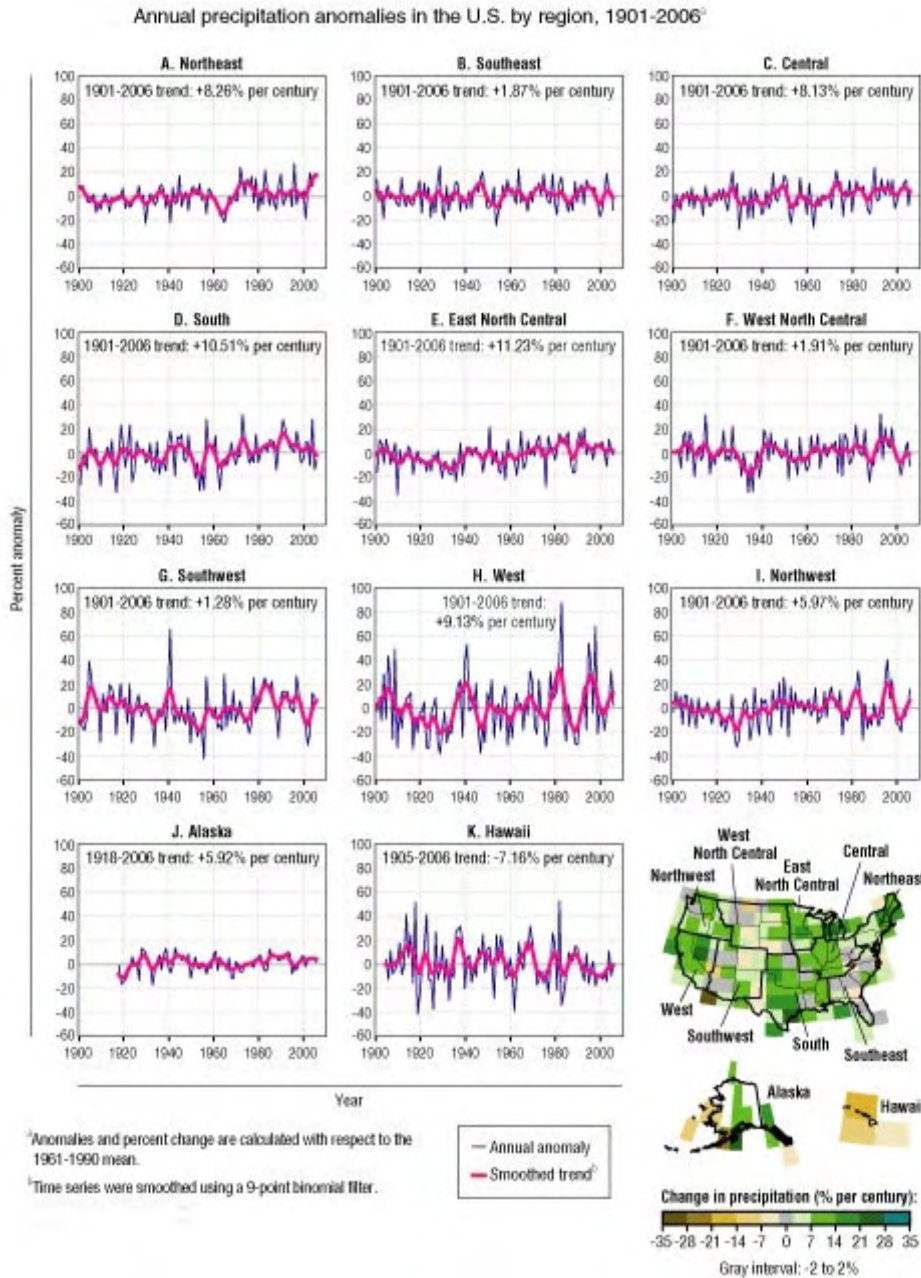
SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Wildlife Refuges**

- 1 **Figure 5.3a.** Observed annual trends in temperature, 1901-2006, for the coterminous
- 2 United States and Alaska. Data and mapping courtesy of NOAA's National Climate Data
- 3 Center.



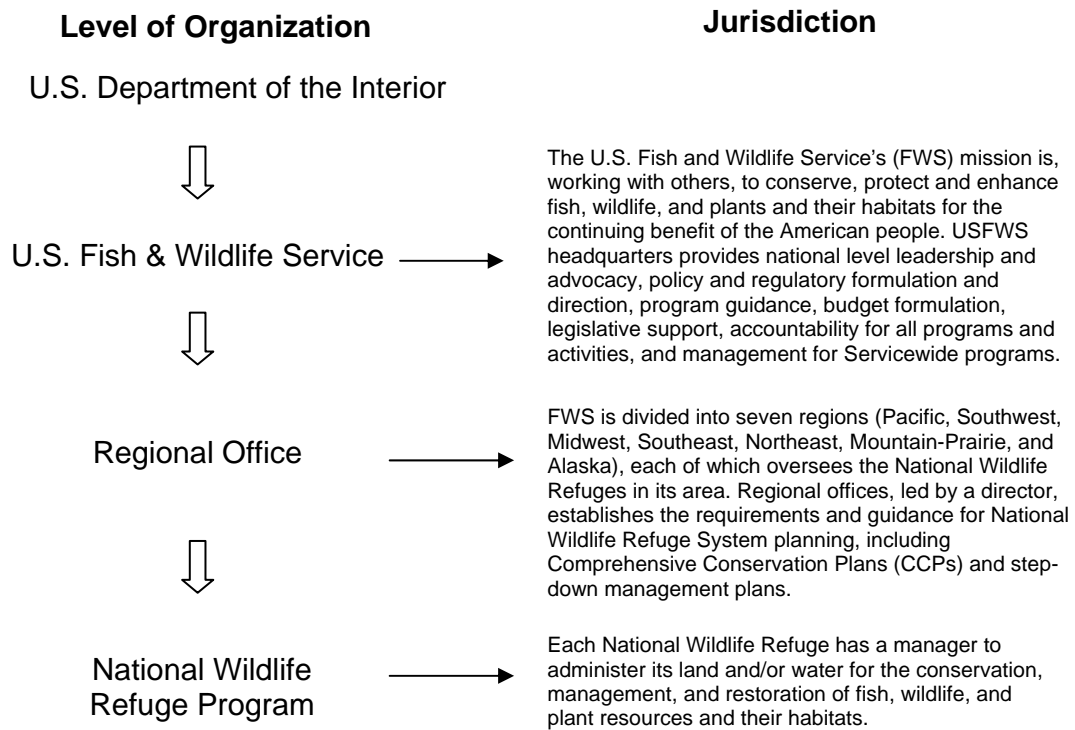
4  
5

- 1 **Figure 5.3b.** Observed annual trends in precipitation, 1901-2006, for the coterminous
- 2 United States and Alaska. Data and mapping courtesy of NOAA's National Climate Data
- 3 Center.
- 4



5

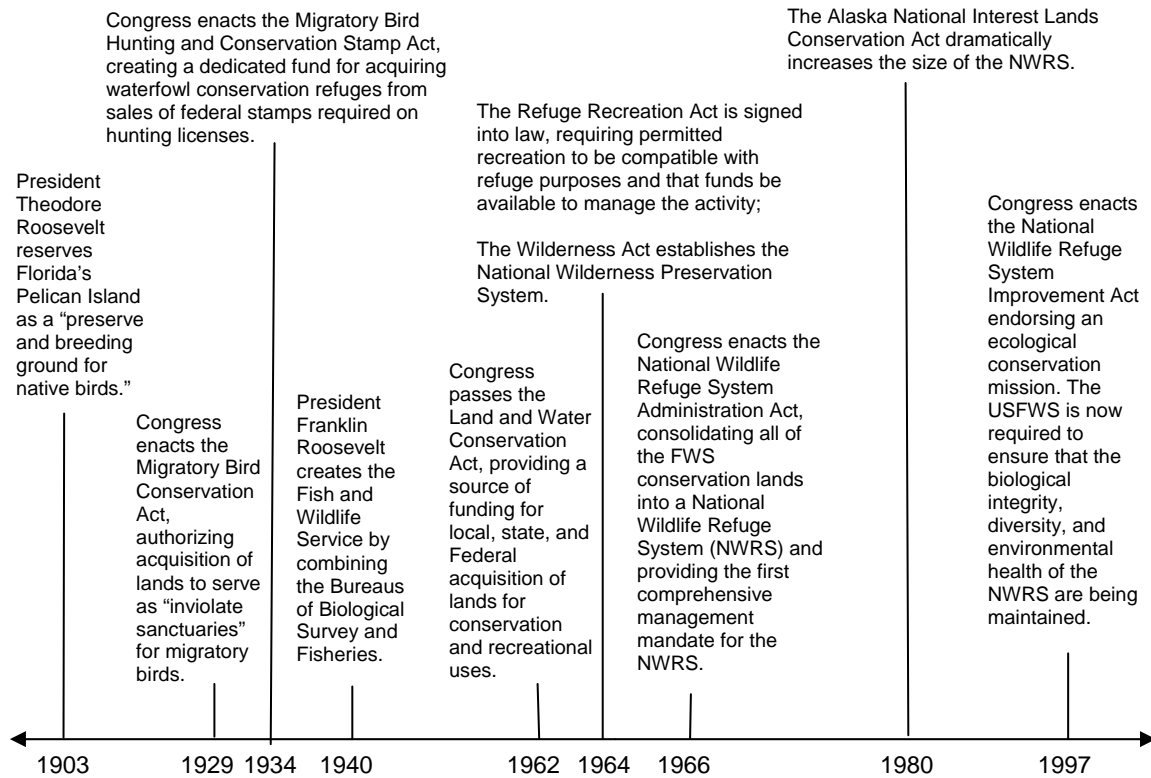
1 **Figure 5.4.** Organizational chart.<sup>72</sup>



2

<sup>72</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: America's national wildlife refuge system. FWS Website, <http://www.fws.gov/refuges>, accessed on 7-18-2007.

1 **Figure 5.5. Timeline of milestone events of the NWRS.**<sup>73</sup>  
 2

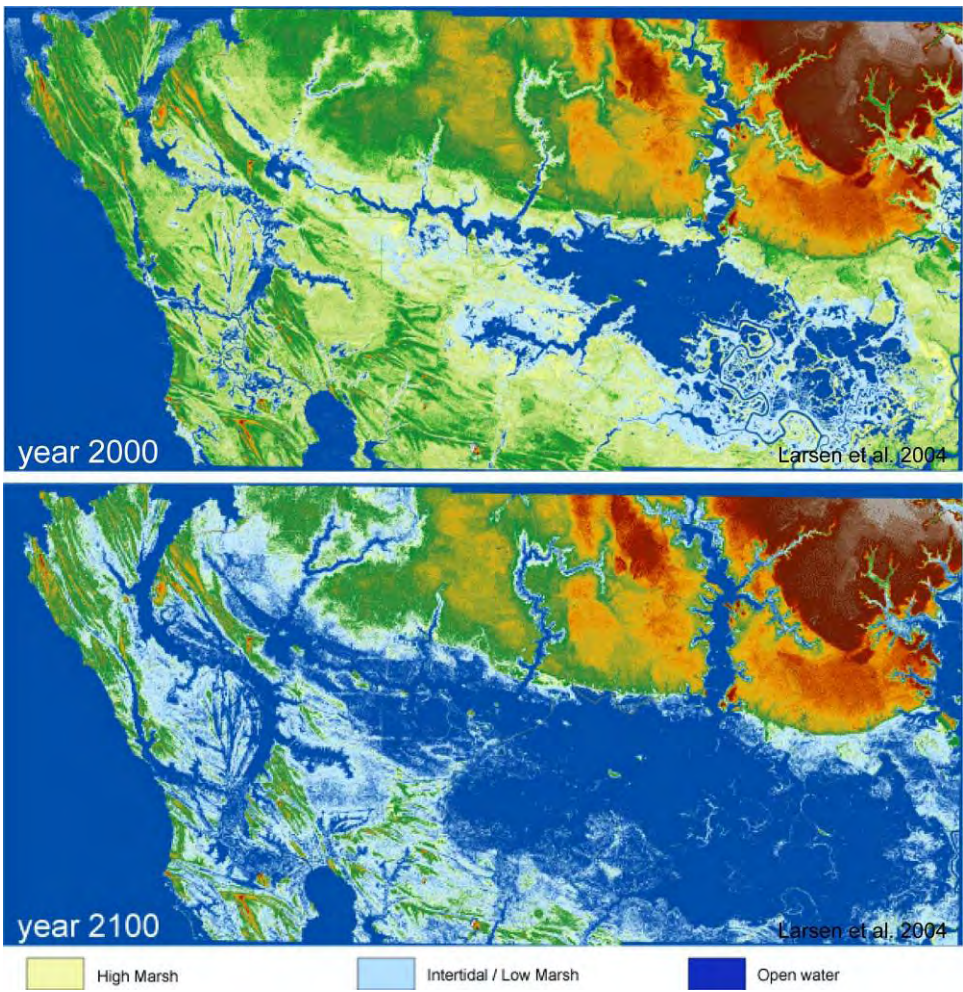


3

<sup>73</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2007: History of the national wildlife refuge system. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://www.fws.gov/refuges/history/index.html>, accessed on 7-10-2007.

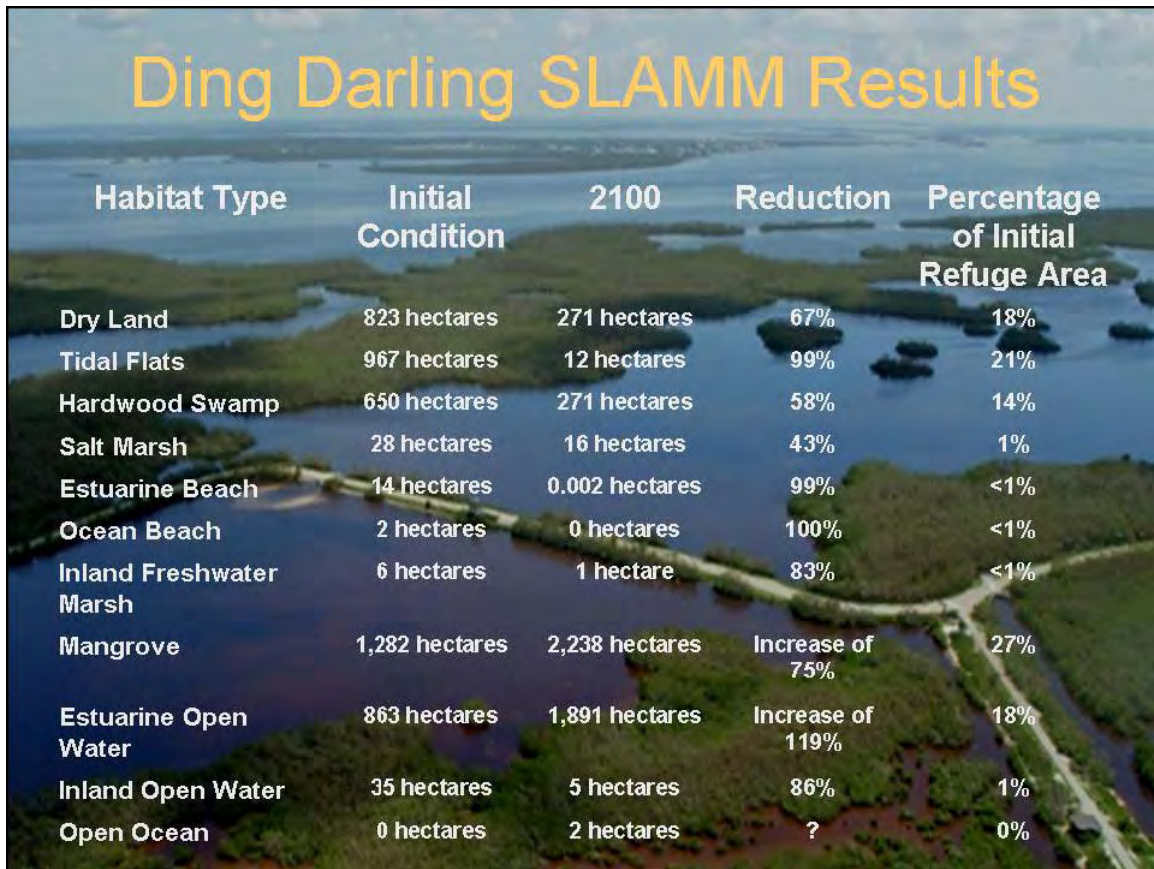


1 **Figure 5.6.** Blackwater National Wildlife Refuge, Chesapeake Bay, Maryland. Current  
2 land areas and potential inundation due to climate change (Larsen *et al.*, 2004b).  
3



4  
5

1 **Figure 5.7.** Results of the Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model (SLAMM) for Ding  
 2 Darling National Wildlife Refuge. Source: USFWS unpublished data.<sup>74</sup>  
 3



4  
5

<sup>74</sup> McMahon, S., Undated: USFWS unpublished data.

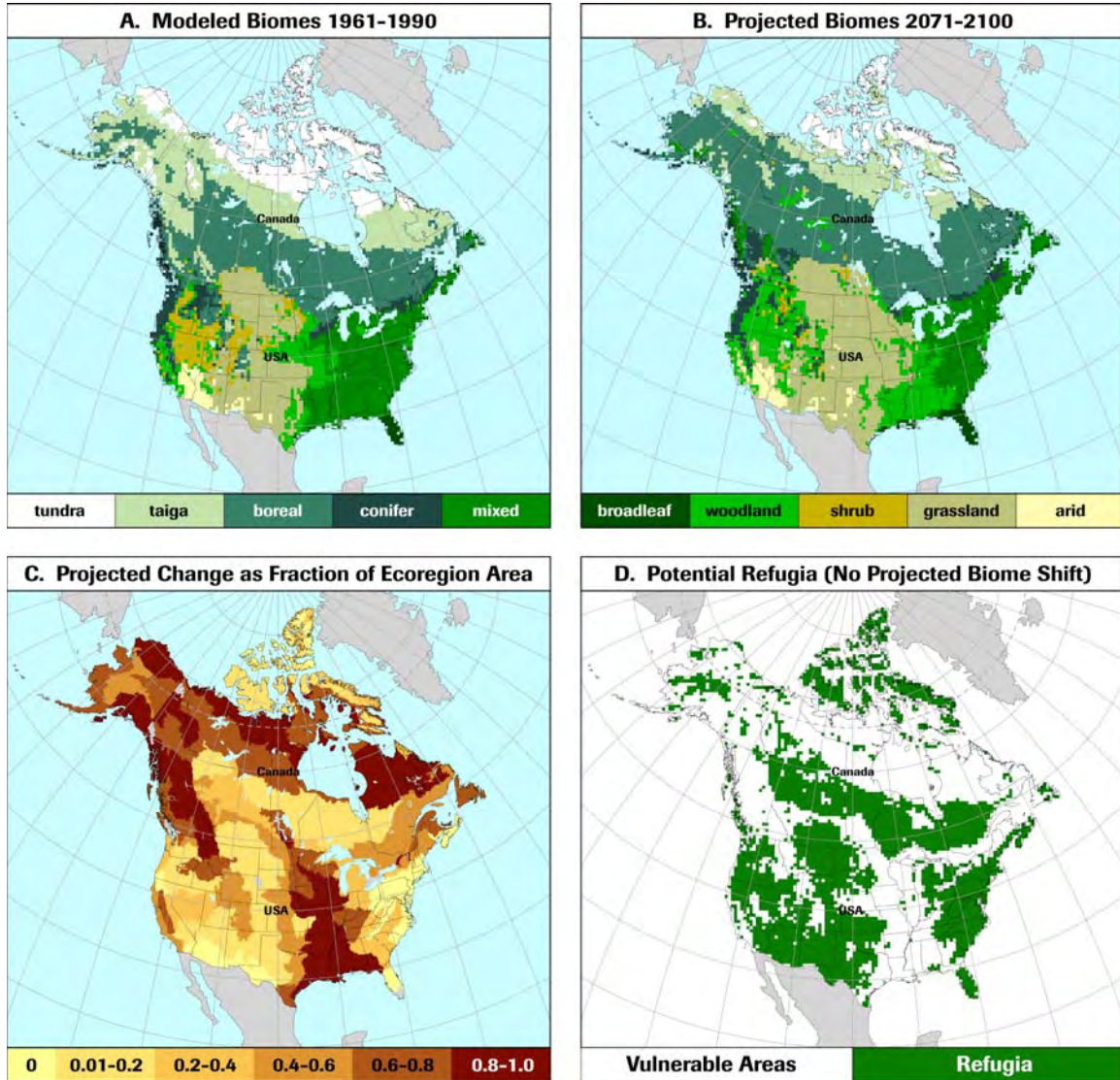
1 **Figure 5.8.** Ecoregions of North America (Level 1).<sup>75</sup>  
2



3

<sup>75</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007: Ecoregions of North America. Environmental Protection Agency Website, [http://www.epa.gov/wed/pages/ecoregions/na\\_eco.htm#Level%20I](http://www.epa.gov/wed/pages/ecoregions/na_eco.htm#Level%20I), accessed on 7-12-2007.

- 1 **Figure 5.9.** Potential climate change vegetation shifts across North America. A.  
2 Vegetation 1990. B. Projected vegetation 2100, HadCM3 general circulation model,  
3 IPCC (2000) SRES A2 emissions scenario. C. Projected change as fraction of ecoregion  
4 area. D. Potential refugia (Gonzalez, Neilson, and Drapek, 2005).  
5



6  
7

## **6 Wild and Scenic Rivers**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16

### **Authors**

#### **Lead Author**

Margaret A. Palmer, University of Maryland

#### **Contributing Authors**

Dennis Lettenmaier, University of Washington

N. LeRoy Poff, Colorado State University

Sandra Postel, Global Water Policy Project

Brian Richter, The Nature Conservancy

Richard Warner, Kinnickinnic Consulting

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2		
3	6.1 Summary .....	6-3
4	6.2 Background and History .....	6-6
5	6.3 Current Status of Management System.....	6-7
6	6.3.1 Framework for Assessing Present and Future Status.....	6-8
7	6.3.2 Hydrogeomorphic Context.....	6-8
8	6.3.3 Present Human Context .....	6-11
9	6.3.4 The Policy Context: Present Management Framework Legal and Management	
10	Context 6-16	
11	6.4 Adapting to Climate Change.....	6-22
12	6.4.1 Climate Change Impacts .....	6-22
13	6.4.2 Future Human Context: Interactive Effects of Multiple Stressors.....	6-25
14	6.4.3 Ecosystem Goods and Services Assuming Present Management.....	6-27
15	6.4.4 Options for Protection Assuming New Management .....	6-29
16	6.5 Conclusions.....	6-35
17	6.6 References.....	6-37
18	6.7 Acknowledgements.....	6-45
19	6.8 Boxes.....	6-46
20	6.9 Case Study Summaries .....	6-52
21	6.10 Figures.....	6-56
22		

## 1 **6.1 Summary**

### 2 **Key Findings**

3  
4 Wild and Scenic Rivers (WSRs) provide a special suite of goods and services, valued highly by  
5 the public, that are inextricably linked to their flow dynamics and the interaction of flow with the  
6 landscape. The WSR System was created to protect and preserve the biological, ecological,  
7 historic, scenic, and other “outstandingly remarkable values” for which they have been selected.  
8 The management goals for WSRs center on the preservation and protection of these conditions  
9 and values. Currently there are 165 WSRs across the country, representing more than 11,000  
10 stream miles. Most states have at least one designated river or river segment, but 100 of the  
11 WSRs fall within just four states (Oregon, Alaska, Michigan, and California with 46, 25, 16, and  
12 13 WSRs respectively). With the exception of the state of Alaska, most WSRs are within  
13 watersheds affected by human activities, including development (agricultural, urban, or suburban  
14 land use) or dams. In fact, many WSR segments lie downstream of these impacts, meaning their  
15 management for scenic or free-flowing condition is difficult.

16  
17 Climate change adds to and magnifies risks that are already present in many watersheds with  
18 WSRs through its potential to alter rainfall, temperature, and runoff patterns, as well as to disrupt  
19 biological communities and sever ecological linkages in any given locale. Thus, the anticipation  
20 of climate change effects requires both reactive and proactive management responses if the  
21 nation’s valuable river assets are to be protected.

22  
23 *The context of WSRs within their watershed and the ability to manage the many stressors that*  
24 *interact with climate change exert a large influence on their future.*

25 Anticipating the future condition of a river in the face of climate change requires explicit  
26 consideration not only of the current climatic, hydrogeologic, and ecological conditions, but also  
27 of how it is managed and how human behavior will affect the river (the human context). Even if  
28 impacts are small at present, consideration of the human context is critical because so many  
29 WSRs are not within a fully protected basin. This means that in addition to climate change,  
30 impacts associated with activities such as development and water withdrawals are likely to  
31 become issues in the future. Thus, stress associated with the *future human context* will interact  
32 with climate change, often exacerbating problems and intensifying management challenges. To  
33 the extent that managers are able to control aspects of this “context,” they are better placed to  
34 manage for adaptation to climate change.

35  
36 *Impacts of climate change on WSRs will vary by region and human context, and will be manifest*  
37 *through changes in hydrology, geomorphology, and ecology.* Climate change is expected to have  
38 a significant impact on running waters throughout the world, including WSRs. Impacts are not  
39 only in terms of changes in flow magnitude and timing, but in terms of thermal regimes and the  
40 flora and fauna that currently inhabit these waters. For a given change in temperature, rainfall,  
41 and CO<sub>2</sub> relative to the natural range of variability, WSRs in highly developed watersheds are  
42 expected to experience the most significant changes. Changes outside the natural range of flow  
43 or temperature variability may have drastic consequences for ecosystem structure and function,  
44 and thus the values for which the river was designated as wild and scenic. Species may be locally

1 extirpated or shift their distributions. Changes in flow regimes also may affect recreational  
2 opportunities, and could affect valued cultural resources.

3  
4 *Management approaches for many WSRs will require collaborations with federal and non-*  
5 *federal partners in the respective river basins.*

6 WSR managers could strengthen collaborative relationships among federal, state, and local  
7 resource agencies and stakeholders to ease the implementation of adaptive river management  
8 strategies. Options to protect WSRs and river segments are diverse and most of them require  
9 cooperation and collaboration with other groups, including local landowners, reservoir and dam  
10 managers, as well as city, county or state agencies. Options presented assume WSR  
11 managers/administering agencies will actively seek cooperative arrangements with the needed  
12 parties to ensure WSR ecosystems are protected. Land acquisition is an option that may provide  
13 the most security for WSRs that are in watersheds with some non-federal land.

14  
15 *Managers may forge partnerships and develop mechanisms to ensure environmental flows for*  
16 *WSRs in basins that experience water stress, work with land use planners to minimize additional*  
17 *development in WSR watersheds, or ensure that land adjacent to a WSR is in protected status.*

18 Methods to manage and store surface and groundwater will be important for WSRs in developed  
19 or dammed watersheds that are in regions expected to experience more floods or droughts. With  
20 more than 270 dams located within 100 miles (upstream or downstream) of a designated WSR,  
21 collaborative arrangements with dam managers offer great potential to secure beneficial flows  
22 for WSRs under various climate change scenarios. Similarly, working to develop agreements to  
23 limit water extractions, purchase additional water rights or dry-year agreements with willing  
24 parties, and working with land use planners to minimize additional development may be very  
25 important in regions of the country that are expected to experience water stress.

26  
27 *In the face of climate change, management of WSRs will require both proactive approaches as*  
28 *well as reactive actions to be taken if impacts occur.*

29 The ability of a WSR to provide the ecosystem goods and services in the future that originally  
30 prompted its designation will depend largely on how it is managed. Without deliberate  
31 management actions that react to stress already occurring or that anticipate future stress, the  
32 provision of ecosystem services will not be guaranteed. Some actions are far more desirable to  
33 undertake proactively (*e.g.*, acquire land to protect floodplains), and others may be done  
34 proactively *or* reactively (*e.g.*, restore riparian habitat). Those actions that are more desirable to  
35 undertake reactively occur where the costs of acting before an event are high and the uncertainty  
36 of an event occurring is high (*e.g.*, severe damage occurs from an extreme event that requires  
37 channel reconfiguration). Among the most important proactive measures is expanding the  
38 technical capacity of WSR managers so they have the needed tools and expertise to prepare for  
39 and implement new management.

40  
41 *Priority management strategies that include a focus on increased monitoring and the*  
42 *development of tools to project future impacts will better enable river managers to prioritize*  
43 *actions and evaluate effectiveness.*

44 A task critical to prioritizing actions and evaluating effectiveness is to monitor and develop  
45 regional-scale (preferably WSR basin-specific) tools for projecting the likely impacts of climate  
46 change in concert with other stressors. Monitoring efforts may begin by providing adequate



1 baseline information on water flows and water quality. Then management plans for WSRs may  
2 be designed with flexibility built in so that they may be updated regularly to reflect new  
3 information and scientific understanding, based on monitoring and modeling efforts.  
4

## 1 **6.2 Background and History**

2 In the late summer of 1958, the greatest anadromous fish disaster in history was unfolding on the  
 3 Snake River near the small town of Oxbow, Idaho. Once known for its booming copper mines  
 4 and rowdy saloons, this small town would soon be known as the site of the “Oxbow Incident.”  
 5 Chinook salmon and steelhead had started their fall spawning run but became stranded in  
 6 stagnant, un-aerated pools of water just below the 205-foot Oxbow Dam. Plans to trap the fish  
 7 and transport them around the dam were failing. By the end of the season, 10,000 fish had  
 8 perished before spawning.<sup>1</sup>

9  
 10 Oxbow is situated just below Hell’s Canyon—North America’s deepest river gorge—which was  
 11 carved by the Snake River and remains one of the largest wilderness areas in the West. In the  
 12 1950s, this gorge contained one of the last free-flowing stretches of the Snake River (Fig. 6.1)  
 13 and became the focus of a major fight that spanned two decades. Idaho Senator Frank Church  
 14 played a pivotal role in deciding who would build dams and where they would be built (Ewert,  
 15 2001). As a New Deal Democrat, Church had supported development and dam construction that  
 16 he felt were keys to the growth and prosperity of Idaho. However, the Oxbow Incident had a  
 17 profound effect on Church. He witnessed the severe effect of dams on fisheries, and even began  
 18 to ponder the value of riverine corridors to wildlife and their growing value to tourism and  
 19 recreation.

20  
 21  
 22  
 23  
 24 **Figure 6.1.** Photo of Snake River below Hell’s Canyon Dam. Photograph courtesy of  
 25 Marshall McComb, Fox Creek Land Trust.

26  
 27 Frank Church’s efforts in the U.S. Senate resulted in passage of the national Wild and Scenic  
 28 Rivers Act in 1968. While it was not until 1975 that the Hell’s Canyon of the Snake River was  
 29 designated as wild and scenic, two of the eight rivers originally designated as wild and scenic  
 30 were in Idaho.

31  
 32 Fundamental to the Act was the desire to preserve select rivers with “outstandingly remarkable  
 33 values” in a “free-flowing condition.” The Act defines free-flowing as “any river or section of a  
 34 river existing or flowing in natural condition without impoundment, diversion, straightening, rip-  
 35 rapping, or other modification of the waterway.”<sup>2</sup> One should note, however, that low dams or  
 36 other minor structures do not preclude a river from being considered for designation. The  
 37 “outstandingly remarkable values” encompass a range of scenic, biological, and cultural  
 38 characteristics that are valued by society. The management goals for Wild and Scenic Rivers  
 39 (WSRs) center on the preservation and protection of these conditions and values (Box 6.1),  
 40 including attempting to keep them in a free-flowing condition with high water quality and  
 41 protected cultural and recreational values.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Barker, R.**, 1999: Saving fall Chinook could be costly. The Idaho Statesman, <http://www.bluefish.org/saving.htm>, accessed on 2-9-2006.

<sup>2</sup> Section 16(b) of the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act, 16 U.S.C. 1271-1287 P.L. 90-542.

1  
2 There are currently 165 WSRs across the country, representing more than 11,000 stream miles  
3 (Fig. 6.2). Oregon ranks highest with 46 designations, most of which were designated in 1988  
4 when a large number of forest management plans were developed to deal with concerns over  
5 salmonids. Alaska follows with 25 WSRs that became designated as a result of the Alaska  
6 National Interests Land Conservation Act in 1980. This act created nearly 80 million acres of  
7 wildlife refuge land in Alaska, much of which is wilderness. Michigan and California are the  
8 only other states with a significant number of rivers that have the wild and scenic designation (16  
9 and 13, respectively); however, most states have at least one designated river or river segment.  
10 Selected milestones in the evolution of the Wild and Scenic Rivers system are shown in Fig. 6.3.  
11

12  
13 **Figure 6.2.** Wild and Scenic Rivers in the United States. Data from USGS, National Atlas  
14 of the United States.<sup>3</sup>  
15

16  
17 **Figure 6.3.** Selected milestones in the evolution of the Wild and Scenic Rivers system.  
18 Adapted from National Wild and Scenic Rivers System website.<sup>4</sup>  
19

20 As severe as the dam effects were on fisheries in Oxbow, Idaho, there is equal or greater concern  
21 today about the potential future impacts of climate change on WSRs. Climate change is expected  
22 to alter regional patterns in precipitation and temperature, and this has the potential to change  
23 natural flow regimes at regional scales. The ecological consequences of climate change and the  
24 required management responses for any given river will depend on how extensively the  
25 magnitude, frequency, timing, and duration of key runoff events change relative to the historical  
26 pattern of the natural flow regime for that river, and how adaptable the aquatic and riparian  
27 species are to different degrees of alteration.

## 28 **6.3 Current Status of Management System**

29 With the exception of the state of Alaska, most WSRs are within watersheds affected by human  
30 activities, including development (agricultural, urban, or suburban land use) or dams. In fact,  
31 many WSR segments lie downstream of these impacts, meaning their management for scenic or  
32 free-flowing condition is difficult. Thus in many ways, WSRs are like rivers all over the United  
33 States—they are not fully protected from human impacts. They are distinctive because river-  
34 specific outstanding values have been identified and river-administrating agencies have been  
35 directed to monitor and protect them as much as possible. More specifically, it is the  
36 responsibility of the relevant federal agency—the Forest Service, the National Park Service, the  
37 Bureau of Land Management, or the Fish and Wildlife Service—in conjunction with some state  
38 and local authorities, to manage them in ways to best protect and enhance the values that led to  
39 the designation as wild and scenic. This makes WSRs ideal for implementing and monitoring the

<sup>3</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 2005: Federal land features of the United States - parkways and scenic rivers. *Federal Land Features of the United States*. <http://www-atlas.usgs.gov/mld/fedlanl.html>. Available from [nationalatlas.gov](http://nationalatlas.gov).

U.S. Geological Survey, 2006: Major dams of the United States. *Federal Land Features of the United States*. <http://www-atlas.usgs.gov/mld/dams00x.html>. Available from [nationalatlas.gov](http://nationalatlas.gov).

<sup>4</sup> National Wild and Scenic Rivers System, 2007: Homepage: National Wild and Scenic Rivers System. National Wild and Scenic Rivers System Website, <http://www.rivers.gov>, accessed on 5-30-2007.

1 results of management strategies to minimize the impacts of climate change—the responsible  
 2 manager (*e.g.*, the river-administering agency) is specified and the ecosystem values in need of  
 3 protection have been identified.  
 4

### 5 **6.3.1 Framework for Assessing Present and Future Status**

6 Climate change is expected to have a significant impact on running waters throughout the world,  
 7 not only in terms of changes in flow magnitude and timing, but in terms of thermal regimes and  
 8 the flora and fauna that currently inhabit these waters (Sala *et al.*, 2000). The focus in this  
 9 chapter is not only on identifying the likely impacts of climate change, but also identifying  
 10 management options for protecting riverine ecosystems and their values against these impacts.  
 11 However, rivers across the United States have been designated as wild and scenic for diverse  
 12 reasons, and they exist in diverse settings. Thus climate change is not the only risk they face.  
 13

14 Anticipating the future condition of a river in the face of climate change requires explicit  
 15 consideration not only of the current climatic, hydrogeologic, and ecological conditions (the  
 16 *hydrogeomorphic context*), but also of how it is currently managed and how human behavior will  
 17 affect the river (the *human context*) (Fig. 6.4). Even if impacts are small at present, consideration  
 18 of the human context is critical to a river’s future unless it is within a fully protected basin. If it is  
 19 not, then impacts associated with activities such as development and water withdrawals are likely  
 20 to become issues in the future. Stress associated with the *future human context* will interact with  
 21 climate change, often exacerbating problems and intensifying management challenges (Fig. 6.4)  
 22  
 23  
 24

25 **Figure 6.4.** Conditions and factors affecting the future conditions of Wild and Scenic  
 26 Rivers.  
 27

28 The ability of a WSR to provide the ecosystem goods and services in the future that originally  
 29 prompted its designation will largely depend on how it is managed. Without deliberate  
 30 management actions that anticipate future stress, managers will be left “reacting” to problems  
 31 (*reactive management*) that come along, and the provision of ecosystem services will not be  
 32 guaranteed.

### 33 **6.3.2 Hydrogeomorphic Context**

#### 34 **6.3.2.1 Ecosystem Goods and Services**

35 WSRs provide a special suite of goods and services valued highly by the public (Box 6.2) that  
 36 are inextricably linked to their flow dynamics and the interaction of flow with the landscape. The  
 37 ecological processes that support these goods and services are fueled by the movement of water  
 38 as it crosses riparian corridors, floodplains, and the streambed transporting nutrients, sediment,  
 39 organic matter, and organisms. Thus, water purification, biological productivity and diversity, as  
 40 well as temperature and flood control, are all mediated by interactions between the local  
 41 hydrology and geologic setting. For this reason, the particular goods and services offered by

1 WSRs vary greatly across the nation, reflecting the great variety of landscape settings and  
2 climates in which WSRs occur.

3  
4 The Rogue River in Oregon supports whitewater rafting through dramatic gorges, while the  
5 Loxahatchee River in Florida supports highly productive cypress swamp. The goods and services  
6 provided by any river depend in no small measure on how “healthy” it is, *i.e.*, the degree to  
7 which the fundamental riverine processes that define and maintain the river’s normal ecological  
8 functioning are working properly. One of the main threats of climate change to WSRs is that it  
9 may modify these critical underlying riverine processes and thus diminish the health of the  
10 system, with potentially great ecological consequences. Of particular concern is the possibility  
11 that climate-induced changes can exacerbate human-caused stresses, such as depletion of water  
12 flows, already affecting these rivers. The likelihood of this happening will depend on the current  
13 conditions in the river and the extent to which future changes in precipitation and temperature  
14 differ from present conditions.

15  
16 Although every river is arguably unique in terms of the specific values it provides and the  
17 wildlife it supports, an important scientific perspective is to identify the general underlying  
18 processes that dictate how a river functions, so that researchers may consider the vulnerabilities  
19 of these systems to climate change. This report uses the phrase “hydrogeomorphic context” to  
20 mean the combination of fundamental riverine processes that interact with the particular  
21 landscape setting of a river to define its fundamental character and potential for ecological  
22 resilience in the face of natural variation and future climate change.

23  
24 From a physical perspective, rivers function to move water and sediment off the landscape and  
25 downhill toward the sea. The regime of rainfall and the geology of a river’s watershed control  
26 landscape soil erosion rates and influence how fast precipitation falling on a watershed is moved  
27 to the river channel, as well as the likelihood that the channel will develop an active floodplain  
28 (Knighton, 1998). Thus, a river’s hydrogeomorphic context is largely defined by the nature of  
29 the flow regime and the river’s channel features. For example, rivers flowing through steep  
30 mountains with bedrock canyons and boulder-strewn beds, such as Colorado’s Cache la Poudre  
31 River, represent very different environments than rivers flowing slowly across flat land where  
32 channels can be wide and meandering due to sandy banks, such as Mississippi’s Black Creek.  
33 Likewise, rivers draining watersheds with porous soils and high groundwater levels respond very  
34 sluggishly to rainfall storm events, compared with those that drain impervious soils and show a  
35 rapid flood response to heavy rains (Paul and Meyer, 2001). Such differences exert strong  
36 control over the temporal dynamics of critical low and high flow events and thus directly  
37 influence many ecological processes and populations of aquatic and riparian species (Poff *et al.*,  
38 1997; Bunn and Arthington, 2002).

39  
40 But the hydrogeomorphic context can also be extended beyond precipitation and geology.  
41 Specifically, the thermal regime of a river is also a critical component of its fundamental nature,  
42 because water temperature directly controls animal and plant metabolism and thus influences the  
43 kinds of species that can flourish in a particular environment and the rates of biogeochemical  
44 processes within the river ecosystem (Ward, 1992; Allan, 1995). This thermal response explains  
45 the categorization of fishes as being either cold-water species (*e.g.*, trout, salmon) or warm-water  
46 species (*e.g.*, largemouth bass) (Eaton and Scheller, 1996; Beitinger, Bennett, and McCauley,

1 2000). Regional climate largely determines air temperature, and hence water temperature  
2 (Nelson and Palmer, 2007), and this factor also influences whether precipitation falls as rain or  
3 snow. When it falls as snow, regional climate also influences the time and rate of melt to provide  
4 the receiving river with a prolonged pulse of runoff.

5  
6 At a broad, national scale, it is important to appreciate the differences in hydrogeomorphic  
7 context of WSRs. Not only do these differences influence the kind and quality of human  
8 interactions with WSRs, they also serve to generate and maintain ecological variation. For  
9 example, the cold and steep mountain rivers of the West, such as Montana’s Flathead River,  
10 support different species of fish and wildlife than the warmer rivers in the South, such as the  
11 Lumber River in the south-central coastal plains of North Carolina. Aquatic and riparian species  
12 are adapted to these local and regional differences (Lytle and Poff, 2004; Naiman, Décamps, and  
13 McClain, 2005), thereby generating great biodiversity across the full range of river types across  
14 the United States. The wide geographic distribution of WSRs is important not only in ensuring  
15 large-scale biodiversity, but also the concomitant ecosystem processes associated with different  
16 river systems. This is particularly true for “wild” rivers, *i.e.*, those that are not dammed or  
17 heavily modified by human activities and that are protected over the long term due to their WSR  
18 status. Thus, wild rivers across the United States can serve as a valuable natural repository of the  
19 nation’s biological heritage (*e.g.*, Poff *et al.*, 2007; Moyle and Mount, 2007), and the threats of  
20 climate change to this ecological potential is of great national concern.

#### 21 **6.3.2.2 What it Means to be Wild**

22 WSRs include headwaters with undisturbed watersheds as well as river segments that have only  
23 modest watershed impacts. The term “wild river” in its strictest sense would include a river with  
24 no human impacts in its entire watershed. One of the key features of these truly wild rivers is  
25 their natural flow regime; *i.e.*, the day-to-day and year-to-year variation in the amount of water  
26 flowing through the channel. Research over the last 10 years has clearly demonstrated that  
27 human modification of the natural flow regime of streams and rivers degrades the ecological  
28 integrity and health of streams and rivers in the United States and around the world (Poff *et al.*,  
29 1997; Richter *et al.*, 1997; Bunn and Arthington, 2002; Postel and Richter, 2003; Poff *et al.*,  
30 2007).

31  
32 From an ecological perspective, some of the key features of a natural flow regime are the  
33 occurrence of high flood flows and natural drought flows. These flows act as natural  
34 disturbances that exert strong forces of natural selection on species, which have adapted to these  
35 critical events over time (Lytle and Poff, 2004). But it’s not just the magnitude of these critical  
36 flows that is ecologically important; it’s also their frequency, duration, timing, seasonal  
37 predictability, and year-to-year variation (Poff *et al.*, 1997; Richter *et al.*, 1997; Lytle and Poff,  
38 2004), because various combinations of these features can dictate the success or failure of  
39 aquatic and riparian species in riverine ecosystems. Thus, for example, a river that has frequent  
40 high flows that occur unpredictably at any time of the year provides a very different natural  
41 environment than one that typically has only one high flow event predictably year-in and year-  
42 out.

43  
44 Across the United States there are large differences in climate and geology, and thus there is a  
45 geographic pattern to the kinds of natural flow regimes across the nation. This is illustrated in

1 Fig. 6.5 from Poff and Ward (1990). For example, in the Rocky Mountain states and in the  
 2 northern tier of states, most annual precipitation falls in the winter in the form of snow, which is  
 3 stored on the land until the spring, when it melts and enters the rivers as an annual pulse (Fig.  
 4 6.5a). In more southerly regions where there is frequent rainfall, floods can occur unpredictably  
 5 and flow regimes are much more variable over days to weeks (Fig. 6.5b). In watersheds with  
 6 highly permeable soils, such as those in Michigan, falling rain infiltrates into the ground and is  
 7 delivered slowly to the stream as groundwater (Fig. 6.5c). The frequency of floods and river low  
 8 flows depends on precipitation patterns and specific hydrologic conditions within a given  
 9 watershed. Yet other streams may be seasonally predictable but present harsh environments  
 10 because they cease to flow in some seasons (Fig. 6.5d).

11  
 12  
 13  
 14 **Figure 6.5.** Illustration of natural flow regimes from four unregulated streams in the  
 15 United States: (a) the upper Colorado River (CO), (b) Satilla Creek (GA), (c) Augusta  
 16 Creek (MI), and (d) Sycamore Creek (AZ). For each the year of record is given on the x-  
 17 axis, the day of the water year (October 1–September 30) on the y-axis, and the 24-hour  
 18 average daily streamflow on the z-axis (Poff and Ward, 1990).

19  
 20 These different flow regime types result in very different hydrogeomorphic contexts, which in  
 21 turn support very different ecological communities. For example, Montana’s Upper Missouri  
 22 River supports extensive stands of native cottonwood trees along the riverbanks. These trees  
 23 become established during annual peak flows that jump the banks and create favorable  
 24 establishment conditions during the annual snowmelt runoff event. Arkansas’ Buffalo River is  
 25 nestled in the Ozark Mountains and supports a tremendous diversity of fish and other aquatic life  
 26 such as native mussels, as well as diverse riparian tree species. This near-pristine river is  
 27 seasonally very dynamic, due to the steep mountain topography and rapid runoff from frequent  
 28 rainfall events. Florida’s Wekiva River is a flatwater system that is heavily influenced by  
 29 groundwater and streamside wetlands that store and release water to the river over the year (see  
 30 Case Study Summary 6.1). This creates a highly stable flow regime and stable wetland  
 31 complexes that support a great diversity of plant species and community types.

32  
 33 These natural flow regime types occur across the nation and reflect the interaction of  
 34 precipitation, temperature, soils, geology, and land cover. For every region of the country there  
 35 can be a natural flow regime representative of the unaltered landscape; *i.e.*, with native  
 36 vegetation and minimally altered by human activities such as point- or non-point source  
 37 pollution (Poff *et al.*, 2006).

### 38 **6.3.3 Present Human Context**

39 To the American public, the designation of a river as “Wild and Scenic” conjures an image of a  
 40 river protected in pristine condition, largely unchanged by human development. However, as  
 41 mentioned above, in reality many of the rivers in the WSR system have experienced some  
 42 ecological degradation from a variety of human activities.

43  
 44 Due to their vulnerable position as the lowermost features of landscapes, rivers are the recipients  
 45 of myriad pollutants that flush from the land, the bearers of sediment loads washed from

1 disturbed areas of their watersheds, and the accumulators of changes in the hydrologic cycle that  
2 modify the volume and timing of surface runoff and groundwater discharge. As Aldo Leopold  
3 once said, “It is now generally understood that when soil loses fertility, or washes away faster  
4 than it forms, and when water systems exhibit abnormal floods and shortages, the land is sick”  
5 (Leopold, 1978). Because rivers are integrators of changes in a watershed, they are also often  
6 indicators of ecological degradation beyond their banks.  
7

8 WSR managers have limited authority or control over human activities occurring outside of  
9 federally owned WSR corridors. The vulnerability of rivers generally increases in relation to the  
10 area of contributing watershed in nonfederal control; the protection of these areas depends on  
11 coordinated management with local landowners and governments. In general, designated  
12 headwater reaches are considerably less vulnerable to human impacts than reaches situated  
13 downstream of cities and agricultural areas. This reality makes the Middle Fork of the Salmon  
14 River in Idaho, a headwater river embedded in a federal wilderness area, far less susceptible to  
15 human influences than the Rio Grande in Texas (see Case Study Summary 6.2). Protection of  
16 headwaters is especially important, since they support critical (keystone) ecosystem processes  
17 and often support sensitive species.  
18

19 To prepare a foundation for understanding the potential consequences of climate change, this  
20 report summarizes current influences and historic trends in water use and dam operations that  
21 affect the ecological condition of WSRs.

#### 22 **6.3.3.1 Water Use**

23 Excessive withdrawals of water from rivers can cause great ecological harm. The nature and  
24 extent of this ecological damage will depend upon the manner in which water is being  
25 withdrawn. The hydrologic and ecological effects of surface water withdrawals may differ  
26 considerably from the impact of the same amount of water being withdrawn through  
27 groundwater extraction. When on-channel reservoirs are used to store water for later use, the  
28 placement and operation of dams can have considerably greater ecological impact than direct  
29 withdrawal of water using surface water intakes, as discussed below.  
30

31 The depletion of river flows fundamentally alters aquatic habitats because it reduces the quantity  
32 of habitat available (Poff *et al.*, 1997; Richter *et al.*, 1997; Bunn and Arthington, 2002).  
33 Adequate water flows can also be important in maintaining proper water temperature and  
34 chemistry, particularly during low-flow periods. The depth of water can strongly influence the  
35 mobility of aquatic animals such as fish, and river levels can also influence water table levels in  
36 adjacent riparian areas, particularly in rivers with high degrees of hydraulic connectivity between  
37 the rivers and alluvial floodplain aquifers.  
38

39 During the latter half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, water withdrawals in the United States more than  
40 doubled (Fig 6.6).<sup>5</sup> Virtually all of this increase occurred during 1950–1980, and withdrawals  
41 leveled off in 1980–2000 even while the U.S. population grew by 24%. This flattening of water  
42 withdrawals resulted primarily from lessened demand for thermoelectric power and irrigation.

---

<sup>5</sup> Hutson, S.S., N.L. Barber, J.F. Kenny, K.S. Linsey, D.S. Lumia, and M.A. Maupin, 2004: Estimated use of water in the United States in 2000. *U. S. Geological Survey Circular 1268*. <http://water.usgs.gov/pubs/circ/2004/circ1268/>.



1 Thermoelectric-power water withdrawals primarily were affected by federal legislation that  
 2 required stricter water quality standards for return flow, and by limited water supplies in some  
 3 areas of the United States.<sup>5</sup> Consequently, since the 1970s, power plants increasingly were built  
 4 with or converted to closed-loop cooling systems or air-cooled systems, instead of using once-  
 5 through cooling systems. Declines in irrigation withdrawals are due to changes in climate, shifts  
 6 in crop types, advances in irrigation efficiency, and higher energy costs that have made it more  
 7 expensive to pump water from ground- and surface-water sources.

8  
 9  
 10  
 11 **Figure 6.6.** Trends in water withdrawals by water-use category. As the population has  
 12 grown, water has been increasingly withdrawn for public use since 1950 as indicated by  
 13 total withdrawals (blue line). Water withdrawn for power production and water for  
 14 irrigation represent the largest use, followed by water for industrial uses, then public  
 15 supply.<sup>5</sup>

16  
 17 An important exception to the recent nationwide declines in total water withdrawals has been a  
 18 continuous increase in public water supply withdrawals (withdrawals for urban use) during the  
 19 past 50+ years; withdrawals for public water supplies more than tripled during 1950–2000 (Fig  
 20 6.6).<sup>5</sup> These rises in urban water demand have been driven by overall population growth as well  
 21 as the higher rate of urban population growth relative to rural population growth. Fifty U.S. cities  
 22 with populations greater than 100,000 experienced growth rates of at least 25% during recent  
 23 decades.<sup>6</sup>

24  
 25 Water withdrawals for urban and agricultural water supplies are having substantial impacts on  
 26 the natural flow regimes of rivers across the United States, including WSRs. For example,  
 27 upstream withdrawals for New York City’s water supply have depleted average annual flows in  
 28 the Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River by 20%, with flows in some months lowered  
 29 by as much as 40% (Fig. 6.7 and Case Study Summary 6.3) (Fitzhugh and Richter, 2004). Heavy  
 30 agricultural and municipal withdrawals along the Rio Grande in Colorado, New Mexico, Texas,  
 31 and Mexico have increasingly depleted river flows during the past century (Collier, Webb, and  
 32 Schmidt, 1996).

33  
 34 While national trends in water use provide insight into large-scale factors influencing river flows  
 35 in WSRs, the impact of water withdrawals on hydrologic systems varies greatly across the  
 36 United States, as illustrated by Fig. 6.5. Ultimately, the consequences of water withdrawals on a  
 37 specific WSR can best be understood by developing hydrologic simulation models for the local  
 38 region of interest, or by examining changes or trends in river flows such as those presented in  
 39 Fig. 6.7.

40  
 41  
 42  
 43 **Figure 6.7.** Changes in monthly average river flows on the Delaware River, in the Upper  
 44 Delaware Scenic and Recreational River segment. Lowered flows in December–July result

---

<sup>6</sup> Gibson, C., 1998: *Population of the 100 Largest Cities and Other Urban Places in the United States: 1790–1990*. Population Division, U.S. Bureau of the Census, Washington, DC.

1 from upstream depletions for New York City water supply. Increased flows result from  
 2 upstream reservoir releases during summer months for the purpose of controlling salinity  
 3 levels in the lower Delaware. Figure based on data provided by USGS.<sup>7</sup>  
 4

### 5 **6.3.3.2 Dam Operations**

6 Nearly 80,000 dams are listed in the National Inventory of Dams for the United States.<sup>8</sup>  
 7 Approximately one-third of these dams are publicly owned, with ownership divided among  
 8 federal, state, local, and public utility entities. An estimated 272 of these dams are located within  
 9 100 miles upstream or downstream of WSRs (Fig. 6.8).  
 10

11  
 12  
 13 **Figure 6.8.** Location of dams and WSRs in the United States. Data from USGS, National  
 14 Atlas of the United States.<sup>3</sup>  
 15

16 Most dams provide substantial benefits to local or regional economies (World Commission on  
 17 Dams, 2000). Hydroelectric power dams currently provide 7% of the U.S. electricity supply. By  
 18 capturing and storing river flows for later use, dams and reservoirs have contributed to the  
 19 national supply of water for urban, industrial, and agricultural uses. Storage of water in  
 20 reservoirs helped to meet the steep growth in water use in the United States during the 20<sup>th</sup>  
 21 century, particularly for agricultural water supply. Nearly 9,000 (12%) of the U.S. dams were  
 22 built solely or primarily for irrigation.  
 23

24 However, damming of the country's rivers has come at great cost to their ecological health and  
 25 ecosystem services valued by society (Ligon, Dietrich, and Trush, 1995; World Commission on  
 26 Dams, 2000; Postel and Richter, 2003; Poff *et al.*, 2007). The most obvious change in river  
 27 character results from the conversion of a flowing river into an impounded reservoir. Also  
 28 obvious is the fact that dams create barriers for upstream-downstream movements of mobile  
 29 aquatic species such as fish. A dam can artificially divide or isolate species populations, and  
 30 prevent some species from completing anadromous or diadromous life cycles, such as by  
 31 blocking access to upriver spawning areas (Silk and Ciruna, 2005). For example, Pacific salmon  
 32 migrations through WSR segments on the Salmon and Snake rivers in Idaho and pallid sturgeon  
 33 migrations on the Missouri River are impeded by dams. The consequences of such population  
 34 fragmentation have been documented for many fish species, including many local extirpations  
 35 following damming. Hence, dams located downstream of WSRs likely have consequences for  
 36 movements of aquatic animals, particularly widely ranging fish.  
 37

38 Dams have considerable influence on downstream river ecosystems as well, in some cases  
 39 extending for hundreds of miles below a dam (Collier, Webb, and Schmidt, 1996; McCully,  
 40 1996; Willis and Griggs, 2003). Dam-induced changes affect water temperature (Clarkson and  
 41 Childs, 2000; Todd *et al.*, 2005) and chemistry (Ahearn, Sheibley, and Dahlgren, 2005);

<sup>7</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 2007: USGS surface water data for the nation. USGS Website,  
<http://waterdata.usgs.gov/nwis/sw>, accessed on 7-26-2007.

<sup>8</sup> U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, 2000: National inventory of dams.  
<http://crunch.tec.army.mil/nid/webpages/nid.cfm>, Federal Emergency Management Agency. CD-ROM.

1 sediment transport (Williams and Wolman, 1984; Vörösmarty *et al.*, 2003); floodplain vegetation  
2 communities (Shafroth, Stromberg, and Patten, 2002; Tockner and Stanford, 2002; Magilligan,  
3 Nislow, and Graber, 2003). Dams may even affect downstream estuaries, deltas, and coastal  
4 zones by modifying salinity patterns, nutrient delivery, disturbance regimes, and the transport of  
5 sediment that builds deltas, beaches, and sandbars.<sup>9</sup> Of all the environmental changes wrought  
6 by dam construction and operation, the alteration of natural water flow regimes (Fig. 6.5) has had  
7 the most pervasive and damaging effects on river ecosystems (Poff *et al.*, 1997; Postel and  
8 Richter, 2003). Dams can heavily modify the magnitude (amount) of water flowing downstream,  
9 change the timing, frequency, and duration of high and low flows, and alter the natural rates at  
10 which rivers rise and fall during runoff events.

11  
12 The location of a WSR relative to upstream dams can have great influence on the ecological  
13 health of the WSR. As a general rule, ecological conditions improve with distance downstream  
14 of dams due to the influence of tributaries, which moderate dam-induced changes in water flow,  
15 sediment transport, water temperature, and chemistry. For example, flow alterations associated  
16 with hydropower dams in the Skagit River are most pronounced immediately downstream of the  
17 dams, but lessen considerably by the time the river reaches its estuary. It is quite difficult to  
18 assess the dam-induced biophysical changes that have transpired in WSRs, because long-term  
19 measurements of sediment, temperature, water quality, and biological conditions are rarely  
20 available. However, for many rivers, dam-related changes to hydrologic regimes can be  
21 evaluated by examining streamflow changes before and after dams were built (see Fig. 6.7 for  
22 example).

### 23 **6.3.3.3 Land-Use Changes**

24 As humans have transformed natural landscapes into cities and farms, and increasingly utilized  
25 resources such as timber and metals, the consequences to river ecosystems have been quite  
26 severe. Beyond the impacts on water quantity and timing of river flows discussed above,  
27 landscape conversion has had substantial influence on water quality (Silk and Ciruna, 2005).<sup>10</sup>  
28 The potential impact of land use on WSRs depends upon a number of factors, including  
29 proximity of the WSR to various land uses and the proportion of the contributing watershed that  
30 has been converted to high-intensity uses such as agriculture or urbanization.

31  
32 Nearly half of the billion hectares of land in the United States has been cultivated for crops or  
33 grazed by livestock. As described above, agriculture accounts for approximately 70% of water  
34 withdrawals in the United States. While most of this water is consumed through  
35 evapotranspiration, the portion of irrigation water that returns to streams and rivers is commonly  
36 tainted with chemicals or laden with sediment (National Research Council, 1993).<sup>11</sup> Because  
37 much of the land converted to agricultural use in recent decades has been wetlands and riparian  
38 areas, this conversion has severely affected the natural abilities of landscapes to absorb and filter  
39 water flows. Major pollutants in freshwater ecosystems include excessive sediment, fertilizers,

---

<sup>9</sup> Olsen, S.B., T.V. Padma, and B.D. Richter, Undated: Managing freshwater inflows to estuaries: a methods guide. U.S. Agency for International Development, Washington, DC.

<sup>10</sup> See also U.S. Geological Survey, 2006: *Rates, Trends, Causes and Consequences of Urban Land-Use Change in the United States*. USGS Professional Paper 1726.

<sup>11</sup> See also U.S. Geological Survey, 2001: Hydrological simulation program—Fortran. <http://water.usgs.gov/software/hspf.html>. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, VA.

1 herbicides, and pesticides (Silk and Ciruna, 2005). Agriculture is the source of 60% of all  
 2 pollution in U.S. lakes and rivers; nitrogen is the leading pollution problem for lakes and the  
 3 third most important pollution source for rivers in the United States (U.S. Environmental  
 4 Protection Agency, 2000). The U.S. Geological Survey National Water Quality Assessment  
 5 (NAWQA) found that most of the rivers sampled in agricultural areas contained at least five  
 6 different pesticides,<sup>11</sup> including DDT, dieldrin, and chlordane. Intensive agriculture often leads  
 7 to the eutrophication of freshwater ecosystems, resulting in deoxygenation of water, production  
 8 of toxins, and a general decline in freshwater biodiversity. Agriculture is a major source of  
 9 sedimentation problems as well, resulting from large-scale mechanical cultivation,  
 10 channelization of streams, riparian clearing, and accentuated flood runoff.

11  
 12 After agriculture, the next three top sources of river ecosystem degradation include  
 13 hydromodification, urban runoff/storm sewers, and municipal point sources—all associated with  
 14 urban environments (Silk and Ciruna, 2005). Although urban areas occupy only a small fraction  
 15 of the U.S. land base, the intensity of their impacts on local rivers can exceed that of agriculture  
 16 (see Fig. 6.9 for an example). More than 85% of the U.S. population lives in cities, potentially  
 17 concentrating the impacts from urban activities and exacerbating conditions affected by rainfall  
 18 runoff events, such as water use, wastewater discharge, polluted surface runoff, and impervious  
 19 surfaces. Industrial activities located in cities pose several threats to river ecosystems, including  
 20 effluent discharge and risk of chemical spills, in addition to water withdrawals. The NAWQA  
 21 program reports the highest levels of phosphorus in urban rivers. Other highly problematic forms  
 22 of pollution in urban areas include heavy metals, hormones and pharmaceutical chemicals, and  
 23 synthetic organic chemicals from household uses.<sup>11</sup> Excellent reviews on the effects of  
 24 urbanization on streams have been published (Paul and Meyer, 2001; Walsh *et al.*, 2005), but in  
 25 brief the most obvious impacts are increases in impervious surface area resulting in increased  
 26 runoff, higher peak discharges, higher sediment loads, and reduced invertebrate and fish  
 27 biodiversity (Dunne and Leopold, 1978; Arnold, Jr. and Gibbons, 1986; McMahon and Cuffney,  
 28 2000; Walsh, Fletcher, and Ladson, 2005).

29  
 30  
 31  
 32 **Figure 6.9.** Photo of scientists standing on the bed of an urban stream whose channel has  
 33 been incised more than 5 m due to inadequate storm water control. Incision occurred on the  
 34 time scale of a decade, but the bank sediments exposed near the bed are marine deposits  
 35 laid down during the Miocene epoch. Photograph courtesy of Margaret Palmer.

#### 36 **6.3.4 The Policy Context: Present Management Framework Legal and Management** 37 **Context**

38 The creation of the National System of Wild and Scenic Rivers (the WSR System) under the  
 39 Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (Box 6.3) was an attempt by the U.S. Congress to  
 40 proactively rebalance the nation's river management toward greater protection of its river assets.  
 41 Every river or river segment included within the WSR System must be managed according to  
 42 goals associated with preserving and protecting the values for which the river was designated for  
 43 inclusion in the system (see Box 6.1). The degree of protection and enhancement afforded each  
 44 river or river segment is a prerogative of the agency responsible for a particular river's  
 45 management, but the values that made the river suitable for inclusion in the WSR System must

1 be protected. (Throughout the rest of this chapter, the term “river,” in the context of a WSR,  
2 refers to the segment of river designated under the Act.)  
3

4 When a river is admitted into the WSR System, it is designated under one of three categories:  
5 “wild,” “scenic,” or “recreational.” These categories are defined largely by the intensity of  
6 development that exists along and within a particular river corridor, rather than by specific wild,  
7 scenic, or recreational criteria *per se*. For instance, “wild” river segments have no roads or  
8 railroads along them, nor do they have ongoing timber harvesting occurring near their banks.  
9 Accessible only by trail, they are intended to represent vestiges of primitive America. “Scenic”  
10 river segments are free of impoundments and have shorelines still largely undeveloped, but may  
11 be accessible in places by roads. Lastly, “recreational” river segments may have been affected by  
12 dams or diversions in the past, may have some development along their banks, and may be  
13 accessible by road or railroad. Despite the label, WSRs designated as “recreational” are *not*  
14 “river parks”—that is, they are not necessarily used or managed primarily for recreational  
15 pursuits. Even where recreational uses exist, management of the WSR emphasizes the protection  
16 of natural and cultural values. As with the “wild” and “scenic” categories, it is the degree of  
17 development within the river corridor that determines the designation as “recreational.” So the  
18 existence of a road alongside a designated river, for instance, likely places that river segment in  
19 the “recreational” category, but the “outstandingly remarkable value” that qualifies the river for  
20 inclusion in the WSR System might be critical fish habitat and has nothing to do with  
21 recreational benefits.<sup>12</sup>  
22

23 Regardless of how a WSR is classified—wild, scenic, or recreational—administering agencies  
24 must seek to protect existing river-related values and, to the greatest extent possible, enhance  
25 those values. Once placed under one of the three classifications, the river must be managed to  
26 maintain the standards of that classification. A river classified as wild, for instance, cannot be  
27 permitted to drop to the less-strict criteria of scenic. A non-degradation principle therefore guides  
28 river management. So, for example while many WSRs had dams in place prior to the river  
29 segment being designated as wild and scenic (Fig. 6.8), the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act charges  
30 the administering agency with reviewing any new federally assisted water resource projects  
31 (such as dams) to ensure they will not degrade river values.

#### 32 **6.3.4.1 Administering Agencies and Authorities**

33 The management of WSRs is complex due to the overlapping and at times conflicting federal  
34 and state authorities that are responsible for managing these rivers, as well as to the mix of public  
35 and private ownership of lands within or adjacent to WSR corridors. The four federal agencies  
36 administering WSRs are the Bureau of Land Management (BLM), the National Park Service  
37 (NPS), the U.S. Forest Service (USFS), and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (Fig.  
38 6.10). WSRs administered by the NPS and the USFWS are managed as part of the National Park  
39 System or the National Wildlife Refuge System, respectively. If a conflict arises between laws  
40 and regulations governing national parks or refuges and the WSR Act, the stricter of them—that  
41 is, the laws and regulations affording the greatest protection to the river—applies.  
42

---

<sup>12</sup> **Interagency Wild and Scenic Rivers Coordinating Council**, 2002: *Wild & Scenic River Management Responsibilities*. National Wild and Scenic Rivers System.

1  
2  
3 **Figure 6.10.** Organization of the WSR system. Adapted from National Wild and Scenic  
4 Rivers System website.<sup>4</sup>  
5

6 In addition to ensuring that the management of lands within the river corridor sufficiently  
7 protects WSR values, the administering agency must work to ensure that activities on lands  
8 adjacent to the river corridor do not degrade WSR values. Other (non-administering) federal  
9 agencies must also protect WSR values when exercising their oversight of activities within and  
10 adjacent to a WSR corridor. For rivers designated by states and added to the WSR System under  
11 Section 2 (a)(ii) of the Act, authorized state agencies have primary responsibility for river  
12 management. In all cases, a partnership among federal, state, and local entities is encouraged.  
13

14 A number of environmental laws that are applicable to all federal resource agencies—including  
15 the Clean Water Act, the National Environmental Policy Act, the Endangered Species Act, and  
16 the National Historic Preservation Act—come into play in the management of WSRs. The four  
17 primary administering agencies therefore work collaboratively with agencies that administer  
18 these “cross-cutting acts,” such as the Army Corps of Engineers and the Environmental  
19 Protection Agency. The Act also encourages river-administering federal agencies to enter into  
20 cooperative agreements with state and local political entities where necessary or beneficial to  
21 protect river values. For example, state and local authorities implement zoning restrictions and  
22 pollution control measures that may be critical to protecting the river’s water quality or specific  
23 outstandingly remarkable values. Finally, where private landholdings abut WSRs, the  
24 administering agencies may need to negotiate arrangements with private landowners to ensure  
25 adequate protection of the river’s values.<sup>12</sup>

#### 26 **6.3.4.2 Management Plans**

27 For all WSRs designated by Congress, a Comprehensive River Management Plan (CRMP) must  
28 be developed within three full fiscal years of the river’s addition to the WSR System. CRMPs  
29 essentially amend the broader land management plans of the agency administering the river (the  
30 BLM, for example, would amend its Resource Management Plans) in order to ensure that the  
31 designated river corridor’s values are protected or enhanced. For rivers designated at the request  
32 of a state, a CRMP is not required, but the state’s application for a river’s inclusion in the WSR  
33 System must include a strategy to ensure that the river will be managed so as to meet the goals  
34 (see Box 6.1) associated with the purposes of the Act. In developing CRMPs, federal agencies  
35 will typically consult with state and local agencies and solicit intensive public involvement. Over  
36 the years, various parties have challenged the allowance of certain activities (*i.e.*, timber  
37 harvesting, livestock grazing, road-building) when a CRMP has not been prepared and the  
38 effects of the potentially harmful activities in question cannot be adequately assessed. CRMPs  
39 are an important vehicle for establishing the flow and quality objectives that will sustain the  
40 values for which the river was designated. They are also vehicles for setting forth adaptive  
41 strategies to mitigate the effects of future human stressors on WSRs, including potential climate  
42 change impacts.  
43

44 The Interagency Wild and Scenic Rivers Coordinating Council, a government body established  
45 to coordinate management of WSRs among the responsible agencies, has identified six steps to

1 identify the water quantity and quality that are needed to ensure river values are protected: (1)  
 2 clearly define the water-related values to be protected, (2) document baseline conditions against  
 3 which to assess future changes or threats, (3) identify potential threats and protection  
 4 opportunities, (4) identify an array of protection options in the management plan, (5) vet the plan  
 5 through legal counsel, and (6) decide upon and implement the best protection strategies for  
 6 achieving the management objectives for the river.<sup>13</sup>

7  
 8 In order to fulfill the Act’s intent to “protect and enhance” WSR values, the collection and  
 9 documentation of adequate baseline information for each WSR, along with a detailed narrative  
 10 description of the characteristics and values that qualified the river for the WSR designation, is  
 11 critical to both river managers and stakeholders. For example, a long-term record of river flows  
 12 is invaluable for developing a water rights claim (see water rights discussion below), and  
 13 background data on water quality are often essential for pursuing action to stop some proposed  
 14 activity that threatens a river’s ecological services and outstandingly remarkable values. In a case  
 15 decided in 1997, for instance, the Oregon Natural Desert Association claimed that the BLM’s  
 16 river management plan was failing to protect the riparian vegetation and aquatic habitat of the  
 17 Donner and Blitzen WSR, which studies had shown were adversely affected by livestock  
 18 grazing. The court ultimately determined that grazing could continue, but only in a manner that  
 19 fulfilled BLM’s obligation to “protect and enhance” the values that qualified the river as a WSR.  
 20 Without adequate baseline information, it is difficult, if not impossible to implement a “protect  
 21 and enhance” policy.

22  
 23 Since passage of the Act, scientific understanding of the ecological importance of the natural  
 24 variability of a river’s historic flow regime has expanded markedly (Poff *et al.*, 1997; Postel and  
 25 Richter, 2003; Richter *et al.*, 2003). In particular, a prior emphasis on the maintenance of  
 26 “minimum flows”—ensuring that some water flows in the channel—has been succeeded by the  
 27 more sophisticated and scientifically based “natural flow paradigm,” which calls on river  
 28 managers to mimic, to some degree, the variable natural flows that created the habitats and  
 29 ecological conditions that sustain the river’s biodiversity and valuable goods and services.  
 30 Especially in the face of climate change and the resulting likelihood of altered river flow  
 31 patterns, an understanding of the importance of a river’s historical natural flow pattern to the  
 32 maintenance of its ecological services will be critical to the development of effective climate  
 33 adaptation strategies.

#### 34 **6.3.4.3 Legal and Management Tools**

35 The federal and state agencies administering WSRs have a number of tools and measures at their  
 36 disposal to fulfill their obligations to “protect and enhance” the water flows, water quality, and  
 37 outstandingly remarkable values that qualify a particular river for inclusion in the WSR System.  
 38 This section describes a few of these tools. Later sections suggest how these and other tools can  
 39 be used to more effectively adapt the management of WSRs to climate change impacts and  
 40 related human stressors.

#### 41 **Water Rights Claims and Purchases**

---

<sup>13</sup> **Interagency Wild and Scenic Rivers Coordinating Council**, 2003: *Water Quantity and Quality As Related to the Management of Wild & Scenic Rivers*. National Wild and Scenic Rivers System.

1 By virtue of two U.S. Supreme Court rulings, one in 1908 (*Winters v. United States*) and another  
 2 in 1963 (*Arizona v. California*), national parks, forests, wildlife refuges, and other federal land  
 3 reservations, as well as Indian reservations, may claim federal “reserved” water rights to the  
 4 extent those rights are necessary to carry out the purposes for which the reservation was  
 5 established. The WSR Act makes clear that such reserved rights also apply to designated  
 6 WSRs.<sup>12</sup> The quantity of the right cannot exceed that necessary to protect the specific river  
 7 values that qualified the river for inclusion in the WSR System. To date, there are approximately  
 8 15 WSRs with water rights adjudications completed or in progress.

9  
 10 Because most WSR designations are less than 30 years old, WSRs typically have very junior  
 11 rights in the western system of “first-in-time, first-in-right” water allocations. In over-allocated  
 12 western rivers, another way of ensuring flows for a WSR segment is often to purchase water  
 13 rights from private entities willing to sell them. In any effort to secure more flow for a WSR, the  
 14 CRMP developed for the river must demonstrate how the river’s outstandingly remarkable  
 15 values depend on a particular volume or pattern of flow, and include a strategy for protecting  
 16 flow-dependent river values.

### 17 **Environmental Flow Protections**

18 An environmental flow study can assist river managers in establishing scientifically based limits  
 19 on flow alterations that are needed to protect a WSR’s habitat, biodiversity, fishery, and other  
 20 values (Richter *et al.*, 1997; Postel and Richter, 2003). Where allowed by state laws, state  
 21 agencies (often working in partnership with federal and local authorities) may secure more flows  
 22 for designated rivers by legislating environmental flows, using permit systems to enforce limits  
 23 on flow modifications, transferring water rights for in-stream purposes, and implementing water  
 24 conservation and demand-management strategies to keep more water in-stream (Postel and  
 25 Richter, 2003; Postel, 2007). The WSR study for Connecticut’s Farmington River (pictured in  
 26 Fig. 6.11), for example, resulted in state water allocation authorities and a water utility  
 27 committing themselves to the protection of flows needed to safeguard fisheries and other flow-  
 28 dependent outstandingly remarkable values.<sup>14</sup>

29  
 30  
 31  
 32  
 33 **Figure 6.11.** Farmington WSR. Photo courtesy of the Farmington River Watershed  
 34 Association.

### 35 **Land Protection Agreements with Landowners Adjacent to WSR Corridors**

36 Protection of the land included in the designated river corridor is critical to the protection of the  
 37 habitat, scenic, scientific, and other values of a WSR. The boundary of a WSR includes up to  
 38 320 acres per river mile (twice this for Alaskan rivers), measured from the ordinary high water  
 39 mark.<sup>14</sup> Under the WSR Act, the federal government may acquire non-federal lands, if necessary,  
 40 to achieve adequate river protection, but only if less than 50% of the entire acreage within the  
 41 WSR boundary is in public ownership. However, other options for land protection, besides  
 42 acquisition, exist.<sup>14</sup> For instance, the administering agency can work cooperatively with  
 43 landowners and establish binding agreements that offer them technical assistance with measures  
 44

---

<sup>14</sup> **Interagency Wild and Scenic Rivers Coordinating Council**, 1996: *Protecting Resource Values on Non-Federal Lands*. National Wild and Scenic Rivers System.



1 to alleviate potentially adverse impacts on the river resulting from their land-use activities. The  
2 National Park Service proposes such cooperative agreements, for instance, in its management  
3 plan for the Rio Grande WSR in Texas (National Park Service, 2004). In addition, landowners  
4 may voluntarily donate or sell lands, or interests in lands (*i.e.*, easements) as part of a cooperative  
5 agreement. Local floodplain zoning and wetlands protection regulations can also be part of a  
6 land-protection strategy.<sup>14</sup>

#### 7 8 **Limitations on Impacts of Federally Assisted Water Projects on WSRs**

9 The WSR Act is clear that no dams, diversions, hydropower facilities, or other major  
10 infrastructure may be constructed within a designated WSR corridor. In addition, the Act states  
11 that no government agency may assist (through loans, grants, or licenses) in the construction of a  
12 water project that would have a “direct and adverse effect” on the river’s values. A gray area  
13 exists, however, when projects upstream or downstream of a designated WSR would “invade” or  
14 “unreasonably diminish” the designated river’s outstandingly remarkable values. Legal decisions  
15 in a number of WSR cases suggest that proposed water projects above or below a designated  
16 stream segment, or on a tributary to a WSR, should be evaluated for their potential to  
17 “unreasonably diminish” the scenic, recreational, fish, or wildlife values of the designated river.  
18 For example, when the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers proposed to complete the Elk Creek Dam,  
19 located 57 miles upstream of the Rogue WSR, the two administering agencies— BLM and the  
20 USFS—issued a determination that the dam would result in “unreasonable diminishment to the  
21 anadromous fisheries resource [within the designated area] because of impediments to migration  
22 and some loss of spawning and rearing habitat.” While it was left to Congress to decide whether  
23 the dam should be built, the Rogue WSR’s administering agencies weighed in to protect the  
24 river’s values.<sup>12</sup>

#### 25 26 **Cooperative Arrangements with Other Agencies to Mitigate Impacts on WSRs**

27 The WSR administering agencies can work proactively with other federal or state agencies to  
28 secure their cooperation in protecting the natural flows and outstandingly remarkable values of  
29 designated rivers. For example, the NPS could establish an agreement with an upstream dam  
30 operator, such as the Army Corps of Engineers, to help ensure flows adequate to protect the  
31 WSR’s habitat and other values. In addition, working with local governments and communities  
32 to secure zoning restrictions that protect a WSR’s water quality or other values can be effective.  
33 For example, cooperative work on WSR studies for the Sudbury, Assabet, and Concord Rivers in  
34 Massachusetts (which received WSR designation in 1999) led to a “nutrient trading” program  
35 designed to reduce pollution loads and eutrophication problems within the river systems.<sup>13</sup>

#### 36 37 **Establishment of Effective Baseline Information**

38 Although there is sufficient authority for the administering agencies to acquire land interests and  
39 water rights, information is often lacking to answer the important detailed questions about where  
40 to acquire these interests and water rights, when to do so, for how much, and for what purposes.  
41 Baseline data that are needed to adequately implement authorities under the Act are often skimpy  
42 or lacking altogether. It is very difficult for a river manager to propose a change when it cannot  
43 be demonstrated what that change will do to the river’s protection. Without baseline data as a  
44 reference point, it will also be impossible to detect climate-induced changes in flow regimes.  
45 Thus, it is critical to begin to develop baseline data.

#### 46 47 **Technical Assistance**

1 The spirit of the WSR Act is one of cooperation and collaboration among all the entities  
2 involved—whether public or private, and including local, state, regional, and national political  
3 divisions. The provision of technical assistance to communities within or near a designated or  
4 potential WSR can be a powerful tool for implementing the Act. In some cases, for example,  
5 communities may see the value of zoning restrictions only when given assistance with GIS  
6 mapping that shows the potential for harmful flooding in the future.

## 7 **6.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

8 Climate change arises from human activity and, unlike climate variation resulting from natural  
9 forces operating at historical time scales, the rate of climate change expected over the next 100  
10 years is extremely high (IPCC, 2007a). The magnitude and form of the changes will be variable  
11 across the United States—some regions may experience more frequent and intense droughts,  
12 while others may have fewer or less severe dry periods. This regional variability will be  
13 pronounced among the WSRs because they already vary dramatically in terms of their local  
14 climates and in terms of the extent to which their watersheds are influenced by human activities  
15 that exacerbate climate change impacts. Because impacts due to human activities (*e.g.*, land use  
16 change, water extraction) will persist or grow in the future, this discussion focuses on climate  
17 change impacts and the interactive effects of climate change with other stressors on ecosystems  
18 and their services. This section finishes by presenting adaptation options for WSRs.

### 19 **6.4.1 Climate Change Impacts**

20 Output from climate change models indicate that global temperature will increase, with the  
21 direction and magnitude varying regionally. Projections of changes in precipitation are less  
22 certain but include change in the amount or timing of rainfall as well as the frequency and  
23 magnitude of extreme rainfall events. The latest IPCC (2007b) assessment report states: [We are]  
24 “*virtually certain* to experience warmer and fewer cold days over most land areas as well as  
25 warmer and more frequent hot days; we are *very likely* to experience heat waves and heavy  
26 rainfall events more frequently; and we are *likely* to experience more drought in some regions.”  
27 Thus, much of the world can expect warmer conditions and many watersheds will experience  
28 more severe weather events.

#### 29 **6.4.1.1 Temperature**

30 During the 21<sup>st</sup> century, the average global surface temperature is projected to increase with the  
31 best estimate across six IPCC (2007a) scenarios being 1.8–4.0°C during the 21<sup>st</sup> century.  
32 Increases will vary geographically and seasonally. For instance, in summer, rivers in Nevada,  
33 Utah, and Idaho will be most strongly affected (Fig. 6.12). In the past, for snowmelt-dominated  
34 rivers in the western United States, temperature increases have affected the onset of the spring  
35 pulse and the timing of the center of mass for flow (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger, 2005) (Fig.  
36 6.12). Because streams and rivers are generally well mixed and turbulent, they respond to  
37 changes in atmospheric conditions fairly easily and thus they would become warmer under  
38 projected climate change (Eaton and Scheller, 1996). Rivers that are fed by groundwater, such as  
39 Michigan’s Au Sable and Florida’s Wekiva, should be somewhat buffered from atmospheric  
40 heating (Allan, 2004). Those that do warm could experience reductions in water quality due to

1 increased growth of nuisance algae and to lower oxygen levels (Murdoch, Baron, and Miller,  
2 2000).

3  
4  
5

6 **Figure 6.12.** Projected temperature changes for 2091-2100.<sup>15</sup>

#### 7 **6.4.1.2 Precipitation**

8 Little to no change in precipitation is projected in southern Utah, southern Colorado,  
9 northeastern New Mexico, eastern Texas, and Louisiana, where only a few WSRs are designated  
10 (the Saline Bayou, Louisiana; Upper Rio Grande and Pecos, New Mexico) (Fig. 6.13). Up to a  
11 10% increase in rainfall may occur around the Great Lakes region, where there are a number of  
12 designated rivers including the Indian, Sturgeon, Presque Isle, and St. Croix. As much as a 10%  
13 decrease in precipitation may occur in southern Arizona and southeastern California, where the  
14 Verde, Kern, Tuolumne, and Merced rivers are designated as Wild and Scenic.

15  
16  
17

18 **Figure 6.13.** Projected annual precipitation changes for 2091-2100.<sup>15</sup>

19

20 In regions that receive most of their precipitation as snow, the increased temperatures may result  
21 in a shift from winter snow to rain or rain plus snow. A recent analysis of long-term USGS  
22 discharge gauge records showed that most rivers north of 44° North latitude—roughly from  
23 southern Minnesota and Michigan through northern New York and southern Maine—have had  
24 progressively earlier winter-spring streamflows over the last 50–90 years (Hodgkins and Dudley,  
25 2006). Rivers in mountainous regions also may experience earlier snowmelt, and in some  
26 regions, less snowpack (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger, 2005; McCabe and Clark, 2005). Many  
27 parts of Oregon and southern Washington, which are states notable for their large number of  
28 WSRs, may experience earlier snowmelt and thus higher winter-spring discharges.

#### 29 **6.4.1.3 Discharge**

30 Because of the projected changes in temperature, precipitation, and CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations, river  
31 discharges are expected to change in many regions (Lettenmaier, Wood, and Wallis, 1994;  
32 Vörösmarty *et al.*, 2000; Alcamo *et al.*, 2003). The total volume of river runoff and the timing of  
33 peak flows and low flows are expected to shift significantly in some regions. In humid, vegetated  
34 regions of the world, the majority of runoff follows subsurface pathways and the majority of  
35 precipitation returns to the atmosphere as evapotranspiration (Allan, Palmer, and Poff, 2005).  
36 Since climate change will affect the distribution of vegetation (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001), the  
37 dominant flow paths to some rivers may shift, resulting in higher or flashier discharge regimes  
38 (Alcamo, Flörke, and Märker, 2007).

39

40 Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia (2005) evaluated global fields of relative (*i.e.*, percent) change in  
41 runoff from a 1900–1970 baseline (2006 IPCC 20C3M model runs) to a 2041–2060 period (2006

<sup>15</sup> **University of Arizona**, Environmental Studies Laboratory, 2007: Climate change projections for the United States. University of Arizona, <http://www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/>, accessed on 5-17-2007.

1 IPCC A1B model runs). They averaged the relative change across 24 pairs of model runs,  
 2 obtained from 12 different models, some of which performed replicate runs. Fig. 4 in Milly,  
 3 Dunne, and Vecchia (2005) shows projected changes in runoff globally in two ways: (1) as the  
 4 mean, across 24 pairs of runs, of the relative changes in runoff, and (2) as the difference between  
 5 the number of pairs of runs showing increases in runoff minus the number showing decreases in  
 6 runoff. Fig. 6.14 shows similar results from the same analysis, but with (1) central estimates of  
 7 change based on the more stable median instead of the mean, (2) equal weighting of the 12  
 8 models instead of the 24 pairs of model runs, and (3) relative changes of areal-averages of runoff  
 9 over United States water regions instead of relative changes of point values of runoff.

10  
 11  
 12  
 13 **Figure 6.14.** Median, over 12 climate models, of the percent changes in runoff from  
 14 United States water resources regions for 2041–2060 relative to 1901–1970. More than  
 15 66% of models agree on the sign of change for areas shown in color; diagonal hatching  
 16 indicates greater than 90% agreement. Recomputed from data of Milly, Dunne, and  
 17 Vecchia (2005) by Dr. P.C.D. Milly, USGS.

18  
 19 The median projections are for increased runoff over the United States Midwest and Middle-  
 20 Atlantic, through slightly decreased runoff in the Missouri River Basin and the Texas Gulf  
 21 drainage, to substantial change (median decreases in annual runoff approaching 20%) in the  
 22 Southwest (Colorado River Basin, California, and Great Basin). Median estimates of runoff  
 23 changes in the Pacific Northwest are small. Large (greater than 20%) increases in runoff are  
 24 projected for Alaska.

25  
 26 Fig. 6.14 also contains information on the degree of agreement among models. Uncolored  
 27 regions in the Southeast, New England, and around the Great Lakes indicate that fewer than two  
 28 thirds of the models agreed on the direction of change in those regions. Elsewhere, the presence  
 29 of color indicates that at least two thirds of the models agreed on the direction of change.  
 30 Diagonal stippling in Alaska and the Southwest indicate that more than 90% (*i.e.*, 11 or 12) of  
 31 the 12 models agree on the direction of change.

32  
 33 It is important to note that and some of the regions in Fig. 6.14 are small and are not well  
 34 resolved by the climate models, so important spatial characteristics—such as mountain ranges in  
 35 the western United States—are only very approximately represented in these results. However,  
 36 these regions are generally larger than many of the river basins for which Milly, Dunne, and  
 37 Vecchia (2005) demonstrated substantial model skill in reproducing historical observations.

38  
 39 In regions in which snowmelt occurs earlier due to warmer temperatures, stream flows will  
 40 increase early in the season and flooding may be pronounced (see Fig. 6.15 for a picture of river  
 41 flooding) if high flows coincide with heavy rainfall events (“rain on snow events”). As  
 42 evidenced by increases in discharge, a shift in the timing of springtime snowmelt toward earlier  
 43 in the year is already being observed (1948–2000) in many western rivers (Fig. 6.16),  
 44 particularly in the Pacific Northwest, Sierra Nevada, Rockies, and parts of Alaska (Stewart,  
 45 Cayan, and Dettinger, 2004).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11

**Figure 6.15.** Photo of snowmelt in WSR during winter-spring flows. Photo courtesy of National Park Service, Lake Clark National Park & Preserve.

**Figure 6.16.** Earlier onset of spring snowmelt pulse in river runoff from 1948–2000. Shading indicates magnitude of the trend expressed as the change (days) in timing over the period. Larger symbols indicate statistically significant trends at the 90% confidence level. From Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger (2005).

#### 12 **6.4.1.4 Channel and Network Morphology**

13 Large changes in discharge that are not accompanied by changes in sediment inputs that offset  
14 the flow changes will have dramatic impacts on river geomorphology (Wolman, 1967). Rivers  
15 with increases in discharge will experience more mobilization of bed sediments (Pizzuto *et al.*,  
16 2008), which may result in changes in the river’s width and depth (Bledsoe and Watson, 2001).  
17 Regions that lose vegetation under future climate may have increased runoff and erosion when it  
18 does rain (Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002). The drier conditions for extended periods of time  
19 may result in some perennial streams becoming intermittent and many intermittent or ephemeral  
20 streams potentially disappearing entirely, thus simplifying the network.

#### 21 **6.4.2 Future Human Context: Interactive Effects of Multiple Stressors**

22 The effects of multiple environmental stressors on ecosystems are still poorly understood, yet  
23 their impacts can be enormous. Any consideration of climate change is by definition a  
24 consideration of future conditions; *i.e.*, a look at what is expected over the next century. Many  
25 factors other than climate influence the health of ecosystems, and these factors certainly will not  
26 remain static while climate changes (see Box 6.6 for examples). The stressors most likely to  
27 intensify the negative effects of climate change include land use change—particularly the  
28 clearing of native vegetation for urban and suburban developments—and excessive extractions  
29 of river water or groundwater that feed WSRs (Allan, 2004; Nelson and Palmer, 2007).

30  
31 WSRs in watersheds with a significant amount of urban development are expected to not only  
32 experience the greatest changes in temperature under future climates, but also to experience  
33 temperature spikes during and immediately following rain storms (Nelson and Palmer, 2007)  
34 (Fig 6.17). Such changes may result in the extirpation of cool water species.<sup>16</sup>

35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

**Figure 6.17.** Very rapid increases (1–4 hours) in water temperature (temperature “spikes”) in urban streams north of Washington D.C. have been found to follow local rain storms. *Top graph:* dark line shows stream discharge that spikes just after a rainfall in watersheds

<sup>16</sup> Nelson, K., M.A. Palmer, J.E. Pizzuto, G.E. Moglen, P.L. Angermeier, R. Hilderbrand, M. Dettinger, and K. Hayhoe, submitted: Forecasting the combined effects of urbanization and climate change on stream ecosystems: from impacts to management options. *Journal of Applied Ecology*.

1 with large amounts of impervious cover; gray line shows temperature surges that increase  
 2 2–7°C above pre-rain levels and above streams in undeveloped watersheds in the region.  
 3 There is no temperature buffering effect that is typical in wildlands where rain soaks into  
 4 soil, moves into groundwater, and laterally into streams. *Bottom graph:* shows that the  
 5 number of temperature surges into a stream increases with the amount of impervious cover.  
 6 From Nelson and Palmer (2007).

7  
 8 The number of extreme flow events would also increase more in WSRs in urbanized basins  
 9 compared with those that are mostly wild. Large amounts of impervious cover are well known to  
 10 cause an increase in flashiness in streams—both higher peak flows during the rainy season and  
 11 lower base flows in the summer (Walsh *et al.*, 2005). Thus, flooding may be a very serious  
 12 problem in regions of the United States that are expected to have more rainfall and more  
 13 urbanization in the future (*e.g.*, the Northeast and portions of the mid-Atlantic) (Nowak and  
 14 Walton, 2005) (see Fig. 6.13). Areas of the United States that will experience the greatest  
 15 increase in population size are the South and West, with increases of more than 40% between the  
 16 year 2000 and 2030.<sup>17</sup> More specifically, significant growth is occurring in the following regions  
 17 that have rivers designated as wild and scenic: most of Florida; central and southern California;  
 18 western Arizona; around Portland, Oregon; much of the mid-Atlantic; and parts of Wisconsin,  
 19 northern Illinois, and Michigan.<sup>18</sup>

20  
 21 Excessive water extractions are already affecting some WSRs (*e.g.*, the Rio Grande) and this  
 22 impact will be exacerbated in regions of the country expected to experience even more water  
 23 stress under future climates. Alcamo, Flörke, and Märker (2007) used a global water model to  
 24 analyze the combined impacts of climate change and future water stress due to socioeconomic  
 25 driving forces (income, electricity production, water-use efficiency, etc.) that influence water  
 26 extractions. Their models indicate that for the 2050s, areas under severe water stress will include  
 27 not only parts of Africa, Central Asia, and the Middle East, but also the western United States.  
 28 (Fig. 6.18)

29  
 30  
 31  
 32 **Figure 6.18.** Water stress projected for the 2050s based on withdrawals-to-availability  
 33 ratio, where availability corresponds to annual river discharge (combined surface runoff  
 34 and groundwater recharge). From Alcamo, Flörke, and Märker (2007).

35  
 36 Water managers will need to adjust operating plans for storing, diverting, and releasing water as  
 37 the timing and intensity of runoff change due to climate change (Bergkamp, Orlando, and  
 38 Burton, 2003). If these water management adjustments do not keep pace with climate change,  
 39 water managers will face increasingly severe water and energy shortages due to lessened  
 40 efficiency in capturing and storing water to supply cities and farms, or to generate electricity.  
 41

<sup>17</sup> U.S. Census Bureau, 2004: State interim population projections by age and sex: 2004–2030. U.S. Census Bureau Projection Website, [www.census.gov/population/www/projections/projectionsagesex.html](http://www.census.gov/population/www/projections/projectionsagesex.html), accessed on 4-1-2007.

<sup>18</sup> Auch, R., J. Taylor, and W. Acevedo, 2004: *Urban Growth in American Cities*. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1252, US Geological Survey, EROS Data Center, Reston, VA.

1 Dam building in the United States has slowed considerably relative to the past century, so river  
2 impacts related to the interactive effects of dams and climate change will result primarily from  
3 changes in management of the dams, particularly as water withdrawals for irrigation or urban  
4 water supplies increase in response to a changing climate. For basins expected to experience high  
5 water stress in the future (*e.g.*, in the southwestern United States), drawdown of reservoirs is  
6 expected, with less water available to sustain environmental flows in the downstream rivers. In  
7 regions expected to experience increased precipitation, such as the Great Lakes, flooding  
8 problems may increase—particularly if climate change brings greater intensity of rainfall. Shifts  
9 in the timing of snowmelt runoff or ice break-up will force dam managers to adjust their  
10 operating plans to avoid catastrophic high releases of water into downstream areas. In general,  
11 WSRs in basins that are affected by dams or are highly developed will require more changes in  
12 management than free-flowing rivers in basins that are mostly wild (Palmer *et al.*, 2008). Ideally  
13 this will be done proactively to minimize the need to repair and restore damaged infrastructure  
14 and ecosystems.

### 15 **6.4.3 Ecosystem Goods and Services Assuming Present Management**

16 This chapter has outlined expectations given future climate projections that include warmer  
17 water temperatures for most rivers and changes in flow regimes, with extreme events (floods and  
18 droughts) increasing in frequency for many rivers. While the impacts will vary among the WSRs  
19 depending on their location, their ability to absorb change—which is largely related to the  
20 “wildness” of their watershed—also depends on the management response. If proactive measures  
21 to buffer ecosystems (such as those discussed in the next section) are taken, then the  
22 consequences may be reduced. The need for these proactive measures should be least for WSRs  
23 that are classified as “wild,” followed by those that are designated “scenic.” Presumably wild  
24 rivers are the least affected by human activities that may exacerbate the impacts of climate  
25 change (Palmer *et al.*, 2008). However, as noted earlier, because many WSRs are in reality river  
26 *segments* within watersheds that may be affected by development or even dams, each designated  
27 river must be evaluated to determine the management needs.

28  
29 This section describes the impacts to ecosystems assuming “business as usual” in management—  
30 *i.e.*, no changes from current practices. The discussion focuses on species and ecological  
31 processes, because these two factors influence most of the attributes valued in WSRs: clean  
32 water and healthy ecosystems, with flow regimes that support diverse plant and animal  
33 assemblages. Even though recreational use of some WSRs is focused primarily on water sports,  
34 it may be that other users still have a strong preference for the other attributes listed above. Clean  
35 and beautiful waterways are only possible if materials entering that water—*e.g.*, nutrients, excess  
36 organic matter, etc.—do not interfere with natural biophysical processes or the health of flora  
37 and fauna.

38  
39 For a given level of “wilderness,” the impacts of climate change on WSRs will depend on how  
40 much the changes in thermal and flow regimes deviate from historical and recent regimes (Fig.  
41 6.5). Changes outside the natural range of flow or temperature variability may have drastic  
42 consequences for ecosystem structure and function (Richter *et al.*, 1997; Poff, Brinson, and Day,  
43 Jr., 2002). The impacts will also depend on the rate of change in temperature or discharge  
44 relative to the adaptive capacity of species (amount of genetic diversity). Finally, the impacts  
45 will depend on the number and severity of other stressors. Thus, the warmer temperatures and

1 drier conditions expected in southwestern rivers may lead to severe degradation of river  
2 ecosystems, which will be exacerbated if water withdrawals for consumptive uses increase  
3 (Xenopoulos *et al.*, 2005). For example, the Verde River north of Phoenix, Arizona is in a region  
4 of the United States that is experiencing increases in population size, and is expected to have  
5 reduced rainfall as well as higher winter and summer temperatures under future climates. The  
6 Verde is one of the few perennial rivers within Arizona, but its headwaters are an artificial  
7 reservoir (Sullivan Lake) and its flows are affected by groundwater pumping and diversions  
8 despite being largely in national forest land.

9  
10 Some WSRs may experience more intense runoff following rain storms, particularly those that  
11 are in watersheds destined to become more urbanized. These are expected to lose sensitive taxa  
12 and experience serious water quality problems (Nelson and Palmer, 2007; Pizzuto *et al.*, 2008).  
13 The WSRs expected to be affected are those in regions projected to have more precipitation and  
14 increases in population size, such as the Upper Delaware, those in the Columbia River basin, and  
15 potentially the Chattooga.

#### 16 **6.4.3.1 Species-Level Impacts**

17 As the water warms, individual growth and reproductive rates of fish are expected to increase so  
18 long as thermal tolerances of any life history stage are not exceeded; typically, eggs and young  
19 juveniles are the most sensitive to temperature extremes (Van der Kraak and Pankhurst, 1997;  
20 Beitinger, Bennett, and McCauley, 2000). Faster growth rates and time to maturation typically  
21 result in smaller adult size and, because size is closely related to reproductive output in many  
22 aquatic invertebrates (Vannote and Sweeney, 1980), population sizes may decline over time. The  
23 spawning time of fish may also shift earlier if river waters begin to warm earlier in the spring  
24 (Hilborn *et al.*, 2003). Further, some aquatic species require prolonged periods of low  
25 temperatures (Lehmkuhl, 1974); these species may move northward, with local extirpations.  
26 However, dispersal to more northern rivers may be restricted by habitat loss, and riverine insects  
27 with adult flying stages that depend on vegetated corridors for dispersal may not survive (Allan  
28 and Flecker, 1993). For fish, amphibians, and water-dispersed plants, habitat fragmentation due  
29 to dams or the isolation of tributaries due to drought conditions may result in local extirpations  
30 (Dynesius *et al.*, 2004; Palmer *et al.*, 2008).

31  
32 Depending on their severity, climate-induced decreases in river discharge may reduce freshwater  
33 biodiversity, particularly if other stressors are at play. Xenopoulos *et al.* (2005) predict that up to  
34 75% of local fish biodiversity could be headed toward extinction by 2070 due to the combined  
35 effects of decreasing discharge and increasing water extractions. Even if streams do not dry up in  
36 the summer, those that experience reductions in baseflow (*e.g.*, in the Southwest) may have  
37 stressed biota and riparian vegetation (Allan, 2004). Dissolved oxygen levels may decline, as  
38 may critical habitat for current-dependent (rheophilic) species (Poff, 2002). Physiological stress  
39 and increased predation resulting from crowding (less depth means less habitat), combined with  
40 habitat fragmentation in stream networks (isolated pools), may dramatically reduce survival and  
41 constrain dispersal (Poff, 2002).

42  
43 Rivers in which future discharge exceeds historical bounds will also experience a loss of species  
44 unless they are capable of moving to less-affected regions. Since species life histories are closely  
45 tied to flow regime, some species may not be able to find suitable flow environments for feeding,



1 reproducing, or surviving major flood events. Further, with higher flows come higher suspended  
2 sediment and bedload transport, which may interfere with feeding. If sediment deposition fills  
3 interstitial spaces, this will reduce hyporheic habitat availability for insects and spawning areas  
4 for lithophilic fish (Pizzuto *et al.*, 2008). Whether deposition or net export of these sediments  
5 occurs depends on the size of the sediment moving into channels in concert with peak flows (*i.e.*,  
6 the stream competency). Particle size and hydraulic forces are major determinants of stream  
7 biodiversity (both the numbers and composition of algae, invertebrates, and fish) and excessive  
8 bottom erosion is well known to decrease abundances and lead to dominance by a few taxa  
9 (Allan, 1995).

#### 10 **6.4.3.2 Impacts on Ecological Processes**

11 Many of the ecological processes that ensure clean water for drinking and for supporting wildlife  
12 will be influenced by higher water temperatures and altered flows. Primary production in streams  
13 is very sensitive to temperature and flow levels (Lowe and Pan, 1996; Hill, 1996); climate  
14 change may thus result in an increase in food availability to herbivorous biota that could support  
15 higher abundances and also shift species composition. If riparian plants also grow at faster rates,  
16 inputs of leaves and other allochthonous material to rivers may increase. While this could be  
17 expected to provide more food for detritivores, this may not be the case if the rate of breakdown  
18 of those leaves is higher under future climates. This may occur with higher water temperatures  
19 and thus increased microbial growth, or with higher flows that contribute to the physical abrasion  
20 of leaves (Webster and Benfield, 1986). Further, allochthonous inputs may represent lower-  
21 quality food since plants growing under elevated CO<sub>2</sub> levels may have higher carbon-to-nitrogen  
22 ratios, and compounds such as lignin (Tuchman *et al.*, 2002) that reduce microbial productivity  
23 (Rier *et al.*, 2002). They also may experience higher leaf decay rates (Tuchman *et al.*, 2003) and  
24 detritivore growth rates in streams (Tuchman *et al.*, 2002).

25  
26 There is a great deal of uncertainty about how rates of nutrient processing in streams will be  
27 influenced by climate change. Dissolved inorganic nitrogen (as NO<sub>3</sub>) levels may decrease if rates  
28 of denitrification are increased (*e.g.*, by higher temperatures and lower oxygen), which could be  
29 important given increasing levels of nitrogen deposition (Baron *et al.*, 2000). On the other hand,  
30 if discharge and sediment transport increase, then the downstream movement of nitrogen (as  
31 NH<sub>4</sub>) and phosphorus (as PO<sub>4</sub>) may increase. In short, there is a high degree of uncertainty with  
32 respect to how climate change will affect ecological processes. This means that our present  
33 ability to predict changes in water quality and food availability for aquatic biota is limited. To  
34 date, few studies have been conducted to simultaneously examine the many interacting factors  
35 that are both subject to change in the future and known to influence ecological processes.

#### 36 **6.4.4 Options for Protection Assuming New Management**

37 Options to protect WSRs and river segments are diverse, and most of them require cooperation  
38 and collaboration with other groups. Depending on the specific watershed and the level of human  
39 use (development, agriculture, forestry, etc.), these groups could include local landowners,  
40 reservoir and dam managers, as well as city, county or state agencies. As pointed out several  
41 times in this chapter, WSRs are distinctive—as are some other ecosystems on federally owned  
42 land—because rivers are affected by *all* activities in their watershed whether the land is federal  
43 or not. Thus the options we discuss below extend well beyond federal boundaries and assume

1 WSR managers/administering agencies will be proactive in seeking cooperative arrangements  
2 with the needed parties to ensure WSR ecosystems are protected.

3  
4 Rivers are inherently dynamic systems—in their native state they are constantly “adjusting” to  
5 changes in sediment and water inputs by laterally migrating across the landscape and by  
6 changing the depth, width, and sinuosity of their channels. These changes are part of a healthy  
7 river’s response to changes in the landscape and the climate regime. However, the new  
8 temperature and precipitation regimes expected as a result of global climate change would occur  
9 much more quickly than historical climate shifts did (IPCC, 2007a). Further, many WSRs are  
10 affected by development in their watershed, dams, and excessive water extractions. Thus, the  
11 ability to adjust to changes in the flux of water and material, particularly on rapid time scales, is  
12 impeded in many watersheds.

13  
14 In general, WSRs that are in fairly pristine watersheds with no development and few human  
15 impacts will fare the best under future climates because their natural capacity to adjust is intact.  
16 Even in the face of climate change impacts, rivers surrounded by uninhabited and undeveloped  
17 land may experience shifts in channels—perhaps even a deepening and widening of those  
18 channels—but their provision of ecosystem services may remain intact. The access points for  
19 wildlife or river enthusiasts may need to be shifted and existing trails moved, but largely these  
20 rivers are expected to remain beautiful and healthy. In contrast, rivers in Illinois, which will also  
21 experience increased discharge, may experience serious problems because flooding and erosion  
22 may be exacerbated by development. That said, even some pristine rivers may be negatively  
23 affected. For example, the Noatak River in Alaska is already experiencing very large temperature  
24 shifts because of its fairly high latitude. This could have serious consequences for migrating  
25 salmon and other highly valued species (National Research Council, 2004) (Box 6.6).

26  
27 The question becomes, what is the appropriate management response? Following Palmer *et al.*,  
28 (2008) we distinguish between *proactive* and *reactive* responses. The former includes  
29 management actions such as restoration, land purchases, and measures that can be taken now to  
30 maintain or increase the resilience of WSRs (*i.e.*, the ability of a WSR to return to its initial state  
31 and functioning despite major disturbances). Reactive measures involve responding to problems  
32 as they arise by repairing damage or mitigating ongoing impacts. Some actions are far more  
33 desirable to undertake proactively (*e.g.*, acquire land to protect floodplains), others may be done  
34 proactively *or* reactively (*e.g.*, riparian restoration), and some are more desirable to undertake  
35 reactively, such as where the costs of acting before an event are high and the uncertainty of an  
36 event occurring is high (*e.g.*, severe damage occurs from an extreme event that requires channel  
37 reconfiguration). (Boxes 6.4 and 6.5).

#### 38 **6.4.4.1 Reactive Management**

39 Reactive management basically refers to what managers will be forced to do once impacts are  
40 felt if they have not prepared for them. When it comes to rivers, examples of reactive measures  
41 include responding to events such as floods, droughts, erosion, and species loss as they occur.  
42 Extreme flow events in areas expected to have later snowmelt with the potential for rain-on-snow  
43 events may lead to substantial erosion of river banks, not only placing sensitive riparian  
44 ecosystems at risk but potentially causing water quality problems downstream due to higher  
45 suspended sediment loads.<sup>16</sup> At the other extreme, arid regions that experience more droughts

1 may find populations of valued species isolated due to dropping water levels. For these  
2 examples, reactive management efforts may be needed to stem future degradation of ecosystems  
3 or extirpation of a species.

4  
5 The most expensive and serious reactive measures will be needed for WSRs in basins that are  
6 heavily developed or whose water is managed for multiple uses. In areas with higher discharge,  
7 reactive measures may include river restoration projects to stabilize eroding banks or projects to  
8 repair in-stream habitat. To reduce future occurrences of severe erosion, more stormwater  
9 infrastructure may be needed. Other measures, such as creating wetlands or off-channel storage  
10 basins, may be a way to absorb high flow energy and provide refugia for fauna during droughts  
11 or floods. Removing sediment from the bottom of reservoirs could be a short-term solution to  
12 allow for more water storage, perhaps averting dam breaches that could be disastrous. Water  
13 quality problems due to high sediment loads or contaminants may appear in WSR reaches  
14 downstream of developed (urbanized or agricultural) regions, and these problems are very  
15 difficult to cope with in a reactive manner.

16  
17 In regions with higher temperatures and less precipitation, reactive projects might include fish  
18 passage projects to allow stranded fish to move between isolated river reaches during drought  
19 times, replanting of native riparian vegetation with drought-resistant vegetation, or removal of  
20 undesirable non-native species that take hold. If dams are present upstream of the WSR, flow  
21 releases during the summer could be used to save flora and fauna in downstream river reaches  
22 that are drying up, and accentuated floods can be managed to avert potentially disastrous  
23 ecological consequences of extreme floods.

24  
25 These are simply examples of reactive management that are discussed more fully in Palmer *et*  
26 *al.*, (2008) but the most important point is that a reactive approach is not the most desirable  
27 response strategy to climate change, because a high degree of ecosystem and infrastructure  
28 damage is likely to occur before reactive measures are taken. The best approach for reactive  
29 management is to continuously evaluate river health over time with rigorous monitoring and  
30 scientific research, so that management begins as soon as problems are detected; *i.e.*, before  
31 problems are severe. Further, this monitoring and research should help identify proactive needs,  
32 thus minimizing costs of repair and loss of ecological services.

#### 33 **6.4.4.2 Proactive Management**

34 Many of the management actions that are needed to respond to the risks of climate change arise  
35 directly from changes in the frequency and magnitude of extreme events, in addition to changes  
36 in average conditions or baseflow. Anticipating how climate impacts will interact with other  
37 ongoing stressors is critical to developing strategies to protect the values of WSRs. Proactive  
38 measures that restore the natural capacity of rivers to buffer climate-change impacts are the most  
39 desirable actions since they may also lead to other environmental benefits such as higher water  
40 quality and restored fish populations. Examples of such measures might include stormwater  
41 management in developed basins or, even better, land acquisition around the river or setting back  
42 existing levees to free the floodplain of infrastructure, absorb floods, and allow regrowth of  
43 riparian vegetation. For WSR segments fed by non-designated headwaters that are not protected  
44 in some way from human impacts, efforts should be made to extend the designation to these  
45 small tributaries through land acquisition or partnerships with landowners. Indeed, since

1 headwaters often support rare and sensitive species, protecting multiple small headwaters will  
2 provide a sort of “insurance” against regional species loss if losses occur in one or a few  
3 tributaries.

4  
5 While shifting climate regimes may result in local shifts in species assemblage (Thuiller, 2004),  
6 if there are flora and fauna of special value associated with a WSR then proactive responses to  
7 ensure the persistence of these species are needed. These responses will require detailed  
8 understanding of their life histories and ecology. For rivers in regions expected to experience hot,  
9 dry periods, planting or natural establishment of drought-tolerant varieties of plants may help  
10 protect the riparian corridor from erosion. A focus on increasing genetic diversity and population  
11 size through plantings or via stocking fish may increase the adaptive capacity of species. Aquatic  
12 fauna may benefit from an increase in physical habitat heterogeneity in the channel (Brown,  
13 2003), and replanting or widening any degraded riparian buffers may protect river fauna by  
14 providing more shade and maintaining sources of allochthonous input (Palmer *et al.*, 2005).

15  
16 Incorporating the potential impacts of climate change into water management strategies  
17 inevitably involves dealing constructively with uncertainty. Enough is now known about the  
18 likelihood of certain impacts of climate change on water availability and use that it is possible to  
19 design proactive management responses to reduce future risks and to protect important river  
20 assets. At the core of these strategies is the ability to *anticipate* change and to *adapt* river  
21 management to those changing circumstances. Water managers need to know, for example, when  
22 to take specific actions to ensure the maintenance of adequate flows to sustain river species. It is  
23 important that this adaptive capacity be built at the watershed scale, incorporating factors such as  
24 grazing, farming, forestry, and other land-uses; reservoir management; water withdrawals; and  
25 other features. A new layer of cooperation and coordination among land and water managers will  
26 thus be essential to the successful implementation of these adaptive strategies for the  
27 management of WSRs.

28  
29 Legal and institutional barriers exist in many river systems, and will need to be overcome for the  
30 adoption of effective management strategies. Water rights, interstate water compacts, property  
31 rights, and zoning patterns may all present constraints to effective adaptation strategies. Studies  
32 of the Colorado River basin, for example, have found that much of the potential economic  
33 damage that may result from climate change is attributable to the inflexibility of the Colorado  
34 River Compact (Loomis, Koteen, and Hurd, 2003). The new stressor of climate change, on top of  
35 the existing pressures of population growth, rising water demand, land-use intensification, and  
36 other stressors, may demand a re-evaluation of the institutional mechanisms governing water use  
37 and management, with an eye toward increasing flexibility.

38  
39 Along with the management tools described above, a number of other categories of actions and  
40 measures can enhance the WSR System’s ability to protect the nation’s rivers under changing  
41 climatic regimes, as described below. Box 6.4 presents a summary list of specific actions WSR  
42 managers can take to promote adaptation.

#### 43 **Improve Water Monitoring Capabilities and Apply Climate Forecasting**

44 It is critical that river flow monitoring be supported adequately to detect and adapt to flow  
45 alterations due to climate change and other stressors. However, many stream gauges maintained  
46 by USGS have been discontinued due to resource limitations. Without sufficient monitoring  
47

1 capabilities, river managers simply cannot do their jobs adequately and researchers cannot gather  
2 the data needed to elucidate trends. For instance, adequate monitoring to detect trends in flow is  
3 needed to show that flooding is increasing as a consequence of more rapid melting in spring.  
4 River managers may use the monitoring data to determine where to pursue additional land  
5 conservation easements or where to encourage local zoning that limits development on  
6 floodplains.

7  
8 Climate forecasts can enable water managers to minimize risk and avoid damage to WSR values.  
9 The development of scenarios that capture the spectrum of possible outcomes is an invaluable  
10 tool for anticipating the ramifications of climate-related hydrological and land-use changes,  
11 including reduced snowpacks, greater spring flooding, lower summer flows, and warmer stream  
12 temperatures. The utility of forecasting tools, however, depends on the ability to apply their  
13 results to water management planning. For instance, the possibility of severe drought occurring  
14 in three out of five years indicates that river flows may be affected not only by lack of rainfall  
15 and runoff, but by increased evapotranspiration from vegetative regrowth after forest fires.  
16 Anticipating such flow depletion, and its potential magnitude, is critical to devising plans that  
17 mitigate the impacts. For example, warming trends across the Southwest exceed global averages  
18 by 50%, providing ample evidence of the importance of planning for reduced water availability  
19 and streamflows in the Rio Grande and other southwestern rivers.<sup>19</sup>

#### 20 21 **Build Capacity to Offer Technical Assistance**

22 The ability to demonstrate to communities the importance of certain zoning restrictions, land  
23 conservation measures, land-use modifications, or floodplain restrictions may require user-  
24 friendly models or tools that exhibit potential climate change impacts within specific watersheds.  
25 While sophisticated tools may be feasible to use in reaches with ample resources to support  
26 management activities, there is a need for affordable tools that enable managers to offer technical  
27 assistance in areas with fewer resources.

#### 28 29 **Designate More River Corridors as Wild and Scenic and Acquire Land Adjacent to WSRs**

30 Rivers may be designated as Wild and Scenic by acts of Congress or by the Secretary of Interior  
31 upon a state's request. Designation of additional rivers to the WSR program may raise visibility  
32 and expand protection to river assets at a time when they are coming under increased human and  
33 climatic pressures. Possible candidates for designation include rivers in the Nationwide Rivers  
34 Inventory (NRI). The NRI, which is maintained by the National Park Service (updated last in the  
35 1980s), includes more than 3,400 free-flowing river segments that are believed to possess at least  
36 one outstandingly remarkable value of national significance. By virtue of a 1979 Presidential  
37 directive, all federal agencies must seek to avoid or mitigate actions that would affect NRI  
38 segments. The WSR System would also benefit from hastening the review of rivers that have  
39 already been submitted for designation, but about which no decision has yet been made. For new  
40 designations, there is an opportunity to think strategically about climate change impacts when  
41 identifying and prioritizing rivers for designation. Climate change may affect the priority order  
42 and rationale for designation.

43  

---

<sup>19</sup> **New Mexico Office of State Engineer** and Interstate Stream Commission, 2006: *The Impact of Climate Change on New Mexico's Water Supply and Ability to Manage Water Resources*. New Mexico Office of State Engineer/Interstate Stream Commission.

1 A second reason for increasing the number of designated rivers in some regions is that if there is  
2 a high risk of species extinctions, due for example to a high drought probability, spreading that  
3 risk among rivers within the same ecoregions may provide protection (across space) for species.  
4 At any given time, there may be rivers within the ecoregion that are not as affected by drought.  
5 Land acquisition around existing WSRs may also reduce extinction if the land helps buffer the  
6 river segment from nearby development pressures or the land allows for floodplain expansion.

#### 7 8 **Consider Conjunctive Groundwater/Surface Water Management**

9 The protection of river health and natural flows under a changing climatic regime will require  
10 more concerted efforts to secure environmental flows, namely flows that will support the  
11 ecosystem, for rivers. With more than 270 dams located within 100 miles (upstream or  
12 downstream) of a designated WSR, collaborative arrangements with dam managers offer great  
13 potential to secure beneficial flows for WSRs under various climate change scenarios. For WSR  
14 segments in watersheds with dams, there may be a need to develop reservoir release options with  
15 dam managers and/or design structures for temporary storage of flood waters before they reach  
16 reservoirs. In regions with extremely high rates of evaporation, managers may wish to work with  
17 requisite authorities to consider removing dams below shallow, high-surface-area reservoirs. In  
18 such cases, alternative strategies for water storage will be needed. Finally, with large changes in  
19 reservoir water levels, the outlet height on dams may need adjusting to ensure high quality water  
20 to downstream WSRs.

21  
22 Because the agencies administering WSRs have little or no authority over dam operations, a  
23 proactive collaboration among the agencies involved—at federal, state, and local levels—is  
24 critical. Additionally, the purchase or leasing of water rights to enhance flow management  
25 options can be a valuable tool. For example, the establishment of dry-year option agreements  
26 with willing private partners can ensure that flows during droughts remain sufficient to protect  
27 critical habitats and maintain water quality. A strengthening of environmental flow programs and  
28 water use permit conditions to maintain natural flow conditions will also be critical.

#### 29 30 **Implement Restoration Projects**

31 Restoration can be done either proactively to protect existing resources or, as in the examples  
32 provided in Section 6.4.4.1 above, projects may be required to repair damage associated with a  
33 changing climate. Since floodplains and riparian corridors are critical regions both for mitigating  
34 floods and for storing water, measures should be taken to ensure they are as healthy as possible.  
35 This could include removal of invasive plants that threaten native species, re-grading river banks  
36 to reconnect floodplains to the active channel, and a whole host of other measures that are more  
37 fully described elsewhere (Bernhardt *et al.*, 2007; Palmer *et al.*, 2008; Wohl, Palmer, and  
38 Kondolf, 2008).

#### 39 40 **Develop and Amend CRMPs to Allow for Adaptation to Climate Change**

41 For river managers to fulfill their obligations to protect and enhance the values of WSRs, their  
42 management plans need to be evaluated and amended as appropriate to take into account  
43 changing stressors and circumstances due to shifting climate (Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002).  
44 For example, the severe drought in Australia in recent years has not only had serious short-term  
45 impacts on river flows, but—due to the effects of fires—may have severe long-term flow effects  
46 as well. Studies of the Murray River system by researchers at the University of New South  
47 Wales have found that large-scale forest regeneration following extensive bush fires will deplete

1 already low flows further due to the higher evapotranspiration rates of the younger trees  
 2 compared with the mature forests they are replacing. The 2003 fires, for example, may reduce  
 3 flows by more than 20% for the next two decades in one of the major tributaries to the Murray.<sup>20</sup>  
 4 Similar flow alterations might be anticipated in the American Southwest, which can expect a  
 5 significant increase in temperature, reduction in snowpack, and recurring droughts that may  
 6 cause more frequent fires and related vegetation changes. Management of the Rio Grande Wild  
 7 and Scenic corridors in both New Mexico and Texas will need to take such scenarios into  
 8 account.

#### 10 **Rebalance the Priority of Values used for Designation of WSRs**

11 In light of climate change impacts and their anticipated effects on habitat, biodiversity, and other  
 12 ecological assets, it may be useful to emphasize such natural values when designating new  
 13 WSRs. In addition, where two outstandingly remarkable values are in conflict within the same  
 14 designated river—as sometimes happens, for example, between habitat and recreational values—  
 15 an open and fair process in which climate change impacts are considered needs to be used to  
 16 evaluate the priorities. To protect ecosystem services, strong consideration should be given to  
 17 prioritizing those natural assets *most at risk* from climate change.

## 18 **6.5 Conclusions**

19 The WSR System was created to protect and preserve the biological, ecological, historic, scenic  
 20 and other “remarkable” values of the nation’s rivers. These assets are increasingly at risk due to  
 21 land-use changes, population growth, pollution discharges, flow-altering dams and diversions,  
 22 excessive groundwater pumping, and other pressures within watersheds and river systems.  
 23 Climate change adds to and magnifies these risks through its potential to alter rainfall,  
 24 temperature, and runoff patterns, as well as to disrupt biological communities and sever  
 25 ecological linkages in any given locale. Thus, the anticipation of climate change effects requires  
 26 a proactive management response if the nation’s valuable river assets are to be protected.

27  
 28 It is critical to recognize that only a subset of WSRs are headwater rivers in watersheds that are  
 29 free of development, extractive uses, or dams. Since human activities on the land and those  
 30 affecting ground waters have a very significant impact on rivers and will exert stress that could  
 31 exacerbate any problems associated with climate change, WSR managers alone can not ensure  
 32 the protection of many WSRs. Thus, forging partnerships with nonfederal water managers, land  
 33 owners, towns, and states will be necessary to protect and to preserve the “outstandingly  
 34 remarkable values” that are the basis for the designation of many rivers as wild and scenic.

35  
 36 In a world of limited budgets, it may not be possible to implement all of the measures identified  
 37 in the previous section and summarized in Box 6.4. But given limited financial and human  
 38 resources, the highest priorities for the protection of WSR assets under conditions of climatic  
 39 change are the following:  
 40

---

<sup>20</sup> **University of New South Wales**, 2007: Fire in the snow: thirsty gum trees put alpine water yields at risk. University of New South Wales Website, <http://www.science.unsw.edu.au/news/2007/bushfire.html>, accessed on 1-20-2007.

- 1       • Increase monitoring capabilities in order to acquire adequate baseline information on  
2       water flows and water quality, thus enabling river managers to prioritize actions and  
3       evaluate effectiveness.  
4
- 5       • Increase forecasting capabilities and develop comprehensive scenarios so that the  
6       spectrum of possible impacts, and their magnitude, can reasonably be anticipated.  
7
- 8       • Strengthen collaborative relationships among federal, state, and local resource agencies  
9       and stakeholders to facilitate the implementation of adaptive river management strategies.  
10
- 11      • Forge partnerships and develop mechanisms to ensure environmental flows for WSRs in  
12      basins that experience water stress.  
13
- 14      • Work with land use planners to minimize additional development on parcels of land  
15      adjacent to WSRs, and optimally to acquire floodplains and nearby lands that are not  
16      currently federally owned or ensure they are placed in protected status.  
17
- 18      • Build flexibility and adaptive capacity into the CRMPs for WSRs, and update these plans  
19      regularly to reflect new information and scientific understanding.  
20  
21



## 1 **6.6 References**

- 2 **Ahearn**, D.S., R.W. Sheibley, and R.A. Dahlgren, 2005: Effects of river regulation on water  
3 quality in the lower Mokelumne River, California. *River Research and Applications*,  
4 **21(6)**, 651-670.
- 5 **Alcamo**, J., P. Doell, T. Henrichs, F. Kaspar, B. Lehner, T. Roesch, and S. Siebert, 2003: Global  
6 estimates of water withdrawals and availability under current and future "business-as-  
7 usual" conditions. *Hydrological Sciences Journal*, **48(3)**, 339-348.
- 8 **Alcamo**, J., M. Flörke, and M. Märker, 2007: Future long-term changes in global water  
9 resources driven by socio-economic and climatic changes. *Hydrological Sciences*  
10 *Journal*, **52(2)**, 247-275.
- 11 **Allan**, J.D., 1995: *Stream Ecology: Structure and Function of Running Waters*. Kluwer  
12 Academic Pub.
- 13 **Allan**, J.D., 2004: Landscapes and riverscapes: the influence of land use on stream ecosystems.  
14 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **35**, 257-284.
- 15 **Allan**, J.D. and A.S. Flecker, 1993: Biodiversity conservation in running waters. *BioScience*,  
16 **43(1)**, 32-43.
- 17 **Allan**, J.D., M. A. Palmer, and N. L. Poff, 2005: Freshwater ecology, In: *Climate Change and*  
18 *Biodiversity*, [Lovejoy, T.E. and L. Hannah (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New Haven.
- 19 **Arnold**, C.L., Jr. and C.J. Gibbons, 1986: Impervious surface coverage: the emergence of a key  
20 environmental indicator. *Journal of the American Planning Association*, **62(2)**, 243-258.
- 21 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, J.M. Lenihan, and R.J. Drapek, 2001: Climate change effects on  
22 vegetation distribution and carbon budget in the United States. *Ecosystems*, **4**, 164-185.
- 23 **Baron**, J.S., H.M. Rueth, A.M. Wolfe, K.R. Nydick, E.J. Allstott, J.T. Minear, and B. Moraska,  
24 2000: Ecosystem responses to nitrogen deposition in the Colorado Front Range.  
25 *Ecosystems*, **3(4)**, 352-368.
- 26 **Baron**, J.S., N.L. Poff, P.L. Angermeier, C.N. Dahm, P.H. Gleick, N.G. Hairston, Jr., R.B.  
27 Jackson, C.A. Johnston, B.D. Richter, and A.D. Steinman, 2002: Meeting ecological and  
28 societal needs for freshwater. *Ecological Applications*, **12**, 1247-1260.

- 1 **Beitinger**, T.L., W.A. Bennett, and R.W. McCauley, 2000: Temperature tolerances of North  
 2 American freshwater fishes exposed to dynamic changes in temperature. *Environmental*  
 3 *Biology of Fishes*, **58**, 237-275.
- 4 **Bergkamp**, G., B. Orlando, and I. Burton, 2003: *Change: Adaptation of Water Management to*  
 5 *Climate Change*. International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources,  
 6 Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK.
- 7 **Bernhardt**, E.S., E.B. Sudduth, M.A. Palmer, J.D. Allan, J.L. Meyer, G. Alexander, J. Follastad-  
 8 Shah, B. Hassett, R. Jenkinson, R. Lave, J. Rumps, and L. Pagano, 2007: Restoring rivers  
 9 one reach at a time: results from a survey of US river restoration practitioners.  
 10 *Restoration Ecology*, **15(3)**, 482-493.
- 11 **Bledsoe**, B.P. and C.C. Watson, 2001: Effects of urbanization on channel instability. *Journal of*  
 12 *American Water Resources Association*, **37**, 255-270.
- 13 **Brown**, B.L., 2003: Spatial heterogeneity reduces temporal variability in stream insect  
 14 communities. *Ecology Letters*, **6(4)**, 316-325.
- 15 **Bunn**, S.E. and A.H. Arthington, 2002: Basic principles and ecological consequences of altered  
 16 flow regimes for aquatic biodiversity. *Environmental Management*, **30(4)**, 492-507.
- 17 **Clarkson**, R.W. and M.R. Childs, 2000: Temperature effects of hypolimnial-release dams on  
 18 early life stages of Colorado River basin big-river fishes. *Copeia*, **2000(2)**, 402-412.
- 19 **Collier**, M., R.H. Webb, and J.C. Schmidt, 1996: *Dams and Rivers: a Primer on the*  
 20 *Downstream Effects of Dams*. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, CO.
- 21 **Dunne**, T. and L.B. Leopold, 1978: *Water in Environmental Planning*. W.H. Freeman and Co.,  
 22 San Francisco, pp. 1-818.
- 23 **Dynesius**, M., R. Jansson, M.E. Johansson, and C. Nilsson, 2004: Intercontinental similarities in  
 24 riparian-plant diversity and sensitivity to river regulation. *Ecological Applications*, **14(1)**,  
 25 173-191.
- 26 **Eaton**, J.G. and R.M. Scheller, 1996: Effects of climate warming on fish thermal habitat in  
 27 streams of the United States. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **41**, 1109-1115.
- 28 **Ewert**, S.E.D., 2001: Evolution of an environmentalist: Senator Frank Church and the Hells  
 29 Canyon controversy. *Montana*, **51(Spring)**, 36-51.
- 30 **Fitzhugh**, T.W. and B.D. Richter, 2004: Quenching urban thirst: growing cities and their  
 31 impacts on freshwater ecosystems. *BioScience*, **54(8)**, 741-754.

- 1 **Hassol, S.J.**, 2004: *Impacts of a Warming Arctic*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- 2 **Hilborn, R.**, T.P. Quinn, D.E. Schindler, and D.E. Rogers, 2003: Biocomplexity and fisheries  
3 sustainability. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of*  
4 *America*, **100(11)**, 6564-6568.
- 5 **Hill, W.R.**, 1996: Effects of light, In: *Algal Ecology: Freshwater Benthic Ecosystems*,  
6 [Stevenson, R.J., M.L. Bothwell, and R.L. Lowe (eds.)]. Academic Press, San Diego,  
7 California, pp. 121-149.
- 8 **Hodgkins, G.A.** and R.W. Dudley, 2006: Changes in the timing of winter-spring streamflows in  
9 eastern North America, 1913-2002. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **33(6)**.
- 10 **IPCC**, 2007a: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis.*  
11 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
12 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z.  
13 Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge  
14 University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- 15 **IPCC**, 2007b: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and*  
16 *Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
17 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L., O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof,  
18 P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,  
19 UK, pp. 7-22.
- 20 **Knighton, D.**, 1998: *Fluvial Forms and Processes: a New Perspective*. Oxford University Press,  
21 New York.
- 22 **Lehmkuhl, D.M.**, 1974: Thermal regime alterations and vital environmental physiological  
23 signals in aquatic systems, In: *Thermal Ecology*, [Gibbons, J.W. and R.R. Sharitz (eds.)].  
24 AEC Symposium Series, CONF-730505, pp. 216-222.
- 25 **Leopold, A.**, 1978: *A Sand County Almanac: With Essays on Conservation of Round River*.  
26 Ballantine Books, New York.
- 27 **Lettenmaier, D.P.**, E.F. Wood, and J.R. Wallis, 1994: Hydro-climatological trends in the  
28 continental United States, 1948-88. *Journal of Climate*, **7(4)**, 586-607.
- 29 **Ligon, F.K.**, W.E. Dietrich, and W.J. Trush, 1995: Downstream ecological effects of dams: a  
30 geomorphic perspective. *BioScience*, **45(3)**, 183-192.

- 1 **Loomis, J., J. Koteen, and B. Hurd, 2003:** Economic and institutional strategies for adapting to  
 2 water resource effects of climate change, In: *Water and Climate in the Western United*  
 3 *States*, [Lewis, W.M., Jr. (ed.)]. University Press of Colorado, Boulder.
- 4 **Lowe, R.L. and Y. Pan, 1996:** Benthic algal communities as biological monitors, In: *Algal*  
 5 *Ecology: Freshwater Benthic Ecosystems*, [Stevenson, R.J., M.L. Bothwell, and R.L.  
 6 Lowe (eds.)]. Academic Press, San Diego, California, pp. 705-739.
- 7 **Lytle, D.A. and N.L. Poff, 2004:** Adaptation to natural flow regimes. *Trends in Ecology and*  
 8 *Evolution*, **19(2)**, 94-100.
- 9 **Magilligan, F.J., K.H. Nislow, and B.E. Graber, 2003:** Scale-independent assessment of  
 10 discharge reduction and riparian disconnectivity following flow regulation by dams.  
 11 *Geology*, **31(7)**, 569-572.
- 12 **McCabe, G.J. and M.P. Clark, 2005:** Trends and variability in snowmelt runoff in the western  
 13 United States. *Journal of Hydrometeorology*, **6(4)**, 476-482.
- 14 **McCully, P., 1996:** *Silenced Rivers: the Ecology and Politics of Large Dams*. Zed Books,  
 15 London, UK.
- 16 **McMahon, G. and T.F. Cuffney, 2000:** Quantifying urban intensity in drainage basins for  
 17 assessing stream ecological conditions. *Journal of the American Water Resources*  
 18 *Association*, **36(6)**, 1247-1262.
- 19 **Milly, P.C.D., K.A. Dunne, and A.V. Vecchia, 2005:** Global pattern of trends in streamflow and  
 20 water availability in a changing climate. *Nature*, **438(7066)**, 347-350.
- 21 **Moyle, P.B. and J.F. Mount, 2007:** Homogenous rivers, homogenous faunas. *Proceedings of the*  
 22 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5711-5712.
- 23 **Murdoch, P.S., J.S. Baron, and T.L. Miller, 2000:** Potential effects of climate change on surface-  
 24 water quality in North America. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*,  
 25 **36(2)**, 347-366.
- 26 **Naiman, R.J., H. Décamps, and M.E. McClain, 2005:** *Riparia: Ecology, Conservation, and*  
 27 *Management of Streamside Communities*. Elsevier Academic Press, San Diego, pp. 1-  
 28 430.
- 29 **National Park Service, 2004:** *Rio Grande Wild and Scenic River: Final General Management*  
 30 *Plan / Environmental Impact Statement*.

- 1 **National Research Council**, 1993: *Soil and Water Quality: an Agenda for Agriculture*. National  
2 Academy Press, Washington, DC.
- 3 **National Research Council**, 2004: *Developing a Research and Restoration Plan for Arctic-*  
4 *Yukon-Kuskokwim (Western Alaska) Salmon*. Washington, DC.
- 5 **Nelson**, K.C. and M.A. Palmer, 2007: Stream temperature surges under urbanization and climate  
6 change: data, models, and responses. *Journal of the American Water Resources*  
7 *Association*, **43(2)**, 440-452.
- 8 **Nowak**, D.J. and J.T. Walton, 2005: Projected urban growth (2000-2050) and its estimated  
9 impact on the US forest resource. *Journal of Forestry*, **103(8)**, 383-389.
- 10 **Palmer**, M., A.P. Covich, B.J. Finlay, J. Gibert, K.D. Hyde, R.K. Johnson, T. Kairesalo, S. Lake,  
11 C.R. Lovell, R.J. Naiman, C. Ricci, F. Sabater, and D. Strayer, 1997: Biodiversity and  
12 ecosystem processes in freshwater sediments. *Ambio*, **26(8)**, 571-577.
- 13 **Palmer**, M.A., E.S. Bernhardt, J.D. Allan, P.S. Lake, G. Alexander, S. Brooks, J. Carr, S.  
14 Clayton, C.N. Dahm, and J.F. Shah, 2005: Standards for ecologically successful river  
15 restoration. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, **42(2)**, 208-217.
- 16 **Palmer**, M.A., C.A. Reidy, C. Nilsson, M. Flörke, J. Alcamo, P.S. Lake, and N. Bond, 2008:  
17 Climate change and the world's river basins: anticipating management options. *Frontiers*  
18 *in Ecology and the Environment*, DOI: 10.1890/060148.
- 19 **Paul**, M.J. and J.L. Meyer, 2001: Streams in the urban landscape. *Annual Review of Ecology and*  
20 *Systematics*, **32**, 333-365.
- 21 **Pizzuto**, J.E., G. E. Moglen, M. A. Palmer, and K. C. Nelson, 2008: Two model scenarios  
22 illustrating the effects of land use and climate change on gravel riverbeds of suburban  
23 Maryland, U.S.A., In: *Gravel River Beds VI: From Process Understanding to the*  
24 *Restoration of Mountain Rivers*, [Rinaldi, M., H. Habersack, and H. Piegay (eds.)].  
25 Elsevier.
- 26 **Poff**, J.L., P. L. Angermeier, S. D. Cooper, P. S. Lake, K. D. Fausch, K. O. Winemiller, L. A. K.  
27 Mertes, and M. W. Oswood, 2006: Global change and stream fish diversity, In: *Future*  
28 *Scenarios of Global Biodiversity*, [Chapin III, F.S., O.E. Sala, and E. Huber-Sanwald  
29 (eds.)]. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- 30 **Poff**, N.L., 2002: Ecological response to and management of increased flooding caused by  
31 climate change. *Philosophical Transactions: Mathematical, Physical & Engineering*  
32 *Sciences*, **360(1796)**, 1497-1510.

- 1 **Poff**, N.L. and J.V. Ward, 1990: Physical habitat template of lotic systems: recovery in the  
2 context of historical pattern of spatiotemporal heterogeneity. *Environmental*  
3 *Management*, **14(5)**, 629-646.
- 4 **Poff**, N.L.R., J.D. Olden, D.M. Merritt, and D.M. Pepin, 2007: Homogenization of regional river  
5 dynamics by dams and global biodiversity implications. *Proceedings of the National*  
6 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5732-5737.
- 7 **Poff**, N.L., J.D. Allan, M.B. Bain, J.R. Karr, K.L. Prestegard, B.D. Richter, R. Sparks, and J.  
8 Stromberg, 1997: The natural flow regime: a new paradigm for riverine conservation and  
9 restoration. *BioScience*, **47**, 769-784.
- 10 **Poff**, N.L., M.M. Brinson, and J.W. Day, Jr., 2002: *Aquatic Ecosystems & Global Climate*  
11 *Change: Potential Impacts on Inland Freshwater and Coastal Wetland Ecosystems in the*  
12 *United States*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, pp.1-56.
- 13 **Postel**, S. and B. Richter, 2003: *Rivers for Life: Managing Water for People and Nature*. Island  
14 Press, Washington, DC.
- 15 **Postel**, S.L., 2007: Aquatic ecosystem protection and drinking water utilities. *Journal American*  
16 *Water Works Association*, **99(2)**, 52-63.
- 17 **Richter**, B.D., J.V. Baumgartner, R. Wigington, and D.P. Braun, 1997: How much water does a  
18 river need? *Freshwater Biology*, **37(1)**, 231-249.
- 19 **Richter**, B.D., R. Mathews, D.L. Harrison, and R. Wigington, 2003: Ecologically sustainable  
20 water management: managing river flows for ecological integrity. *Ecological*  
21 *Applications*, **13(1)**, 206-224.
- 22 **Rier**, S.T., N.C. Tuchman, R.G. Wetzel, and J.A. Teeri, 2002: Elevated CO<sub>2</sub>-induced changes in  
23 the chemistry of quaking aspen (*Populus tremuloides* Michaux) leaf litter: subsequent  
24 mass loss and microbial response in a stream ecosystem. *Journal of The North American*  
25 *Benthological Society*, **21**, 16-27.
- 26 **Sala**, O.E., F.S. Chapin III, J.J. Armesto, E. Berlow, J. Bloomfield, R. Dirzo, E. Huber-Sanwald,  
27 L.F. Huenneke, R.B. Jackson, A. Kinzig, R. Leemans, D.M. Lodge, H.A. Mooney, M.  
28 Oesterheld, N.L. Poff, M.T. Sykes, B.H. Walker, M. Walker, and D.H. Wall, 2000:  
29 Global biodiversity scenarios for the year 2100. *Science*, **287**, 1770-1774.
- 30 **Shafroth**, P.B., J.C. Stromberg, and D.T. Patten, 2002: Riparian vegetation response to altered  
31 disturbance and stress regimes. *Ecological Applications*, **12(1)**, 107-123.

- 1 **Silk**, N. and K. Ciruna, 2005: *A Practitioner's Guide to Freshwater Biodiversity Conservation*.  
 2 Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 3 **Smith**, L.C., Y. Sheng, G.M. MacDonald, and L.D. Hinzman, 2005: Disappearing Arctic lakes.  
 4 *Science*, **308(5727)**, 1429.
- 5 **Stewart**, I.T., D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2004: Changes in snowmelt runoff timing in  
 6 Western North America under a 'business as usual' climate change scenario. *Climatic*  
 7 *Change*, **62**, 217-232.
- 8 **Stewart**, I.T., D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2005: Changes toward earlier streamflow timing  
 9 across western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **18(8)**, 1136-1155.
- 10 **Thuiller**, W., 2004: Patterns and uncertainties of species' range shifts under climate change.  
 11 *Global Change Biology*, **10(12)**, 2020-2027.
- 12 **Tockner**, K. and J.A. Stanford, 2002: Riverine flood plains: present state and future trends.  
 13 *Environmental Conservation*, **29(3)**, 308-330.
- 14 **Todd**, C.R., T. Ryan, S.J. Nicol, and A.R. Bearlin, 2005: The impact of cold water releases on  
 15 the critical period of post-spawning survival and its implications for Murray cod  
 16 (*Maccullochella peelii peelii*): a case study of the Mitta Mitta river, south-eastern  
 17 Australia. *River Research and Applications*, **21**, 1035-1052.
- 18 **Tuchman**, N.C., K.A. Wahtera, R.G. Wetzel, and J.A. Teeri, 2003: Elevated atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>  
 19 alters leaf litter quality for stream ecosystems: an in situ leaf decomposition study.  
 20 *Hydrobiologia*, **495(1)**, 203-211.
- 21 **Tuchman**, N.C., R.G. Wetzel, S.T. Rier, K.A. Wahtera, and J.A. Teeri, 2002: Elevated  
 22 atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> lowers leaf litter nutritional quality for stream ecosystem food webs.  
 23 *Global Change Biology*, **8(2)**, 145-153.
- 24 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2000: *National Water Quality Inventory*. EPA-841-R-  
 25 02-001, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- 26 **Van der Kraak**, G. and N. W. Pankhurst, 1997: Temperature effects on the reproductive  
 27 performance of fish, In: *Global Warming: Implications for Freshwater and Marine Fish*,  
 28 [Wood, C.M. and D.G. McDonald (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- 29 **Vannote**, R.L. and B.W. Sweeney, 1980: Geographic analysis of thermal equilibria: a conceptual  
 30 model for evaluating the effect of natural and modified thermal regimes on aquatic insect  
 31 communities. *The American Naturalist*, **115(5)**, 667-695.

- 1 **Vörösmarty, C.J., M. Meybeck, B. Fekete, K. Sharma, P. Green, and J.P.M. Syvitski, 2003:**  
 2 Anthropogenic sediment retention: major global impact from registered river  
 3 impoundments. *Global and Planetary Change*, **39(1-2)**, 169-190.
- 4 **Vörösmarty, C.J., P. Green, J. Salisbury, and R.B. Lammers, 2000: Global water resources:**  
 5 vulnerability from climate change and population growth. *Science*, **289**, 284-288.
- 6 **Walsh, C.J., T.D. Fletcher, and A.R. Ladson, 2005: Stream restoration in urban catchments**  
 7 through redesigning stormwater systems: looking to the catchment to save the stream.  
 8 *Journal of The North American Benthological Society*, **24(3)**, 690-705.
- 9 **Walsh, C.J., A.H. Roy, J.W. Feminella, P.D. Cottingham, P.M. Groffman, and R.P. Morgan,**  
 10 2005: The urban stream syndrome: current knowledge and the search for a cure. *Journal*  
 11 *of The North American Benthological Society*, **24**, 706-723.
- 12 **Ward, J.V., 1992: Aquatic Insect Ecology: Biology and Habitat.** John Wiley & Sons, New York,  
 13 pp. 1-438.
- 14 **Webster, J.R. and E.F. Benfield, 1986: Vascular plant breakdown in freshwater ecosystems.**  
 15 *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **17**, 567-594.
- 16 **Williams, G.P. and M.G. Wolman, 1984: Downstream Effects of Dams on Alluvial Rivers.**  
 17 Professional Paper 1286, U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, DC.
- 18 **Willis, C.M. and G.B. Griggs, 2003: Reductions in fluvial sediment discharge by coastal dams in**  
 19 California and implications for beach sustainability. *Journal of Geology*, **111(2)**, 167-  
 20 182.
- 21 **Wohl, E., M. A. Palmer, and J. M. Kondolf, 2008: The U.S. experience. Chapter 10, In: River**  
 22 *Futures*, [Brierley, G.J. and K.A. Fryirs (eds.)]. Island Press.
- 23 **Wolman, M.G., 1967: A cycle of sedimentation and erosion in urban river channels.**  
 24 *Geografiska Annaler Series A: Physical Geography*, **49(2-4)**, 385-395.
- 25 **World Commission on Dams, 2000: Dams and Development: a New Framework for Decisions-**  
 26 *Making.* Earthscan Publications, London.
- 27 **Xenopoulos, M.A., D.M. Lodge, J. Alcamo, M. Marker, K. Schulze, and D.P. Van Vuuren,**  
 28 2005: Scenarios of freshwater fish extinctions from climate change and water withdrawal.  
 29 *Global Change Biology*, **11(10)**, 1557-1564.  
 30  
 31



## 1 **6.7 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 Cassie Thomas of the National Park Service provided assistance with the Alaska text box. Mary  
4 Brabham, Rob Mattson and Brian McGurk of the St. Johns River Water Management District;  
5 and Jaime Doubek-Racine of the National Park Service provided assistance with the Wekiva  
6 River Case Study. Jeff Bennett of the National Park Service, Gary Garrett of the Texas Parks and  
7 Wildlife Department, and Greg Gustina of the Bureau of Land Management provided input to  
8 the Rio Grande River Case Study. Don Hamilton and Dave Forney of the National Park Service  
9 provided assistance with the Delaware River Case Study.

10

### 11 **Workshop Participants**

12

- 13     ▪ Daniel M. Ashe, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 14     ▪ Donita Cotter, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 15     ▪ Jackie Diedrich, U.S. Forest Service
- 16     ▪ Andrew Fahlund, American Rivers
- 17     ▪ Dave Forney, National Park Service
- 18     ▪ Dan Haas, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 19     ▪ Kristy Hajny, Niobrara National Scenic River
- 20     ▪ Mike Huggins, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
- 21     ▪ Quinn McKew, American Rivers
- 22     ▪ David Purkey, Stockholm Environment Institute-U.S. Center
- 23     ▪ Jason Robertson, Bureau of Land Management
- 24     ▪ Cassie Thomas, National Park Service

25

26

1 **6.8 Boxes**

2 **Box 6.1. Management Goals for Wild and Scenic Rivers**

3

4 (1) Preserve “free flowing condition”:

- 5 • with natural flow
- 6 • with high water quality
- 7 • without impoundment

8

9 (2) Protect “outstandingly remarkable values”:

- 10 • scenic
- 11 • recreational
- 12 • geologic
- 13 • fish and wildlife
- 14 • historic
- 15 • cultural

16

17

1

**Box 6.2.** Rivers provide a number of goods and services, referred to here as ecosystem functions, that are critical to their health and provide benefits to society. The major functions are outlined below along with the ecological processes that support the function, how it is measured, and why it is important (information synthesized from Palmer *et al.*, 1997; Baron *et al.*, 2002; Naiman, Décamps, and McClain, 2005).

<b>Ecosystem Function</b>	<b>Supporting Ecological Process</b>	<b>Measurements Required</b>	<b>Potential Impacts if Impaired</b>
Water Purification (a) Nutrient Processing	Biological uptake and transformation of nitrogen, phosphorus, and other elements.	Direct measures of rates of transformation of nutrients; for example: microbial denitrification, conversion of nitrate to the more useable forms of nitrogen.	Excess nutrients can build up in the water, making it unsuitable for drinking or supporting life.
Water Purification (b) Processing of Contaminants	Biological removal by plants and microbes of materials such as excess sediments, heavy metals, contaminants, etc.	Direct measures of contaminant uptake or changes in contaminant flux.	Toxic contaminants kill biota; excess sediments smother invertebrates, foul the gills of fish, etc; water not potable.
Decomposition of Organic Matter	The biological (mostly by microbes and fungi) degradation of organic matter such as leaf material or organic wastes .	Decomposition is measured as the rate of loss in weight of organic matter over time.	Without this, excess organic material builds up in streams, which can lead to low oxygen and thus death of invertebrates and fish; water may not be drinkable.
Primary Production Secondary Production	Measured as a rate of new plant or animal tissue produced over time.	For primary production, measure the rate of photosynthesis in the stream; for secondary, measure growth rate of organisms or annual biomass.	Primary production supports the food web; secondary production support fish and wildlife and humans.
Temperature Regulation	Water temperature is “buffered” if there is sufficient infiltration in the watershed & riparian zone AND shading of the stream by riparian vegetation keeps the water cool.	Measure the rate of change in water temperature as air temperature changes or as increases in discharge occur.	If infiltration or shading are reduced (due to clearing of vegetation along stream), stream water heats up beyond what biota are capable of tolerating.
Flood Control	Slowing of water flow from the land to streams or rivers so that flood frequency and magnitude are reduced; intact floodplains and riparian vegetation help buffer increases in discharge.	Measure the rate of infiltration of water into soils OR discharge in stream in response to rain events.	Without the benefits of floodplains, healthy stream corridor, and watershed vegetation, floods become more frequent and higher in magnitude.
Biodiversity Maintenance	Maintenance of intact food web and genetic resources that together provide other ecosystem goods. Local genetic adaptation contributes to landscape-scale resilience of river ecosystems.	Enumeration of genotypes, species, or species guilds.	Impoverishment of genetic diversity at broader spatial scales. Reduced capacity for resilience and sustainability of many ecosystem goods and services.

2

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12

**Box 6.3.** Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968

*It is hereby declared to be the policy of the United States that certain selected rivers of the Nation which, with their immediate environments, possess outstandingly remarkable scenic, recreational, geologic, fish and wildlife, historic, cultural, or other similar values, shall be preserved in free-flowing condition, and that they and their immediate environments shall be protected for the benefit and enjoyment of present and future generations. The Congress declares that the established national policy of dam and other construction at appropriate sections of the rivers of the United States needs to be complemented by a policy that would preserve other selected rivers or sections thereof in their free-flowing condition to protect the water quality of such rivers and to fulfill other vital conservation purposes.*

- 1 **Box 6.4.** WSR Adaptation Options
- 2 • Maintain the natural flow regime through managing dam flow releases upstream of the WSR (through option
- 3 agreements with willing partners) to protect flora and fauna in drier downstream river reaches, or to prevent
- 4 losses from extreme flooding.
- 5 • Use drought-tolerant plant varieties to help protect riparian buffers.
- 6 • Create wetlands or off-channel storage basins to reduce erosion during high flow periods.
- 7 • Actively remove invasive species that threaten key native species.
- 8 • Purchase or lease water rights to enhance flow management options.
- 9 • Manage water storage and withdrawals to smooth the supply of available water throughout the year.
- 10 • Develop more effective stormwater infrastructure to reduce future occurrences of severe erosion.
- 11 • Consider shifting access points or moving existing trails for wildlife or river enthusiasts.
- 12 • Increase genetic diversity through plantings or by stocking fish.
- 13 • Increase physical habitat heterogeneity in channels to support diverse biotic assemblages.
- 14 • Establish special protection for multiple headwater reaches that support keystone processes or sensitive species.
- 15 • Conduct river restoration projects to stabilize eroding banks, repair in-stream habitat, or promote fish passages
- 16 from areas with high temperatures and less precipitation.
- 17 • Restore the natural capacity of rivers to buffer climate-change impacts (*e.g.*, through land acquisition around
- 18 rivers, levee setbacks to free the floodplain of infrastructure, riparian buffer repairs).
- 19 • Plant riparian vegetation to provide fish and other organisms with refugia.
- 20 • Acquire additional river reaches for the WSR where they contain naturally occurring refugia from climate change
- 21 stressors.
- 22 • Create side-channels and adjacent wetlands to provide refugia for species during droughts and floods.
- 23 • Establish programs to move isolated populations of species of interest that become stranded when water levels
- 24 drop.

1 **Box 6.5.** Examples of potential river management and restoration actions. Actions may be taken *proactively* to  
 2 prepare for and minimize the impacts of climate change on ecosystems and people, or could be required *reactively* at  
 3 the time of or after impact. The type and extent of these actions will vary among rivers and river segments that  
 4 experience an increase in available water (increased discharge and/or groundwater storage) vs. those that experience  
 5 water stress. WSRs that are free-flowing throughout their watersheds are expected to require fewer management  
 6 interventions than river segments in watersheds with dams (as outlined in Palmer *et al.*, 2008); however, the need for  
 7 intervention will also vary depending on if and how much a watershed containing a WSR segment is in developed  
 8 use (*e.g.*, agriculture, urban) and the magnitude of climate change for the region.  
 9

Type of Management Action	Context and Purpose
Improve environmental monitoring and develop WSR-scale climate forecasts	To facilitate planning and better understand local effects of climate change.
Build capacity to offer technical assistance	National or regional enhancement of technical capacity can provide assistance to WSR managers who may not have the resources to do this on their own.
Designate more WSRs and/or acquire land around existing WSRs	May raise awareness of value of WSRs, potentially leading to additional protection; land acquisition may enhance floodplain extent and buffer river segments from impacts in surrounding watershed, and could provide “replication” in space of at-risk habitats and refugia for species.
Conjunctive Groundwater/Surface Water Management	Purchasing more water rights may be needed for WSRs under water stress due to droughts or extractions. If dams are present, develop reservoir release options with dam managers and/or design structures for temporary storage of flood waters before they reach reservoir; remove dams in areas with high evaporation, and consider methods to divert water to groundwater storage to provide for later use; adjust outlet height on dam to release high quality water to downstream rivers.
Restoration Projects	Needed particularly for rivers in watersheds with some level of development: <i>riparian management</i> to revegetate damaged areas to slow runoff in the event of more floods, OR to remove drought-tolerant exotic species in drier regions; <i>stormwater management projects</i> and <i>wetland creation</i> to reduce runoff and sediment flux to river or to store flood water; <i>channel reconfiguration</i> and/or <i>stream bank stabilization</i> —some configurations may help channel withstand peak flow releases, OR in drier regions stream bank may need to be re-graded to reconnect floodplain to channel to enhance water storage and habitat.

10  
11

**Box 6.6. Climate Change and WSRs in Alaska**

Approximately 28% of the designated WSR river miles in the nation are in Alaska, including 55% of those designated as wild. In Alaska there are 3,210 WSR miles, of which 2,955 are wild, 227 scenic, and 28 recreational. About half of Alaska's 25 WSRs are located north of the Arctic Circle. The federal government owns much of the designated river corridors and in many cases controls most or all of the upstream watersheds. None of the WSRs in Alaska are dammed above or below the designated segments.

**Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems and Current Management**

Climate change is happening faster in the Arctic than at lower latitudes and is the predominant stressor of WSR ecosystems in Alaska today. The annual average Arctic temperature has risen almost twice as fast as in temperate and equatorial zones, precipitation has increased, glaciers are melting, winter snows and river ice are melting earlier, and permafrost is vanishing (Hassol, 2004). Research in Siberia has shown large lakes permanently lost and attributes the loss to thawing of permafrost, which allows the lakes and wetlands to drain (Smith *et al.*, 2005). Major impacts of climate change on the rivers include earlier ice breakup in spring, earlier floods with higher flows, more erosion, and greater sediment loads. These trends are projected to accelerate as warming continues.

Major shifts in ecological assemblages may occur. For example, where permafrost thaws, new wetlands will form—although these may be temporary and in turn may be displaced by forest. In currently forested areas, insect outbreaks and fires are very likely to increase and may facilitate invasions of non-native species (Hassol, 2004). Invasive plants have also begun to colonize gravel bars near roads, railway and put-ins; although this is not attributed to climate change, climatic changes may favor these species to displace some native species.

Shifts in flow regime (from earlier snowmelt), increased sedimentation, and warmer water, combined with climate change impacts on marine and estuarine systems, may negatively affect anadromous fish populations with far-reaching ecological and human impacts. Higher water temperatures in rivers are thought to be associated with outbreaks of fish diseases such as *Ichthyophonus*, a fungal parasite suspected of killing some salmon before they spawn and degrading the quality of dried salmon. Salmonid runs are an important component of many WSRs, providing a critical food source for other wildlife and for Alaska Natives. Increased erosion along riverbanks results in loss of archeological sites and cultural resources, since there is a long history of seasonal human settlement on many Alaskan rivers.

**Potential for Altering or Supplementing Current Management Practices to Enable Adaptation to Climate Change**

Managing these large rivers in extremely remote regions of Alaska can not be compared to managing WSRs in the lower 48 states, where river managers are dealing with urban centers, intensive rural land use, dams, diversions, and water extraction infrastructure—all of which can potentially be manipulated. Most of the WSRs in Alaska are truly *wild* rivers.

Even in these remote regions, there are opportunities to manage WSRs affected by climate change. For example, invasive species might be minimized by educating people to avoid introducing problematic species. Archeological and cultural resources of Alaska Natives and their ancestors are abundant along the rivers that have been the transportation corridors for millennia. In consultation with Alaska Natives, these sites should be inventoried, studied, and, where possible, saved from negative impacts of permafrost thaw and erosion resulting from climate change.

Finally, the wild rivers of Alaska are a laboratory for researching climate change impacts on riverine ecosystems and species, and for informing managers farther south years before they face similar changes.



1

## 2 **6.9 Case Study Summaries**

3 The summaries below provide overviews of the case studies prepared for this chapter. The case  
4 studies are available in Appendix A6.

5

### 6 **Case Study Summary 6.1**

7

#### 8 **Wekiva River Basin, Florida**

9 Southeast United States

---

10

#### 11 **Why this case study was chosen**

12 The Wekiva River Basin:

- 13 • Is a spring-fed system that requires management of surface and sub-surface water resources;
- 14 • Is a sub-tropical, coastal ecosystem and thus faces potential impacts from tropical storms and sea level  
15 rise;
- 16 • Is dealing directly with large and expanding urban and suburban populations, and associated water and  
17 land use changes.

18

#### 19 **Management context**

20 The Wekiva River basin is a complex system of streams, springs, lakes, and swamps that are generally in  
21 superb ecological condition and harbor an impressive list of endangered species, including the West  
22 Indian Manatee and endemic invertebrates. The springs that feed the river are affected by pumping of  
23 groundwater and by proximity to the expanding population of Orlando. Agricultural and urban expansion  
24 is affecting groundwater and surface water systems critical to the ecological balance of the WSR. Other  
25 management issues include urban and agricultural pollution, and invasive exotic species. The National  
26 Park Service has overall coordinating responsibility for the Wekiva WSR, while land, water, and natural  
27 resources management in the basin is provided through cooperation among state agencies, local  
28 governments, and private landowners. Even without climate change considerations, the basin is expected  
29 to reach maximum sustained yields of water use by 2013. Agencies in the basin are monitoring water  
30 quantity and quality, ecosystem health, and native and invasive species populations, and are taking an  
31 increasingly proactive approach to water management.

32

#### 33 **Key climate change impacts**

- 34 • Projected increase in average temperatures (2.2–2.8°C in Central Florida by 2100);
- 35 • Projected increase in the frequency of tropical storms and hurricanes;
- 36 • Projected sea level rise of 0.18–0.59 m by 2099;
- 37 • Projected decline of water availability due to increased evaporation and transpiration.

38

#### 39 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 40 • Monitoring programs could support more robust modeling to project management needs in a climate  
41 change scenario, including how rising sea level might affect saltwater intrusion into the groundwater.
- 42 • The possible shift to longer droughts, punctuated by more intense rain events, could be addressed  
43 through aggressive practices to maintain water quality and availability, e.g., by maximizing recharge of  
44 the aquifer during rain events and minimizing withdrawals during droughts through water conservation  
45 programs;
- 46 • Additional measures could be pursued to reduce pollution of surface and groundwater reaching the  
47 Wekiva River; management changes should be informed by more research into how pollutants in  
48 reclaimed water are transported through the porous karst geology to the aquifer and springs.
- 49 • There is considerable public interest in the importance of water; therefore, management programs have  
50 the opportunity to provide education to the public and other stakeholder groups on conserving water



1 and reducing pollution, including limiting runoff of nitrate-based fertilizers and encouraging the use of  
2 central sewage treatment facilities instead of septic tanks.  
3

4 **Conclusions**

5 The preservation of ecological conditions in the Wekiva WSR will require integrated management of the  
6 complex interactions between surface and ground water in the watershed. Expanded water monitoring  
7 and advanced modeling programs will be keys to maintaining water quantity and quality in the Floridian  
8 aquifer, and for regulating runoff to maximize reuse for urban and rural uses while ensuring optimal water  
9 reaching the river.  
10

**Case Study Summary 6.2****Rio Grande River**Southwest United States

---

**Why this case study was chosen**

The Rio Grande River:

- Is the second largest river in the Southwest, and provides an important water resource for hydropower and agricultural and municipal needs in the United States and Mexico;
- Exemplifies the complex domestic and international water rights issues typical of the American West;
- Is an example of a WSR managed by federal agencies, as is typical for many WSR in the West;
- Provides so much water to diversions and extraction in Colorado and New Mexico that the riverbed is dry for about 80 miles south of El Paso, Texas, resulting in two distinct hydrologic systems: the northern segment of the WSR is strongly influenced by spring snowmelt, while the segment forming the border between Texas and Mexico receives most of its water from summer rains in Mexico.

**Management context**

Management responsibilities for the Rio Grande WSR corridor rest with the Bureau of Land Management, the Forest Service, the National Park Service, and state and local agencies, while water in the river basin is largely controlled through complex water rights agreements and international treaties. Ecological management goals in the upper and lower WSR address similar priorities: preserving the natural flow regime, maintaining and improving water quality, conserving plant and animal species, and addressing invasive species. Impoundments and water extractions have reduced stream flow by over 50%, and invasive species have significantly altered ecosystems, particularly in the lower segment of the WSR. Water rights were established before the river was designated as a WSR, so they have priority over management goals of the WSR. Extraction of groundwater exceeds recharge in parts of the basin, and existing international agreements to provide the river with water have not been met in recent drought years, leaving the river as a series of pools in segments of the WSR along the border with Mexico.

**Key climate change impacts**

- Projected increase in average temperatures;
- Projected reductions in snowpack and earlier spring melts;
- Projected 5% decrease in annual precipitation by 2010, leading to recurring droughts;
- Projected increases in population and development, leading to greater water demands;
- Projected decline in water availability due to increased evaporation and runoff;
- Projected increase in invasive species due to warming of water and irregularity of the flow regime.

**Opportunities for adaptation**

- Scenario-based forecasting could be used by water managers to better anticipate trends and address their ramifications.
- Management of water releases, diversions, and extractions could be adapted to store water from early snowmelt and summer rains, and release water to the river to mimic the natural flow regime.
- Economic incentives can bring flexibility to water rights, including purchasing or leasing of water rights for the river and incentives that promote water efficiency and reduce pollution.
- Improving efficiency of agricultural and urban water use through conservation and reuse of water could reduce demand and improve water quality.

**Conclusions**

Meeting the management goals for the Rio Grande WSR is challenging even today, and will be more so as historic problems of water availability and international water rights are complicated by climate change. Even so, the WSR may be maintained through improved water use forecasting, water conservation, and reduced water demand, combined with economic incentives to ensure that enough water is provided to the WSR on a schedule that mimics the natural flow regime.

## 1 **Case Study Summary 6.3**

### 3 **Upper Delaware River, New York, and Pennsylvania**

4 Northeast United States

---

#### 6 **Why this case study was chosen**

7 The Upper Delaware River:

- 8 • Has recently been affected by unusually frequent and severe flooding, including three separate
- 9 hundred-year flood events in less than two years;
- 10 • Serves as the major water source to New York City and surrounding areas;
- 11 • Exemplifies a largely natural river on the Atlantic coast;
- 12 • Represents a WSR “Partnership River,” with little public ownership of the WSR corridor.

#### 14 **Management context**

15 Predominately private ownership of the WSR corridor requires that the National Park Service, along with  
 16 local and state government agencies, work with private interests to develop and implement the river  
 17 management plan. The goals of the plan include maintaining and improving water quality and  
 18 ecosystems, providing opportunities for recreation, and maintaining scenic and historic values of the river.  
 19 The rights of private landowners are especially emphasized in the management plan. In addition to  
 20 providing water to New York City (the city takes about 50% of the available water) and flood control, the  
 21 reservoirs in the upper tributaries strategically release water downstream to the keep the salt front in the  
 22 tidal zone from reaching upstream infrastructure that would be damaged by the salt water. The timing and  
 23 quantity of these water releases do not match natural flow regimes of the river, and occasional low water  
 24 levels tend to concentrate pollutants and increase water temperature in some river segments. Water  
 25 conservation in the Delaware Basin and New York City has significantly helped address drought-related  
 26 water shortages.

#### 28 **Key climate change impacts**

- 29 • Observed and projected increase in mean temperature and annual precipitation;
- 30 • Observed and projected increase in severe flood events;
- 31 • Projected decrease in snowpack and earlier spring melts;
- 32 • Projected periodic droughts;
- 33 • Projected rise in sea level that will push the salt front further upstream.

#### 35 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 36 • Modeling tools can be used to project climate change impacts on the water system, and to determine  
 37 the reservoir levels and water releases that can best establish an optimal water flow regime and offset  
 38 river water warming in the WSR.
- 39 • Incentives and ordinances could be used to improve water quality by reducing agricultural pollutants  
 40 reaching the river, reducing storm water runoff, and improving flood and erosion control through  
 41 restoration of wetlands and riparian buffers.
- 42 • Support for water-efficient measures could further improve efficiency of water use in New York City and  
 43 throughout the basin, thereby reducing per-capita demand for household water.
- 44 • Reservoir management could be adapted to store water from early snowmelt and release water to the  
 45 river, in order to mimic the natural flow regime.

#### 47 **Conclusions**

48 The Upper Delaware River currently has good water quality and provides natural and scenic resources for  
 49 residents of nearby urban areas. However, recent acute climatic events and projected climate change  
 50 strongly suggest that new management programs must be considered by the Delaware River Basin  
 51 Commission, local communities, and private interests that manage land and water resources in the basin  
 52 and Upper Delaware WSR corridor. Reservoir and landscape management to reduce impacts of floods,  
 53 to manage flow regime and water temperature, and to expand water conservation programs will become  
 54 increasingly important as the population continues to grow and impacts of climate change increase.

1

2 **6.10 Figures**

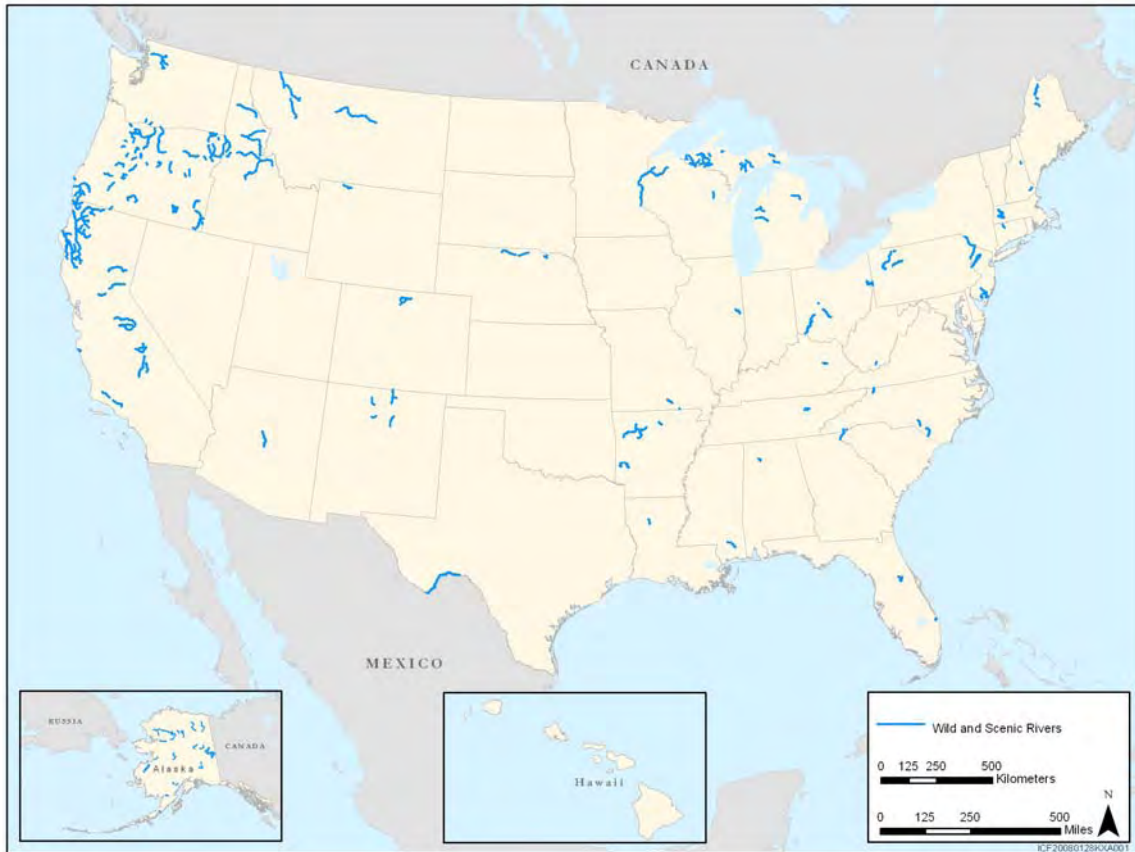
3 **Figure 6.1.** Photo of Snake River below Hell’s Canyon Dam. Photograph courtesy of Marshall  
4 McComb, Fox Creek Land Trust.

5



6  
7

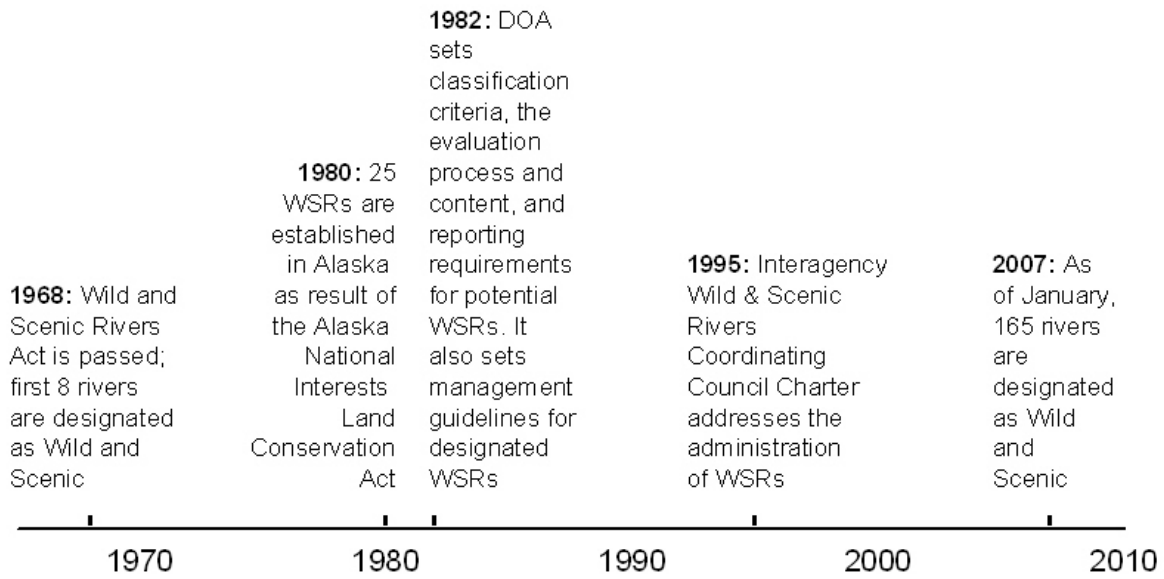
1 **Figure 6.2.** Wild and Scenic Rivers in the United States. Data from USGS, National Atlas of the  
2 United States.<sup>3</sup>  
3



4 Note: this map is missing three Wild and Scenic Rivers updated through 2006. The Missouri  
5 River in Nebraska, White Clay Creek in Delaware and Pennsylvania, and Wilson Creek in North  
6 Carolina will be included in the final version.  
7  
8

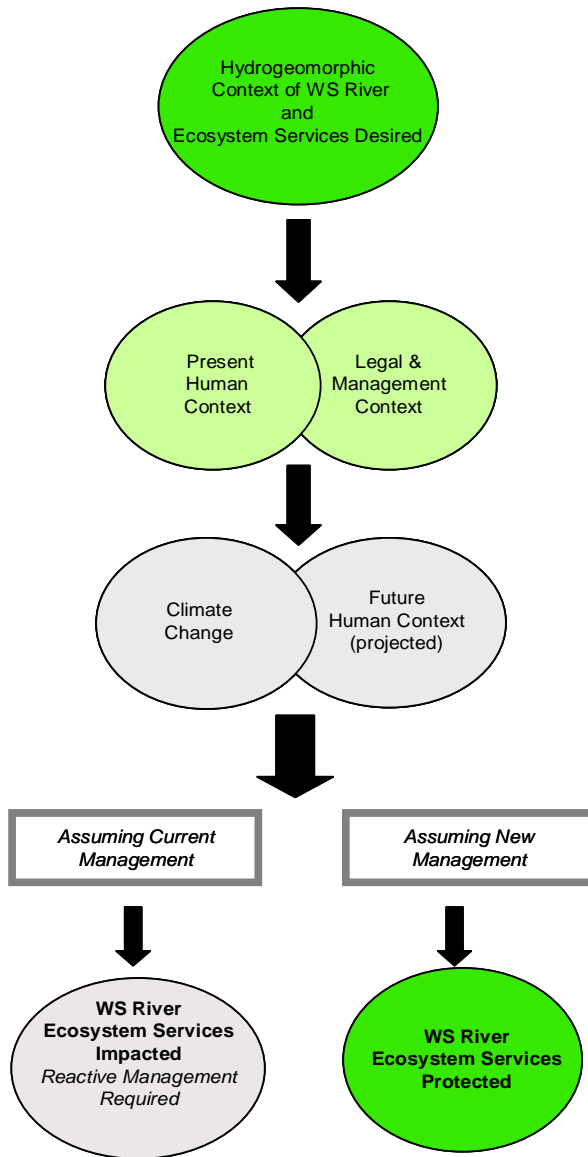
1  
2  
3  
  
4  
5  
6

**Figure 6.3.** Selected milestones in the evolution of the Wild and Scenic Rivers system. Adapted from National Wild and Scenic Rivers System website.<sup>4</sup>



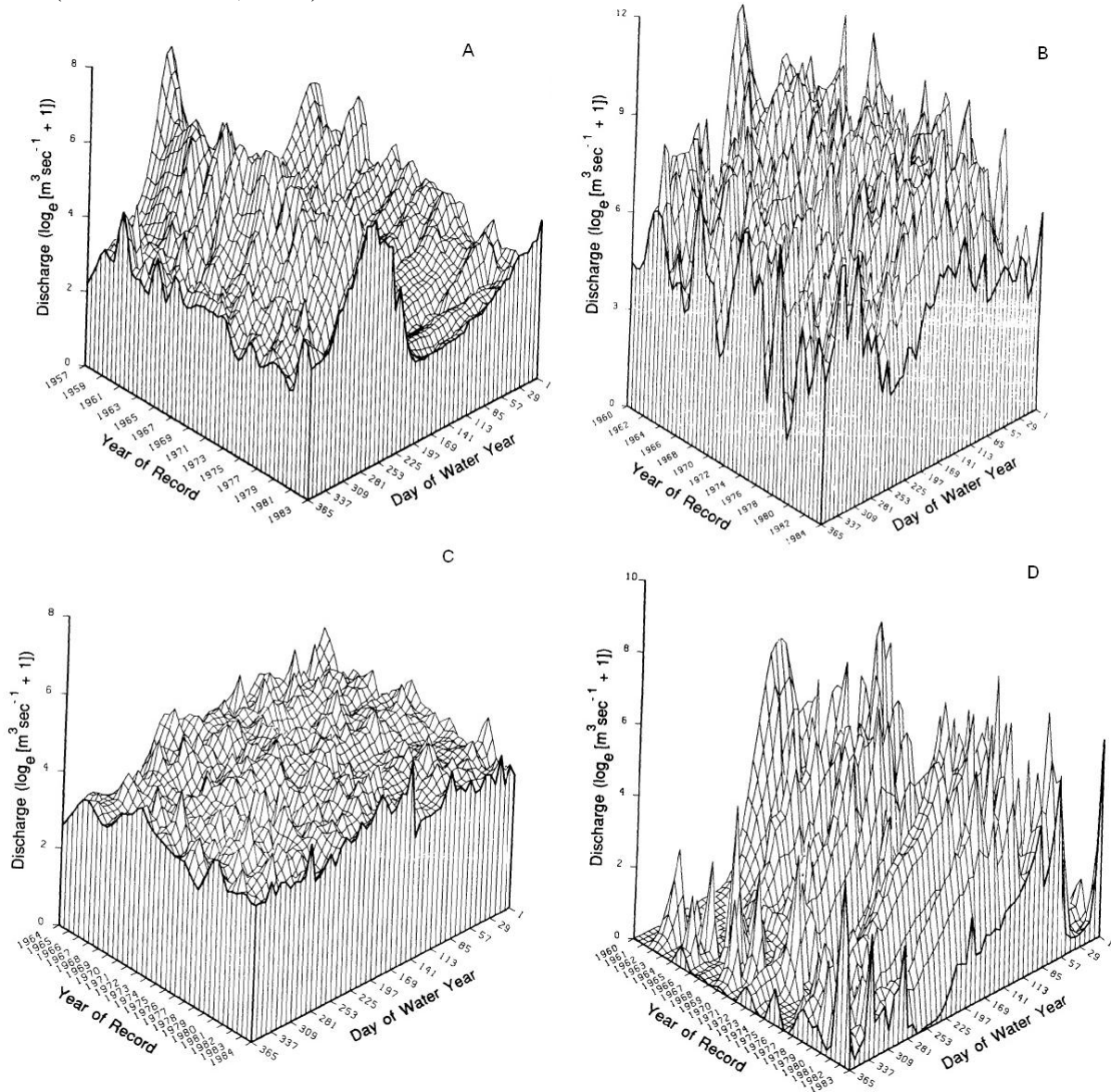
1  
2  
3  
4

**Figure 6.4.** Conditions and factors affecting the future conditions of Wild and Scenic Rivers.



5  
6  
7  
8

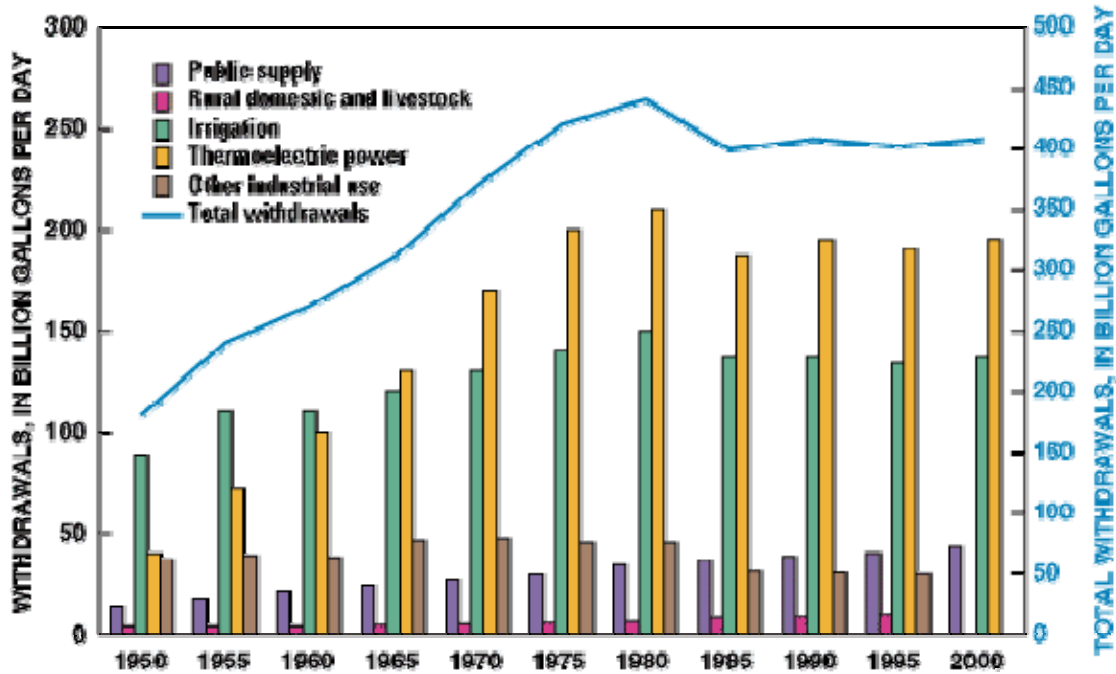
1 **Figure 6.5.** Illustration of natural flow regimes from four unregulated streams in the United  
 2 States: (a) the upper Colorado River (CO), (b) Satilla Creek (GA), (c) Augusta Creek (MI), and  
 3 (d) Sycamore Creek (AZ). For each the year of record is given on the x-axis, the day of the water  
 4 year (October 1 – September 30) on the y-axis, and the 24-hour average daily streamflow on the  
 5 z-axis (Poff and Ward, 1990).



6  
7

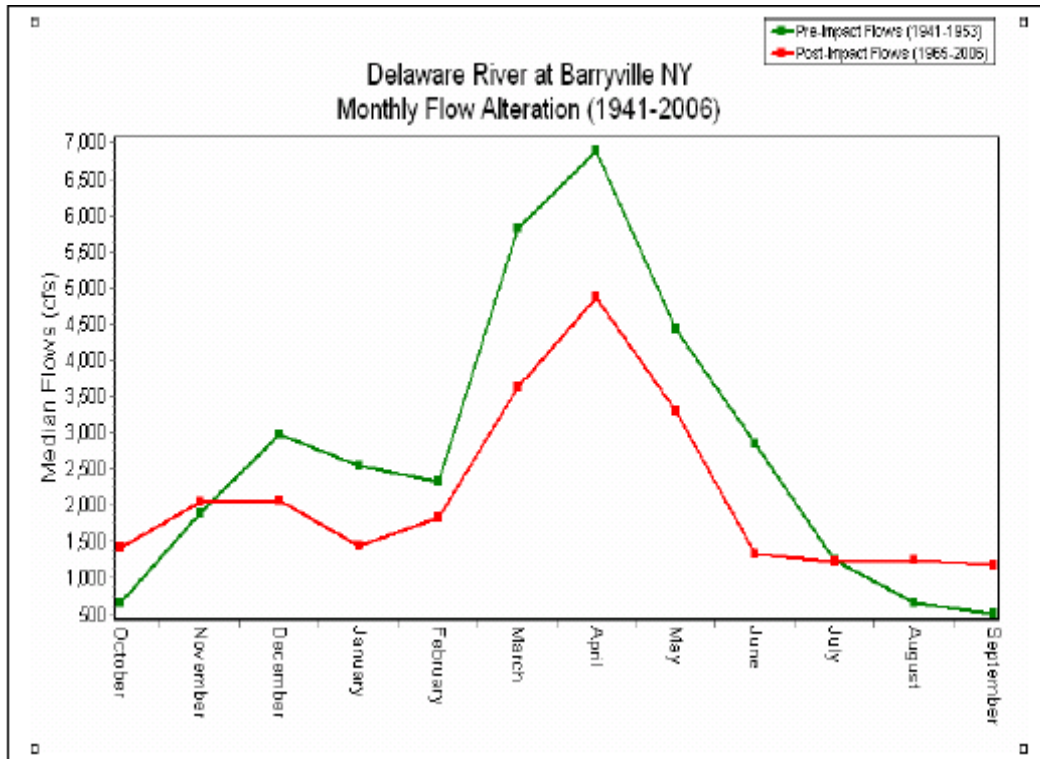


1 **Figure 6.6.** Trends in water withdrawals by water-use category. As the population has grown,  
 2 water has been increasingly withdrawn for public use since 1950 as indicated by total  
 3 withdrawals (blue line). Water withdrawn for power production and water for irrigation represent  
 4 largest use, followed by water for industrial uses, then public supply.<sup>5</sup>  
 5



6  
 7  
 8  
 9  
 10  
 11

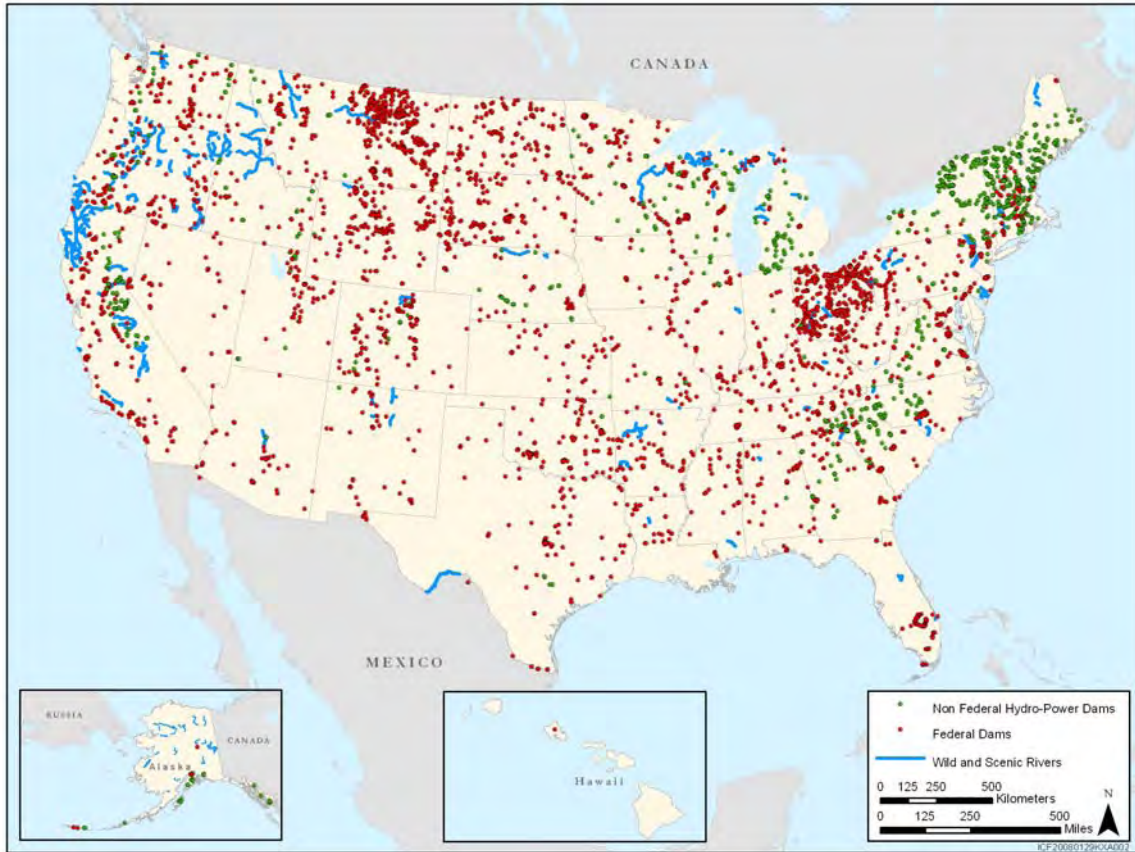
1 **Figure 6.7.** Changes in monthly average river flows on the Delaware River, in the Upper  
 2 Delaware Scenic and Recreational River segment. Lowered flows in December–July result from  
 3 upstream depletions for New York City water supply. Increased flows result from upstream  
 4 reservoir releases during summer months for the purpose of controlling salinity levels in the  
 5 lower Delaware. Figure based on data provided by USGS.<sup>7</sup>  
 6



7  
 8  
 9  
 10  
 11  
 12  
 13

1  
2  
3  
4

**Figure 6.8.** Location of dams and WSRs in the United States. Data from USGS, National Atlas of the United States.<sup>3</sup>



5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

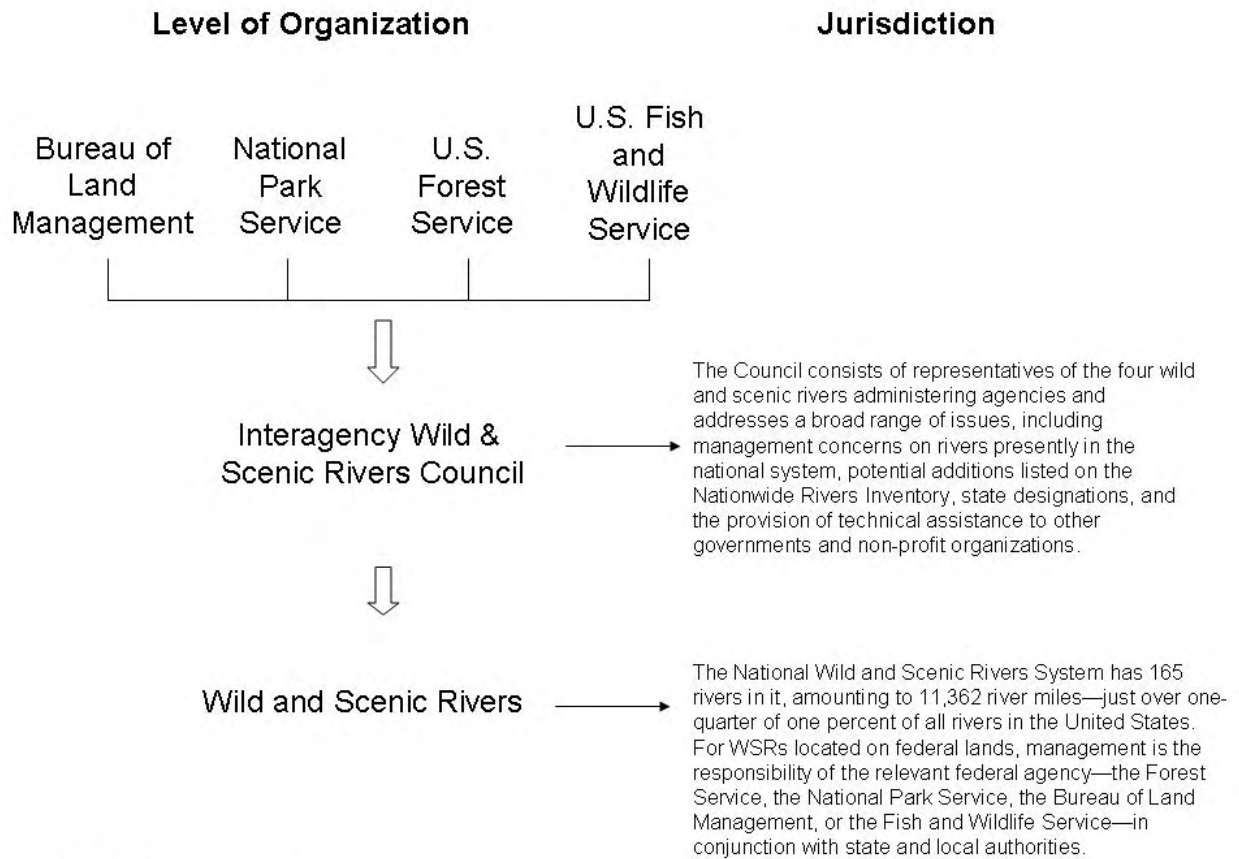
Note: map is missing three Wild and Scenic Rivers updated through 2006. The Missouri River in Nebraska, White Clay Creek in Delaware and Pennsylvania, and Wilson Creek in North Carolina will be included in the final version.

1 **Figure 6.9.** Photo of scientists standing on the bed of an urban stream whose channel has been  
2 incised more than 5 m due to inadequate storm water control. Incision occurred on the time scale  
3 of a decade, but the bank sediments exposed near the bed are marine deposits laid down during  
4 the Miocene epoch. Photograph courtesy of Margaret Palmer.  
5



6  
7  
8

1 **Figure 6.10.** Organization of the WSR system. Adapted from National Wild and Scenic Rivers  
 2 System website.<sup>4</sup>



Adapted from <http://www.rivers.gov/>

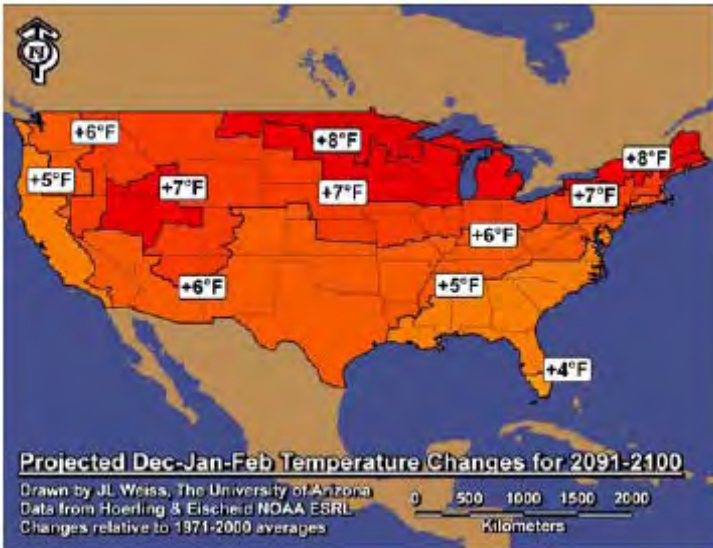
3  
4

1 **Figure 6.11.** Farmington WSR. Photo courtesy of the Farmington River Watershed Association.

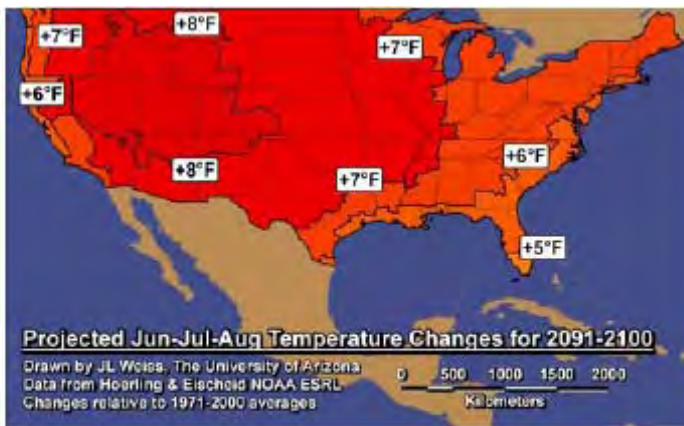


2

1 **Figure 6.12.** Projected temperature changes for 2091-2100.<sup>15</sup>  
2



3  
4

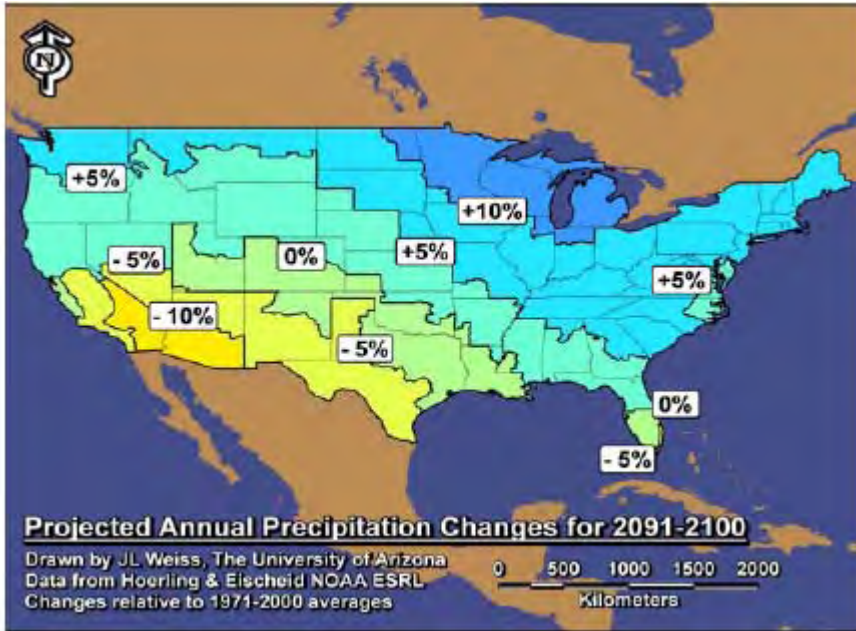


5

[www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/research/regional/projected\\_US\\_climate\\_change.htm](http://www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/research/regional/projected_US_climate_change.htm)

1  
2  
3

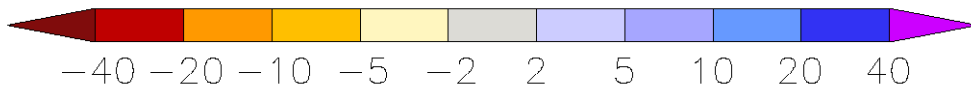
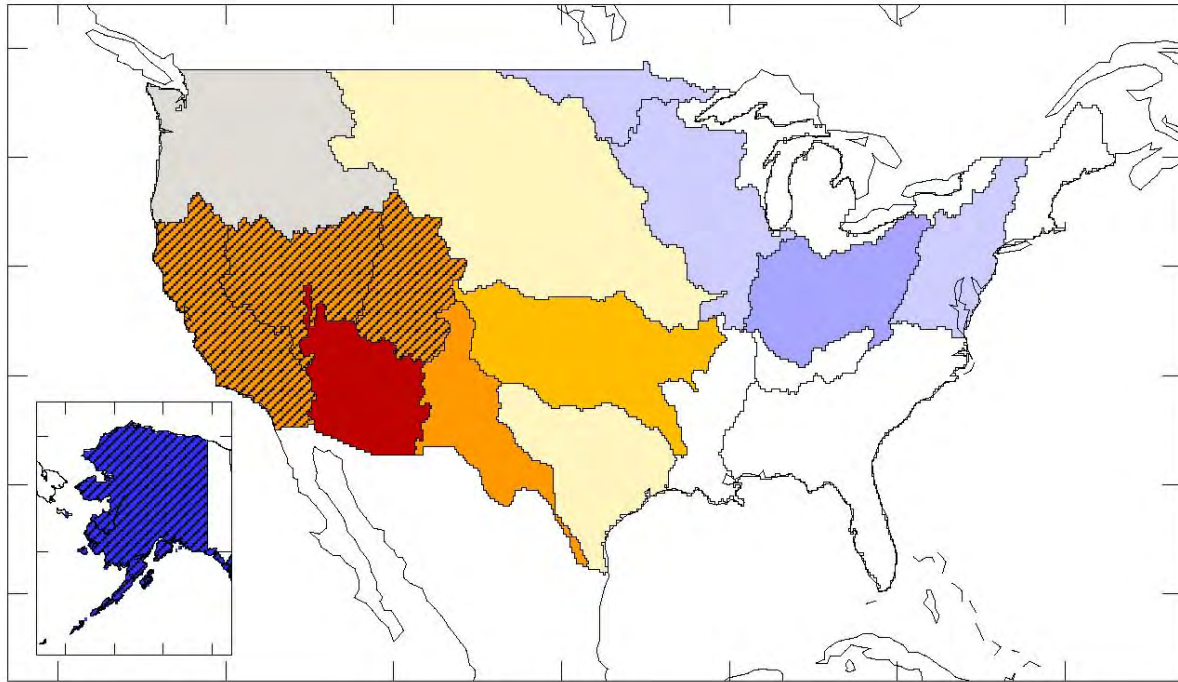
**Figure 6.13.** Projected annual precipitation changes for 2091-2100.<sup>15</sup>



4



1 **Figure 6.14.** Median, over 12 climate models, of the percent changes in runoff from United  
2 States water resources regions for 2041–2060 relative to 1901–1970. More than 66% of models  
3 agree on the sign of change for areas shown in color; diagonal hatching indicates greater than  
4 90% agreement. Recomputed from data of Milly, Dunne, and Vecchia (2005) by Dr. P.C.D.  
5 Milly, USGS.  
6



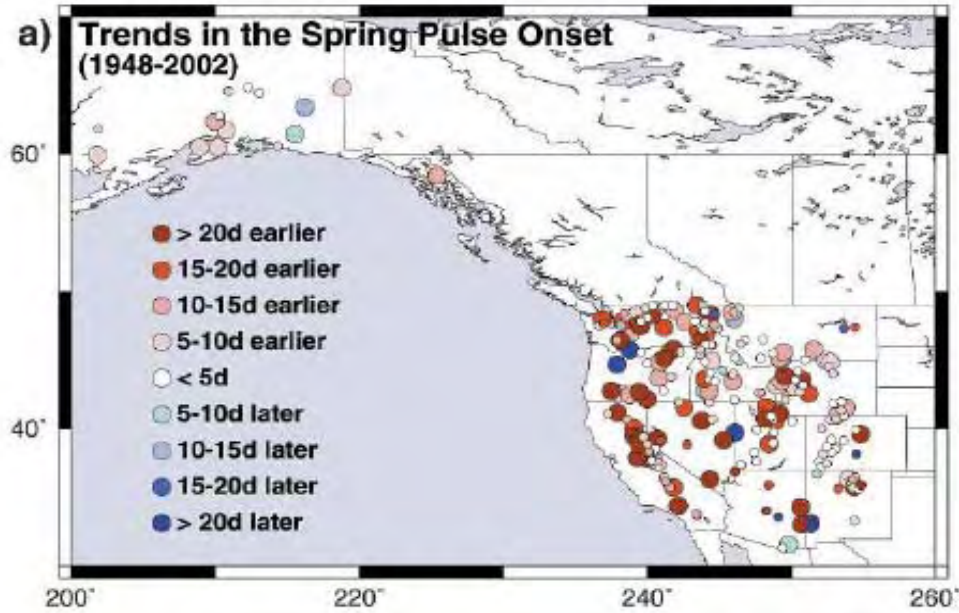
1 **Figure 6.15.** Photo of snowmelt in WSR during winter-spring flows. Photo courtesy of National  
2 Park Service, Lake Clark National Park & Preserve.



3  
4

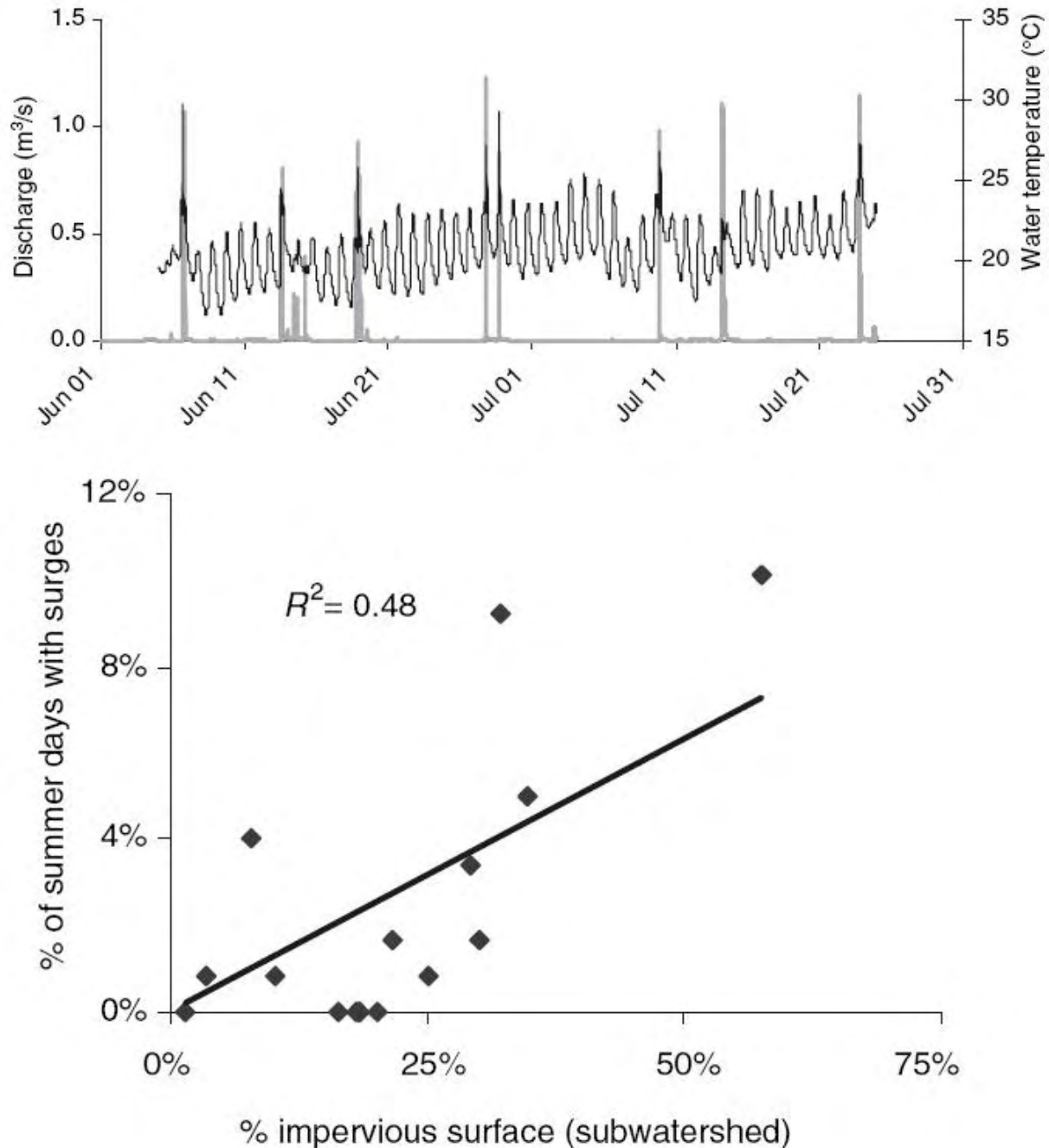
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6

**Figure 6.16.** Earlier onset of spring snowmelt pulse in river runoff from 1948–2000. Shading indicates magnitude of the trend expressed as the change (days) in timing over the period. Larger symbols indicate statistically significant trends at the 90% confidence level. From Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger (2005).



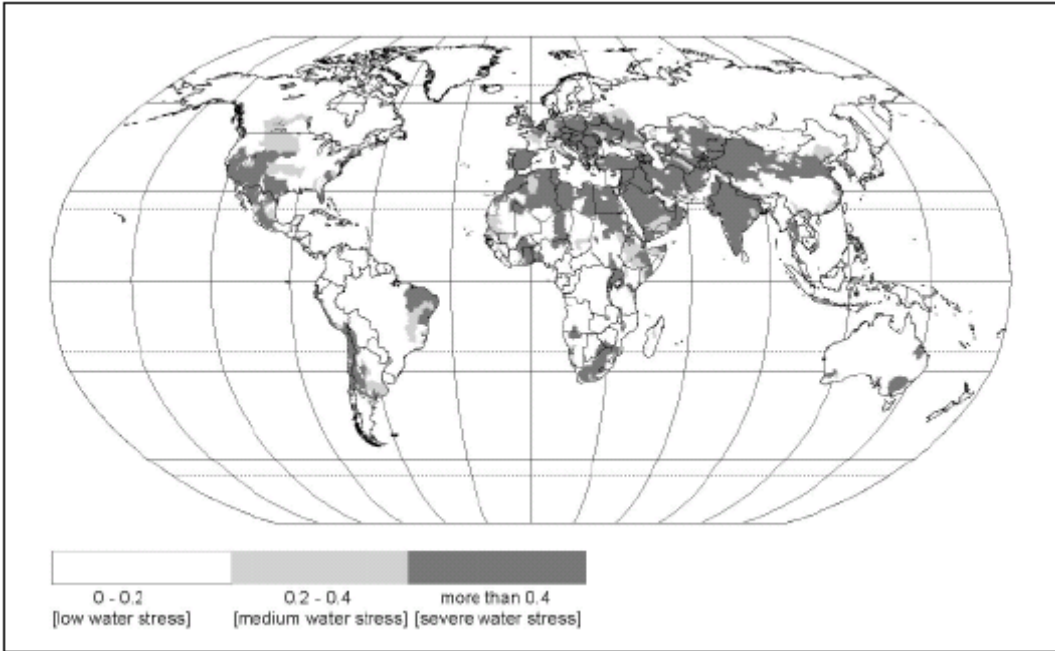
7  
8  
9

1 **Figure 6.17.** Very rapid increases (1–4 hours) in water temperature (temperature “spikes”) in  
 2 urban streams north of Washington D.C. have been found to follow local rain storms. *Top graph:*  
 3 dark line shows stream discharge that spikes just after a rainfall in watersheds with large  
 4 amounts of impervious cover; gray line shows temperature surges that increase 2–7°C above pre-  
 5 rain levels and above streams in undeveloped watersheds in the region. There is no temperature  
 6 buffering effect that is typical in wildlands where rain soaks into soil, moves into groundwater,  
 7 and laterally into streams. *Bottom graph:* shows that the number of temperature surges into a  
 8 stream increases with the amount of impervious cover. From Nelson and Palmer (2007).



1 **Figure 6.18.** Water stress projected for the 2050s based on withdrawals-to-availability ratio,  
2 where availability corresponds to annual river discharge (combined surface runoff and  
3 groundwater recharge). From Alcamo, Flörke, and Märker (2007).

4  
5



6  
7  
8

## 7 National Estuaries

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18

### **Authors**

#### **Lead Author**

Charles H. Peterson, University of North Carolina

#### **Contributing Authors**

Richard T. Barber, Duke University

Kathryn L. Cottingham, Dartmouth College

Heike K. Lotze, Dalhousie University

Charles A. Simenstad, University of Washington

Robert R. Christian, East Carolina University

Michael F. Piehler, University of North Carolina

John Wilson, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

1	<b>Chapter Contents</b>	
2		
3	7.1 Summary .....	7-3
4	7.2 Background and History .....	7-7
5	7.2.1 Historical Context and Enabling Legislation.....	7-7
6	7.2.2 Interpretation of National Estuary Program Goals .....	7-9
7	7.3 Current Status of Management Systems .....	7-10
8	7.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend .....	7-10
9	7.3.2 Current Stressors of Concern.....	7-12
10	7.3.3 Legislative Mandates Guiding Management of Stressors .....	7-15
11	7.3.4 Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change.....	7-23
12	7.4 Adapting to Climate Change.....	7-39
13	7.4.1 Potential for Adjustment of Traditional Management Approaches to	
14	Achieve Adaptation to Climate Change .....	7-41
15	7.4.2 Management Adaptations to Sustain Estuarine Services.....	7-44
16	7.4.3 New Approaches to Management in the Context of Climate Change ...	7-56
17	7.4.4 Prioritization of Management Responses .....	7-60
18	7.5 Conclusions.....	7-61
19	7.5.1 Management Response .....	7-61
20	7.5.2 Research Priorities .....	7-64
21	7.6 Appendix.....	7-68
22	7.6.1 Federal Legislation for Protection and Restoration of Estuaries .....	7-68
23	7.7 References.....	7-71
24	7.8 Acknowledgements.....	7-94
25	7.9 Boxes.....	7-95
26	7.10 Case Study Summaries .....	7-102
27	7.11 Tables.....	7-104
28	7.12 Figures.....	7-107
29		
30		

1

## 2 **7.1 Summary**

3 National estuaries comprise a group of 28 estuaries, distributed around the United States  
4 and its protectorates and territories, that form the U.S. Environmental Protection  
5 Agency’s National Estuary Program (NEP). The NEP mandates and supports the grass-  
6 roots development of estuary-specific Comprehensive Conservation and Management  
7 Plans (CCMPs), which, because national estuaries have no regulatory authority, rely on  
8 voluntary commitments to targets and on a wide suite of existing federal, state, and local  
9 authorities for implementation. The CCMPs hold several management goals in common:  
10 maintaining water quality; sustaining fish and wildlife populations, preserving habitat,  
11 protecting human values, and fulfilling water quantity needs.

12

13 Maintaining the status quo of estuarine management would guarantee growing failures in  
14 meeting all of these management goals under progressive climate change. This chapter  
15 thus reviews the suite of management adaptations that might accommodate effects of  
16 climate change in ways that could preserve the ecosystem services of estuaries. On time  
17 scales of a few decades, management strategies exist that may build resilience  
18 sufficiently to minimize ecosystem service losses from estuaries. However, over longer  
19 time scales, despite these actions to enhance resilience, dramatic net losses in ecosystem  
20 services will arise, requiring trade-offs to be made among which services to preserve and  
21 which to sacrifice.

22

### 23 **Key Findings**

24

25 *In the short time frame of a few decades, negative consequences of climate change may*  
26 *be avoided or minimized by enhanced efforts in managing traditional stressors of*  
27 *estuarine ecosystems through existing best management practices (BMPs). For example,*  
28 *climate change will enhance eutrophication in many estuaries by increasing stratification*  
29 *of the water column, elevating biological oxygen demand by increasing temperatures,*  
30 *elevating nutrient loading as wetland buffers are inundated and eroded with sea level rise,*  
31 *and increasing organic loading in runoff from more frequent intense storms. Thus,*  
32 *traditional BMPs to minimize eutrophication are appropriate to expand so as to protect*  
33 *against the climate change enhancement of eutrophication. Protection and restoration of*  
34 *wetland buffers along riverine and estuarine shores should emphasize those shorelines*  
35 *where no barriers exist to prevent wetland transgression to higher ground as sea level*  
36 *rises. This strategy may require modification of present priorities in policy for protection*  
37 *and restoration of riparian wetlands. BMPs that remove non-native invasive species, and*  
38 *maintain and restore native genetic, species, and landscape diversity in estuarine habitats*  
39 *may build resilience to changing climate, although this ecological concept needs further*  
40 *testing to confirm its practical value.*

41

42 *Many management adaptations to climate change can be achieved at modest cost by*  
43 *strategic shifts in existing practices. Reviews of federal, tribal, state, and local*  
44 *environmental programs could be used to assess the degree to which climate change is*  
45 *being addressed by management activities. Such reviews would identify barriers to and*



1 opportunities for management adaptation. One major form of adaptation involves  
2 recognition of the projected consequences of sea level rise and then application of  
3 policies that create buffers to anticipate them. An important example would be redefining  
4 riverine flood hazard zones to match the projected expansion of flooding frequency and  
5 extent. Other management adaptations could be designed to build resilience of ecological  
6 and social systems. These adaptations could include choosing only those sites for  
7 shoreline habitat restoration that allow natural recession landward, and thus provide  
8 resilience to sea level rise.

9  
10 *The appropriate time scale for both planning and implementing new management*  
11 *adaptations requires considering and balancing multiple factors.* Management  
12 adaptations to climate change can occur on three different time scales: (a) reactive  
13 measures taken in response to observed negative impacts; (b) immediate development of  
14 plans for management adaptation to be implemented later, either when an indicator  
15 signals that delay can no longer occur without risking serious consequences, or in the  
16 wake of a disaster that provides a window of socially feasible opportunity; or (c)  
17 immediate implementation of proactive policies. The factors determining which of these  
18 time frames is appropriate for any given management adaptation include balancing costs  
19 of implementation with the magnitude of risks of injurious consequences under the status  
20 quo of management; the degree of reversibility of negative consequences of climate  
21 change; recognition and understanding of the problem by managers and the public; the  
22 uncertainty associated with the projected consequences of climate change; the time table  
23 on which change is anticipated; and the extent of political, institutional, and financial  
24 impediments.

25  
26 *To minimize negative consequences of climate change beyond a few decades, planning*  
27 *for some future management adaptations and implementing other present management*  
28 *adaptations is necessary now.* For estuaries, the most critical management challenge to  
29 sustain ecosystem services over longer time frames is to implement actions now that will  
30 allow orderly retreat of development from shorelines at high risk of erosion and flooding,  
31 or to preclude development of undeveloped shorelines at high risk. Such proactive  
32 management actions have been inhibited in the past by: (a) uncertainty over or denial of  
33 climate change and its implications; (b) failures to include true economic, social, and  
34 environmental costs of present policies allowing and subsidizing such risky development;  
35 and (c) legal tenets of private property rights. One possible proactive management option  
36 would be to establish and enforce “rolling easements” along largely undeveloped  
37 estuarine shorelines as sea level continues to rise, thereby sustaining the public ownership  
38 of tide lands yet allowing private property use to continue. Another proactive  
39 management action could be developing and implementing effective ecosystem-based  
40 management (EBM). This requires collaboration that crosses traditionally separate levels  
41 of management (*e.g.*, state and federal) and management authorities (*e.g.*, water quality  
42 and land-use planning) to coordinate and focus actions of all agencies with  
43 responsibilities to manage and influence stressors that affect estuarine organisms and  
44 ecosystems.

45

1 *Even with sufficient long-term planning and enhancing short-term resilience by*  
2 *instituting BMPs, dramatic long-term losses in ecosystem services are inevitable and will*  
3 *require tradeoffs among services to protect and preserve.* The most serious conflict arises  
4 between sustaining public trust values and private property. This is because current  
5 policies allowing shoreline armoring to protect private property from damaging erosion  
6 imply escalating losses of public tidewater lands, especially including tidal wetlands, as  
7 sea level continues to rise and the frequency of intense storms increases. In regions where  
8 relative sea level is rising most rapidly, coastal wetlands and other shoreline habitats that  
9 maintain water quality and support fish and wildlife production can be sustained only  
10 where transgression of tidal marshes and other shoreline habitats to higher ground can  
11 occur: such transgression is incompatible with bulkheading and other types of shoreline  
12 armoring that protect development from erosion. One possible management adaptation  
13 for maximizing natural ecosystem services of estuaries with minimal loss of shoreline  
14 development involves establishment of rolling easements to achieve orderly retreat,  
15 perhaps only politically feasible where estuarine shoreline development is slight.

16  
17 *Establishing baselines and monitoring ecosystem state and key processes related to*  
18 *climate change and other environmental stressors is an essential part of any adaptive*  
19 *approach to management.* Going back into the past to identify baselines from historic  
20 environmental, agency, and ecological records, and from paleoecological reconstructions,  
21 is critical so as to enhance our understanding of estuarine responses to historic climate  
22 change and thereby improve our models of the future. A key goal of monitoring is to  
23 establish and follow indicators that signal an approach toward an ecosystem threshold  
24 that—once passed—implies passage of the system into an alternative state from which  
25 conversion back is difficult. Avoiding conversion into such alternative states, often  
26 maintained by positive feedbacks, is one major motivation for implementing proactive  
27 management adaptation. This is especially critical if the transition is irreversible, or very  
28 difficult and costly to reverse, and if the altered state delivers dramatically fewer  
29 ecosystem services. One example of such ecosystem conversions involves nitrogen-  
30 induced conversion from an estuary dominated by submersed benthic grasses to an  
31 alternative dominated by seaweeds and planktonic microalgae. Detecting ecosystem  
32 responses to climate change plays an integral role in management adaptation, because it  
33 can trigger implementation of planned but delayed management responses and because  
34 such monitoring serves to test the accuracy, and reduce the uncertainty, of the models that  
35 guide our management actions. This is the essence of agency learning and adapting  
36 management accordingly. Various federal programs for global and national observing  
37 systems are currently in development, but they need to include more focus on estuaries  
38 and more biological targets to accompany the physical parameters that dominate the  
39 current plans.

40  
41 The nature and scope of many anticipated consequences of climate change are not widely  
42 recognized by policy makers, managers, and the public because they involve interactions  
43 among stressors. Consequently, an effective class of management adaptation involves  
44 reducing levels of those existing stressors to minimize the risks and magnitudes of  
45 interactive consequences of climate change. These interactions and their potential  
46 significance also imply a need for more substantive rather than superficial evaluations of

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Estuaries**

1 interacting effects of climate change in environmental impact and environmental  
2 assessments conducted in response to the National Environmental Policy Act and its state  
3 analogs. Interactions of climate change with other stressors leads to a management  
4 priority for including consideration of climate change sensitivity, resilience, and  
5 adaptation responses in all relevant federal and state funding programs. In the absence of  
6 such actions, for example, climate impacts on estuarine wetlands will likely violate the  
7 “no net loss of wetlands” policy, which underlies the Clean Water Act, in two ways: (a)  
8 wetland losses resulting from sea level rise and increasing frequency of intense storms  
9 will compound the continuing loss of wetlands from small development projects with  
10 inadequate mitigation; and (b) measures used to protect human developments and  
11 infrastructure from climate change impacts will inhibit wetland adaptation to climate  
12 change. Management adaptations taken in response to the importance of potential  
13 interactions between climate change and existing stressors could include ending direct  
14 and indirect public subsidies that now support risky development on coastal barriers and  
15 estuarine shores at high risk of flooding and storm damage.

## 1 **7.2 Background and History**

### 2 **7.2.1 Historical Context and Enabling Legislation**

3 This chapter focuses on meeting the challenges of managing national estuaries and  
4 estuarine ecosystem services under influence of changing climate. Our contribution is  
5 distinguished from previous reviews of estuarine responses to climate change (*e.g.*,  
6 National Coastal Assessment Group, 2000; National Assessment Synthesis Team, 2000;  
7 Scavia *et al.*, 2002; Kennedy *et al.*, 2002; Harley and Hughes, 2006) by its focus on  
8 developing adaptive management options and analyzing the characteristics of human and  
9 ecological systems that facilitate or inhibit management adaptation. The chapter is thus  
10 written mostly for an audience of natural resource and environmental managers and  
11 policy makers.

12  
13 There are 28 national estuaries in the U.S. National Estuarine Program, which is  
14 administered by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (Fig. 7.1). These estuaries  
15 span the full spectrum of estuarine ecosystem types and encompass the diversity of  
16 estuarine ecosystem services across the country. Estuaries are sometimes defined as those  
17 places where fresh and salt water meet and mix, thereby potentially excluding some  
18 largely enclosed coastal features such as marine lagoons and including, for some  
19 vigorous rivers like the Mississippi, extensive excursions into the coastal ocean. So as to  
20 match common characteristics of the 28 national estuaries, we choose an alternative,  
21 geomorphologically based definition of an estuary as a semi-enclosed body of water on  
22 the seacoast in which fresh and salt water mix (adapted from Pritchard, 1967). Such a  
23 definition includes not only those water bodies that are largely perpendicular to the  
24 coastline where rivers approach the sea, but also marine lagoons, which are largely  
25 parallel to the shoreline and experience only occasional fresh water inflow, thereby  
26 retaining high salinities most of the time. In the landward direction, we include the  
27 intertidal and supratidal shore zone to be part of the estuary and thus include marshes,  
28 swamps and mangroves (*i.e.*, the coastal wetlands).

#### 32 **Figure 7.1. Organization of the NEP System.**<sup>1</sup>

33  
34 Estuaries are notoriously idiosyncratic because of intrinsic differences among them in  
35 physical, geological, chemical, and biological conditions (Wolfe, 1986). There can also  
36 be considerable variation within an estuary. This variation exists over wide spectra of  
37 time and space (Remane and Schlieper, 1971). This high level of environmental  
38 variability in estuaries places physiological constraints on the organisms that can occupy  
39 them, generally requiring broad tolerances for varying salinity but also for temperature  
40 and other factors. Consequently, the organisms of estuaries represent a biota that may  
41 have unusually high intrinsic capability for species-level physiological adaptation to

---

<sup>1</sup> **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2007: Office of Water organizational chart. EPA Website, [http://www.epa.gov/water/org\\_chart/index.htm](http://www.epa.gov/water/org_chart/index.htm), accessed on 5-30-2007.

1 changing salinity, temperature, and other naturally varying aspects of historic climate  
2 change. The challenge is to predict how these species will respond to accelerated rates of  
3 change and how species interactions will alter communities and ecosystems.

4  
5 Estuaries possess several features that render them unusually valuable for their ecosystem  
6 services, both to nature and to humans. The biological productivity of estuaries is  
7 generally high, with substantial contributions from vascular plants of historically  
8 extensive tidal marshes and coastal wetlands as well as from sea grasses and other  
9 submerged aquatic vegetation. A large fraction of the fisheries of the coastal ocean  
10 depend on estuaries to provide nursery or even adult habitat necessary to complete the  
11 life cycle of the fish or shellfish. Similarly, many species of coastal wildlife, including  
12 terrestrial and marine mammals and coastal birds, depend on estuaries as essential  
13 feeding and breeding grounds. Although depicting the ecosystem services of only one  
14 estuarine habitat, the wetlands and marshes, the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment  
15 (2005) provides a table of ecosystem services that helps indicate the types and range of  
16 natural and human values that are vested in estuarine ecosystems more broadly (Box 7.1).  
17 Partly in recognition of the value of estuaries and the threats to their health, the National  
18 Estuary Program (NEP) was established by Congress in 1987 and housed within EPA  
19 (Fig. 7.1).<sup>2</sup> After the establishment of this program, the 28 national estuaries were added  
20 over a 10-year period (Fig. 7.2).

21  
22  
23  
24 **Figure 7.2.** Timeline of National Estuaries Program Formation.<sup>3</sup>

25  
26 Estuaries represent the collection point past which runoff from the entire watershed must  
27 flow. The health and functioning of estuaries are at risk from pollutants that are  
28 discharged and released over the entire catchment area and reach these collection points.  
29 Degradation of estuarine habitats, water quality, and function is traceable to human  
30 modification of watersheds, with substantial cumulative consequences worldwide  
31 (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Worm *et al.*, 2006; Lotze *et al.*, 2006). More recently, threats to  
32 estuaries have arisen from sources even closer to estuarine waters as human population  
33 migration and growth have targeted the coasts, especially waterfront property. Although  
34 more than half of the U.S. population now lives on the 17% of lands considered coastal,  
35 within the next 25 years human populations on the coast are expected to increase by 25%  
36 (National Coastal Assessment Group, 2000). Thus, the threats to estuarine ecosystems are  
37 not only widespread, requiring a basin-wide scope for management, but increasingly  
38 local as more people choose to occupy habitats of higher risk. The growing human  
39 occupation of estuarine shores increases the challenge of managing for climate change,  
40 because estuarine services are placed at growing risk from both direct impacts of  
41 changing climate as well as indirect consequences of human responses to personal and  
42 property risks from climate change.

---

<sup>2</sup> 33 U.S.C. 1251-1387 P.L. 100-4

<sup>3</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007: National Estuary Program: program profiles. EPA Website, <http://www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/list.htm>, accessed on 5-30-2007.

1 **7.2.2 Interpretation of National Estuary Program Goals**

2 Under the goals of Section 320 of the Clean Water Act, each national estuary<sup>4</sup> is required  
3 to develop a Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan (CCMP). Many  
4 national estuaries have watersheds found within a single state, and therefore their CCMP  
5 is contained within one state. Other estuarine watersheds are trans-boundary and more  
6 than one state participates. Emphasis is on “integrated, watershed-based, stakeholder-  
7 oriented water resource management.”<sup>5</sup> These plans are produced by a full range of  
8 stakeholders within each national estuary through a process involving (1) assessments of  
9 trends in water quality, natural resources, and uses of the estuary; (2) evaluation of  
10 appropriate data; and (3) development of pollutant loading relationships to watershed and  
11 estuarine condition. The final CCMP is approved by the governors of the states in the  
12 study area and the EPA administrator. The programs are then obligated to implement the  
13 CCMPs and monitor effectiveness of actions.<sup>6</sup> Each national estuary prepares an annual  
14 plan, approved by EPA, to guide implementation of its CCMP.  
15

16 The national estuaries represent a wide variety of sizes, geomorphologies, and watershed  
17 characteristics. For example Santa Monica Bay is a relatively small, open embayment or  
18 coastal lagoon; the Maryland Coastal Bays are a group of more closed lagoons; and the  
19 Albemarle-Pamlico Sound is a complex of drowned river valleys emptying into largely  
20 closed coastal lagoons. The Columbia River Estuary and the Delaware Estuary are the  
21 more traditional drowned river valleys. This diversity has largely prevented classification,  
22 grouping, and synthetic assessment of the constituent national estuaries. The NEP  
23 separates national estuaries into four geographic regions: West Coast (six sites), Gulf of  
24 Mexico (seven sites), South Atlantic (six sites, including San Juan Bay, Puerto Rico), and  
25 Northeast (nine sites). Although the estuaries do not share easily identified geomorphic  
26 characteristics, they are recognized to share common stressors (Bricker *et al.*, 1999;  
27 Worm *et al.*, 2006; Lotze *et al.*, 2006). These stressors include “eutrophication,  
28 contamination from toxic substances and pathogens, habitat loss, altered freshwater  
29 inflows, and endangered and invasive species” (Bearden, 2001). This particular list  
30 ignores direct and indirect fishing impacts, which are important and included in many  
31 CCMPs. Even more importantly, this list fails to include the direct and indirect effects of  
32 climate change, particularly the threats posed by sea level rise.  
33

34 A hallmark of the NEP is that it is largely a local program with federal support. While  
35 federal grants provide a critical source of base funding, most national estuaries have  
36 successfully raised significant local and state support, primarily to finance specific  
37 projects or activities. The individual national estuaries lack regulatory authority; thus they  
38 depend on voluntary cooperation using various incentives, plus existing federal, state,  
39 tribal, and local legislation and regulation. Their purpose is to coordinate these local

---

<sup>4</sup> In the National Estuary Program, individual national estuaries are referred to as National Estuary Programs. To avoid confusion between individual estuary programs and the umbrella program, this chapter uses the term “national estuaries” to refer to the individual programs.

<sup>5</sup> **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency**, 2006: The National Estuary Program: a Ten Year Perspective. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Website, <http://www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/aniv.htm>, accessed on 4-6-2007.

<sup>6</sup> 33 U.S.C. 1251-1387 § 320

1 efforts and promote the mechanisms to develop, implement, and monitor the CCMPs.  
2 The NEP was designed to provide funding and guidance for the 28 estuaries around the  
3 country to work in a bottom-up science-based way within the complex policy-making  
4 landscape of federal, state, and local regulations. Non-regulatory strategies must  
5 complement the limited federal and even state authority or regulations. Lessons learned  
6 about how monitoring, research, communication, education, coordination, and advocacy  
7 work to achieve goals are transferable to all estuaries, not just NEP members.

8  
9 The overarching areas of concern in national estuaries can be classified as water quality,  
10 fisheries, habitat, wildlife, introduced species, biodiversity, human values, and freshwater  
11 quantity. More specifically the goals include “protection of public water supplies and the  
12 protection and propagation of a balanced, indigenous population of shellfish, fish, and  
13 wildlife, and [allowing] recreational activities, in and on water, [and requiring]...control  
14 of point and nonpoint sources of pollution to supplement existing controls of pollution.”<sup>2</sup>  
15 Thus, overwhelmingly, the interest has been on anthropogenic impacts and their  
16 management (Kennish, 1999).

17  
18 Within recent years, each national estuary has developed or begun to develop system-  
19 specific ecosystem status indicators. These indicators allow ongoing assessments of the  
20 success of management activities resulting from the CCMPs. However, almost none of  
21 the CCMPs mention climate change, and only one national estuary (Puget Sound) has  
22 completed a planning process to assess implications of climate change for the  
23 perpetuation of ecosystem services in its system (Snover *et al.*, 2005). Managers may fail  
24 to account for the effects of climate change on the estuaries if the choices of indicators  
25 are not reconsidered in the context of changing climate. Perhaps more importantly,  
26 climate change may confound the interpretation of the indicator trend results and thus the  
27 interpretation of the effectiveness of the CCMPs.

## 28 **7.3 Current Status of Management Systems**

### 29 **7.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend**

30 To understand how climate drivers might affect individual national estuaries, it is useful  
31 to identify the susceptibility of characteristics of the entire management system. At a  
32 large scale, the location of the estuary on Earth (*i.e.*, its latitude and longitude) determines  
33 its susceptibility. Climate varies over the globe, and expectations for change likewise  
34 differ geographically on a global scale. Expected temperature and precipitation changes  
35 and range shifts can be estimated from global-scale geographic position quite well,  
36 whereas local variation of these and other variables (*e.g.*, winds) of climate change are  
37 less predictable.

38  
39 Next in scale is the airshed. This is the area capable of influencing the estuary through the  
40 contribution of quantitatively significant pollutants, especially nitrogen oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>). For  
41 the Chesapeake Bay, this area includes Midwestern states, the source of nutrients from  
42 industrial and transportation activities. Estuaries on the Gulf and East coasts are likely to  
43 have different dependencies on their airsheds for nutrient enrichment than their western  
44 counterparts. Western estuaries are affected more by fog banks emanating from coastal

1 waters. Climate drivers that change wind, ultraviolet radiation, and precipitation patterns  
2 are particularly important at this scale.

3  
4 Next in hierarchical context is the watershed. The NEP takes a watershed perspective to  
5 management. Land and watershed use, population density, and regulatory effectiveness  
6 combine to determine the potential loading of pollutants, extraction of freshwater and  
7 resources, and transformation of habitat and coastline. Climate change can influence each  
8 of these factors. Changes in temperature, sea level, storminess, precipitation, and  
9 evapotranspiration patterns can alter human settlement and migration, agricultural and  
10 fisheries practices, and energy and resource use. These responses are likely to be long-  
11 term and large-scale, although their influence on estuarine dynamics may be exhibited on  
12 shorter time scales. For example, seasonal nutrient loading varies as a result of changes in  
13 tourism or crop choice. These factors largely affect the concentration of nutrients, while  
14 changes in runoff and river flow affect the discharge component of loading.

15  
16 At the opposite end of the estuary is the marine environment, which also serves as an  
17 intermixing boundary susceptible to climate change. The oceans and coastal marine  
18 waters have responded—or are expected to respond—to climate change by changes in sea  
19 level, circulation patterns, storm intensity, salinity, temperature, and pH. Some of these  
20 factors may change little over the large scale, but may be altered locally outside the  
21 mouths of estuaries. All of these factors influence the biota, with all but pH exerting  
22 additional indirect effects by modifying estuarine hydrodynamics.

23  
24 Susceptibility of individual estuaries to climate change depends on a number of  
25 characteristics that act at a variety of spatial and temporal scales. All of the previously  
26 mentioned climate drivers can affect estuaries. How they do so depends on physical  
27 features such as estuarine depth, size, and balance between ocean water circulation and  
28 fresh-water inflows. Furthermore, the geomorphology and direction of longest fetch set  
29 conditions for susceptibility to storms. All of these features help determine the biological  
30 communities that reside within the estuary and how they might respond to the various  
31 components of climate change.

32  
33 The way in which a specific estuary responds to climate change depends on the  
34 anthropogenic stressors acting on it. These stressors include those that pollute and  
35 contaminate the system, as well as those that remove or disrupt estuarine resources.  
36 Pollutants include nutrients, metals, pathogens, sediments, and organic toxicants.  
37 Extractions include uses of fresh and brackish water, sediments, and living resources  
38 within the ecosystem. Disruption of a variety of biological communities occurs through  
39 fishing, introduction of invasive species, habitat destruction, damming, boat traffic, and  
40 shoreline conversion and stabilization activities.

41  
42 Finally, there are the social, political, and economic contexts for susceptibility. Some of  
43 these contexts play out in ways already mentioned. But it is clear that stakeholder  
44 attitudes about estuaries and their perceptions about climate change are critical to wise  
45 management for climate change. Each stakeholder group, indeed each individual, uses  
46 estuaries in different ways and places different importance on specific ecosystem



1 services. One aim of this report is to provide a common body of knowledge to  
2 stakeholders and to managers at higher levels (local, state, tribal, and federal  
3 governments) to inform their choices.

#### 4 **7.3.2 Current Stressors of Concern**

5 Estuaries are generally stressful environments because of their strong and naturally  
6 variable gradients of salinity, temperature, and other parameters. However, estuaries are  
7 also essential feeding and reproduction grounds, and provide refuge for a wide variety of  
8 seasonal and permanent inhabitants. Throughout history, estuaries have been focal points  
9 of human settlement and resource use, and humans have added multiple stressors to  
10 estuarine ecosystems (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). A stressor is any physical, chemical, or  
11 biological entity that can induce an adverse response (U.S. Environmental Protection  
12 Agency, 2000). This document focuses specifically on those stressors that significantly  
13 affect the services that estuaries are managed to provide. The major stressors currently  
14 imposed on estuaries are listed in Table 7.1. Almost all current efforts to manage  
15 estuarine resources are focused on these stressors (Kennish, 1999 and the various  
16 CCMPs).

17  
18 Several stressors result from modified rates of loading of naturally occurring energy and  
19 materials. Nutrient loading is perhaps the most studied and important material addition.  
20 Although essential to the primary production of any open ecosystem, too much nutrient  
21 loading can cause eutrophication, the subject of considerable concern for estuaries and  
22 the target for much management action (Nixon, 1995; Bricker *et al.*, 1999). Nutrient  
23 (especially nitrogen) loading comes from diverse point- and non-point sources, including  
24 agriculture, aquaculture, and industrial and municipal discharges, and can lead to harmful  
25 and nuisance algal blooms, loss of perennial vegetation, bottom-water hypoxia, and fish  
26 kills.

27  
28 Sediment delivery has also been altered by human activities. Again, sediments are  
29 important to estuarine ecosystems as a material source for the geomorphological balance  
30 in the face of sea level rise, and for nutrients (especially phosphorus) for primary  
31 production. However, land clearing, agriculture, and urban land use can increase  
32 sediment load (Howarth, Fruci, and Sherman, 1991; Cooper and Brush, 1993; Syvitski *et al.*,  
33 2005), while dams may greatly restrict delivery and promote deltaic erosion (Syvitski  
34 *et al.*, 2005). Historically, sediment loading has increased on average 25-fold, and  
35 nitrogen and phosphorus loading almost 10-fold, in estuaries since 1700 (Lotze *et al.*,  
36 2006). Because riverine loading of both nutrients and sediments depends on their  
37 concentration and river flow, modifications of river flow will further alter the amount and  
38 timing of material delivery. River flow also contributes to the energy budget through  
39 mechanical energy. River flow may be a major determinant of flushing times, salinity  
40 regime, and stratification, and thus determine community structure and resource use  
41 patterns. Modifications in river flow come from dam management decisions, land  
42 development, loss of riparian wetlands, extraction of freshwater, and surface and ground  
43 water consumption. Thermal pollution, largely from power plants, is a direct  
44 enhancement of energy with resultant local changes in metabolic rates, community  
45 structure, and species interactions.

1  
2 Human activities also cause or enhance the delivery of materials and organisms that are  
3 not normally part of the natural systems. Pathogen loading compromises the use of  
4 estuarine resources, causing shellfish bed closures and beach closures (*e.g.*, Health  
5 Ecological and Economic Dimensions of Global Change Program, 1998), human health  
6 advisories, and diseases to estuarine organisms themselves. Other anthropogenic  
7 contributions include the discharge and ongoing legacy of organic wastes and persistent  
8 organic pollutants (*e.g.*, DDT, dioxin, PCBs, petroleum) (Kennish, 1999). The toxicity of  
9 some of the persistent organic pollutants has been recognized for decades, dating to the  
10 publication of *Silent Spring* by Rachel Carson (1962). More recently, the potential  
11 importance of other endocrine-disrupting chemicals is causing concern (Cropper, 2005).  
12 Added to these organic pollutants are metals entering estuaries from direct dumping,  
13 riverine waters, sediments, and atmospheric deposition. Moreover, biodegradable organic  
14 wastes contribute to eutrophication and dissolved oxygen deficits (Nixon, 1995). Finally,  
15 the introduction and spread of non-indigenous species are enhanced by globalization and  
16 shipping, intentional decisions for commerce or other human use, and unintentional  
17 actions (Mooney and Hobbs, 2000). For those locations that have been surveyed, the  
18 known number of resident non-indigenous species ranges from about 60 to about 200  
19 species per estuary in the United States (Ruiz *et al.*, 1997; Lotze *et al.*, 2006), likely the  
20 result of an increasing rate of invasions over the last 300 years (Lotze *et al.*, 2006).

21  
22 Human use and development in and around estuaries alter wetland and subtidal habitats  
23 directly. Wetland destruction has occurred during much of human history as a result of  
24 the perceptions of wetlands as wastelands and the value of waterfront land. For example,  
25 12 estuaries around the world have lost an average of more than 65% of their wetland  
26 area (with a range of 20–95%) over the last 300 years (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Wetland  
27 habitat loss from development continues, despite changes in perceptions about wetland  
28 value and regulations intended to protect wetlands. Coastal wetlands represent a diverse  
29 assortment of hydrogeomorphic classes (Brinson, 1993; Christian *et al.*, 2000), both sea-  
30 level controlled (*e.g.*, marshes and mangroves), non-sea-level controlled (*e.g.*, swamps,  
31 fens, bogs, and pocosins) and subtidal (*e.g.*, submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV),  
32 seagrass, and macroalgal) habitats. Supratidal and intertidal wetlands are subject to land  
33 use change, dredging and filling, and changes in water quality. Subtidal habitats are  
34 particularly susceptible to not only these impacts but also activities within the water. For  
35 example, SAV loss also occurs from bottom-disturbing fishing practices and  
36 eutrophication. Oyster reef habitat destruction occurs from direct exploitation and bottom  
37 disturbance from fishing practices (*e.g.*, trawling). For 12 study sites around the world,  
38 both seagrass meadows and oyster reefs have experienced substantial losses over the last  
39 300 years (>65% and about 80%, respectively) (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Together with the  
40 loss of wetlands, these changes have resulted in great reductions of essential nursery  
41 habitats, important filtering functions (nutrient cycling and storage), and coastal  
42 protection (barriers and floodplains) in estuaries (Worm *et al.*, 2006; Lotze *et al.*, 2006).

43  
44 Another important anthropogenic stressor in estuaries is the extraction of living and non-  
45 living material that alters estuarine ecosystem structure and functioning. Historically,  
46 estuaries provided a wide variety of resources used and valued by humans as sources of

1 food, fur, feathers, fertilizer, and other materials (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Since the 19<sup>th</sup>  
2 century, however, the ecological service of estuaries receiving greatest management  
3 attention has been their support of fisheries. Pollution, damming, and habitat destruction  
4 affect fisheries. Recently, more emphasis has been placed on overfishing as a negative  
5 impact, not only on target species but also on the community and food web structure  
6 (*e.g.*, Dayton, Thrush, and Coleman, 2002). Large apex predators have been greatly  
7 reduced from many, if not most, estuarine and coastal ecosystems (Lotze *et al.*, 2006).  
8 The absence of these large consumers (including marine mammals, birds, reptiles, and  
9 larger fish) translates through the food web, creating ecosystem states that are distinct  
10 from those of the past (*e.g.*, Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Lotze *et al.*, 2006; Myers *et al.*, 2007).  
11 Ongoing fishing pressure targets species lower and lower in the food chain, affecting  
12 detritivorous and herbivorous invertebrates and marine plants; consequences can include  
13 further alteration of ecosystem structure and functioning and negative effects on habitat  
14 integrity and filtering functions (Pauly *et al.*, 1998; Worm *et al.*, 2006; Lotze *et al.*,  
15 2006). Management goals to stabilize current or restore former ecosystem states are  
16 jeopardized if large consumers are not also recovered (Jackson *et al.*, 2001).

17  
18 It is rare that an estuary is subject to only one of these stressors. Management decisions  
19 must consider not only stressors acting independently but also interacting with each other  
20 (Breitburg, Seitzinger, and Sanders, 1999; Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Multiple stressors can  
21 interact and cause responses that cannot be anticipated from our understanding of each  
22 one separately. For example, Lenihan and Peterson (1998) demonstrate that habitat  
23 damage from oyster dredging and the stress of bottom-water hypoxia interact to affect  
24 oyster survival. Tall oyster reefs, both those that remain and those that have been rebuilt,  
25 project above hypoxic bottom waters and therefore allow oyster survival in the upper  
26 wind-mixed layers even as water quality further deteriorates. Unfortunately, management  
27 of fisheries and water quality is done by different agencies, inhibiting the integrated  
28 approach that such interacting stressors demand.

29  
30 Interactive effects of multiple stressors are likely to be common and important because of  
31 both the interdependence of physiological rate processes within individuals and the  
32 interdependence of ecological interactions within communities and ecosystems  
33 (Breitburg and Riedel, 2005). Individual stressors fundamentally change the playing field  
34 upon which additional stressors act, by selecting for tolerant species while also changing  
35 the abundance, distribution, or interactions of predators, prey, parasites, hosts, and  
36 structural foundation species (*e.g.*, organisms such as bivalves and corals that create  
37 physical structures upon which other species depend). These direct and indirect effects  
38 can be common when stressors occur simultaneously, but they also occur from exposure  
39 to stressors in sequence. Across hierarchical levels from individuals through ecosystems,  
40 the recovery period from a particular stressor can extend beyond the period of exposure,  
41 thus influencing responses to subsequent stressors. For example, Peterson and Black  
42 (1988) demonstrated that bivalves that were already stressed from living under crowded  
43 conditions exhibited higher mortality rates after experimental application of the stress of  
44 sedimentation. Moreover, effects of stressors on indirect interactions within populations  
45 and communities can extend the spatial scale of stressor effects and delay recovery  
46 (Peterson *et al.*, 2003), increasing the potential for interactions with additional stressors.

1 For example, years after the Exxon Valdez oil spill, female harlequin ducks exposed to  
2 lingering oil during feeding on benthic invertebrates in contaminated sediments, and  
3 exhibiting activation of detoxification enzymes, suffered lower survivorship over winter.  
4 Winter is a period of energetic stress to these small-bodied ducks (Peterson *et al.*, 2003).  
5 On longer time scales, heritable adaptations that increase tolerance to one class of  
6 stressors may enhance susceptibility to others (Meyer and Di Giulio, 2003).

7  
8 One hallmark of the NEP is the recognition that management actions need to take account  
9 of the complexity of the larger watershed and the potentially diverse socioeconomic  
10 demands and objectives within them. The NEP tracks habitat restoration and protection  
11 efforts with annual updates from the component estuaries.<sup>7</sup> The reality of interacting  
12 stressors has important implications for estuarine management. Specifically, because  
13 climate change affects some pre-existing stressors, and the magnitude of such interactive  
14 effects typically increases with the intensity of each stressor, more effective management  
15 of the pre-existing stressor can help reduce climate change consequences.

### 16 **7.3.3 Legislative Mandates Guiding Management of Stressors**

17 Because of the intrinsically wide range of estuarine resources and diversity of human  
18 activities that influence them, management of estuarine services is achieved via numerous  
19 legislative acts at the federal level. Many of these acts possess state counterparts, and  
20 local laws—especially land use planning and zoning—also play roles in management of  
21 estuarine services. This web of legal authorities and guiding legislation is a historical  
22 legacy, reflective of prevailing management that compartmentalized responsibilities into  
23 multiple agencies and programs.

24  
25 The presentation here of applicable federal legislative acts is long, yet incomplete, and  
26 does not attempt to list state and local laws. One motivation in providing this spectrum of  
27 applicable legislation is to illustrate the challenges involved for estuaries in the  
28 integration of management authorities that is urged under the umbrella of ecosystem-  
29 based management by the U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy.

#### 30 **7.3.3.1 Basin-Wide Management of Water Quality**

31 As one of the tools to meet the goal of “restoration and maintenance of the chemical,  
32 physical, and biological integrity of the Nation’s waters” under §402 of the Federal Water  
33 Pollution Control Act, any entity that discharges pollutants into a navigable body of water  
34 must possess a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit.<sup>8</sup> This  
35 requirement applies to public facilities such as wastewater treatment plants, public and  
36 private industrial facilities, and all other point sources. While EPA was the original  
37 administrator of the program, many states have now assumed the administrative function.  
38 All states have approved State NPDES Permit Programs except Alaska, the District of  
39 Columbia, Idaho, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New Mexico, and the territories and  
40 trusts (American Samoa, Guam, Johnston Atoll, Midway Island, Northern Marianas,

---

<sup>7</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007: Performance indicators visualization and outreach tool introduction. EPA Website, [www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/habitat/index.html](http://www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/habitat/index.html), accessed on 7-25-2007.

<sup>8</sup> 33 U.S.C. 1251-1387 § 420

1 Puerto Rico, the Trust Territories and Wake Island). EPA directly administers NPDES  
2 permitting in states without approved State NPDES Permit Programs. The only  
3 unapproved states with estuaries (disregarding the trusts and territories) are the District of  
4 Columbia, Massachusetts, and New Hampshire. As of 1987, NPDES permits were also  
5 required for some stormwater discharges, beginning with larger urbanized entities and  
6 recently extending to some medium-sized units of government that own or operate  
7 municipal stormwater discharge facilities.

8  
9 Although the content, style, and length of any given NPDES permit for point-source  
10 discharge will be slightly different depending on where and when it is written, all permits  
11 contain certain core components mandated by the Clean Water Act, including testing,  
12 monitoring, and self reporting. NPDES permits are renewed every five years, and  
13 monitoring and/or reporting requirements may change. These changes are determined by  
14 the local Regional Water Quality Control Boards or the State Water Resources Control  
15 Board through their research and monitoring efforts.

16  
17 In addition to traditional NPDES permitting for point sources, states are required by the  
18 Clean Water Act of 1972 (modified in 1977, 1981, and 1987) to manage and protect  
19 water quality on a basin-wide scale. This involves assessing the assimilative capacity of  
20 the water body for wastes of various sorts and managing loads from all sources to prevent  
21 water quality violations in any of the key water quality standards used to indicate  
22 degradation. The inputs of most concern for estuaries are nutrient loading, sedimentation,  
23 BOD, and fecal coliform bacteria. EPA has developed several technical guidance  
24 manuals to assist the states in their basin-wide planning, including those for nutrients,  
25 sediments, and biocriteria of estuarine health. When chronic water quality violations  
26 persist, then TMDLs (total maximum daily loads) are mandated by EPA and must be  
27 developed to cap loading and restore water quality. TMDLs are also now triggered by  
28 inclusion of any water body on the 304(d) list of impaired waters, which the states are  
29 obligated to provide annually to EPA. In the 2000s, EPA has expanded the scope of the  
30 NPDES program to include permits for municipal stormwater discharges, thereby  
31 bringing a traditionally non-point source of water pollution under the NPDES permitting  
32 program. Non-point sources must also be considered in any basin-wide plans, including  
33 establishment of TMDLs and allocation of loads among constituent sources to achieve  
34 the necessary loading caps. Climate change has great potential to influence the success of  
35 basin-wide water quality management and the effectiveness of TMDLs through possible  
36 changes in rainfall amounts and patterns, flooding effects, stratification of waters, salt  
37 penetration and intrusion, and acidification.

### 38 **7.3.3.2 Habitat Conservation under Federal (Essential Fish Habitat) and State Fishery** 39 **Management Plans**

40 As administered under NOAA, the Magnuson Fishery Conservation and Management  
41 Act of 1976 (amended as the Sustainable Fisheries Act (SFA) in 1996<sup>9</sup> and reauthorized  
42 as Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Reauthorization Act

---

<sup>9</sup> P.L. 94-265

1 (MSA) of 2006<sup>10</sup> established eight regional fishery management councils that are  
2 responsible for managing fishery resources within the federal 200-mile zone bordering  
3 coastal states. Management is implemented through the establishment and regulation of  
4 Fishery Management Plans (FMPs). In addition to “conservation and management of the  
5 fishery resources of the United States...to prevent overfishing, rebuild overfished stocks  
6 and insure conservation,” the Act also mandates the facilitation of long-term protection of  
7 *essential fish habitats*, which are defined as “those waters and substrate necessary to fish  
8 for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity.” The Act states “One of the  
9 greatest long-term threats to the viability of commercial and recreational fisheries is the  
10 continuing loss of marine, estuarine, and other aquatic habitats.” It emphasizes that  
11 habitat considerations “should receive increased attention for the conservation and  
12 management of fishery resources of the United States” and “to promote the protection of  
13 essential fish habitat in the review of projects conducted under Federal permits, licenses,  
14 or other authorities that affect or have the potential to affect such habitat.”

15  
16 FMPs prepared by the councils (or by the Secretary of Commerce/NOAA) must describe  
17 and identify essential fish habitat to minimize adverse effects on such habitat caused by  
18 fishing. In addition, they must identify other actions to encourage the conservation and  
19 enhancement of essential fish habitat, and include management measures in the plan to  
20 conserve habitats, “considering the variety of ecological factors affecting fishery  
21 populations.”<sup>2</sup>

22  
23 Because managed species use a variety of estuarine/coastal habitats throughout their life  
24 histories, few are considered to be “dependent” on a single, specific habitat type (except,  
25 for example, larger juvenile and adult snappers and groupers on ocean hard bottoms) or  
26 region. As a result, federal FMPs do not comprehensively cover species’ habitats that are  
27 not specifically targeted within their region. In addition, the only estuarine-dependent fish  
28 stocks under federal management authority are migratory stocks, such as red drum and  
29 shrimp, so estuarine habitats are not a key focus for essential fish habitat. However, many  
30 states also have FMPs in place or in preparation for target fisheries under their  
31 jurisdiction (the non-migratory inshore species) and participate with the regional councils  
32 under the SFA/MSA.

33  
34 Thus, threats to marshes and other estuarine systems that constitute essential fish habitat  
35 or state-protected fisheries habitat should include all potential stressors, whether natural  
36 or anthropogenic, such as climate change and sea level rise. Although essential fish  
37 habitats have been codified for many fisheries, and science and management studies have  
38 focused on the status and trends of fisheries-habitat interactions, most management  
39 consideration has targeted stresses caused by different types of fishing gear. Because few  
40 fisheries take place in emergent marshes, the essential fish habitat efforts have not  
41 provided much protection to this important habitat. Seagrass and oyster reef habitats have  
42 been targeted for additional management concern because of the federal essential fish  
43 habitat provisions. State protections of fishery habitat vary, but generally include salt  
44 marsh and other habitats. Nearly two decades ago, EPA projected extensive loss of  
45 coastal marshes and wetlands from sea level rise by 2100, with an elimination of 6,441

---

<sup>10</sup> P.L. 109-479

1 square miles (65%) of marshes in the continental United States associated with a  
2 probable rise of 1m (Park *et al.*, 1989).

### 3 **7.3.3.3 Estuarine Ecosystem Restoration Programs**

4 While comprehensive planning of coastal restoration is inconsistent at the national level,  
5 a number of national, regional, and local programs are coordinated to the extent that  
6 stressors are either the target of restoration or addressed as constraints to restoration.  
7 These programs tend to be oriented toward rehabilitation of injuries done by individual  
8 stressors, such as eutrophication or contaminants, or toward restoration of ecosystems  
9 that have not been so extensively modified that their loss or degradation is not  
10 irreversible. Federal programs that authorize restoration of estuaries include:

11

#### 12 **Estuary Restoration Act of 2000 (P.L. 106-457, Title I)**

13 Probably the most prominent federal program that involves non-regulatory restoration in  
14 the nation's estuaries is the Estuary Restoration Act of 2000 (ERA). The ERA promotes  
15 estuarine habitat restoration through coordinating federal and non-federal restoration  
16 activities and more efficient financing of restoration projects. It authorizes a program  
17 under which the Secretary of the Army, through the Corps of Engineers (USACE), may  
18 carry out projects and provide technical assistance to meet the restoration goal. The  
19 purpose of the Act is to promote the restoration of estuarine habitat; to develop a national  
20 Estuary Habitat Restoration Strategy for creating and maintaining effective partnerships  
21 within the federal government and with the private sector; to provide federal assistance  
22 for and promote efficient financing of estuary habitat restoration projects; and to develop  
23 and enhance monitoring, data sharing, and research capabilities. Guidance provided by an  
24 Estuary Habitat Restoration Council, consisting of representatives of NOAA, EPA,  
25 USFWS, and USACE, includes soliciting, evaluating, reviewing, and recommending  
26 project proposals for funding; developing the national strategy; reviewing the  
27 effectiveness of the strategy; and providing advice on development of databases,  
28 monitoring standards, and reports required under the Act. The Interagency Council  
29 implementing the ERA published a strategy in December of 2002 with the goal of  
30 restoring one million acres of estuarine habitat by the year 2010. Progress toward the goal  
31 is being tracked via NOAA's National Estuaries Restoration Inventory.

32

33 Although the guiding principles that contributed to the development of this legislation  
34 argued for the "need to learn more about the effects of sea level rise, sedimentation, and a  
35 host of other variables to help set appropriate goals and success indicators for restoration  
36 projects in their dynamic natural environments," climate change is not explicitly  
37 addressed in the ERA. Similarly, the Council's Estuarine Habitat Restoration Strategy,  
38 published in 2002, neglects to explicitly mention climate change or sea level rise.

39

#### 40 **National Estuary Program and National Monitoring Program (EPA)**

41 The National Estuary Program (NEP), administered under Section 320 of the 1987  
42 amended Clean Water Act, focuses on point- and non-point source pollution in targeted,  
43 high-priority estuarine waters. Under the NEP, EPA assists state, regional, and local  
44 governments, landowners, and community organizations in developing a Comprehensive  
45 Conservation and Management Plan (CCMP) for each estuary. The CCMP characterizes

1 the resources in the watershed and estuary and identifies specific actions to restore water  
2 quality, habitats, and other designated beneficial uses. Each of the 28 national estuaries  
3 has developed a CCMP to meet the goals of Section 320. Because the primary goal of the  
4 NEP is maintenance or restoration of water quality in estuaries, the CCMPs tend to focus  
5 on source control or treatment of pollution. NEP tracks estuarine habitat restoration and  
6 protection, with annual updates using information provided by the constituent national  
7 estuaries.<sup>7</sup> While climate change is not considered a direct stressor, it is gradually being  
8 addressed in individual CCMPs in the context of potential increased nutrient loading  
9 from watersheds under future increased precipitation. For instance, the Hudson River  
10 Estuary Program has initiated with other partners an ongoing dialogue about how climate  
11 change constitutes a future stressor of concern to the estuary and its communities.<sup>11</sup> The  
12 Puget Sound and Sarasota Bay Estuary Programs have been the most proactive relative to  
13 anticipating a range of climate change challenges, although their assessments have been  
14 completed only recently.

#### 15 **7.3.3.4 National Coastal Zone Management Act and its Authorized State Programs**

16 The federal Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (CZMA) provides grants to states to  
17 develop and implement federally approved coastal zone management plans. Approval of  
18 the state plan then allows that state to participate in reviews of federal actions and  
19 determine whether they are consistent with the approved state plan. In addition, CZMA  
20 authorized establishment of the National Estuarine Research Reserve System (NERRS).  
21 Individual states have responded by creating various governmental structures, legislation,  
22 commissions, and processes for developing and implementing the coastal planning  
23 process. Planning extends down to the local level as local communities take  
24 responsibility for local Land Use Plans, which are then reviewed for approval by the state  
25 authority. Thus, this process has substantial capacity for responding to and adapting to  
26 climate change. CZMA explicitly identifies planning for climate change as one of its  
27 mandates: “Because global warming may result in a substantial sea level rise with serious  
28 adverse effects in the coastal zone, coastal states must anticipate and plan for such an  
29 occurrence.”<sup>12</sup> The act calls for balancing of the many uses of the coastal zone with  
30 protection of natural resources.

31  
32 The Coastal States Organization, an organization established in 1970 to represent the  
33 governors of the 35 coastal states, commonwealths, and territories on policy issues  
34 related to management of coastal and ocean resources, released a recent report reviewing  
35 how the states are using their Coastal Program under the CZMA to anticipate climate  
36 change and practice adaptive management.<sup>13</sup> This report identifies the very same suite of  
37 climate change impacts that we emphasize and address here. The report used surveys, to  
38 which 18 state programs responded, to develop information on how the state Coastal  
39 Management Programs are currently addressing climate change and the new challenges

---

<sup>11</sup> **New York State Department of Environmental Conservation**, 2006: Hudson Valley climate change conference, December 4, 2006. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, <http://www.dec.state.ny.us/website/hudson/hvcc.html>, accessed on 3-23-2007.

<sup>12</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1451-1456 P.L. 92-583

<sup>13</sup> **CSO Climate Change Work Group**, 2007: *The Role of Coastal Zone Management Programs in Adaptation to Climate Change*. Coastal States Organization.



1 posed by accelerating rates of sea level rise, enhanced frequencies of intense storms, and  
2 rainfall and flood risk changes.<sup>13</sup> Several states are actively examining climate change  
3 impacts to their coastal zone planning, often through interagency commissions. New  
4 policies are being considered and developed in response to rising rates of sea level rise  
5 and enhanced storm and flood risk to reconsider siting of public infrastructure, site-level  
6 project planning, wetland conservation and restoration, shoreline building setbacks,  
7 building elevations, and alternatives to shoreline “armoring” to counteract erosion.

8  
9 The NOAA NERRS Program authorized by CZMA now includes 27 constituent estuaries  
10 from around the country. This program uses a local grassroots process to help monitor  
11 and create public awareness of the resources, threats, and values of constituent estuaries.  
12 Clearly, the goals of NERRS are compatible with the goals of the National Estuary  
13 Program and CZMA, implying need for cross-agency and federal-state partnerships to  
14 develop integrated management adaptations to climate change.

15 **7.3.3.5 State Sedimentation and Erosion Control, Shoreline Buffers, and Other Shoreline**  
16 **Management Programs Involving Public Trust Management of Tidelands and**  
17 **Submerged Lands**

18 Protection from shoreline erosion has a long legal history, as far back as the tenets of  
19 property law established under the court of Roman Emperor Justinian.<sup>14</sup> In general,  
20 property law protection of tidelands held in public trust (most of the U.S. coastline) is  
21 conveyed either as the *law of erosion* (public ownership migrates inland when shores  
22 erode) or the *public trust doctrine* (the state holds tidelands in trust for the people unless  
23 it decides otherwise). Shoreline planners in many states (*e.g.*, Texas, Rhode Island, South  
24 Carolina, and Massachusetts) use these laws to plan for natural shoreline dynamics,  
25 including policies and tools such as “rolling easements” (*i.e.*, as the sea rises, the public’s  
26 easement “rolls” inland; owners are obligated to remove structures if and when they are  
27 threatened by an advancing shoreline), setbacks (*i.e.*, prohibitions against development of  
28 certain areas at a set distance from the shoreward property line), prohibition of future  
29 shoreline armoring, and direct purchase of land that will allow wetlands or beaches to  
30 shift naturally (IPCC, 2001).<sup>14</sup> Some states are beginning to prohibit new structures in  
31 areas likely to be eroded in the next 30–60 years (*e.g.*, North Carolina through its Coastal  
32 Resources Commission).

33 **7.3.3.6 Species Recovery under Federal Endangered Species Act**

34 Recovery plans for aquatic species that are threatened or endangered under the  
35 Endangered Species Act (ESA)<sup>15</sup> may be contingent on implicit assumptions about  
36 habitat conditions in the coastal zone. However, explicit accounting for impacts and  
37 strategic designing of recovery efforts to consider climate variability and change is rare.  
38 A recent analysis of current ESA recovery plans indicates that of 101 plans that mention  
39 climate change, global warming, or related terms, only 60 actually discuss these topics,  
40 and only 47 identify climate change or its effects as a threat, possible threat, or factor in

---

<sup>14</sup> **Spyres, J.**, 1999: Rising tide: global warming accelerates coastal erosion. Erosion Control, [http://www.forester.net/ec\\_9909\\_rising\\_tide.html](http://www.forester.net/ec_9909_rising_tide.html), accessed on 3-22-2007.

<sup>15</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1531-1544, 87 Stat. 884

1 the species' decline.<sup>16</sup> Strategies and approaches that specifically address climate include  
2 monitoring for metapopulation variability that could link climate variation to  
3 extinction/recolonization probabilities or to unpredictable changes in existing or proposed  
4 future habitat. For example, the NOAA recovery plan for the Hawaiian monk seal  
5 (*Monachus schauinslandi*) suggests that habitat loss that has already been observed could  
6 be exacerbated by "...sea level rise over the longer term [that] may threaten a large  
7 portion of the resting and pupping habitat..." (National Marine Fisheries Service, 2006).

8  
9 Climate variability and change will undoubtedly involve an even more consequential  
10 response by diadromous fishes and macroinvertebrates that require extensive, high-  
11 quality juvenile or adult transitional habitats during migrations between ocean and  
12 estuarine or freshwater aquatic systems. For example, in the Pacific Northwest and  
13 Alaska, sea level rise and shifts in timing and magnitude of snowmelt-derived riverine  
14 runoff may be particularly exacerbated by climate variability and change. Consequently,  
15 the recovery plans for threatened or endangered Pacific salmon (e.g., juvenile, "ocean-  
16 type" Chinook [*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*] and summer chum [*O. keta*] salmon) may  
17 need to account for their extreme sensitivity to climate-induced changes in environmental  
18 conditions of their estuarine wetland habitats during different life stages of the fish.

### 19 **7.3.3.7 Wetland Protection Rules Requiring Avoidance, Minimization, and Mitigation for** 20 **Unavoidable Impacts**

21 Federal jurisdiction of waters of the United States began in 1899 with the Rivers and  
22 Harbors Act of 1899, and wetlands were included in that definition with the passing of  
23 the Clean Water Act of 1977 (CWA). This jurisdiction does not extend beyond the  
24 wetland/upland boundary. However, many state environmental laws, such as those of  
25 New York<sup>17</sup> and New Jersey, require permits for alterations in adjacent upland areas in  
26 addition to protecting the wetland itself. While not originally intended for the purpose of  
27 increasing climate change preparedness, many of these regulations could facilitate  
28 adaptation to sea level rise (Tartig *et al.*, 2000).

29  
30 The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers regulates dredging, the discharge of dredged or fill  
31 material, and construction of structures in waterways and wetlands through Section 404  
32 of the CWA,<sup>18</sup> the provisions of which have been amended progressively through 1987.  
33 Although not explicitly required within the language of the amended law, the CWA  
34 provides the Corps with the implicit authority to require that dredge or fill activities avoid  
35 or minimize wetland impacts (Committee on Mitigating Wetland Losses, National  
36 Research Council, 2001). The Corps and EPA developed criteria (Section 404(b)(1)  
37 guidelines) that over the years (latest, 1980) have defined mitigation as both  
38 minimization of wetland impacts and compensation for wetland losses. Thus, mitigation  
39 has been loosely interpreted to include a range of actions from wetland restoration and  
40 enhancement to creation of wetlands where they have never occurred. However, a 1990  
41 memorandum of agreement between the Corps and EPA established that mitigation must

---

<sup>16</sup> **Jimerfield, S., M. Waage, and W. Snape, 2007: Global Warming Threats and Conservation Actions in Endangered Species Recovery Plans: a Preliminary Analysis.** Center for Biological Diversity.

<sup>17</sup> **New York State, 1992: Tidal wetlands - land use regulations. 6 NYCRR Part 661.**

<sup>18</sup> Codified generally as 33 U.S.C. §1251; 1977.

1 be applied sequentially. In other words, an applicant must first avoid wetland impacts to  
2 the extent practicable, then minimize unavoidable impacts, and finally—only after these  
3 two options are reasonably rejected—compensate for any remaining impacts through  
4 restoration, enhancement, creation, or in exceptional cases, preservation (Committee on  
5 Mitigating Wetland Losses, National Research Council, 2001). The Corps now grants  
6 permits for shoreline development that include armoring of the present shoreline, which  
7 guarantees future loss of wetlands as sea level rises, thereby violating the requirement for  
8 mitigation in the application of this authority (Titus, 2000).

9 **7.3.3.8 Compensatory Restoration Requirements for Habitat and Natural Resource**  
10 **Injuries from Oil Spills or Discharges of Pollutants**

11 Federal legislation requires compensatory restoration of estuarine habitats and natural  
12 resources after environmental incidents such as spills of oil or other toxicants (*e.g.*,  
13 Fonseca, Julius, and Kenworthy, 2000). For example, the Oil Pollution Act of 1990  
14 specifies the procedures that federal agencies are required to follow to assess injury from  
15 pollution events and to conduct quantitatively matching restoration actions so the  
16 responsible parties replace the lost ecosystem services. Similar federal legislation, such as  
17 the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act, also  
18 specifies formation of natural resource trustees composed equally of state and federal  
19 agencies to oversee the injury assessments, pursue funding from the responsible  
20 party(ies) sufficient to achieve restoration, and then design and implement the restoration.  
21 The process of restoration typically involves rehabilitation of biogenic habitats such as  
22 salt marshes, seagrass beds, or oyster reefs. The modeling done to insure that the  
23 restoration will provide ecosystem services equal to the injuries may need to be modified  
24 to reflect impacts of climate change, because services from habitat restorations are  
25 assumed to extend for years and even decades in these computations.

26 **7.3.3.9 Federal Legislation Controlling Location of Ballast Water Release to Limit**  
27 **Introduction of Non-Indigenous Marine and Estuarine Species**

28 One of the more troubling implications of climate change for estuaries is the probability  
29 of expanded distributions of non-indigenous species with the potential of progressively  
30 warmer waters in temperate zones. Ballast water discharged from ships in harbors after  
31 transiting from foreign ports (and domestic estuaries with extensive species invasions,  
32 such as San Francisco Bay) is one of the major sources of aquatic nuisance species. The  
33 primary federal legislation regulating ballast water discharge of invasive species is the  
34 National Invasive Species Act of 1996, which required the Coast Guard to establish  
35 national voluntary ballast water management guidelines. Because of a lack of compliance  
36 under the initial nationwide self-policing program that began in 1998, the voluntary  
37 program became mandatory in 2004. All vessels equipped with ballast water tanks that  
38 enter or operate within U.S. waters must now adhere to a national mandatory ballast  
39 water management program and maintain a ballast water management plan. Ballast water  
40 discharge may fall under the scope of the Clean Water Act, which adjudication may  
41 resolve.

1 **7.3.3.10 Flood Zone Regulations**

2 Tidal flood surge plains will likely be the estuarine regions most susceptible to climate  
3 change forcings, with consequent effects on human infrastructure, especially as  
4 development pressures continue to increase along the nation’s coastal zone. Before the  
5 more recent projections of (higher) sea level rise rates, the Federal Emergency  
6 Management Agency (Federal Emergency Management Agency, 1991) estimated that  
7 existing development in the U.S. Coastal Zone would experience a 36%–58% increase in  
8 annual damages for a 0.3-meter rise in sea level, and a 102%–200% percent increase for a  
9 1-meter rise. While state and local governments regulate building and other human  
10 activities in existing flood hazard zones, FEMA provides planning assistance by  
11 designating Special Flood Hazard Areas and establishing federal flood insurance rates  
12 according to the risk level.

13 **7.3.3.11 Native American Treaty Rights**

14 More than 565 federally recognized governments of American Indian and other  
15 indigenous peoples of Alaska, Hawaii, and the Pacific and Caribbean islands carry unique  
16 status as “domestic dependent nations” through treaties, Executive Orders, tribal  
17 legislation, acts of Congress, and decisions of the federal courts (National Assessment  
18 Synthesis Team, 2000). While climate variability and change are likely to impinge on all  
19 of these tribal entities, the impacts will perhaps be most strongly felt on the large coastal  
20 Native reservations, which are integrally linked to tourism, human health, rights to water  
21 and other natural resources, subsistence economies, and cultural resources. While these  
22 Native peoples have persisted through thousands of years of changes in their local  
23 environment, including minor ice ages, externally driven climate change will likely be  
24 more disruptive of their long, intimate association with their environments. In some  
25 cases, climatic changes are already affecting Natives such as those in Alaska who are  
26 experiencing melting of permafrost and the dissolution of marginal sea ice, altering their  
27 traditional subsistence-based economies and culture.

28  
29 Where climate variability and change intersect with resource management of shared  
30 natural resources, Natives’ treaty status may provide them with additional responsibility  
31 and influence. For example, on the basis of the “Boldt II decision,” treaty tribes in  
32 Washington State have treaty-based environmental rights that make them legal  
33 participants in natural resource and environmental decision making, including salmon  
34 and shellfish habitat protection and restoration (Brown, 1993; 1994).

35 **7.3.4 Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change**

36 **7.3.4.1 Climate Change and Changing Stressors of Estuarine Ecosystems**

37 Many estuarine properties are expected to be altered by climate change. Global-scale  
38 modeling has rarely focused on explicit predictions for estuaries because realistic  
39 estuarine modeling would require very high spatial and temporal resolution. It is,  
40 however, reasonable to assume that estuaries will be affected by the same climate forcing  
41 that affects the coastal and marginal oceans. With increases in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>, models  
42 project increases in oceanic temperature and stratification, decreases in convective

1 overturning, decreases in salinity in mid- and high latitudes, longer growing seasons in  
2 mid- and high latitudes, and increases in cloud cover (Table 7.2). Such changes will  
3 necessarily force significant alterations in the physics, chemistry, and biology of  
4 estuaries. In particular, climate change may have significant impacts on those factors that  
5 are included in the definition of an estuary (Box 7.2). For example, climate-driven  
6 alterations to geomorphology will affect every physical, chemical, biological, and social  
7 function of estuaries.

8  
9 The 2007 report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC, 2007)  
10 summarizes the results of multiple credible models of climate change, providing various  
11 ranges of estimated change by year 2100. Whereas these projections carry varying  
12 degrees of uncertainty, and in some cases fail to include processes of likely significance  
13 in the modeling due to high scientific uncertainty, these projections of rates of change  
14 over the next century help ground our scenario building for consequences of climate  
15 change on estuarine dynamics and on ability to attain management goals. The best  
16 estimates of average global temperature rise in the surface atmosphere vary from a low  
17 scenario of 1.1–2.9°C and a high scenario of 2.4–6.4°C by 2100. Scenarios of sea level  
18 rise range from a low projection of 0.18–0.38 meters to a high projection of 0.26–0.59  
19 meters by 2100. The modeled sea level does not, however, include enhanced  
20 contributions from shifts of the Greenland and Antarctic ice shelves and could therefore  
21 be a serious underestimate. The future temperatures projected for Greenland reach levels  
22 inferred to have existed in the last interglacial period 125,000 years ago, when  
23 paleoclimate information suggests reductions of polar ice extent and a 4–6-meter rise in  
24 sea level. The IPCC projects growing acidification of the ocean, with reductions in pH of  
25 between 0.14 and 0.35 units over the next century. In our report, so as to standardize our  
26 framework for climate change across responses, we discuss a short term of two to three  
27 decades, and also project the consequences of a 1-meter rise in sea level. This increase  
28 may not occur within the next century, but if ice sheet shifts add to the present rate of sea  
29 level rise, a 1-meter increase may occur sooner than the IPCC projects.

30  
31 Climate change may also modify existing stressors (described in Section 7.2.2) and create  
32 new ones not discussed above. For example, the nutrient, sediment, pathogen, and  
33 contaminant stressors usually carried downstream with freshwater runoff will change in  
34 proportion to that runoff. If runoff increases, it can be expected to deliver more  
35 deleterious material to estuaries, leading to increased eutrophication via nutrients,  
36 smothering of benthic fauna via sediment loading, decreased photosynthesis via sediment  
37 turbidity, decreased health and reproductive success via a wide spectrum of toxins, and  
38 increased disease via pathogens. In contrast, “novel” stressors created by climate change  
39 include increased temperatures, shifts in the timing of seasonal warming and cooling, and  
40 the acidification caused by increased CO<sub>2</sub> (Box 7.3). The most important emerging and  
41 enhanced stressors related to climate change have largely negative consequences for the  
42 ecosystem services and management goals of the Nation’s estuaries (Table 7.3).

43  
44 Importantly, there are likely to be interactions among existing and novel stressors,  
45 between those factors that define estuaries and stressors, and between stressors and  
46 existing management strategies. As noted above (Section 7.2.2), interactions among the

1 multiple stressors related to climate change are likely to pose considerable challenges.  
2 Nonetheless, it is important for successful natural resource management and conservation  
3 that managers, researchers, and policy makers consider the myriad stressors to which  
4 natural systems are exposed. Importantly, interactions among multiple stressors can  
5 change not only the magnitude of stressor effects, but also the patterns of variability and  
6 predictability on which management strategies rely (Breitburg *et al.*, 1998; Breitburg *et al.*  
7 *et al.*, 1999; Vinebrooke *et al.*, 2004; Worm *et al.*, 2006). Enhancing ecosystem resilience  
8 by establishing better controls on current stressors would limit the strength of interactions  
9 with climate change.

#### 10 **7.3.4.2 Impacts to and Responses of the Ecosystem**

##### 11 **7.3.4.2.1 Temperature Effects on Species Distributions**

12 Because species distributions are determined in part by physiological tolerances of  
13 climatic extremes, ecologists expect that species will respond to climate warming by  
14 shifting distributions towards the poles—so long as dispersal and resources allow such  
15 shifts (Walther *et al.*, 2002). In fact, a wide array of species is already responding to  
16 climate warming worldwide (Walther *et al.*, 2002; Parmesan and Yohe, 2003; Root *et al.*,  
17 2003; Parmesan and Galbraith, 2004; Parmesan, 2006). Global meta-analyses of 99  
18 species of birds, butterflies, and alpine herbs demonstrate that terrestrial species are  
19 migrating poleward at a rate of 6.1 km per decade (Parmesan and Yohe, 2003).  
20 Moreover, 81% of 920 species from a variety of habitats showed distributional changes  
21 consistent with recent climate warming (Parmesan and Yohe, 2003). In marine systems,  
22 warm water species of zooplankton, intertidal invertebrates, and fish have migrated into  
23 areas previously too “cool” to support growth (Barry *et al.*, 1995; Southward, Hawkins,  
24 and Burrows, 1995; Walther *et al.*, 2002; Southward *et al.*, 2004). Some copepod species  
25 have shifted hundreds to 1,000 kilometers northward (Beaugrand *et al.*, 2002), and the  
26 range of the oyster parasite *Perkinsus marinus* expands in warm years and contracts in  
27 response to cold winters (Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006). Its range expanded 500  
28 kilometers from Chesapeake Bay to Maine during one year—1991—in response to  
29 above-average winter temperatures (Ford, 1996) .

30  
31 It is important to keep in mind that each species responds individualistically to warming:  
32 ecological communities do not move poleward as a unit (Parmesan and Yohe, 2003;  
33 Parmesan, 2006). This pattern was first demonstrated by paleoecological studies tracking  
34 the poleward expansions of individual species of plants following Pleistocene glaciation  
35 (*e.g.*, Davis, 1983; Guenette, Lauck, and Clark, 1998) and has since been extended to  
36 animals in phylogeographic studies (*e.g.*, Turgeon *et al.*, 2005). Climate warming is  
37 therefore likely to create new mixes of foundation species, predators, prey, and  
38 competitors. For example, “invading” species may move poleward faster than “resident”  
39 species retreat, potentially creating short-term increases in species richness (Walther *et al.*  
40 *et al.*, 2002). Competitive, plant-herbivore, predator-prey, and parasite-host interactions can  
41 be disrupted by shifts in the distribution, abundance, or phenology of one or more of the  
42 interacting species (Walther *et al.*, 2002; Parmesan, 2006). Not surprisingly, therefore, it  
43 is difficult, if not impossible, to predict how community dynamics and ecosystem  
44 functioning will change in response to species shifts (Walther *et al.*, 2002).  
45

1 Evidence from studies that have monitored changes in marine biota over the last three  
2 decades has shown that in coastal waters, the response of annual temperature cycles to  
3 climate change is both seasonally and regionally asymmetric. Along the mid-Atlantic  
4 East Coast, maximal summer temperatures are close to 30°C. When greenhouse gas  
5 forcing provides more heat to the surface waters in summer, they do not get warmer;  
6 instead the additional heat increases evaporation and is transferred to the atmosphere as a  
7 latent heat flux. Consequently maximum summer temperatures have not changed in the  
8 mid-Atlantic regions, but the minimum winter temperatures are now dramatically higher,  
9 by as much as 1–6°C (Parker Jr. and Dixon, 1998). In the reef fish community off North  
10 Carolina, the reduction over 30 years in winter kill during the coldest months made it  
11 possible for two new (to the area) families and 29 new species of tropical fishes to  
12 become permanent residents on the reef (Parker Jr. and Dixon, 1998). In addition, the 28  
13 species of tropical reef fishes that have been present on the site for the entire three  
14 decades increased in abundance. An increase in fish-cleaning symbiosis was especially  
15 noticeable. Over the 30-year study period, no new temperate species became permanent  
16 residents and, while no temperate species dropped out of the community, the temperate  
17 species that was most abundant at the start of the study decreased in abundance by a  
18 factor of 22. This kind of seasonal asymmetry in temperature change expands the range  
19 of tropical species to the north, but so far has not changed the southern limit of temperate  
20 species—although it has reduced the biomass of temperate species that were previously  
21 abundant.

22  
23 On the West Coast, changes in the species composition of a rocky intertidal community  
24 showed that between the 1930s and 1990s most species' ranges shifted poleward (Barry  
25 *et al.*, 1995). The abundance of eight of nine southern species increased and the  
26 abundance of five of eight northern species decreased. Annual mean ocean temperatures  
27 at the central California coastal site increased by 0.75°C during the past 60 years, but  
28 more importantly the monthly mean maximum temperatures during the warmest month  
29 of year were 2.2°C warmer. On the West Coast, summer conditions are relatively cool  
30 and foggy due to strong coastal upwelling that produces water temperatures from 15–  
31 20°C. For intertidal organisms adapted to these relatively cool summer temperatures, a  
32 2°C increase in monthly mean temperature during the warmest month of the year was  
33 enough to decrease survival of northern species and increase the survival of southern  
34 species. It is clear that climate change has already altered the species composition and  
35 abundance of marine fauna, but is equally clear that the physical and biological response  
36 of organisms to warming in marine waters is extremely complex.

37  
38 These effects of temperature on species distributions have influenced and will continue to  
39 influence fish and wildlife populations, and will modify habitat provided by organisms  
40 such as mangroves, requiring many site-specific adaptive modifications in management.

#### 41 **7.3.4.2.2 Temperature Effects on Risks of Disease and Parasitism**

42 Not only will species' distributions change, but scientists expect that higher temperatures  
43 are likely to lead to increased risks of parasitism and disease, due to changes in parasites  
44 and pathogens as well as host responses (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Hakalahti, Karvonen, and  
45 Valtonen, 2006). For example, temperature has the potential to alter parasite survival and  
46 development rates (Harvell *et al.*, 2002), geographic ranges (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Poulin,

1 2005; Parmesan, 2006), transmission among hosts (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Poulin, 2005),  
2 and local abundances (Poulin, 2005). In particular, shortened or less-severe winters are  
3 expected to increase potential parasite population growth rates (Hakalahti, Karvonen, and  
4 Valtonen, 2006). On the host side, higher temperatures can alter host susceptibility  
5 (Harvell *et al.*, 2002) by compromising physiological functioning and host immunity  
6 (Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006). Animals engaged in partnerships with obligate algal  
7 symbionts, such as anemones, sponges, and corals, are at particular risk for problems if  
8 temperatures alter the relationship between partners (Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006).

9  
10 Reports of marine diseases in corals, turtles, mollusks, marine mammals, and  
11 echinoderms have increased sharply over the past three decades, especially in the  
12 Caribbean (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Ward and Lafferty, 2004). For example, temperature-  
13 dependent growth of opportunistic microbes has been documented in corals (Ritchie,  
14 2006). Poulin and Mouritsen (2006) documented a striking increase in cercarial  
15 production by trematodes in response to increased temperature, with potentially large  
16 effects on the intertidal community (Poulin and Mouritsen, 2006). Geographic range  
17 expansion of pathogens with broad host ranges is of particular concern because of the  
18 potential to affect a broad array of host species (Dobson and Fofopoulos, 2001; Lafferty  
19 and Gerber, 2002).

20  
21 Importantly, however, we cannot predict the effects of climate change on disease and  
22 parasitism based solely on temperature (Lafferty, Porter, and Ford, 2004). Temperature is  
23 likely to interact with a variety of other stressors to affect parasitism and disease rates  
24 (Lafferty, Porter, and Ford, 2004), including excess nutrients (Harvell *et al.*, 2004),  
25 chemical pollutants such as metals and organochlorines (Harvell *et al.*, 2004; Mydlarz,  
26 Jones, and Harvell, 2006), and hypoxia (Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006). For  
27 example, the 2002 die-off of corals and sponges in Florida Bay co-occurred with a red  
28 tide (*Karenia brevis*) driven by high nutrient conditions (Harvell *et al.*, 2004). Moreover,  
29 not all parasites will respond positively to increased temperature; some may decline  
30 (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Roy, Guesewell, and Harte, 2004) and others may be kept in check  
31 by other factors (Harvell *et al.*, 2002; Hall *et al.*, 2006). This suggests that generalizations  
32 may not always be possible; idiosyncratic species responses may require that we consider  
33 effects on a species-by-species, or place-by-place basis, as with the species distributions  
34 discussed earlier.

35  
36 Such changes in risk of parasitism and disease will influence populations of fish and  
37 wildlife, and can affect habitat that is provided by organisms like corals, thereby affecting  
38 management.

#### 39 **7.3.4.2.3 Effects of Shoreline Stabilization on Estuaries and their Services**

40 Estuarine shorelines along much of the U.S. coast have been affected by human activities.  
41 These activities have exacerbated both water- and land-based stressors on the estuarine  
42 land-water interface. Real and perceived threats from global sea level rise, increased  
43 intensity of tropical storms, waves from boat wakes, and changes in delivery of and  
44 erosion by stream flows have contributed to greater numbers of actions taken to stabilize  
45 estuarine shorelines using a variety of techniques. Shoreline stabilization can affect the  
46 physical (bathymetry, wave environment, light regime, sediment dynamics) and



1 ecological (habitat, primary production, food web support, filtration capacity) attributes  
2 of the land-water interface in estuaries. Collectively, these physical and ecological  
3 attributes determine the degree to which ecosystem services are delivered by these  
4 systems (Levin *et al.*, 2001). Shoreline stabilization on the estuarine shoreline has only  
5 recently begun to receive significant attention (Committee on Mitigating Shore Erosion  
6 along Sheltered Coasts, National Research Council, 2006).

7  
8 Surprisingly little is known about the effects of estuarine shoreline stabilization structures  
9 on adjacent habitats (Committee on Mitigating Shore Erosion along Sheltered Coasts,  
10 National Research Council, 2006). Marsh communities at similar elevations with and  
11 without bulkheads behind them were found to be indistinguishable in a study in Great  
12 Bay Estuary in New Hampshire (Bozek and Burdick, 2005). However, this study also  
13 reported that bulkheads eliminated the up-slope vegetative transition zone. This loss is  
14 relevant for both current function of the marsh and also future ability of the marsh to  
15 respond to rising sea level. In several systems within Chesapeake Bay, Seitz and  
16 colleagues (2006) identified a link between the hardening of estuarine shorelines with  
17 bulkheads or rip-rap and the presence of infaunal prey and predators. This study  
18 illustrated the indirect effects that can result from shoreline stabilization, and found them  
19 to be on par with some of the obvious direct effects. Loss of ecological function in the  
20 estuarine land-water margin as a result of shoreline stabilization is a critical concern.  
21 However, the complete loss of the structured habitats (SAV, salt marsh) seaward of  
22 shoreline stabilization structures as sea level rises is a more dire threat. In addition, the  
23 intertidal sand and mud flats, which provide important foraging grounds for shorebirds  
24 and nektonic fishes and crustaceans, will be readily eliminated as sea level rises and  
25 bulkheads and other engineered shoreline stabilization structures prevent the landward  
26 migration of the shoreline habitats. Absent the ability to migrate landward, even habitats  
27 such as marshes, which can induce accretion by organic production and sediment  
28 trapping, appear to have reduced opportunity to sustain themselves as water level rises  
29 (Titus, 1998).

30  
31 These effects of shoreline stabilization interacting with sea level rise will influence salt  
32 marsh and other intertidal and shallow-water estuarine habitats, with consequences for  
33 water quality, fish and wildlife production, and human values, inducing need for  
34 management adaptation.

#### 35 **7.3.4.2.4 Effects of Climate Change on Marsh Trapping of Sediments and** 36 **Geomorphologic Resiliency**

37 Coastal wetlands have been relatively sustained, and even expanded, under historic  
38 eustatic sea level rise. Marsh surfaces naturally subside due to soil compaction, other  
39 geologic (subsidence) processes, and anthropogenic extraction of fluids such as  
40 groundwater and oil. However, marsh surfaces (marsh plain) also build vertically due to  
41 the combined effect of surface sediment deposition and subsurface accumulation of live  
42 and dead plant roots and decaying plant roots and rhizomes. Both of these processes are  
43 controlled by tidal-fluvial hydrology that controls delivery of sediments, nutrients, and  
44 organic matter to the marsh, as well as the oxygen content of the soil. Local landscape  
45 setting (wave energy) and disturbance regime (storm frequency and intensity) are also  
46 factors over the long term. Thus, the relative sea level (the simultaneous effect of eustatic

1 sea level rise and local marsh subsidence) can be relatively stable under a moderate rate  
2 of sea level rise, because marsh elevation increases at the same rate as the sea level is  
3 rising (*e.g.*, Reed, 1995; Callaway, Nyman, and DeLaune, 1996; Morris *et al.*, 2002).  
4 Whether a marsh can maintain this equilibrium with mean sea level and sustain  
5 characteristic vegetation and associated attributes and functions is uncertain. It will  
6 depend on the interaction of complex factors, including sediment pore space, mineral  
7 matter deposition, initial elevation, rate of sea level rise, delivery rates of sediments in  
8 stream and tidal flows, and the production rate of below-ground organic matter (U.S.  
9 Climate Change Science Program, in press).

10  
11 Thus, changes in sediment and nutrient delivery and eustatic sea level rise are likely to be  
12 the key factors affecting geomorphic resiliency of coastal wetlands. Sediment delivery  
13 may be the critical factor: estuaries and coastal zones that currently have high rates of  
14 sediment loading, such as those on the southeast and northwest coasts, may be able to  
15 persist up to thresholds of 1.2 cm per year that are optimal for marsh primary production  
16 (Morris *et al.*, 2002). If sea level rise exceeds that rate, then marsh surface elevation  
17 decreases below the optimum for primary production. Increased precipitation and storm  
18 intensities commensurate with many future climate scenarios (*e.g.*, in the Pacific  
19 Northwest) would likely increase sediment delivery, but also would erode sediments  
20 where flows are intensified. The large-scale responses to changes in sediment delivery to  
21 estuarine and coastal marshes have not been effectively addressed by most hydrodynamic  
22 models incorporating sediment transport. SAP 4.1 elucidates potential impacts by  
23 providing maps depicting the wetland losses in the mid-Atlantic states that are anticipated  
24 under various rates of sea level rise (U.S. Climate Change Science Program, in press).  
25 Such changes in sediment and nutrient delivery to the estuary will threaten the  
26 geomorphologic resilience of salt marsh habitat, thereby altering water quality and fish  
27 and wildlife production; these changes imply the need for management adaptation.

#### 28 **7.3.4.2.5 Effects of Sea Level Rise and Storm Disturbance on Coastal Barrier** 29 **Deconstruction**

30 Two important consequences of climate change are accelerated sea level rise and  
31 increased frequency of high-intensity storms. Sea level rise and intense storms work  
32 alone and in combination to alter the hydrogeomorphology of coastal ecosystems and  
33 their resultant services. Furthermore, the extent to which they act on ecosystems is  
34 dependent on human alterations to these ecosystems. Perhaps the best known example of  
35 the current interaction of sea level rise, storm intensity, and human activity is the coast of  
36 the Gulf of Mexico around the Mississippi River. Relative sea level rise of the Louisiana  
37 coast is one of the highest in the world, in large part as a result of human activities, and  
38 this has caused significant losses of wetlands (Boesch *et al.*, 1994; González and  
39 Törnqvist, 2006; Day, Jr. *et al.*, 2007). The consequences of intense storms (*e.g.*,  
40 Hurricanes Katrina and Rita) on coastal ecosystems of the Gulf of Mexico, human-  
41 dominated and natural, are now legend (Kates *et al.*, 2006). New Orleans and other cities  
42 were devastated by these storms. Wetland loss was dramatic, with sharp alterations to  
43 community structure (Turner *et al.*, 2006).<sup>19</sup> Barrier islands were eroded, overwashed,

---

<sup>19</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 2007: Hurricanes Katrina and Rita. USGS,  
<http://www.nwrc.usgs.gov/hurricane/katrina.htm>, accessed on 3-23-2007.

1 and breached, with severe impacts to both human lives and infrastructure. The impacts of  
2 these storms are linked to the damaged conditions and decreased area of the wetlands and  
3 their historical loss (Day, Jr. *et al.*, 2007). Reconstruction of New Orleans and other  
4 affected cities has begun, and plans are being offered for the replenishment and  
5 protection of wetlands and barrier islands (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in press; Day,  
6 Jr. *et al.*, 2007; Coastal Protection and Restoration Authority of Louisiana, 2007).

7  
8 Although the impacts of the hurricanes of 2005 and the influence of relative sea level rise  
9 on their impacts were the most costly to the United States, they are not the only examples  
10 of how storms and sea level rise influence hydrogeomorphology. Sea level rise and  
11 erosion, fostered by storms, have caused estuarine islands to disappear and led to  
12 significant changes in shorelines (Hayden *et al.*, 1995; Riggs and Ames, 2003). Barrier  
13 island shape and position are dynamic, dependent on these two processes. These  
14 processes are natural and have occurred throughout the Holocene; what is relatively new  
15 are the ways in which human values are in conflict with these processes and how humans  
16 either promote or inhibit them.

17  
18 Wetlands can maintain themselves in the face of sea level rise by accretion. This  
19 accretion is supported by both sedimentation and organic matter accumulation (Chmura  
20 *et al.*, 2003). The ability to accrete makes it difficult to assess the true consequences of  
21 sea level rise on landscape pattern and resultant area of wetlands, especially over large  
22 areas (Titus and Richman, 2001). We do not know exactly the potential accretion and  
23 subsidence rates of most wetlands and the thresholds at which relative sea level rise  
24 exceeds net elevation change, causing increased inundation and ultimately wetland loss.  
25 Based on the experiences of Louisiana, we can estimate that the maximum accretion rate  
26 may be less than 10 mm per year, but applicability to other systems is undetermined. Two  
27 things are clear: First, the limits depend on the source of material for accretion (*i.e.*,  
28 sediment or organic matter) and hence the rates of processes that introduce and remove  
29 the materials. Second, the rates of these processes will differ with location both locally  
30 within the coastal landscape and regionally due to climate, community, and  
31 hydrogeomorphic conditions.

32  
33 Sea level rise and storm disturbance have not only severe consequences as described, but  
34 also are important drivers of the natural progression of coastal ecosystems. One can  
35 consider the coastal landscape as having a sequence of ecosystem states, each dependent  
36 upon a particular hydroperiod and tidal inundation regime (Brinson, Christian, and Blum,  
37 1995; Hayden *et al.*, 1995; Christian *et al.*, 2000). For example in the mid-Atlantic states,  
38 coastal upland, which is rarely flooded, would be replaced by high salt marsh as sea level  
39 rises. High marsh is replaced by low marsh, and low marsh is replaced by intertidal flats.  
40 While sea level rise alone may effect these changes in state, they are promoted by  
41 disturbances that either kill vegetation (*e.g.*, salt intrusion from storms killing trees) or  
42 change elevation and hence hydroperiod (*e.g.*, erosion of sediment). It is unclear how  
43 accelerated sea level rise and frequency of severe storms will alter the balance of this  
44 sequence.

45

1 Normally one considers that disturbances would be local, such as salt water intrusion or  
2 wrack deposition. But these state changes can actually result from regional impacts of  
3 disturbance. For example, *Juncus roemerianus* is a rush species commonly found in high  
4 marshes along the mid-Atlantic, southern Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico coasts of the  
5 United States. It is less common where astronomical tidal signals are strong (Woerner  
6 and Hackney, 1997; Brinson and Christian, 1999), and it is replaced by *Spartina*  
7 *alterniflora* or perhaps other species. Any disturbance that increases the strength of  
8 astronomical tides promotes this shift. Such a disturbance could be the breaching of  
9 barrier islands in which increased flow through new inlets may foster more dominant  
10 astronomical tides and the ecosystem state change. The projected disintegration of barrier  
11 islands as a consequence of intense storm damage acting from a higher base sea level has  
12 catastrophic implications (Riggs and Ames, 2003). Coastal barriers function to protect  
13 mainland shorelines from tidal energy, storm surge, and wave forces, such that loss of the  
14 protections implies catastrophic inundation, erosion, and loss of wetlands and other  
15 coastal habitats on mainland shores as well as back-barrier shores.

16  
17 Sea level rise and increased frequency of intense storms will influence salt marsh and  
18 other wetland habitats by erosion and salt water intrusion, thereby influencing fish and  
19 wildlife production, available quantity of fresh water, and provision of human values,  
20 with consequences for management.

#### 21 **7.3.4.2.6 Joint Effects of Increasing Temperature and Carbon Dioxide**

22 As a consequence of increasing global temperatures, the limits of climate-adapted  
23 habitats are expected to shift latitudinally. Temperate herbaceous species that dominate  
24 tidal wetlands throughout many southern U.S. estuaries may be replaced by more tropical  
25 species such as mangroves (Harris and Cropper Jr., 1992). Salt marshes and mangroves  
26 are not interchangeable, despite the fact that both provide structure to support productive  
27 ecosystems and perform many of the same ecosystem functions. Mangroves store up to  
28 80% of their biomass in woody tissue, whereas salt marshes lose 100% of their  
29 aboveground biomass through litterfall each year (Mitsch and Gosselink, 2000).  
30 Production of litter facilitates detrital foodwebs and supports many ecological processes  
31 in wetlands, so this distinction has implications for materials cycling such as carbon  
32 sequestration (Chmura *et al.*, 2003). There are significant differences in structural  
33 complexity and biological diversity between these wetland systems. These differences  
34 will affect the capacity of the wetlands to assimilate upland runoff, maintain their vertical  
35 position, and provide flood control. Temperature-driven species redistribution will be  
36 further complicated as sea level increases and vegetation is forced landward.

37  
38 Since pre-industrial times, the atmospheric concentration of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) has  
39 risen by 35% to 379 ppm in 2005 (IPCC, 2007). Ice cores have proven that this  
40 concentration is significantly greater than the natural range over the last 650,000 years  
41 (180–300 ppm). In addition, the annual average growth rate in CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations over  
42 the last 10 years is larger than the average growth rate since the beginning of continuous  
43 direct atmospheric measurements: an average of 1.9 ppm per year from 1995–2005  
44 compared with an average of 1.4 ppm per year from 1960–2005 (IPCC, 2007). Because  
45 CO<sub>2</sub> is required for photosynthesis, these changes may have implications for estuarine  
46 vegetation. Plants can be divided into two groups based on the way in which they

1 assimilate CO<sub>2</sub>. C3 plants include the vast majority of plants on earth (~95%) and C4  
2 plants, which include crop plants and some grasses, comprise most of the rest. Early in  
3 the process of CO<sub>2</sub> assimilation, C3 plants form a pair of three carbon molecules whereas  
4 C4 plants form four carbon molecules. The distinction between C3 and C4 species at  
5 higher atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations is that C3 species increase photosynthesis with  
6 higher CO<sub>2</sub> levels, while C4 species generally do not (Drake *et al.*, 1995). In wetland  
7 systems dominated by C3 plants (*e.g.*, mangroves, many tidal fresh marshes), elevated  
8 CO<sub>2</sub> will increase photosynthetic potential and may increase the related delivery of  
9 ecosystems services from these systems (Drake *et al.*, 2005). Ongoing research is  
10 examining the potential for shifts in wetland community composition driven by elevated  
11 CO<sub>2</sub>. Data from one of these efforts indicate that despite the advantage afforded to C3  
12 species at higher CO<sub>2</sub> levels, CO<sub>2</sub> increases alone are unlikely to cause black mangrove to  
13 replace cordgrass in Louisiana marshes.<sup>20</sup> However, many important estuarine ecosystem  
14 effects from elevated CO<sub>2</sub> levels have been documented, including increases in fluxes of  
15 CO<sub>2</sub> and methane (Marsh *et al.*, 2005), augmented nitrogen fixation by associated  
16 microbial communities (Dakora and Drake, 2000), increased methanogenesis (Dacey,  
17 Drake, and Klug, 1994) and changes in the quantity and composition of root material  
18 (Curtis *et al.*, 1990).

19  
20 The joint effects of rising temperature and increased CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations will influence  
21 composition and production of shoreline plants that are critical habitat providers and  
22 contributors to detrital food chains, thereby also affecting fish and wildlife production  
23 and provision of human values, and inducing need for management adaptations.

#### 24 **7.3.4.2.7 Effects of Increased CO<sub>2</sub> on Acidification of Estuaries**

25 Ocean acidification is the process of lowering the pH of the oceans by the uptake of CO<sub>2</sub>  
26 from the atmosphere. As atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> increases, more CO<sub>2</sub> is partitioned into the  
27 surface layer of the ocean (Feely *et al.*, 2004). Since the industrial revolution began to  
28 increase atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> significantly, the pH of ocean surface waters has decreased by  
29 about 0.1 units and it is estimated that it will decrease by another 0.3–0.4 units by 2100 as  
30 the atmospheric concentration continues to increase (Caldeira and Wickett, 2003). The  
31 resulting decrease in pH will affect all calcifying organisms because as pH decreases, the  
32 concentration of carbonate decreases, and when carbonate becomes under-saturated,  
33 structures made of calcium carbonate begin to dissolve. However, dissolution of existing  
34 biological calcium carbonate structures is only one aspect of the threat of acidification;  
35 another threat is that as pH falls and carbonate becomes undersaturated it requires more  
36 and more metabolic energy for an organism to deposit calcium carbonate. The present  
37 lowered pH is estimated to have reduced the growth of reef-building by about 20%  
38 (Raven, 2005). While corals get the most attention regarding acidification, a wide  
39 spectrum of ocean and estuarine organisms are affected, including coralline algae;  
40 echinoderms such as sea urchins, sand dollars, and starfish; as well as coccolithophores,  
41 foraminifera, crustaceans, and molluscan taxa with shells, of which pteropods are  
42 particularly important (Orr *et al.*, 2005). The full ecological consequences of the  
43 reduction in calcification by marine calcifiers are uncertain, but it is likely that the

---

<sup>20</sup> **U.S. Geological Survey**, 2006: Potential effects of elevated atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) on coastal wetlands. USGS, <http://www.nwrc.usgs.gov/factshts/2006-3074/2006-3074.htm>, accessed on 4-1-2006.

1 biological integrity of ocean and estuarine ecosystems will be seriously affected (Kleypas  
2 *et al.*, 2006).

3

4 Effects of climate change on estuarine acidification will influence water quality,  
5 provision of some biogenic habitat like coral reefs, fish and wildlife production, and  
6 human values, thus implying need for management adaptation.

#### 7 **7.3.4.2.8 Effects of Climate Change on Hypoxia**

8 Low dissolved oxygen (DO) is a problematic environmental condition observed in many  
9 U.S. estuaries (Bricker *et al.*, 1999). Although a natural summer feature in some systems,  
10 the frequency and extent of hypoxia have increased in Chesapeake Bay, Long Island  
11 Sound, the Neuse River Estuary, and the Gulf of Mexico over the past several decades  
12 (Cooper and Brush, 1993; Paerl *et al.*, 1998; Anderson and Taylor, 2001; Rabalais,  
13 Turner, and Scavia, 2002; Cooper *et al.*, 2004; Hagy *et al.*, 2004; Scavia, Kelly, and  
14 Hagy, 2006). Persistent bottom water hypoxia (*e.g.*, DO concentration < 2.0 mg per L)  
15 results from interactions among meteorology and climate, the amounts and temporal  
16 patterns of riverine inflows, estuarine circulation, and biogeochemical cycling of  
17 allochthonous and autochthonous organic matter (Kemp *et al.*, 1992; Boicourt, 1992;  
18 Buzzelli *et al.*, 2002; Conley *et al.*, 2002). Over time, the repeated bottom water hypoxia  
19 can alter biogeochemical cycling, trophic transfers, and estuarine production at higher  
20 trophic levels (Baird *et al.*, 2004). Ecological and economic consequences of fish kills,  
21 bottom habitat degradation, and reduced production at the highest trophic levels in  
22 response to low DO have provided significant motivation to understand and manage  
23 hypoxia (Tenore, 1970; Officer *et al.*, 1984; Turner, Schroeder, and Wiseman, 1987; Diaz  
24 and Rosenberg, 1995; Hagy *et al.*, 2004).

25

26 Various scenarios predict that climate change will influence the vulnerability of estuaries  
27 to hypoxia through changes in stratification caused by alterations in freshwater runoff,  
28 changes in water temperature, increases in sea level, and altered exchanges with the  
29 coastal ocean (Peterson *et al.*, 1995; Scavia *et al.*, 2002). Additionally, warmer  
30 temperatures should increase metabolism by the water-column and benthic microbial  
31 communities, whose activity drives the depletion of DO. Many of the factors that have  
32 been found to contribute to the formation of hypoxia (Borsuk *et al.*, 2001; Buzzelli *et al.*,  
33 2002) will be affected by one or more predicted changes in climate (Table 7.4). Because  
34 hypoxia affects valued resources, such as fish and wildlife production, reductions in  
35 hypoxia are a management target for many estuaries, and adaptations will be required as  
36 a consequence of climate change.

#### 37 **7.3.4.2.9 Effects of Changing Freshwater Delivery**

38 Climate change is predicted to affect the quality, rate, magnitude, and timing of the  
39 freshwater delivered to estuaries (Alber, 2002), potentially exacerbating existing human  
40 modifications of these flows, as described by Sklar and Browder (1998). However, the  
41 exact nature of these changes is difficult to predict for a particular estuary, in part because  
42 there is not clear agreement among general circulation models (GCMs) on precipitation  
43 changes over drainage basins (National Assessment Synthesis Team, 2000). There does  
44 seem to be agreement among models that increases in frequencies of extreme rainfall will  
45 occur (Scavia *et al.*, 2002), suggesting that there will be changes in potential freshwater

1 inflow amounts and patterns (hydrographs). These inflows will then be subjected to  
2 human modifications that differ across estuaries. For example, where dams are used in  
3 flood regulation, there is reduced variability within and among seasons, damping, for  
4 example, normally peak flows at snowmelt in temperate regions (Poff *et al.*, 1997; Alber,  
5 2002). In some watersheds, increased reuse of wastewater in agriculture, municipalities,  
6 and industry may offset changes in supply by reducing demand for “clean” freshwater.  
7

8 The potential physical and chemical consequences of altered freshwater flows to estuaries  
9 include changes in salinity and stratification regimes, loadings of nutrients and sediments,  
10 water residence times, and tidal importance (reviewed in Alber, 2002). Potential  
11 biological consequences include changes in species composition, distribution, abundance,  
12 and primary and secondary productivity, all in response to the altered availability of light,  
13 nutrients, and organic matter (Cloern *et al.*, 1983; Howarth *et al.*, 2000; Alber, 2002).  
14

15 Increases in the delivery of freshwater to estuaries may enhance estuarine circulation and  
16 salt wedge penetration up the estuary (Gedney *et al.*, 2006), resulting in stronger vertical  
17 stratification. For individual estuaries there is the potential for increased freshwater  
18 inflow to shift the degree of mixing along the gradient from the fully mixed toward the  
19 stratified state. Those estuaries that receive increased supplies of organic matter and  
20 nutrients and exhibit enhanced stratification may be particularly susceptible to enhanced  
21 hypoxia and the negative effects described in the previous section. However, at some  
22 level, increased freshwater delivery will reduce residence time and thus reduce the  
23 potential for hypoxia. This threshold will be specific to individual estuaries and difficult  
24 to predict in a generic sense.  
25

26 In some estuaries, climate change may also lead to a reduction in freshwater inflow,  
27 which will generally increase salinity. This could lead to more salt-water intrusion  
28 upstream, negatively affecting species intolerant of marine conditions (Copeland, 1966;  
29 Alber, 2002) and/or lengthening the estuary by extending the distance along the  
30 freshwater-to-full-seawater gradient (Alber, 2002). Water residence times within the  
31 estuary will likely increase with reduced freshwater inflow, potentially creating a more  
32 stable system in which phytoplankton can grow and reproduce (Cloern *et al.*, 1983;  
33 Howarth *et al.*, 2000). Thus, one might expect a greater response to nutrients—*i.e.*,  
34 greater primary productivity and/or larger phytoplankton populations (Mallin *et al.*,  
35 1993)—than under baseline rates of freshwater discharge. This may be especially true for  
36 estuaries that are currently somewhat “protected” from eutrophication symptoms by high  
37 freshwater flow, such as the Hudson River (Howarth *et al.*, 2000). However, reduced  
38 flushing times will also keep water in the estuary longer, potentially increasing the risks  
39 posed by pollutants and pathogens (Alber and Sheldon, 1999; Sheldon and Alber, 2002).  
40

41 Other biological consequences of changing freshwater delivery include alterations in  
42 secondary productivity (the directions of which are difficult to predict), the distributions  
43 of plants and sessile invertebrates (Alber, 2002), and cues for mobile organisms such as  
44 fish, especially migratory taxa with complex life histories (Whitfield, 1994; Whitfield,  
45 2005). Not surprisingly, therefore, a whole branch of management is developing around

1 the need to determine the optimal freshwater flows required to maintain desired  
2 ecosystem services (*e.g.*, Robins *et al.*, 2005; Rozas *et al.*, 2005).

3  
4 Changes in freshwater delivery to the estuary will affect freshwater quantity, water  
5 quality, stratification, bottom habitats, fish and wildlife production, and human values,  
6 inducing needs for management adaptation.

#### 7 **7.3.4.2.10 Phenology Modifications and Match/Mismatch**

8 Estuaries are characterized by high temporal variability, on multiple time scales, and  
9 spatial variability, which includes sharp environmental gradients with distance upstream  
10 and vertically in the water column (Remane and Schlieper, 1971). One mode of  
11 adaptation that many free-living estuarine species use to exploit the many resources of  
12 estuaries is to move in and out of the estuary, as well as upstream and downstream within  
13 the estuary, on a complex temporal schedule. A study in North Carolina found that the  
14 most abundant fish species in small tributaries of the upper estuary differed in 10 of the  
15 12 months of the year (Kuenzler *et al.*, 1977). Ten different species were dominant  
16 during the 12 months of the year. To accomplish such movements, many estuarine  
17 species have evolved behavior that uses various sensory cues to control the timing of  
18 their activities (Sims *et al.*, 2004). The timing of behavior cued by environment  
19 information is referred to as “phenology” (Mullins and Marks, 1987; Costello, Sullivan,  
20 and Gifford, 2006). The best understood type of phenology that occurs in estuaries  
21 involves matching critical feeding stages with the timing of primary productivity blooms  
22 (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). As many estuarine stressors are altered by climate change, we can  
23 expect that phenology will be one of the first biological processes to be seriously  
24 disrupted.

25  
26 Changing phenology has large implications for fish and wildlife production because  
27 trophic coupling of important species in the food chain can be disrupted, thereby  
28 presenting a need for management adaptation.

#### 29 **7.3.4.2.11 River Discharge and Sea Level Impacts on Anadromous Fishes**

30 Anadromous fishes, such as Pacific salmon, are an important economic and cultural  
31 resource that may be particularly vulnerable to significant shifts in coastal climates in the  
32 Pacific Northwest and Alaska. The combined effect of shifts in seasonal precipitation,  
33 storm events, riverine discharge, and snowmelt (Salathé, 2006; Mote, 2006) are likely to  
34 change a broad suite of environmental conditions in coastal wetlands upon which salmon  
35 depend at several periods in their life histories. The University of Washington’s Climate  
36 Impacts Group (UW-CIG) has summarized current climate change in the Pacific  
37 Northwest to include region-wide warming of ~0.8°C in 100 years, increased  
38 precipitation, a decline in snowpack, especially at lower elevations, and an earlier  
39 spring.<sup>21</sup> The UW-CIG predictions for future climate change in the region include an  
40 increase in average temperatures on the order of 0.1–0.6°C (best estimate = 0.3°C) per  
41 decade throughout the coming century, with the warming occurring during all seasons but  
42 with the largest increases in the summer. Precipitation is also likely to increase in winter

---

<sup>21</sup> **Climate Impacts Group**, University of Washington, 2007: Climate Change. University of Washington, <http://www.cses.washington.edu/cig/pnwc/cc.shtml>, accessed on 3-23-2007.



1 and decrease in summer, but with no net change in annual mean precipitation. As a  
2 consequence, the mountain snowpack will diminish and rivers that derive some of their  
3 flow from snowmelt will likely demonstrate reduced summer flow, increased winter  
4 flow, and earlier peak flow. Lower-elevation rivers that are fed mostly by rain may also  
5 experience increased wintertime flow due to increases in winter precipitation. Summer  
6 river flows in the Pacific Northwest are projected to decline by as much as 30% and  
7 droughts would become more common (Leung and Qian, 2003), implying significant  
8 changes in estuarine salinity distribution that has not yet been examined in any detail.  
9 Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers, provides an expanded discussion of these and other  
10 climate change effects on rivers in the United States.

11  
12 Contemporary estimates of eustatic sea level rise associated with trends in climate change  
13 have ranged from 34–50 cm per century (Church, 2001). More recent estimates that have  
14 taken into account measurements of continental glacier movement, such as in Greenland,  
15 project increased rates from 75–100 cm per century (Meehl *et al.*, 2005) to 2.2–3.4 m by  
16 2100 (Overpeck *et al.*, 2006; Otto-Bliesner *et al.*, 2006). However, relative sea level rise  
17 will differ considerably on regional and local scales due to variability in isostatic  
18 rebound, local extractions of subsurface fluids such as ground water and hydrocarbons,  
19 and rapid tectonic events such as earthquakes and vulcanism.

20  
21 Because different anadromous species occupy estuarine wetlands according to their  
22 divergent life history strategies, impacts of these climate changes vary among and within  
23 species. In the case of Pacific salmon, the “ocean-type” species and life history types  
24 would be the most vulnerable because they occupy transitional estuarine waters  
25 significantly longer than “stream-type” salmon. For instance, juvenile Chinook and chum  
26 salmon representing this “ocean-type” life history strategy may occupy estuarine  
27 wetlands for more than 90 days (Simenstad, Fresh, and Salo, 1982), seeking (1) refugia  
28 from predation at their small size, (2) time to achieve physiological adaptation from  
29 freshwater to marine salinities, and (3) high densities of appropriate prey organisms.  
30 Based on our knowledge of the habitat requirements and landscape transitions of  
31 migrating juvenile ocean-type salmon (Simenstad *et al.*, 2000; Parson *et al.*, 2001; Mote  
32 *et al.*, 2003), the present spatial coincidence of necessary physical habitats, such as marsh  
33 platforms and tidal creeks, will change with the appropriate salinity regime as sea water  
34 penetrates further up the estuary. This would have potentially large impacts on the ocean-  
35 type salmon performance.

36  
37 In the Pacific Northwest, shifts from snowmelt runoff to more winter storm precipitation  
38 will potentially disrupt the migration timing and residence of juvenile salmon in estuarine  
39 wetlands. For example, juvenile Chinook salmon in many watersheds migrate to estuaries  
40 coincident with the spring freshet of snowmelt, and occupy the extensive brackish  
41 marshes available to them during that period. This opportunity often diminishes as water  
42 temperatures increase and approach physiologically marginal limits (*e.g.*, 19–20°C) with  
43 the decline of snowmelt and flows in early summer. Under current climate  
44 change/variability scenarios, much of the precipitation events will now be focused in the  
45 winter, providing less brackish habitat opportunities during the expected juvenile salmon  
46 migration and even more limiting temperatures during even lower summer flows.

1 Whether migration and other life history patterns of salmon could adapt to these climate  
2 shifts are unknown.

3  
4 The sustainability of estuarine wetlands under recent sea level rise scenarios is also of  
5 concern if estuarine habitat utilization by anadromous fish is density-dependent. Estuaries  
6 that are positioned in a physiographic setting allowing transgressive inundation, such as  
7 much of the coastal plain of the southeastern and Gulf of Mexico coasts, have a buffer  
8 that will potentially allow more inland development of estuarine wetlands. Other coasts,  
9 such as those of New England and the Pacific Northwest, have more limited opportunities  
10 for transgressive development of estuarine wetlands, and many estuaries are already  
11 confined by upland agricultural or urban development that would prevent further inland  
12 flooding (Brinson, Christian, and Blum, 1995). For one example, Hood<sup>22</sup> found that a 45-  
13 cm sea level rise over the next century would result in a 12% loss, and an 80-cm rise  
14 would eliminate 22%, of the tidal marshes in the Skagit River delta (Puget Sound,  
15 Washington), which could be translated to an estimated reduction in estuarine rearing  
16 capacity for juvenile Chinook salmon of 211,000–530,000 fish, respectively. These  
17 estimates are based entirely on the direct inundation effects on vegetation and do not  
18 incorporate the potential response of existing marshes to compensate for the increased  
19 rate of sea level rise, which can include increased sediment accretion and maintenance of  
20 marsh plain elevation or increased marsh progradation due to higher sediment loads from  
21 the river (see section 7.2.4.2.15 below). Nor do these estimates take into account  
22 increased marsh erosion from greater winter storm activity or changes in salinity  
23 distribution due to declining summer river flows. Court cases have already overturned  
24 general permits for shoreline armoring where salmon (an endangered species under ESA)  
25 would be harmed. With projected rises in sea level, the needs of salmon may come even  
26 more often into conflict with management policies that generally permit bulkheads and  
27 other shoreline armoring to protect private property.

28  
29 Salmon represent such an iconic fish of great importance to fisheries, wildlife,  
30 subsistence uses, and human culture that climate-related impacts on salmon populations  
31 would require management adaptation.

#### 32 **7.3.4.2.12 Effects of Climate Change on Estuarine State Changes**

33 The many direct and indirect influences of climate change may combine to cause  
34 fundamental shifts in ecosystem structure and functioning. Some shifts, such as those  
35 associated with transgression of wetlands, can be considered part of the normal responses  
36 to sea-level rise (Brinson, Christian, and Blum, 1995; Christian *et al.*, 2000). Of  
37 particular concern is the potential for ecosystems to cross a threshold beyond which there  
38 is a rapid transition into a fundamentally different state that is not part of a natural  
39 progression. Ecosystems typically do not respond to gradual change in key forcing  
40 variables in a smooth, linear fashion. Instead, there are abrupt, discontinuous, non-linear  
41 shifts to a new state (or “regime”) when a threshold is crossed (Scheffer *et al.*, 2001;  
42 Scheffer and Carpenter, 2003; Burkett *et al.*, 2005). Particularly relevant here is the  
43 hypothesis that gradual changes in “slow” variables that operate over long time scales can

---

<sup>22</sup> Hood, W.G., Unpublished: Possible sea-level rise impacts on the Skagit River tidal marshes. Skagit River System Cooperative.

1 cause threshold-crossing when they alter interactions among “fast” variables whose  
2 dynamics happen on short temporal scales (Carpenter, Ludwig, and Brock, 1999; Rinaldi  
3 and Scheffer, 2000). We anticipate that some climate changes will fall into this category,  
4 such as gradual increases in temperature. The diversity of additional stressors arising  
5 from consequences of climate change greatly enhances the likelihood of important  
6 stressor interactions. Thus, in estuaries, where so many stressors operate simultaneously,  
7 there is great potential for interactions among stressors to drive the system into an  
8 alternative state.

9  
10 Regime shifts can sometimes be catastrophic and surprising (Holling, 1972; Scheffer and  
11 Carpenter, 2003; Foley *et al.*, 2005), and reversals of these changes may be difficult,  
12 expensive, or even impossible (Carpenter, Ludwig, and Brock, 1999). Moreover, the  
13 social and economic effects of discontinuous changes in ecosystem state can be  
14 devastating when accompanied by the interruption or cessation of essential ecosystem  
15 services (Scheffer *et al.*, 2001; *e.g.*, Foley *et al.*, 2005). Recognizing and understanding  
16 the drivers of regime change and the inherent nonlinearities of biological responses to  
17 such change is a fundamental challenge to effective ecosystem management in the face of  
18 global climate change (Burkett *et al.*, 2005; Groffman *et al.*, 2006).

19  
20 All the potential regime shifts described below have large implications for sustaining  
21 biogenic habitat, provision of fish and wildlife, and many human values, thereby  
22 implying need for management adaptation.

#### 23 **7.3.4.2.13 Climate Change Effects on Suspension-Feeding Grazers and Algal Blooms**

24 The Eastern oyster (*Crassostrea virginica*) is a historically dominant species in estuaries  
25 along the Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico coasts of the United States. At high abundances,  
26 oysters play major roles in the filtration of particles from the water column, biodeposition  
27 of materials to the benthos, nutrient cycling, and the creation of hard substrate habitat in  
28 otherwise soft-bottom systems (Kennedy, 1996; Coen, Luckenbach, and Breitburg, 1999;  
29 Newell and Ott, 1999; Newell, Cornwell, and Owens, 2002). Dominant consumers (*e.g.*,  
30 the scyphomedusan sea nettle, *Chrysaora quinquecirrha*) are dependent on oysters for  
31 habitat for sessile stages, and large numbers of estuarine fish species benefit either  
32 directly or indirectly from habitat and secondary production of oyster reefs (Coen,  
33 Luckenbach, and Breitburg, 1999; Breitburg *et al.*, 2000). Oysters are structural as well  
34 as biological ecological engineers (Jones, Lawton, and Shachak, 1994), and have been  
35 shown to reduce shoreline erosion (Meyer, Townsend, and Thayer, 1997) and facilitate  
36 regrowth of submerged aquatic vegetation by reducing nearshore wave action.

37  
38 Oyster abundances in Atlantic Coast estuaries have declined sharply during the past  
39 century, with a precipitous decline in some systems during the past two to three decades.  
40 The primary stressors causing the recent decline are likely overfishing and two  
41 pathogens: *Haplosporidium nelsoni*—the non-native protist that causes MSX—and  
42 *Perkinsus marinus*, a protistan that causes Dermo and is native to the United States but  
43 has undergone a recent range expansion and possible increase in virulence (Rothschild *et al.*,  
44 1994; National Research Council, 2004). Both overfishing and disease cause  
45 responses in the relatively slow-responding (*i.e.*, years to decades) adult oysters and  
46 oyster reefs, making recovery to the oyster-dominant regime quite difficult. High

1 sediment loading (Cooper and Brush, 1993), eutrophication (Boynton *et al.*, 1995), and  
2 blooms of ctenophores (Purcell *et al.*, 1991) may further contribute to oyster decline or  
3 prevent recovery to the high-oyster state. These factors—all of which are likely to  
4 increase with changes in climate—appear to act most strongly on the larval and newly  
5 settled juvenile stages, raising the possibility that this system will at best exhibit  
6 hysteretic recovery to the high-oyster state.

7 **7.3.4.2.14 N-Driven Shift from Vascular Plants to Planktonic Micro- and Benthic**  
8 **Macroalgae**

9 Seagrasses are believed to be in the midst of a global crisis in which human activities are  
10 leading to large scale losses (Orth *et al.*, 2006). Human and natural impacts have had  
11 demonstrable detrimental effects on SAV (Short and Wyllie-Echeverria, 1996). Enhanced  
12 loading of nutrients to coastal waters has been found to alter primary producer  
13 communities, through shifts toward species with faster growth-nutrient uptake rates  
14 (Duarte, 1991). The shift is often toward phytoplankton, which reduces light availability  
15 and can lead to losses of other benthic primary producers such as seagrasses. The  
16 disappearance of seagrass below critical light levels is dramatic (Duarte, 1991), and has  
17 been linked to nutrient loading in some systems (Short and Burdick, 1996). In Waquoit  
18 Bay, Massachusetts, replacement of SAV by macroalgae has also been observed and was  
19 primarily attributed to shading (Hauxwell *et al.*, 2001). Increases in macroalgal biomass,  
20 macroalgal canopy height and decreases in SAV biomass were linked to nitrogen loading  
21 rate using a space-for-time substitution (Hauxwell *et al.*, 2001). It is essential to  
22 understand the potential for thresholds in water quality parameters that may lead to loss  
23 of SAV through a state change. SAV is sensitive to environmental change, and thus may  
24 serve as a “coastal canary,” providing an early warning of deteriorating conditions (Orth  
25 *et al.*, 2006). SAV also provides significant ecological services (Williams and Heck Jr.,  
26 2001) and its loss would have appreciable effects on overall estuarine function.

27 **7.3.4.2.15 Non-linear Marsh Accretion with Sea Level Rise**

28 Coastal inundation is projected to lead to land loss and expansion of the sub-tidal regions  
29 along estuarine shorelines (Riggs, 2002). Intertidal habitats that do not accrete or migrate  
30 landward proportionally to relative sea level rise are susceptible to inundation. Wetlands  
31 are often present in these areas, and have shown the ability to keep up with increases in  
32 sea level in some systems (Morris *et al.*, 2002). However, the ability to maintain their  
33 vertical position is uncertain, and depends on a suite of factors (Moorhead and Brinson,  
34 1995). Recent work in the Venice Lagoon found a bimodal distribution of marsh (higher  
35 elevation) and flat (lower elevation) intertidal habitats, with few habitats at intermediate  
36 intertidal elevations (Fagherazzi *et al.*, 2006). The findings indicate that there may be an  
37 abrupt transition from one habitat type to another. Should this model hold true for a broad  
38 range of coastal systems, there are clearly significant implications for coastal  
39 geomorphology and the ecological services provided by the different habitat types.

40 **7.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

41 Biologists have traditionally used the term “adaptation” to apply to intrinsic biological  
42 responses to physical or biological changes that may serve to perpetuate the species, with  
43 implications for the community and ecosystem. This definition includes behavioral,

1 physiological, and evolutionary adaptation of species. This question therefore arises: Can  
2 biological adaptation be relied upon to sustain ecosystem services from national estuaries  
3 under conditions of present and future climate change? In the short term of a few  
4 decades, the capability of estuarine organisms to migrate farther toward the poles in  
5 response to warming temperatures and farther up the shore in response to rising water  
6 levels has potential to maintain estuarine ecosystem processes and functioning that do not  
7 differ greatly from today's conditions. However, over longer time frames, depending on  
8 the realized magnitude of climate changes, estuarine ecosystems may not be able to adapt  
9 biologically and thereby retain high similarity to present systems. The scope and pace of  
10 current and anticipated future climate change are too great to assume that management  
11 goals will be sustained by intrinsic biological adjustments, without also requiring  
12 management adaptation (Parmesan and Galbraith, 2004; Parmesan, 2006; Pielke *et al.*,  
13 2007).

14  
15 The extremely high natural variability of estuarine environments has already selected for  
16 organisms, communities, and ecosystems with high capacity for natural physiological,  
17 behavioral, and perhaps also evolutionary adaptation (Remane and Schlieper, 1971;  
18 Wolfe, 1986). Nevertheless, the current rapid rates of change in many variables, such as  
19 temperature, and the absolute levels of key environmental variables, such as CO<sub>2</sub>  
20 concentration, that ultimately may be reached, could fall outside the historical  
21 evolutionary experience of estuarine organisms. The historical experience with  
22 environmental variability may not help much to achieve effective biological adaptation  
23 under these novel rates of change and conditions. While behavioral (*e.g.*, migration,  
24 dispersal) adaptation of individual species may take place to some degree, the dramatic  
25 suite of projected changes in estuarine environments and stressors that we summarized  
26 earlier poses complex challenges to individual species, including those of estuaries, on a  
27 timetable that is inconsistent with the capacity for evolutionary change to keep up (Pielke  
28 *et al.*, 2007). Even if evolutionary change could proceed at a rapid pace, the diversity of  
29 environmental changes implies that conflicting demands may be placed on selection such  
30 that adaptation to the full suite of changes may be compromised. The success of  
31 individual species in adapting to climate change does not lead to intrinsic resilience at the  
32 community and ecosystems levels of organization. Because virtually all ecosystem  
33 processes involve some form of interaction between or among species, biological  
34 adaptation by individual species to climate-driven changes is not a process that will  
35 protect functioning estuarine ecosystems, because species adapt and migrate at differing  
36 rates (Sims *et al.*, 2004; Parmesan, 2006).

37  
38 Among the most important estuarine species that dictate overall community composition  
39 and ecosystem dynamics are the structural foundation species, namely intertidal marsh  
40 plant and subtidal seagrass (SAV) vegetation. Donnelly and Bertness (2001) have  
41 assembled ecological evidence that, starting in the late 1990s, the low marsh plant  
42 *Spartina alterniflora* has begun to move upslope and invade the higher marshes of New  
43 England that are typically occupied by a more diverse mix of *Juncus gerardi*, *Distichlis*  
44 *spicata*, and *Spartina patens*. Their paleontological assessment revealed that in times of  
45 rapid sea level rise in the late 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, *Spartina alterniflora* similarly  
46 grew upwards and dominated the high marsh. Such replacement of species and structural

1 diversity of foundation species is likely to modify the functioning of the salt marsh  
2 ecosystem and affect its capacity to deliver traditional goods and services. Similarly,  
3 among SAV species, some like *Halodule wrightii* are known to be better colonizers with  
4 greater ability to colonize and spread into disturbed patches than other seagrasses like  
5 *Thalassia testudinum* (Stephan, Peuser, and Fonseca, 2001). In general, seagrasses that  
6 recolonize by seed set can move into newly opened areas more readily than those that  
7 largely employ vegetative spread. Analogous to the marsh changes, if storm disturbance  
8 and rising water levels favor more opportunistic seagrass species, then the new SAV  
9 community may differ from the present one and provide different ecosystem services.  
10 Vascular plants of both intertidal and shallow subtidal estuaries possess characteristically  
11 few species relative to terrestrial habitats (Day, Jr. *et al.*, 1989; Orth *et al.*, 2006), so these  
12 differences in behavior of important foundation species in the marsh and in SAV beds  
13 will have disproportionately large influences on function. Thus, the web of interactions  
14 among biotic and abiotic components of the estuarine ecosystem cannot be expected to be  
15 preserved through intrinsic biological adaptation alone, which cannot regulate the  
16 physical changes. Management adaptations must be considered to sustain ecosystem  
17 services of national estuaries. Examples of specific adaptation options are presented in  
18 Box 7.4 and elaborated further throughout the sections that follow.

#### 19 **7.4.1 Potential for Adjustment of Traditional Management Approaches to** 20 **Achieve Adaptation to Climate Change**

21 Three different time frames of management adaptation can be distinguished: (1)  
22 avoidance of any advance adaptation strategy (leading to *ad hoc* reactive responses); (2)  
23 planning only for management responses to climate change and its consequences (leading  
24 to coordinated, planned responses initiated either after indicators reveal the urgency or  
25 after emergence of impacts); and (3) taking proactive measures to preserve valuable  
26 services in anticipation of consequences of climate change. Rational grounds for  
27 choosing among these three options involve consideration of the risks and reversibility of  
28 predicted negative consequences, and the costs of planning and acting now as opposed to  
29 employing retroactive measures. Political impediments and lack of effective governance  
30 structures may lead to inaction, even if planning for intervention or initiating proactive  
31 intervention represents the optimal strategy. For example, the partitioning of authority for  
32 environmental and natural resource management in the United States among multiple  
33 federal and state agencies inhibits effective implementation of ecosystem-based  
34 management of our estuarine and ocean resources (Peterson and Estes, 2001; Pew Center  
35 on Global Climate Change, 2003; U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004; Titus, 2004).  
36 Even if governance structures were developed that allow cooperation among agencies  
37 and among levels of government, successful application of ecosystem-based management  
38 of estuaries may not be a realistic expectation for estuarine management because of the  
39 intrinsic conflicts of interest among stakeholders, which include land users across the  
40 entire watershed and airshed as well as coastal interests.

41  
42 Planning for adaptation to climate change, without immediate implementation, may  
43 represent the most prudent response to uncertainty over timing and/or intensity of  
44 negative consequences of global change on estuarine ecosystem services, provided that  
45 advance actions are not required to avoid irreversible damage. Issues of costs also

1 deserve attention in deciding whether to delay management actions. An ounce of  
2 prevention may be worth a pound of cure. For example, by postponing repairs and  
3 vertical extensions of levees around New Orleans, the estimated costs for retroactive  
4 repair and all necessary restorations of about \$54 billion following Hurricanes Katrina  
5 and Rita greatly exceed what proactive levee reconstruction would have cost (Kates *et*  
6 *al.*, 2006). On the other hand, the protections provided against natural disasters are  
7 typically designed to handle more frequent events, such as storms and floods occurring  
8 more frequently than once a century, but inadequate to defend against major disasters like  
9 the direct hit by a category 5 hurricane. Such management protections even enhance  
10 losses and restoration costs by promoting development under the false sense of security  
11 that is based on success in the face of more frequent, smaller storm events (Kates *et al.*,  
12 2006). This example has direct relevance to adaptation management in estuaries, because  
13 there is broad consensus that climate change is increasing sea levels and increasing the  
14 frequency of intense hurricanes (IPCC, 2007). Engineered dikes for estuarine shorelines  
15 may represent one possible management adaptation, protective of some human values but  
16 injurious to natural resources. Thus, the need for understanding the effectiveness and  
17 consequences of alternative management policies relating to dikes, levees, and other such  
18 structural defenses makes the New Orleans experience relevant.

19  
20 A decision to postpone implementation of adaptation actions may rely on continuing  
21 scientific monitoring of reliable indicators and modeling. Based on inputs from evolving  
22 ocean observing systems, model predictions could provide comfort that necessary  
23 actions, although delayed, may still be timely. Other important prospective management  
24 actions may be postponed because they are not politically feasible until an event alters  
25 public opinion sufficiently to allow their implementation. Such adaptations are best  
26 planned in advance to anticipate the moment when they could be successfully triggered.  
27 Other management actions may involve responding to events and therefore only have  
28 relevance in a retrospective context. Catastrophic events provide opportunities for  
29 changes that increase ecological and human community resilience, by addressing long-  
30 standing problems such as overbuilding in floodplains or degradation of coastal wetlands  
31 (Box 7.5).<sup>23</sup> However, pressures to expediently restore conditions to their familiar pre-  
32 disaster state often lead to the loss of these opportunities (Mileti, 1999). Therefore,  
33 decisions about whether and where to rebuild after damage from major floods and storms  
34 should be carefully examined and planned in advance in order to avoid making poorer  
35 judgments during chaotic conditions that follow these types of incidents. This strategy  
36 becomes more relevant as storm intensity and flood damages increase.

37  
38 Proactive intervention in anticipation of consequences of climate change represents  
39 rational management under several conditions. These conditions include irreversibility of  
40 undesirable ecosystem changes, substantially higher costs to repair damages than to  
41 prevent them, risk of losing important and significant ecosystem services, and high levels  
42 of scientific certainty about the anticipated change and its ecological consequences  
43 (Titus, 1998; 2000). Avoiding dramatic structural (“phase”) shifts in estuarine ecosystem  
44 state may represent a compelling motivation for proactive management, because such

---

<sup>23</sup> **H. John Heinz III Center for Science, Economics, and the Environment**, 2002: *Human Links to Coastal Disasters*. Washington, DC.

1 shifts threaten continuing delivery of many traditional ecosystem services and are  
2 typically difficult or exceedingly expensive to reverse (Groffman *et al.*, 2006).  
3 Reversibility is especially at issue in cases of potential transitioning to an alternative  
4 stable state, because positive feedbacks maintain the new state and resist reversal  
5 (Petraitis and Dudgeon, 2004). For example, the loss of SAV removes a baffle to water  
6 flow, thus increasing near-bottom currents. The faster currents in turn mean that seagrass  
7 seeds are less likely to be deposited, and seedlings are more likely to be uprooted by  
8 erosion; this feedback makes reestablishment of lost beds much more difficult.

9  
10 With adequate knowledge of the critical tipping point and ongoing monitoring of telling  
11 indicators, proactive intervention could in some cases be postponed and still be  
12 completed in time to prevent climate change from pushing the system over the threshold  
13 into a new phase. Nevertheless, many processes involved in ecosystem change possess  
14 substantial inertia such that even after adjusting levels of drivers, a memory of past stress  
15 will continue to modify the system, making postponement of action inadvisable. Climate  
16 change itself falls into this class of processes, in that if greenhouse gas emissions were  
17 capped today, the Earth would continue to warm for decades (IPCC, 2007).

18  
19 Financial costs of climate change may be minimized by some types of proactive  
20 management. For example, enacting legislation that prohibits bulkheads and other  
21 engineered structures and requires rolling easements along currently undeveloped  
22 estuarine shores could preserve or at least delay loss of important shallow-water habitats,  
23 such as salt marsh, by allowing them to migrate inland as sea level rises (Box 7.6) (Titus,  
24 1998). A law to require rolling easements is not likely to be ruled as a taking, especially  
25 if enacted before property is developed, because “the law of erosion has long held that the  
26 public tidelands migrate inland as sea level rises, legislation saying that this law will  
27 apply in the future takes nothing” (Titus, 1998). However, absent such a law and this  
28 interpretation of it, the costs of loss of habitat and associated ecosystem services may  
29 exceed the value of property losses that would occur if property owners could not protect  
30 their investment. Some other proactive steps that enhance adaptation to climate change  
31 are likely to cost very little, and deserve immediate inclusion in policy and management  
32 plans. For example, the simple incorporation of climate change consequences in  
33 management plans for natural and environmental resources will trigger inclusion of  
34 forward-looking modifications that might provide resistance to climate change, build  
35 resiliency of ecological and socioeconomic systems, and avoid interventions  
36 incompatible with anticipated change and sustained ecosystem services (Titus, 2000).  
37 Principles for environmental planning could be adopted that (1) prohibit actions that will  
38 exacerbate negative consequences of climate change, (2) allow actions that are climate-  
39 change neutral, and (3) promote actions that provide enhanced ecosystem resilience to  
40 climate change. Such principles may lead to many low-cost modifications of existing  
41 management plans that could be initiated today.

42  
43 The scientific basis for predicting climate change and its ecosystem consequences must  
44 be especially compelling in order to justify any costly decisions to take proactive steps to  
45 enhance adaptation to climate change. Willingness to take costly actions should vary with  
46 the magnitude of predicted consequences, the confidence associated with the predictions,



1 and the timing of the effects. The scientific basis for the predictions must also be  
2 transparent, honest, and effectively communicated, not just to managers but also to the  
3 general public, who ultimately must support adaptation interventions. Thus, there is an  
4 urgent need to continue to refine the scientific research on climate change and its  
5 ecosystem consequences to reduce uncertainty over all processes that contribute to  
6 climate change and sea level rise, so that future projections and GCM scenarios are more  
7 complete and more precise. Because of the tremendous publicity associated with the  
8 release of each IPCC report, this process of periodic re-evaluation of the science and  
9 publication of the consensus report plays an integral role in public education. Scientific  
10 uncertainty about the magnitudes and timetables of potentially important processes, such  
11 as melting of the Greenland ice sheet (Dowdeswell, 2006; Rignot and Kanagaratnam,  
12 2006), leads to their exclusion from IPCC projections. Further scientific research will  
13 allow inclusion of such now uncertain contributions to change.

## 14 **7.4.2 Management Adaptations to Sustain Estuarine Services**

### 15 **7.4.2.1 Protecting Water Quality**

16 All national estuaries, and estuaries more generally, include water quality as a priority  
17 management target. The federal Clean Water Act serves to identify explicit targets for  
18 estuarine water quality nationwide, but state and local programs can also include other  
19 numeric standards for explicit parameters. Some CCMPs specify explicit, sometimes  
20 numeric, targets for specific member estuaries. Parameters with federally mandated  
21 standards include chlorophyll concentration; turbidity; dissolved oxygen; fecal coliform  
22 bacteria; nutrient loading where TMDLs apply; and conditions for NPDES discharge  
23 permits that maintain balanced and indigenous communities of fish, shellfish, and  
24 wildlife. In addition, coastal marsh and other riparian wetland buffers serve to treat non-  
25 point-source storm waters before they enter the open waters of estuaries, so preserving  
26 marsh extent and functionality is an important management target relating to water  
27 quality (Mitsch and Day Jr, 2006).

28  
29 Perhaps the greatest threat to estuarine water quality from climate change derives from  
30 the loss of water treatment of diffuse nutrient pollution by constricted tidal marsh and  
31 wetland buffers (Box 7.7). These vegetated buffers are threatened by the joint effects of  
32 sea level rise and increasingly intense storms interacting with hardening of estuarine  
33 shorelines through installation of bulkheads, dikes, and other engineered structures  
34 (Titus, 1998). Such structures are now readily permitted along estuarine shorelines to  
35 protect private property and public infrastructure from shoreline erosion; however, by  
36 preventing orderly retreat of intertidal and shallow subtidal habitats shoreward as sea  
37 level rises (Schwimmer and Pizzuto, 2000), marsh will be lost and its functions  
38 eliminated over extensive portions of estuarine shorelines (Titus, 2000; Reed, 2002;  
39 Committee on Mitigating Shore Erosion along Sheltered Coasts, National Research  
40 Council, 2006). The loss of salt marsh on coastal barriers is further facilitated by beach  
41 nourishment, which prevents natural processes of coastal barrier recession through  
42 overwash. Overwash of sediments to the estuarine shoreline is a process that extends and  
43 revitalizes salt marsh on the protected side of coastal barriers.

44

1 Estuarine shorelines differ in their susceptibility to erosion and recession under rising sea  
2 levels (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1989) . Relative sea level is rising at very  
3 different rates around the country and the globe. The subsiding shores of the Louisiana  
4 Gulf Coast are losing more salt marsh to sea level rise than any other region of the United  
5 States (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1989). Marsh losses on the Mississippi  
6 River Delta are enhanced by modification of river flows in ways that inhibit sediment  
7 delivery to the marshes, and by extraction of subsurface fluids (oil and gas). Extraction of  
8 groundwater from shallow aquifers also induces subsidence and enhances relative sea  
9 level rise along the shores of some estuaries, such as San Francisco Bay. For many  
10 estuaries, salt marsh does not currently face increased flooding and erosion from rising  
11 sea levels, either because relative sea level is not rising rapidly in these regions or  
12 because the accumulation of organic peat, along with the trapping and deposition of  
13 largely inorganic sediments by emergent marsh plants, is elevating the land surface at a  
14 rate sufficient to keep up with sea level rise (Reed, 2002). Despite the capability of salt  
15 marsh to rise with sea level, this gradual process produces a marsh on an elevated  
16 platform where the estuarine shore is increasingly more steeply sloped. The consequently  
17 deeper water does not dissipate wave energy as readily as the previously shallow slope,  
18 leading to increased risk of shoreline and marsh erosion at the margin (Committee on  
19 Mitigating Shore Erosion along Sheltered Coasts, National Research Council, 2006).  
20 Therefore, even marsh shores that today are maintaining elevation and position as sea  
21 level rises are at risk of greater erosion at their seaward margin in the future.  
22 Nevertheless, substantial geographic variation exists in erosion risk and susceptibility to  
23 marsh loss (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1989).

24  
25 Maintaining present management policy allowing bulkheads will likely lead to the loss of  
26 marshes, and the development of walled estuaries composed only of subtidal habitats,  
27 wherever development exists on the shoreline. Only on undeveloped estuarine shorelines  
28 can marshes recede landward. But with the ongoing dramatic expansion of coastal human  
29 communities, little undeveloped estuarine shoreline is likely to remain except in public  
30 parks, reserves, and sanctuaries. Along estuarine salinity gradients, much more  
31 development takes place toward the ocean end and less up-estuary. Therefore, as sea  
32 level rises, an increasing fraction of remaining marsh habitat will be found along these  
33 undefended, up-estuary shores (see maps in SAP 4.1; U.S. Climate Change Science  
34 Program, in press). All specific water quality parameters for which standards exist will  
35 suffer under this scenario of current management without adaptation. Reactive  
36 management holds little promise of reversing impacts, because it would require  
37 dismantling or moving structures and infrastructure, which is expensive, unpopular, and  
38 increasingly infeasible as coastal land becomes increasingly developed. Reactive marsh  
39 restoration would require removals of at least some portion of the engineered walls  
40 protecting estuarine shoreline property, so as to allow flooding of the proper elevations  
41 supporting salt marsh restoration. Implementing any public policy that would lead  
42 directly to widespread private property loss represents a large challenge under the  
43 prevailing property rights laws, but one that should be decided in favor of retaining the  
44 estuarine habitats, if done in a way that can involve rolling easements to preserve the  
45 public tidelands (Titus, 1998).

46

1 The process of retreat achieved by rolling easements or by some other administrative  
2 construct has been discussed in the United States for at least two decades. Retreat has an  
3 advantage over establishment of fixed buffer zones, because the abandonment need not  
4 be anticipated and shoreline use modified until sea level has risen enough to require  
5 action (Titus, 1998). An analogous proactive response to global climate change and sea  
6 level rise, known as “managed alignment,” is being actively considered in the United  
7 Kingdom and European Union.<sup>24</sup> Managed alignment refers to deliberately realigning  
8 engineering structures affecting rivers, estuaries, and the coastline. The process could  
9 involve retreating to higher ground, constructing set-back levees, shortening the length of  
10 levees and seawalls, reducing levee heights, and widening river floodplains. The goals of  
11 managed realignment may be to:

- 12
- 13 (1) reduce engineering costs by shortening the overall length of levees and  
14 seawalls that require maintenance;
- 15 (2) increase the efficiency and long-term sustainability of flood and coastal levees  
16 by recreating river, estuary, or coastal wetlands, and using their flood and  
17 storm buffering capacity;
- 18 (3) provide other environmental benefits through re-creation of natural wetlands;  
19 or
- 20 (4) construct replacement coastal wetlands in or adjacent to a designated  
21 European site, to compensate for wetland losses resulting from reclamation or  
22 coastal squeeze.
- 23

24 Under this UK/EU perspective, the goods and services provided by wetland coastal  
25 defenses against sea level rise appear to outweigh anticipated costs under some scenarios.

26

27 Locally in the United States, proactive management to protect tidal marshes, on which  
28 water quality of estuaries so strongly depends, may have some notable success in the  
29 short term of a few decades, although prospects of longer-term success are less  
30 promising. Only Rhode Island and parts of Massachusetts have regulations in place that  
31 recognize the need to allow wetlands the capacity to migrate inland as sea level rises, and  
32 thereby provide long-term protection (Titus, 2000).

33

34 An alternative to bulkheading is using natural breakwaters of native oysters, in quiescent  
35 waters of Atlantic and Gulf Coast estuaries, to dissipate wave action and thus help inhibit  
36 shoreline and marsh erosion inshore of the reef. Rock sills (so-called “living shorelines”  
37 as developed and permitted in Maryland)<sup>13</sup> can be installed in front of tidal marshes along  
38 more energetic estuarine shores, where oysters would not survive (Committee on  
39 Mitigating Shore Erosion along Sheltered Coasts, National Research Council, 2006).  
40 Such natural and artificial breakwaters can induce sediment deposition behind them, and  
41 thereby may help sediments rise and marshes persist with growing sea levels. As sea  
42 level rises, oyster reefs can also grow taller and rock sills can be artificially elevated,  
43 thereby keeping up protection by the breakwaters. Oysters are active suspension feeders

---

<sup>24</sup> **Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (DEFRA) and the UK Environment Agency,** 2002: *Managed Realignment Review - Project Report*. Policy Research Project FD 2008, DEFRA, Cambridge, UK.

1 and help reduce turbidity of estuarine waters. Rock breakwaters in the estuary are also  
2 often colonized by oysters and other suspension-feeding invertebrates. Restoration of  
3 oyster reefs as breakwaters, and even installation of rock breakwaters, contribute to water  
4 quality through the oysters' feeding and through protection of salt marshes by these  
5 alternatives to bulkheads and dikes. This proactive adaptation to sea level rise and risk of  
6 damaging storms will probably fail to be sustainable over longer time frames, because  
7 such breakwaters are not likely to provide reliable protection against shoreline erosion in  
8 major storms as sea level continues to rise. Ultimately, the owners of valuable estuarine  
9 shoreline may not be satisfied with breakwaters as their only defense against the rising  
10 waters, and may demand permission to install levees, bulkheads, or alternative forms of  
11 shoreline armoring. This could lead to erosion of all intertidal habitats along the shoreline  
12 and consequent loss of the tidal marsh in developed areas. Some of these losses of marsh  
13 acreage would be replaced by progressive drowning of river mouths and inundation of  
14 flood plains up-estuary as sea level rises, followed by transgression and spread of  
15 wetlands into those newly flooded areas. The most promising suite of management  
16 adaptations on highly developed shorelines down-estuary is likely a combination of  
17 rolling easements, setbacks, density restrictions, and building codes (Titus, 1998).  
18 Political resistance may preclude local implementation of this adaptation, but financial  
19 costs of implementation are reasonable, if done before the shoreline is developed (Titus,  
20 2000).

21  
22 Given the political barriers to implementing these management adaptations to protect  
23 coastal wetlands, globally instituted mitigation of climate change may be the only means  
24 in the longer term (several decades to centuries) of avoiding large losses of tidal marsh  
25 and its water treatment functions. Losses will be nearly total along estuarine shorelines  
26 where development is most intense, especially in the zone of high hurricane risk from  
27 Texas to New York (see SAP 4.1; U.S. Climate Change Science Program, in press).  
28 Although rapid global capping of greenhouse gas emissions would still result in decades  
29 of rising global temperatures and consequent physical climatic changes (IPCC, 2007), it  
30 may be possible in the short term (years to a few decades) to partially alleviate damage to  
31 tidal marshes and diminution of their water treatment role on developed shores by local  
32 management adaptations, such as installation of natural and artificial breakwaters. On  
33 undeveloped estuarine shorelines, implementation of rolling easements is a critical need  
34 before development renders this approach too politically and financially costly. However,  
35 much public education will be necessary for this management adaptation to be accepted.

36  
37 Estuarine water quality is also threatened by a combination of rising temperature,  
38 increased pulsing and, in many regions such as the East Coast, growing quantities of  
39 freshwater riverine discharge and more energetic upstream wedging of sea waters with  
40 rising sea level (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). Temperature increases drive faster biochemical  
41 rates, including greater rates of microbial decomposition and animal metabolism, which  
42 inflate oxygen demand. When increased fresh water discharges into the estuary, this less-  
43 dense fresh water at the surface, when combined with stronger salt water wedging on the  
44 bottom, will enhance water column stability because of greater density stratification.  
45 Such conditions are the physical precursor to development of estuarine bottom water  
46 hypoxia and anoxia in warm seasons, because oxygen-rich surface waters are too light to

1 be readily mixed to depth (Paerl *et al.*, 1998). This water quality problem leads to  
2 persistent hypoxia and anoxia, creating dead zones on the bottoms of estuaries, one of the  
3 most serious symptoms of eutrophication (Paerl *et al.*, 1998; Bricker *et al.*, 1999). Under  
4 higher water temperatures and extended warm seasons, high oxygen demand is likely to  
5 extend for longer periods of the year while greater stratification further decreases  
6 dissolved oxygen in bottom waters. Erosion of riparian marshes from rising water levels  
7 also adds previously sequestered organic carbon to the estuary, further increasing oxygen  
8 demand for its microbial decomposition. In regions such as the Pacific Northwest, where  
9 summertime droughts are predicted rather than summer increases in storm-driven pulses  
10 of rain, this scenario of greater water-column stability and higher oxygen demand at  
11 elevated temperature will not apply. Nevertheless, negative consequences of summertime  
12 drought also are likely.

13  
14 Failing to act in advance of increases in incidence, scope, and duration of bottom water  
15 hypoxia implies widespread climate-related modifications of many estuaries, inconsistent  
16 with maintaining a balanced indigenous population of fish, shellfish, and wildlife.  
17 Nutrient reduction in the watershed and airshed could limit algal blooms, and thereby  
18 reduce organic loading and oxygen demand (Conley *et al.*, 2002). However, discharge  
19 limits for point sources are already close to what is technically feasible in many rivers.  
20 From an economic standpoint, further limiting atmospheric nitrogen deposition would  
21 affect many activities, such as electric power generation, industrial operations, and  
22 automobile use. It is possible that wetland restoration over the drainage basin could be  
23 greatly enhanced to reduce the fraction of diffuse nutrient loading that reaches the  
24 estuary, and to help counteract the increased estuarine stratification and warming  
25 temperatures that drive higher microbial decomposition and oxygen demand (Mitsch and  
26 Day Jr, 2006). Thus, integrated management of nutrient sources and wetland treatment of  
27 nutrients can play a role in management to limit eutrophication and hypoxia.

28  
29 At state levels of management, recognition of the likelihood of climate change and  
30 anticipation of its consequences could lead to important proactive steps, some with  
31 potentially minimal costs. Regulatory change represents one major example of an  
32 institutional approach at this level. Rhode Island and Massachusetts deserve praise for  
33 appropriately responding to risk of wetland loss under sea level rise by instituting  
34 regulations to allow landward migration of these habitats (Titus, 2000). Examination of  
35 state laws, agency rules, and various management documents in North Carolina, on the  
36 other hand, suggests that climate change is rarely mentioned and almost never  
37 considered. One example of how changes in rules could provide proactive protection of  
38 water quality would be to anticipate changes in sea level rise and storm intensity by  
39 modifying riparian buffer zones to maintain water quality. Permitting rules that constrain  
40 locations for construction of landfills, hazardous waste dumps, mine tailings, and  
41 facilities that store toxic chemicals could be modified to insure that, even under  
42 anticipated future conditions of sea level rise, shoreline recession, and intense storms,  
43 these facilities would remain not only outside today's floodplains but also outside the  
44 likely floodplains of the future. Riverine floodplain maps and publicly run flood  
45 insurance coverage could be redrafted to reflect expectations of flooding frequency and  
46 extent under changing rainfall amounts and increasing flashiness of rainfall as it is

1 delivered in more intense discrete storms. Such changes in floodplain maps would have  
2 numerous cascading impacts on development activities along the river edges in the entire  
3 watershed, many of which would help protect water quality during floods. Water quality  
4 degradation associated with consequences of floods from major storms such as hurricanes  
5 can persist for many months in estuaries (Paerl and Bales, 2001). Thus, if climate change  
6 leads to increases in storm intensity, proactive protection of riparian floodplains could  
7 help reduce the levels of pollutants that are delivered during those floods. Acting now to  
8 address this stressor helps enhance ecosystem resistance to impacts of climate change on  
9 eutrophication and pollution by toxicants. Floodplains may offer some of the last  
10 remaining undeveloped components of our coastal landscape over which transgressive  
11 expansion of sea level might occur with minimal human impact, so expanding protected  
12 areas of floodplains also helps build resilience of the socioeconomic system. Even during  
13 the past two decades, many estuarine watersheds have experienced multiple storms that  
14 exceeded standards for “100-year floods,” implying that recomputation and remapping of  
15 those hazardous riverine floodplains is already necessary.

#### 16 **7.4.2.2 Sustaining Fisheries and Wildlife Populations**

17 Sustaining fish production and wildlife populations represent important management  
18 goals of most national estuaries and essentially all estuaries nationwide. Fisheries are  
19 likely to suffer large declines from both of the major processes that affect water quality:  
20 (1) loss of tidal marshes associated with rising sea levels, and enhanced incidence of  
21 intense storms as these drivers interact with hardened shorelines; and (2) increased  
22 frequency, scope, and duration of bottom-water hypoxia arising from stronger  
23 stratification of the estuarine water column and greater microbial oxygen demand at  
24 higher temperatures.

25  
26 Marshes and other wetlands perform many valuable ecosystem services (Box 7.1)  
27 (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005), several of which lead to enhanced fish  
28 production. Numerous studies have demonstrated the high use of salt marshes by killifish,  
29 grass shrimps, and crabs, which are important prey for larger commercially important  
30 fishes, and for wading birds at higher trophic levels. Salt marsh habitat supports several  
31 endemic species of birds, such as some rails, and small mammals, some of which are on  
32 federal or state threatened and endangered lists (Greenberg *et al.*, 2006). The combination  
33 of high primary production and structural protection makes the marsh significant as a  
34 contributor to important detrital-based food webs based on export of vascular plant  
35 detritus from the marsh, and also means that the marsh plays a valuable role as nursery  
36 habitat for small fishes and crustaceans. Zimmerman, Minello, and Rozas (2000)  
37 demonstrated that penaeid shrimp production in bays along the Gulf of Mexico varies  
38 directly with the surface area of the salt marsh within the bay. Maintaining complexity of  
39 salt marsh landscapes can also be an important determinant of fish, shellfish, and wildlife  
40 production, especially preserving marsh edge environments (*e.g.*, Peterson and Turner,  
41 1994). Thus, marsh loss and modification in estuaries are expected to translate directly  
42 into lost production of fish and wildlife.

43  
44 The climate-driven enhancement of bottom water hypoxia and anoxia will result in  
45 further killing of oysters and other sessile bottom invertebrates (Lenihan and Peterson,

1 1998), thereby affecting the oyster fishery directly and other fisheries for crabs, shrimp,  
2 and demersal fishes indirectly (Lenihan *et al.*, 2001). These demersal consumers prey  
3 upon the benthic invertebrates of the estuary during their nursery use of the system, in the  
4 warm season of the year. When the benthic invertebrates are killed by lack of oxygen and  
5 resulting deadly hydrogen sulfide, fish production declines as energy produced by  
6 phytoplankton enters microbial loops and is thereby diverted from passing up the food  
7 chain to higher trophic levels (Baird *et al.*, 2004). This enhanced diversion of energy away  
8 from pathways leading to higher trophic levels will not only affect demersal fish  
9 production, but also diminish populations of sea birds and marine mammals, such as  
10 bottle-nosed dolphins. Because estuaries contribute so greatly to production of coastal  
11 fisheries generally, such reductions in fish and wildlife transcend the boundaries of the  
12 estuary itself.

13  
14 Fish and wildlife suffer additional risks from climate change, beyond those associated  
15 with loss of marsh and other shoreline habitats and those associated with enhanced  
16 hypoxia. Higher temperatures are already having and will likely have additional direct  
17 effects on estuarine species. Increased temperature is associated with lower bioenergetic  
18 efficiency, and greater risk of disease and parasitism. As temperatures increase, species  
19 will not move poleward at equal rates (Parmesan, 2006), so new combinations will  
20 emerge with likely community reorganization, elevating abundances of some fishes and  
21 crustaceans while suppressing others. Locally novel native species will appear through  
22 natural range expansion as water warms, adding to the potential for community  
23 reorganization. In addition, introductions of non-native species may occur at faster rates,  
24 because disturbed communities appear more susceptible to invasion. Finally, the changes  
25 in riverine flows—both amounts and temporal patterns—may change estuarine physical  
26 circulation in ways that affect transport of larval and juvenile life stages, altering  
27 recruitment of fish and valuable invertebrates.

28  
29 The challenges of adapting management to address impacts of climate change on fish and  
30 wildlife thus include all those already presented for water quality, because the goals of  
31 preventing loss of tidal marsh and other shallow shoreline habitats and of avoiding  
32 expansion of hypoxic bottom areas are held in common. However, additional approaches  
33 may be available or necessary to respond to risks of declines in fish and wildlife. For  
34 example, fisheries management at federal and state levels is committed to the principle of  
35 sustainability, which is usually defined as maintaining harvest levels at some fixed  
36 amount or within some fixed range. With climate-driven changes in estuarine  
37 ecosystems, sustainable fisheries management will itself need to become an adaptive  
38 process as changes in estuarine carrying capacity for target stocks occur through direct  
39 responses to warming and other physical factors, and indirect responses to changes in  
40 biotic interactions. Independent of any fishing impacts, there will be a moving target for  
41 many fish, shellfish, and wildlife populations, necessitating adaptive definitions of what  
42 is sustainable. This goal calls for advance planning for management responses to climate  
43 change, but not implementation until the ecosystem changes have begun. Absent any  
44 advance planning, stasis of management could conceivably induce stock collapses by  
45 inadvertent overfishing of a stock in decline from climate modifications.

46

1 Extermination of injurious non-native species after their introduction into estuarine  
2 systems has not proved feasible. However, one proactive type of management adaptation  
3 in contemplation of possible enhancement of success of introduced species into climate-  
4 disrupted estuarine ecosystems may be to strengthen rules that prevent the introductions  
5 themselves. This action would be especially timely as applied to the aquarium fish trade,  
6 which is now a likely vector of non-native fish introductions.<sup>25</sup> Local removals of  
7 invasive non-natives, combined with restoration of the native species, may be a locally  
8 viable reactive management response to improve marsh characteristics that promote  
9 propagation and production of fish and wildlife. This type of action may best be applied  
10 to vascular plants of the salt marsh. Such actions taken now to reduce impacts of current  
11 stressors represent means of enhancing ecosystem resilience to impacts of climate change  
12 on fish and wildlife.

### 13 **7.4.2.3 Preserving Habitat Extent and Functionality**

14 All national estuaries and managers of estuarine assets nationwide identify preservation  
15 of habitat as a fundamental management goal. The greatest threat to estuarine habitat  
16 extent and function from climate change arises as sea level rise and enhanced incidence  
17 of intense storms interact with the presence of structural defenses against shoreline  
18 erosion. As explained earlier in the description of threats to water quality and fisheries,  
19 barriers that prevent horizontal migration of tidal marshes inland will result in loss of  
20 tidal marsh and other intertidal and then shallow subtidal habitats. This process will  
21 include losses to seagrass beds and other submerged aquatic vegetation down-shore of  
22 bulkheads, because if the grass cannot migrate upslope, the lower margin will die back  
23 from light limitation (Dennison *et al.*, 1993; Short and Wyllie-Echeverria, 1996) as water  
24 levels rise. The presence of bulkheads enhances the rate of erosion below them because  
25 wave energy is directed downwards after striking a hard wall, excavating and lowering  
26 the sediment elevation faster than if no bulkhead were present (Tait and Griggs, 1990).  
27 As shoreline erosion below bulkheads continues along with rising water levels, all  
28 currently intertidal habitat will become covered by water even at low tide, removing  
29 those habitats that are most productive, critical for sustaining fish and wildlife, and  
30 important to maintaining water quality (Box 7.6). Galbraith *et al.* (2002) modeled this  
31 process for installation of dikes on Galveston Island, and concluded that intertidal habitat  
32 for shorebirds would decline by 20%. The enhancement of bottom water hypoxia through  
33 induction of more intense water column stratification and greater microbial degradation  
34 rates at higher temperatures will not eliminate the deeper subtidal habitat of estuaries, but  
35 will degrade its functions over wider areas of “dead zones” of the nation’s estuaries as  
36 climate change proceeds.

37  
38 Adaptations to address impacts of climate change on estuarine habitat extent and function  
39 face the same challenges as those already presented for water quality, due to common  
40 goals of preventing loss of marsh and other shallow shoreline habitats and avoiding  
41 expansion of hypoxic bottom areas. However, there may also be additional approaches  
42 available or necessary to respond to risks of areal and functional declines in estuarine

---

<sup>25</sup> See, for example, **National Ocean Service**, 2005: Lionfish discovery story. NOAA Website, [www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/education/stories/lionfish/lion03\\_blame.html](http://www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/education/stories/lionfish/lion03_blame.html), accessed on 7-25-2007.



1 habitats. At local levels, expanding the planning horizons of land use planning created in  
2 response to the federal Coastal Zone Management Act to incorporate the predictions of  
3 consequences of global change over at least a few decades would represent a rational  
4 proactive process. Such a longer view could inhibit risky development and  
5 simultaneously provide protections for important estuarine habitats, especially salt  
6 marshes and mangroves at risk from barriers that inhibit recession. Land use plans  
7 themselves rarely incorporate hard prohibitions against development close to sensitive  
8 habitats. They also have limited durability over time, as local political pressure for  
9 development and desires for protection of environmental assets wax and wane.

10 Nevertheless, requiring planners to take a longer-term view could have only positive  
11 consequences in educating local decision makers about what lies ahead under alternative  
12 development scenarios. States run ecosystem restoration programs, largely targeted  
13 toward riparian wetlands and tidal marshes. The choice of sites for such restoration  
14 activities can be improved by strategically selecting only those where the restored  
15 wetland can move up-slope as sea level rises. Thus, planning and decision-making for  
16 ecosystem restoration may require purchase of upland development rights or property to  
17 insure transgression potential, unless that upland is already publicly owned and managed  
18 to prevent construction of any impediment to orderly movement. This consideration of  
19 building in resilience to future climate change is necessary for compensatory habitat  
20 restorations that must mitigate for past losses for any restoration project that is projected  
21 to last long enough that recession would occur. In areas that are currently largely  
22 undeveloped, legislation requiring establishment of rolling easements represents a more  
23 far-reaching solution to preventing erection of permanent barriers to inland migration of  
24 tidelands. Rolling easements do not require predictions about the degree and rate of sea  
25 level rise and shoreline erosion. Purchasing development rights has the disadvantage that  
26 the uncertainty about rate of sea level rise injects uncertainty over whether enough  
27 property has been protected. In addition, rolling easements allow use of waterfront  
28 property until the water levels rise enough to require retreat, and thus represent a lower  
29 cost (Titus, 2000). Implementation of either solution should not be delayed, because  
30 delay will risk development of the very zone that requires protection.

31  
32 At state and federal levels, environmental impact statements and assessments of  
33 consequences of beach nourishment do not sufficiently incorporate consideration of  
34 climate change and its impacts. Similarly, management policies at state and local levels  
35 for responding to the joint risks posed by sea level rise and increased frequencies or  
36 intensities of storms, including hurricanes, have not recognized the magnitude of growth  
37 in costs of present shoreline protection responses as climate change continues. Most state  
38 coastal management programs discourage hardening of shorelines, such as installation of  
39 sea walls, groins, and jetties, because they result in adverse effects on the extent of the  
40 public beach (Pilkey and Wright III, 1988). Beach nourishment, a practice involving  
41 repeated use of fill to temporarily elevate and extend the width of the intertidal beach, is  
42 the prevailing (Titus, 2000), rapidly escalating, and increasingly expensive alternative.  
43 On average, the fill sands last three to five years (Leonard, Clayton, and Pilkey, 1990)  
44 before eroding away, requiring ongoing nourishment activities indefinitely. As sea level  
45 rises, more sand is needed to restore the desired shoreline position, at escalating cost. The  
46 public debate over environmental impacts of and funding for beach nourishment will

1 change as longer-term consequences are considered. Because beach nourishment on  
2 coastal barriers inhibits overwash of sediments during storms and the consequent  
3 landward retreat of the coastal barrier, erosion of the estuarine shoreline is intensified  
4 without this source of additional sediments. Continually elevating the shore of barrier  
5 land masses, above their natural level relative to depth on the continental shelf, implies  
6 that wave energy will not be as readily dissipated by bottom friction as the waves  
7 progress towards shore. This process brings more and more wave energy to the beach,  
8 and increases risk of storm erosion and substantial damage to the land mass in major  
9 storms.

10  
11 Within less than a century, the rising sea may induce geomorphological changes  
12 historically typical of geological time scales (Riggs and Ames, 2003). These changes  
13 include predicted fragmentation of coastal barriers by new inlets, and even disintegration  
14 and loss of many coastal barriers (Riggs and Ames, 2003). Such changes would cause  
15 dramatic modifications of the estuaries lying now in protected waters behind the coastal  
16 barriers, and would shift inland the mixing zone of fresh and salt waters. As climate  
17 change progresses and sea level continues to rise, accompanied by more intense  
18 hurricanes and other storms, the beach nourishment widely practiced today on ocean  
19 beaches (Titus, 2000) may become too expensive to sustain nationwide (Titus *et al.*,  
20 1991; Yohe *et al.*, 1996), especially if the federal government succeeds in withdrawing  
21 from current funding commitments. Miami Beach and other densely developed ocean  
22 beaches are likely to generate tax dollars sufficient to continue beach nourishment with  
23 state and local funding. Demand for groins, geotubes, sand bags, and other structural  
24 interventions will likely continue to grow as oceanfront property owners seek protection  
25 of their investment. These come at a price of loss of beach, which is the public trust  
26 resource that attracts most people to such areas. Retreat from and abandonment of coastal  
27 barriers affected by high relative rates of sea level rise and incidence of intense storms  
28 does not seem to represent a politically viable management adaptation.

#### 29 **7.4.2.4 Preserving Human Values**

30 All national estuaries recognize that estuaries provide diverse ecosystem services to  
31 people living in close proximity and to others who benefit from the estuaries' resources  
32 and functions, even passively. This category of human values relies on so many functions  
33 that the CCMPs vary widely in terms of the services they highlight and target for special  
34 management protection or restoration. Various consequences of climate change will  
35 modify these human values, and a complete assessment of how and by how much for  
36 each of the diverse values would be extensive. Nevertheless, it is clear that implications  
37 of many predictable climate-induced changes in the estuarine ecosystems are serious.  
38 Humans have a public trust stake in all other major management targets of the national  
39 estuaries, including water quality, fish and wildlife, and habitat, so to that extent we  
40 already address issues of perhaps the most importance to human interests in the estuary.  
41 However, other human values not expressly included deserve comment. Conflicts  
42 between private values of people living on estuarine shores and the public trust values are  
43 already evident, but will become increasingly prominent as sea level rises.

44

1 Probably the most serious effects of climate change on private human values associated  
2 with estuaries are those arising from climate-change-driven increases in shoreline  
3 erosion, flooding, and storm damage. Rising sea level and increased incidence of intense  
4 storms brings higher risk of extensive loss of real estate, houses, infrastructure, and even  
5 lives on estuarine shores. The houses and properties at greatest risk are those on coastal  
6 barriers lying between the ocean and outer estuary, because development on such coastal  
7 barriers is exposed during major storms to large waves in addition to storm surge and  
8 high winds. Economic and social costs of major storm events under conditions of  
9 elevated sea level may be staggeringly high, as illustrated by hurricane damage during the  
10 past decade. The management of such risks can already be considered proactive: on  
11 ocean beaches, nourishment is practiced to widen and elevate the beach, and bulkheads  
12 are widely installed on estuarine shorelines. However, each of these defenses is largely  
13 ineffective against major storms, and climate change models project more such storms  
14 developing on a continually warming Earth. Additional proactive management in the  
15 future may involve construction of dikes and levees, designed to withstand major storms  
16 and capable of vertical extension as sea level increases. Such intervention into natural  
17 processes on ocean and estuarine shores is technically feasible, but probably affordable  
18 only where development is intense enough to have created very high aggregate real estate  
19 values. It sacrifices public trust values for private values. Long-term sustainability of  
20 such barriers is questionable. In places experiencing rapid erosion but lacking dense and  
21 expensive development, shoreline erosion is likely to be accepted; retreat and  
22 abandonment will occur. Even before extensive further storm-related losses of houses,  
23 businesses, and infrastructure on ocean and estuarine shores, property values may deflate  
24 as sea level and risks of storm and flood damage increase. Many property insurers are  
25 already cancelling coverage and discontinuing underwriting activities along wide swaths  
26 of the coast in the areas most at risk to hurricanes, from Texas through New York. State  
27 governments are stepping into that void, but policy coverage is far more costly.  
28 Availability of mortgage loans may be the next economic blow to coastal development.  
29 As losses from storms mount further, the financial risks of home ownership on estuarine  
30 shorelines may create decreased demand for property and thus cause declines in real  
31 estate demand and values.

32  
33 Comprehensive planning could be initiated now at federal, tribal, state, and local levels to  
34 act proactively, or opportunistically after major storm events, to modify rules or change  
35 policies to restructure development along coastal barrier and estuarine shorelines to avoid  
36 future loss of life and property, and at the same time protect many environmental assets  
37 and ecosystem services in the interest of the public trust. For example, up-front planning  
38 to prevent rebuilding in hazardous areas of high flood risk and storm damage may be  
39 feasible. Establishing setbacks from the water and buffer widths, based on the new  
40 realities of shoreline erosion and on reliable predictions of shoreline position into the  
41 future, may be possible if advance planning is complete so that rules or policies can be  
42 rapidly implemented after natural disasters. Many programs, such as federal flood  
43 insurance and infrastructure development grants, subsidize development. For  
44 undeveloped coastal barriers, such subsidies were prohibited by the Coastal Barriers  
45 Resources Act, and these prohibitions could be extended to other estuarine and coastal  
46 shorelines now at high and escalating risk. Local land use plans could be modified to

1 influence redevelopment after storms and direct it into less risky areas. Nevertheless,  
2 such plans would result in financial losses to property owners who cannot make full use  
3 of their land. Land trusts and programs to protect water quality, habitat, and fisheries may  
4 provide funding to purchase the most risky shorelines of high resource value.

#### 5 **7.4.2.5 Water Quantity**

6 Many national estuaries, especially those on the Pacific coast where snowmelt is a large  
7 determinant of the hydroperiod, identify water quantity issues among their management  
8 priorities. These issues will become growing concerns directly and indirectly for all  
9 estuaries as climate continues to change. Projected climate changes include modifications  
10 in rainfall amount and temporal patterns of delivery, in processes that influence how  
11 much of that rain falling over the watershed reaches the estuary, and in how much salt  
12 intrusion occurs from altered river flows and rising sea levels penetrating into the estuary.  
13 These climate changes interact strongly with human modifications of the land and  
14 waterways, as well as with patterns of water use and consumption. The models predicting  
15 effects of climate change on rainfall amount are not all in agreement, complicating  
16 adoption of proactive management measures. Thus, complex questions of adaptive  
17 management arise that would help smooth the transition into the predictably different  
18 rainfall future, whose direction of change is uncertain. Many of these questions will have  
19 site (basin)-specific conditions and solutions; however a generic overview is possible.  
20

21 As freshwater delivery patterns change and salt water penetration increases in the  
22 estuaries, many processes that affect important biological and human values will be  
23 affected. Where annual freshwater delivery to the estuary is reduced, and in cases where  
24 only seasonal reductions occur, salt water intrusion into groundwater will influence the  
25 potable yield of aquifers. In the Pacific Northwest, predicted patterns of precipitation  
26 change imply that increased salt water penetration up-estuary will be a summertime  
27 phenomenon when droughts are likely. Fresh water is already a limiting resource globally  
28 (Postel, 1992), and is a growing issue in the United States even in the absence of climate  
29 change. Failure to develop proactive management responses will have serious  
30 consequences on human welfare and economic activity. Proaction includes establishing  
31 or broadening “use containment areas” (where withdrawal is allocated and capped) in the  
32 managed allocation of aquifer yields, so that uses are sustainable even under predicted  
33 climate-related changes in recharge rates and salt water infiltration. This may result in the  
34 need to develop reverse osmosis plants to produce potable water and replace ground  
35 water sources currently tapped to supply communities around estuaries. Further actions  
36 may be needed to modify permitting procedures for affected development, plan for  
37 growing salt water intrusion as sea level rises, and maintain aquifer productivities.  
38 Proactive planning measures for water shortage can include much greater water reuse and  
39 conservation.  
40

41 The enhanced flashiness of runoff from seasonal rainfall events, as they come in discrete,  
42 more intense storms, and fall upon more impervious surface area in the drainage basin,  
43 will have several consequences on human values and on natural resources of management  
44 priority. Greater pulsing of rain runoff reaching the rivers will lead to much higher  
45 frequency and extent of floods after intense storms. The resulting faster downstream

1 flows will erode sediment from estuarine shorelines, and thus reduce the area of shallow  
2 habitats along the shores. In the Pacific Northwest, rain-on-snow events are major  
3 sources of flood waters (Marks *et al.*, 1998; Mote *et al.*, 2003) and are likely to become  
4 more frequent and intense under current climate change scenarios. These events have  
5 economic, health and safety, and social consequences for humans living or working in the  
6 newly enlarged flood plain. Bank stability and riparian habitats are threatened by  
7 increased water velocities in flood flows, which would affect water quality and ultimately  
8 fish and wildlife. When these pulses of water reach the estuary, they bring pollutants  
9 from land as well as nutrient and organic loading that have negative effects on estuarine  
10 functions for relatively long periods of time—on the order of a year or more. In estuaries  
11 where freshwater runoff is increased by global climate change, and in all estuaries where  
12 salt water has penetrated further upstream as sea level rises, the specific locations of  
13 important zones of biogeochemical processes and biotic use will shift in location. These  
14 shifts may have the effects of moving those zones, such as the turbidity maximum zone,  
15 which could influence the performance of anadromous fishes that make use of different  
16 portions of the rivers and estuaries for completing different life history stages and  
17 processes. Accurate modeling of such position changes in estuaries could allow proactive  
18 management to protect fish and wildlife habitats along the rivers and estuaries that will  
19 become critical for propagation of important fish stocks as positional shifts occur.

### 20 **7.4.3 New Approaches to Management in the Context of Climate Change**

21 Historically, little attention has been paid to preserving and enhancing ecosystem  
22 resilience in the management of estuaries and estuarine resources. Resilience refers to the  
23 amount of disturbance that can be tolerated by a socioecological system (*e.g.*, an estuary  
24 plus the social system interacting with it) before it undergoes a fundamental shift in its  
25 structure and functioning (Holling, 1972; Carpenter *et al.*, 2001; Gunderson *et al.*, 2002;  
26 Carpenter and Kinne, 2003). The ability of a system to maintain itself despite gradual  
27 changes in its controlling variables or its disturbance regimes is of particular concern for  
28 those interested in predicting responses to climate change. Importantly, resilience of a  
29 socioecological system results in part from appropriate management strategies. Human  
30 behaviors can reduce resilience in a variety of ways, including increasing flows of  
31 nutrients and pollutants; removing individual species, whole functional groups (*e.g.*,  
32 seagrasses, bivalves), or whole trophic levels (*e.g.*, top predators); and altering the  
33 magnitude, frequency, and duration of disturbance regimes (Carpenter *et al.*, 2001; Folke  
34 *et al.*, 2004). Importantly, climate change has the potential to exacerbate poor  
35 management and exploitation choices and cause undesirable regime shifts in ecosystems,  
36 as seen in the North Sea cod fishery and recent declines in coral reefs (Walther *et al.*,  
37 2002). It is critical that we pursue wise and active adaptive management in order to  
38 prevent undesirable regime changes in response to climate change.

39  
40 In recent years, basic research has dramatically improved our understanding of the  
41 ecosystem characteristics that help promote resilience. For example, the study of the roles  
42 of biodiversity in ecosystem dynamics has demonstrated several examples where  
43 productivity (Tilman and Downing, 1994; Naeem, 2002), biogeochemical functioning  
44 (Solan *et al.*, 2004), and community composition (Duffy, 2002; Bruno *et al.*, 2005) are  
45 stabilized under external stresses if biodiversity is high. Worm *et al.* (2006) likewise

1 demonstrated that many services of marine ecosystems, including fisheries production,  
2 and ecosystem properties, such as resilience, are greater in more diverse systems. Some  
3 evidence exists to suggest that proliferation of non-native species can be suppressed by  
4 ecosystem biodiversity (*e.g.*, Stachowicz, Whitlatch, and Osman, 1999; but see Bruno *et*  
5 *al.*, 2004). These research results have not yet been directly translated into management  
6 of estuarine systems. This represents a potential approach to the goal of enhancing  
7 adaptation in contemplation of climate change. However, acting on the knowledge that  
8 higher biodiversity implies higher resilience represents a challenge for estuaries, where  
9 application of this concept is not necessarily appropriate and where any effectiveness  
10 may last only for a few decades given accelerating sea level rise.

11  
12 Absent system-specific knowledge, some management actions are likely to preserve or  
13 enhance biodiversity (genetic, species, and landscape) and thus may support resilience,  
14 based upon current theory and some empirical evidence. Maintaining high genetic  
15 diversity provides high potential for evolutionary adaptation of species, and provides  
16 short-term resilience against fluctuating environmental conditions (Hughes and  
17 Stachowicz, 2004). This goal may be achieved by establishing diversity refuges, which in  
18 aggregate protect each of a suite of genotypes. Implementing this proactive management  
19 concept depends on knowledge of genetic diversity and spatial patterns of its genotypic  
20 distribution—a task most readily achieved for structural habitat providers, such as marsh  
21 and sea grasses and mangroves. Maintaining or restoring habitat and ecosystem diversity  
22 and spatial heterogeneity is another viable management goal, again most applicable to the  
23 important plants that provide habitat structure. Preserving or restoring landscapes of the  
24 full mix of different systems, and including structural corridors among landscape  
25 elements otherwise fragmented or isolated, can be predicted to enhance resilience by  
26 establishing replication of systems that can enable migrations to sustain biodiversity  
27 across the landscape (Micheli and Peterson, 1999). Structural complexity of vegetation  
28 has been related to its suitability for use of some (endangered) species (Zedler, 1993), so  
29 preserving or restoring the vegetational layering and structure of tidal marshes, seagrass  
30 meadows, and mangroves has potential to stabilize estuary function in the face of climate  
31 perturbations. In addition to salt marshes, oyster reefs have been the target of much active  
32 restoration. Success is mixed, with many reefs failing the test of sustainability because of  
33 insufficient oyster recruitment and early death of adult oysters from disease. Lenihan *et*  
34 *al.* (2001) demonstrated experimentally that the concept of representation applies well to  
35 enhance the resiliency of restored oyster reefs. They constructed more than 100 new  
36 oyster reefs along a depth gradient in the Neuse River Estuary, and showed that when  
37 persistent bottom-water hypoxia developed during summer, reef fishes were able to feed  
38 on reef-associated crustacean prey and survive the widespread mortality on reefs in  
39 deeper water by moving to shallow-water reefs, which were within the surface mixed  
40 layer. Thus, the creation of a system of reefs with representation in different  
41 environmental conditions protected against catastrophic loss of mobile fishes when  
42 eutrophication caused mass mortality of oysters and other benthic invertebrates in deeper  
43 waters.

44  
45 Modifications of natural estuarine ecosystems, communities, and species populations  
46 through various forms of aquaculture represent human perturbations that may affect

1 resilience of the estuarine ecosystem to climate change. For example, the modification  
2 and frequently the reduction in genetic diversity of cultured species can modify the gene  
3 pool of wild stocks, probably reducing their capacity for biological adaptation (Goldburg  
4 and Triplett, 1997). Flooding a system with unnaturally high densities of a cultured  
5 species such as salmon in Maine and Washington, or Pacific oysters in Oregon and  
6 Washington, carries risks of promoting disease and of simplifying the natural species  
7 composition of the fish and benthic communities respectively, thereby losing the  
8 biodiversity and natural balance of the system, which may reduce resilience. On the other  
9 hand, culturing species that are currently depleted relative to natural baselines, such as  
10 oysters and other suspension-feeding bivalve mollusks, can serve to restore missing  
11 ecosystem functions and build resilience to eutrophication (Jackson *et al.*, 2001).  
12 Similarly, culturing seaweeds can result in enhanced uptake of nutrients, thereby  
13 buffering against eutrophication (Goldburg and Triplett, 1997). Impacts of aquaculture in  
14 the estuaries have not been adequately considered in the context of emerging stresses of  
15 climate change, and deserve further integration into the ecosystem context (*e.g.*, Folke  
16 and Kautsky, 1989).

17  
18 Analogous need exists for enhanced understanding of factors that contribute to resilience  
19 of human communities and of human institutions in the context of better preparation for  
20 consequences of changing climate. Both social science and natural science monitoring  
21 may require expansion to track possible fragility, and to look for signs of cracks in the  
22 system, as a prelude to instigating adaptive management to prevent institutional and  
23 ecological disintegration. For example, more attention should be paid to tracking coastal  
24 property values, human population movements, demography, insurance costs,  
25 employment, unemployment, attitudes, and other critical social and economic variables,  
26 in order to indicate need for proactive interventions as climate change stresses increase.  
27 An analogous enhancement of in-depth monitoring of the natural ecosystem also has  
28 merit; this likely would require changes in indicators now monitored to be able to  
29 enhance resilience through active intervention of management when the need becomes  
30 evident. Thus, monitoring in a context of greater understanding of organizational process  
31 in socioeconomic and natural systems is one means of enhancing resilience.

32  
33 Both managers and the general public need better education to raise awareness of how  
34 important management adaptation will be if negative impacts of climate change are to be  
35 averted or minimized. Surely, managers undergo continuing education almost daily as  
36 they conduct their jobs, but targeted training on expected changes within the ecosystem  
37 they are responsible for managing is an emerging necessity. Careful articulation of  
38 uncertainties about the magnitudes, timelines, and consequences of climate change will  
39 also be important. Such education is vital to induce the broad conversations necessary for  
40 public stakeholders and managers to rethink in fundamental ways how we have  
41 previously treated and managed estuaries to provide goods and services of value.

42  
43 Whereas we have used the term “management adaptation” to mean taking management  
44 actions that expressly respond to or anticipate climate change, and that are intended to  
45 counteract or minimize any of its negative implications, natural resource managers and  
46 academics have developed a different process termed “adaptive management” (Walters,

1 1986). Adaptive management in this context (see Chapter 9, Synthesis) refers to  
2 designing and implementing regulations or other management actions as an experiment,  
3 and employing rigorous methods of assessing the impacts of the actions. Monitoring the  
4 status of the response variables provides the data against which a management action's  
5 effectiveness can be judged. This blending of experimental design into management  
6 provides perhaps the most rigorous means of testing implications of management actions.  
7 Adaptive management has the valuable characteristic that it continuously re-evaluates the  
8 basis on which predictions are made, so that as more information becomes available to  
9 reduce the uncertainties over physical and biological changes associated with climate  
10 change, the framework of adaptive management is in place to incorporate that new  
11 knowledge. Use of this approach where feasible in testing management adaptations to  
12 global climate change can provide much-needed insight in reducing uncertainty about  
13 how to modify management to preserve delivery of ecosystem services. Unfortunately,  
14 this approach is very complex and difficult to implement, in large part because of the  
15 multiple and often conflicting interests of important stakeholders.

16  
17 Because its holistic nature includes the full complexity of interactions among  
18 components, the most promising new approach to adapt estuarine management to global  
19 climate change is the further development and implementation of ecosystem-based  
20 management (EBM) of estuarine ecosystem services, in a way that incorporates climate  
21 change expectations (Peterson and Estes, 2001). The concept of EBM has its origins  
22 among land managers, where it is most completely developed (Grumbine, 1994;  
23 Christensen *et al.*, 1996). EBM is an approach to management that strives for a holistic  
24 understanding of the complex of interactions among species, abiotic components, and  
25 humans in the system and evaluates this complexity in pursuit of specific management  
26 goals (Lee, 1993; Christensen *et al.*, 1996). EBM explicitly considers different scales and  
27 thus may serve to meet the challenges of estuarine management, which ranges across  
28 scales from national and state planning and regulation to local implementation actions.  
29 Practical applications of the EBM approach are now evolving for ocean ecosystems  
30 (Pikitch *et al.*, 2004) and hold promise for achieving sustainability of ecosystem services.  
31 Both the Pew Oceans Commission (2003) and the U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy  
32 (2004) have identified EBM as our greatest hope and most urgent need for preserving  
33 ecosystem services from the oceans. The dramatic potential impacts of climate change on  
34 estuarine ecosystems imply many transformations that simply developing and applying  
35 EBM cannot reverse, but development of synthetic models for management may help  
36 optimize estuarine ecosystem services in a changing world. Ecosystems are sufficiently  
37 complex that no practical management model could include all components and  
38 processes, so the more simplified representations of the estuarine system might best be  
39 used to generate hypotheses about the effectiveness of alternative management actions  
40 that are then tested through rigorous protocols of adaptive management. One widely  
41 advocated approach to implementing EBM is the use of marine protected areas, which  
42 does not require an elaborate understanding of ecosystem structure and dynamics  
43 (Halpern, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003; Micheli *et al.*, 2004). This approach may be  
44 applicable to solving important management challenges in estuaries, especially where  
45 fishery exploitation and collateral habitat injury exist; clearly, these issues apply to many  
46 estuarine systems.



1 **7.4.4 Prioritization of Management Responses**

2 Setting priorities is important to the development of management adaptations to respond  
3 to global climate change. Because responsibilities for managing estuaries are scattered  
4 among so many different levels of government and among so many different  
5 organizations within levels of government, building the requisite integrated plan of  
6 management responses will be difficult. EBM is designed to bring these disparate groups  
7 together to achieve the integration and coordination of efforts (Peterson and Estes, 2001).  
8 However, implementing EBM for national estuaries and other estuaries may require  
9 changes in governance structures and, even then, may prove politically impractical. The  
10 State of North Carolina has made progress in bringing together diverse state agencies  
11 with management authority for aspects of estuarine fisheries habitats in its Coastal  
12 Habitat Protection Plan, which approaches an EBM plan. However, this governance  
13 method is targeted toward producing fish, rather than the complete scope of critical  
14 estuarine functions and broad suite of estuarine goods and services. This model approach  
15 also lacks a mechanism to engage the relevant federal authorities. The national estuaries  
16 bring to the table a wider range of managers and stakeholders, including those from  
17 federal, tribal, state, and local levels, as are contemplated in the genesis of an EBM plan.  
18 However, the CCMPs that arise from the national estuaries do not carry any force of  
19 regulation and often lack explicit numerical targets, instead expressing wish lists and  
20 goals for improvements that are probably unattainable without substantially more  
21 resources and powers. Perhaps the national estuaries could provide the basis for a new  
22 integrative governance structure for estuaries that could be charged with setting priorities  
23 among the many management challenges triggered by climate change.

24  
25 Factors that probably would dictate priorities are numerous, including socioeconomic  
26 consequences of inaction, feasibility of effective management adaptations, the level of  
27 certainty about the projected consequence of climate change, the time frame in which  
28 action is best taken, the popular and political support for action, and the reversibility of  
29 changes that may occur in the absence of effective management response. Clearly, the  
30 processes that threaten to produce the greatest loss of both natural ecosystem services and  
31 human values are the rise of sea level and ascendancy of intense storms, with  
32 implications for land inundation, property loss, habitat loss, water quality degradation,  
33 declines in fisheries and in wildlife populations associated with shallow shoreline  
34 habitats, and salt water intrusion into aquifers. These issues attract the most attention in  
35 the media and from the public, but the global capping of greenhouse gases may not  
36 represent a feasible management response. Thus, removing and preventing engineered  
37 shoreline armoring such as bulkheads, levees, and dikes, combined with shoreline  
38 property acquisition, may be the focus of discussion if their costs are not an  
39 overwhelming impediment. Because the complexity of intermingled responsibilities for  
40 managing interacting components inhibits establishment of EBM, attention to modifying  
41 governance structures to meet this crisis would also rank high among priorities.

1 **7.5 Conclusions**

2 **7.5.1 Management Response**

3 (1) Maintaining the status quo in management of estuarine ecosystems would result in  
4 substantial losses of ecosystem services as climate change progresses.

5  
6 (2) In the absence of effective management adaptation, climate-related failures will  
7 appear in all of the most important management goals identified in the CCMPs of  
8 national estuaries: maintaining water quality, sustaining fish and wildlife populations,  
9 preserving habitat, protecting human values and services, and fulfilling water quantity  
10 needs.

11  
12 (3) Changes in the climate system would continue into the future even if global  
13 reductions in greenhouse gas emission were to be implemented today; thus, impacts of  
14 climate change and sea level rise, in particular, are inevitable. As an example, climate  
15 change impacts on sea level are already evident in the growing demand for and costs of  
16 beach nourishment.

17  
18 (4) Many of the anticipated consequences of climate change occur via mechanisms  
19 involving interactions among stressors, and therefore may not be widely appreciated by  
20 policy makers, managers, stakeholders, and the public. The magnitude of such interactive  
21 effects typically declines as each stressor is better controlled, so enhanced management  
22 of traditional estuarine stressors has value as a management adaptation to climate change  
23 as well.

24  
25 (5) Among the consequences of climate change that threaten estuarine ecosystem  
26 services, the most serious involve interactions between climate-dependent processes and  
27 human responses to climate change. In particular, conflicts arise between sustaining  
28 public trust values and private property, in that current policies protecting private  
29 shoreline property become increasingly injurious to public trust values as climate changes  
30 and sea level rises further.

31  
32 (6) Many management adaptations to climate change to preserve estuarine services can  
33 be achieved at all levels of government at modest cost. One major form of adaptation  
34 involves recognizing the projected consequences of sea level rise and then applying  
35 policies that create buffers to anticipate associated consequences. An important example  
36 would be redefining riverine flood hazard zones to match the projected expansion of  
37 flooding frequency and extent.

38  
39 (7) Other management adaptations can be designed to build resilience of ecological and  
40 social systems. These adaptations include choosing only those sites for habitat restoration  
41 that allow natural recession landward, thus providing resilience to sea level rise.

42  
43 (8) Management adaptations to climate change can occur on three different time scales:  
44 (a) reactive measures taken in response to observed negative impacts; (b) immediate  
45 development of plans for management adaptation to be implemented later, either when an

1 indicator signals that delay can occur no longer, or in the wake of a disastrous  
2 consequence that provides a window of socially feasible opportunity; or (c) immediate  
3 implementation of proactive policies. The factors determining which of these time frames  
4 is appropriate for any given management adaptation include balancing costs of  
5 implementation with the magnitude of risks of injurious consequences under the status  
6 quo of management; the degree of reversibility of negative consequences of climate  
7 change; recognition and understanding of the problem by managers and the public; the  
8 uncertainty associated with the projected consequences of climate change; the timetable  
9 on which change is anticipated; and the extent of political, institutional, and financial  
10 impediments.

11  
12 (9) A critical goal of monitoring is to establish and follow indicators that signal approach  
13 toward an ecosystem threshold that—once passed—implies passage of the system into an  
14 alternative state from which conversion back is difficult. One example of such ecosystem  
15 conversions involves nitrogen-induced conversion from an estuary dominated by  
16 submersed benthic grasses to an alternative dominated by seaweeds and planktonic  
17 microalgae. Avoiding conversion into such alternative states, often maintained by  
18 positive feedbacks, is one major motivation for implementing proactive management  
19 adaptation. This is especially critical if the transition is irreversible or very difficult and  
20 costly to reverse, and if the altered state delivers dramatically fewer ecosystem services.  
21 Work to establish environmental indicators is already being done in national estuaries,  
22 and can be used to monitor climate change impacts.

23  
24 (10) One critically important management challenge is to implement actions to achieve  
25 orderly retreat of development from shorelines at high risk of erosion and flooding, or to  
26 preclude development of undeveloped shorelines at high risk. Such proactive  
27 management actions have been inhibited in the past by: (a) uncertainty over or denial of  
28 climate change and its implications; (b) failures to include true economic, social, and  
29 environmental costs of present policies allowing and subsidizing such risky development;  
30 and (c) legal tenets of private property rights. One possible proactive management option  
31 would be to establish and enforce “rolling easements” along estuarine shorelines as sea  
32 level continues to rise, thereby sustaining the public ownership of tide lands.

33  
34 (11) Management adaptation to climate change may include ending public subsidies that  
35 now support risky development on coastal barrier and estuarine shores at high risk of  
36 flooding and storm damage as sea level rises further and intense storms are more  
37 common. Although the flood insurance system as a whole may be actuarially sound,  
38 current statutes provide people along the water’s edge in eroding areas of highest risk  
39 with artificially low rates, subsidized by the flood insurance policies of people in  
40 relatively safe areas. Ending such subsidization of high-risk developments would  
41 represent a form of management adaptation to sea level rise. The federal Coastal Barriers  
42 Resources Act provides some guidance for eliminating such subsidies for public  
43 infrastructure and private development, although this act applies only to a list of  
44 undeveloped coastal barriers and would require extension to all barriers and to estuarine  
45 shorelines to enhance its effectiveness as an adaptation to climate change.

46

1 (12) Building upon ongoing efforts to operationalize ecosystem-based management  
2 (EBM) for oceans, analogous research is required for estuarine ecosystems. This research  
3 needs to address a major intrinsic impediment to EBM of estuarine services, which is the  
4 absence of a synthetic governance structure that unites now disparate management  
5 authorities, stakeholders, and the public. The U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy appealed  
6 for just this type of modification of governance structure to serve to implement EBM.  
7 EBM is necessary to facilitate management of interacting stressors, an almost ubiquitous  
8 condition for estuaries, because under present governance schemes management authority  
9 is partitioned among separate agencies or entities. Although national estuaries lack  
10 regulatory authority, they do unite most, if not all, stakeholders and could conceivably be  
11 reconstructed as quite different entities to develop and implement EBM. Such  
12 coordination among diverse management authorities must involve land managers in order  
13 to incorporate a major source of inputs to estuaries. Under changing climate, scales of  
14 management actions ultimately extend upward to include need for international  
15 collaboration, placing even greater challenges to implementation of EBM.  
16

17 (13) Using the Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuarine Program as a case study illustrates  
18 several management challenges posed by changing climate (see Case Study Summary  
19 7.1). Risks of rising sea level, together with increases in intense storms, pose a serious  
20 threat to the integrity of the Outer Banks and thus to the character of the Albemarle and  
21 Pamlico Sounds, which are now sheltered and brackish, possessing little astronomical  
22 tide. A state analog to EBM, the Coastal Habitat Protection Plan, unifies state agencies to  
23 provide synthetic protection for fish habitats. This provides a model on which to base  
24 further development and application of estuarine EBM. The Legislature of the State of  
25 North Carolina established a study commission to report on the consequences of climate  
26 change and to make recommendations for management responses. This procedure too can  
27 form a model for other states and the federal government through the NEP. Although the  
28 Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary is among the estuaries most sensitive to climate  
29 change, in large part because of the huge area of low-lying wetlands along the estuarine  
30 shorelines, and has an active management planning process in place, the absence of  
31 explicit adaptive management consideration in its CCMP reflects a need for attention to  
32 this issue by all national estuaries.  
33

34 (14) Include climate change sensitivity, resilience, and adaptation responses as priorities  
35 on all relevant funding programs at state and federal levels. In the absence of such  
36 actions, for example, climate impacts on estuarine wetlands will likely violate the  
37 national “no-net-loss of wetlands” policy, which underwrites the current application of  
38 the Clean Water Act, in two ways: (a) wetland loss due to climate change will  
39 increasingly compound the continuing loss of wetlands due to development and  
40 inadequate mitigation; and; (b) measures used to protect human infrastructure from  
41 climate impacts will prevent wetland adaptation to climate change.  
42

43 (15) Review all federal and state environmental programs to assess whether projected  
44 consequences of climate change have been considered adequately, and whether adaptive  
45 management needs to be inserted to achieve programmatic goals. For example, Jimerfield  
46 *et al.* conclude that “There clearly needs to be [a] comprehensive approach by federal

1 agencies and cooperating scientists to address climate change in the endangered species  
2 recovery context. The current weak and piece-meal approach will waste precious  
3 resources and not solve the problem we are facing.”<sup>16</sup>

## 4 **7.5.2 Research Priorities**

### 5 **7.5.2.1 Conceptual Gaps in Understanding**

6 (1) There is urgent need for further study of factors affecting sea level rise that may be  
7 significant, but now remain so uncertain that they cannot yet be included in IPCC  
8 projections. This especially includes enhancing our understanding of processes and rates  
9 of melting of Antarctic and Greenland ice sheets as a function of changing temperature  
10 and other coupled climatic conditions. Furthermore, it is important to resolve  
11 uncertainties about the fate of water in liquid phase released from the Greenland ice  
12 sheet, which involves the ability to project how land surface levels will respond to release  
13 from the weight of ice cover.

14  
15 (2) Our understanding of processes affecting elevation change in land masses needs to be  
16 enhanced generally, so that risk of flooding, shoreline erosion, and storm damage can be  
17 better based upon geography-specific predictions of change in relative sea level, which  
18 combines rate of eustatic sea level change with land subsidence or emergence rate.

19  
20 (3) Quantitative monitoring and research should be established in some model estuarine  
21 systems to develop mechanistic understanding of changes projected as consequences of  
22 climate change. Many climate change drivers (*e.g.*, CO<sub>2</sub> concentration, ocean temperature  
23 at the surface and with depth, sea level) are currently monitored. However, projected  
24 consequences (*e.g.*, shoreline erosion rates; estuarine physical circulation patterns; water  
25 column stratification and extent of hypoxia; species range extensions and subsequent  
26 consequences of interactions within these new combinations of predators, prey, and  
27 competitors; the incidence and impacts of disease and parasitism) require new targeted  
28 monitoring and research efforts to fill the many conceptual gaps in our understanding of  
29 these processes.

30  
31 (4) Integrated, landscape-scale numerical modeling will have to become a fundamental  
32 tool to predict potential estuarine responses to the complex and often interacting stressors  
33 induced by climate change. For instance, in most cases significantly modified hydrology  
34 and sediment transport predictions will need to be linked at the estuarine interface to sea  
35 level and storm (wind/wave regime) predictions in order to evaluate the interactive  
36 effects on sediment accretion and erosion effects in estuarine marshes. Models will have  
37 to take into account complex aspects such as changes in contribution of snowmelt and  
38 rain-on-snow to timing, magnitude and hydroperiod of river discharges (*e.g.*, Mote,  
39 2006), changes in storm tracks (*e.g.*, Salathé, 2006), changes in sediment loading to and  
40 circulation within estuaries, and how river management and regulation will be a factor  
41 (Sanchez-Arcilla and Jimenez, 1997) Ultimately, these models will need to be tied to  
42 coastal management models and other tools that allow assessment of both climate change  
43 and human response and infrastructure response.

44

1 (5) Research is needed on alternative implementation mechanisms, costs, and feasibility  
2 of achieving some form of coastal realignment, probably involving rolling easements.  
3 This would include legal, social, and cultural considerations in alternative methods of  
4 resolving or minimizing conflicts between public trust and private property values, in  
5 context of building resilience to climate change by requiring rolling easements for  
6 development in now largely undeveloped waterfront and riparian areas at risk of  
7 flooding, erosion, and storm damage.

#### 8 **7.5.2.2 Data Gaps**

9 There is great need for socioeconomic research and monitoring on how social and  
10 economic variables and systems are changing, and likely to change further, in coastal  
11 regions as sea level rises. This includes developing better information on economic,  
12 social, and environmental costs of estuarine-relevant management policies under global  
13 climate change. Economic and social impacts of the growing abandonment of risky  
14 coastal areas by property insurers, and the possible future challenges in finding mortgage  
15 loans in such regions, may be important inputs into decisions on regulating development  
16 and redevelopment of such areas.

#### 17 **7.5.2.3 Governance Issues**

18 (1) As stated in Management Response recommendation 12 above, a synthetic  
19 governance structure that unites now disparate management authorities, stakeholders and  
20 the public may be needed to address major impediments to EBM of estuarine services.  
21 Because of its reliance on stakeholder involvement, a restructured NEP could represent a  
22 vehicle for developing and implementing EBM.

23  
24 (2) EBM of estuaries involves at minimum an approach that considers the entire drainage  
25 basin. Management plans to control estuarine water quality parameters sensitive to  
26 eutrophication, for example, must take a basin-wide approach to develop understanding  
27 of how nutrient loading at all positions along the watershed is transferred downstream to  
28 the estuary. Basin-scale management by its very nature thus prospers from uniting local  
29 governments across the entire watershed to develop partnerships that coordinate rule  
30 development and implementation strategies. Often trading programs (*e.g.*, non-point  
31 source pollution “credits”) are available that allow economies to be realized in achieving  
32 management goals. To this end of facilitating management adaptation to climate change,  
33 new ecologically based partnerships of local governments could be promoted and  
34 supported.

#### 35 **7.5.2.4 Tool Needs**

36 (1) New and enhanced research funds need to be invested in development and  
37 implementation of estuarine observing systems that are currently in a planning stage,  
38 such as NEON, ORION, US IOOS, and others. These observing systems need full  
39 integration with global coastal observing programs and the Global Earth Observation  
40 System of Systems. Whereas physical and chemical parameters lend themselves to  
41 automated monitoring by remote sensing and observing system platforms, more basic  
42 technological research is also necessary to allow monitoring of key biological variables

1 as part of these observing systems. Furthermore, it is critical that current efforts to  
2 develop monitoring systems in coastal ocean waters be brought into estuaries and up into  
3 their watersheds, where the largest human populations concentrate and where ecosystem  
4 values are most imperiled.

5  
6 (2) New, more complete, interdisciplinary models are needed to project social, economic,  
7 and cultural consequences of alternative management scenarios under projected  
8 consequences of climate change. These models include decision tools that are accessible  
9 by and applicable to managers and policy makers at all levels of government.

10  
11 (3) New tools are required to enhance local capacity for developing and implementing  
12 management adaptations in response to climate change, including especially the ability to  
13 use alternative scenarios to produce more effective local land-use planning.

14  
15 (4) New tools are not enough: older, well-accepted tools must be used more effectively.  
16 Government agencies responsible for monitoring the environment have been reducing  
17 their commitment to this mission because of funding cuts. Extending historical records of  
18 environmental conditions is now even more urgent as a means of detecting climate  
19 change.

#### 20 **7.5.2.5 Education**

21 (1) Urgent need exists to inform policy makers, managers, stakeholders, and the public  
22 about the specific evidence of climate change and its predicted consequences on  
23 estuaries. Education on the scale necessary will require new initiatives that make use of a  
24 variety of media tools, and that provide the public with accurate and unbiased  
25 information. Effective efforts must involve diverse suites of educational media including  
26 information delivery on evolving platforms such as the internet and cell phones. The  
27 information cannot reach far enough or rapidly enough if restricted to traditional delivery  
28 in school curricula and classes, but must propagate through churches, civic organizations,  
29 and entertainment media. Such education is particularly challenging and requires creative  
30 approaches.

31  
32 (2) One goal of education about implications of climate change for estuaries is to build  
33 capacity for local citizen involvement in decision making. This is particularly important  
34 because of the dramatic changes required to move from management-as-usual to adaptive  
35 management. Especially challenging is the process of reconsideration of developing and  
36 redeveloping shorelines at risk of flooding, erosion, and storm damage.

37  
38 (3) Some countries and states provide periodic assessments of the state of their  
39 environment. Monitoring data from many national estuaries often now serve this goal  
40 when placed in a sufficiently long time frame that extends back before establishment of  
41 the NEP. Similar scoreboards relating the status of stressors associated with climate  
42 change and of the consequences of climate change might be valuable additions to  
43 websites for all national estuaries and for our country's estuaries more broadly. To  
44 illustrate these aspects of climate change, longer-term records are required than those  
45 typically found in state of environment reports. One simple example would be provision

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Estuaries**

- 1 of empirical data on sea level from local recording stations. Similarly, maps of historical
- 2 shoreline movement would provide the public with a visual indication of site-specific
- 3 risks. Historical hurricane tracks are similarly informative and compelling.



1

2 **7.6 Appendix**

3 **7.6.1 Federal Legislation for Protection and Restoration of Estuaries**

LEGISLATION	AS IT PERTAINS TO ESTUARIES	Link
<b>Clean Water Act</b> (1972, 1977, 1981, 1987)	Authorizes EPA to implement pollution control programs; established the basic structure for regulating discharges of pollutants and requirements to set water quality standards for all contaminants in surface waters.	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/region5/water/cwa.htm">http://www.epa.gov/region5/water/cwa.htm</a>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Sec. 320 National Estuary Program</b> (1987)</li> </ul>	Authorizes EPA to develop plans for improving or maintaining water quality in estuaries of national significance including both point and nonpoint sources of pollution.	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/">http://www.epa.gov/owow/estuaries/</a>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Sec. 404. Permits for Dredged or Fill Materials</b> (1987)</li> </ul>	Authorizes the Corps of Engineers (U.S. Army) to issue permits for the discharge of dredged or fill material into the navigable waters at specified disposal sites.	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/owow/wetlands/">http://www.epa.gov/owow/wetlands/</a>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SEC. 601 State Water Pollution Control Revolving Funds</b> (1987)</li> </ul>	Authorizes EPA to capitalize state grants for water pollution control revolving funds for (1) for construction of public treatment facilities (2) for management program under section 319 (nonpoint source), and (3) for conservation and management plans under section 320 (NEP).	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/owm/cwfinance/">http://www.epa.gov/owm/cwfinance/</a>
<b>Coastal Zone Management Act</b> (1972)	Provides grants to states that develop and implement federally approved coastal zone management plans; allows states with approved plans the right to review federal actions; authorizes the National Estuarine Research Reserve System.	<a href="http://www.legendary.noaa.gov/Legislation/czma.html">http://www.legendary.noaa.gov/Legislation/czma.html</a>

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Estuaries**

LEGISLATION	AS IT PERTAINS TO ESTUARIES	Link
National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) (1969)	Establishes national environmental policy for the protection, maintenance, and enhancement of the environment; integrates environmental values into decision making processes; requires federal agencies to integrate environmental values into their decision making processes by considering the environmental impacts of their proposed actions and reasonable alternatives to those actions.	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/compliance/nepa/">http://www.epa.gov/compliance/nepa/</a>
Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (1996, amended)	Provides for the conservation and management of the fishery resources; ensures conservation; facilitates long-term protection of essential fish habitats; recognizes that one of the greatest long-term threats to the viability of fisheries is the continuing loss of marine, estuarine, and other aquatic habitats; promotes increased attention to habitat considerations.	<a href="http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/">http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/</a>
Endangered Species Act (1973)	Provides a means for ecosystems, upon which endangered species and threatened species depend, to be conserved; applicants for permits for activities that might harm endangered species must develop a Habitat Conservation Plan, designed to offset any harmful effects of the proposed activity.	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/Endangered/">http://www.fws.gov/Endangered/</a>
National Flood Insurance Program (1968)	Component of FEMA that makes federally backed flood insurance available to homeowners, renters, and business owners in ~20,000 communities who voluntarily adopt floodplain management ordinances to restrict development in areas subject to flooding, storm surge or coastal erosion; identifies and maps the Nation's floodplains.	<a href="http://www.fema.gov/business/nfip/">http://www.fema.gov/business/nfip/</a>

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **National Estuaries**

LEGISLATION	AS IT PERTAINS TO ESTUARIES	Link
Nonindigenous Aquatic Nuisance Prevention and Control Act (1990)	Provides means to prevent and control infestations of the coastal inland waters of the United States by nonindigenous aquatic nuisance species, control of ballast water, and allows for development of voluntary State Aquatic Nuisance Species Management Plans.	<a href="http://nas.er.usgs.gov/links/control.asp">http://nas.er.usgs.gov/links/control.asp</a>
Coastal Barrier Resources Act (CBRA) (1982)	Designates various undeveloped coastal barrier islands for inclusion in the Coastal Barrier Resources System. Areas so designated are made ineligible for direct or indirect federal financial assistance that might support development, including flood insurance, except for emergency life-saving activities.	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/habitatconservation/coastal_barrier.htm">http://www.fws.gov/habitatconservation/coastal_barrier.htm</a>

1  
2  
3

1

## 2 **7.7 References**

3 **Alber**, M. and J.E. Sheldon, 1999: Use of a date-specific method to examine variability  
4 in the flushing times of Georgia estuaries. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science*,  
5 **49(4)**, 469-482.

6 **Alber**, M., 2002: A conceptual model of estuarine freshwater inflow management.  
7 *Estuaries*, **25(6)**, 1246-1261.

8 **Anderson**, T.H. and G.T. Taylor, 2001: Nutrient pulses, plankton blooms, and seasonal  
9 hypoxia in western Long Island Sound. *Estuaries*, **24(2)**, 228-243.

10 **Arora**, V.K., F.H.S. Chiew, and R.B. Grayson, 2000: The use of river runoff to test  
11 CSIRO 9 land surface scheme in the Amazon and Mississippi River Basins.  
12 *International Journal of Climatology*, **20(10)**, 1077-1096.

13 **Baird**, D., R.R. Christian, C.H. Peterson, and G.A. Johnson, 2004: Consequences of  
14 hypoxia on estuarine ecosystem function: energy diversion from consumers to  
15 microbes. *Ecological Applications*, **14(3)**, 805-822.

16 **Barry**, J.P., C.H. Baxter, R.D. Sagarin, and S.E. Gilman, 1995: Climate-related, long-  
17 term faunal changes in a California Rocky intertidal community. *Science*,  
18 **267(5198)**, 672-675.

19 **Bearden**, D.M., 2001: *National Estuary Program: a Collaborative Approach to*  
20 *Protecting Coastal Water Quality*. CRS Report for Congress #97-644,  
21 Congressional Research Service.

22 **Beaugrand**, G., P.C. Reid, F. Ibanez, J.A. Lindley, and M. Edwards, 2002:  
23 Reorganization of North Atlantic Marine Copepod biodiversity and climate.  
24 *Science*, **296**, 1692-1694.

25 **Boesch**, D.F., M.N. Josselyn, A.J. Mehta, J.T. Morris, W.K. Nuttle, C.A. Simenstad, and  
26 D.J.P. Swift, 1994: *Scientific Assessment of Coastal Wetland Loss, Restoration*  
27 *and Management in Louisiana*. Coastal Education and Research Foundation, pp.  
28 1-103.

29 **Boicourt**, W.C., 1992: Influences of circulation processes on dissolved oxygen in the  
30 Chesapeake Bay, In: *Oxygen Dynamics in Chesapeake Bay: a Synthesis of*  
31 *Research*, [Smith, D.E., M. Leffler, and G. Mackiernan (eds.)]. University of  
32 Maryland Sea Grant College Publications, College Park, Maryland, pp. 1-234.

- 1 **Borsuk**, M.E., D. Higdon, C.A. Stow, and K.H. Reckhow, 2001: A Bayesian hierarchical  
2 model to predict benthic oxygen demand from organic matter loading in estuaries  
3 and coastal zones. *Ecological Modelling*, **143(3)**, 165-181.
- 4 **Boynton**, W.R., J.H. Garber, R. Summers, and W.M. Kemp, 1995: Inputs,  
5 transformations, and transport of nitrogen and phosphorus in Chesapeake Bay and  
6 selected tributaries. *Estuaries*, **18(1)**, 285-314.
- 7 **Bozek**, C.M. and D.M. Burdick, 2005: Impacts of seawalls on saltmarsh plant  
8 communities in the Great Bay Estuary, New Hampshire USA. *Wetlands Ecology  
9 and Management*, **13(5)**, 553-568.
- 10 **Breitburg**, D., S. Seitzinger, and J. Sanders, 1999: *The Effects of Multiple Stressors on  
11 Freshwater and Marine Ecosystems*. American Society of Limnology and  
12 Oceanography.
- 13 **Breitburg**, D.L., C. A. Baxter, R. W. Hatfield, R. W. Howarth, C. G. Jones, G. M.  
14 Lovett, and C. Wigand, 1998: Understanding effects of multiple stressors: ideas  
15 and challenges, In: *Successes, Limitations, and Frontiers in Ecosystem Science*,  
16 [Pace, M.L. and P.M. Groffman (eds.)]. Springer, New York, pp. 416-431.
- 17 **Breitburg**, D.L., L.D. Coen, M.W. Luckenbach, R. Mann, M. Posey, and J.A. Wesson,  
18 2000: Oyster reef restoration: convergence of harvest and conservation strategies.  
19 *Journal of Shellfish Research*, **19(1)**, 371-377.
- 20 **Breitburg**, D.L. and G. F. Riedel, 2005: Multiple stressors in marine systems, In: *Marine  
21 Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse,  
22 E. and L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Marine Conservation Biology Institute.
- 23 **Breitburg**, D.L., J.G. Sanders, C.C. Gilmour, C.A. Hatfield, R.W. Osman, G.F. Riedel,  
24 S.P. Seitzinger, and K.G. Sellner, 1999: Variability in responses to nutrients and  
25 trace elements, and transmission of stressor effects through an estuarine food web.  
26 *Limnology and Oceanography*, **44(3)**, 837-863.
- 27 **Bricker**, S.B., C.G. Clement, D.E. Pirhalla, S.P. Orlando, and D.R.G. Farrow, 1999:  
28 *National Estuarine Eutrophication Assessment: Effects of Nutrient Enrichment in  
29 the Nation's Estuaries*. National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, National  
30 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp. 1-71.
- 31 **Brinson**, M.M., 1993: *A Hydrogeomorphic Classification for Wetlands*. Technical Report  
32 WRP-DE-4, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station; Available from  
33 National Technical Information Service, Vicksburg, Mississippi.

- 1 **Brinson**, M.M. and R.R. Christian, 1999: Stability and response of *Juncus roemerianus*  
2 patches in a salt marsh. *Wetlands*, **19(1)**, 65-70.
- 3 **Brinson**, M.M., R.R. Christian, and L.K. Blum, 1995: Multiple states in the sea-level  
4 induced transition from terrestrial forest to estuary. *Estuaries*, **18(4)**, 648-659.
- 5 **Brown**, J.J., 1993: The State and Indian nations' water resource planning. *Occasional*  
6 *Paper*, **19**.
- 7 **Brown**, J.J., 1994: Treaty rights: twenty years after the Boldt decision. *Wicazo Sa*  
8 *Review*, **10(2)**, 1-16.
- 9 **Bruno**, J.F., K.E. Boyer, J.E. Duffy, S.C. Lee, and J.S. Kertesz, 2005: Effects of  
10 macroalgal species identity and richness on primary production in benthic marine  
11 communities. *Ecology Letters*, **8(11)**, 1165-1174.
- 12 **Bruno**, J.F., C.W. Kennedy, T.A. Rand, and M.B. Grant, 2004: Landscape-scale patterns  
13 of biological invasions in shoreline plant communities. *Oikos*, **107(3)**, 531-540.
- 14 **Burkett**, V., D. Wilcox, R. Stottlemeyer, W. Barrow, D. Fagre, J. Baron, J. Price, J.L.  
15 Nielsen, C.D. Allen, D.L. Peterson, G. Ruggerone, and T. Doyle, 2005: Nonlinear  
16 dynamics in ecosystem response to climatic change: case studies and policy  
17 implications. *Ecological Complexity*, **2(4)**, 357-394.
- 18 **Buzzelli**, C.P., R.A. Luettich Jr, S.P. Powers, C.H. Peterson, J.E. McNinch, J.L.  
19 Pinckney, and H.W. Paerl, 2002: Estimating the spatial extent of bottom-water  
20 hypoxia and habitat degradation in a shallow estuary. *Marine Ecology Progress*  
21 *Series*, **230**, 103-112.
- 22 **Caldeira**, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2003: Anthropogenic carbon and ocean pH. *Nature*,  
23 **425(6956)**, 365-365.
- 24 **Callaway**, J.C., J.A. Nyman, and R.D. DeLaune, 1996: Sediment accretion in coastal  
25 wetlands: a review and a simulation model of processes. *Current Topics in*  
26 *Wetland Biogeochemistry*, **2**, 2-23.
- 27 **Carpenter**, S., B. Walker, J.M. Anderies, and N. Abel, 2001: From metaphor to  
28 neasurement: resilience of what to what? *Ecosystems*, **4(8)**, 765-781.
- 29 **Carpenter**, S.R. and O. Kinne, 2003: *Regime Shifts in Lake Ecosystems: Pattern and*  
30 *Variation*. International Ecology Institute, Luhe, Germany.

- 1 **Carpenter, S.R., D. Ludwig, and W.A. Brock, 1999:** Management of eutrophication for  
2 lakes subject to potentially irreversible change. *Ecological Applications*, **9(3)**,  
3 751-771.
- 4 **Carson, R., 1962:** *Silent Spring*. Houghton Mifflin.
- 5 **Chmura, G.L., S.C. Anisfeld, D.R. Cahoon, and J.C. Lynch, 2003:** Global carbon  
6 sequestration in tidal, saline wetland soils. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **17(4)**.
- 7 **Christensen, N.L., A.M. Bartuska, J.H. Brown, S. Carpenter, C. D'Antonio, R. Francis,**  
8 **J.F. Franklin, J.A. MacMahon, R.F. Noss, D.J. Parsons, C.H. Peterson, M.G.**  
9 **Turner, and R.G. Woodmansee, 1996:** The report of the Ecological Society of  
10 America Committee on the scientific basis for ecosystem management.  
11 *Ecological Applications*, **6(3)**, 665-691.
- 12 **Christian, R.R., L. Stasavich, C. Thomas, and M. M. Brinson, 2000:** Reference is a  
13 moving target in sea-level controlled wetlands, In: *Concepts and Controversies in*  
14 *Tidal Marsh Ecology*, [Weinstein, M.P. and D.A. Kreeger (eds.)]. Kluwer Press,  
15 The Netherlands, pp. 805-825.
- 16 **Church, J.A., 2001:** How fast are sea levels rising? *Science*, **294**, 802-803.
- 17 **Cloern, J.E., A.E. Alpine, B.E. Cole, R.L.J. Wong, J.F. Arthur, and M.D. Ball, 1983:**  
18 River discharge controls phytoplankton dynamics in the Northern San Francisco  
19 Bay Estuary. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science*, **16(4)**.
- 20 **Coastal Protection and Restoration Authority of Louisiana, 2007:** *Louisiana's*  
21 *Comprehensive Master Plan for a Sustainable Coast*. Coastal Protection and  
22 Restoration Authority of Louisiana.
- 23 **Coen, L.D., M. W. Luckenbach, and D. L. Breitburg, 1999:** The role of oyster reefs as  
24 essential fish habitat: a review of current knowledge and some new perspectives,  
25 [Benaka, L.R. (ed.)]. Bethesda, Maryland, pp. 438-454.
- 26 **Committee on Mitigating Shore Erosion along Sheltered Coasts, National Research**  
27 **Council, 2006:** *Mitigating Shore Erosion Along Sheltered Coasts*. pp.1-188.
- 28 **Committee on Mitigating Wetland Losses, National Research Council, 2001:**  
29 *Compensating for Wetland Losses Under the Clean Water Act*. National  
30 Academies Press, Washington, DC.

- 1 **Conley**, D.J., S. Markager, J. Andersen, T. Ellermann, and L.M. Svendsen, 2002: Coastal  
2 eutrophication and the Danish national aquatic monitoring and assessment  
3 program. *Estuaries*, **25(4)**, 848-861.
- 4 **Cooper**, S.R. and G.S. Brush, 1993: A 2,500-year history of anoxia and eutrophication in  
5 Chesapeake Bay. *Estuaries*, **16**, 617-626.
- 6 **Cooper**, S.R., S.K. McGlothlin, M. Madritch, and D.L. Jones, 2004: Paleoecological  
7 evidence of human impacts on the Neuse and Pamlico Estuaries of North  
8 Carolina, USA. *Estuaries*, **27(4)**, 617-633.
- 9 **Copeland**, B.J., 1966: Effects of decreased river flow on estuarine ecology. *Journal*  
10 *Water Pollution Control Federation*, **38**, 1831-1839.
- 11 **Costello**, J.H., B.K. Sullivan, and D.J. Gifford, 2006: A physical-biological interaction  
12 underlying variable phenological responses to climate change by coastal  
13 zooplankton. *Journal of Plankton Research*, **28(11)**, 1099-1105.
- 14 **Cropper**, C.R., 2005: The study of endocrine-disrupting compounds: past approaches  
15 and new directions. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **45**, 194-2000.
- 16 **Curtis**, P.S., L.M. Balduman, B.G. Drake, and D.F. Whigham, 1990: Elevated  
17 Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Effects on Belowground Processes in C3 and C4 Estuarine  
18 Marsh Communities. *Ecology*, **71(5)**, 2001-2006.
- 19 **Dacey**, J.W.H., B.G. Drake, and M.J. Klug, 1994: Stimulation of methane emission by  
20 carbon dioxide enrichment of marsh vegetation. *Nature*, **370(6484)**, 47-49.
- 21 **Dakora**, F. and B.G. Drake, 2000: Elevated CO<sub>2</sub> stimulates associative N<sub>2</sub> fixation in a  
22 C<sub>3</sub> plant of the Chesapeake Bay wetland. *Plant, Cell and Environment*, **23(9)**,  
23 943-953.
- 24 **Davis**, M.B., 1983: Holocene vegetational history of the eastern United States, [Wright,  
25 H.E., Jr. (ed.)]. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, MN, pp. 166-181.
- 26 **Day**, J.W., Jr., D.F. Boesch, E.J. Clairain, G.P. Kemp, S.B. Laska, W.J. Mitsch, K. Orth,  
27 H. Mashriqui, D.J. Reed, L. Shabman, C.A. Simenstad, B.J. Streever, R.R.  
28 Twilley, C.C. Watson, J.T. Wells, and D.F. Whigham, 2007: Restoration of the  
29 Mississippi Delta: lessons from Hurricanes Katrina and Rita. *Science*, **315(5819)**,  
30 1679-1684.
- 31 **Day**, J.W., Jr., C.A.S. Hall, W.M. Kemp, and A. Yanez-Arancibia, 1989: *Estuarine*  
32 *Ecology*. Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.



- 1 **Dayton, P.K., S. Thrush, and F.C. Coleman, 2002: *Ecological Effects of Fishing in***  
2 ***Marine Ecosystems of the United States*. Pew Oceans Commission.**
- 3 **Dennison, W.C., R.J. Orth, K.A. Moore, J.C. Stevenson, V. Carter, S. Kollar, P.W.**  
4 **Bergstrom, and R.A. Batiuk, 1993: Assessing water quality with submersed**  
5 **aquatic vegetation. *BioScience*, **43(2)**, 86-94.**
- 6 **Diaz, R.J. and R. Rosenberg, 1995: Marine benthic hypoxia: a review of its ecological**  
7 **effects and the behavioural responses of benthic macrofauna. *Oceanography and***  
8 ***Marine Biology Annual Review*, **33**, 245-303.**
- 9 **Dobson, A. and J. Foufopoulos, 2001: Emerging infectious pathogens of wildlife.**  
10 ***Philosophical Transactions: Biological Sciences*, **356(1411)**, 1001-1012.**
- 11 **Donnelly, J.P. and M.D. Bertness, 2001: Rapid shoreward encroachment of salt marsh**  
12 **cordgrass in response to accelerated sea-level rise. *Proceedings of the National***  
13 ***Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **98(25)**, 14218-14223.**
- 14 **Dowdeswell, J.A., 2006: Atmospheric science: the Greenland ice sheet and global sea-**  
15 **level rise. *Science*, **311(5763)**, 963-964.**
- 16 **Drake, B.G., L. Hughes, E. A. Johnson, B. A. Seibel, M. A. Cochrane, V. J. Fabry, D.**  
17 **Rasse, and L. Hannah, 2005: Synergistic Effects, In: *Climate Change and***  
18 ***Biodiversity*, [Lovejoy, T.E. and L. Hannah (eds.)]. Yale University Press, New**  
19 **Haven, pp. 296-316.**
- 20 **Drake, B.G., M.S. Muehe, G. Peresta, M.A. Gonzalez-Meler, and R. Matamala, 1995:**  
21 **Acclimation of photosynthesis, respiration and ecosystem carbon flux of a**  
22 **wetland on Chesapeake Bay, Maryland to elevated atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>**  
23 **concentration. *Plant and Soil*, **187(2)**, 111-118.**
- 24 **Duarte, C.M., 1991: Seagrass depth limits. *Aquatic Botany*, **40(4)**, 363-377.**
- 25 **Duffy, J.E., 2002: Biodiversity and ecosystem function: the consumer connection. *Oikos*,**  
26 ****99(2)**, 201-219.**
- 27 **Emanuel, K., 2005: Increasing destructiveness of tropical cyclones over the past 30**  
28 **years. *Nature*, **436(7051)**, 686-688.**
- 29 **Fagherazzi, S., L. Carniello, L. D'Alpaos, and A. Defina, 2006: Critical bifurcation of**  
30 **shallow microtidal landforms in tidal flats and salt marshes. *Proceedings of the***  
31 ***National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **103(22)**, 8337-**  
32 **8341.**

- 1 **Federal Emergency Management Agency**, 1991: *Projected Impact of Relative Sea*  
2 *Level Rise on the National Flood Insurance Program*. Washington, DC.
- 3 **Feely**, R.A., C.L. Sabine, K. Lee, W. Berelson, J. Kleypas, V.J. Fabry, and F.J. Millero,  
4 2004: Impact of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> on the CaCO<sub>3</sub> system in the oceans. *Science*,  
5 **305(5682)**, 362-366.
- 6 **Foley**, J.A., R. DeFries, G.P. Asner, C.C. Barford, G.B. Bonan, S.R. Carpenter, F.S.  
7 Chapin III, M.T. Coe, G.C. Daily, H.K. Gibbs, J.H. Helkowski, T. Holloway,  
8 E.A. Howard, C.J. Kucharik, C. Monfreda, J. Patz, I.C. Prentice, N. Ramankutty,  
9 and P.K. Snyder, 2005: Global consequences of land use. *Science*, **309(5734)**,  
10 570-574.
- 11 **Folke**, C., S. Carpenter, B. Walker, M. Scheffer, T. Elmqvist, L.H. Gunderson, and C.S.  
12 Holling, 2004: Regime shifts, resilience, and biodiversity in ecosystem  
13 management. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **35**, 557-581.
- 14 **Folke**, C. and N. Kautsky, 1989: The role of ecosystems for a sustainable development of  
15 aquaculture. *Ambio*, **18(4)**, 234-243.
- 16 **Fonseca**, M.S., B.E. Julius, and W.J. Kenworthy, 2000: Integrating biology and  
17 economics in seagrass restoration: How much is enough and why? *Ecological*  
18 *Engineering*, **15(3)**, 227-237.
- 19 **Ford**, S.E., 1996: Range extension by the oyster parasite *Perkinsus marinus* into the  
20 northeastern United States: response to climate change? *Journal of Shellfish*  
21 *Research*, **15**, 45-56.
- 22 **Galbraith**, H., R. Jones, R. Park, J. Clough, S. Herrod-Julius, B. Harrington, and G.  
23 Page, 2002: Global climate change and sea level rise: potential losses of intertidal  
24 habitat for shorebirds. *Waterbirds*, **25(2)**, 173-183.
- 25 **Gedney**, N., P.M. Cox, R.A. Betts, O. Boucher, C. Huntingford, and P.A. Stott, 2006:  
26 Detection of a direct carbon dioxide effect in continental river runoff records.  
27 *Nature*, **439(7078)**, 835-838.
- 28 **Goldburg**, R. and T. Triplett, 1997: *Murky Waters: Environmental Effects of*  
29 *Aquaculture in the U.S.* Environmental Defense Fund.
- 30 **González**, J.L. and T.E. Törnqvist, 2006: Coastal Louisiana in crisis: subsidence or sea  
31 level rise? *Eos, Transactions American Geophysical Union*, **87(45)**, 493-498.

- 1 **Greenberg, R.**, J.E. Maldonado, S. Droege, and M.V. McDonald, 2006: A global  
2 perspective on the evolution and conservation of their terrestrial vertebrates.  
3 *BioScience*, **56(8)**, 675-685.
- 4 **Griffin, D.A.** and P.H. LeBlond, 1990: Estuary/ocean exchange controlled by spring-  
5 neap tidal mixing. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science*, **30(3)**, 275-297.
- 6 **Groffman, P.M.**, J.S. Baron, T. Blett, A.J. Gold, I. Goodman, L.H. Gunderson, B.M.  
7 Levinson, M.A. Palmer, H.W. Paerl, G.D. Peterson, N.L. Poff, D.W. Rejesk, J.  
8 Reynolds, M.G. Turner, K.C. Weathers, and J. Wiens, 2006: Ecological  
9 thresholds: the key to successful environmental management or an important  
10 concept with no practical application? *Ecosystems*, **9(1)**, 1-13.
- 11 **Grumbine, R.E.**, 1994: What is ecosystem management? *Conservation Biology*, **8(1)**,  
12 27-38.
- 13 **Guenette, S.**, T. Lauck, and C. Clark, 1998: Marine reserves: from Beverton and Holt to  
14 the present. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*, **8(3)**, 251-272.
- 15 **Gunderson, L.H.**, C. S. Holling, L. Pritchard, and G. D. Peterson, 2002: A summary and  
16 a synthesis of resilience in large scale systems, In: *Resilience and Behavior of*  
17 *Large-Scale Systems*, Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 3-20.
- 18 **Hagy, J.D.**, W.R. Boynton, C.W. Keefe, and K.V. Wood, 2004: Hypoxia in Chesapeake  
19 Bay, 1950-2001: long-term change in relation to nutrient loading and river flow.  
20 *Estuaries*, **27(4)**, 634-658.
- 21 **Hakalahti, T.**, A. Karvonen, and E.T. Valtonen, 2006: Climate warming and disease  
22 risks in temperate regions *Argulus coregoni* and *Diplostomum spathaceum* as case  
23 studies. *Journal of Helminthology*, **80(2)**, 93-98.
- 24 **Hall, S.R.**, A.J. Tessier, M.A. Duffy, M. Huebner, and C.E. Cbceres, 2006: Warmer does  
25 not have to mean sicker: temperature and predators can jointly drive timing of  
26 epidemics. *Ecology*, **87(7)**, 1684-1695.
- 27 **Halpern, B.S.**, 2003: The impact of marine reserves: Do reserves work and does reserve  
28 size matter? *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S117-S137.
- 29 **Harley, C.D.G.** and R. Hughes, 2006: Reviews and synthesis: the impacts of climate  
30 change in coastal marine systems. *Ecology Letters*, **9(2)**, 228-241.
- 31 **Harris, L.D.** and W. P. Cropper Jr., 1992: Between the devil and the deep blue sea:  
32 implications of climate change for Florida's fauna, In: *Global Warming and*

- 1 *Biological Diversity*, [Peters, R.L. and T.E. Lovejoy (eds.)]. Yale University  
2 Press, New Haven, CT, pp. 309-324.
- 3 **Harvell, C.D., C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.**  
4 **Samuel, 2002: Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota.**  
5 *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 6 **Harvell, D., R. Aronson, N. Baron, J. Connell, A. Dobson, S. Ellner, L. Gerber, K. Kim,**  
7 **A. Kuris, and H. McCallum, 2004: The rising tide of ocean diseases: unsolved**  
8 **problems and research priorities. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(7)**,**  
9 **375-382.**
- 10 **Hauxwell, J., J. Cebrian, C. Furlong, and I. Valiela, 2001: Macroalgal canopies**  
11 **contribute to eelgrass (*Zostera marina*) decline in temperate estuarine ecosystems.**  
12 *Ecology*, **82(4)**, 1007-1022.
- 13 **Hayden, B.P., M.C.F.V. Santos, G. Shao, and R.C. Kochel, 1995: Geomorphological**  
14 **controls on coastal vegetation at the Virginia Coast Reserve. *Geomorphology*, **13,****  
15 **283-300.**
- 16 **Health Ecological and Economic Dimensions of Global Change Program, 1998:**  
17 *Marine Ecosystems: Emerging Diseases As Indicators of Change. Health of the*  
18 *Oceans From Labrador to Venezuela.* Year of the ocean special report The Center  
19 for Conservation Medicine and CHGE Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA,  
20 pp.1-85.
- 21 **Holling, C.S., 1972: Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Research Report*, **4,****  
22 **1-23.**
- 23 **Howarth, R.W., J.R. Fruci, and D. Sherman, 1991: Inputs of sediment and carbon to an**  
24 **estuarine ecosystem: influence of land use. *Ecological Applications*, **1(1)**, 27-39.**
- 25 **Howarth, R.W., D.P. Swaney, T.J. Butler, and R. Marino, 2000: Climatic control on**  
26 **eutrophication of the Hudson River estuary. *Ecosystems*, **3(2)**, 210-215.**
- 27 **Hughes, A.R. and J.J. Stachowicz, 2004: Genetic diversity enhances the resistance of a**  
28 **seagrass ecosystem to disturbance. In: *Proceedings of the National Academy of***  
29 ***Sciences of the United States of America* 2004.**
- 30 **IPCC, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability.***  
31 ***Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the***  
32 ***Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.* [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani,**

- 1 N.A. Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S. White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
2 Cambridge, UK.
- 3 **IPCC**, 2007: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science*  
4 *Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
5 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning,  
6 Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
7 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY,  
8 USA.
- 9 **Jackson**, J.B.C., M.X. Kirby, W.H. Berger, K.A. Bjorndal, L.W. Botsford, B.J. Bourque,  
10 R.H. Bradbury, R. Cooke, J. Erlandson, and J.A. Estes, 2001: Historical  
11 overfishing and the recent collapse of coastal ecosystems. *Science*, **293(5530)**,  
12 629-638.
- 13 **Jones**, C.G., J.H. Lawton, and M. Shachak, 1994: Organisms as ecosystem engineers.  
14 *Oikos*, **69(3)**, 373-386.
- 15 **Kates**, R.W., C.E. Colten, S. Laska, and S.P. Leatherman, 2006: Reconstruction of New  
16 Orleans after Hurricane Katrina: a research perspective. *Proceedings of the*  
17 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **103(40)**, 14653-  
18 14660.
- 19 **Kemp**, W.M., P.A. Sampou, J. Garber, J. Tuttle, and W.R. Boynton, 1992: Seasonal  
20 depletion of oxygen from bottom waters of Chesapeake Bay: roles of benthic and  
21 planktonic respiration and physical exchange processes. *Marine Ecology Progress*  
22 *Series*, **85(1)**.
- 23 **Kennedy**, V.S., 1996: The ecological role of the Eastern oyster, *Crassostrea virginica*,  
24 with remarks on disease. *Journal of Shellfish Research*, **15**, 177-183.
- 25 **Kennedy**, V.S., R.R. Twilley, J.A. Kleypas, J.H. Cowan, Jr., and S.R. Hare, 2002:  
26 *Coastal and Marine Ecosystems & Global Climate Change: Potential Effects on*  
27 *U.S. Resources*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, pp.1-64.
- 28 **Kennish**, M.J., 1999: *Estuary Restoration and Maintenance: the National Estuary*  
29 *Program*. CRC Press Inc.
- 30 **Kleypas**, J.A., R.A. Feely, V.J. Fabry, C. Langdon, C.L. Sabine, and L.L. Robbins, 2006:  
31 *Impacts of Ocean Acidification on Coral Reefs and Other Marine Calcifiers: a*  
32 *Guide for Future Research*. Workshop Report, National Science Foundation,  
33 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the U.S. Geological  
34 Survey.

- 1 **Kuenzler**, E.J., P.J. Mulholland, L.A. Ruley, and R.P. Sniffen, 1977: *Water Quality in*  
2 *North Carolina Coastal Plain Streams and Effects of Channelization*. 127, Water  
3 Resources Research Institute of the University of North Carolina, Raleigh, NC.
- 4 **Lafferty**, K.D. and L.R. Gerber, 2002: Good medicine for conservation biology: the  
5 intersection of epidemiology and conservation theory. *Conservation Biology*,  
6 **16(3)**, 593-604.
- 7 **Lafferty**, K.D., J.W. Porter, and S.E. Ford, 2004: Are diseases increasing in the ocean?  
8 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **35**, 31-54.
- 9 **Lee**, K.N., 1993: *Compass and Gyroscope: Integrating Science and Politics for the*  
10 *Environment*. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- 11 **Lenihan**, H.S. and C.H. Peterson, 1998: How habitat degradation through fishery  
12 disturbance enhances impacts of hypoxia on oyster reefs. *Ecological Applications*,  
13 **8(1)**, 128-140.
- 14 **Lenihan**, H.S., C.H. Peterson, J.E. Byers, J.H. Grabowski, G.W. Thayer, and D.R.  
15 Colby, 2001: Cascading of habitat degradation: oyster reefs invaded by refugee  
16 fishes escaping stress. *Ecological Applications*, **11(3)**, 764-782.
- 17 **Leonard**, L., T. Clayton, and O. Pilkey, 1990: An analysis of replenished beach design  
18 parameters on U. S. East Coast barrier islands. *Journal of Coastal Research*, **6(1)**,  
19 15-36.
- 20 **Leung**, L.Y.R. and Y. Qian, 2003: Changes in seasonal and extreme hydrologic  
21 conditions of the Georgia Basin/Puget Sound in an ensemble regional climate  
22 simulation for the mid-century. *Canadian Water Resources Journal*, **28(4)**, 605-  
23 631.
- 24 **Levin**, L.A., D.F. Boesch, A. Covich, C. Dahm, C. Erseus, K.C. Ewel, R.T. Kneib, A.  
25 Moldenke, M.A. Palmer, and P. Snelgrove, 2001: The function of marine critical  
26 transition zones and the importance of sediment biodiversity. *Ecosystems*, **4(5)**,  
27 430-451.
- 28 **Li**, M., A. Gargett, and K. Denman, 2000: What determines seasonal and interannual  
29 variability of phytoplankton and zooplankton in strongly estuarine systems?  
30 *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science*, **50(4)**, 467-488.
- 31 **Lotze**, H.K., H.S. Lenihan, B.J. Bourque, R.H. Bradbury, R.G. Cooke, M.C. Kay, S.M.  
32 Kidwell, M.X. Kirby, C.H. Peterson, and J.B.C. Jackson, 2006: Depletion,

- 1 degradation, and recovery potential of estuaries and coastal seas. *Science*,  
2 **312(5781)**, 1806-1809.
- 3 **Lyman, J.M., J.K. Willis, and G.C. Johnson, 2006:** Recent cooling of the upper ocean.  
4 *Geophysical Research Letters*, **33**, L18604.
- 5 **Mallin, M.A., H.W. Paerl, J. Rudek, and P.W. Bates, 1993:** Regulation of estuarine  
6 primary production by watershed rainfall and river flow. *Marine Ecology*  
7 *Progress Series*, **93(1/2)**, 1999-203.
- 8 **Marks, D., J. Kimball, D. Tingey, and T. Link, 1998:** The sensitivity of snowmelt  
9 processes to climate conditions and forest cover during rain-on-snow: a case study  
10 of the 1996 Pacific Northwest flood. *Hydrological Processes*, **12(10)**, 1569-1587.
- 11 **Marsh, A.S., D.P. Rasse, B.G. Drake, and J.P. Megonigal, 2005:** Effect of elevated CO<sub>2</sub>  
12 on carbon pools and fluxes in a brackish marsh. *Estuaries*, **28**, 695-704.
- 13 **Meehl, G.A., W.M. Washington, W.D. Collins, J.M. Arblaster, A. Hu, L.E. Buja, W.G.**  
14 **Strand, and H. Teng, 2005:** How much more global warming and sea level rise?  
15 *Science*, **307(5716)**, 1769-1772.
- 16 **Meyer, D.L., E.C. Townsend, and G.W. Thayer, 1997:** Stabilization and erosion control  
17 value of oyster cultch for intertidal marsh. *Restoration Ecology*, **5(1)**, 93-99.
- 18 **Meyer, J.N. and R.T. Di Giulio, 2003:** Heritable adaptation and fitness costs in killifish  
19 (*Fundulus heteroclitus*) inhabiting a polluted estuary. *Ecological Applications*,  
20 **13(2)**, 490-503.
- 21 **Micheli, F., B.S. Halpern, L.W. Botsford, and R.R. Warner, 2004:** Trajectories and  
22 correlates of community change in no-take marine reserves. *Ecological*  
23 *Applications*, **14(6)**, 1709-1723.
- 24 **Micheli, F. and C.H. Peterson, 1999:** Estuarine vegetated habitats as corridors for  
25 predator movements. *Conservation Biology*, **13(4)**, 869-881.
- 26 **Mileti, D.S., 1999:** *Disasters by Design: a Reassessment of Natural Hazards in the*  
27 *United States*. Joseph Henry Press.
- 28 **Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005:** *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being:*  
29 *Wetlands and Water*. World Resources Institute, Washington, DC.

- 1 **Mitsch**, W.J. and J.W. Day Jr, 2006: Restoration of wetlands in the Mississippi-Ohio-  
2 Missouri (MOM) River Basin: experience and needed research. *Ecological*  
3 *Engineering*, **26**, 55-69.
- 4 **Mitsch**, W.J. and J.G. Gosselink, 2000: *Wetlands*. John Wiley, New York.
- 5 **Mooney**, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs, 2000: *Invasive Species in a Changing World*. Island  
6 Press, Washington, DC.
- 7 **Moorhead**, K.K. and M.M. Brinson, 1995: Response of wetlands to rising sea level in  
8 the lower coastal plain of North Carolina. *Ecological Applications*, **5(1)**, 261-271.
- 9 **Morris**, J.T., P.V. Sundareshwar, C.T. Nietch, B. Kjerfve, and D.R. Cahoon, 2002:  
10 Responses of coastal wetlands to rising sea level. *Ecology*, **83(10)**, 2869-2877.
- 11 **Mote**, P.W., 2006: Climate-driven variability and trends in mountain snowpack in  
12 western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **19(23)**, 6209-6220.
- 13 **Mote**, P.W., E.A. Parson, A.F. Hamlet, W.S. Keeton, D. Lettenmaier, N. Mantua, E.L.  
14 Miles, D.W. Peterson, D.L. Peterson, R. Slaughter, and A.K. Snover, 2003:  
15 Preparing for climatic change: the water, salmon, and forests of the Pacific  
16 Northwest. *Climatic Change*, **61(1)**, 45-88.
- 17 **Mullins**, P.H. and T.C. Marks, 1987: Flowering phenology and seed production of  
18 *Spartina anglica*. *Journal of Ecology*, **25(4)**, 1037-1048.
- 19 **Mydlarz**, L.D., L.E. Jones, and C.D. Harvell, 2006: Innate immunity, environmental  
20 drivers, and disease ecology of marine and freshwater invertebrates. *Annual*  
21 *Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 251-288.
- 22 **Myers**, R.A., J.K. Baum, T.D. Shapherd, S.P. Powers, and C.H. Peterson, 2007:  
23 Cascading effects of the loss of apex predatory sharks from a coastal ocean.  
24 *Science*, **315(5820)**, 1846-1850.
- 25 **Naeem**, S., 2002: Ecosystem consequences of biodiversity loss: The evolution of a  
26 paradigm. *Ecology*, **83(6)**, 1537-1552.
- 27 **National Assessment Synthesis Team**, 2000: *Climate Change Impacts on the United*  
28 *States: the Potential Consequences of Climate Variability and Change*. U.S.  
29 Global Change Research Program, Washington, DC.
- 30 **National Coastal Assessment Group**, 2000: *Coastal: The Potential Consequences of*  
31 *Climate Variability and Change*. pp.1-181.



- 1 **National Marine Fisheries Service**, 2006: *Recovery Plan for the Hawaiian Monk Seal*.  
2 National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-148.
- 3 **National Research Council**, 2004: *Non-Native Oysters in the Chesapeake Bay*.  
4 Committee on Non-native Oysters in the Chesapeake Bay, National Research  
5 Council, National Academies Press, Washington, DC.
- 6 **Newell**, R.I.E., J.C. Cornwell, and M.S. Owens, 2002: Influence of simulated bivalve  
7 biodeposition and microphytobenthos on sediment nitrogen dynamics: a  
8 laboratory study. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **47(5)**, 1367-1379.
- 9 **Newell**, R.I.E. and J. A. Ott, 1999: Macrobenthic communities and eutrophication, In:  
10 *Ecosystems at the Land-Sea Margin: Drainage Basin to Coastal Sea*, [Malone,  
11 T.C., A. Malej, L. Harding, N. Smodlaka, and R. Turner (eds.)]. American  
12 Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 265-293.
- 13 **Nixon**, S.W., 1995: Coastal marine eutrophication: a definition, social causes, and future  
14 concerns. *Ophelia*, **41**, 199-219.
- 15 **Officer**, C.B., R.B. Biggs, J.L. Taft, L.E. Cronin, M.A. Tyler, and W.R. Boynton, 1984:  
16 Chesapeake Bay anoxia: origin, development, and significance. *Science*,  
17 **223(4631)**, 22-26.
- 18 **Orr**, J.C., V.J. Fabry, O. Aumont, L. Bopp, S.C. Doney, R.A. Feely, A. Gnanadesikan,  
19 N. Gruber, A. Ishida, and F. Joos, 2005: Anthropogenic ocean acidification over  
20 the twenty-first century and its impact on calcifying organisms. *Nature*,  
21 **437(7059)**, 681-686.
- 22 **Orth**, R.J., T.J.B. Carruthers, W.C. Dennison, C.M. Duarte, J.W. Fourqurean, K.L. Keck,  
23 Jr., A.R. Hughes, G.A. Kendrick, W.H. Kenworthy, S. Olyarnik, F.T. Short, M.  
24 Waycott, and S.L. Williams, 2006: A global crisis for seagrass ecosystems.  
25 *BioScience*, **56(12)**, 987-996.
- 26 **Otto-Bliesner**, B.L., S.J. Marshall, J.T. Overpeck, G.H. Miller, and A. Hu, 2006:  
27 Simulating arctic climate warmth and icefield retreat in the last interglaciation.  
28 *Science*, **311(5768)**, 1751-1753.
- 29 **Overpeck**, J.T., B.L. Otto-Bliesner, G.H. Miller, D.R. Muhs, R.B. Alley, and J.T. Kiehl,  
30 2006: Paleoclimatic evidence for future ice-sheet instability and rapid sea-level  
31 rise. *Science*, **311(5768)**, 1747-1750.
- 32 **Paerl**, H.W. and J.D. Bales, 2001: Ecosystem impacts of three sequential hurricanes  
33 (Dennis, Floyd, and Irene) on the United States' largest lagoonal estuary, Pamlico

- 1            Sound, NC. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States*  
2            *of America*, **98(10)**, 5655-5660.
- 3    **Paerl**, H.W., J.L. Pinckney, J.M. Fear, and B.L. Peierls, 1998: Ecosystem responses to  
4            internal and watershed organic matter loading: consequences for hypoxia in the  
5            eutrophying Neuse River Estuary, North Carolina, USA. *Marine Ecology*  
6            *Progress Series*, **166**, 17-25.
- 7    **Park**, R.A., M.S. Treehan, P.W. Mause, and R.C. Howe, 1989: *The Effects of Sea Level*  
8            *Rise on US Coastal Wetlands*. EPA-230-05-89-052, Office of Policy, Planning,  
9            and Evaluation, US Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- 10   **Parker Jr.**, R.O. and R.L. Dixon, 1998: Changes in a North Carolina reef fish  
11            community after 15 years of intense fishing- global warming implications.  
12            *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, **127(6)**, 908-920.
- 13   **Parnesan**, C. and H. Galbraith, 2004: *Observed Impacts of Global Climate Change in*  
14            *the US*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, Arlington, VA.
- 15   **Parnesan**, C. and G. Yohe, 2003: A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change  
16            impacts across natural systems. *Nature*, **421**, 37-42.
- 17   **Parnesan**, C., 2006: Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change.  
18            *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 637-669.
- 19   **Parson**, E.A., P. W. Mote, A. Hamlet, N. Mantua, A. Snover, W. Keeton, E. Miles, D.  
20            Canning, and K. G. Ideker, 2001: Potential consequences of climate variability  
21            and change for the Pacific Northwest, In: *The Potential Consequences of Climate*  
22            *Variability and Change: Foundation Report*, Report by the National Assessment  
23            Synthesis Team for the US Global Change Research Program, Cambridge  
24            University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 247-281.
- 25   **Pauly**, D., V. Christensen, J. Dalsgaard, R. Froese, and F. Torres, Jr., 1998: Fishing down  
26            marine food webs. *Science*, **279(5352)**, 860-863.
- 27   **Peterson**, C.H. and R. Black, 1988: Density-dependent mortality caused by physical  
28            stress interacting with biotic history. *American Naturalist*, **131(2)**, 257-270.
- 29   **Peterson**, C.H. and J. A. Estes, 2001: Conservation and management of marine  
30            communities, [Bertness, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay (eds.)]. pp. 469-508.

- 1 **Peterson, C.H., S.D. Rice, J.W. Short, D. Esler, J.L. Bodkin, B.E. Ballachey, and D.B.**  
2 **Irons, 2003: Long-term ecosystem response to the Exxon Valdez oil spill.**  
3 ***Science*, 302(5653), 2082-2086.**
- 4 **Peterson, D., D. Cayan, J. DiLeo, M. Noble, and M. Dettinger, 1995: The role of climate**  
5 **in estuarine variability. *American Scientist*, 83(1), 58-67.**
- 6 **Peterson, G.W. and R.E. Turner, 1994: The value of salt marsh edge vs interior as a**  
7 **habitat for fish and decapod crustaceans in a Louisiana tidal marsh. *Estuaries*,**  
8 **17(1), 235-262.**
- 9 **Petratis, P.S. and S.R. Dudgeon, 2004: Detection of alternative stable states in marine**  
10 **communities. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, 300(1), 343-**  
11 **371.**
- 12 **Pew Center on Global Climate Change, 2003: *Innovative Policy Solutions to Global***  
13 ***Climate Change: the U.S. Domestic Response to Climate Change: Key Elements***  
14 ***of a Prospective Program*. pp.1-8.**
- 15 **Pielke, R., G. Prins, S. Rayner, and D. Sarewitz, 2007: Climate change 2007: lifting the**  
16 **taboo on adaptation. *Nature*, 445, 597-598.**
- 17 **Pikitch, E.K., C. Santora, E.A. Babcock, A. Bakun, R. Bonfil, D.O. Conover, P. Dayton,**  
18 **P. Doukakis, D. Fluharty, and B. Heneman, 2004: Ecosystem-based fishery**  
19 **management. *Science*, 305(5682), 346-347.**
- 20 **Pilkey, O.H. and H.L. Wright III, 1988: Seawalls versus beaches. *Journal of Coastal***  
21 ***Research*, 4, 41-64.**
- 22 **Poff, N.L., J.D. Allan, M.B. Bain, J.R. Karr, K.L. Prestegard, B.D. Richter, R. Sparks,**  
23 **and J. Stromberg, 1997: The natural flow regime: a new paradigm for riverine**  
24 **conservation and restoration. *BioScience*, 47, 769-784.**
- 25 **Postel, S., 1992: *The Last Oasis-Facing Water Scarcity*. Norton & Co, New York.**
- 26 **Poulin, R., 2005: Global warming and temperature-mediated increases in cercarial**  
27 **emergence in trematode parasites. *Parasitology*, 132(01), 143-151.**
- 28 **Poulin, R. and K.N. Mouritsen, 2006: Climate change, parasitism and the structure of**  
29 **intertidal ecosystems. *Journal of Helminthology*, 80(2), 183-191.**
- 30 **Pritchard, D.W., 1967: *What Is an Estuary: Physical Viewpoint*. Publication Number 83,**  
31 **American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, DC, pp.3-5.**

- 1 **Purcell**, J.E., F.P. Cresswell, D.G. Cargo, and V.S. Kennedy, 1991: Differential ingestion  
2 and digestion of bivalve larvae by the scyphozoan *Chrysaora quinquecirrha* and  
3 the ctenophore *Mnemiopsis leidyi*. *Biological Bulletin, Marine Biological*  
4 *Laboratory, Woods Hole*, **180(1)**, 103-111.
- 5 **Rabalais**, N.N., R.E. Turner, and D. Scavia, 2002: Beyond science into policy: Gulf of  
6 Mexico hypoxia and the Mississippi River. *BioScience*, **52(2)**, 129-142.
- 7 **Rahmstorf**, S., 2007: A semi-empirical approach to projecting future sea-level rise.  
8 *Science*, **315(5810)**, 368-370.
- 9 **Ramus**, J., L.A. Eby, C.M. McClellan, and L.B. Crowder, 2003: Phytoplankton forcing  
10 by a record freshwater discharge event into a large lagoonal estuary. *Estuaries*,  
11 **26(5)**, 1344-1352.
- 12 **Raven**, J., 2005: *Ocean Acidification Due to Increasing Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide*.  
13 The Royal Society, London.
- 14 **Reed**, D.J., 1995: The response of coastal marshes to sea-level rise: survival or  
15 submergence? *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*, **20(1)**, 39-48.
- 16 **Reed**, D.J., 2002: Sea-level rise and coastal marsh sustainability: geological and  
17 ecological factors in the Mississippi Delta plain. *Geomorphology*, **48(1)**, 233-243.
- 18 **Remane**, A. and C. Schlieper, 1971: *Biology of Brackish Water*. Wiley Interscience  
19 Division, John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY.
- 20 **Riggs**, S.R., 2002: *The Soundfront Series: Shoreline Erosion in North Carolina*  
21 *Estuaries*. UNC-SG-01-11.
- 22 **Riggs**, S.R. and D.V. Ames, 2003: *Drowning the North Carolina Coast: Sea-Level Rise*  
23 *and Estuarine Dynamics*. UNC-SG-03-04, NC Sea Grant College Program,  
24 Raleigh, NC, pp.1-152.
- 25 **Rignot**, E. and P. Kanagaratnam, 2006: Changes in the velocity structure of the  
26 Greenland ice sheet. *Science*, **311(5763)**, 986-990.
- 27 **Rinaldi**, S. and M. Scheffer, 2000: Geometric analysis of ecological models with slow  
28 and fast processes. *Ecosystems*, **3(6)**, 507-521.
- 29 **Ritchie**, K., 2006: Regulation of microbial populations by coral surface mucus and  
30 mucus-associated bacteria. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **322**, 1-14.

- 1 **Roberts**, C.M., S. Andelman, G. Branch, R.H. Bustamante, J.C. Castilla, J. Dugan, B.S.  
2 Halpern, K.D. Lafferty, H. Leslie, and J. Lubchenco, 2003: Ecological criteria for  
3 evaluating candidate sites for marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**,  
4 S199-S214.
- 5 **Robins**, J.B., I.A. Halliday, J. Staunton-Smith, D.G. Mayer, and M.J. Sellin, 2005:  
6 Freshwater-flow requirements of estuarine fisheries in tropical Australia: a review  
7 of the state of knowledge and application of a suggested approach. *Marine &*  
8 *Freshwater Research*, **56(3)**, 343-360.
- 9 **Root**, T.L., J. Price, K.R. Hall, S.H. Schneider, C. Rosenzweig, and A.J. Pounds, 2003:  
10 Fingerprints of global warming on wild animals and plants. *Nature*, **421**, 57-60.
- 11 **Rothschild**, B.J., J.S. Ault, P. Gouletquer, and M. Heral, 1994: Decline of the  
12 Chesapeake Bay oyster population: a century of habitat destruction and  
13 overfishing. *Marine ecology progress series. Oldendorf*, **111(1)**, 29-39.
- 14 **Roy**, B.A., S. Guesewell, and J. Harte, 2004: Response of plant pathogens and herbivores  
15 to a warming experiment. *Ecology*, **85(9)**, 2570-2581.
- 16 **Rozas**, L.P., T.J. Minello, I. Munuera-Fernandez, B. Fry, and B. Wissel, 2005:  
17 Macrofaunal distributions and habitat change following winter-spring releases of  
18 freshwater into the Breton Sound estuary, Louisiana(USA). *Estuarine Coastal*  
19 *and Shelf Science*, **65(1-2)**, 319-336.
- 20 **Ruiz**, G.M., J.T. Carlton, E.D. Grosholz, and A.H. Hines, 1997: Global invasions of  
21 marine and estuarine habitats by non-indigenous species: Mechanisms, extent,  
22 and consequences. *American Zoologist*, **37(6)**, 621-632.
- 23 **Salathé**, E.P., 2006: Influences of a shift in North Pacific storm tracks on western North  
24 American precipitation under global warming. *Geophysical Research Letters*,  
25 **33(19)**.
- 26 **Sanchez-Arcilla**, A. and J.A. Jimenez, 1997: Physical impacts of climatic change on  
27 deltaic coastal systems (I): an approach. *Climatic Change*, **35(1)**, 71-93.
- 28 **Sarmiento**, J.L., R. Slater, R. Barber, L. Bopp, S.C. Doney, A.C. Hirst, J. Kleypas, R.  
29 Matear, U. Mikolajewicz, and P. Monfray, 2004: Response of ocean ecosystems  
30 to climate warming. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **18(3)**.
- 31 **Scavia**, D., J.C. Field, D.F. Boesch, R.W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D.R. Cayan, M.  
32 Fogarty, M.A. Harwell, R.W. Howarth, C. Mason, D.J. Reed, T.C. Royer, A.H.

- 1 Sallenger, and J.G. Titus, 2002: Climate change impacts on U.S. coastal and  
2 marine ecosystems. *Estuaries*, **25**(2), 149-164.
- 3 **Scavia**, D., E.L.A. Kelly, and J.D. Hagy, 2006: A simple model for forecasting the  
4 effects of nitrogen loads on Chesapeake Bay hypoxia. *Estuaries and Coasts*, **29**(4),  
5 674-684.
- 6 **Scheffer**, M. and S.R. Carpenter, 2003: Catastrophic regime shifts in ecosystems: linking  
7 theory to observation. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **18**(12), 648-656.
- 8 **Scheffer**, M., S. Carpenter, J.A. Foley, C. Folke, and B.H. Walker, 2001: Catastrophic  
9 shifts in ecosystems. *Nature*, **413**, 591-596.
- 10 **Schwimmer**, R.A. and J.E. Pizzuto, 2000: A model for the evolution of marsh shorelines.  
11 *Journal of Sedimentary Research Section A: Sedimentary Petrology and*  
12 *Processes*, **70**(5), 1026-1035.
- 13 **Seitz**, R.D., R.N. Lipcius, N.H. Olmstead, M.S. Seebo, and D.M. Lambert, 2006:  
14 Influence of shallow-water habitats and shoreline development on abundance,  
15 biomass, and diversity of benthic prey and predators in Chesapeake Bay. *Marine*  
16 *Ecology Progress Series*, **326**, 11-27.
- 17 **Sheldon**, J.E. and M. Alber, 2002: A comparison of residence time calculations using  
18 simple compartment models of the Altamaha River Estuary, Georgia. *Estuaries*,  
19 **25**(6), 1304-1317.
- 20 **Short**, F.T. and D.M. Burdick, 1996: Quantifying eelgrass habitat loss in relation to  
21 housing development and nitrogen loading in Waquoit Bay, Massachusetts.  
22 *Estuaries*, **19**(3), 730-739.
- 23 **Short**, F.T. and S. Wyllie-Echeverria, 1996: Natural and human induced disturbance of  
24 seagrass. *Environmental Conservation*, **23**, 17-27.
- 25 **Simenstad**, C.A., K. L. Fresh, and E. O. Salo, 1982: The role of Puget Sound and  
26 Washington coastal estuaries in the life history of Pacific salmon: an  
27 unappreciated function, In: *Estuarine Comparisons*, [Kennedy, V.S. (ed.)].  
28 Academic Press, New York, NY, pp. 343-364.
- 29 **Simenstad**, C.A., R. M. Thom, D. A. Levy, and D. L. Bottom, 2000: Landscape structure  
30 and scale constraints on restoring estuarine wetlands for Pacific coast juvenile  
31 fishes, In: *Concepts and Controversies in Tidal Marsh Ecology*, [Weinstein, M.P.  
32 and D.A. Kreeger (eds.)]. Kluwer Academic Publishing, Dordrecht, pp. 597-630.

- 1 **Sims**, D.W., V.J. Wearmouth, M.J. Genner, A.J. Southward, and S.J. Hawkins, 2004:  
2 Low-temperature-driven early spawning migration of a temperate marine fish.  
3 *Journal of Animal Ecology*, **73(2)**, 333-341.
- 4 **Sklar**, F.H. and J.A. Browder, 1998: Coastal environmental impacts brought about by  
5 alterations to freshwater flow in the Gulf of Mexico. *Environmental Management*,  
6 **22(4)**, 547-562.
- 7 **Snover**, A.K., P.W. Mote, L. Whitley Binder, A.F. Hamlet, and N.J. Mantua, 2005:  
8 *Uncertain Future: Change and Its Effects on Puget Sound. A Report for the Puget*  
9 *Sound Action Team by the Climate Impacts Group.* Center for Science in the  
10 Earth System, Joint Institute for the Study of the Atmosphere and Oceans,  
11 University of Washington, Seattle.
- 12 **Solan**, M., B.J. Cardinale, A.L. Downing, K.A.M. Engelhardt, J.L. Ruesink, and D.S.  
13 Srivastava, 2004: Extinction and ecosystem function in the marine benthos.  
14 *Science*, **306(5699)**, 1177-1180.
- 15 **Southward**, A.J., S.J. Hawkins, and M.T. Burrows, 1995: Seventy years' observations of  
16 changes in distribution and abundance of zooplankton and intertidal organisms in  
17 the western English Channel in relation to rising sea temperature. *Journal of*  
18 *Thermal Biology*, **20(1)**, 127-155.
- 19 **Southward**, A.J., O. Langmead, N.J. Hardman-Mountford, J. Aiken, G.T. Boalch, P.R.  
20 Dando, M.J. Genner, I. Joint, M.A. Kendall, N.C. Halliday, R.P. Harris, R.  
21 Leaper, N. Mieszowska, R.D. Pingree, A.J. Richardson, D.W. Sims, T. Smith,  
22 A.W. Walne, and S.J. Hawkins, 2004: Long-term oceanographic and ecological  
23 research in the western English Channel. *Advances in Marine Biology*, **47**, 1-105.
- 24 **Stachowicz**, J.J., R.B. Whitlatch, and R.W. Osman, 1999: Species diversity and invasion  
25 resistance in a marine ecosystem. *Science*, **286(5444)**, 1577-1579.
- 26 **Stephan**, C.D., R.L. Peuser, and M.S. Fonseca, 2001: *Evaluating Fishing Gear Impacts*  
27 *to Submerged Aquatic Vegetation and Determining Mitigation Strategies.*  
28 ASMFC Habitat Management Series No. 5, Atlantic States Marine Fisheries  
29 Commission, Washington, DC.
- 30 **Syvitski**, J.P.M., C.J. Voeroesmart, A.J. Kettner, and P. Green, 2005: Impact of humans  
31 on the flux of terrestrial sediment to the global coastal ocean. *Science*, **308(5720)**,  
32 376-380.
- 33 **Tait**, J.F. and G.B. Griggs, 1990: Beach response to the presence of a seawall;  
34 comparison of field observations. *Shore and Beach*, **58(2)**, 11-28.

- 1 **Tartig, E.K., F. Mushacke, D. Fallon, and A. Kolker, 2000: *A Wetlands Climate Change***  
2 ***Impact Assessment for the Metropolitan East Coast Region.*** Center for  
3 **International Earth Science Information Network.**
- 4 **Tenore, K.R., 1970: The macrobenthos of the Pamlico River estuary, North Carolina.**  
5 ***Ecological Monographs, 42, 51-69.***
- 6 **Tilman, D. and J.A. Downing, 1994: Biodiversity and stability in grasslands. *Nature,***  
7 ***367(6461), 363-365.***
- 8 **Titus, J.G., 1989: *Sea Level Rise.*** EPA 230-05-89-052, U.S. Environmental Protection  
9 **Agency, Washington, DC.**
- 10 **Titus, J.G., 2000: Does the U.S. government realize that the sea is rising? How to**  
11 **restructure federal programs so that wetlands can survive. *Golden Gate University***  
12 ***Law Review, 30(4), 717-778.***
- 13 **Titus, J.G., 2004: *Maps That Depict the Business-As-Usual Response to Sea Level Rise***  
14 ***in the Decentralized United States of America.*** paper presented at the OECD  
15 **Global Forum on Sustainable Development: Development and Climate Change**  
16 **ENV/EPOC/GF/SD/RD(2004)9/FINAL, Paris.**
- 17 **Titus, J.G., 1991: Greenhouse effect and coastal wetland policy: how americans could**  
18 **abandon an area the size of Massachusetts at minimum cost. *Environmental***  
19 ***Management, 15(1), 39-58.***
- 20 **Titus, J.G., 1998: Rising seas, coastal erosion, and the takings clause: how to save**  
21 **wetlands and beaches without hurting property owners. *Maryland Law Review,***  
22 ***57(4), 1279-1399.***
- 23 **Titus, J.G., R. Park, S.P. Leatherman, J.R. Weggel, P.W. Mausel, S. Brown, G. Gaunt,**  
24 **M. Trehan, and G. Yohe, 1991: Greenhouse effect and sea level rise: the cost of**  
25 **holding back the sea. *Coastal Management, 19, 171-204.***
- 26 **Titus, J.G. and C. Richman, 2001: Maps of lands vulnerable to sea level rise: modeled**  
27 **elevations along the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf Coasts. *Climate Research, 18, 205-***  
28 ***228.***
- 29 **Turgeon, J., R. Stoks, R.A. Thum, J.M. Brown, and M.A. McPeck, 2005: Simultaneous**  
30 **Quaternary radiations of three damselfly clades across the holarctic. *American***  
31 ***Naturalist, 165(4), E78-E107.***



- 1 **Turner, R.E., J.J. Baustian, E.M. Swenson, and J.S. Spicer, 2006:** Wetland sedimentation  
2 from Hurricanes Katrina and Rita. *Science*, **314(5798)**, 449-452.
- 3 **Turner, R.E., W.W. Schroeder, and W.J. Wiseman, 1987:** Role of stratification in the  
4 deoxygenation of Mobile Bay and adjacent shelf bottom waters. *Estuaries*, **10(1)**,  
5 13-19.
- 6 **U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in press:** Louisiana coastal protection and restoration.  
7 *To be submitted to Congress.*
- 8 **U.S. Climate Change Science Program, in press:** Synthesis and assessment product 4.1:  
9 Coastal elevation and sensitivity to sea level rise. *A report by the U. S. Climate*  
10 *Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research, U.*  
11 *S. Environmental Protection Agency.* [Titus, J.G. (ed.)].
- 12 **U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004:** *An Ocean Blueprint for the 21<sup>st</sup> Century.* 9,  
13 pp.15-18.
- 14 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1989:** *The Potential Effects of Global Climate*  
15 *Change on the United States: Report to Congress.* EPA-230-05-89-052, Office of  
16 Policy, Planning, and Evaluation, US Environmental Protection Agency.
- 17 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2000:** *Stressor Identification Guidance*  
18 *Document.* EPA-822-B-00-025, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of  
19 Water and Office of Research and Development, Cincinnati, OH, pp.1-208.
- 20 **Vinebrooke, R.D., K.L. Cottingham, M.S.J. Norberg, S.I. Dodson, S.C. Maberly, and U.**  
21 **Sommer, 2004:** Impacts of multiple stressors on biodiversity and ecosystem  
22 functioning: the role of species co-tolerance. *Oikos*, **104(3)**, 451-457.
- 23 **Walters, C.J., 1986:** *Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources.* McMillan, New  
24 York, New York.
- 25 **Walther, G.R., E. Post, P. Convey, A. Menzel, C. Parmesan, T.J.C. Beebee, J.M.**  
26 **Fromentin, O. Hoegh-Guldberg, and F. Bairlein, 2002:** Ecological responses to  
27 recent climate change. *Nature*, **416**, 389-395.
- 28 **Ward, J.R. and K.D. Lafferty, 2004:** The elusive baseline of marine disease: are diseases  
29 in ocean ecosystems increasing? *PLoS Biology*, **2(4)**, 542-547.
- 30 **Whitfield, A.K., 2005:** Fishes and freshwater in southern African estuaries - a review.  
31 *Aquatic Living Resources*, **18(3)**, 275-289.

- 1 **Whitfield**, A.K., 1994: Abundance of larval and 0+ juvenile marine fishes in the lower  
2 reaches of 3 Southern African estuaries with differing fresh-water inputs. *Marine*  
3 *Ecology Progress Series*, **105(3)**, 257-267.
- 4 **Williams**, S.L. and K. L. Heck Jr., 2001: Seagrass community ecology, [Bertness, M.D.,  
5 S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay (eds.)]. Sinauer Associates, Inc, MA, USA, pp. 317-  
6 337.
- 7 **Woerner**, L.S. and C.T. Hackney, 1997: Distribution of *Juncus roemerianus* in North  
8 Carolina marshes: the importance of physical and abiotic variables. *Wetlands*,  
9 **17(2)**, 284-291.
- 10 **Wolfe**, D.A., 1986: *Estuarine Variability*. Academic Press, New York, NY.
- 11 **Wolock**, D.M. and G.J. McCabe, 1999: Explaining spatial variability in mean annual  
12 runoff in the conterminous United States. *Climate Research*, **11**, 149-159.
- 13 **Worm**, B., E.B. Barbier, N. Beaumont, J.E. Duffy, C. Folke, B.S. Halpern, J.B.C.  
14 Jackson, H.K. Lotze, F. Micheli, S.R. Palumbi, E. Sala, K.A. Selkoe, J.J.  
15 Stachowicz, and R. Watson, 2006: Impacts of biodiversity loss on ocean  
16 ecosystem services. *Science*, **314(5800)**, 787-790.
- 17 **Yohe**, G., J. Neumann, P. Marshall, and H. Ameden, 1996: The economic cost of  
18 greenhouse-induced sea-level rise for developed property in the United States.  
19 *Climatic Change*, **32(4)**, 387-410.
- 20 **Zedler**, J.B., 1993: Canopy architecture of natural and planted cordgrass marshes:  
21 Selecting habitat evaluation criteria. *Ecological Applications*, **3(1)**, 123-138.
- 22 **Zimmerman**, R.J., T. J. Minello, and L. P. Rozas, 2000: Salt marsh linkages to  
23 productivity of penaeid shrimps and blue crabs in the northern Gulf of Mexico, In:  
24 *Concepts and Controversies in Tidal Marsh Ecology*, [Weinstein, M.P. and D.A.  
25 Kreeger (eds.)]. pp. 293-314.  
26  
27

## 1 **7.8 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Workshop Participants**

3

4

- Mark Alderson, Sarasota Bay Project

5

- Carol Auer, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

6

- Rich Batiuk, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

7

- Dean E. Carpenter, Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program

8

- Derb Carter, Southern Environmental Law Center

9

- Holly Greening, Tampa Bay Estuary Program

10

- Michael J. Kennish, Rutgers University

11

- Karen L. McKee, U.S. Geological Survey National Wetlands Research Center

12

- Doug Rader, Environmental Defense

13

- Curtis J. Richardson, Duke University

14

- Stan Riggs, East Carolina University

15

- Ron Shultz, Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team

16

- Jan Smith, Massachusetts Bays National Estuary Program

17

- Katrina Smith Korfmacher, University of Rochester

18

## 1 **7.9 Boxes**

**Box 7.1.** Ecosystem services provided by coastal wetlands, adapted from the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005).

1. Habitat and food web support
  - High production at base of food chain
    - Vascular plants
    - Microphytobenthos
    - Microbial decomposers
    - Benthic and phytal invertebrates (herbivores and detritivores)
  - Refuge and foraging grounds for small fishes and crustaceans
  - Feeding grounds for larger crabs and fishes during high water
  - Habitat for wildlife (birds, mammals, reptiles)
2. Buffer against storm wave damage
3. Shoreline stabilization
4. Hydrologic processing
  - Flood water storage
5. Water quality
  - Sediment trapping
  - Nutrient cycling
  - Chemical and metal retention
  - Pathogen removal
6. Biodiversity preservation
7. Carbon storage
8. Socioeconomic services to humans
  - Aesthetics
  - Natural heritage
  - Ecotourism
  - Education
  - Psychological health

2

**Box 7.2.** Estuarine properties and the climate-driven processes that affect them. The order of the properties and processes is a subjective ranking of the importance of the property and the severity of the particular process.

**Semi-enclosed geomorphology is affected by:**

- sea level rise – (Rahmstorf, 2007)
- storm intensity – (Emanuel, 2005)
- storm frequency – (Emanuel, 2005)
- storm duration – (Emanuel, 2005)
- sediment delivery – (Cloern *et al.*, 1983)

**Fresh water inflow is affected by:**

- watershed precipitation – (Arora, Chiew, and Grayson, 2000)
- system-wide evapotranspiration – (Arora, Chiew, and Grayson, 2000)
- timing of maximum runoff – (Ramus *et al.*, 2003)
- groundwater delivery – (Wolock and McCabe, 1999)

**Water column mixing is affected by:**

- strength of temperature-driven stratification – (Li, Gargett, and Denman, 2000)
- strength of salinity-driven stratification – (Li, Gargett, and Denman, 2000)
- wind velocity – (Li, Gargett, and Denman, 2000)

**Water temperature is affected by:**

- air temperature via sensible heat flux – (Lyman, Willis, and Johnson, 2006)
- insolation via radiant heat flux – (Lyman, Willis, and Johnson, 2006)
- temperature of fresh water runoff – (Arora, Chiew, and Grayson, 2000)
- temperature of ocean seawater advected into the estuary – (Lyman, Willis, and Johnson, 2006)

**Salinity is affected by:**

- exchange with the ocean – (Griffin and LeBlond, 1990)
- evaporation from estuary or lagoon – (Titus, 1989)

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

**Box 7.3.** “Novel” stressors resulting from climate change, together with a listing of potential biological responses to these stressors. The most important of these changes are highlighted in the main text. Not included are increases in sea levels and modifications in geomorphology of estuarine basins (barrier island disintegration), which are of utmost importance but act through complex interactions with other factors, as explained in the text.

**Temperature increases, acting through thermal physiology, may cause:**

- altered species (fauna and flora) distributions, including expanding ranges for tropical species currently limited by winter temperatures and contracting ranges due to increased mortality via summer temperatures
- altered species interactions and metabolic activity
- altered reproductive and migration timing
- increased microbial metabolic rates driving increased hypoxia/anoxia
- increased desiccation lethality to intertidal organisms
- increased roles of disease and parasitism
- all of the above open niches for invasive species

**Timing of seasonal temperature changes, acting through phenology, disrupts:**

- predator and prey availability
- food and reproductive pulses
- runoff cycle and upstream migration
- temperature-driven behavior from photoperiod-driven behavior
- biological ocean-estuary exchanges (especially of larvae and juveniles)

**CO<sub>2</sub> increases drive acidification (lowered pH), forcing:**

- reduced carbonate deposition in marine taxa
- greatly increased coral reef dieoff
- reduced photosynthetic rates
- increased trace metal toxicity

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38

- Box 7.4.** Adaptation Options for Resource Managers
- ✓ Help protect tidal marshes from erosion with oyster breakwaters and rock sills, and thus preserve their water filtration and fisheries enhancement functions.
  - ✓ Preserve and restore the structural complexity and biodiversity of vegetation in tidal marshes, seagrass meadows, and mangroves.
  - ✓ Adapt protections of important biogeochemical zones and critical habitats as the locations of these areas change with climate.
  - ✓ Prohibit bulkheads and other engineered structures on estuarine shores to preserve or delay the loss of important shallow-water habitats, by permitting their inland migration as sea levels rise.
  - ✓ Connect landscapes with corridors to enable migrations to sustain wildlife biodiversity across the landscape.
  - ✓ Conduct integrated management of nutrient sources and wetland treatment of nutrients to limit hypoxia and eutrophication.
  - ✓ Manage water resources to ensure sustainable use in the face of changing recharge rates and saltwater infiltration.
  - ✓ Maintain high genetic diversity through strategies such as the establishment of reserves specifically for this purpose.
  - ✓ Maintain landscape complexity of salt marsh landscapes, especially preserving marsh edge environments.
  - ✓ Support migrating shorebirds by ensuring protection of replicated estuaries along the flyway.
  - ✓ Restore important native species and remove invasive non-natives to improve marsh characteristics that promote propagation and production of fish and wildlife.
  - ✓ Direct estuarine habitat restoration projects to places where the restored ecosystem has room to retreat as sea level rises.
  - ✓ Restore oyster reefs in replication along a depth gradient to provide shallow water refugia for mobile species, such as fish and crustaceans, to retreat to in response to climate-induced deep water hypoxia/anoxia, or to spread the risk of losses due to other climate-related environmental disturbances.
  - ✓ Develop practical approaches to apply the principle of rolling easements, to prevent engineered barriers from blocking landward retreat of coastal marshes and other shoreline habitats as sea level rises.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22

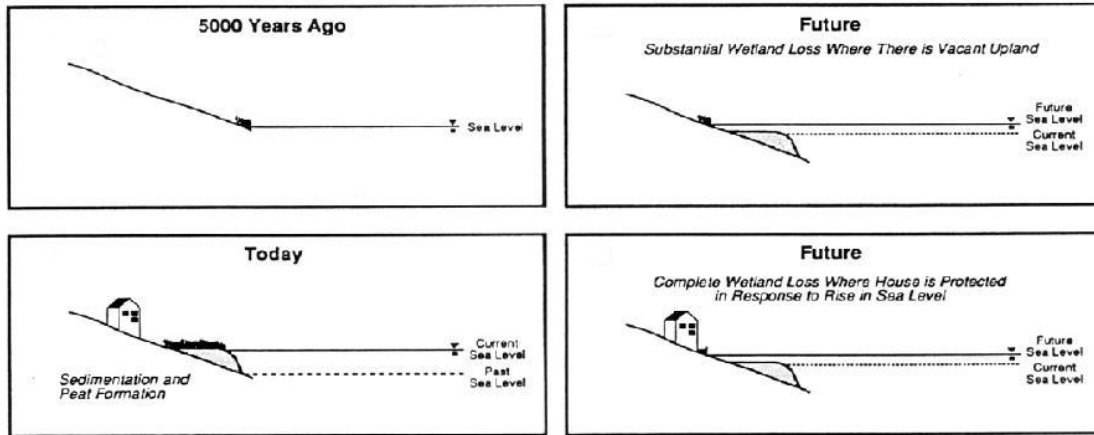
<p><b>Box 7.5. Storms as Opportunities for Management Change</b></p> <p>Catastrophic events provide management opportunities that make difficult decisions more publicly acceptable for increasing ecological and human resilience to climate change. Comprehensive planning could be initiated at federal, tribal, state, and local levels before—and applied after—major storm events to avoid future loss of life and property, and at the same time protect many environmental assets and ecosystem services in the interest of the public trust. Examples of proactive management activities include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Planning to prevent rebuilding in hazardous areas of high flood risk and storm damage.</li><li>▪ Establishing setbacks, buffer widths, and rolling easements based on reliable projections of future erosion and sea level rise, and implementing them rapidly after natural disasters.</li><li>▪ Prohibiting development subsidies (<i>e.g.</i>, federal flood insurance and infrastructure development grants) to estuarine and coastal shorelines at high risk.</li><li>▪ Modifying local land use plans to influence redevelopment after storms and direct it into less risky areas.</li><li>▪ Using funds from land trusts and programs designated to protect water quality, habitat, and fisheries, to purchase the most risky shorelines of high resource value.</li></ul>
--



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7

**Box 7.6** Responding to the Risk of Coastal Property Loss

The practice of protecting coastal property and infrastructure with hard engineered structures, such as bulkheads, prevents marshes and beaches from migrating inland as the sea level rises. Ultimately, many marshes and beaches seaward of bulkheads will disappear as sea level rises (Titus, 1991).



8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20

Coastal marshes have generally kept pace with the slow rate of sea level rise that has characterized the last several thousand years. Thus, the area of marsh has expanded over time as new lands have been inundated. If, in the future, sea level rises faster than the ability of the marsh to keep pace, the marsh area will contract. Construction of bulkheads to protect economic development may prevent new marsh from forming and result in a total loss of marsh in some areas.

Beach nourishment may also contribute to the loss of salt marsh on coastal barriers, because it prevents natural processes of coastal barrier migration through overwash. Overwash of sediments to the estuarine shoreline is a process that extends and revitalizes salt marsh on the protected side of coastal barriers.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15

**Box 7.7** Estuarine Water Quality and Climate Change

Climate change may lead to changes in estuarine water quality, which in turn would affect many of the vital ecosystem services offered by estuaries.

- Changes in nutrient concentrations and light penetration into estuarine waters may affect productivity of submerged aquatic vegetation, which provides a range of services such as nursery habitat for fish species, sediment stabilization, and nutrient uptake.
- Changes in water quality may affect oxygen demand as well as directly affecting availability of dissolved oxygen. An increase in freshwater discharge to estuaries may lead to increased frequency, scope, and duration of bottom-water hypoxia arising from stronger stratification of the estuarine water column and greater microbial oxygen demand at higher temperatures.

## 1 **7.10 Case Study Summaries**

2 The summary below provides an overview of the case study prepared for this chapter.  
3 The case study is available in Annex A5.

### 4 **Case Study Summary 7.1**

#### 5 **Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program, North Carolina** 6 **Southeast United States**

---

#### 7 **Why this case study was chosen**

8 The Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary:

- 9 • Possesses more low-lying land within 1.5 m of sea level than any other national estuary;
- 10 • Is expected to lose large areas of wetlands and coastal lands to inundation, according to sea level rise projections;
- 11 • Faces projected disintegration of the protective coastal barrier of the Outer Banks of North Carolina and conversion to an oceanic bay, if the integrity of the banks is breached;
- 12 • Has a Coastal Habitat Protection Plan for fisheries enhancement (mandated under the state's Fisheries Reform Act in 1997), which provides a model opportunity for integrating climate change into an ecosystem-based plan for management adaptation.

#### 13 **Management context**

14 The Albemarle-Pamlico system is a large complex of rivers, tributary estuaries, extensive wetlands, coastal lagoons, and barrier islands. It became part of the National Estuary Program in 1987. Initial efforts focused on assessments of the condition of the system through the Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine Study. Assessment results were used in the stakeholder-based development of a Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan (CCMP) in 1994. The CCMP presented objectives for plans in five areas: water quality, vital habitats, fisheries, stewardship, and implementation. Although long-term solutions to climate change are not specifically addressed in the Coastal Habitat Protection Plan, it does contemplate several anticipated impacts of climate change and human responses to threats.

#### 15 **Key climate change impacts**

- 16 • Observed rise in mean sea level (current rate of relative sea level rise estimated at over 3 mm per year);
- 17 • Projected increase in interannual variability of precipitation;
- 18 • Projected increase in frequency of intense storms;
- 19 • Observed increase and projected future increase in water temperatures.

#### 20 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 21 • The Coastal Habitat Protection Plan ongoing process provides a means for adaptation planning across management authorities that can overcome historic constraints of compartmentalization.
- 22 • A recently established (2005) state commission on effects of climate change provides opportunity for education and participation of legislators, in a forward-looking planning process that can address issues with time frames that extend well beyond a single election cycle.
- 23 • Sparse human populations and low levels of development along much of the interior mainland shoreline of the Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary provide openings for implementation of policies that protect the ability of the salt marsh and other shallow-water estuarine habitats to retreat as sea level rises. (Implementing the policies required to achieve this management adaptation would be extremely difficult in places where development and infrastructure are so dense that the economic and social costs of shoreline retreat are high.)

- Rolling easements and other management adaptations to climate change could be promoted by the Clean Water Management Trust Fund and the Ecosystem Enhancement Program of North Carolina.

### **Conclusions**

Community education and continuous dialogue with stakeholders are critically important in this situation, where the most economically valuable part of the ecosystem (the coast) is also the most vulnerable to climate. In estuaries, the human interest in protecting the shoreline from change is in direct conflict with the need for the shallow marshlands to transgress. Thus, the Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program's stakeholder-driven process is well suited to catalyze necessary dialog on planning issues and thereby encourage legislative or regulatory actions to adapt to climate change.

The Coastal Habitat Protection Plan process provides a model on which to base further development and application of estuarine ecosystem-based management. Similarly, the North Carolina study commission established to report on the consequences of climate change and to make recommendations for management responses can serve as a model for other states and the National Estuary Program to synthesize information on climate change impacts and adaptation measures.

Finally, even the Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program, which is among the most sensitive estuaries to climate change and is equipped with an active management planning process, does not explicitly include climate change adaptation measures in its Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan. This highlights the need for increased attention to this issue by the National Estuary Program.

1 **7.11 Tables**

2 **Table 7.1.** The major stressors currently acting on estuaries, and their expected impacts  
 3 on management goals, as determined by consensus opinion of the contributing authors.  
 4 Evidence is mounting that sea level rise is already having direct and indirect impacts on  
 5 estuaries (*e.g.*, Galbraith *et al.*, 2002), but because this factor has not yet been widely  
 6 integrated into management, we do not list it here despite its dominating significance in  
 7 future decades.

8

<b>Stressor</b>	<b>Water Quality</b>	<b>Fisheries</b>	<b>Habitat</b>	<b>Human Value &amp; Welfare</b>	<b>Water Quantity</b>
Excess Nutrients	negative	positive then negative	positive then negative	positive then negative	
Sediments	negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	negative	
Pathogens	negative	negative		negative	
Oyster Loss & Habitat Destruction	negative	negative	negative	negative	
Benthic Habitat Disturbance	negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive then negative	negative	
Wetland Habitat Loss from Development	negative	negative	negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative
Toxics	negative	negative	negative	negative	
Invasive Species	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	
Thermal Pollution	positive then negative <b>or</b> down	positive then negative	pos then negative <b>or</b> down	positive then negative	
Biological Oxygen Demand (BOD)	negative	negative	negative	negative	

9

1 **Table 7.2.** Percentage change in oceanic properties or processes as a result of climate  
 2 change forcing by 2050. This table is adapted from Sarmiento *et al.* (2004). Physical  
 3 changes used as inputs to the biological model are the mean of six global Atmosphere-  
 4 Ocean Coupled General Circulation Models (AOCGCMs) from various laboratories  
 5 around the world. The AOCGCMs were all forced by the IPCC IS92a scenario, which  
 6 has atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> doubling by 2050.  
 7

	<b>Percentage Change by 2050 due to Climate Change Forcing</b>					
<b>Domain</b>	Mixed layer	Upwelling volume	Vertical stratification	Growing season	Chlorophyll concentration	Primary productivity
marginal ice zone	-41	-10	+17	-14	+11	+18
subpolar gyre, seasonally stratified	-22	+1	+11	+6	+10	+14
subtropical gyre, seasonally stratified	-12	-6	+13	+2	+5	+5
subtropical gyre, permanently stratified	nd*	-7	+8	0	+3	-3
low-latitude and equatorial upwelling	nd*	-6	+11	0	+6	+9

8  
 9 \*no data  
 10  
 11  
 12  
 13  
 14  
 15  
 16  
 17  
 18  
 19  
 20  
 21  
 22  
 23  
 24

1 **Table 7.3.** Effects of emerging or enhanced stressors on estuaries arising from climate  
 2 change.  
 3

Stressor	Water Quality	Fisheries & Wildlife	Habitat	Human Value & Welfare	Water Quantity
Sea Level Rise (shoreline armoring prevents transgression of habitats)	positive <b>then</b> negative	positive <b>then</b> negative	positive then negative	negative	negative
Increased Intensive Storms (shoreline erosion; pulsed floods and runoff)	negative	negative	negative	negative	
Temperature Increases (new species mix; disease and parasitism increase, phenology mismatch)	positive <b>then</b> negative	positive <b>then</b> negative	positive then negative	positive <b>then</b> negative	
Increased CO <sub>2</sub> and Acidification (CaCO <sub>3</sub> deposition inhibited)	negative	negative	negative	negative	
Precipitation Change (stratification changes)	negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative
Species Introduction (facilitated by disturbance)	unpredictable	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	positive <b>or</b> negative	

4  
 5  
 6  
 7  
 8  
 9

**Table 7.4.** Factors that control the occurrence of estuarine hypoxia and the climate change-related impacts that are likely to affect them.

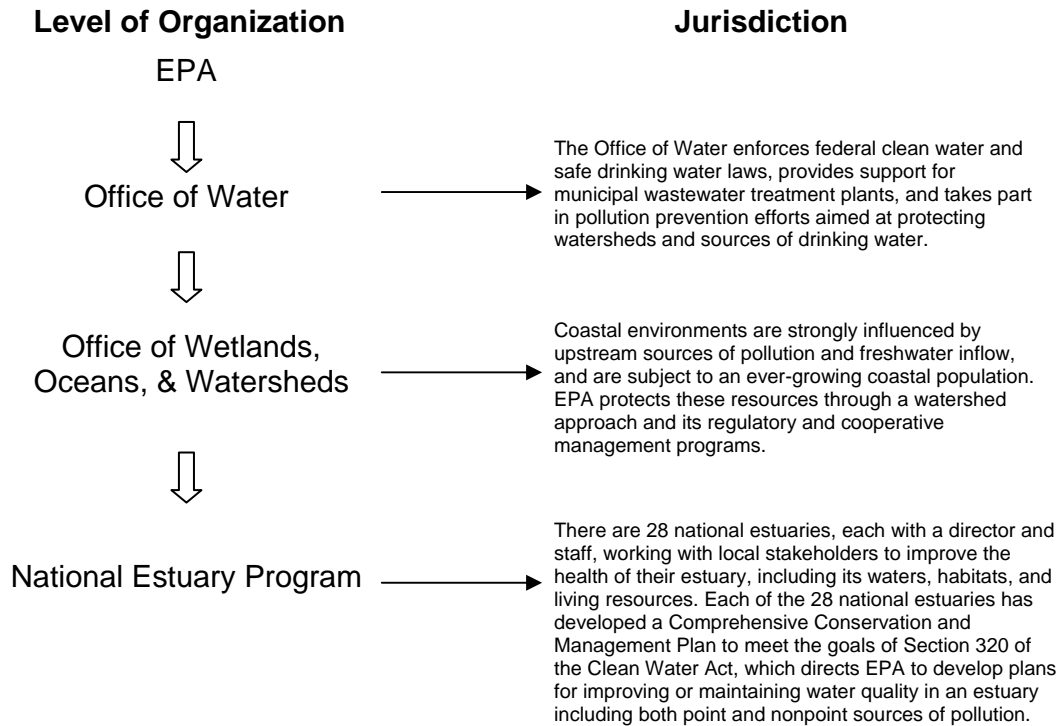
Factor	Climate-Related Forcing
Water temperature	$\Delta T$
River discharge	$\Delta$ precipitation
N&P loading	$\Delta T$ , $\Delta$ precipitation
Stratification	$\Delta T$ , $\Delta$ precipitation, $\Delta$ RSL*
Wind	$\Delta$ weather patterns, $\Delta$ tropical storms
Organic carbon source	$\Delta T$ , $\Delta$ precipitation, $\Delta$ RSL*

\*RSL = relative sea level

10  
 11  
 12

1 **7.12 Figures**

2 **Figure 7.1.** Organization of the NEP system.<sup>1</sup>



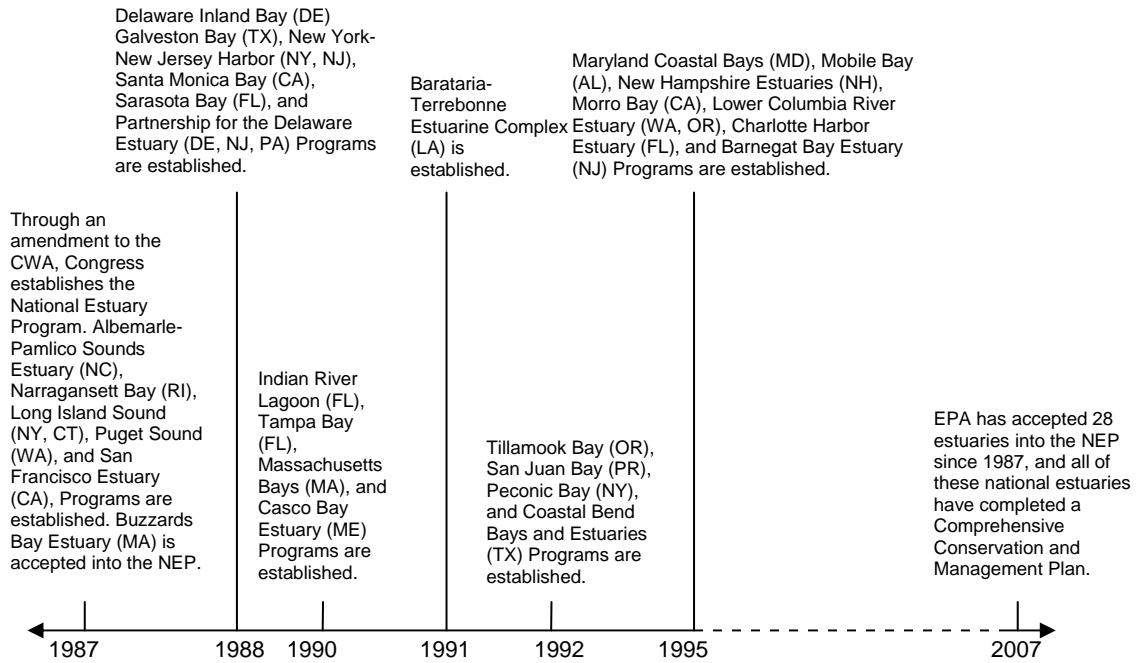
Adapted from [http://www.epa.gov/water/org\\_chart/index.htm#](http://www.epa.gov/water/org_chart/index.htm#)

3  
4



1

2 **Figure 7.2. Timeline of National Estuaries Program formation.**<sup>3</sup>



3

4

## 8 Marine Protected Areas

### Authors

#### Lead Author

Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

#### Contributing Authors

Satie Airamé, University of California, Santa Barbara

Billy Causey, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Alan Friedlander, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Daniel F. Gleason, Georgia Southern University

Rikki Grober-Dunsmore, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

Johanna Johnson, Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority

Elizabeth Mcleod, The Nature Conservancy

Steven L. Miller, University of North Carolina at Wilmington

Robert S. Steneck, University of Maine

Christa Woodley, University of California at Davis

**Chapter Contents**

1  
2  
3 8.1 Summary ..... 8-3  
4 8.2 Background and History ..... 8-6  
5 8.2.1 Introduction..... 8-6  
6 8.2.2 Historical Context and Origins of National Marine Sanctuaries and Other Types  
7 of Marine Protected Areas ..... 8-9  
8 8.2.3 Enabling Legislation ..... 8-11  
9 8.2.4 Interpretation of Goals ..... 8-13  
10 8.3 Current Status of Management System..... 8-14  
11 8.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend ..... 8-14  
12 8.3.2 Stressors of Concern ..... 8-17  
13 8.3.3 Management Approaches and Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate  
14 Change 8-27  
15 8.4 Adapting to Climate Change..... 8-29  
16 8.4.1 Ameliorate Existing Stressors in Coastal Waters ..... 8-29  
17 8.4.2 Protect Apparently Resistant and Potentially Resilient Areas..... 8-31  
18 8.4.3 Develop Networks of MPAs ..... 8-32  
19 8.4.4 Integrate Climate Change Into MPA Planning, Management, and Evaluation . 8-36  
20 8.5 Conclusions..... 8-40  
21 8.5.1 Management Considerations..... 8-40  
22 8.5.2 Research Priorities ..... 8-42  
23 8.6 References..... 8-43  
24 8.7 Acknowledgements..... 8-72  
25 8.8 Boxes..... 8-74  
26 8.9 Tables..... 8-87  
27 8.10 Figures..... 8-91  
28  
29

## 1 **8.1 Summary**

2 Marine protected areas (MPAs) such as national marine sanctuaries provide place-based  
3 management of marine ecosystems through various degrees and types of protective actions. A  
4 goal of national marine sanctuaries is to maintain natural biological communities by protecting  
5 habitats, populations, and ecological processes using community-based approaches. Biodiversity  
6 and habitat complexity are key ecosystem characteristics that must be protected to achieve  
7 sanctuary goals, and biologically structured habitats (such as coral reefs and kelp forests) are  
8 especially susceptible to degradation resulting from climate change. Marine ecosystems are  
9 susceptible to the effects of ocean acidification on carbonate chemistry, as well as to direct and  
10 indirect effects of increasing temperatures, changing circulation patterns, increasing severity of  
11 storms, and other factors.

12

### 13 **Key Findings**

14

15 *Implementing networks of MPAs may help spread the risks posed by climate change by*  
16 *protecting multiple replicates of the full range of habitats and communities within an ecosystem.*

17 Recognizing that the science underlying our understanding of resilience is developing and that  
18 climate change will not affect marine species equally everywhere, an element of spreading the  
19 risk is needed in MPA design. To avoid the loss of a single habitat type, managers can protect  
20 multiple samples of the full range of marine habitat types. In designing networks, managers can  
21 consider information on areas that may represent potential refugia from climate change impacts  
22 as well as information on connectivity (current patterns that support larval replenishment and  
23 recovery) among sites that vary in their sensitivities to climate change. Larger MPAs are  
24 necessary for networking to achieve goals such as protecting refugia and planning for  
25 connectivity.

26

27 *Managers can increase resilience to climate change by managing other anthropogenic stressors*  
28 *that also degrade ecosystems and by protecting key functional groups.* Examples of  
29 anthropogenic stressors that can be managed at the site level include fishing and  
30 overexploitation; inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants; and habitat damage and  
31 destruction. Reduction of these stressors may boost the ability of species, communities, and  
32 ecosystems to tolerate climate-related stresses or recover after impacts have occurred. Resilience  
33 is also affected by trophic linkages, which are a key characteristic maintaining ecosystem  
34 integrity. Thus, a mechanism that has been identified to maintain resilience is the management of  
35 functional groups, specifically herbivores. In one instance on the Great Barrier Reef, recovery  
36 from an algae-dominated to a coral-dominated state was driven by a single batfish species, not  
37 grazing by dominant parrotfishes or surgeonfishes that normally keep algae in check on reefs.  
38 This finding highlights the need to protect a diversity of species within functional groups, and the  
39 need for further research on key species and ecological processes that maintain resilience.

40

41 *Overcoming the challenges of climate change will require creative collaboration among a*  
42 *variety of stakeholders.* MPAs that reinforce social resilience can provide communities with the  
43 opportunity to strengthen social relations and political stability, and diversify economic options.  
44 A variety of management actions that have been identified to reinforce social resilience include:  
45 (1) providing opportunities for shared leadership roles within government and management

1 systems; (2) integrating MPAs and networks into broader coastal management initiatives to  
2 increase public awareness and support of management goals; (3) encouraging local economic  
3 diversification so that communities are able to deal with environmental, economic, and social  
4 changes; (4) encouraging stakeholder participation and incorporating stakeholders' ecological  
5 knowledge in a multi-governance system; and (5) making culturally appropriate conflict  
6 resolution mechanisms accessible to local communities.

7  
8 *A range of case studies highlight the variety of ecological issues and management challenges*  
9 *found across MPAs.* Three case studies are based on coral reef ecosystems, which have  
10 experienced coral bleaching events over the past two decades (see Case Study Summaries 8.1,  
11 8.2, and 8.3). They span a range of levels of protection, from relatively low (Florida Keys) to  
12 moderate (Great Barrier Reef) to complete (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands). The Great Barrier  
13 Reef Marine Park is an example of an MPA with a relatively highly developed climate change  
14 program in place that can serve as an example to other MPAs. A Coral Bleaching Response Plan  
15 is part of its Climate Change Response Program, which is linked to a Representative Areas  
16 Program and a Water Quality Protection Plan in a comprehensive approach to support the  
17 resilience of the coral reef ecosystem. In contrast, the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary is  
18 developing a bleaching response plan but does not have staff dedicated to climate-change issues.  
19 The Florida Reef Resilience Program, under the leadership of The Nature Conservancy, is  
20 implementing a quantitative assessment of coral reefs before and after bleaching events. Finally,  
21 the recently established Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National  
22 Monument is the largest MPA in the world and provides a unique opportunity to examine the  
23 effects of climate change on a nearly intact large-scale marine ecosystem that is fully protected.

24  
25 A fourth case study (see Case Study Summary 8.4) examines the Channel Islands National  
26 Marine Sanctuary, located off the coast of southern California. The Sanctuary Management Plan  
27 for the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary mentions, but does not fully address, the  
28 issue of climate change. The plan describes a strategy to identify, assess, and respond to  
29 emerging issues through consultation with the Sanctuary Advisory Council and local, state, or  
30 federal agencies. Emerging issues that are not yet addressed by the management plan include  
31 ocean warming, sea level rise, shifts in ocean circulation, ocean acidification, spread of disease,  
32 and shifts in species ranges.

33  
34 *A number of opportunities exist for addressing barriers to implementation of adaptation options*  
35 *in MPAs.* Barriers to implementation of adaptation options include lack of resources, varying  
36 degrees of interest in and concern about climate change impacts, and gaps in basic research on  
37 marine ecosystems and climate change effects. Opportunities include a growing public concern  
38 about the marine environment, recommendations of two ocean commissions, and an increasing  
39 dedication of marine scientists to conduct research that is relevant to MPA management.  
40 References to climate change as well as MPAs permeate both the Pew Oceans Commission and  
41 U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy reports on the state of the oceans. Both commissions held  
42 extensive public meetings, and their findings reflect changing public attitudes about protecting  
43 marine resources and threats of climate change. The National Marine Sanctuary Program  
44 recently formed a Climate Change Working Group that will be developing recommendations as  
45 well. Concurrent with public and policy interests, the interests of the marine science community  
46 have also evolved, with a shift from basic to applied research over recent decades. Although

1 there is considerable research on physical impacts of climate change in marine systems, there are  
2 major opportunities for research on biological effects and ecological consequences of climate  
3 change. Attitudes of MPA managers have changed as well, with a growing recognition of the  
4 need to better understand ecological processes in order to implement science-based adaptive  
5 management in the ocean. Managers also perceive the increasing need to consider regional- and  
6 global-scale issues in addition to traditional local-scale approaches.

7  
8 *The most effective configuration of MPAs may be a network of highly protected areas nested*  
9 *within a broader management framework.* As part of this configuration, areas that are  
10 ecologically and physically significant and connected by currents, larval dispersal, and adult  
11 movements could be identified and included as a way of enhancing resilience in the context of  
12 climate change. Connectivity is an important part of ensuring larval exchange and the  
13 replenishment of populations in areas damaged by natural or human-related agents, and thus can  
14 enhance recovery following disturbance events. Critical areas to consider include nursery  
15 grounds, spawning grounds, areas of high species diversity, areas that contain a variety of habitat  
16 types in close proximity, and potential climate refugia. A high level of protection for these types  
17 of areas should help protect key ecological processes that enhance resilience such as larval  
18 production and recruitment, ecological interactions among full complements of species, and  
19 ontogenetic changes in habitat utilization. Management of the areas surrounding MPAs helps  
20 increase the likelihood of success of MPAs by creating a buffer zone between areas with high  
21 levels of protective actions and those with none.

22

## 1 **8.2 Background and History**

### 2 **8.2.1 Introduction**

3 Coastal oceans and marine ecosystems are central to the lives and livelihoods of a large and  
4 growing proportion of the U.S. population. They provide extensive areas for recreation and  
5 tourism, and support productive fisheries. Some areas produce significant quantities of oil and  
6 gas, and commercial shipping crosses coastal waters. In addition, coral reefs and barrier islands  
7 provide coastal communities with some protection from storm-generated waves. In their global  
8 analysis of the value of ecosystem services, Costanza *et al.* (1997) estimated that coastal marine  
9 ecosystem services were worth more than one-third the value of all terrestrial and marine  
10 ecosystem services combined (\$12.5 of \$33 trillion). Despite their value, coastal ecosystems and  
11 the services they provide are becoming increasingly vulnerable to human pressures, and  
12 management of coastal resources and human impacts generally is insufficient or ineffective  
13 (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005).

14  
15 As a result of coastal and shore-based human activities, marine ecosystems are exposed to a long  
16 list of threats and stressors, including overexploitation of living marine resources, pollution,  
17 redistribution of sediments, and habitat damage and destruction. There is an equally long list of  
18 regulatory responses, including managing fisheries for sustainability, restricting ocean dumping,  
19 reducing loads of nutrients and contaminants, controlling dredge-and-fill operations, managing  
20 vessel traffic to reduce large-vessel groundings, and so on. These regulations are managed by  
21 coastal states and the federal government, with state jurisdiction extending three nautical miles  
22 (nm) offshore (9 nm in the Gulf of Mexico) and federal waters on out to 200 nm or the edge of  
23 the continental shelf (the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone, or U.S. EEZ). The total area of the  
24 U.S. EEZ exceeds the total landmass of the coterminous United States by about one-half (Pew  
25 Ocean Commission, 2003).

26  
27 Broad-scale protections in the U.S. EEZ cover a wide range of types of marine ecosystems, from  
28 low to high latitudes and across the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Shallow areas of these systems  
29 share basic features in the form of biologically generated habitats: temperate kelp forests and salt  
30 marshes, tropical coral reefs and mangroves, and seagrass beds. These habitats are fundamental  
31 to ecosystem structure and function, and support a range of different community types (Bertness,  
32 Gaines, and Hay, 2001). In addition, there are significant deep-water coral formations about  
33 which we are just starting to increase our understanding (Rogers, 1999; Watling and Risk, 2002).

34  
35 Embedded within the general protections of the U.S. EEZ are hundreds of federal marine  
36 protected areas (MPAs) that are designed to provide place-based management at “special” places  
37 (Barr, 2004) and other areas that have been identified as meriting protective actions. The term  
38 “marine protected area” has been used in many ways (*e.g.*, Kelleher, Bleakley, and Wells, 1995;  
39 Agardy, 1997; Palumbi, 2001; National Research Council, 2001; Agardy *et al.*, 2003). We use  
40 the following definition: “Marine protected area” means any area of the marine environment that  
41 has been reserved by federal, state, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide

1 lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein.<sup>1</sup> It is important to  
2 emphasize at the onset that MPAs are managed across a wide range of approaches and degrees of  
3 protection (Wooninck and Bertrand, 2004). At the highly protective end of the spectrum are fully  
4 protected (no-take) marine reserves (Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004). These reserves eliminate fishing  
5 and other forms of resource extraction, and enable some degree of recovery of exploited  
6 populations and restoration of ecosystem structure and function, generally within relatively small  
7 areas. It is also important to highlight at the onset that management of waters surrounding MPAs  
8 is critically important both to the effectiveness of the MPAs themselves as well as to the overall  
9 resilience of larger marine systems. By “resilience” we refer to the amount of change or  
10 disturbance that can be absorbed by a system before the system is redefined by a different set of  
11 processes and structures (*i.e.*, the ecosystem recovers from the disturbance without a major phase  
12 shift; see Glossary).

13  
14 Federal MPAs have been established by the Department of the Interior (National Park Service  
15 and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service) and the Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and  
16 Atmospheric Administration (National Marine Fisheries Service, National Estuarine Research  
17 Reserve System, and National Marine Sanctuary Program) (Table 8.1). A 2000 executive order  
18 established the National Center for Marine Protected Areas<sup>2</sup> to strengthen and expand a national  
19 system of MPAs. The total area of MPAs within the U.S. EEZ is miniscule, and an even smaller  
20 area lies within fully protected marine reserves (Table 8.2). Only 3.4% of the U.S. EEZ lies  
21 within fully protected marine reserves, with most of this area due to the 2006 Presidential  
22 proclamation that designated the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine  
23 National Monument; excluding the Monument reduces the percentage to 0.05%.

24  
25 Manifestations of climate change are strengthening (IPCC, 2007c) against a background of long-  
26 standing alterations to ecological structure and function of marine ecosystems caused by fisheries  
27 exploitation, pollution, habitat degradation and destruction, and other factors (Pauly *et al.*, 1998;  
28 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Pew Ocean Commission, 2003; U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004).  
29 Nowhere is the stress of elevated sea surface temperatures more dramatically expressed than in  
30 coral reefs, where local-scale coral bleaching has occurred in the Eastern Pacific and Florida for  
31 more than two decades (Glynn, 1991; Obura, Causey, and Church, 2006).<sup>3</sup> Impacts of climate  
32 variability and change in temperate ecosystems have not been as dramatic as coral bleaching.  
33 Interestingly, the combined effects of climate change, regime shifts, and El Niño-Southern  
34 Oscillation events (ENSOs) can strongly affect kelp forests (Paine, Tegner, and Johnson, 1998;  
35 Steneck *et al.*, 2002), but apparently not associated communities (Halpern and Cottenie, 2007).

36  
37 The purpose of this chapter is to examine adaptation options for MPAs in the context of climate  
38 change. We will focus on the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary Program  
39 (Table 8.3, Fig. 8.1), because they encompass a range of ecosystem types and are the only U.S.  
40 MPAs managed under specific enabling legislation. The National Marine Sanctuary Program has

---

<sup>1</sup> Executive Order 13158 quoted in: **National Center for Marine Protected Areas**, 2006: *Draft Framework for Developing the National System of Marine Protected Areas*. National Center for Marine Protected Areas, Silver Spring, MD.

<sup>2</sup> <http://mpa.gov/>

<sup>3</sup> See also **Causey**, B.D., 2001: Lessons learned from the intensification of coral bleaching from 1980-2000 in the Florida Keys, USA. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. *Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas*, pp. 60-66.



1 explicit approaches to and goals for MPA management, which simplify discussion of existing  
2 MPA management and how it may be adapted to climate change. Further, a goal of the program  
3 is to support ecosystem-based management (EBM) and, as will be discussed, EBM will become  
4 increasingly important in the context of climate change.

5  
6  
7  
8 **Figure 8.1.** Locations of the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary  
9 System.<sup>4</sup>

10  
11 The chapter provides background information about the historical context and origins of MPAs,  
12 with National Marine Sanctuaries highlighted as an example of effectively managed MPAs  
13 (Kelleher, Bleakley, and Wells, 1995; Agardy, 1997). MPAs are managed by several federal  
14 organizations other than the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) (Table  
15 8.1), but it is beyond the scope of this chapter to cover all entities. National Marine Sanctuaries  
16 were selected to illustrate adaptation options for MPAs that apply broadly with respect to major  
17 anthropogenic and climate change stressors.

18  
19 It is also beyond the scope of this chapter to cover issues concerning marine ecosystems from  
20 tropical to polar climates. This chapter highlights coral reef ecosystems, which have already  
21 shown widespread and dramatic responses to oceanic warming and additional global and local  
22 stressors. Mass coral reef bleaching events became worldwide in 1998, and have resulted in  
23 extensive mortality of reef-building corals (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000; 2002; Turgeon *et al.*, 2002;  
24 Wilkinson, 2004; Wadell, 2005). There now exists a substantial and rapidly growing body of  
25 research on impacts of climate change on corals (such as bleaching) and coral reef ecosystems  
26 (*e.g.*, Smith and Buddemeier, 1992; Glynn, 1993; Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Wilkinson, 2004;  
27 Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004; Donner *et al.*, 2005; Phinney *et al.*, 2006; Berkelmans  
28 and van Oppen, 2006). Climate change stressors, including effects of ocean acidification on  
29 carbonate chemistry (Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Soto, 2001; The Royal Society, 2005; Caldeira and  
30 Wickett, 2005), will be reviewed later in this chapter. Management approaches to coral reef  
31 ecosystems in response to mass bleaching and/or climate change have also received some  
32 attention (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003; West and Salm, 2003;  
33 Bellwood *et al.*, 2004; Wooldridge *et al.*, 2005; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006).<sup>5</sup>

34  
35 Climate-change stressors in and ecological responses of colder-water marine ecosystems only  
36 partially overlap those of warmer-water and tropical marine ecosystems (IPCC, 2001; Kennedy  
37 *et al.*, 2002). The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary is included as a temperate-zone  
38 case study (see Case Study Summary 8.4) to contrast with case studies of tropical coral reef

---

<sup>4</sup> **National Marine Sanctuary Program**, 2006: National Marine Sanctuary system and field sites. National Marine Sanctuaries Program Webpage, <http://www.sanctuaries.nos.noaa.gov/visit/welcome.html>, accessed on 5-18-2007.

<sup>5</sup> See also **Salm, R.V.** and S.L. Coles, 2001: Coral bleaching and marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, Volume 102, Asia Pacific Coastal Marine Program Report #0102, The Nature Conservancy, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 1-118.

**Marshall, P.** and H. Schuttenberg, 2006: A Reef Manager's Guide to Coral Bleaching. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, [http://www.coris.noaa.gov/activities/reef\\_managers\\_guide/](http://www.coris.noaa.gov/activities/reef_managers_guide/), pp.1-178.

1 ecosystems from the Florida Keys to Hawaii to Australia (Case Study Summaries 8.1–8.3),  
2 which differ in extent of no-take protection.

### 3 **8.2.2 Historical Context and Origins of National Marine Sanctuaries and Other Types of** 4 **Marine Protected Areas**

#### 5 **8.2.2.1 Mounting Environmental Concerns and Congressional Actions**

6 In 1972 the United States acknowledged the dangers and threats of uncontrolled industrial and  
7 urban growth and their impacts on coastal and marine habitats through the passage of a number  
8 of Congressional acts that focused on conservation of threatened coastal and ocean resources.  
9 The Water Pollution Control Act addressed the nation’s threatened water supply and coastal  
10 pollution. The Marine Mammal Protection Act imposed a five-year ban on killing whales, seals,  
11 sea otters, manatees, and other marine mammals. The Coastal Zone Management Act provided a  
12 framework for federal funding of state coastal zone management plans that created a nationwide  
13 system of estuarine reserves. A final environmental bill that focused on ocean health, the Marine  
14 Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act of 1972, established a system of marine protected areas  
15 —national marine sanctuaries (NMS)—administered by NOAA (Fig. 8.2).  
16  
17  
18

19 **Figure 8.2.** Timeline of the designation of the national marine sanctuaries in the National  
20 Marine Sanctuary Program.<sup>6</sup>

#### 21 **8.2.2.2 Types of Federal MPAs and Focus on National Marine Sanctuaries**

22 In addition to the 13 national marine sanctuaries and one marine national monument, there are  
23 hundreds of marine managed areas (MMAs) under other, sometimes overlapping jurisdictions  
24 (Table 8.2) (National Research Council, 2001).<sup>7</sup> The National Park System, administered by the  
25 National Park Service of the Department of the Interior, includes more than 70 ocean sites  
26 (Davis, 2004). Certain national parks such as Everglades (founded in 1947), Biscayne (founded  
27 in 1968 as Biscayne National Monument), and Dry Tortugas National Parks (founded in 1935 as  
28 Fort Jefferson National Monument) have much longer histories of functioning as MPAs than the  
29 35-year history of National Marine Sanctuaries. The National Marine Sanctuary Program and  
30 National Park Service have collaborated on ocean stewardship for a number of years (Barr,  
31 2004). The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, also under the Department of the Interior, manages  
32 more than 100 national wildlife refuges that include marine ecosystems (Table 8.2). In some  
33 cases, jurisdictions overlap. For example, there are four national wildlife refuges within the  
34 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (Keller and Causey, 2005), three of which cover large  
35 areas of nearshore waters (Fig. 8.3).  
36  
37  
38

---

<sup>6</sup> **National Marine Sanctuary Program**, 2006: History of the national marine sanctuaries. NOAA's National Marine Sanctuaries Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/about/history>, accessed on 7-29-2007.

<sup>7</sup> See also **National Center for Marine Protected Areas**, 2006: *Draft Framework for Developing the National System of Marine Protected Areas*. National Center for Marine Protected Areas, Silver Spring, MD.

1 **Figure 8.3.** Map of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. The 1990 designation did  
2 not include the Tortugas Ecological Reserve, located at the western end of the sanctuary,  
3 which was implemented in 2001. The Key Largo NMS corresponded to the Existing  
4 Management Area (EMA) just offshore of the John Pennekamp Coral Reef State Park; the  
5 Looe Key NMS corresponded to the EMA surrounding the Looe Key Sanctuary  
6 Preservation Area and Research Only Area.<sup>8</sup>  
7

8 NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) has jurisdiction over a large number of  
9 fishery management areas (Table 8.2). Collectively, these areas are more than an order of  
10 magnitude greater in size than all the other MMAs combined, but with a very small area under  
11 no-take protection (Table 8.2). NOAA also administers the National Estuarine Research Reserve  
12 System, which is a partnership program with coastal states that includes 27 sites.  
13

14 This chapter is focused on NOAA's National Marine Sanctuary Program (NMSP), because it is  
15 dedicated to place-based protection and management of marine resources at nationally  
16 significant locations and has gained international recognition over the years (Barr, 2004) (Fig.  
17 8.4). The principles of adaptation of MPA management to climate change (*i.e.*, institutional  
18 responses) that are identified will be broadly applicable to MPAs under other jurisdictions and  
19 forms of management, such as national parks, national wildlife refuges, and MMAs established  
20 by the NMFS, although institutional responses to adaptation likely will differ among the agencies  
21 responsible for resource management (Holling, 1995; McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002).  
22 As the only federal program specifically mandated to manage MPAs, the NMSP is in a unique  
23 position to respond to challenges and recommendations in reports by the U.S. Commission on  
24 Ocean Policy (U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, 2004) and Pew Oceans Commission (Pew  
25 Ocean Commission, 2003). Both reports encourage the use of ecosystem-based management,  
26 which is one of the hallmarks of the NMSP.  
27  
28  
29

30 **Figure 8.4.** Organizational chart of the National Marine Sanctuary Program.<sup>9</sup>

### 31 **8.2.2.3 The National Marine Sanctuary Program**

32 The NMSP was established to identify, designate, and manage ocean, coastal, and Great Lakes  
33 resources of special national significance to protect their ecological and cultural integrity for the  
34 use and enjoyment of current and future generations. In addition to natural resources within  
35 national marine sanctuaries, NOAA's Maritime Heritage Program is committed to preserving  
36 historical, cultural, and archaeological resources.<sup>10</sup>  
37

---

<sup>8</sup> **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007: Zones in the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. NOAA Website, NOAA, [http://www.floridakeys.noaa.gov/research\\_monitoring/map.html](http://www.floridakeys.noaa.gov/research_monitoring/map.html), accessed on 7-1-2007.

<sup>9</sup> **NOAA National Ocean Service**, 2006: NOAA's National Ocean Service: program offices. NOAA Website, <http://www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/programs/>, accessed on 7-29-2007.

<sup>10</sup> **National Marine Sanctuary Program**, 2006: Maritime heritage program. National Marine Sanctuaries Program Webpage, <http://www.sanctuaries.nos.noaa.gov/maritime/welcome.html>, accessed on 5-18-2007.

1 The inclusion of consumptive human activities as a major part of the management programs in  
2 national marine sanctuaries distinguishes them from other federal or state resource protection  
3 programs. Sanctuaries are established for the long-term public benefit, use, and enjoyment, both  
4 recreationally and commercially. However, it is critical that sanctuary management policies,  
5 practices, and initiatives ensure that human activities in sanctuaries are compatible with long-  
6 term protection of sanctuary resources.

7  
8 Thirteen national marine sanctuaries and one marine national monument, representing a wide  
9 variety of ocean environments as well as one cultural heritage site in the Great Lakes, have been  
10 established since 1975 (Table 8.3; Fig. 8.1). The national marine sanctuaries encompass a wide  
11 range of temperate and tropical environments: moderately deep banks, coral reef-seagrass-  
12 mangrove systems, whale migration corridors, deep sea canyons, and underwater archaeological  
13 sites. The sites range in size from 0.66 km<sup>2</sup> in Fagatele Bay, American Samoa, to more than  
14 360,000 km<sup>2</sup> in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (Table 8.3), the largest marine protected area  
15 in the world.

16  
17 The NMSP has implemented a regional approach to managing the system of sanctuaries.<sup>4</sup> Four  
18 regions have been established to improve support for the sites and to enhance an integrated  
19 ecosystem-based approach to management of sanctuaries. An important function of the regions is  
20 to provide value-added services to the sites, while taking a broader integrated approach to  
21 management. The four regions are the Pacific Islands; West Coast; Northeast-Great Lakes; and  
22 the Southeast Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean. Boundaries for these regions are focused  
23 on physical and biological connectivity among sites, rather than political boundaries.

## 24 **8.2.3 Enabling Legislation**

### 25 **8.2.3.1 Enabling Legislation for Different Types of MPAs**

26 The U.S. National Park System Organic Act established the National Parks System in 1916.  
27 Several parks and national monuments have marine waters within their boundaries or are  
28 primarily marine; they were the earliest federal MPAs. Similarly, a large number of national  
29 wildlife refuges function as MPAs (Table 8.1) under the authority of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife  
30 Service. The 1966 National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act was the first  
31 comprehensive legislation after decades of designations of federal wildlife reservations and  
32 refuges.<sup>11</sup>

33  
34 NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service implements and manages more than 200 fishery  
35 management areas (Table 8.1) under several different statutory authorities, with four major  
36 categories: Federal Fisheries Management Zones, Federal Fisheries Habitat Conservation Zones,  
37 Federal Threatened and Endangered Species Protected Areas, and Federal Marine Mammal  
38 Protected Areas.<sup>7</sup> The purposes of these fishery management areas include rebuilding and  
39 maintaining sustainable fisheries, conserving and restoring marine habitats, and promoting the  
40 recovery of protected species. NOAA's National Estuarine Research Reserve System was  
41 established by the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972.<sup>12</sup> This system consists of partnerships

---

<sup>11</sup> U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2007: Origins of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Website, <http://training.fws.gov/history/origins.html>, accessed on 5-18-2007.

<sup>12</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1451-1456 P.L. 92-583

1 between NOAA and coastal states to protect habitat, offer educational opportunities, and provide  
2 areas for research. At this time Congress also established a system of national marine  
3 sanctuaries.

#### 4 **8.2.3.2 The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act**

5 The Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act<sup>13</sup> established both the NMSP and a  
6 regulatory framework for ocean dumping, which was a major issue at the time. In Title III of the  
7 Act, later to be known as the National Marine Sanctuaries Act (NMSA)<sup>14</sup>, the Secretary of  
8 Commerce received the authority to designate national marine sanctuaries for the purpose of  
9 preserving or restoring nationally significant areas for their conservation, recreational,  
10 ecological, or esthetic values. The NMSA is reauthorized every four to five years, allowing for  
11 updating and adaptation as necessary.

#### 12 **8.2.3.3 Legislation Designating Particular National Marine Sanctuaries**

13 On November 16, 1990, the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection Act  
14 (FKNMS Act), P.L. 101-605, set out as a note to 16 U.S.C. 1433, became law. The FKNMS Act  
15 designated an area of waters and submerged lands, including the living and nonliving resources  
16 within those waters, surrounding most of the Florida Keys (Fig. 8.3). This was the first national  
17 marine sanctuary to be designated by an act of Congress.

18  
19 The FKNMS Act immediately addressed two major concerns of the residents of the Florida  
20 Keys. First, it placed an instant prohibition on oil drilling, including mineral and hydrocarbon  
21 leasing, exploration, development, or production, within the sanctuary. Second, the Act created  
22 an internationally recognized area to be avoided (ATBA) for ships greater than 50 m in length,  
23 with special designated access corridors into ports (Fig. 8.3). The ATBA provides a buffer zone  
24 along the coral reef tract to protect it from oil spills and groundings by large vessels.

25  
26 The FKNMS Act also called for a comprehensive, long-term strategy to protect and preserve the  
27 Florida Keys marine environment. The sanctuary seeks to protect marine resources by educating  
28 and interpreting for the public the Florida Keys marine environment, and by managing those uses  
29 that result in resource degradation. At the time it was thought that the greatest challenge to  
30 protecting the natural resources of the Keys and the economy they support was to improve water  
31 quality. To address this challenge, the FKNMS Act brought together various agencies to develop  
32 a comprehensive Water Quality Protection Program (WQPP). The U.S. Environmental  
33 Protection Agency (EPA) is the lead agency in developing and implementing the WQPP, the  
34 purpose of which is to “recommend priority corrective actions and compliance schedules  
35 addressing point and nonpoint sources of pollution to restore and maintain the chemical,  
36 physical, and biological integrity of the sanctuary, including restoration and maintenance of a  
37 balanced, indigenous population of corals, shellfish, fish, and wildlife, and recreational activities  
38 in and on the water” (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996).

39  
40 The FKNMS Act called for an Interagency Core Group to be established to compile management  
41 issues confronting the sanctuary as identified by the public at scoping meetings, from written

---

<sup>13</sup> 33 U.S.C. 1401-1445, 16 U.S.C. 1431-1445 P. L. 92-532

<sup>14</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1431-1445 P.L. 106-513

1 comments, and from surveys distributed by NOAA. The Core Group consisted of representatives  
2 from several divisions of NOAA, National Park Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, EPA,  
3 U.S Coast Guard, Florida Governor’s Office, Florida Department of Environmental Protection,  
4 Florida Department of Community Affairs, South Florida Water Management District, and  
5 Monroe County.

6  
7 The FKNMS Act also called for the public to be a part of the planning process using a Sanctuary  
8 Advisory Council (SAC) to aid in the development of a comprehensive management plan. A 22-  
9 member SAC was selected by the Governor of Florida and the Secretary of Commerce. The  
10 council consisted of members of various user groups; local, state, and federal agencies;  
11 scientists; educators; environmental groups; and private citizens.

12  
13 It quickly became evident that the Congressional option to designate national marine sanctuaries  
14 would expedite the designation process. In 1992, four other national marine sanctuaries were  
15 designated by Congress, including the Flower Garden Banks, Monterey Bay, Hawaiian Islands  
16 Humpback Whale, and Stellwagen Bank (Fig. 8.1). These designations were very similar to the  
17 FKNMS Act in that they laid out a process by which sanctuary management should proceed.

#### 18 **8.2.3.4 Recent Proclamation of the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands)** 19 **Marine National Monument**

20 In 2000 President William J. Clinton signed Executive Orders that created the Northwestern  
21 Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) Coral Reef Ecosystem Reserve. The orders also initiated a process to  
22 designate the waters of the NWHI as a national marine sanctuary. Scoping meetings for the  
23 proposed sanctuary were held in 2002. In 2005 Hawaii Governor Linda Lingle signed regulations  
24 establishing a state marine refuge in the nearshore waters of the NWHI (out to 3 nautical miles,  
25 except Midway Atoll) that excluded all extractive uses of the region, except those permitted for  
26 research or other purposes that benefited management. In 2006, after substantial public comment  
27 in support of strong protections for the area, President George W. Bush issued Presidential  
28 Proclamation 8031, creating the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Marine National Monument.  
29 The President’s actions followed Governor Lingle’s lead and immediately afforded the NWHI  
30 the highest form of marine environmental protection as the world’s largest MPA (360,000 km<sup>2</sup>).  
31 Administrative jurisdiction over the islands and marine waters is shared by NOAA/NMSP, U.S.  
32 Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii.

#### 33 **8.2.4 Interpretation of Goals**

34 The mission of the NMSP is to identify, protect, conserve, and enhance natural and cultural  
35 resources, values, and qualities. The NMSP has developed a draft strategic plan with a set of  
36 goals (Box 8.1) to provide a bridge between the broad mandates of the NMSA and daily  
37 operations at the site level.

38  
39 At the site level, management and annual operating plans for each national marine sanctuary and  
40 the marine national monument identify specific plans and tasks for day-to-day management of  
41 the 14 sites. Sanctuaries work closely with their stakeholder Sanctuary Advisory Councils in the  
42 processes of developing and revising management plans. Sanctuary staff work with council  
43 members to form working groups to analyze each of the action plans that comprise a

1 management plan. There are public scoping meetings to ensure the opportunity for participation  
2 by the public. The NMSA stipulates that plans should be reviewed and revised on a five-year  
3 time frame, and various sanctuaries are at different phases of this process (Table 8.3). Three  
4 Central California sanctuaries are undergoing a joint management plan review, some revisions  
5 have been completed, and some are nearing completion. Examples of management plans are  
6 provided in the case studies for this chapter.

## 7 **8.3 Current Status of Management System**

### 8 **8.3.1 Key Ecosystem Characteristics on Which Goals Depend**

9 In keeping with the goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program (Box 8.1), sanctuaries  
10 within U.S. waters generally are set aside for the preservation of biological or maritime heritage  
11 resources. Sites such as the Florida Keys and Channel Islands NMS are of the former, while the  
12 Monitor NMS is of the latter. Sites designated to protect marine biological resources have their  
13 primary focus on maintaining biodiversity or preserving key species, and are therefore directly  
14 related to NMSP Goals 1 and 4. These sites are in particular need of management in response to  
15 climate change, yet have management plans that were designed to address local stressors, not to  
16 protect flora and fauna from climate change. Management options in the context of climate  
17 change will be discussed below (section 8.4).

#### 18 **8.3.1.1 Biodiversity**

19 The extraordinary biodiversity of tropical and subtropical coral reef sites is well recognized (see  
20 Case Study Summaries 8.1–8.3), but recent findings underscore the fact that high biodiversity is  
21 also characteristic of many temperate sanctuaries. For example, the recent discovery of deep,  
22 temperate corals in the Olympic Coast NMS raises the possibility that benthic invertebrate and  
23 associated fish diversity is significantly higher than previously thought. Though receiving  
24 substantially less attention from the scientific community than their tropical counterparts,  
25 subtidal temperate reefs may be no less important in promoting species diversity and enhancing  
26 production (Jonsson *et al.*, 2004; Roberts and Hirshfield, 2004). In the past, these reefs have been  
27 overlooked and under-studied primarily because of limited accessibility: they often occur in  
28 deeper or lower-visibility waters than those of tropical reefs. Recently, and primarily because of  
29 greater accessibility to deep-water ecosystems, the importance of temperate reefs as critical  
30 habitat has begun to be fully recognized (*e.g.*, Reed, 2002; Jonsson *et al.*, 2004; Roberts and  
31 Hirshfield, 2004; Roberts, Wheeler, and Freiwald, 2006). These reefs may host an array of  
32 undescribed species, including endemic gorgonians, corals, hydroids, and sponges (Koslow *et al.*,  
33 2001; Jonsson *et al.*, 2004). Furthermore, the value of these offshore reefs to fisheries has  
34 long been recognized by commercial and recreational fisherman. Fish tend to aggregate on deep-  
35 sea reefs (Husebø *et al.*, 2002), and scientific evidence supports the contention by commercial  
36 fishermen that damage to temperate reefs affects both the abundance and distribution of fish  
37 (Fosså, Mortensen, and Furevik, 2002; Krieger and Wing, 2002).

#### 38 **8.3.1.2 Key Species**

39 Key species within sanctuary boundaries may be resident as well as migratory, and may or may  
40 not represent species that are extracted by fishing (*i.e.*, NMSP Goal 5; Box 8.1). For example,  
41 three adjacent sanctuaries off the California coast—Cordell Banks, Gulf of the Farallones, and

1 Monterey Bay—are frequented by protected species of blue (*Balaenoptera musculus*) and  
2 humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) whales. In contrast, during the spring of each year king  
3 mackerel (*Scomberomorus cavalla*) migrate through Gray’s Reef NMS off the coast of Georgia,  
4 representing a vibrant and sought-after recreational fishery. Under various climate change  
5 scenarios, management strategies employed to protect these key species may differ. For example,  
6 marine zones with dynamic boundaries reflecting shifting areas for feeding or reproduction may  
7 need to be considered by MPA managers.

8  
9 Key species within sanctuaries may not be limited to subtidal marine organisms but, depending  
10 on the sanctuary, may also include intertidal species (*e.g.*, *Mytilus californianus* in Monterey Bay  
11 NMS) or even sea- and shorebirds. It has been suggested that these intertidal species are more  
12 likely to be stressed by climate change and may serve as a bellwether for change in other  
13 ecosystems (Helmuth, 2002).

#### 14 **8.3.1.3 Habitat Complexity**

15 National marine sanctuary sites, especially subtidally, are characterized by complexity of habitat  
16 that is either biologically or geologically structured. This habitat complexity is an invaluable  
17 resource supporting biodiversity. Subtidal habitats in sanctuaries that are biologically structured  
18 are represented most notably by temperate kelp forests and tropical coral reefs, whereas  
19 geologically structured habitats are centered around sea mounts and rocky outcrops. The  
20 topographic complexity of geologically structured habitats, especially in temperate systems, is  
21 often enhanced by settlement and growth of sessile benthic invertebrates such as sponges,  
22 arborescent bryozoans, and ascidians (*e.g.*, Grays Reef NMS).

23  
24 Habitat complexity is a key ecosystem characteristic that must be protected in order to achieve  
25 NMSP Goals 1 and 4 (Box 8.1). Biologically structured habitats, rather than geologically  
26 structured, are probably most susceptible to degradation resulting from climate change. When  
27 habitat-building organisms such as corals are killed by climate change and other sources of  
28 mortality, skeletal material increases in susceptibility to bioerosion that may lead to reduced  
29 habitat complexity. As indicated in section 8.3.2 (*Stressors of Concern*), excess CO<sub>2</sub> absorbed by  
30 sea water lowers pH and results in reduced calcification rates in organisms that provide complex  
31 structure, such as arborescent bryozoans, bivalves, coralline algae, and temperate and tropical  
32 corals (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Kleypas and Langdon, 2006). Non-  
33 calcifying biological structures, such as kelp, as well as all shallow-water structures, are also at  
34 risk primarily from changes in storm intensity, ocean warming, and reduced upwelling associated  
35 with climate change (see Case Study: Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary).

#### 36 **8.3.1.4 Trophic Cascades**

37 In addition to biodiversity and habitat complexity, trophic links between the benthos and water  
38 column help maintain ecosystem integrity within sanctuaries. In keeping with NMSP Goal 5  
39 (Box 8.1) regarding human use, the strength of these benthic-pelagic linkages must be  
40 considered when designating fishing restrictions (Grober-Dunsmore, Wooninck, and Wahle,  
41 forthcoming).<sup>15</sup> Fishing regulations often involve removal of top predators and have direct

---

<sup>15</sup> See also Wahle, C., R. Grober-Dunsmore, and L. Wooninck, 2006: Managing recreational fishing in MPAs through vertical zoning: the importance of understanding benthic-pelagic linkages. *MPA News*, **7(8)**, 5.



1 impacts on trophic cascades that are defined as: (1) having top-down control of community  
2 structure, and (2) having conspicuous indirect effects on two or more links distant from the  
3 primary one (Frank *et al.*, 2005). The consequences of ignoring past experiences regarding these  
4 trophic cascades could be deleterious to sanctuary goals (Hughes *et al.*, 2005). As highlighted in  
5 a recent workshop sponsored by the MPA Science Institute, however, knowledge in this critical  
6 area is lacking.<sup>15</sup> Facilitating a better understanding of trophic cascades by supporting scientific  
7 inquiry into this topic would do much to enhance understanding of ecosystem processes in  
8 marine sanctuaries (NMSP Goal 4). It may also provide insight into how these processes might  
9 be affected by climate change.

#### 10 **8.3.1.5 Connectivity**

11 The open nature of marine ecosystems means that they do not function, and likewise should not  
12 be managed, in isolation (Palumbi, 2003). Connectivity among marine ecosystems and across  
13 biological communities contributes to maintaining the biological integrity of all marine  
14 environments (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). While NMS boundaries are well defined, the separation  
15 between ecosystems and communities is blurred because of export and import of resources. At  
16 the broadest scale these linkages are manifested as sources and sinks of nutrients and recruits  
17 (*e.g.*, Crowder *et al.*, 2000).

#### 18 **8.3.1.6 Nutrient Fluxes**

19 While excess nutrients can lead to degradation of offshore ecosystems (Rabalais, Turner, and  
20 Wiseman Jr, 2002), it is also hypothesized that the function of offshore ecosystems is dependent  
21 on nutrients that have their origins in upland productivity. Estuaries are thought to represent the  
22 conduit through which dissolved and particulate material from the continent passes to offshore  
23 areas through rivers (Gattuso, Frankignoulle, and Wollast, 1998). This “outwelling”  
24 characteristic was first proposed by Odum<sup>16</sup> and has since been applied to mangroves and  
25 seagrasses (Lee, 1995). The direct and indirect trophic links that exist between these ecosystems  
26 are thought to be critical to ecosystem function, and highlight the importance of assessing the  
27 downstream effects that upland and nearshore activities have on increasing and decreasing  
28 nutrient availability offshore. In areas where climate change alters historical rainfall patterns,  
29 concomitant alteration of the supply of nutrients to offshore ecosystems might also occur.

#### 30 **8.3.1.7 Larval Dispersal and Recruitment**

31 One of the strengths of the NMSP is protection of entire ecosystems rather than management of  
32 single species. As such, a key characteristic of these ecosystems rests in their ability to serve as  
33 sources of recruits for both fish and invertebrate species and as foci for fish aggregations. Most  
34 benthic marine invertebrates and fish species have a planktonic larval stage that results from  
35 spawned gametes (Pechenik, 1999). Successful recruitment of planktonic larvae to the benthos  
36 depends on processes that function at multiple spatial scales in contrast to non-planktonic larvae,  
37 which generally recruit at a small spatial scale. At the broadest scale, hydrodynamic forces may  
38 disperse passive larvae long distances, potentially delivering them to suitable settlement sites far  
39 from the source population (Williams, Wolanski, and Andrews, 1984; Lee *et al.*, 1992).

---

<sup>16</sup> **Odum**, E.P., 1969: A research challenge: evaluating the productivity of coastal and estuarine water. In: *Proceedings of the Second Sea Grant Conference*. University of Rhode Island, Kingston, Rhode Island, pp. 63-64.

1 Alternatively, complex, three-dimensional secondary flows resulting from barriers, such as  
2 headlands, islands, and reefs, as well as cyclonic motion can retain passive larvae within  
3 estuaries, around islands, or within ocean basins, resulting in more settlement to natal  
4 populations (Black, Moran, and Hammond, 1991; Lee *et al.*, 1992; Black *et al.*, 1995; Lugo-  
5 Fernandez *et al.*, 2001).

6  
7 Because of their small size and limited swimming ability, invertebrate larvae may be passively  
8 dispersed at a broad spatial scale (Denny, 1988; Mullineaux and Butman, 1991). Yet larvae of  
9 many marine invertebrates, including coral planulae, use swimming behavior, stimulated by  
10 chemical or physical cues, to control their position within the water column—thereby increasing  
11 the probability that they will be transported to suitable settlement substrates (Scheltema, 1986;  
12 Raimondi and Morse, 2000; Gleason, Edmunds, and Gates, 2006; Levin, 2006). In contrast,  
13 researchers continue to be surprised by the swimming and sensory capabilities of fish larvae  
14 (Stobutzki and Bellwood, 1997; Tolimieri, Jeffs, and Montgomery, 2000; Leis and McCormick,  
15 2002; Leis, Carson-Ewart, and Webley, 2002; Lecchini *et al.*, 2005; Lecchini, Planes, and  
16 Galzin, 2005). That these larvae orient in the water column and swim directionally either at  
17 hatching or soon thereafter may explain recent evidence for localized recruitment (Jones *et al.*,  
18 1999; Swearer *et al.*, 1999; Taylor and Hellberg, 2003; Cowen, Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006).

19  
20 While connectivity among ecosystems and among biological communities in terms of both  
21 nutrients and recruits is an important feature of marine sanctuaries, boundaries of protected areas  
22 rarely encompass the continuum of habitats (*e.g.*, rivers to estuaries to mangroves to seagrasses  
23 to reefs) or the maximum dispersal distances of critical species. Recent information obtained for  
24 dispersal of fish and invertebrates suggests that sanctuaries must be managed for both self-  
25 recruitment and larval subsidies from upstream (Roberts, 1997b; Hughes *et al.*, 2005; Cowen,  
26 Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006; Steneck, 2006). Effective exchange of offspring is facilitated by  
27 MPA networks that are in close proximity [10–50 km apart according to Roberts *et al.* (2001)].  
28 This would allow larval exchange among populations and also buffer these populations from  
29 climate-driven changes in current regimes. The NMSP should be a critical player in the  
30 development of such an MPA network. NMSP Goal 2 provides for the expansion of the  
31 nationwide system of MPAs and encourages cooperation among MPAs administered under a  
32 range of programs.

### 33 **8.3.2 Stressors of Concern**

34 Population growth and coastal development increasingly affect U.S. MPAs; an estimated 153  
35 million people (53% of the U.S. population) lived in coastal counties in 2003, and that number  
36 continues to rise (World Resources Institute, 1996; National Safety Council, 1998; U.S. Census  
37 Bureau, 2001; Crossett *et al.*, 2004).<sup>17</sup> Growing human impacts are compounded by the fact that,  
38 in contrast to most terrestrial conservation areas, MPAs lack fences or other barricades and are

---

<sup>17</sup> See also **National Ocean Service**, 2000: Spatial patterns of socioeconomic data from 1970 to 2000: a national research dataset aggregated by watershed and political boundaries. <http://cads.nos.noaa.gov/>.

**Hinrichsen**, D., B. Robey, and U.D. Upadhyay, 1998: *Solutions for a Water-Short World*. Population Report, Series M, No. 14, Population Information Program, Center for Communication Programs, the Johns Hopkins University School of Public Health, Baltimore, MD, pp.1-60.

**World Resources Institute**, 2000: *Gridded Population of the World*. Version 2, Center for International Earth Science Information Network, Columbia University, Palisades, NY.

1 subjected to anthropogenic stressors (e.g., coastal development, pollution, fishing and  
2 aquaculture, habitat degradation) that originate externally. MPA management has focused on  
3 minimizing impacts of these existing anthropogenic stressors. The addition of climate change  
4 may exacerbate effects of existing stressors and require new or modified management  
5 approaches, which are discussed in section 8.4.  
6

7 The purpose of this section is: (1) to outline major stressors on marine organisms and  
8 communities resulting from climate change and (2) to introduce ways in which major  
9 “traditional” stressors may interact with climate change stressors.  
10

11 There are excellent, extensive reviews of impacts of climate change on marine organisms and  
12 communities (e.g., Scavia *et al.*, 2002; Walther *et al.*, 2002; Goldberg and Wilkinson, 2004;  
13 Harley *et al.*, 2006). By contrast, the scientific knowledge required to reach general conclusions  
14 related to the impact of multiple stressors at community and ecosystem levels is for the most part  
15 absent for marine systems. Thus, information concerning interactions among stressors is limited  
16 and MPA managers are faced with even higher levels of uncertainty about likely outcomes of  
17 management actions as climate change impacts have increasingly strong interactions with  
18 existing stressors.

#### 19 **8.3.2.1 Direct Climate Change Stressors**

##### 20 **Ocean Warming**

21 According to Bindoff *et al.* (2007), there is high confidence that an average warming of 0.1°C  
22 has occurred in the 0–700 m depth layer of the ocean between 1961 and 2003. Increasing ocean  
23 temperatures, especially near the surface, affect physiological processes in organisms ranging  
24 from enzyme reactions to reproductive timing (Fields *et al.*, 1993; Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Harley *et al.*,  
25 2006). The historical stability of ocean temperatures makes many marine species sensitive to  
26 thermal perturbations just a few degrees higher than those experienced over evolutionary time  
27 (Wainwright, 1994). However, it is not always intuitive which species might be most intolerant  
28 of temperature increases. For example, studies on porcelain crabs (*Petrolisthes*) and intertidal  
29 snails (*Tegula*) show that individuals in the mid-intertidal are closer to upper temperature limits  
30 and have less capacity to acclimate to temperature perturbations than subtidal congeners in  
31 temperature-stable conditions (Tomanek and Somero, 1999; Stillman, 2003; Harley *et al.*, 2006).  
32

33 What is clear is that increasing sea temperatures will continue to influence processes such as  
34 foraging, growth, and larval duration and dispersal, with ultimate impacts on the geographic  
35 ranges of species. In fact, poleward latitudinal shifts in some zooplankton, fish, and intertidal  
36 invertebrate communities have already been observed along the California coast and in the North  
37 Atlantic (reviewed in Walther *et al.*, 2002). Within marine communities, these temperature  
38 changes and range shifts may result in new species assemblages and biological interactions that  
39 affect ecological processes such as larval dispersal, competitive interactions, and trophic  
40 interactions and webs (Barry *et al.*, 1995; Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Precht and Aronson, 2004;  
41 O'Connor *et al.*, 2007). Species that are unable to shift geographic ranges (perhaps due to  
42 physical barriers) or compete with other species for resources may face local—and potentially  
43 global—extinction. Conversely, some species may find open niches and dominate regions  
44 because of release from competition or predation.  
45

1 Impacts at the ecosystem or community level are even more difficult to predict. For example,  
2 warmer waters stimulate increases in population sizes of the mid-intertidal sea star, *Pisaster*  
3 *ochraceus*, and its per capita consumption rates of mussels (Sanford, 1999). Continued warming  
4 may enable *P. ochraceus* to clear large sections of mussel beds, indirectly affecting hundreds of  
5 species associated with these formations (Harley *et al.*, 2006). How such an outcome affects  
6 trophic links and other biological processes within this community is not clear.

7  
8 The latest reports from the IPCC (2007b; 2007c) state that temperature increases over the last 50  
9 years are nearly twice those for the last 100 years, with projections that temperature will rise 2–  
10 4.5°C, largely caused by a doubling of atmospheric carbon dioxide emissions. Increases in  
11 seawater surface temperature of about 1–3°C are likely to cause more frequent coral bleaching  
12 events that cause widespread mortality, unless thermal adaptation or acclimatization by corals  
13 occurs (IPCC, 2007c). However, the ability of corals to adapt or acclimatize to increasing  
14 seawater temperature is largely unknown (Berkelmans and van Oppen, 2006) and remains a  
15 research topic of paramount importance.

16  
17 Consequences of coral bleaching, during which corals lose their symbiotic algae, depend on the  
18 severity and duration of the bleaching event. They range from minimal affects on growth and  
19 reproduction to widespread mortality. Coral bleaching at the ecosystem level is a relatively  
20 recent phenomenon, first receiving widespread attention in 1987 when abnormally high summer  
21 seawater surface temperatures throughout the Caribbean resulted in a mass bleaching event  
22 (Williams, Goenaga, and Vicente, 1987; Ogden and Wicklund, 1988; Williams and Bunkley-  
23 Williams, 1990). Soon after, coral reef scientists identified climate change as a major long-term  
24 threat to coral reefs (Glynn, 1991; Smith and Buddemeier, 1992) and determined that irradiance  
25 interacts with temperature to cause bleaching (Gleason and Wellington, 1993; see also Hoegh-  
26 Guldborg, 1999; and Hoegh-Guldborg *et al.*, 2007). Reciprocity between these two parameters  
27 may provide MPA managers with options to alleviate stress during bleaching events (see section  
28 8.4.2).

29  
30 In 1997–1998, a mass bleaching event in association with an ENSO event caused worldwide  
31 bleaching and coral mortality (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000), and in 2005 the most devastating  
32 Caribbean-wide coral bleaching event to date occurred that, based on modeling, is highly  
33 unlikely to have occurred without anthropogenic forcing (Donner, Knutson, and Oppenheimer,  
34 2007). Over the last 20 years, an extensive body of literature has conclusively identified  
35 anomalously high summer surface seawater temperatures as the major cause of coral bleaching  
36 (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000; Fitt *et al.*, 2001; Wilkinson, 2002; U.S. Climate Change Science  
37 Program and Subcommittee on Global Change Research, 2003; Donner *et al.*, 2005; Donner,  
38 Knutson, and Oppenheimer, 2007), with widespread agreement that continued warming—as  
39 little as 1°C warmer than the average summer maxima is sufficient—will increase the severity  
40 and frequency of mass bleaching events (Smith and Buddemeier, 1992; Hoegh-Guldborg, 1999;  
41 Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Douglas, 2003; Done and Jones, 2006).

42  
43 Effects of coral reef bleaching are both biological, including lost biodiversity and other  
44 ecosystem services, and economic, resulting in the decline of fisheries and tourism (Buddemeier,  
45 Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004). Coral reefs affected by mass bleaching typically take decades or  
46 longer to recover and sometimes may not recover at all. In general, coral reef decline throughout

1 the Caribbean region has been caused by a combination of bleaching, disease, die-off of the sea  
2 urchin *Diadema antillarum*, overfishing, pollution, hurricanes, and other factors (Gardner *et al.*,  
3 2003; Gardner *et al.*, 2005).

#### 4 **Ocean Acidification**

5 Increased CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations lower oceanic pH, making it more acidic. According to the most  
6 recent IPCC report, the total inorganic carbon content of the ocean increased by 118 (±19) billion  
7 metric tons of carbon from 1750–1994, and continues to increase through absorption of excess  
8 CO<sub>2</sub> (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). Furthermore, time series data for the last 20 years show a trend of  
9 decreasing pH of 0.02 pH units per decade (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). Long-term exposures to low  
10 pH (-0.7 unit) have been shown to reduce metabolic rates, growth, and survivorship of both  
11 invertebrates and fishes (Michaelidis *et al.*, 2005; Shirayama and Thornton, 2005; Pane and  
12 Barry, 2007), but by far the greatest threat of reducing pH is to organisms that build their  
13 external skeletal material out of calcium carbonate (CaCO<sub>3</sub>). Calcifying organisms such as sea  
14 urchins, cold-water corals, coralline algae, and various plankton that reside in cooler temperate  
15 waters appear to be the most threatened by acidification, because CO<sub>2</sub> has greater solubility in  
16 cooler waters (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Feely *et al.*,  
17 2004; Kleypas and Langdon, 2006).

18  
19  
20 The response of corals and coral reefs to ocean acidification has received substantial attention,  
21 and results show that lowering pH results in significant reductions in calcification rates in both  
22 reef-building corals and coralline algae (Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Feely *et al.*, 2004; Orr *et al.*, 2005;  
23 Kleypas and Langdon, 2006). Declines in calcification rates of 17–35% by the year 2100 have  
24 been estimated based on projected changes in the partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> (Hoegh-Guldberg,  
25 1999; Kleypas *et al.*, 1999; Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Orr *et al.*, 2005). On the other hand, McNeil,  
26 Matear, and Barnes (2004) suggest that net coral reef calcification rates will increase with future  
27 ocean warming and exceed pre-industrial rates by the year 2100. Additional research is needed to  
28 resolve this issue. Because of the greater solubility of CO<sub>2</sub> in cooler waters, reefs at the  
29 latitudinal margins of coral reef development (*e.g.*, Florida Keys and Hawaiian Islands) may  
30 show the most rapid and dramatic response to changing pH.

#### 31 **Rising Sea Level**

32 During the last 100 years, global average sea level has risen an estimated 1–2 mm per year and is  
33 expected to accelerate due to thermal expansion of the oceans and melting ice-sheets and glaciers  
34 (Cabanes, Cazenave, and Le Provost, 2001; Albritton and Filho, 2001; Rignot and  
35 Kanagaratnam, 2006; Chen, Wilson, and Tapley, 2006; Shepherd and Wingham, 2007; Bell *et al.*,  
36 2007; IPCC, 2007c). Rates of sea level rise at a local scale vary from -2 to 10 mm per year  
37 along U.S. coastlines (Nicholls and Leatherman, 1996; Zervas, 2001; Scavia *et al.*, 2002). Low-  
38 lying areas, especially intertidal zones, along the eastern and Gulf coasts are at the greatest risk  
39 of damage from rising sea level (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). The consequences of sea level rise include  
40 inundation of coastal areas, erosion of vulnerable shorelines, and landward shifts in species  
41 distributions.

42  
43  
44 On undeveloped coasts with relatively gentle slopes, it is thought that plant communities such as  
45 mangroves and *Spartina* salt marshes will move inland as sea level rises (Scavia *et al.*, 2002;  
46 Harley *et al.*, 2006). In contrast, coastline development will interfere with these plant migrations.  
47 As a result, wetlands may become submerged and soils may become waterlogged, resulting in

1 plant physiological stress due to chronic and intolerable elevated salinity. Marshes, mangroves  
2 and dune plants are critical to the coastal environment because they produce and add nutrients to  
3 the coastal systems, stabilize substrates, and serve as refuges and nurseries for many species.  
4 Their depletion or loss would therefore affect nutrient flux, energy flow and essential habitat for  
5 a multitude of species, with ultimate long-term impacts on biodiversity (Scavia *et al.*, 2002;  
6 Galbraith *et al.*, 2002; Harley *et al.*, 2006). The projected 35–70% loss of barrier islands and  
7 intertidal and sandy beach habitat over the next 100 years could also drastically reduce nesting  
8 grounds for key species such as sea turtles and birds as these critical habitats disappear (Scavia *et*  
9 *al.*, 2002).

#### 11 **Climatic Variability and Ocean Circulation**

12 Natural climatic variability resulting from ocean-atmosphere interactions such as the El Niño  
13 Southern Oscillation (ENSO), the Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO), and the North Atlantic  
14 Oscillation/Northern Hemisphere Annular Mode result in changes in open ocean productivity,  
15 shifts in the distribution of organisms and modifications in food webs that foreshadow potential  
16 consequences of accelerated climate change (*e.g.*, Mantua *et al.*, 1997; McGowan *et al.*, 1998).  
17 These recurring patterns of ocean-atmosphere variability have very different behaviors in time.  
18 For example, whereas ENSO events persist for 6–18 months and have their major impact in the  
19 tropics, the PDO occurs over a much longer time frame of 20–30 years and has primary effects in  
20 the northern Pacific (Mantua *et al.*, 1997). Regardless of the temporal scale and region of impact,  
21 however, these natural modes of climate variability have existed historically, independent of  
22 anthropogenically driven climate change. These climate phenomena may act in tandem with (or  
23 in opposition to) human-induced alterations, with consequences that are difficult to predict  
24 (Philip and Van Oldenborgh, 2006).

26 Ocean-atmosphere interactions on a warming planet may also result in long-term alterations in  
27 the prevailing current and upwelling patterns (Bakun, 1990; McPhaden and Zhang, 2002; Snyder  
28 *et al.*, 2003; McGregor *et al.*, 2007). While at present there is no clear indication that ocean  
29 circulation patterns have changed (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007), modifications could have large effects  
30 within and among ecosystems through impacts on ecosystem and community connectivity in  
31 terms of both nutrients and recruits (see section 8.3.1., *Key Ecosystem Characteristics Upon*  
32 *Which Goals Depend*). Considering that there is evidence for warming of the Southern Ocean  
33 mode waters and Upper Circumpolar Deep Waters from 1960–2000, changes in oceanic current  
34 and upwelling patterns are likely in the future (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). The direction that these  
35 changes will take, however, is not evident. For example, it has been hypothesized that the greater  
36 temperature differential between the land mass and ocean that will occur with climate warming  
37 will increase upwelling because of stronger alongshore winds (Bakun, 1990). In contrast,  
38 Gucinski, Lackey, and Spence (1990) proposed that warming at higher latitudes will reduce  
39 latitudinal temperature gradients, resulting in decreased wind strength and less upwelling; some  
40 models show potential for Atlantic thermohaline circulation to end abruptly if high-latitude  
41 waters are no longer able to sink (Stocker and Marchal, 2000).

#### 43 **Storm Intensity**

44 Whether or not storm frequency has changed over time is not clear, due to large natural  
45 variability resulting from such climate drivers as ENSO (IPCC, 2007c). However, since the mid  
46 1970s there has been a trend toward longer storm duration and greater storm intensity (IPCC,  
47 2007c). An increase in storm intensity generally has impacts on two fronts. First, it may increase

1 pulses of fresh water to coastal and near-shore habitats (see below). Second, increasing storm  
2 intensity may cause physical damage to coastal ecosystems, especially those in shallow water  
3 (IPCC, 2007c).

4  
5 Recent hurricanes in the southern United States have caused extensive destruction to homes and  
6 businesses; altered near-shore water quality; scoured the ocean bottom; over-washed beaches;  
7 produced immense amounts of marine debris (wood, metals, plastics) and pollution (household  
8 hazardous wastes, pesticides, metals, oils and other toxic chemicals) from floodwaters; and  
9 damaged many mangrove, marsh, and coral reef areas (Davis *et al.*, 1994; Tilmant *et al.*, 1994;  
10 McCoy *et al.*, 1996; Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998; Baldwin *et al.*, 2001).<sup>18</sup> Even 30–60 days  
11 after the storms, some areas still experienced increased turbidity, breakdown of mangrove peat  
12 soils, and elevated concentrations of ammonia, dissolved phosphate, and dissolved organic  
13 carbon (Davis *et al.*, 1994; Tilmant *et al.*, 1994; Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998). In some  
14 instances, algal blooms from high nutrients further increased turbidity while driving down  
15 dissolved-oxygen concentrations (*i.e.*, caused eutrophication), resulting in mortalities in fish and  
16 invertebrate populations (Tilmant *et al.*, 1994; Lovelace and MacPherson, 1998). Given that  
17 most climate change models project increasing storm intensity as well as higher sea levels in  
18 many areas, it is evident that low-lying and shallow marine ecosystems such as mangroves, salt  
19 marshes, seagrasses, and coral reefs are at greatest risk of long-term damage.

#### 20 21 **Freshwater Influx**

22 Observations indicate that changes in the amount, intensity, frequency, and type of precipitation  
23 are occurring worldwide (IPCC, 2007c). Consistent with observed changes in precipitation and  
24 water transport in the atmosphere, large-scale trends in oceanic salinity have become evident for  
25 the period 1955–1998 (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007). These trends are manifested as lowered salinities at  
26 subpolar latitudes and increased salinities in shallower parts of the tropical and subtropical  
27 oceans.

28  
29 In addition to altering salinity in major oceanic water masses, changes in precipitation patterns  
30 can have significant impacts in estuarine and other nearshore environments. For instance, in  
31 regions where climate change results in elevated rainfall, increased runoff may cause greater  
32 stratification of water layers within estuaries as fresh water floats out over the top of higher  
33 salinity layers (Scavia *et al.*, 2002). One consequence of this stratification may be less water  
34 column mixing and thus lower rates of nutrient exchange among water layers. Combining this  
35 stratification effect with the shorter water residence times stemming from higher inflow (Moore  
36 *et al.*, 1997) may result in significantly reduced productivity, because phytoplankton populations  
37 may be flushed from the system at a rate faster than they can grow and reproduce. On the other  
38 hand, estuaries that are located in regions with lower rainfall may also show decreased  
39 productivity due to lower nutrient influx. Thus, the relationship between precipitation and marine  
40 ecosystem health is complex and difficult to predict.

41  
42 Another source of fresh water is melting of polar ice (IPCC, 2007c). In the Atlantic Ocean,  
43 accelerated melting of Arctic ice and the Greenland ice sheet are predicted to continue producing  
44 more freshwater inputs that may alter oceanic circulation patterns (Dickson *et al.*, 2002; Curry,

---

<sup>18</sup> See also **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service**, 2005: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service conducting initial damage assessments to wildlife and National Wildlife Refuges. <http://www.fws.gov/southeast/news/2005/r05-088.html>.

1 Dickson, and Yashayaev, 2003; Curry and Mauritzen, 2005; Peterson *et al.*, 2006; Greene and  
2 Pershing, 2007; Boessenkool *et al.*, 2007).

### 3 **8.3.2.2 Climate Change Interactions with “Traditional” Stressors of Concern**

#### 4 **Pollution**

5 Marine water quality degradation and pollution stem primarily from land-based sources, with  
6 major contributions to coastal watershed and water quality deterioration falling into two broad  
7 categories: point-source pollution and non-point-source pollution. Point-source pollution from  
8 factories, sewage treatment plants, and farms often flows into nearby waters. In contrast, marine  
9 non-point source pollution originates from coastal urban runoff where the bulk of the land is  
10 paved or covered with buildings. These impervious surfaces prevent soils from capturing runoff,  
11 resulting in the input of untreated pollutants (*e.g.*, fuels, oils, plastics, metals, insecticides,  
12 antibiotics) to coastal waters. Increased terrestrial runoff due to more intense storm events  
13 associated with climate change may increase land-based water pollution from both of these  
14 sources. In some areas, increased groundwater outflows may also contribute to coastal pollution.  
15

16 Deterioration and pollution of coastal watersheds can have far-reaching effects on marine  
17 ecosystems. As an example, the Gulf of Mexico “dead zone” that occurs each summer and  
18 extends from the Mississippi River bird-foot delta across the Louisiana shelf and onto the upper  
19 Texas coast can range from 1–125 km offshore (Rabalais, Turner, and Wiseman Jr, 2002). This  
20 mass of hypoxic (low-oxygen) water has its origins in the increased nitrate flux coincident with  
21 the exponential growth of fertilizer use that has occurred since the 1950s in the Mississippi River  
22 basin. This hypoxia results in changes in species diversity and community structure of the  
23 benthos and has impacts on trophic links that include higher-order consumers in the pelagic zone  
24 (Rabalais, Turner, and Wiseman Jr, 2002).  
25

26 Until recently, pollution has been the major driver of decreases in the health of marine  
27 ecosystems such as coral reefs, seagrasses, and kelp beds (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Hughes *et al.*,  
28 2003; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2003). Because pollution is usually more local in scope, it historically  
29 could be managed within individual MPAs; however, the addition of climate change stressors  
30 such as increased oceanic temperature, decreased pH, and greater fluctuations in salinity present  
31 greater challenges with regard to potentially deleterious effects of pollution (Coe and Rogers,  
32 1997; Carpenter *et al.*, 1998; Khamer, Bouya, and Ronneau, 2000; Burton, Jr. and Pitt, 2001;  
33 Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Orr *et al.*, 2005; Breitbart and Riedel, 2005; O'Connor *et al.*, 2007;  
34 IPCC, 2007c). Also, in regions where climate change causes precipitation and freshwater  
35 influxes to increase, MPA managers may need to expand the scale at which they attempt to  
36 address issues of water quality, for example by forging stronger partnerships with organizations  
37 involved in watershed management nearby at more-distant locations.  
38

39 For example, coral bleaching from the combined stresses of climate change and local pollution  
40 (*e.g.*, high temperature and sedimentation) have already been observed (Jackson *et al.*, 2001;  
41 Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2003). Identifying those stressors with the greatest effect is  
42 not trivial. Research in coral genomics may provide diagnostic tools for identifying stressors in  
43 coral reefs and other marine communities (*e.g.*, Edge *et al.*, 2005).  
44

#### 45 **Commercial Fishing and Aquaculture**



1 Commercial fishing has ecosystem effects on three fronts: through the physical impacts of  
2 fishing gear on habitat, over-fishing of commercial stocks, and incidental take of non-targeted  
3 species. The use of trawls, seines, mollusk dredges, and other fishing gear can cause damage to  
4 living seafloor structures and alterations to geologic structures, reducing habitat complexity  
5 (Engel and Kvitek, 1998; Thrush and Dayton, 2002; Dayton, Thrush, and Coleman, 2002; Hixon  
6 and Tissot, 2007). Over-fishing is also common in the United States, with a conservative  
7 estimate of 26% of fisheries overexploited (Pauly *et al.*, 1998; National Research Council, 1999;  
8 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Pew Ocean Commission, 2003; National Marine Fisheries Service, 2005;  
9 Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Meanwhile, non-specific fishing gear (*e.g.*, trawls, seines, dredges) causes  
10 considerable mortality of by-catch that includes invertebrates, fishes, sea turtles, marine  
11 mammals, birds, and other life stages of commercially targeted species (Condrey and Fuller,  
12 1992; Norse, 1993; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Hiddink, Jennings, and Kaiser, 2006).

13  
14 Aquaculture has sometimes been introduced to augment fisheries production. Unfortunately,  
15 experience shows that aquaculture can have negative environmental impacts, including extensive  
16 mangrove and coastal wetland conversion to ponds, changes in hydrologic regimes, and  
17 discharge of high levels of organic matter and pollutants into coastal waters (Eng, Paw, and  
18 Guarin, 1989; Iwama, 1991; Naylor *et al.*, 2000). Furthermore, many aquacultural practices are  
19 not sustainable because farmed species consume natural resources at high rates and the intense  
20 culture environment (*e.g.*, overcrowding) creates conditions for disease outbreaks (Eng, Paw, and  
21 Guarin, 1989; Iwama, 1991; Pauly *et al.*, 2002; 2003).

22  
23 Fishery populations that are overstressed and overfished exhibit greater sensitivity to climate  
24 change and other anthropogenically derived stressors than do healthy populations (Hughes *et al.*,  
25 2005). Overfishing can reduce mean life span as well as lifetime reproductive success and larval  
26 quality, making fished species more susceptible to both short- and long-term perturbations (such  
27 as changes in prevailing current patterns) that affect recruitment success (Pauly *et al.*, 1998;  
28 Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Dayton, Thrush, and Coleman, 2002; Pauly *et al.*, 2003; Sobel and  
29 Dahlgren, 2004; Estes, 2005; Law and Stokes, 2005; Steneck and Sala, 2005; O'Connor *et al.*,  
30 2007). Changing climatic regimes can also influence species' distributions, which are set by  
31 physiological tolerances to temperature, precipitation, dissolved oxygen, pH, and salinity.  
32 Because rates of climate change appear to exceed the capacity of many commercial species to  
33 adapt, species will shift their ranges in accordance with their physiological thresholds and may  
34 ultimately be forced to extend past the boundaries of their "known" native range, becoming  
35 invasive elements (Murawski, 1993; Walther *et al.*, 2002; Roessig *et al.*, 2004; Perry *et al.*, 2005;  
36 Harley *et al.*, 2006).

37  
38 Commercial exploitation of even a single keystone species, such as a top consumer, can  
39 destabilize ecosystems by decreasing redundancy and making them more susceptible to climate  
40 change stressors (Hughes *et al.*, 2005). Examples of such ecosystem destabilization through  
41 overfishing abound, including the formerly cod-dominated system of the western North Atlantic  
42 (see Box 8.2), and the fish-grazing community on Caribbean coral reefs (*e.g.*, Frank *et al.*, 2005;  
43 Mumby *et al.*, 2006; 2007).

44  
45 Interestingly, the theoretical framework that links protection against overfishing (to restore  
46 herbivores that then reduce algae that kill corals or prevent recruitment) using no-take marine

1 reserves and the cascading effects that result and link to improved coral condition is hotly  
2 debated (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Grigg *et al.*, 2005; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005; Aronson and Precht,  
3 2006). This is perhaps surprising because of the strong intuitive sense such arguments make, but  
4 reserves also protect predators, so declines in herbivorous fish might occur, as opposed to  
5 increases. Also, data from field studies provide conflicting results on the role of herbivores.  
6 Mumby *et al.* (2006) showed that increased densities of herbivorous fish in a marine reserve  
7 reduced algal growth after mass bleaching caused extensive coral mortality, but such herbivore  
8 densities do not always increase after protection is provided (Mosquera *et al.*, 2000; Graham,  
9 Evans, and Russ, 2003; Micheli *et al.*, 2004; Robertson *et al.*, 2005). Further, there is widespread  
10 belief that the mass mortality of *Diadema antillarum*—a major grazer on reefs—in 1983–1984  
11 was a significant proximal cause of coral reef decline throughout the Caribbean. However, as  
12 reported in Aronson and Precht (2006), half the coral reef decline throughout the Caribbean  
13 reported by Gardner *et al.* (2003) occurred before the die-off of *D. antillarum*, and immediately  
14 after the die-off coral cover remained unchanged (Fig. 8.5) (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). Subsequent  
15 declines in cover throughout the region were due to coral bleaching (1987, 1997–1998) and  
16 disease. It is important to highlight this complexity, because it emphasizes how much is  
17 unknown about basic ecological processes on coral reefs and consequently how much needs to  
18 be learned about whether no-take marine reserves work effectively to enhance resilience when  
19 disease and bleaching remain significant sources of coral mortality (Aronson and Precht, 2006).

20  
21  
22  
23 **Figure 8.5.** Total observed change in coral cover (%) across the Caribbean basin over the  
24 past 25 years (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). A. Coral cover (%) 1977-2001. Annual estimates (▲)  
25 are weighted means with 95% bootstrap confidence intervals. Also shown are unweighted  
26 estimates (●), unweighted mean coral cover with the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring  
27 Project (1996-2001) omitted (x), and the number of studies each year (○). B. Year-on-year  
28 rate of change (mean  $\Delta N \pm SE$ ) in coral cover (%) for all sites reporting two consecutive  
29 years of data 1975-2000 (●) and the number of studies for each two-year period (○).

### 31 **Nonindigenous/Invasive Species**

32 Invasive species threaten all marine and estuarine communities. Currently, an estimated 2% of  
33 extinctions in marine ecosystems are related to invasive species while 6% are the result of other  
34 factors, including climate change, pollution, and disease (Dulvy, Sadovy, and Reynolds, 2003).  
35 Principal mechanisms of introduction vary and have occurred via both accidental and intentional  
36 release (Ruiz *et al.*, 2000; Carlton, 2000).<sup>19</sup> Invasive species are often opportunistic and can  
37 force shifts in the relative abundance and distribution of native species, and cause significant  
38 changes in species richness and community structure (Sousa, 1984; Moyle, 1986; Mills, Soulé,  
39 and Doak, 1993; Baltz and Moyle, 1993; Carlton, 1996; Carlton, 2000; Marchetti, Moyle, and  
40 Levine, 2004).

41  
42  
43 Some native species, particularly rare and endangered ones with small population sizes and gene  
44 pools, are unlikely to be able to adapt quickly enough or shift their ranges rapidly enough to

---

<sup>19</sup> See also Hare, J.A. and P.E. Whitfield, 2003: *An Integrated Assessment of the Introduction of Lionfish (Pterois Volitans/Miles Complex) to the Western Atlantic Ocean*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS 2, pp.1-21.

1 compensate for the changing climatic regimes proposed by current climate change models  
2 (IPCC, 2007c). These native species will likely have their competitive abilities compromised and  
3 be more susceptible to displacement by invasive species, and therefore should be considered for  
4 stronger protective measures by MPA managers. Increased seawater temperatures resulting from  
5 climate change may also allow introduced species to spawn earlier and for longer periods of the  
6 year, thus increasing their population growth rates relative to natives while simultaneously  
7 expanding their range (Carlton, 2000; McCarty, 2001; Stachowicz *et al.*, 2002; Marchetti,  
8 Moyle, and Levine, 2004). Furthermore, the same characteristics that make species successful  
9 invaders may also make them pre-adapted to respond to, and capitalize on, climate change. As  
10 one example, Indo-Pacific lionfish (*Pterois volitans* and *P. miles*) are now widely distributed off  
11 the southeastern coast of the United States and in the Bahamas less than 10 years after being first  
12 observed off Florida (Whitfield *et al.*, 2007; Snyder and Burgess, 2007). One of the few factors  
13 limiting their spread is intolerance to minimum water temperatures during winter (Kimball *et al.*,  
14 2004). Ocean warming could facilitate depth and range expansion in these species.

#### 15 **Diseases**

16 Disease outbreaks alter the structure and function of marine ecosystems by affecting the  
17 abundance and diversity of vertebrates (*e.g.*, mammals, turtles, fish), invertebrates (*e.g.*, corals,  
18 crustaceans, echinoderms, oysters) and plants (*e.g.*, seagrasses, kelp beds). Pathogen outbreaks or  
19 epidemics spread rapidly, due to the lack of dispersal barriers in some parts of the ocean and the  
20 potential for long-term survival of pathogens outside the host (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*,  
21 2002). Many pathogens of marine taxa such as coral viruses, bacteria, and fungi are positively  
22 responsive to temperature increases within their physiological thresholds (Porter *et al.*, 2001;  
23 Kim and Harvell, 2004; Munn, 2006; Mydlarz, Jones, and Harvell, 2006; Boyett, Bourne, and  
24 Willis, 2007). However, it is noteworthy that white-band disease was the primary cause (though  
25 not the only cause) of reduced coral cover on Caribbean reefs from the late 1970s through the  
26 early 1990s (Aronson and Precht, 2006). That outbreak did not correspond to a period of  
27 particularly elevated temperature (Lesser *et al.*, 2007).

28  
29  
30 Exposure to disease compromises the ability of species to resist other anthropogenic stressors,  
31 and exposure to other stressors compromises species' ability to resist disease (Harvell *et al.*,  
32 1999; Harvell *et al.*, 2002). For example, in 1998, the most geographically extensive and severe  
33 coral bleaching ever recorded was associated with the high sea surface temperature anomalies  
34 facilitated by an ENSO event (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Wilkinson *et al.*, 1999; Mydlarz, Jones,  
35 and Harvell, 2006). In some species of reef-building corals and gorgonians, this bleaching event  
36 was thought to be accelerated by opportunistic infections (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*,  
37 2001). Several pathogens—such as bacteria, viruses, and fungi that infect such diverse hosts as  
38 seals, abalone, and starfish—show possible onset with warmer temperatures (reviewed in Harvell  
39 *et al.*, 2002), and some coral species may become more susceptible to disease after bleaching  
40 events (Whelan *et al.*, 2007). The mechanisms for pathogenesis, however, are largely unknown.  
41 Given that exposure to multiple stressors may compromise the ability of marine species to resist  
42 infection, the most effective means of reducing disease incidence under climate change may be  
43 to minimize impacts of stressors such as pollution and overfishing.

### 1 **8.3.3 Management Approaches and Sensitivity of Management Goals to Climate Change**

2 Marine protected area programs have been identified as a critical mechanism for protecting  
3 marine biodiversity and associated ecosystem services (National Research Council, 2001;  
4 Palumbi, 2002; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Palumbi, 2004; Roberts, 2005;  
5 Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006).<sup>20</sup> MPA networks are being implemented globally to address  
6 multiple threats to the marine environment, and are generally accepted as an improvement over  
7 individual MPAs (Salm, Clark, and Siirila, 2000; Allison *et al.*, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a;  
8 Mora *et al.*, 2006). Networks are more effective than single MPAs at protecting the full range of  
9 habitat and community types, because they spread the risk of losing a habitat or community type  
10 following a disturbance such as a climate-change impact across a larger area. Networks are better  
11 able than individual MPAs to protect both short- and long-distance dispersers, and thus have  
12 more potential to achieve conservation and fishery objectives (Roberts, 1997a). Networks  
13 provide enhanced larval recruitment among adjacent MPAs that are linked by local and regional  
14 dispersal patterns, enhanced protection of critical life stages, and enhanced protection of critical  
15 processes and functions, *e.g.*, migration corridors (Gerber and Heppell, 2004). Finally, networks  
16 allow for protection of marine ecosystems at an appropriate scale. A network of MPAs could  
17 cover a large gradient of biogeographic and oceanographic conditions without the need to  
18 establish one extremely large reserve, and can provide more inclusive representation of  
19 stakeholders (National Research Council, 2001; Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003).

20  
21 While MPA networks are considered a critical management tool for conserving marine  
22 biodiversity, they must be established in conjunction with other management strategies to be  
23 effective (Hughes *et al.*, 2003). MPAs are vulnerable to activities beyond their boundaries. For  
24 example, uncontrolled pollution and unsustainable fishing outside protected areas can adversely  
25 affect the species and ecosystem function within the protected area (Kaiser, 2005). Therefore,  
26 MPA networks should be established considering other forms of fisheries management (*e.g.*,  
27 catch limits and gear restrictions) (Allison, Lubchenco, and Carr, 1998; Beger, Jones, and  
28 Munday, 2003; Kaiser, 2005), as well as coastal management to control land-based threats such  
29 as pollution and sedimentation (Cho, 2005). In the long term, the most effective configuration  
30 would be a network of highly protected areas nested within a broader management framework  
31 (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006). Such a framework might include a vast multiple-use area  
32 managed for sustainable fisheries as well as protection of biodiversity, integrated with coastal  
33 management regimes where appropriate, to enable effective control of threats originating  
34 upstream and to maintain high water quality (*e.g.*, Done and Reichelt, 1998).

35  
36 The National Marine Sanctuary Program has developed a set of goals (Box 8.1) to help clarify  
37 the relationship between operations at individual sanctuaries and the broad directives of the  
38 National Marine Sanctuaries Act. A subset of these goals (Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6) are relevant to  
39 resource protection and climate change. Box 8.3 expands upon Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6 to display  
40 their attendant objectives, which provide guidance for management plans that are developed by  
41 sanctuary sites (see Table 8.3). Sanctuary management plans are developed and subsequently  
42 reviewed and revised on a five-year cycle as a collaboration between sanctuary staff and local  
43 communities. After threats and stressors to resources are identified, action plans are prepared that

---

<sup>20</sup> See also **Ballantine, B.**, 1997: Design principles for systems of no-take marine reserves. Proceedings of the the design and monitoring of marine reserves, Fisheries Center, University of British Columbia, Vancouver.

1 identify activities to address them. Threats and stressors may include such things as  
2 overexploitation of natural resources, degraded water quality, and habitat damage and  
3 destruction. Sanctuary management plans are designed to address additional issues raised by  
4 local communities, such as user conflicts, needs for education and outreach, and interest in  
5 volunteer programs.

6  
7 Fully protected marine reserves within national marine sanctuaries have been implemented at  
8 some sites (*e.g.*, Channel Islands and the Florida Keys; Keller and Causey, 2005) to reduce  
9 fishing pressure; the entire area of the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument will  
10 become no-take within five years. These additional protective actions complement existing  
11 fishery regulations. Some sites, such as Monterey Bay and the Florida Keys, have Water Quality  
12 Protection Programs to address issues such as watershed pollution, vessel discharges, and, in the  
13 case of the Florida Keys, wastewater and stormwater treatment systems. Habitat damage may be  
14 addressed using waterway marking programs to reduce vessel groundings and mooring buoys to  
15 minimize anchor damage. Many of these activities are supported through education and outreach  
16 programs to inform the public, volunteer programs to help distribute information (*e.g.*, Team  
17 Ocean<sup>21</sup>), and law enforcement.

18  
19 Sanctuary management plans are intended to be comprehensive, and may take years of  
20 community involvement to develop. For example, it took more than five years to develop the  
21 management plan for the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (Keller and Causey, 2005),  
22 and an additional three years were required to prepare a supplemental plan for the Tortugas  
23 Ecological Reserve (Cowie-Haskell and Delaney, 2003; Delaney, 2003). However, the focus of  
24 sanctuary management plans has been on local stressors and not on additional impacts of climate  
25 change. As suggested below, climate change will need to be included in MPA planning,  
26 management, and evaluation.

27  
28 Effective management and preservation of ecosystem characteristics in the face of climate  
29 change projections is relevant to achieving NMSP Goals 1, 2, 4, and 5 (Box 8.1). The NMSP is a  
30 leader in the use of stakeholders in the development of new management approaches (Sanctuary  
31 Advisory Councils and public scoping meetings at the site level). This model of public  
32 involvement should serve well as management strategies adapt under the stresses of climate  
33 change. Exporting lessons learned to the general public, managers of other MPAs, and the  
34 international community will further address NMSP Goals 2, 3, and 6.

35  
36 An additional approach of the NMSP that should further efforts toward adaptive management in  
37 the context of climate change is the development of performance measures to help evaluate the  
38 success of the program (Box 8.4). Although climate change stressors are not yet explicitly  
39 addressed in these performance measures, attainment of a number of these measures clearly will  
40 be increasingly affected by climate change. The performance-measure approach should  
41 encourage sanctuary managers to address climate change impacts using the public processes of  
42 Sanctuary Advisory Councils and public scoping meetings. In addition, national marine

---

<sup>21</sup> **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2003: Florida Keys NMS Team OCEAN. Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary Webpage, <http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/edu/ocean.html>, accessed on 5-21-2007.

1 sanctuaries are preparing Condition Reports,<sup>22</sup> which provide summaries of resources, pressures  
2 on resources, current condition and trends, and management responses to pressures that threaten  
3 the integrity of the marine environment. These reports will provide opportunities for sanctuaries  
4 to evaluate climate change as a pressure, and identify management responses on a site-by-site  
5 basis as well as across the system of national marine sanctuaries.

## 6 **8.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

7 MPA managers can respond to challenges of climate change at two scales: actions at individual  
8 sites and implementing MPA networks. At particular MPAs, managers can increase efforts to  
9 ameliorate existing anthropogenic stressors with a goal of reducing the overall load of multiple  
10 stressors (Breitburg and Riedel, 2005). For example, the concept of protecting or enhancing coral  
11 reef resilience has been proposed to help ameliorate negative consequences of coral bleaching  
12 (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Hughes *et al.*, 2005).<sup>23</sup> Under this approach, resilience is an ecosystem  
13 property that can be managed and is defined as the ability of an ecosystem to resist or absorb  
14 disturbance without significantly degrading processes that determine community structure, or if  
15 alterations occur, recovery is *not* to an alternate community state (Gunderson, 2000; Nyström,  
16 Folke, and Moberg, 2000; Hughes *et al.*, 2003). In short, managing for resilience includes  
17 dealing with causes of coral reef disturbance and decline that managers can address at local and  
18 regional levels, such as overfishing and pollution. These are the things that managers would want  
19 to do anyway, even if climate change were not a threat, because these activities help to maintain  
20 the ecological and economic value of the ecosystem.

21  
22 In addition to the approach of ameliorating existing stressors, MPA managers can protect  
23 putatively resistant and potentially resilient areas, develop networks of MPAs, and integrate  
24 climate change into planning efforts. Specific examples of adaptation options from across these  
25 approaches are presented in Box 8.5 and elaborated upon further in the sections that follow.

26  
27 It is important to emphasize that variable and complex effects of climate on oceanographic  
28 processes and production (Soto, 2001; Mann and Lazier, 2006) present MPA managers with  
29 major uncertainties about climate change impacts and effective management approaches. An  
30 excellent discussion of uncertainty and scenario-based planning is provided in the National Parks  
31 chapter, sections 4.4.1 and 4.4.2.

### 32 **8.4.1 Ameliorate Existing Stressors in Coastal Waters**

33 Managers may be able to increase resilience to climate change within MPAs by reducing impacts  
34 of local- and regional-scale stressors, such as fishing, sedimentation, input of nutrients and  
35 pollutants, and degraded water quality. While this concept is logical and has considerable appeal,  
36 evidence in support of this approach is weak at best, which provides an excellent opportunity for  
37 adaptive-management research. Kelp forest ecosystems in marine reserves, where no fishing is  
38 allowed, are more resilient to ocean warming than those in areas where fishing occurs (Behrens  
39 and Lafferty, 2004). This ecological response is a result of changes in trophic structure of

---

<sup>22</sup> **National Marine Sanctuary Program**, 5-21-2007: National Marine Sanctuaries condition reports. NOAA Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/science/condition/>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>23</sup> See also **Marshall**, P. and H. Schuttenberg, 2006: A Reef Manager's Guide to Coral Bleaching. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, [http://www.coris.noaa.gov/activities/reef\\_managers\\_guide/](http://www.coris.noaa.gov/activities/reef_managers_guide/), pp.1-178.

1 communities in and around the reserves. When top predators such as spiny lobster are fished,  
2 their prey, herbivorous sea urchins, increase in abundance and consume giant kelp and other  
3 algae. When kelp forests are subjected to intense grazing by these herbivores, the density of kelp  
4 is reduced, sometimes becoming an “urchin barren,” particularly during ocean warming events  
5 such as ENSO cycles. In reserves where fishing is prohibited, lobster populations were larger,  
6 urchin populations were diminished, and kelp forests persisted over a period of 20 years—  
7 including four ENSO cycles (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004).

8  
9 Managing water quality has been identified as a key strategy for maintaining ecological  
10 resilience (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006).<sup>23</sup> In the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary  
11 and the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park, water quality protection is recognized as an essential  
12 component of management (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996; The State of Queensland and  
13 Commonwealth of Australia, 2003; Grigg *et al.*, 2005, also see the Monterey Bay National  
14 Marine Sanctuary's water quality agreements with land-based agencies).<sup>24</sup> Strong circumstantial  
15 evidence exists linking poor water quality to increased macroalgal abundances, internal  
16 bioerosion, and susceptibility to some diseases in corals and octocorals (Fabricius and De'ath,  
17 2004). Addressing sources of pollution—especially nutrient enrichment, which can lead to  
18 increased algal growth and reduced coral settlement—is critical to maintaining ecosystem health.  
19 In addition to controlling point-source pollution within an MPA, managers must also link their  
20 MPAs into the governance system of adjacent areas to control sources of pollution beyond the  
21 MPA boundaries (*e.g.*, Crowder *et al.*, 2006). Further actions necessary to improve water quality  
22 include raising awareness of how land-based activities can adversely affect adjacent marine  
23 environments, implementing programs for integrated coastal and watershed management, and  
24 developing options for advanced wastewater treatment (The Group of Experts on Scientific  
25 Aspects of Marine Environmental Protection, 2001).

26  
27 Managers may be able to build resilience to climate change into MPA management strategies by  
28 protecting marine habitats such as coral reefs and mangroves from direct threats such as  
29 pollution, sedimentation, destructive fishing, and overfishing. Therefore, managers should  
30 continue to develop and implement strategies to reduce land-based pollution, decrease nutrient  
31 and sediment runoff, eliminate the use of persistent pesticides, and increase filtration of effluent  
32 to improve water quality. As noted above, the efficacy of these measures needs research in an  
33 adaptive-management context.

34  
35 Another mechanism that may maintain resilience is the management of functional groups,  
36 specifically herbivores (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; Bellwood *et al.*, 2004). Bellwood *et al.* (2004)  
37 identified three functional groups of herbivores that assist in maintaining coral reef resilience:  
38 bioeroders, grazers, and scrapers. These groups work together to break down dead coral to allow  
39 substrate for recruitment, graze macroalgae, and reduce the development of algal turfs to allow  
40 for a clean substrate for coral settlement. Algal biomass must be kept low to maintain healthy  
41 coral reefs (Sammarco, 1980; Hatcher and Larkum, 1983; Steneck and Dethier, 1994). Bellwood,  
42 Hughes, and Hoey (2006) identify the need to protect both the species that prevent phase shifts  
43 from coral-dominated to algal-dominated reefs and the species that help reefs recover from algal

---

<sup>24</sup> **Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Water quality protection program for the MBNMS. Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary Website, <http://www.mbnms.nos.noaa.gov/resourcepro/water-pro.html>, accessed on 5-23-2007.

1 dominance. They suggest that while parrotfishes and surgeonfishes appear to play a critical role  
2 in preventing phase shifts to macroalgae, their ability to remove algae may be limited if a phase  
3 shift to macroalgae has already occurred (Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). In their study on  
4 the Great Barrier Reef, the phase shift reversal from macroalgal-dominated to a coral- and  
5 epilithic algal-dominated state was driven by a single batfish species (*Platax pinnatus*), not  
6 grazing by dominant parrotfishes or surgeonfishes (Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). This  
7 finding highlights the need to protect the full range of species to maintain resilience, at least in  
8 some systems. For example, Ledlie *et al.* (2007) found that a shift from coral to algal dominance  
9 occurred at a marine reserve in the Seychelles after the 1998 mass coral bleaching event, despite  
10 the presence of abundant herbivorous fishes. Many herbivorous fishes avoid macroalgae, and  
11 more research on functional groups is needed.

12  
13 Although protecting functional groups may be a component of MPA management to enhance  
14 resilience, understanding which groups should be protected requires a detailed knowledge of  
15 species and interactions that is not often available for all species. Therefore, managers should  
16 strive to maintain the maximum number of species in the absence of detailed data on ecological  
17 and species interactions. For example, for managing coral reefs, regional guidelines identifying  
18 key herbivores that reduce macroalgae and encourage coral reef settlement should be developed.  
19 For kelp forests, the opposite approach may apply: managers may need to identify key predators  
20 on herbivores and limit fishing on those predators to reduce herbivory and promote growth of  
21 healthy kelp forests. These guidelines should be field tested at different locations to verify the  
22 recommendations.

#### 23 **8.4.2 Protect Apparently Resistant and Potentially Resilient Areas**

24 Marine ecosystems that contain biologically generated habitats face potential loss of habitat  
25 structure as climate change progresses (*e.g.*, coral reefs, seagrass beds, kelp forests, and deep  
26 coral communities) (see Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Steneck *et al.*, 2002; Roberts, Wheeler, and  
27 Freiwald, 2006; Orth *et al.*, 2006). As discussed earlier in this chapter, it is likely that climate  
28 change contributes to mass coral bleaching events (Reaser, Pomerance, and Thomas, 2000),  
29 which became recognized globally in 1997–1998 (Wilkinson, 1998; 2000) and have affected  
30 large regions in subsequent years (Wilkinson, 2002; 2004; Whelan *et al.*, 2007). The amount of  
31 live coral has declined dramatically in the Caribbean region over the past 30 years as a result of  
32 bleaching, diseases, and hurricanes (Gardner *et al.*, 2003; 2005). In the Florida Keys, fore-reef  
33 environments that formerly supported dense growths of coral are now nearly depauperate, and  
34 the highest coral cover is in patch reef environments (Porter *et al.*, 2002; Lirman and Fong,  
35 2007). Irrespective of the mechanism—resistance, resilience, or exposure to relatively low levels  
36 of past environmental stress— these patch-reef environments might be good candidates for  
37 additional protective measures because they may have high potential to survive climate stress.

38  
39 Done<sup>25</sup> (see also Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006) presented a decision tree for identifying areas  
40 that would be suitable for MPAs under a climate change scenario. Two types of favorable  
41 outcomes included reefs that survived bleaching (*i.e.*, were resilient) and reefs that were not

---

<sup>25</sup> Done, T., 2001: Scientific principles for establishing MPAs to alleviate coral bleaching and promote recovery. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, pp. 60-66.



1 exposed to elevated sea surface temperatures (*e.g.*, may be located within refugia such as areas  
2 exposed to upwelling or cooler currents). This type of decision tree has already been adapted to  
3 guide site selection for mangroves (McLeod and Salm, 2006), and it could be extended further  
4 for other habitat types such as seagrass beds and kelp forests.

5  
6 In addition, thermally stressed corals exhibit less bleaching and higher survival if they are shaded  
7 during periods of elevated temperatures (Hoegh-Guldberg *et al.*, 2007). On a small scale, MPA  
8 managers may be able to shade areas during bleaching events to reduce overall stress. On a  
9 larger scale, managers should protect mangrove shorelines and support restoration of areas where  
10 mangroves have been damaged or destroyed, because tannins and dissolved organic compounds  
11 from decaying mangrove vegetation contribute to absorbing light and reducing stress (Hallock,  
12 2005) (see also section 8.4.3.1). Extensive discussions of coral bleaching and management  
13 responses are provided in Marshall and Schuttenberg (2006)<sup>23</sup> and Johnson and Marshall.<sup>26</sup>

14  
15 Because climate change impacts on marine systems are patchy (with reefs that avoid bleaching  
16 one year potentially bleaching the following year), it is essential that areas that appear to be  
17 resistant or resilient to climate change impacts be monitored and tested to ensure that they  
18 continue to provide benefits (see section 8.4.4.1 for more on monitoring and research). This  
19 allows managers to target potential refugia for MPA design now, while also monitoring these  
20 areas over time so that management can be modified as circumstances and habitats change.

### 21 **8.4.3 Develop Networks of MPAs**

22 The concept of systems or networks of MPAs has considerable appeal because of emergent  
23 properties (*i.e.*, representation, replication, sustainability, connectivity) (National Research  
24 Council, 2001; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a),<sup>20</sup> spreading the risk of catastrophic habitat loss (Palumbi,  
25 2002; Allison *et al.*, 2003), and the provision of functional wilderness areas sufficient to resist  
26 fundamental changes to entire ecosystems (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). While MPA networks have  
27 been recognized as a valuable tool to conserve marine resources in the face of climate change,  
28 there have been a number of challenges to implementation (Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005; Mora *et al.*,  
29 2006); nevertheless, a number of principles have been developed and are gradually being applied  
30 to aid MPA network design and implementation. These principles are described below.

#### 31 **8.4.3.1 Protect Critical Areas**

32 Critical areas—areas that are biologically or ecologically significant—should be identified and  
33 included in MPAs. These critical areas include nursery grounds, spawning grounds, areas of high  
34 species diversity, areas that contain a variety of habitat types in close proximity to each other,  
35 and climate refugia (Allison, Lubchenco, and Carr, 1998; Sale *et al.*, 2005).<sup>27</sup> Coral assemblages  
36 that demonstrate resistance or resilience to climate change may be identified and provided  
37 additional protection to ensure a secure source of recruitment to support recovery in damaged  
38 areas. Managers can analyze how assemblages have responded to past climate events to

---

<sup>26</sup> Johnson, J. and P. Marshall, 2007: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef: a Vulnerability Assessment*. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.

<sup>27</sup> See also Sadovy, Y., 2006: Protecting the spawning and nursery habitats of fish: the use of MPAs to safeguard critical life-history stages for marine life. *MPA News, International News and Analysis on Marine Protected Areas*, 8(2), 1-3.

1 determine likely resilience to climate change impacts. For example, some coral reefs resist  
2 bleaching due to genetic characteristics or avoid bleaching due to environmental factors.  
3 Managers can fully protect those that either resist or recover quickly from mass bleaching events,  
4 as well as those that are located in areas where physical conditions (*e.g.*, currents, shading)  
5 afford them some protection from temperature anomalies. Reefs that are resistant and reefs that  
6 are located in refugia from climate extremes may play a critical role in reef survival by providing  
7 a source of larvae for dispersal to and recovery of affected areas.<sup>28</sup> For coral reefs, indicators of  
8 potential refugia include a ratio of live to dead coral and a range of colony sizes and ages  
9 suggesting persistence over time. Refugia must be large enough to support high species richness  
10 to maximize their effectiveness as sources of recruits to replenish areas that have been damaged  
11 (Palumbi *et al.*, 1997; Bellwood and Hughes, 2001; Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006).  
12

13 Following extreme events, MPA managers should consider whether actions should be taken to  
14 enhance natural recovery processes through active restoration of biologically structured habitats.  
15 For example, damaged areas in seagrass beds may recover more rapidly if steps are taken to  
16 stabilize sediments (Whitfield *et al.*, 2002). Due to the loss of mangroves from many areas,  
17 mangrove restoration is another option for MPA managers that may have multiple benefits,  
18 including shoreline protection, expansion of nursery habitat (Nagelkerken, 2007), and release of  
19 tannins and other dissolved organic compounds that may reduce photo-oxidative stress in corals  
20 (Hallock, 2005).

#### 21 **8.4.3.2 Incorporate Connectivity in Planning MPA Networks**

22 Connectivity is the natural linkage between marine habitats (Crowder *et al.*, 2000; Stewart,  
23 Noyce, and Possingham, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b), which occurs through advection by ocean  
24 currents and includes larval dispersal and movements of adults and juveniles. Connectivity is an  
25 important part of ensuring larval exchange and the replenishment of populations in areas  
26 damaged by natural or human-related agents. Salm *et al.* (2006) recommend that patterns of  
27 connectivity be identified among source and sink reefs to inform reef selection in the design of  
28 MPA networks and enhance recovery following disturbance events. This principle applies to  
29 other marine systems, such as mangroves, as well. For example, healthy mangroves could be  
30 selected up-current from areas that may succumb to sea level rise, and areas could be selected  
31 that would be suitable habitat for mangroves in the future following sea level rise. These areas of  
32 healthy mangroves could provide secure sources of propagules to replenish down-current  
33 mangroves following a disturbance event.  
34

35 A suspected benefit of MPAs is the dispersal of larvae to areas surrounding MPAs, but there are  
36 few data that can be used to estimate the exchange of larvae among local populations (Palumbi,  
37 2004). Understanding larval dispersal and transport are critical to determining connectivity, and  
38 thus the design of MPAs. The size of an individual MPA should be based on the movement of  
39 adults of species of interest (Hastings and Botsford, 2003; Botsford, Micheli, and Hastings,  
40 2003). An individual MPA should be large enough to contain the different habitats used and the  
41 daily movements of species of interest. The distance between adjacent MPAs should take into

---

<sup>28</sup> Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles, 2001: Coral bleaching and marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, Volume 102, Asia Pacific Coastal Marine Program Report #0102, The Nature Conservancy, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 1-118.

1 account the potential dispersal distances of larvae of fish, invertebrates, and other species of  
2 interest.<sup>29</sup>

3  
4 One approach in MPA design has been to establish the size of MPAs based on the spatial scale of  
5 movements of adults of heavily fished species, and to space MPAs based on scales of larval  
6 dispersal (Palumbi, 2004). However, guidelines for the minimum size of MPAs and no-take  
7 reserves, and spacing between adjacent MPAs, vary dramatically depending on the goals for the  
8 MPAs (Hastings and Botsford, 2003). Friedlander *et al.* (2003) suggested that no-take zones  
9 should measure ca. 10 km<sup>2</sup> to ensure viable populations of a range of species in the Seaflower  
10 Biosphere Reserve, Colombia. Airamé *et al.* (2003) recommended a network of three to five no-  
11 take zones in each biogeographic region of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary,  
12 comprising approximately 30–50% of the area, in order to conserve biodiversity and contribute  
13 to sustainable fisheries in the region.

14  
15 Recent studies confirm that larval dispersal is more localized than previously thought, and short-  
16 lived species may require regular recruitment from oceanographically connected sites (Cowen,  
17 Paris, and Srinivasan, 2006; Steneck, 2006). Palumbi (2003) concluded that marine reserves tens  
18 of km apart may exchange larvae in a single generation. Shanks, Grantham, and Carr (2003)  
19 similarly concluded that marine reserves spaced 20 km apart would allow larvae to be carried to  
20 adjacent reserves. The Science Advisory Team to California’s Marine Life Protection Act  
21 Initiative recommended spacing high protection MPAs, such as marine reserves, within 50–100  
22 km in order to accommodate larval dispersal distances of a wide range of species of interest.  
23 Halpern *et al.* (2006) corroborated these findings using an uncertainty-modeling approach.

24  
25 No-take zones measuring a minimum of 20 km in diameter will accommodate short-distance  
26 dispersers in addition to including a significant part of the local benthic fishes, thus generating  
27 fisheries benefits (Shanks, Grantham, and Carr, 2003; Fernandes *et al.*, 2005; Mora *et al.*, 2006).  
28 While this recommendation is likely to protect the majority of small benthic fish and benthic  
29 invertebrates, it is unlikely to protect large pelagic fish and large migratory species (Roberts *et*  
30 *al.*, 2003b; Palumbi, 2004). Recommendations to protect highly migratory and pelagic species  
31 include designing MPAs to protect predictable breeding and foraging habits, ensuring these have  
32 dynamic boundaries and extensive buffers, and establishing dynamic MPAs that are defined by  
33 the extent and location of large-scale oceanographic features, such as oceanic fronts, where  
34 changes in types and abundances of marine organisms often occur (Hyrenbach, Forney, and  
35 Dayton, 2000).

36  
37 A system-wide approach should be taken that addresses patterns of connectivity among  
38 ecosystems such as mangroves, coral reefs, and seagrass beds (Mumby *et al.*, 2004). For  
39 example, mangroves in the Caribbean enhance the biomass of coral reef fish communities  
40 because they provide essential nursery habitat. Coral reefs can protect mangroves by buffering  
41 the impacts of wave erosion, while mangroves can protect reefs and seagrass beds from siltation.  
42 Thus, connectivity among functionally linked habitats helps maintain ecosystem function and  
43 resilience (Ogden and Gladfelter, 1983; Roberts, 1996; Nagelkerken *et al.*, 2000). Entire  
44 ecological units (*e.g.*, coral reefs with their associated mangroves and seagrasses) should be

---

<sup>29</sup> **California Department of Fish and Game**, 2007: *California Marine Life Protection Act: Master Plan for MPAs*. California Department of Fish and Game.

1 included in MPA design where possible. If entire biological units cannot be included, then larger  
2 areas should be chosen over smaller areas to accommodate local-scale recruitment.

3  
4 Although maintaining connectivity within and between MPAs may help maintain marine  
5 biodiversity, ecosystem function, and resilience, many challenges exist. For example, the same  
6 currents and pathways that allow for larval recruitment following a disturbance event can expose  
7 an ecosystem to invasive species, pathogens, parasites, or pollutants, which can undermine the  
8 resilience of a system (McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002). Numerous challenges also exist  
9 in estimating larval dispersal patterns. Although there have been detailed studies addressing  
10 dispersal *potential* of marine species based on their larval biology (*e.g.*, Shanks, Grantham, and  
11 Carr, 2003; Kinlan and Gaines, 2003), little is known about where in the oceans larvae go and  
12 how far they travel. A single network design is unlikely to satisfy the potential dispersal ranges  
13 for all species; Roberts *et al.* (2003b) recommended an approach using various sizes and spacing  
14 of MPAs in a network to accommodate the diversity of dispersal ranges. Larval duration in the  
15 plankton also varies from minutes to years, and the more time that propagules spend in the water  
16 column, the farther they tend to be dispersed (Shanks, Grantham, and Carr, 2003; Steneck,  
17 2006). Evidence from hydrodynamic models and genetic structure data indicates that, in addition  
18 to large variation of larval dispersal distances among species, the average scale of dispersal can  
19 vary widely—even within a given species—at different locations in space and time (*e.g.*, Cowen  
20 *et al.*, 2003; Sotka *et al.*, 2004; Engie and Klinger, 2007). Some information suggests long-  
21 distance dispersal is common, but other emerging information suggests that larval dispersal may  
22 be limited (Jones *et al.*, 1999; Swearer *et al.*, 1999; Warner, Swearer, and Caselle, 2000;  
23 Thorrold *et al.*, 2001; Palumbi, 2003; Paris and Cowen, 2004; Jones, Planes, and Thorrold,  
24 2005). Additional research will be required to better understand where and how far larvae travel  
25 in various marine ecosystems.

#### 26 **8.4.3.3 Replicate Multiple Habitat Types in MPA Networks**

27 Recognizing that the science underlying our understanding of resilience is developing and that  
28 climate change will not affect marine species equally everywhere, an element of spreading the  
29 risk must be built into MPA design. To avoid the loss of a single habitat type, managers can  
30 protect multiple samples of the full range of marine habitat types (Hockey and Branch, 1994;  
31 Roberts *et al.*, 2001; Friedlander *et al.*, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Salm, Done, and McLeod,  
32 2006; Wells, 2006).<sup>20</sup> For example, these marine habitat types include coral reefs with varying  
33 degrees of exposure to wave energy (*e.g.*, offshore, mid-shelf, and inshore reefs), seagrass beds,  
34 and a range of mangrove communities (riverine, basin, and fringe forests in areas of varying  
35 salinity, tidal fluctuation, and sea level) (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006). Reflecting the current  
36 federal goal of protecting at least 30% of lifetime stock spawning potential (Ault, Bohnsack, and  
37 Meester, 1998; National Marine Fisheries Service, 2003), it has been recommended that more  
38 than 30% of appropriate habitats should be included in no-take zones.<sup>30</sup> In 2004, the Great  
39 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority increased the area of no-take zones from less than 5% to

---

<sup>30</sup> **Bohnsack, J.A., B. Causey, M.P. Crosby, R.B. Griffis, M.A. Hixon, T.F. Hourigan, K.H. Koltz, J.E. Maragos, A. Simons, and J.T. Tilmant, 2002: A rationale for minimum 20–30% no-take protection. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp. 615-619.**

1 approximately 33% of the area of the Marine Park, ensuring that at least 20% of each bioregion  
2 (area of every region of biodiversity) was zoned as no-take (Fernandes *et al.*, 2005).<sup>31</sup>

3  
4 For both terrestrial and marine systems, species diversity often increases with habitat diversity,  
5 and species richness increases with habitat complexity; the greater the variety of habitats  
6 protected, the greater the biodiversity conserved (Friedlander *et al.*, 2003; Carr *et al.*, 2003).  
7 High species diversity may increase ecosystem resilience by ensuring sufficient redundancy to  
8 maintain ecological processes and protect against environmental disturbance (McNaughton,  
9 1977; McClanahan, Polunin, and Done, 2002). This is particularly true in the context of additive  
10 or synergistic stressors. Maximizing habitat heterogeneity is critical for maintaining ecological  
11 health; thus MPAs should include large areas and depth gradients (Hansen, Biringer, and  
12 Hoffman, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003a).<sup>25</sup> By protecting a representative range of habitat types  
13 and communities, MPAs have a higher potential to protect a region's biodiversity, biological  
14 connections between habitats, and ecological functions.<sup>32</sup>

15  
16 Replication of habitat types in multiple areas provides a further way to spread risks associated  
17 with climate change. If a habitat type is destroyed in one area, a replicate of that habitat may  
18 survive in another area to provide larvae for recovery. While the number of replicates will be  
19 determined by a balance of desired representation and practical concerns such as funding and  
20 enforcement capacity (Airamé *et al.*, 2003), generally at least three to five replicates are  
21 recommended to effectively protect a particular habitat or community type (Airamé *et al.*, 2003;  
22 Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Fernandes *et al.*, 2005). Wherever possible, multiple samples of each  
23 habitat type should be included in MPA networks or larger management frameworks such as  
24 multiple-use MPAs or areas under rigorous integrated management regimes (Salm, Done, and  
25 McLeod, 2006). This approach has the advantage of protecting essential habitat for a wide  
26 variety of commercially valuable fish and macroinvertebrates.

27 While a risk-spreading approach to address the uncertainty of the impacts of climate change  
28 makes practical sense, there are challenges to adequate representation. Managers must have  
29 access to classification maps of marine habitat types/communities or local knowledge of habitat  
30 types/communities for their area to determine which representative examples should be included  
31 in MPA design. Replication of habitat types may not always be feasible due to limited  
32 monitoring and enforcement resources, conflicting needs of resource users, and existence of  
33 certain habitat types within an MPA.

#### 34 **8.4.4 Integrate Climate Change Into MPA Planning, Management, and Evaluation**

35 A number of tools exist to help managers address climate impacts and build resilience into MPA  
36 design and management. Ecological changes that are common in marine reserves worldwide and  
37 guidelines for marine reserve design are summarized in an educational booklet for policymakers,

---

<sup>31</sup> See also Day, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, G. De'ath, S. Slegers, B. Barnett, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, J. Innes, J. Oliver, T. Ward, and D. Lowe, 2002: The representative areas program for protecting biodiversity in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp. 687-696.

<sup>32</sup> Day, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, G. De'ath, S. Slegers, B. Barnett, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, J. Innes, J. Oliver, T. Ward, and D. Lowe, 2002: The representative areas program for protecting biodiversity in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp. 687-696.

1 managers, and educators, entitled “The Science of Marine Reserves.”<sup>33</sup> The Reef Resilience  
2 toolkit<sup>34</sup> provides marine resource managers with strategies to address coral bleaching and  
3 conserve reef fish spawning aggregations, helping to build resilience into coral reef conservation  
4 programs. “A Reef Manager’s Guide to Coral Bleaching” provides information on the causes and  
5 consequences of coral bleaching and management strategies to help local and regional reef  
6 managers reduce this threat to coral reef ecosystems.<sup>23</sup> The application of some of these  
7 strategies is discussed in a recent report by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, which  
8 applies resilience theory in a case study for the reefs of American Samoa and proposes climate  
9 adaptation strategies that can be leveraged with existing local management plans, processes, and  
10 mandates (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2007).

11  
12 In contrast, with regard to the impacts on marine organisms of reductions in ocean pH due to  
13 CO<sub>2</sub> emissions (Caldeira and Wickett, 2003), management strategies have not yet been  
14 developed. Adding chemicals to counter acidification is not a viable option, as it would likely be  
15 only partly effective and, if so, only at a very local scale (The Royal Society, 2005). Therefore,  
16 further research is needed on impacts of high concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub> in the oceans, possible  
17 acclimation or evolution of organisms in response to changes in ocean chemistry, and how  
18 management might respond (The Royal Society, 2005).

19  
20 Determining management effectiveness is important for gauging the success of an MPA or  
21 network, and also can inform adaptive management strategies to address shortcomings in a  
22 particular MPA or network. To help managers improve the management of MPAs, the IUCN  
23 World Commission on Protected Areas and the World Wide Fund for Nature developed an MPA  
24 management effectiveness guidebook. This guidebook, “How is Your MPA Doing? A  
25 Guidebook of Natural and Social Indicators for Evaluating Marine Protected Area Management  
26 Effectiveness,” helps managers and other decision-makers assess management effectiveness  
27 through the selection and use of biophysical, socioeconomic, and governance indicators.<sup>35</sup> The  
28 goal of the guidebook is to enhance the capability for adaptive management in MPAs. The  
29 “Framework for Measuring Success” (Parks and Salafsky, 2001) also provides a suite of tools to  
30 analyze community response to an MPA, and replicable methodologies to assess both social and  
31 ecological criteria.

32  
33 National marine sanctuaries are preparing a series of Condition Reports for each site, which  
34 provide a summary of resources, pressures on those resources, current condition and trends, and  
35 management responses to the pressures.<sup>22</sup> This information is intended to be used in reviews of  
36 management plans and to help sanctuary staff identify monitoring, characterization, and research  
37 priorities to address gaps, day-to-day information needs, and new threats.

---

<sup>33</sup> **Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans**, 2005: The science of marine reserves. Partnership for Interdisciplinary Studies of Coastal Oceans Website, <http://www.piscoweb.org/outreach/pubs/reserves>, accessed on 5-23-2007.

<sup>34</sup> **The Nature Conservancy and Partners**, 2004: *R<sup>2</sup> - Reef Resilience: Building Resilience into Coral Reef Conservation; Additional Tools for Managers*. Volume 2.0. CD ROM Toolkit, The Nature Conservancy, <http://www.reefresilience.org/>.

<sup>35</sup> **Pomeroy, R.S., J.E. Parks, and L.M. Watson**, 2004: *How Is Your MPA Doing? A Guidebook of Natural and Social Indicators for Evaluating Marine Protected Area Management Effectiveness*. <http://effectivempa.noaa.gov/guidebook/guidebook.html>, International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, The World Conservation Union, Gland, Switzerland.

1  
2 Managers in the United States can benefit from the example set by the Great Barrier Reef Marine  
3 Park Authority (GBRMPA), which is implementing a Climate Change Response Program<sup>36</sup>  
4 designed to: (1) understand climate change implications for the Great Barrier Reef; (2) share  
5 knowledge about climate change impacts and response options; (3) encourage and support  
6 reductions in greenhouse gas emissions; (4) maximize the resilience of the Great Barrier Reef  
7 ecosystem; and (5) encourage and support Great Barrier Reef communities and industries to  
8 adapt to climate change. To further several of these objectives, GBRMPA has published a  
9 thorough assessment of vulnerabilities to climate change.<sup>26</sup> This approach is a model for MPAs  
10 to consider worldwide.

#### 11 **8.4.4.1 MPA Monitoring and Research**

12 MPAs must be effectively monitored to ensure the success of MPA design and management. If  
13 MPA design and management are not successful, then adaptations need to be made to meet the  
14 challenges posed by anthropogenic and natural stresses. As the number of pristine areas is  
15 decreasing rapidly, establishing baseline data for marine habitats is urgent and essential. Once  
16 baseline data are established, managers should monitor to determine the effects of climate  
17 change on local resources and populations. Retrospective testing of resistance to climate change  
18 impacts is difficult, so rapid response strategies should be in place to assess ecological effects of  
19 extreme events as they occur. For coral reefs, coral bleaching patterns either disappear with time  
20 or become confounded with other causes of mortality, such as predation by the crown-of-thorns  
21 starfish, disease, or multiple other stressors (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006). Therefore,  
22 response strategies must be implemented immediately following a mass bleaching event or other  
23 climate-related event to determine bleaching impacts. For coral reefs, bleaching and mortality  
24 responses of corals to heat stress, the recovery rates of coral communities, and the physiological  
25 response of certain corals to bleaching should be monitored. After the degree of damage from a  
26 mass bleaching or other climate-related event has been evaluated, MPA managers can consider  
27 whether active restoration may be an option for supporting natural recovery (Marshall and  
28 Schuttenberg, 2006). For coral reefs, restoration efforts may include transplanting coral colonies,  
29 introducing large numbers of coral larvae, and increasing densities of herbivores such as the sea  
30 urchin *Diadema antillarum*.

31  
32 Monitoring also can be an effective way to engage community members and raise awareness of  
33 the impacts of climate change on marine systems. For example, the Reef Check program enables  
34 community volunteers to collect coral reef monitoring data to supplement other monitoring data  
35 from researchers and government agencies. Programs that engage coral reef users (such as local  
36 fishermen and tourism operators) in monitoring can help raise awareness of impacts on marine  
37 systems and can help support the need to manage for local threats. The Nature Conservancy is  
38 managing the Florida Reef Resilience Program to develop strategies to improve the condition of  
39 Florida's coral reefs and support human dimensions investigations.<sup>37</sup> The program includes  
40 annual surveys of coral bleaching effects at reefs along the Florida Keys and the southeast

---

<sup>36</sup> **Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority**, 2007: Management responses. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority Website, [http://www.gbrmpa.gov.au/corp\\_site/key\\_issues/climate\\_change/management\\_responses](http://www.gbrmpa.gov.au/corp_site/key_issues/climate_change/management_responses), accessed on 12-24-2007.

<sup>37</sup> **The Nature Conservancy**, 2007: Florida Keys reef resilience program. The Nature Conservancy Website, <http://www.nature.org/wherewework/northamerica/states/florida/preserves/art17499.html>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

1 Florida coast, using trained divers from agencies, universities, and non-governmental  
2 organizations.

3  
4 Changes in ocean chemistry (CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub> levels and salinity), hydrography (sea level, currents,  
5 vertical mixing, storms, and waves), and temperature should be monitored over long time scales  
6 to determine climate changes and possible climate trends. A location that is well isolated from  
7 local-scale anthropogenic effects and has a history of relevant investigations, such as Palmyra  
8 Atoll, is well-suited for such an analysis of climate change. Such an analysis could help  
9 determine the efficacy of MPA management in the context of climate change that is relatively  
10 independent of other anthropogenic effects, similar to the situation in the Northwestern Hawaiian  
11 Islands (see Case Study Summary 8.3).

12  
13 NOAA's Coral Reef Watch program<sup>38</sup> provides products that can warn managers of potential  
14 impending bleaching events. In addition, Coral Reef Watch is developing bleaching forecasts  
15 that will provide outlooks of bleaching potential months in advance. These tools can help  
16 managers prepare for bleaching events so that when the event occurs, managers can have the  
17 necessary capacity in place to respond. In addition to a number of guides to help managers  
18 understand resilience and incorporate the concept in management actions, global information  
19 databases exist that consolidate climate change impacts on marine systems such as coral reefs.  
20 Reefbase<sup>39</sup> is a global information system and is the database of the Global Coral Reef  
21 Monitoring Network and the International Coral Reef Action Network. Coral bleaching reports,  
22 maps, photographs, and publications are freely available on the website, and bleaching reports  
23 can be submitted for inclusion in the database. Reefbase provides an essential mechanism for  
24 collecting bleaching data from around the world, thus helping researchers and managers to  
25 identify potential patterns in reef vulnerability.

#### 26 **8.4.4.2 Social Resilience, Stakeholder Participation, and Education and Outreach**

27 In addition to identifying and building ecological resilience into MPA design and management, it  
28 is equally important for managers to address social resilience (*i.e.*, social, economic, and political  
29 factors that influence MPAs and networks). Social resilience is the “ability of groups or  
30 communities to cope with external stresses and disturbances as a result of social, political, and  
31 environmental change” (Adger, 2000). MPAs that reinforce social resilience can provide  
32 communities with the opportunity to strengthen social relations and political stability and  
33 diversify economic options (Corrigan, 2006). A variety of management actions have been  
34 identified to reinforce social resilience (Corrigan, 2006) including: (1) provide opportunities for  
35 shared leadership roles within government and management systems (Adger *et al.*, 2005; Cinner  
36 *et al.*, 2005; McClanahan *et al.*, 2006); (2) integrate MPAs and networks into broader coastal  
37 management initiatives to increase public awareness and support of management goals (U.S.  
38 Environmental Protection Agency, 2007)<sup>23</sup>; (3) encourage local economic diversification so that  
39 communities are able to deal with environmental, economic, and social changes (Adger *et al.*,  
40 2005; Marschke and Berkes, 2006); (4) encourage stakeholder participation and incorporate their  
41 ecological knowledge in a multi-governance system (Tompkins and Adger, 2004; Granek and

---

<sup>38</sup> <http://coralreefwatch.noaa.gov/>

<sup>39</sup> [www.reefbase.org](http://www.reefbase.org)



1 Brown, 2005; Lebel *et al.*, 2006); and (5) make culturally appropriate conflict resolution  
2 mechanisms accessible to local communities (Christie, 2004; Marschke and Berkes, 2006).

3  
4 Some MPA managers may feel that engaging in supporting human adaptive capacity to climate  
5 change impacts is beyond the scope of their work. However, it is important to recognize that  
6 resource use patterns will change in response to changing environmental conditions. For  
7 example, recent studies suggest that when fishers are meaningfully engaged in natural resource  
8 management decision-making processes, their confidence and social resilience to changes in  
9 resource access can be increased (Marshall, forthcoming). Furthermore, as management is  
10 adapted to address changing conditions, engagement with stakeholders during this process will  
11 help MPA managers build the alliances, knowledge, and influence needed to implement adaptive  
12 approaches (Schuttenberg and Marshall, 2007). For example, national marine sanctuaries have  
13 Sanctuary Advisory Councils composed of a wide range of stakeholder representatives, who  
14 provide advice to sanctuary managers and help develop sanctuary management plans.<sup>40</sup>  
15 Education and outreach programs can help inform the public about effects of climate change on  
16 marine ecosystems and the pressing need to ameliorate existing stressors in coastal waters. Such  
17 programs should be strengthened in national marine sanctuaries and all agencies that manage  
18 MPAs.

## 19 **8.5 Conclusions**

### 20 **8.5.1 Management Considerations**

21 Adaptive management of MPAs in the context of climate change includes the concept that intact  
22 marine ecosystems are more resistant and resilient to change than are degraded systems (Harley  
23 *et al.*, 2006). Marine reserves develop fully functional communities when populations of heavily  
24 fished species recover and less-altered abundance patterns and size structures accrue.

25 Implementing networks of MPAs, including large areas of the ocean, will help “spread the risk”  
26 posed by climate change by protecting multiple replicates of the full range of habitats and  
27 communities within ecosystems (Soto, 2001; Palumbi, 2003; Halpern, 2003; Halpern and  
28 Warner, 2003; Roberts *et al.*, 2003b; Palumbi, 2004; Kaufman *et al.*, 2004; Salm, Done, and  
29 McLeod, 2006).

30  
31 The most effective configuration of MPAs may be a network of highly protected areas and other  
32 types of zones nested within a broader management framework (Botsford, 2005; Hilborn,  
33 Micheli, and De Leo, 2006; Crowder *et al.*, 2006; Almany *et al.*, 2007; Young *et al.*, 2007). As  
34 part of this configuration, areas that are ecologically and physically significant and connected by  
35 currents should be identified and included as a way of enhancing resilience in the context of  
36 climate change. Critical areas to consider include nursery grounds, spawning grounds, areas of  
37 high species diversity, areas that contain a variety of habitat types in close proximity, and  
38 potential climate refugia. At the site level, managers can build resilience to climate change by  
39 protecting marine habitats from direct anthropogenic threats such as pollution, sedimentation,  
40 destructive fishing, and overfishing; ecosystem-based management, rather than single-species or  
41 other less-holistic approaches, will become increasingly important in the context of climate

---

<sup>40</sup> **National Marine Sanctuary Program**, 2-6-2007: National Marine Sanctuaries advisory council's information. NOAA Website, <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/management/ac/welcome.html>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

1 change. The healthier the ecosystem, the greater the potential will be for resistance to—and  
2 recovery from—climate-related disturbances.

3  
4 In designing networks, managers should consider information on areas that may represent  
5 potential refugia from climate change impacts, as well as information on connectivity (current  
6 patterns that support larval replenishment and recovery) among sites that vary in their  
7 sensitivities to climate change. Protection of seascapes creates areas sufficiently large to resist  
8 basic changes to the entire ecosystem (Kaufman *et al.*, 2004). Large reserves may benefit  
9 individual species by enabling them to spend entire adult phases of their life cycle without being  
10 captured and killed, with concomitant increases in reproductive output (Sobel and Dahlgren,  
11 2004) and quality (Berkeley, Chapman, and Sogard, 2004).

12  
13 A key issue for MPA managers concerns achieving the goals and objectives of a local-scale  
14 management plan in the context of larger-scale stressors from atmospheric, terrestrial, and  
15 marine sources (Jameson, Tupper, and Ridley, 2002). Another issue concerns maintaining a  
16 focus on immediate, devastating effects of overexploitation, coastal pollution, and nonindigenous  
17 species as climate change impacts increase in magnitude or frequency over time (Paine, 1993).  
18 Within sites, managers can increase resilience to climate change by managing other  
19 anthropogenic stressors that also degrade ecosystems, such as fishing and overexploitation;  
20 inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants; and habitat damage and destruction. Efforts by  
21 MPA managers to enhance resilience and resistance of marine communities may at least “buy  
22 some time” against threats of climate change by slowing the rate of decline caused by other,  
23 more manageable stressors (Hansen, Biringer, and Hoffman, 2003; Hoffman, 2003; Marshall and  
24 Schuttenberg, 2006).

25  
26 Resilience is also affected by trophic linkages, which are key characteristics maintaining  
27 ecosystem integrity. An approach that has been identified to maintain resilience is the  
28 management of functional groups, specifically herbivores. In some cases, the species that are  
29 necessary for recovery after a phase shift may be different from the species that had previously  
30 maintained the original state (*e.g.*, Bellwood, Hughes, and Hoey, 2006). This highlights the need  
31 to protect the full range of species to maintain resilience and the need for further research on key  
32 species and ecological processes. However, abundant herbivores may not prevent shifts in algal-  
33 coral dominance in coral reef ecosystems (Ledlie *et al.*, 2007), and management for reduced  
34 levels of grazing may be necessary in plant-dominated systems such as kelp forests and seagrass  
35 beds.

36  
37 The challenges of climate change require creative solutions and collaboration among a variety of  
38 stakeholders to generate the necessary finances and support to respond to climate change stress.  
39 Global, regional, and local partnerships across a range of sectors such as agriculture, tourism,  
40 water resource management, conservation, and infrastructure development can help alleviate the  
41 financial burdens of responding to climate change in MPAs. Finally, effective implementation of  
42 the above strategies in support of ecological resilience will only be possible in the presence of  
43 human social resilience.

1 **8.5.2 Research Priorities**

2 The scientific knowledge required to reach general conclusions related to the impact of multiple  
3 stressors at community and ecosystem levels is for the most part absent for marine systems, and  
4 this gap impedes the ability of MPA managers to take management actions that have predictable  
5 outcomes. Existing levels of uncertainty will only increase as impacts of climate change  
6 strengthen. Within marine communities, temperature changes may result in new species  
7 assemblages and biological interactions that affect ecological processes such as productivity,  
8 nutrient fluxes, energy flow, and trophic webs. How such outcomes affect trophic links and other  
9 biological processes within communities is not clear, and is a high-priority area of research.

10  
11 The extent of larval recruitment from local and longer-distance sources has been and must  
12 remain an active area of modeling and empirical investigations. Additional research will be  
13 required to better understand where and how far larvae travel in various marine ecosystems, to  
14 improve our understanding of where to implement MPAs and MPA networks.

15  
16 The ability of corals to adapt or acclimatize to increasing seawater temperature is largely  
17 unknown (Berkelmans and van Oppen, 2006). Further, corals are sensitive to light and ultraviolet  
18 radiation, and thermal stress exacerbates this sensitivity (Hoegh-Guldberg *et al.*, 2007). The roles  
19 of temperature, light, holobiont characteristics and history, and other factors in coral bleaching  
20 are research topics of paramount importance.

21  
22 Because of the greater solubility of CO<sub>2</sub> in cooler waters and at depth, reefs at the latitudinal  
23 margins of coral reef development (*e.g.*, Florida Keys and Hawaiian Islands) and deep-water  
24 coral formations may show the most rapid and dramatic response to changing pH. Further  
25 research is needed on impacts of high concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub> in the oceans, possible acclimation  
26 or evolution of organisms in response to changes in ocean chemistry, and how management  
27 might respond (The Royal Society, 2005).

28  
29 While at present there is no clear indication that ocean circulation patterns have changed  
30 (Bindoff *et al.*, 2007), modifications could have large effects within and among ecosystems  
31 through impacts on ecosystem and community connectivity in terms of both nutrients and  
32 recruits. Further modeling efforts may elucidate implications of potential changes in ocean  
33 circulation to MPA management.

34  
35 Because pollution is usually more local in scope, it historically could be managed within  
36 individual MPAs; however, the addition of climate change stressors such as increased oceanic  
37 temperature, decreased pH, and greater fluctuations in salinity present greater challenges.  
38 Research in coral genomics may provide diagnostic tools for identifying stressors in coral reefs  
39 and other marine communities (*e.g.*, Edge *et al.*, 2005).

40  
41 Research on marine ecosystems and climate change impacts continues to be a high-priority need,  
42 particularly in the context of using management actions as experiments in an adaptive-  
43 management framework. Although there is considerable research on physical impacts of climate  
44 change in marine systems (IPCC, 2007a), research on biological effects and ecological  
45 consequences is not as well developed.

46

## 1 **8.6 References**

- 2 **Adger**, W.N., 2000: Social and ecological resilience: are they related? *Progress in Human*  
3 *Geography*, **24(3)**, 347-364.
- 4 **Adger**, W.N., T.P. Hughes, C. Folke, S.R. Carpenter, and J. Rockstroem, 2005: Social-  
5 ecological resilience to coastal disasters. *Science*, **309(5737)**, 1036-1039.
- 6 **Agardy**, T., P. Bridgewater, M.P. Crosby, J. Day, P.K. Dayton, R. Kenchington, D. Laffoley, P.  
7 McConney, P.A. Murray, J.E. Parks, and L. Peau, 2003: Dangerous targets? Unresolved  
8 issues and ideological clashes around marine protected areas. *Aquatic Conservation:*  
9 *Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*, **13(4)**, 353-367.
- 10 **Agardy**, T.S., 1997: *Marine Protected Areas and Ocean Conservation*. R.G. Landes Company  
11 and Academic Press, Austin, TX, pp. 1-244.
- 12 **Airamé**, S., J.E. Dugan, K.D. Lafferty, H. Leslie, D.A. McArdle, and R.R. Warner, 2003:  
13 Applying ecological criteria to marine reserve design: a case study from the California  
14 Channel Islands. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S170-S184.
- 15 **Albritton**, D.L. and L. G. M. Filho, 2001: Technical summary, In: *Climate Change 2001: the*  
16 *Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the*  
17 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M.  
18 Noguier, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson (eds.)]. Cambridge  
19 University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- 20 **Allison**, G.W., S.D. Gaines, J. Lubchenco, and H.P. Possingham, 2003: Ensuring persistence of  
21 marine reserves: catastrophes require adopting an insurance factor. *Ecological*  
22 *Applications*, **13(1)**, S8-S24.
- 23 **Allison**, G.W., J. Lubchenco, and M.H. Carr, 1998: Marine reserves are necessary but not  
24 sufficient for marine conservation. *Ecological Applications*, **8 Supplement- Ecosystem**  
25 **Management for Sustainable Marine Fisheries(1)**, S79-S92.
- 26 **Almany**, G.R., M.L. Berumen, S.R. Therrold, S. Planes, and G.P. Jones, 2007: Local  
27 replenishment of coral reef fish populations in a marine reserve. *Science*, **316(5825)**, 742-  
28 744.
- 29 **Andrew**, N.L., Y. Agatsuma, E. Ballesteros, A.G. Bazhin, E.P. Creaser, D.K.A. Barnes, L.W.  
30 Botsford, A. Bradbury, A. Campbell, and J.D. Dixon, 2002: Status and management of  
31 world sea urchin fisheries. *Oceanography and Marine Biology: an Annual review*, **40**,  
32 343-425.

- 1 **Aronson, R.B.** and W.F. Precht, 2006: Conservation, precaution, and Caribbean reefs. *Coral*  
2 *Reefs*, **25**, 441-450.
- 3 **Ault, J.S., J.A. Bohnsack,** and G.A. Meester, 1998: A retrospective (1979-1996) multispecies  
4 assessment of coral reef fish stocks in the Florida Keys. *Fishery Bulletin*, **96(3)**, 395-414.
- 5 **Bakun, A.,** 1990: Global climate change and intensification of coastal ocean upwelling. *Science*,  
6 **247**, 198-201.
- 7 **Baldwin, A., M. Egnotovitch, M. Ford,** and W. Platt, 2001: Regeneration in fringe mangrove  
8 forests damaged by Hurricane Andrew. *Plant Ecology*, **157(2)**, 151-164.
- 9 **Baltz, D.M.** and P.B. Moyle, 1993: Invasion resistance to introduced species by a native  
10 assemblage of California stream fishes. *Ecological Applications*, **3**, 246-255.
- 11 **Barr, B.W.,** 2004: A seamless network of ocean parks and marine sanctuaries: The National  
12 Park Service/National Marine Sanctuary partnership. *The George Wright Forum*, **21**, 42-  
13 48.
- 14 **Barry, J.P., C.H. Baxter, R.D. Sagarin,** and S.E. Gilman, 1995: Climate-related, long-term  
15 faunal changes in a California rocky intertidal community. *Science*, **267(5198)**, 672-675.
- 16 **Beger, M., G.P. Jones,** and P.L. Munday, 2003: Conservation of coral reef biodiversity: a  
17 comparison of reserve selection procedures for corals and fishes. *Biological*  
18 *Conservation*, **111(1)**, 53-62.
- 19 **Behrens, M.D.** and K.D. Lafferty, 2004: Effects of marine reserves and urchin disease on  
20 southern Californian rocky reef communities. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **279**, 129-  
21 139.
- 22 **Bell, R.E., M. Studinger, C.A. Shuman, M.A. Fahnestock,** and I. Joughin, 2007: Large subglacial  
23 lakes in East Antarctica at the onset of fast-flowing ice streams. *Nature*, **445**, 904-907.
- 24 **Bellwood, D.R.** and T.P. Hughes, 2001: Regional-scale assembly rules and biodiversity of coral  
25 reefs. *Science*, **292(5521)**, 1532-1534.
- 26 **Bellwood, D.R., T.P. Hughes, C. Folke,** and M. Nystroem, 2004: Confronting the coral reef  
27 crisis. *Nature*, **429(6994)**, 827-833.
- 28 **Bellwood, D.R., T.P. Hughes,** and A.S. Hoey, 2006: Sleeping functional group drives coral-reef  
29 recovery. *Current Biology*, **16(24)**, 2434-2439.

- 1 **Berkeley**, S.A., C. Chapman, and S.M. Sogard, 2004: Maternal age as a determinant of larval  
2 growth and survival in a marine fish, *Sebastes melanops*. *Ecology*, **85(5)**, 1258-1264.
- 3 **Berkelmans**, R. and M.J.H. van Oppen, 2006: The role of zooxanthellae in the thermal tolerance  
4 of corals: a "nugget of hope" for coral reefs in an era of climate change. *Proceedings of*  
5 *the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, **273(1599)**, 2305-2312.
- 6 **Bertness**, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay, 2001: *Marine Community Ecology*. Sinauer  
7 Associates, Sunderland, MA, pp. 1-550.
- 8 **Bindoff**, N.L., J. Willebrand, V. Artale, A. Cazenave, J. Gregory, S. Gulev, K. Hanawa, C. Le  
9 Quere, S. Levitus, Y. Nojiri, C. K. Shum, L. D. Talley, and A. Unnikrishnan, 2007:  
10 Observations: Oceanic Climate Change and Sea Level, In: *Climate Change 2007: the*  
11 *Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment*  
12 *Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Quin, M.  
13 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
14 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp.  
15 385-432.
- 16 **Black**, K., P. Moran, D. Burrage, and G. De'ath, 1995: Association of low-frequency currents  
17 and crown-of-thorns starfish outbreaks. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **125(1)**, 185-  
18 194.
- 19 **Black**, K.P., P.J. Moran, and L.S. Hammond, 1991: Numerical models show coral reefs can be  
20 self-seeding. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **69**, 55-65.
- 21 **Boessenkool**, K.P., I.R. Hall, H. Elderfield, and I. Yashayaev, 2007: North Atlantic climate and  
22 deep-ocean flow speed changes during the last 230 years. *Geophysical Research Letters*,  
23 **34(L13614)**, 1-6.
- 24 **Botsford**, L.W., 2005: Potential contributions of marine reserves to sustainable fisheries: recent  
25 modeling results. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **76(2)**, 245-260.
- 26 **Botsford**, L.W., F. Micheli, and A. Hastings, 2003: Principles for the design of marine reserves.  
27 *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S25-S31.
- 28 **Boyett**, H.V., D.G. Bourne, and B.L. Willis, 2007: Elevated temperature and light enhance  
29 progression and spread of black band disease on staghorn corals of the Great Barrier.  
30 *Marine Biology*, **151(5)**.
- 31 **Breitbart**, D.L. and G. F. Riedel, 2005: Multiple stressors in marine systems, In: *Marine*  
32 *Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and  
33 L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 167-182.

- 1 **Buddemeier**, R.W., J.A. Kleypas, and R. Aronson, 2004: *Coral Reefs and Global Climate*  
2 *Change: Potential Contributions of Climate Change to Stresses on Coral Reef*  
3 *Ecosystems*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change.
- 4 **Burton**, G.A., Jr. and R. Pitt, 2001: *Stormwater Effects Handbook: a Toolbox for Watershed*  
5 *Mangers, Scientists and Engineers*. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, pp.1-911.
- 6 **Cabanes**, C., A. Cazenave, and C. Le Provost, 2001: Sea level rise during past 40 years  
7 determined from satellite and in situ observations. *Science*, **294(5543)**, 840-842.
- 8 **Caldeira**, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2003: Anthropogenic carbon and ocean pH. *Nature*, **425(6956)**,  
9 365-365.
- 10 **Caldeira**, K. and M.E. Wickett, 2005: Ocean model predictions of chemistry changes from  
11 carbon dioxide emissions to the atmosphere and ocean. *Journal of Geophysical Research*,  
12 **110(C09S04)**.
- 13 **Carlton**, J.T., 1996: Biological invasions and cryptogenic species. *Ecology*, **77(6)**, 1653-1655.
- 14 **Carlton**, J.T., 2000: Global change and biological invasions in the oceans, In: *Invasive Species*  
15 *in a Changing World*, [Mooney, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington,  
16 DC, pp. 31-53.
- 17 **Carpenter**, S.R., N.F. Caraco, D.L. Correll, R.W. Howarth, A.N. Sharpley, and V.H. Smith,  
18 1998: Nonpoint pollution of surface waters with phosphorus and nitrogen. *Ecological*  
19 *Applications*, **8(3)**, 559-568.
- 20 **Carr**, M.H., J.E. Neigel, J.A. Estes, S. Andelman, R.R. Warner, and J.L. Largier, 2003:  
21 Comparing marine and terrestrial ecosystems: Implications for the design of coastal  
22 marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S90-S107.
- 23 **Chen**, J.L., C.R. Wilson, and B.D. Tapley, 2006: Satellite gravity measurements confirm  
24 accelerated melting of Greenland ice sheet. *Science*, **313**, 1958-1960.
- 25 **Cho**, L., 2005: Marine protected areas: a tool for integrated coastal management in Belize.  
26 *Ocean & Coastal Management*, **48(11)**, 932-947.
- 27 **Christie**, P., 2004: Marine protected areas as biological successes and social failures in  
28 Southeast Asia. *American Fisheries Society Symposium*, **42**, 155-164.
- 29 **Cinner**, J., M.J. Marnane, T.R. McClanahan, and G.R. Almany, 2005: Periodic closures as  
30 adaptive coral reef management in the Indo-Pacific. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 31.

- 1 **Coe, J.M. and D. Rogers, 1997: *Marine Debris: Sources, Impacts, and Solutions*. Springer-**  
2 **Verlag, New York, NY, pp. 1-432.**
- 3 **Condrey, R. and D. Fuller, 1992: The US Gulf shrimp fishery, In: *Climate Variability, Climate***  
4 ***Change, and Fisheries*, [Glantz, M.F. (ed.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,**  
5 **UK, pp. 89-119.**
- 6 **Corrigan, C., 2006: *The Marine Learning Partnership: Effective Design and Management of***  
7 ***Tropical Marine Protected Area Networks Through Cross-Institutional Learning*. Year**  
8 **End Report, The Nature Conservancy.**
- 9 **Costanza, R., R. d'Arge, R. de Groot, S. Farber, M. Grasso, B. Hannon, K. Limburg, S. Naeem,**  
10 **R.V. O'Neill, J. Paruelo, R.G. Raskin, P. Sutton, and M. van den Belt, 1997: The value of**  
11 **the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. *Nature*, **387(6630)**, 253-260.**
- 12 **Cowen, R.K., C.B. Paris, D.B. Olson, and J.L. Fortuna, 2003: The role of long distance dispersal**  
13 **versus local retention in replenishing marine populations. *Gulf and Caribbean Research***  
14 ***Supplement*, **14**, 129-137.**
- 15 **Cowen, R.K., C.B. Paris, and A. Srinivasan, 2006: Scaling of connectivity in marine**  
16 **populations. *Science*, **311(5760)**, 522-527.**
- 17 **Cowie-Haskell, B.D. and J.M. Delaney, 2003: Integrating science into the design of the**  
18 **Tortugas Ecological Reserve. *Marine Technology Society Journal*, **37(1)**, 68-79.**
- 19 **Crossett, K.M., T.J. Culliton, P.C. Wiley, and T.R. Goodspeed, 2004: *Population Trends Along***  
20 ***the Coastal United States: 1980-2008*. National Oceanographic and Atmospheric**  
21 **Administration, Washington, DC, pp.1-54.**
- 22 **Crowder, L.B., S.J. Lyman, W.F. Figueira, and J. Priddy, 2000: Source-sink population**  
23 **dynamics and the problem of siting marine reserves. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **66(3)**,**  
24 **799-820.**
- 25 **Crowder, L.B., G. Osherenko, O.R. Young, S. Airamé, E.A. Norse, N. Baron, J.C. Day, F.**  
26 **Douvere, C.N. Ehler, B.S. Halpern, S.J. Langdon, K.L. McLeod, J.C. Ogden, R.E. Peach,**  
27 **A.A. Rosenberg, and J.A. Wilson, 2006: Resolving mismatches in U.S. ocean**  
28 **governance. *Science*, **313(5787)**, 617-618.**
- 29 **Curry, R., B. Dickson, and I. Yashayaev, 2003: A change in the freshwater balance in the**  
30 **Atlantic Ocean over the past four decades. *Nature*, **426**, 826-829.**
- 31 **Curry, R. and C. Mauritzen, 2005: Dilution of the northern atlantic current in recent decades.**  
32 ***Science*, **308(5729)**, 1772-1774.**



- 1 **Davis**, G.E., 2004: Maintaining unimpaired ocean resources and experiences: a National Park  
2 Service ocean stewardship strategy. *The George Wright Forum*, **21**, 22-41.
- 3 **Davis**, G.E., L.L. Loope, C.T. Roman, G. Smith, and J.T. Tilmant, 1994: *Assessment of*  
4 *Hurricane Andrew Impacts on Natural and Archeological Resources of Big Cypress*  
5 *National Preserve, Biscayne National Park, and Everglades National Park*. National  
6 Park Service, pp.1-158.
- 7 **Dayton**, P.K., S. Thrush, and F.C. Coleman, 2002: *Ecological Effects of Fishing in Marine*  
8 *Ecosystems of the United States*. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp. 1-45.
- 9 **Delaney**, J.M., 2003: Community capacity building in the designation of the Tortugas Ecological  
10 Reserve. *Gulf and Caribbean Research*, **12(2)**, 163-169.
- 11 **Denny**, M.W., 1988: *Biology and the Mechanics of the Wave-Swept Environment*. Princeton  
12 University Press, Princeton, NJ, pp. 1-218.
- 13 **Dickson**, B., I. Yashayaev, J. Meincke, B. Turrell, S. Dye, and J. Holfort, 2002: Rapid  
14 freshening of the deep North Atlantic Ocean over the past four decades. *Nature*, **(416)**,  
15 832-837.
- 16 **Done**, T. and R. Jones, 2006: Tropical coastal ecosystems and climate change prediction: global  
17 and local risks, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*,  
18 [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)].  
19 American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC.
- 20 **Done**, T.J. and R.E. Reichelt, 1998: Integrated coastal zone and fisheries ecosystem  
21 management: generic goals and performance indices. *Ecological Applications*, **8(1)**,  
22 S110-S118.
- 23 **Donner**, S.D., T.R. Knutson, and M. Oppenheimer, 2007: Model-based assessment of the role of  
24 human-induced climate change in the 2005 Caribbean coral bleaching event. *Proceedings*  
25 *of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(13)**, 5483-  
26 5488.
- 27 **Donner**, S.D., W.J. Skirving, C.M. Little, M. Oppenheimer, and O. Hoegh-Guldberg, 2005:  
28 Global assessment of coral bleaching and required rates of adaptation under climate  
29 change. *Global Change Biology*, **11(12)**, 2251.
- 30 **Douglas**, A.E., 2003: Coral bleaching--how and why? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **46(4)**, 385-392.
- 31 **Dulvy**, N.K., Y. Sadovy, and J.D. Reynolds, 2003: Extinction vulnerability in marine  
32 populations. *Fish and Fisheries*, **4(1)**, 25-64.

- 1 **Edge**, S.E., M.B. Morgan, D.F. Gleason, and T.W. Snell, 2005: Development of a coral cDNA  
2 array to examine gene expression profiles in *Montastraea faveolata* exposed to  
3 environmental stress. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **51**, 507-523.
- 4 **Eng**, C.T., J.N. Paw, and F.Y. Guarin, 1989: Environmental impact of aquaculture and the  
5 effects of pollution on coastal aquaculture development in southeast Asia. *Marine*  
6 *Pollution Bulletin*, **20(7)**, 335-343.
- 7 **Engel**, J. and R. Kvitek, 1998: Effects of otter trawling on a benthic Community in Monterey  
8 Bay National Marine Sanctuary. *Conservation Biology*, **12(6)**, 1204-1214.
- 9 **Engie**, K. and T. Klinger, 2007: Modeling passive dispersal through a large estuarine system to  
10 evaluate marine reserve network connections. *Estuaries and coasts*, **30(2)**, 201-213.
- 11 **Estes**, J.A., 2005: Carnivory and trophic connectivity in kelp forests, In: *Large Carnivores and*  
12 *the Conservation of Biodiversity*, [Ray, J.C., K.H. Redford, R.S. Steneck, and J. Berger  
13 (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 61-81.
- 14 **Fabricius**, K.E. and G. De'ath, 2004: Identifying ecological change and its causes: a case study  
15 on coral reefs. *Ecological Applications*, **14(5)**, 1448-1465.
- 16 **Feely**, R.A., C.L. Sabine, K. Lee, W. Berelson, J. Kleypas, V.J. Fabry, and F.J. Millero, 2004:  
17 Impact of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> on the CaCO<sub>3</sub> system in the oceans. *Science*, **305(5682)**,  
18 362-366.
- 19 **Fernandes**, L., J. Day, A. Lewis, S. Slegers, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, D. Cameron, B. Jago, J.  
20 Hall, D. Lowe, J. Tanzer, V. Chadwick, L. Thompson, K. Gorman, M. Simmons, B.  
21 Barnett, K. Sampson, G. De'ath, B. Mapstone, H. Marsh, H. Possingham, I. Ball, T.  
22 Ward, K. Dobbs, J. Aumend, D. Slater, and K. Stapleton, 2005: Establishing  
23 representative no-take areas in the Great Barrier Reef: large-scale implementation of  
24 theory on Marine Protected Areas. *Conservation Biology*, **19(6)**, 1733-1744.
- 25 **Fields**, P.A., J.B. Graham, R.H. Rosenblatt, and G.N. Somero, 1993: Effects of expected global  
26 climate change on marine faunas. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **8**, 361-367.
- 27 **Fitt**, W.K., B.E. Brown, M.E. Warner, and R.P. Dunne, 2001: Coral bleaching: interpretation of  
28 thermal tolerance limits and thermal thresholds in tropical corals. *Coral Reefs*, **20(1)**, 51-  
29 65.
- 30 **Fosså**, J.H., P.B. Mortensen, and D.M. Furevik, 2002: The deep-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* in  
31 Norwegian waters: distribution and fishery impacts. *Hydrobiologia*, **471**, 1-12.

- 1 **Frank**, K.T., B. Petrie, J.S. Choi, and W.C. Leggett, 2005: Trophic cascades in a formerly cod-  
2 dominated ecosystem. *Science*, **308(5728)**, 1621-1623.
- 3 **Friedlander**, A., J.S. Nowlis, J.A. Sanchez, R. Appeldoorn, P. Usseglio, C. McCormick, S.  
4 Bejarano, and A. Mitchell-Chui, 2003: Designing effective Marine Protected Areas in  
5 Seaflower biosphere reserve, Colombia, based on biological and sociological  
6 information. *Conservation Biology*, **17(6)**, 1769-1784.
- 7 **Galbraith**, H., R. Jones, R. Park, J. Clough, S. Herrod-Julius, B. Harrington, and G. Page, 2002:  
8 Global climate change and sea level rise: potential losses of intertidal habitat for  
9 shorebirds. *Waterbirds*, **25(2)**, 173-183.
- 10 **Gardner**, T.A., I.M. Cote, J.A. Gill, A. Grant, and A.R. Watkinson, 2003: Long-term region-  
11 wide declines in Caribbean corals. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 958-960.
- 12 **Gardner**, T.A., I.M. Cote, J.A. Gill, A. Grant, and A.R. Watkinson, 2005: Hurricanes and  
13 Caribbean coral reefs: impacts, recovery patterns, and role in long-term decline. *Ecology*,  
14 **86(1)**, 174-184.
- 15 **Gattuso**, J.P., M. Frankignoulle, and R. Wollast, 1998: Carbon and carbonate metabolism in  
16 coastal aquatic ecosystems. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **29**, 405-434.
- 17 **Gerber**, L.R. and S.S. Heppell, 2004: The use of demographic sensitivity analysis in marine  
18 species conservation planning. *Biological Conservation*, **120(1)**, 121-128.
- 19 **Gleason**, D.F., P.J. Edmunds, and R.D. Gates, 2006: Ultraviolet radiation effects on the behavior  
20 and recruitment of larvae from the reef coral *Porites astreoides*. *Marine Biology*, **148(3)**,  
21 503-512.
- 22 **Gleason**, D.F. and G.M. Wellington, 1993: Ultraviolet radiation and coral bleaching. *Nature*,  
23 **365(836)**, 838.
- 24 **Glenn**, R.P. and T.L. Pugh, 2006: Epizootic shell disease in American lobster (*Homarus*  
25 *americanus*) in Massachusetts coastal waters: interactions of temperature, maturity, and  
26 intermolt duration. *Journal of Crustacean Biology*, **26(4)**, 639-645.
- 27 **Glynn**, P.W., 1991: Coral reef bleaching in the 1980s and possible connections with global  
28 warming. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **6(6)**, 175-179.
- 29 **Glynn**, P.W., 1993: Coral reef bleaching: ecological perspectives. *Coral Reefs*, **12(1)**, 1-17.
- 30 **Goldberg**, J. and C. Wilkinson, 2004: Global threats to coral reefs: coral bleaching, global  
31 climate change, disease, predator plagues, and invasive species, In: *Status of Coral Reefs*

- 1            *of the World: 2004*, [Wilkinson, C. (ed.)]. Australian Institute of Marine Science,  
2            Townsville, Queensland, pp. 67-92.
- 3    **Graham**, N.A.J., R.D. Evans, and G.R. Russ, 2003: The effects of marine reserve protection on  
4            the trophic relationships of reef fishes on the Great Barrier Reef. *Environmental*  
5            *Conservation*, **30(2)**, 200-208.
- 6    **Granek**, E.F. and M.A. Brown, 2005: Co-management approach to marine conservation in  
7            Moheli, Comoros Islands. *Conservation Biology*, **19(6)**, 1724-1732.
- 8    **Greene**, C.H. and A.J. Pershing, 2007: Climate drives sea change. *Science*, **315(5815)**, 1084-  
9            1085.
- 10   **Grigg**, R.W., S.J. Dollar, A. Huppert, B.D. Causey, K. Andrews, W.L. Kruczynski, W.F. Precht,  
11            S.L. Miller, R.B. Aronson, and J.F. Bruno, 2005: Reassessing U.S. coral reefs. *Science*,  
12            **308(5729)**, 1740-1742.
- 13   **Grober-Dunsmore**, R., L. Wooninck, and C. Wahle, in press: Vertical zoning in marine  
14            protected areas: ecological considerations for balancing pelagic fishing with conservation  
15            of benthic communities. *Fisheries*.
- 16   **Gucinski**, H., R.T. Lackey, and B.C. Spence, 1990: Global climate change: policy implications  
17            for fisheries. *Fisheries*, **15(6)**, 33-38.
- 18   **Gunderson**, L.H., 2000: Resilience in theory and practice. *Annual Review of Ecology and*  
19            *Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 20   **Hallock**, P., 2005: Global change and modern coral reefs: new opportunities to understand  
21            shallow-water carbonate depositional processes. *Sedimentary Geology*, **175(1-4)**, 19-33.
- 22   **Halpern**, B.S., 2003: The impact of marine reserves: do reserves work and does reserve size  
23            matter? *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S117-S137.
- 24   **Halpern**, B.S. and K. Cottenie, 2007: Little evidence for climate effects on local-scale structure  
25            and dynamics of California kelp forest communities. *Global Change Biology*, **13(1)**, 236-  
26            251.
- 27   **Halpern**, B.S., H.M. Regan, H.P. Possingham, and M.A. McCarthy, 2006: Accounting for  
28            uncertainty in marine reserve design. *Ecological Letters*, **9(1)**, 2-11.
- 29   **Halpern**, B.S. and R.R. Warner, 2003: Matching marine reserve design to reserve objectives.  
30            *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological Sciences*, **270(1527)**,  
31            1871-1878.

- 1 **Hansen, L., J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman, 2003:** *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building*  
2 *Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems.* [Hansen, L.J., J.L.  
3 Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman (eds.)]. World Wildlife Foundation, Washington, DC, pp. 1-  
4 244.
- 5 **Harley, C.D.G., R. Hughes, K.M. Hultgren, B.G. Miner, C.J.B. Sorte, C.S. Thornber, L.F.**  
6 **Rodriguez, L. Tomanek, and S.L. Williams, 2006:** The impacts of climate change in  
7 coastal marine systems. *Ecology Letters*, **9(2)**, 228-241.
- 8 **Harvell, C.D., K. Kim, J.M. Burkholder, R.R. Colwell, P.R. Epstein, D.J. Grimes, E.E.**  
9 **Hofmann, E.K. Lipp, A. Osterhaus, and R.M. Overstreet, 1999:** Emerging marine  
10 diseases--climate links and anthropogenic factors. *Science*, **285**, 1505-1510.
- 11 **Harvell, C.D., C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.**  
12 **Samuel, 2002:** Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota.  
13 *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 14 **Harvell, D., K. Kim, C. Quirolo, J. Weir, and G. Smith, 2001:** Coral bleaching and disease:  
15 contributors to 1998 mass mortality in *Briareum asbestinum* (*Octocorallia, Gorgonacea*).  
16 *Hydrobiologia*, **460(1)**, 97-104.
- 17 **Hastings, A. and L.W. Botsford, 2003:** Comparing designs of marine reserves for fisheries and  
18 for biodiversity. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S65-S70.
- 19 **Hatcher, B.G. and A.W.D. Larkum, 1983:** An experimental analysis of factors controlling the  
20 standing crop of the epilithic algal community on a coral reef. *Journal of Experimental*  
21 *Marine Biology and Ecology*, **69(1)**, 61-84.
- 22 **Helmuth, B., 2002:** How do we measure the environment? Linking intertidal thermal physiology  
23 and ecology through biophysics. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **42(4)**, 837-845.
- 24 **Hiddink, J.G., S. Jennings, and M.J. Kaiser, 2006:** Indicators of the ecological impact of bottom-  
25 trawl disturbance on seabed communities. *Ecosystems*, **9(7)**, 1190-1199.
- 26 **Hilborn, R., F. Micheli, and G.A. De Leo, 2006:** Integrating marine protected areas with catch  
27 regulation. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **63(3)**, 642-649.
- 28 **Hixon, M.A. and B.N. Tissot, 2007:** Comparison of trawled vs untrawled mud seafloor  
29 assemblages of fishes and macroinvertebrates at Coquille Bank, Oregon. *Journal of*  
30 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **344**, 23-24.

- 1 **Hockey**, P.A.R. and G.M. Branch, 1994: Conserving marine biodiversity on the African coast:  
2 Implications of a terrestrial perspective. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater*  
3 *Ecosystems*, **4(4)**, 345-362.
- 4 **Hoegh-Guldberg**, O., 1999: Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral  
5 reefs. *Marine & Freshwater Research*, **50(8)**, 839-866.
- 6 **Hoegh-Guldberg**, O., K. Anthony, R. Berkelmans, S. Dove, K. Fabricius, J. Lough, P. A.  
7 Marshall, M. J. H. van Oppen, A. Negri, and B. Willis, 2007: Vulnerability of reef-  
8 building corals on the Great Barrier Reef to Climate Change, In: *Climate Change and the*  
9 *Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J.E. and P.A. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier Reef Marine  
10 Park Authority & Australian Greenhouse Office.
- 11 **Hoffman**, J., 2003: Designing reserves to sustain temperate marine ecosystems in the face of  
12 global climate change, In: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building Resistance and*  
13 *Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*, [Hansen, L.J., J.L. Biringer, and J.R.  
14 Hoffman (eds.)]. WWF Climate Change Program, Washington, DC, pp. 123-155.
- 15 **Holling**, C.S., 1995: What barriers? What bridges?, In: *Barriers and Bridges to the Renewal of*  
16 *Ecosystems and Institutions*, [Gunderson, L.H., C.S. Holling, and S.S. Light (eds.)].  
17 Columbia University Press, New York, NY, pp. 3-34.
- 18 **Hughes**, T.P., A.H. Baird, D.R. Bellwood, M. Card, S.R. Connolly, C. Folke, R. Grosberg, O.  
19 Hoegh-Guldberg, J.B.C. Jackson, J. Kleypas, J.M. Lough, P. Marshall, M. Nystrom, S.R.  
20 Palumbi, J.M. Pandolfi, B. Rosen, and J. Roughgarden, 2003: Climate change, human  
21 impacts, and the resilience of coral reefs. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 929-933.
- 22 **Hughes**, T.P., D.R. Bellwood, C. Folke, R.S. Steneck, and J. Wilson, 2005: New paradigms for  
23 supporting the resilience of marine ecosystems. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **20(7)**,  
24 380-386.
- 25 **Husebø**, Å., L. Nøttestad, J.H. Fosså, D.M. Furevik, and S.B. Jørgensen, 2002: Distribution and  
26 abundance of fish in deep-sea coral habitats. *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1)**, 91-99.
- 27 **Hyrenbach**, K.D., K.A. Forney, and P.K. Dayton, 2000: Marine protected areas and ocean basin  
28 management. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems*, **10(6)**, 437-  
29 458.
- 30 **IPCC**, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Contribution of*  
31 *Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on*  
32 *Climate Change*. [McCarthy, J.J., O.F. Canziani, N.A. Leary, D.J. Dokken, and K.S.  
33 White (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

- 1 **IPCC**, 2007a: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working*  
2 *Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate*  
3 *Change*. [Solomon, S., D. Quin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M.  
4 Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United  
5 Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp. 1-996.
- 6 **IPCC**, 2007b: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and*  
7 *Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
8 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L., O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof,  
9 P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,  
10 UK, pp. 7-22.
- 11 **IPCC**, 2007c: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis.*  
12 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
13 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z.  
14 Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. Cambridge  
15 University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp. 1-21.
- 16 **Iwama**, G.K., 1991: Interactions between aquaculture and the environment. *Critical Reviews in*  
17 *Environmental Control*, **21(2)**, 177-216.
- 18 **Jackson**, J.B.C., M.X. Kirby, W.H. Berger, K.A. Bjorndal, L.W. Botsford, B.J. Bourque, R.H.  
19 Bradbury, R. Cooke, J. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, T.P. Hughes, S. Kidwell, C.B. Lange, H.S.  
20 Lenihan, J.M. Pandolfi, C.H. Peterson, R.S. Steneck, M.J. Tegner, and R.R. Warner,  
21 2001: Historical overfishing and the recent collapse of coastal ecosystems. *Science*, **293**,  
22 629-638.
- 23 **Jameson**, S.C., M.H. Tupper, and J.M. Ridley, 2002: The three screen doors: can marine"  
24 protected" areas be effective? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **44(11)**, 1177-1183.
- 25 **Jones**, G.P., M.J. Milicich, M.J. Emslie, and C. Lunow, 1999: Self-recruitment in a coral reef  
26 fish population. *Nature*, **402(6763)**, 802-804.
- 27 **Jones**, G.P., S. Planes, and S.R. Thorrold, 2005: Coral reef fish larvae settle close to home.  
28 *Current Biology*, **15(14)**, 1314-1318.
- 29 **Jonsson**, L.G., P.G. Nilsson, F. Floruta, and T. Lundaelv, 2004: Distributional patterns of macro-  
30 and megafauna associated with a reef of the cold-water coral *Lophelia pertusa* on the  
31 Swedish west coast. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **284**, 163-171.
- 32 **Kaiser**, M.J., 2005: Are marine protected areas a red herring or fisheries panacea? *Canadian*  
33 *Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, **62(5)**, 1194-1199.

- 1 **Kaufman, L., J. B. C. Jackson, E. Sala, P. Chisolm, E. D. Gomez, C. Peterson, R. V. Salm, and**  
2 **G. Llewellyn, 2004: Restoring and maintaining marine ecosystem function, In: *Defying***  
3 ***Ocean's End*, [Glover, L.K. and S.A. Earle (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp.**  
4 **165-181.**
- 5 **Kelleher, G., C. Bleakley, and S. Wells, 1995: A global system of Marine Protected Areas. *Vols***  
6 ***I to IV*.**
- 7 **Keller, B.D. and B.D. Causey, 2005: Linkages between the Florida Keys National Marine**  
8 **Sanctuary and the South Florida Ecosystem Restoration Initiative. *Ocean & Coastal***  
9 ***Management*, **48(11-12)**, 869-900.**
- 10 **Kennedy, V.S., R.R. Twilley, J.A. Kleypas, J.H. Cowan, Jr., and S.R. Hare, 2002: *Coastal and***  
11 ***Marine Ecosystems & Global Climate Change: Potential Effects on U.S. Resources*.**  
12 **Prepared for the Pew Center on Global Climate Change, Pew Center on Global Climate**  
13 **Change, Arlington, VA.**
- 14 **Khamer, M., D. Bouya, and C. Ronneau, 2000: Metallic and organic pollutants associated with**  
15 **urban wastewater in the waters and sediments of a Moroccan river. *Water Quality***  
16 ***Research Journal of Canada*, **35**, 147-161.**
- 17 **Kim, K. and C.D. Harvell, 2004: The rise and fall of a six-year coral-fungal epizootic. *American***  
18 ***Naturalist*, **164**, S52-S63.**
- 19 **Kimball, M.E., J.M. Miller, P.E. Whitfield, and J.A. Hare, 2004: Thermal tolerance and**  
20 **potential distribution of invasive lionfish (*Pterois volitans/miles* complex) on the east**  
21 **coast of the United States. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **283**, 269-278.**
- 22 **Kinlan, B.P. and S.D. Gaines, 2003: Propagule dispersal in marine and terrestrial environments:**  
23 **a community perspective. *Ecology*, **84(8)**, 2007-2020.**
- 24 **Kleypas, J.A., R.W. Buddemeier, D. Archer, J.P. Gattuso, C. Langdon, and B.N. Opdyke, 1999:**  
25 **Geochemical consequences of increased atmospheric carbon dioxide on coral reefs.**  
26 ***Science*, **284(5411)**, 118-120.**
- 27 **Kleypas, J.A. and C. Langdon, 2006: Coral reefs and changing seawater chemistry, In: *Coral***  
28 ***Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-**  
29 **Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American Geophysical**  
30 **Union, Washington, DC, pp. 73-110.**
- 31 **Koslow, J.A., K. Gowlett-Holmes, J.K. Lowry, T. O'Hara, G.C.B. Poore, and A. Williams, 2001:**  
32 **Seamount benthic macrofauna off southern Tasmania: community structure and impacts**  
33 **of trawling. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **213**, 111-125.**



- 1 **Krieger**, K.J. and B.L. Wing, 2002: Megafauna associations with deepwater corals (*Primnoa*  
2 *spp.*) in the Gulf of Alaska. *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1-3)**, 83-90.
- 3 **Law**, R. and K. Stokes, 2005: Evolutionary impacts of fishing on target populations, In: *Marine*  
4 *Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and  
5 L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 232-246.
- 6 **Lebel**, L., J.M. Anderies, B. Campbell, C. Folke, S. Hatfield-Dodds, T.P. Hughes, and J. Wilson,  
7 2006: Governance and the capacity to manage resilience in regional social-ecological  
8 systems. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 19.
- 9 **Lecchini**, D., S. Planes, and R. Galzin, 2005: Experimental assessment of sensory modalities of  
10 coral-reef fish larvae in the recognition of their settlement habitat. *Behavioral Ecology*  
11 *and Sociobiology*, **58(1)**, 18-26.
- 12 **Lecchini**, D., J. Shima, B. Banaigs, and R. Galzin, 2005: Larval sensory abilities and  
13 mechanisms of habitat selection of a coral reef fish during settlement. *Oecologia*, **143(2)**,  
14 326-334.
- 15 **Ledlie**, M.H., N.A.J. Graham, J.C. Bythell, S.K. Wilson, S. Jennings, N.V.C. Polunin, and J.W.  
16 Harden, 2007: Phase shifts and the role of herbivory in the resilience of coral reefs. *Coral*  
17 *Reefs*, **26**, 641-653.
- 18 **Lee**, S.Y., 1995: Mangrove outwelling: a review. *Hydrobiologia*, **295(1-3)**, 203-212.
- 19 **Lee**, T.N., C. Rooth, E. Williams, M. McGowan, and A.F. Szmant, 1992: Influence of Florida  
20 current, gyres and wind-driven circulation on transport of larvae and recruitment in the  
21 Florida Keys coral reefs. *Continental Shelf Research*, **12(7/8)**, 971-1002.
- 22 **Leis**, J.M., B.M. Carson-Ewart, and J. Webley, 2002: Settlement behaviour of coral-reef fish  
23 larvae at subsurface artificial-reef moorings. *Marine & Freshwater Research*, **53(2)**, 319-  
24 327.
- 25 **Leis**, J.M. and M. I. McCormick, 2002: The biology, behavior, and ecology of the pelagic, larval  
26 stage of coral reef fishes, Academic Press, San Diego, CA, pp. 171-199.
- 27 **Lesser**, M.P., J.C. Bythell, R.D. Gates, R.W. Johnstone, and O. Hoegh-Guldberg, 2007: Are  
28 infectious diseases really killing corals? Alternative interpretations of the experimental  
29 and ecological data. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **346(1-2)**, 36-  
30 44.
- 31 **Levin**, L.A., 2006: Recent progress in understanding larval dispersal: new directions and  
32 digressions. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **46(3)**, 282-297.

- 1 **Lirman, D.** and P. Fong, 2007: Is proximity to land-based sources of coral stressors an  
2 appropriate measure of risk to coral reefs? An example from the Florida Reef tract.  
3 *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **54**, 779-791.
- 4 **Lotze, H.K.,** H.S. Lenihan, B.J. Bourque, R.H. Bradbury, R.G. Cooke, M.C. Kay, S.M. Kidwell,  
5 M.X. Kirby, C.H. Peterson, and J.B.C. Jackson, 2006: Depletion, degradation, and  
6 recovery potential of estuaries and coastal seas. *Science*, **312(5781)**, 1806-1809.
- 7 **Lovelace, J.K.** and B.F. MacPherson, 1998: *Effects of Hurricane Andrew on Wetlands in*  
8 *Southern Florida and Louisiana*. National Water Summary on Wetland Resources USGS  
9 Water Supply Paper #2425.
- 10 **Lugo-Fernandez, A.,** K.J.P. Deslarzes, J.M. Price, G.S. Boland, and M.V. Morin, 2001:  
11 Inferring probable dispersal of Flower Garden Banks Coral Larvae (Gulf of Mexico)  
12 using observed and simulated drifter trajectories. *Continental Shelf Research*, **21(1)**, 47-  
13 67.
- 14 **Mann, K.H.** and J.R.N. Lazier, 2006: *Dynamics of Marine Ecosystems*. Blackwell Publishing,  
15 Malden, MA, pp. 1-496.
- 16 **Mantua, N.J.,** S.R. Hare, Y. Zhang, J.M. Wallace, and R.C. Francis, 1997: A pacific  
17 interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. *Bulletin of the*  
18 *American Meteorological Society*, **78(6)**, 1069-1079.
- 19 **Marchetti, M.P.,** P.B. Moyle, and R. Levine, 2004: Invasive species profiling? Exploring the  
20 characteristics of non-native fishes across invasion stages in California. *Freshwater*  
21 *Biology*, **49(5)**, 646-661.
- 22 **Marschke, M.J.** and F. Berkes, 2006: Exploring strategies that build livelihood resilience: a case  
23 from Cambodia. *Ecology and Society*, **11(1)**, 42.
- 24 **Marshall, N.,** in press: Can policy perception influence social resilience to policy change?  
25 *Fisheries Research*.
- 26 **Marshall, P.** and H. Schuttenberg, 2006: Adapting coral reef management in the face of climate  
27 change, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T.,  
28 O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American  
29 Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 223-241.
- 30 **McCarty, J.P.,** 2001: Ecological consequences of recent climate change. *Conservation Biology*,  
31 **15(2)**, 320-331.

- 1 **McClanahan**, T.R., M.J. Marnane, J.E. Cinner, and W.E. Kiene, 2006: A comparison of marine  
2 protected areas and alternative approaches to coral-reef management. *Current Biology*,  
3 **16(14)**, 1408-1413.
- 4 **McClanahan**, T.R., N. V. C. Polunin, and T. J. Done, 2002: Resilience of coral reefs, In:  
5 *Resilience and Behaviour of Large-Scale Ecosystems*, [Gunderson, L.H. and L. Pritchard,  
6 Jr. (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 111-163.
- 7 **McCoy**, E.D., H.R. Mushinsky, D. Johnson, and W.E. Meshaka Jr, 1996: Mangrove damage  
8 caused by Hurricane Andrew on the southwestern coast of Florida. *Bulletin of Marine*  
9 *Science*, **59(1)**, 1-8.
- 10 **McGowan**, J.A., D.R. Cayan, L.M. Dorman, and A. Butler, 1998: Climate-ocean variability and  
11 ecosystem response in the Northeast Pacific. *Science*, **281(5374)**, 210-217.
- 12 **McGregor**, H.V., M. Dima, H.W. Fischer, and S. Mulitza, 2007: Rapid 20<sup>th</sup>-century increase in  
13 coastal upwelling off northwest Africa. *Science*, **315(5812)**, 637.
- 14 **McLeod**, E. and R.V. Salm, 2006: *Managing Mangroves for Resilience to Climate Change*. The  
15 World Conservation Union, Gland, Switzerland, pp.1-66.
- 16 **McNaughton**, S.J., 1977: Diversity and stability of ecological communities: a comment on the  
17 role of empiricism in ecology. *The American Naturalist*, **111(979)**, 515-525.
- 18 **McNeil**, B.I., R.J. Matear, and D.J. Barnes, 2004: Coral reef calcification and climate change:  
19 the effect of ocean warming. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **31(22)**, L22309.
- 20 **McPhaden**, M.J. and D. Zhang, 2002: Slowdown of the meridional overturning circulation in the  
21 upper Pacific Ocean. *Nature*, **415(6872)**, 603-608.
- 22 **Michaelidis**, B., B.C. Ouzounis, A. Paleras, and H.O. Portner, 2005: Effects of long-term  
23 moderate hypercapnia on acid-base balance and growth rate in marine mussels *Mytilus*  
24 *galloprovincialis*. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **293**, 109-118.
- 25 **Micheli**, F., B.S. Halpern, L.W. Botsford, and R.R. Warner, 2004: Trajectories and correlates of  
26 community change in no-take marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **14(6)**, 1709-  
27 1723.
- 28 **Millennium Ecosystem Assessment**, 2005: *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Current State*  
29 *and Trends. Findings of the Condition and Trends Working Group*. Island Press,  
30 Washington, DC.

- 1 **Mills**, L.S., M.E. Soulé, and D.F. Doak, 1993: The keystone-species concept in ecology and  
2 conservation. *BioScience*, **43(4)**, 219-224.
- 3 **Moore**, M.V., M.L. Pace, J.R. Mather, P.S. Murdoch, R.W. Howarth, C.L. Folt, C.Y. Chen, H.F.  
4 Hemond, P.A. Flebbe, and C.T. Driscoll, 1997: Potential effects of climate change on  
5 freshwater ecosystems of the New England/Mid-Atlantic Region. *Hydrological*  
6 *Processes*, **11**, 925-947.
- 7 **Mora**, C., S. Andréfouët, M.J. Costello, C. Kranenburg, A. Rollo, J. Veron, K.J. Gaston, and  
8 R.A. Myers, 2006: Coral Reefs and the Global Network of Marine Protected Areas.  
9 *Science*, **312**, 1750-1751.
- 10 **Mosquera**, I., I.M. Cote, S. Jennings, and J.D. Reynolds, 2000: Conservation benefits of marine  
11 reserves for fish populations. *Animal Conservation*, **3(4)**, 321-332.
- 12 **Moyle**, P.B., 1986: Fish introductions into North America: patterns and ecological impact, In:  
13 *Ecology of Biological Invasions of North America and Hawaii*, [Mooney, H.A. and J.A.  
14 Drake (eds.)]. Springer, NY, pp. 27-43.
- 15 **Mullineaux**, L.S. and C.A. Butman, 1991: Initial contact, exploration and attachment of barnacle  
16 (*Balanus amphitrite*) cyprids settling in flow. *Marine Biology*, **110(1)**, 93-103.
- 17 **Mumby**, P.J., C.P. Dahlgren, A.R. Harborne, C.V. Kappel, F. Micheli, D.R. Brumbaugh, K.E.  
18 Holmes, J.M. Mendes, K. Broad, and J.N. Sanchirico, 2006: Fishing, trophic cascades,  
19 and the process of grazing on coral reefs. *Science*, **311(5757)**, 98-101.
- 20 **Mumby**, P.J., A.J. Edwards, J.E. Arias-Gonzalez, K.C. Lindeman, P.G. Blackwell, A. Gall, M.I.  
21 Gorczyńska, A.R. Harborne, C.L. Pescod, H. Renken, C.C.C. Wabnitz, and G. Llewellyn,  
22 2004: Mangroves enhance the biomass of coral reef fish communities in the Caribbean.  
23 *Nature*, **427(6974)**, 533-536.
- 24 **Mumby**, P.J., A.R. Harborne, J. Williams, C.V. Kappel, D.R. Brumbaugh, F. Micheli, K.E.  
25 Holmes, C.P. Dahlgren, C.B. Paris, and P.G. Blackwell, 2007: Trophic cascade facilitates  
26 coral recruitment in a marine reserve. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*  
27 *of the United States of America*, **104(20)**, 8362-8367.
- 28 **Munn**, C.B., 2006: Viruses as pathogens of marine organisms—from bacteria to whales. *Journal*  
29 *of the Marine Biological Association of the UK*, **86(3)**, 453-467.
- 30 **Murawski**, S.A., 1993: Climate change and marine fish distributions: forecasting from historical  
31 analogy. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, **122(5)**, 647-658.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 **Mydlarz, L.D., L.E. Jones, and C.D. Harvell, 2006:** Innate immunity, environmental drivers, and  
2 disease ecology of marine and freshwater invertebrates. *Annual Review of Ecology,*  
3 *Evolution and Systematics*, **37**, 251-288.
- 4 **Nagelkerken, I., 2007:** Are non-estuarine mangroves connected to coral reefs through fish  
5 migration? *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **80(3)**, 595-607.
- 6 **Nagelkerken, I., M. Dorenbosch, W. Verberk, E.C. de la Moriniere, and G. van der Velde, 2000:**  
7 Importance of shallow-water biotopes of a Caribbean bay for juvenile coral reef fishes:  
8 patterns in biotope association, community structure and spatial distribution. *Marine*  
9 *Ecology Progress Series*, **202**, 175-192.
- 10 **National Marine Fisheries Service, 2003:** *Annual Report to Congress on the Status of U.S.*  
11 *Fisheries - 2002.* U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric  
12 Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-156.
- 13 **National Marine Fisheries Service, 2005:** *2005 Report on the Status of U.S. Marine Fish*  
14 *Stocks.* National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-20.
- 15 **National Research Council, 1999:** *Sustaining Marine Fisheries.* National Academy Press,  
16 Washington, DC, pp.1-164.
- 17 **National Research Council, 2001:** *Marine Protected Areas: Tools for Sustaining Ocean*  
18 *Ecosystems.* National Academy Press, Washington, DC, pp.1-272.
- 19 **National Safety Council, 1998:** *Coastal Challenges: a Guide to Coastal and Marine Issues.*  
20 Environmental Health Center, Washington, DC, pp.1-365.
- 21 **Naylor, R.L., R.J. Goldburg, J. Primavera, N. Kautsky, M.C.M. Beveridge, J. Clay, C. Folke, J.**  
22 **Lubchenco, H. Mooney, and M. Troell, 2000:** Effects of aquaculture on world fish  
23 supplies. *Nature*, **405(6790)**, 1017-1024.
- 24 **Nicholls, R.J. and S.P. Leatherman, 1996:** Adapting to sea-level rise: relative sea-level trends to  
25 2100 for the United States. *Coastal Management*, **24(4)**, 301-324.
- 26 **Norse, E.A., 1993:** Global marine biological diversity: a strategy for building conservation into  
27 decision making, [Norse, E.A. (ed.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-383.
- 28 **Nyström, M., C. Folke, and F. Moberg, 2000:** Coral reef disturbance and resilience in a human-  
29 dominated environment. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **15(10)**, 413-420.
- 30 **O'Connor, M.I., J.F. Bruno, S.D. Gaines, B.S. Halpern, S.E. Lester, B.P. Kinlan, and J.M.**  
31 **Weiss, 2007:** Temperature control of larval dispersal and the implications for marine

- 1 ecology, evolution, and conservation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*  
2 *of the United States of America*, **104**, 1266-1271.
- 3 **Obura**, D., B. D. Causey, and J. Church, 2006: Management response to a bleaching event, In:  
4 *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-  
5 Guldborg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American Geophysical  
6 Union, Washington, DC, pp. 181-206.
- 7 **Ogden**, J.C. and E.H. Gladfelter, 1983: *Coral Reefs, Seagrass Beds and Mangroves: Their*  
8 *Interaction in the Coastal Zones of the Caribbean*. UNESCO Reports in Marine Science  
9 23, pp.1-133.
- 10 **Ogden**, J.C. and R. Wicklund, 1988: *Mass Bleaching of Coral Reefs in the Caribbean: a*  
11 *Research Strategy*. Research Report 88-2, National Oceanic and Atmospheric  
12 Administration, Oceanic and Atmospheric Research, Office of Undersea Research, pp.1-  
13 51.
- 14 **Orr**, J.C., V.J. Fabry, O. Aumont, L. Bopp, S.C. Doney, R.A. Feely, A. Gnanadesikan, N.  
15 Gruber, A. Ishida, F. Joos, R.M. Key, K. Lindsay, E. Maier-Reimer, R. Matear, P.  
16 Monfray, A. Mouchet, R.G. Najjar, G.K. Plattner, K.B. Rodgers, C.L. Sabine, J.L.  
17 Sarmiento, R. Schlitzer, R.D. Slater, I.J. Totterdell, M.F. Weirig, Y. Yamanaka, and A.  
18 Yool, 2005: Anthropogenic ocean acidification over the twenty-first century and its  
19 impact on calcifying organisms. *Nature*, **437**, 681-686.
- 20 **Orth**, R.J., T.J.B. Carruthers, W.C. Dennison, C.M. Duarte, J.W. Fourqurean, K.L.Jr. Heck,  
21 A.R. Hughes, G.A. Kendrick, W.J. Kenworthy, S. Olyarnik, F.T. Short, M. Waycott, and  
22 S.L. Williams, 2006: A global crisis for seagrass ecosystems. *BioScience*, **56(12)**, 987-  
23 996.
- 24 **Paine**, R.T., 1993: A salty and salutary perspective on global change, In: *Biotic Interactions and*  
25 *Global Change*, [Kareiva, P.M., J.G. Kingsolver, and R.B. Huey (eds.)]. Sinauer  
26 Associates, Inc., Sunderland, Massachusetts, pp. 347-355.
- 27 **Paine**, R.T., M.J. Tegner, and E.A. Johnson, 1998: Compounded perturbations yield ecological  
28 surprises. *Ecosystems*, **1(6)**, 535-545.
- 29 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2001: The ecology of marine protected areas, In: *Marine Community Ecology*,  
30 [Bertness, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay (eds.)]. Sinauer Associates, Inc.,  
31 Sunderland, MA, pp. 509-530.
- 32 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2002: *Marine Reserves: a Tool for Ecosystem Management and Conservation*.  
33 Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp.1-45.

- 1 **Palumbi, S.R.**, 2003: Population genetics, demographic connectivity, and the design of marine  
2 reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S146-S158.
- 3 **Palumbi, S.R.**, 2004: Marine reserves and ocean neighborhoods: the spatial scale of marine  
4 populations and their management. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources*, **29**,  
5 31-68.
- 6 **Palumbi, S.R.**, G. Grabowsky, T. Duda, L. Geyer, and N. Tachino, 1997: Speciation and  
7 population genetic structure in tropical Pacific sea urchins. *Evolution*, **51(5)**, 1506-1517.
- 8 **Pandolfi, J.M.**, R.H. Bradbury, E. Sala, T.P. Hughes, K.A. Bjorndal, R.G. Cooke, D. McArdle,  
9 L. McClenachan, M.J.H. Newman, G. Paredes, R.R. Warner, and J.B.C. Jackson, 2003:  
10 Global trajectories of the long-term decline of coral reef ecosystems. *Science*, **301(5635)**,  
11 955-958.
- 12 **Pandolfi, J.M.**, J.B.C. Jackson, N. Baron, R.H. Bradbury, H.M. Guzman, T.P. Hughes, C.V.  
13 Kappel, F. Micheli, J.C. Ogden, H.P. Possingham, and E. Sala, 2005: Are U. S. coral  
14 reefs on the slippery slope to slime? *Science*, **307(5716)**, 1725-1726.
- 15 **Pane, E.F.** and J.P. Barry, 2007: Extracellular acid-base regulation during short-term  
16 hypercapnia is effective in a shallow-water crab, but ineffective in a deep-sea crab.  
17 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **334**, 1-9.
- 18 **Paris, C.B.** and R.K. Cowen, 2004: Direct evidence of a biophysical retention mechanism for  
19 coral reef fish larvae. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **49(6)**, 1964-1979.
- 20 **Parks, J.** and N. Salafsky, 2001: *Fish for the Future? A Collaborative Test of Locally-Managed*  
21 *Marine Areas As a Biodiversity Conservation and Fisheries Management Tool in the*  
22 *Indo-Pacific Region: Report on the Initiation of a Learning Portfolio*. World Resources  
23 Institute, Washington, DC, pp.1-82.
- 24 **Pauly, D.**, J. Alder, E. Bennett, V. Christensen, P. Tyedmers, and R. Watson, 2003: The future  
25 for fisheries. *Science*, **302(5649)**, 1359-1361.
- 26 **Pauly, D.**, V. Christensen, J. Dalsgaard, R. Froese, and F. Torres, Jr., 1998: Fishing down marine  
27 food webs. *Science*, **279(5352)**, 860-863.
- 28 **Pauly, D.**, V. Christensen, S. Guqnette, T.J. Pitcher, U.R. Sumaila, C.J. Walters, R. Watson, and  
29 D. Zeller, 2002: Towards sustainability in world fisheries. *Nature*, **418**, 689-695.
- 30 **Pechenik, J.A.**, 1999: On the advantages and disadvantages of larval stages in benthic marine  
31 invertebrate life cycles. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **177**, 269-297.

- 1 **Perry**, A.L., P.J. Low, J.R. Ellis, and J.D. Reynolds, 2005: Climate change and distribution  
2 shifts in marine fishes. *Science*, **308(5730)**, 1912-1915.
- 3 **Peterson**, B.J., J. McClelland, R. Curry, R.M. Holmes, J.E. Walsh, and K. Aagaard, 2006:  
4 Trajectory shifts in the Arctic and subarctic freshwater cycle. *Science*, (**313**), 1061-1066.
- 5 **Pew Ocean Commission**, 2003: *America's Living Oceans: Charting a Course for Sea Change -*  
6 *a Report to the Nation*. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp.1-144.
- 7 **Philip**, S. and G.J. Van Oldenborgh, 2006: Shifts in ENSO coupling processes under global  
8 warming. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **33(11)**, L11704.
- 9 **Phinney**, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong, 2006: *Coral Reefs*  
10 *and Climate Change: Science and Management*. American Geophysical Union,  
11 Washington, DC, pp. 1-244.
- 12 **Porter**, J.W., P. Dustan, W.C. Jaap, K.L. Patterson, V. Kosmynin, O.W. Meier, M.E. Patterson,  
13 and M. Parsons, 2001: Patterns of spread of coral disease in the Florida Keys.  
14 *Hydrobiologia*, **460(1-3)**, 1-24.
- 15 **Porter**, J.W., V. Kosmynin, K. L. Patterson, K. G. Porter, W. C. Jaap, J. L. Wheaton, K.  
16 Hackett, M. Lybolt, C. P. Tsokos, G. Yanev, G. M. Marcinek, J. Dotten, D. Eaken, M.  
17 Patterson, O. W. Meier, M. Brill, and P. Dustan, 2002: Detection of coral reef change by  
18 the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring Project, In: *The Everglades, Florida Bay, and*  
19 *Coral Reefs of the Florida Keys: an Ecosystem Sourcebook*, [Porter, J.W. and K.G. Porter  
20 (eds.)]. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 749-769.
- 21 **Precht**, W.F. and R.B. Aronson, 2004: Climate flickers and range shifts of reef corals. *Frontiers*  
22 *in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(6)**, 307-314.
- 23 **Rabalais**, N.N., R.E. Turner, and W.J. Wiseman Jr, 2002: Gulf of Mexico hypoxia, aka "the  
24 dead zone". *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **33**, 235-263.
- 25 **Raimondi**, P.T. and A.N.C. Morse, 2000: The consequences of complex larval behavior in a  
26 coral. *Ecology*, **81(11)**, 3193-3211.
- 27 **Reaser**, J.K., R. Pomerance, and P.O. Thomas, 2000: Coral bleaching and global climate change:  
28 scientific findings and policy recommendations. *Conservation Biology*, **14(5)**, 1500-1511.
- 29 **Reed**, J.K., 2002: Deep-water *Oculina* coral reefs of Florida: biology, impacts, and management.  
30 *Hydrobiologia*, **471(1)**, 43-55.



- 1 **Rignot, E.** and P. Kanagaratnam, 2006: Changes in the velocity structure of the Greenland  
2 icesheet. *Science*, **311(986)**, 990.
- 3 **Roberts, C.M.**, 1996: Settlement and beyond: population regulation and community structure of  
4 reef fishes, [Polunin, N.V.C. (ed.)]. Chapman and Hall Ltd, London, England, UK and  
5 New York, New York, USA, pp. 85-112.
- 6 **Roberts, C.M.**, 1997a: Connectivity and management of Caribbean coral reefs. *Science*,  
7 **278(5342)**, 1454-1457.
- 8 **Roberts, C.M.**, 1997b: Ecological advice for the global fisheries crisis. *Trends in Ecology and*  
9 *Evolution*, **12(1)**, 35-38.
- 10 **Roberts, C.M.**, 2005: Marine protected areas and biodiversity conservation, In: *Marine*  
11 *Conservation Biology: the Science of Maintaining the Sea's Biodiversity*, [Norse, E. and  
12 L.B. Crowder (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 265-279.
- 13 **Roberts, C.M.**, S. Andelman, G. Branch, R.H. Bustamante, J.C. Castilla, J. Dugan, B.S. Halpern,  
14 K.D. Lafferty, H. Leslie, J. Lubchenco, D. MacArdle, H.P. Possingham, M. Ruckelshaus,  
15 and R.R. Warner, 2003a: Ecological criteria for evaluating candidate sites for marine  
16 reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S199-S214.
- 17 **Roberts, C.M.**, G. Branch, R.H. Bustamante, J.C. Castilla, J. Dugan, B.S. Halpern, K.D.  
18 Lafferty, H. Leslie, J. Lubchenco, D. McArdle, M. Ruckelshaus, and R.R. Warner,  
19 2003b: Application of ecological criteria in selecting marine reserves and developing  
20 reserve networks. *Ecological Applications*, **13**, S215-S228.
- 21 **Roberts, C.M.**, B. Halpern, S.R. Palumbi, and R.R. Warner, 2001: Designing marine reserve  
22 networks: why small, isolated protected areas are not enough. *Conservation Biology in*  
23 *Practice*, **2(3)**, 11-17.
- 24 **Roberts, J.M.**, A.J. Wheeler, and A. Freiwald, 2006: Reefs of the deep: the biology and geology  
25 of cold-water coral ecosystems. *Science*, **312(5773)**, 543-547.
- 26 **Roberts, S.** and M. Hirshfield, 2004: Deep-sea corals: out of sight, but no longer out of mind.  
27 *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(3)**, 123-130.
- 28 **Robertson, D.R.**, J.H. Choat, J.M. Posada, J. Pitt, and J.L. Ackerman, 2005: Ocean surgeonfish  
29 *Acanthurus bahianus*. II. Fishing effects on longevity, size and abundance? *Marine*  
30 *Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 245-256.

- 1 **Roessig, J.M., C.M. Woodley, J.J. Cech, and L.J. Hansen, 2004:** Effects of global climate change  
2 on marine and estuarine fishes and fisheries. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*,  
3 **14(2)**, 251-275.
- 4 **Rogers, A.D., 1999:** The biology of *Lophelia pertusa* (Linnaeus 1758) and other deep-water  
5 reef-forming corals and impacts from human activities. *International Review of*  
6 *Hydrobiology*, **84(4)**, 315-406.
- 7 **Ruiz, G.M., P.W. Fofonoff, J.T. Carlton, M.J. Wonham, and A.H. Hines, 2000:** Invasion of  
8 coastal marine communities in North America: apparent patterns, processes, and biases.  
9 *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 481-531.
- 10 **Sale, P.F., R.K. Cowen, B.S. Danilowicz, G.P. Jones, J.P. Kritzer, K.C. Lindeman, S. Planes,**  
11 **N.V.C. Polunin, G.R. Russ, Y.J. Sadovy, and R.S. Steneck, 2005:** Critical science gaps  
12 impede use of no-take fishery reserves. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **20(2)**, 74-80.
- 13 **Salm, R., J. Clark, and E. Siirila, 2000:** *Marine and Coastal Protected Areas: a Guide for*  
14 *Planners and Managers*. Report Number 3, International Union for Conservation of  
15 Nature and Natural Resources, Washington, DC, pp.1-387.
- 16 **Salm, R.V., T. Done, and E. McLeod, 2006:** Marine protected area planning in a changing  
17 climate, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*, [Phinney, J.T.,  
18 O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and A. Strong (eds.)]. American  
19 Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 207-221.
- 20 **Sammarco, P.W., 1980:** Diadema and its relationship to coral spat mortality: grazing,  
21 competition, and biological disturbance. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*  
22 *Ecology*, **45**, 245-272.
- 23 **Sanford, E., 1999:** Regulation of keystone predation by small changes in ocean temperature.  
24 *Science*, **283(5410)**, 2095-2097.
- 25 **Scavia, D., J.C. Field, D.F. Boesch, R.W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D.R. Cayan, M. Fogarty,**  
26 **M.A. Harwell, R.W. Howarth, C. Mason, D.J. Reed, T.C. Royer, A.H. Sallenger, and J.G.**  
27 **Titus, 2002:** Climate change impacts on U.S. coastal and marine ecosystems. *Estuaries*,  
28 **25(2)**, 149-164.
- 29 **Scheltema, R.S., 1986:** On dispersal and planktonic larvae of marine invertebrates: an eclectic  
30 overview and summary of problems. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **39**, 290-322.
- 31 **Schuttenberg, H.Z. and P. Marshall, 2007:** *Managing for Mass Coral Bleaching: Strategies for*  
32 *Supporting Socio-Ecological Resilience*. Status of Caribbean coral reefs after bleaching  
33 and hurricanes in 2005 Reef and Rainforest Research Centre, Townsville.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 **Shanks**, A.L., B.A. Grantham, and M.H. Carr, 2003: Propagule dispersal distance and the size  
2 and spacing of marine reserves. *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S159-S169.
- 3 **Shepherd**, A. and D. Wingham, 2007: Recent sea-level contributions of the Antarctic and  
4 Greenland ice sheets. *Science*, **315**, 1529-1532.
- 5 **Shirayama**, Y. and H. Thornton, 2005: Effect of increased atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> on shallow water  
6 marine benthos. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **110(C9)**.
- 7 **Smith**, S.V. and R.W. Buddemeier, 1992: Global change and coral reef ecosystems. *Annual*  
8 *Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **23**, 89-118.
- 9 **Snyder**, D.B. and G.H. Burgess, 2007: The Indo-Pacific red lionfish, *Pterois volitans* (Pisces:  
10 Scorpaenidae), new to Bahamian ichthyofauna. *Coral Reefs*, **26(1)**, 175.
- 11 **Snyder**, M.A., L.C. Sloan, N.S. Diffenbaugh, and J.L. Bell, 2003: Future climate change and  
12 upwelling in the California current. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **30(15)**.
- 13 **Sobel**, J.A. and C. Dahlgren, 2004: *Marine Reserves: a Guide to Science, Design, and Use*.  
14 Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-383.
- 15 **Sotka**, E.E., J.P. Wares, J.A. Barth, R.K. Grosberg, and S.R. Palumbi, 2004: Strong genetic  
16 clines and geographical variation in gene flow in the rocky intertidal barnacle *Balanus*  
17 *glandula*. *Molecular Ecology*, **13(8)**, 2143-2156.
- 18 **Soto**, C.G., 2001: The potential impacts of global climate change on marine protected areas.  
19 *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*, **11(3)**, 181-195.
- 20 **Sousa**, W.P., 1984: The role of disturbance in natural communities. *Annual Review of Ecology*  
21 *and Systematics*, **15**, 353-391.
- 22 **Stachowicz**, J.J., J.R. Terwin, R.B. Whitlatch, and R.W. Osman, 2002: Linking climate change  
23 and biological invasions: ocean warming facilitates nonindigenous species invasions.  
24 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
25 **99(24)**, 15497-15500.
- 26 **Steneck**, R.S., 2006: Staying connected in a turbulent world. *Science*, **311(5760)**, 480-481.
- 27 **Steneck**, R.S. and J. T. Carlton, 2001: Human alterations of marine communities: students  
28 beware!, In: *Marine Community Ecology*, [Bertness, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay  
29 (eds.)]. Sinauer Associates, Inc., Sunderland, MA, pp. 445-468.

- 1 **Steneck**, R.S. and M.N. Dethier, 1994: A functional group approach to the structure of algal-  
2 dominated communities. *Oikos*, **69(3)**, 476-498.
- 3 **Steneck**, R.S., M.H. Graham, B.J. Bourque, D. Corbett, J.M. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, and M.J.  
4 Tegner, 2002: Kelp forest ecosystems: biodiversity, stability, resilience and future.  
5 *Environmental Conservation*, **29(4)**, 436-459.
- 6 **Steneck**, R.S. and E. Sala, 2005: Large marine carnivores: trophic cascades and top-down  
7 controls in coastal ecosystems past and present, In: *Large Carnivores and the*  
8 *Conservation of Biodiversity*, [Ray, J.C., K.H. Redford, R.S. Steneck, and J. Berger  
9 (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 110-137.
- 10 **Steneck**, R.S., J. Vavrinec, and A.V. Leland, 2004: Accelerating trophic level dysfunction in  
11 kelp forest ecosystems of the western North Atlantic. *Ecosystems*, **7(4)**, 323-331.
- 12 **Steneck**, R.S. and C.J. Wilson, 2001: Large-scale and long-term, spatial and temporal patterns in  
13 demography and landings of the American lobster, *Homarus americanus*. *Journal of*  
14 *Marine and Freshwater Research*, **52**, 1303-1319.
- 15 **Stewart**, R.R., T. Noyce, and H.P. Possingham, 2003: Opportunity cost of ad hoc marine reserve  
16 design decisions: an example from South Australia. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,  
17 **253**, 25-38.
- 18 **Stillman**, J.H., 2003: Acclimation capacity underlies susceptibility to climate change. *Science*,  
19 **301(5629)**, 65.
- 20 **Stobutzki**, I.C. and D.R. Bellwood, 1997: Sustained swimming abilities of the late pelagic stages  
21 of coral reef fishes. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **149(1)**, 35-41.
- 22 **Stocker**, T.F. and O. Marchal, 2000: Abrupt climate change in the computer: is it real? In:  
23 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* , pp.  
24 1362-1365.
- 25 **Swearer**, S.E., J.E. Caselle, D.W. Lea, and R.R. Warner, 1999: Larval retention and recruitment  
26 in an island population of a coral-reef fish. *Nature*, **402(6763)**, 799-802.
- 27 **Taylor**, M.S. and M.E. Hellberg, 2003: Genetic evidence for local retention of pelagic larvae in  
28 a Caribbean reef fish. *Science*, **299(5603)**, 107-109.
- 29 **The Group of Experts on Scientific Aspects of Marine Environmental Protection**, 2001:  
30 *Protecting the Oceans From Land-Based Activities*. Land-based sources and activities  
31 affecting the quality and uses of the marine, coastal and associated freshwater  
32 environment United Nations Environment Program, Nairobi.

- 1 **The Royal Society**, 2005: *Ocean Acidification Due to Increasing Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide*.  
2 The Royal Society, London, -60.
- 3 **The State of Queensland and Commonwealth of Australia**, 2003: *Reef Water Quality*  
4 *Protection Plan; for Catchments Adjacent to the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage*  
5 *Area*. Queensland Department of Premier and Cabinet, Brisbane.
- 6 **Thorrold**, S.R., C. Latkoczy, P.K. Swart, and C.M. Jones, 2001: Natal homing in a marine fish  
7 metapopulation. *Science*, **291(5502)**, 297-299.
- 8 **Thrush**, S.F. and P.K. Dayton, 2002: Disturbance to marine benthic habitats by trawling and  
9 dredging: implications for Marine Biodiversity. *Annual Review of Ecology and*  
10 *Systematics*, **33**, 449-473.
- 11 **Tilmant**, J.T., R.W. Curry, R. Jones, A. Szmant, J.C. Zieman, M. Flora, M.B. Robblee, D.  
12 Smith, R.W. Snow, and H. Wanless, 1994: Hurricane Andrew's effects on marine  
13 resources: the small underwater impact contrasts sharply with the destruction in  
14 mangrove and upland-forest communities. *BioScience*, **44(4)**, 230-237.
- 15 **Tolimieri**, N., A. Jeffs, and J.C. Montgomery, 2000: Ambient sound as a cue for navigation by  
16 the pelagic larvae of reef fishes. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **207**, 219-224.
- 17 **Tomanek**, L. and G.N. Somero, 1999: Evolutionary and acclimation-induced variation in the  
18 heat-shock responses of congeneric marine snails (genus *Tegula*) from different thermal  
19 habitats: implications for limits of thermotolerance and biogeography. *Journal of*  
20 *Experimental Biology*, **202**, 2925-2936.
- 21 **Tompkins**, E.L. and W.N. Adger, 2004: Does adaptive management of natural resources  
22 enhance resilience to climate change? *Ecology and Society*, **9(2)**, 10.
- 23 **Turgeon**, D.D., R.G. Asch, B.D. Causey, R.E. Dodge, W. Jaap, K. Banks, J. Delaney, B.D.  
24 Keller, R. Speiler, C.A. Matos, J.R. Garcia, E. Diaz, D. Catanzaro, C.S. Rogers, Z. Hillis-  
25 Starr, R. Nemeth, M. Taylor, G.P. Schmahl, M.W. Miller, D.A. Gulko, J.E. Maragos,  
26 A.M. Friedlander, C.L. Hunter, R.S. Brainard, P. Craig, R.H. Richmond, G. Davis, J.  
27 Starmer, M. Trianni, P. Houk, C.E. Birkeland, A. Edwards, Y. Golbuu, J. Gutierrez, N.  
28 Idechong, G. Paulay, A. Tafleichig, and N. Vander Velde, 2002: *The State of Coral Reef*  
29 *Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely Associated States: 2002*. National  
30 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/National Ocean Service/National Centers for  
31 Coastal Ocean Science, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-265.
- 32 **U.S. Census Bureau**, 2001: County and city data book: 2000. (**13th Edition**), 1-895.

- 1 **U.S. Climate Change Science Program and Subcommittee on Global Change Research,**  
2 *2003: Vision for the Program and Highlights of the Scientific Strategic Plan.* U.S.  
3 Climate Change Science Program, Washington, D.C..
- 4 **U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy,** 2004: *An Ocean Blueprint for the 21<sup>st</sup> Century. Final*  
5 *Report.* U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy, Washington, D.C., pp.1-522.
- 6 **U.S. Department of Commerce,** 1996: *Final Management Plan/Environmental Impact*  
7 *Statement for the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, Volume I.* National Oceanic  
8 and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-319.
- 9 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,** 2007: *Climate Change and Interacting Stressors:*  
10 *Implications for Coral Reef Management in American Samoa.* EPA/600/R-07/069,  
11 Global Change Research Program, National Center for Environmental Assessment,  
12 Washington, DC. Available from the National Technical Information Service,  
13 Springfield, VA, and online at <http://www.epa.gov/ncea>.
- 14 **Wadell, J.E.,** 2005: *The State of Coral Reef Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely*  
15 *Associated States: 2005.* NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS 11,  
16 NOAA/NCCOS Center for Coastal Monitoring and Assessment's Biogeography Team,  
17 Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-522.
- 18 **Wainwright, P.C.,** 1994: Functional morphology as a tool in ecological research, In: *Ecological*  
19 *Morphology: Integrative Organismal Biology,* [Wainwright, P.C. and S.M. Reilly (eds.)].  
20 University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, pp. 42-59.
- 21 **Walther, G.R.,** E. Post, P. Convey, A. Menzel, C. Parmesan, T.J.C. Beebee, J.M. Fromentin, O.  
22 Hoegh-Guldberg, and F. Bairlein, 2002: Ecological responses to recent climate change.  
23 *Nature*, **416**, 389-395.
- 24 **Warner, R.R.,** S.E. Swearer, and J.E. Caselle, 2000: Larval accumulation and retention:  
25 Implications for the design of marine reserves and essential fish habitat. *Bulletin of*  
26 *Marine Science*, **66(3)**, 821-830.
- 27 **Watling, L.** and M. Risk, 2002: Special issue on biology of cold water corals: proceedings of the  
28 first international deep-sea coral symposium. *Hydrobiologia*, **471**.
- 29 **Wells, S.,** 2006: *Establishing National and Regional Systems of MPAs – a Review of Progress*  
30 *With Lessons Learned.* Second Draft, UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre,  
31 UNEP Regional Seas Programme, ICRAN, IUCN/WCPA – Marine.
- 32 **West, J.M.** and R.V. Salm, 2003: Resistance and resilience to coral bleaching: implications for  
33 coral reef conservation and management. *Conservation Biology*, **17(4)**, 956-967.

- 1 **Whelan, K.R.T., J. Miller, O. Sanchez, and M. Patterson, 2007:** Impact of the 2005 coral  
2 bleaching event on *Porites porites* and *Colpophyllia natans* at Tektite Reef, US Virgin  
3 Islands. *Coral Reefs*, **26**, 689-693.
- 4 **Whitfield, P.E., J.A. Hare, A.W. David, S.L. Harter, R.C. Muñoz, and C.M. Addison, 2007:**  
5 Abundance estimates of the Indo-Pacific lionfish *Pterois volitans/miles* complex in the  
6 Western North Atlantic. *Biological Invasions*, **9(1)**, 53-64.
- 7 **Whitfield, P.E., W.J. Kenworthy, K.K. Hammerstrom, and M.S. Fonseca, 2002:** The role of a  
8 hurricane in the expansion of disturbances initiated by motor vessels on seagrass banks.  
9 *Journal of Coastal Research*, **37**, 86-99.
- 10 **Wilkinson, C., O. Linden, H. Cesar, G. Hodgson, J. Rubens, and A.E. Strong, 1999:** Ecological  
11 and socioeconomic impacts of 1998 coral mortality in the Indian Ocean: an ENSO impact  
12 and a warning of future change? *Ambio*, **28(2)**, 188.
- 13 **Wilkinson, C.R., 1998:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 1998*. Australian Institute of Marine  
14 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 15 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2000:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2000*. Australian Institute of Marine  
16 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 17 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2002:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2002*. Australian Institute of Marine  
18 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 19 **Wilkinson, C.R., 2004:** *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2004*. Australian Institute of Marine  
20 Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 21 **Williams, D.M.B., E. Wolanski, and J.C. Andrews, 1984:** Transport mechanisms and the  
22 potential movement of planktonic larvae in the central region of the Great Barrier Reef.  
23 *Coral Reefs*, **3(4)**, 229-236.
- 24 **Williams, E.H.Jr. and L. Bunkley-Williams, 1990:** The world-wide coral reef bleaching cycle  
25 and related sources of coral mortality. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **(355)**, 1-72.
- 26 **Williams, E.H.Jr., C. Goenaga, and V. Vicente, 1987:** Mass bleachings on Atlantic coral reefs.  
27 *Science*, **238**, 877-878.
- 28 **Wooldridge, S., T. Done, R. Berkelmans, R. Jones, and P. Marshall, 2005:** Precursors for  
29 resilience in coral communities in a warming climate: a belief network approach. *Marine*  
30 *Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 157-169.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 **Wooninck**, L. and C. Bertrand, 2004: Marine managed areas designated by NOAA fisheries: a  
2 characterization study and preliminary assessment. *American Fisheries Society*  
3 *Symposium*, **42**, 89-103.
- 4 **World Resources Institute**, 1996: *World Resources 1996-97: the Urban Environment*. United  
5 Nations Environment Programme, United Nations Development Programme, and the  
6 World Bank, pp.1-384.
- 7 **Young**, O.R., G. Osherenko, J. Ekstrom, L.B. Crowder, J. Ogden, J.A. Wilson, J.C. Day, F.  
8 Douvère, C.N. Ehler, K.L. McLeod, B.S. Halpern, and R. Peach, 2007: Solving the crisis  
9 in ocean governance: place-based management of marine ecosystems. *Environment:*  
10 *Science and Policy for Sustainable Development*, **49(4)**, 20-32.
- 11 **Zervas**, C., 2001: *Sea Level Variations of the United States, 1854-1999*. Technical Report NOS  
12 CO-OPS 36, US Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric  
13 Administration, National Ocean Service, Silver Spring, MD.  
14  
15



## 1 **8.7 Acknowledgements**

### 2 **Authors' Acknowledgements**

3 The case studies were prepared by Billy Causey and Steven Miller (Florida Keys National  
4 Marine Sanctuary), Johanna Johnson (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park), Alan Friedlander  
5 (Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument), and Satie Airamé (Channel Islands National  
6 Marine Sanctuary). Johanna Johnson would like to thank all the expert scientists who contributed  
7 to assessing the vulnerability of the Great Barrier Reef to climate change. Without their  
8 leadership and knowledge we would not have such an in-depth understanding of the implications  
9 of climate change for Great Barrier Reef species, habitats, key processes and the ecosystem, or  
10 have been able to develop the management strategies outlined in this case study. Elizabeth  
11 Mcleod (The Nature Conservancy) drafted the section on adapting to climate change, and Christa  
12 Woodley (University of California at Davis) and Danny Gleason (Georgia Southern University)  
13 drafted the section on current status of management system. Rikki Grober-Dunsmore (National  
14 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, MPA Science Institute) prepared Table 8.2. We thank  
15 all the individuals who participated in the stakeholder workshop, 24–25 January 2007, and  
16 whose lively discussion provided information and comments that helped form the contents and  
17 conclusions of this chapter. We also thank the anonymous reviewers and the following people  
18 for comments on this chapter: R. Aronson, J. Brown, P. Bunje, D. Burden, A. DeVogelaere, E.  
19 Druffel, W. Fisher, H. Galbraith, P. Hallock Muller, J. Lang, J. Martinich, J. Ogden, W. Wiltse,  
20 and J. Yang. Finally, we are grateful to Susan Julius and Jordan West for their guidance, support,  
21 and suggestions for improving this chapter.

22

### 23 **Workshop Participants**

24

- 25     ▪ Maria Brown, Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary
- 26     ▪ Deborah Cramer, Gloucester Maritime Heritage Center and Stellwagen Bank National  
27     Marine Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 28     ▪ Daniel Gleason, Georgia Southern University and Gray's Reef National Marine  
29     Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 30     ▪ Lynn Hale, The Nature Conservancy
- 31     ▪ Lara Hansen, World Wildlife Fund
- 32     ▪ Terrie Klinger, University of Washington and Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary  
33     Advisory Council
- 34     ▪ Irina Kogan, Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary
- 35     ▪ David Loomis, University of Massachusetts
- 36     ▪ Linda Paul, Hawaii Audubon Society
- 37     ▪ Bruce Popham, Marathon Boat Yard and Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary  
38     Advisory Council
- 39     ▪ Teresa Scott, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Olympic Coast National  
40     Marine Sanctuary Advisory Council
- 41     ▪ Jack Sobel, The Ocean Conservancy
- 42     ▪ Steve Tucker, Cape Cod Commission and Stellwagen Bank National Marine Sanctuary  
43     Advisory Council
- 44     ▪ Lauren Wenzel, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1       ▪ Bob Wilson, The Marine Mammal Center and Gulf of the Farallones National Marine
- 2       Sanctuary Advisory Council

3

4

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23

## 8.8 Boxes

**Box 8.1.** Draft Goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program, 2005–2015

**Goal 1.** Identify, designate, and manage sanctuaries to maintain the natural biological communities in sanctuaries and to protect and, where appropriate, restore and enhance natural habitats, populations, and ecological processes, through innovative, coordinated and community-based measures and techniques.

**Goal 2.** Build and strengthen the nation-wide system of marine sanctuaries, maintain and enhance the role of the NMSP’s system in larger MPA networks and help provide both national and international leadership for MPA management and marine resource stewardship.

**Goal 3.** Enhance nation-wide public awareness, understanding, and appreciation of marine and Great Lakes ecosystems and maritime heritage resources through outreach, education, and interpretation efforts.

**Goal 4.** Investigate and enhance the understanding of ecosystem processes through continued scientific research, monitoring, and characterization to support ecosystem-based management in sanctuaries and throughout U.S. waters.

**Goal 5.** Facilitate human use in sanctuaries to the extent such uses are compatible with the primary mandate of resource protection, through innovative public participation and interagency cooperative arrangements.

**Goal 6.** Work with the international community to strengthen global protection of marine resources, investigate and employ appropriate new management approaches, and disseminate NMSP experience and techniques.

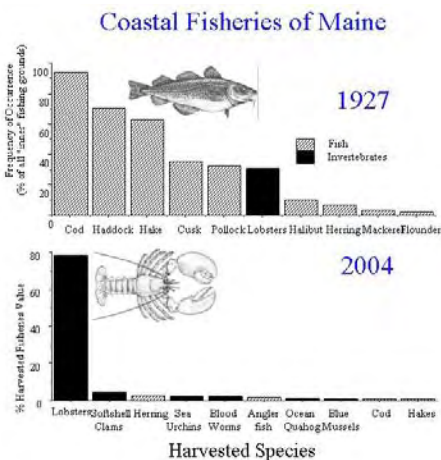
**Goal 7.** Build, maintain, and enhance an operational capability and infrastructure that efficiently and effectively support the attainment of the NMSP’s mission and goals.

**Box 8.2** The Western North Atlantic Food Web

Marine carnivores of the western North Atlantic were both more abundant and larger in the past. In Maine, archaeological evidence indicates that coastal people subsisted on Atlantic cod for at least 4,000 years (Jackson *et al.*, 2001).<sup>41</sup> Prey species such as lobsters and crabs were absent from excavated middens in the region, perhaps because large predators had eaten them (Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004; Lotze *et al.*, 2006).

Today cod are ecologically extinct from western North Atlantic coastal zones due to overfishing. The abundant lobsters and sea urchins that had formerly been the prey of apex predators became the primary target of local fisheries. By 1993, the value of sea urchins harvested in Maine for their roe was second only to that of lobsters. As sea urchin populations declined, so too did communitywide rates of herbivory. In less than a decade, sea urchins became so rare that they could no longer be found over large areas of the coast (Andrew *et al.*, 2002; Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004).

These and other instances of “fishing down food webs” in the Gulf of Maine have resulted in hundreds of kilometers of coast now having dangerously low biological and economic diversity. Today, bloodworms used for bait are worth more to Maine’s economy than cod (see figure below). The trophic level dysfunction (*sensu* Steneck, Vavrinec, and Leland, 2004) of both apex predators and herbivores leave a coastal zone suited for crabs and especially lobsters—the latter attaining staggering population densities exceeding one per square meter along much of the coast of Maine (Steneck and Wilson, 2001). The economic value of lobsters is high, accounting for nearly 80% of the total value of Maine’s fisheries as of 2004 (see figure below). The remaining 42 harvested species account for the remaining 20%. If a disease such as the one that recently decimated Rhode Island’s lobster stocks (Glenn and Pugh, 2006) infects lobsters in the Gulf of Maine, there will be serious socioeconomic implications for the fishing industry. Prospects for such a disease outbreak may increase because of climate-induced changes in the environment such as temperature increases that favor pathogen growth (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; 2002). The figure below is adapted from Steneck and Carlton (2001).



<sup>41</sup> See also Steneck, R.S., 1997: Fisheries-induced biological changes to the structure and function of the Gulf of Maine ecosystem. In: Proceedings of the Gulf of Maine Ecosystem Dynamics Scientific Symposium and Workshop, RARGOM Report 91-1, Regional Association for Research in the Gulf of Maine, Hanover, NH, pp. 151-165.

**Box 8.3.** Draft Objectives of the Goals of the National Marine Sanctuary Program That Are Relevant to Resource Protection and Climate Change (Goals 1, 4, 5, and 6 from Box 8.1)<sup>1</sup>

**Goal 1: Protect Resources.**

- Objective 1.** Prepare sanctuary-specific management plans and regional and national programs and policies that utilize all program capacities to protect and manage resources.
- Objective 2.** Conduct and maintain routine contingency planning, emergency response, damage assessment, and restoration activities to preserve and restore the integrity of sanctuary ecosystems.
- Objective 3.** Develop and maintain enforcement programs and partnerships to maximize protection of sanctuary resources.
- Objective 4.** Review and evaluate the NMSP’s effectiveness at site, regional, and national levels, through both internal and external mechanisms.
- Objective 5.** Anticipate, characterize, and mitigate threats to resources.
- Objective 6.** Assess and predict changes in the NMSP’s operating, natural, and social environments, and evolve sanctuary management strategies to address them through management plan reviews, reauthorizations, and program regulatory review.
- Objective 7.** Designate new sanctuaries, as appropriate, to ensure the nation’s marine ecosystems and networks achieve national expectations for sustainability.

**Goal 4: Improve Sanctuary Science.**

- Objective 1.** Expand observing systems and monitoring efforts within and near national marine sanctuaries to fill important gaps in the knowledge and understanding of the ocean and Great Lakes ecosystems.
- Objective 2.** Support directed research activities that support management decision making on challenges and opportunities facing sanctuary ecosystems, processes, and resources.
- Objective 3.** Develop comprehensive characterization products of ocean and Great Lakes ecosystems, processes, and resources.

**Goal 5: Facilitate Compatible Use.**

- Objective 1.** Work closely with partners, interested parties, community members, stakeholders, and government agencies to assess and manage human use of sanctuary resources.
- Objective 2.** Create, operate, and support community-based sanctuary advisory councils to assist and advise sites and the overall program in the management of their resources, and to serve as liaisons to the community.
- Objective 3.** Consult and coordinate with federal agencies and other partners conducting activities in or near sanctuaries.
- Objective 4.** Use other tools such as policy development, permitting, and regulatory review and improvement to help guide human use of sanctuary resources.

**Goal 6: Improve International Work.**

- Objective 1.** Develop multilateral program relationships to interact with, share knowledge and experience with, and learn from international partners to improve the NMSP’s management capacity, and bring new experiences to MPA management in the United States.
- Objective 2.** Investigate the use of international legal conventions and other instruments to help protect sanctuary resources, including those that are transboundary or shared.
- Objective 3.** Cooperate to the extent possible with global research initiatives in order to improve the overall understanding of the ocean.
- Objective 4.** Make NMSP education and awareness programs accessible through international efforts to increase the global population’s awareness of ocean issues.

<sup>1</sup>Additional goals of the NMSP are in Box 8.1.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19

<p><b>Box 8.4.</b> Draft Natural Resource Performance Measures of the National Marine Sanctuary Program</p> <p>2015: 12 sites with water quality being maintained or improved.</p> <p>2015: 12 sites with habitat being maintained or improved.</p> <p>2015: 12 sites with living marine resources being maintained or improved.</p> <p>2010: 100% of the System is adequately characterized.</p> <p>2010: 6 sites are achieving or maintaining an optimal management rating on the NMSP Report Card.</p> <p>2007: 100% of NMSP permits are handled in a timely fashion and correctly.</p> <p>2010: 100% of sites with zones in place are assessing them for effectiveness.</p>
---

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

- Box 8.5. Marine Protected Areas: Adaptation Options for Resource Managers**
- ✓ Manage human stressors such as fishing and inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants within MPAs.
  - ✓ Improve water quality by raising awareness of adverse effects of land-based activities on marine environments, implementing integrated coastal and watershed management, and developing options for advanced wastewater treatment.
  - ✓ Manage functional species groups necessary to maintaining the health of reefs and other ecosystems.
  - ✓ Identify and protect areas that appear to be resistant to climate change effects or to recover from climate-induced disturbances.
  - ✓ Identify and protect ecologically significant (“critical”) areas such as nursery grounds, spawning grounds, and areas of high species diversity.
  - ✓ Identify ecological connections among ecosystems and use them to inform the design of MPAs and management decisions such as protecting resistant areas to ensure sources of recruitment for recovery of populations in damaged areas.
  - ✓ Design MPAs with dynamic boundaries and buffers to protect breeding and foraging habits of highly migratory and pelagic species.
  - ✓ Establish dynamic MPAs defined by large-scale oceanographic features, such as oceanic fronts, where changes in types and abundances of organisms often occur.
  - ✓ Maximize habitat heterogeneity within MPAs and consider protecting larger areas to preserve biodiversity, ecological connections among habitats, and ecological functions.
  - ✓ Include entire ecological units (*e.g.*, coral reefs with their associated mangroves and seagrasses) in MPA design to help maintain ecosystem function and resilience.
  - ✓ Ensure that the full breadth of habitat types is protected (*e.g.*, fringing reef, fore reef, back reef, patch reef).
  - ✓ Replicate habitat types in multiple areas to spread risks associated with climate change.
  - ✓ Monitor ecosystems and have rapid-response strategies prepared to assess ecological effects of extreme events as they occur.
  - ✓ Following extreme events, consider whether actions should be taken to enhance natural recovery processes through active restoration.
  - ✓ Consider mangrove restoration for potential benefits including shoreline protection, expansion of nursery habitat, and release of tannins and other dissolved organic compounds that may reduce photo-oxidative stress in corals.

## 1 **8.9 Case Study Summaries**

2 The summaries below provide an overview of the case studies prepared for this chapter. The case  
3 studies are available in Annex A6.

### 4 **Case Study Summary 8.1**

#### 5 **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary** 6 Southeast United States

---

##### 7 **Why this case study was chosen**

8 The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary:

- 9 • Surrounds the Florida Reef Tract, the only system of bank-barrier coral reefs in the coterminous United States and one of the most diverse areas in North America;
- 10 • Draws millions of visitors each year due to its ready access to a unique environment, a burgeoning population in southern Florida, and its status as a destination for cruise ships at Key West;
- 11 • Is a relatively data-rich environment, with an existing baseline of information for detecting presumptive climate change effects;
- 12 • Is an example of a marine protected area with a relatively low level of protection using no-take marine reserves.

##### 13 **Management context**

14 The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary encompasses multiple areas with different degrees of  
15 protection and management histories, some going back to 1963. It was designated as a national marine  
16 sanctuary in 1990, but management regulations did not go into effect until 1997, once the final  
17 management plan was approved. There are five types of management zones, with varying degrees of  
18 restrictions, including “no-take,” limits on specific types of fishing or vessel access, and research-only  
19 access. In addition, a water quality protection program is administered through the U.S. Environmental  
20 Protection Agency, working with the State of Florida and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric  
21 Administration. Enforcement efforts complement education and outreach programs.

##### 22 **Key climate change impacts**

- 23 • Projected increase in water temperatures by several degrees in the next 100 years;
- 24 • Projected reduction in rates of calcification associated with increased ocean acidification;
- 25 • Projected increase in intensity of storms;
- 26 • Expected exacerbation of coral bleaching events;
- 27 • Potential increased prevalence of diseases;
- 28 • Potential changes in ocean circulation patterns;
- 29 • Potential geographic range shifts of individual species, and changes in reef community composition, in response to temperature increases.

##### 30 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 31 • Bleaching-resistant sites could be targeted for priority protection as refugia and as larval sources for recovery; the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration’s Coral Reef Watch program to predict mass bleaching events presents an opportunity for designing before-during-after sampling around bleaching events, which will be crucial for site identification.
- 32 • The Florida Reef Resilience Program, led by The Nature Conservancy, is conducting surveys to identify resilient areas and is promoting public awareness and education.
- 33 • In the short time since their establishment, no-take zones have been shown to enhance heavily fished populations, which in turn may support resilience through re-establishment of key predators. (Much additional research is needed on the effects of community structure on resilience.)



#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 • Protecting habitats similar to those that thrived during the middle Holocene, when coral reefs flourished  
2 north of their current distribution, could allow for northward range migration. (This would be contingent  
3 on mitigation of existing stressors that may otherwise limit the ability of corals to migrate.)
- 4 • Mangrove restoration not only provides habitat and shoreline protection, but is also a source of  
5 dissolved organic compounds that have been shown to provide protection from photo-oxidative stress  
6 in corals.

#### **Conclusions**

7  
8  
9 Environmental problems that spurred the creation of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary are  
10 already being exacerbated by climate change, in particular coral bleaching and disease. Some of the  
11 management protections to reduce other anthropogenic stressors may also increase coral reef resilience  
12 and allow range expansion northward in response to climate change. Monitoring and research can  
13 identify bleaching resistant and resilient sites, so that protection efforts can be adjusted for future climate  
14 conditions.  
15

1 **Case Study Summary 8.2**  
2

3 **Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**

4 Northeastern Australia

---

5  
6 **Why this case study was chosen**

7 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park:

- 8 • Is at the forefront of climate change adaptation planning for marine protected areas (MPAs) and is thus  
9 an excellent model for U.S. MPAs;
- 10 • Has exhibited signs of climate change effects, with increases in coral bleaching events and seabird  
11 nesting failures correlated with increases in sea and air temperatures;
- 12 • Has a high conservation value as a World Heritage Area and as the largest coral reef ecosystem in the  
13 world;
- 14 • Is an example of an MPA with a moderate level of no-take protection.

15  
16 **Management context**

17 The Great Barrier Reef (GBR) Marine Park has been under a management regime since 1975. Marine  
18 park zoning was revised in 2003 to increase no-take zones to 33% of the total area, with at least 20%  
19 protected in each habitat bioregion. Also in 2003, the Reef Water Quality Protection Plan was  
20 implemented to manage diffuse sources of pollution entering the GBR from the adjacent large catchment  
21 area. Tourism and fishing industries are highly regulated through the GBR Marine Park Authority and the  
22 Queensland Government, respectively. The GBR coast is one of the fastest growing regions in Australia,  
23 with different aspects of coastal development regulated at the local, state, and federal levels. The GBR  
24 Climate Change Response Program developed a Climate Change Action Plan in 2007 to facilitate: 1)  
25 targeted science; 2) a resilient GBR ecosystem; 3) adaptation of GBR industries and communities; and 4)  
26 reduced climate footprints.

27  
28 **Key climate change impacts**

- 29 • Observed increase in regional sea surface temperatures (0.4°C since 1850) and projected further  
30 increase of 1–3°C by 2100, which will increase coral bleaching and disease, and will have implications  
31 for primary productivity;
- 32 • Projected decrease in ocean pH of 0.4–0.5 units by 2100, which will limit calcification rates of corals,  
33 forams, some plankton and molluscs;
- 34 • Projected rise in sea level of 30–60 cm by 2100, which will affect seabird and turtle nesting, island and  
35 coastal habitats, light penetration, and connectivity;
- 36 • Projected increase in tropical cyclone intensities, with potentially greater damage to coastal and  
37 shallow habitats including coral reefs;
- 38 • Projected changes in rainfall, river flow, and El Niño Southern Oscillation regimes;
- 39 • Expected losses of coral reef habitat, with associated decreases in ecosystem diversity and changes in  
40 community composition.

41  
42 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 43 • Areas with high resilience factors (water quality, coral cover, community composition, larval supply,  
44 recruitment success, herbivory, disease, and effective management) are being identified as priority  
45 areas to protect from other stresses; areas with low resilience are also being identified as candidates  
46 for more active management to improve their condition.
- 47 • Landward areas could be conserved through land acquisition and removal of barrier structures to allow  
48 migration of mangroves and wetlands as sea level rises.
- 49 • Sites of specific importance could be protected from coral bleaching through artificial shading or water  
50 mixing in summer months;
- 51 • Through partnerships with stakeholders to identify impacts on tourism, options for how the industry can  
52 respond, and strategies for becoming climate ready, the GBR has developed a Marine Tourism and  
53 Climate Change Action Strategy.

#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- By having a variety of management tools ready as new information becomes available, it may be possible to manage flexibly and respond rapidly to ongoing climatic changes.

#### **Conclusions**

The GBR Climate Change Response Program has already documented observed climate change effects, identified likely vulnerabilities, and developed a Climate Change Action Plan. The combination of dramatic potential ecosystem effects and a strong national and international constituency for protection has made the GBR Marine Park an international leader in addressing climate change impacts on coral reefs.

Management examples for other MPAs include initiatives that support local industries and communities in adapting to climate change, management plans that are flexible in the face of uncertainty, and resilience-based management strategies.

1 **Case Study Summary 8.3**  
2

3 **Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National**  
4 **Monument**

5 Pacific United States

---

6  
7 **Why this case study was chosen**

8 The Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National Monument:

- 9 • Provides an opportunity to assess how a nearly intact, large-scale coral reef ecosystem responds to  
10 climate change;  
11 • Has a high conservation value due to high levels of endemism, a unique apex-predator-dominated  
12 ecosystem, and the occurrence of a number of protected and endangered species;  
13 • Is an example of a large Marine Protected Area with a high level of no-take protection.  
14

15 **Management context**

16 The Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) are an isolated, low lying, primarily uninhabited archipelago  
17 that is relatively free from human impacts due to its remoteness. Eight of the 10 NWHI have been  
18 protected since 1909 as part of what is now the Hawaiian Islands National Wildlife Refuge. The  
19 Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument was designated in 2006 as the largest marine  
20 protected area in the world, managed jointly by the State of Hawaii, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service,  
21 and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. The new protections will phase out  
22 commercial fishing over five years, and already ban other types of resource extraction and waste  
23 dumping. The dominant stressors are natural ones, including large inter- and intra-annual water  
24 temperature variations, seasonally high wave energy, and inter-annual and inter-decadal variability in  
25 ocean productivity. Marine debris is the largest anthropogenic stressor; a debris removal program  
26 between 1999 and 2003 resulted in a removal of historical debris accumulation, but the current level of  
27 effort is not sufficient to keep up with the annual rate of accumulation. The draft Monument Management  
28 Plan does not address climate and ocean change management actions specifically, but many of the  
29 research, monitoring, and education plans focus on climate, which will provide managers with tools for  
30 addressing climate change.  
31

32 **Key climate change impacts**

- 33 • Projected increase in the intensity of storm events, which will in turn intensify wave impacts on habitat;  
34 • Projected decreases in important habitat for sea turtles, endangered monk seals, and seabirds as sea  
35 level rise inundates low-lying emergent areas;  
36 • Expected increase in temperature-related coral bleaching events like those observed in 2002 and  
37 2004;  
38 • Projected increases in ocean temperature that could lead to shifts in the distribution of corals and other  
39 organisms; shallow-water species that are adapted to cooler water may see habitat loss, while those  
40 adapted to warmer water might extend their range.  
41

42 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 43  
44 • Monitoring and research provide an opportunity to evaluate the hypothesis that large, intact predator-  
45 dominated ecosystems are more resistant and resilient to stressors, including climate change, and  
46 expanded efforts will help better understand how climate change affects an ecosystem in the absence  
47 of localized human stressors.  
48 • The Coral Reef Ecosystem Integrated Observing System (CREIOS) serves to alert resource managers  
49 and researchers to environmental events considered significant to the health of the surrounding coral  
50 reef ecosystem, allowing managers to implement response measures in a timely manner and allowing  
51 researchers to increase spatial or temporal sampling resolution, if warranted; with supplementary  
52 sensors, CREIOS can help to capture climate change impacts at finer spatial and temporal scales than  
53 currently exist.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

- 1 • The draft monument science plan includes several specific climate change research activities, including  
2 determining habitat changes due to sea level rise; mapping areas that will be most affected by extreme  
3 wave events; and determining how specific habitat, communities, and populations will be affected by  
4 climate change effects.
- 5 • Beach nourishment could counter the effects of sea level rise on the habitats of critical endemic and  
6 protected species.

7  
8 **Conclusions**

9 The high level of protection, the healthy intact predator-dominated ecosystem, the limited human impact,  
10 and the current ocean observing system present a unique research opportunity for studying adaptation to  
11 climate change in the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument (PMNM). An increased  
12 understanding of natural resistance and resilience in this system will inform management planning in  
13 other marine protected areas. To date, management goals for adapting the PMNM to climate change  
14 have not looked beyond efforts to understand the system, but as endangered species habitat becomes  
15 affected, more active management efforts will be necessary.  
16

1 **Case Study Summary 8.4**  
2

3 **Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

4 Western United States

---

5  
6 **Why this case study was chosen**

7 The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary:

- 8 • Supports a diverse community based around the dominant, habitat-forming, giant kelp forests;
- 9 • Is sensitive to natural variability and has exhibited large responses to El Niño Southern Oscillation events, in particular;
- 10 • Encompasses a biogeographic boundary between the warm waters of the Davidson Current and the
- 11 cool, nutrient-rich waters of the California Current.
- 12
- 13

14 **Management context**

15 The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary was designated in 1980 and was managed through  
16 overlapping state and federal jurisdictions. In 2003, 10 new fully protected marine reserves and two  
17 conservation areas that allow limited take were established to protect marine habitats and species of  
18 interest. The network of marine protected areas, which was designed with input from a broad array of  
19 stakeholders, offers additional protection to 10% of sanctuary waters. In 2007, the sanctuary implemented  
20 a second phase of the network of marine protected areas, by extending seven reserves and one  
21 conservation area into federal waters and adding a reserve to form a network of marine protected areas  
22 that includes 21% of sanctuary waters. The Sanctuary Management Plan includes a mechanism for  
23 addressing emerging issues; climate change has not yet been, but could be, explicitly identified as an  
24 emerging issue.

25  
26 **Key climate change impacts**

- 27 • Projected increases in storm intensity that may increase damage to kelp stocks and rip kelp holdfasts  
28 from their rocky substrate;
- 29 • Projected increase in frequency of El Niño-like conditions, which may suppress kelp growth by lowering  
30 nutrient levels due to associated relaxation of coastal winds;
- 31 • Projected increase in water temperature, which will affect metabolism, growth, reproduction, rates of  
32 larval development, spread of non-native species, and outbreaks of marine disease;
- 33 • Projected changes in currents and upwelling that may affect the location of biogeographic boundaries,  
34 and change primary productivity and species assemblages.
- 35

36 **Opportunities for adaptation**

- 37 • Marine reserves can be used as a management tool to increase resilience of kelp forest communities;  
38 in a marine reserve where fishing has been prohibited since 1978, kelp forests were less vulnerable to  
39 storms, ocean warming, overgrazing, lower nutrient concentrations, and disease compared with other  
40 areas of the sanctuary.
- 41 • With a slight adjustment, monitoring and research can be refocused to capture important information  
42 about climate and ocean change; observed changes associated with climate could be used to trigger  
43 more intensive observations.
- 44 • Outreach mechanisms such as the Sanctuary Naturalist Corps, Ocean Etiquette program, and  
45 sanctuary publications are well positioned to communicate information to the public on climate change  
46 impacts, mitigation, and adaptation options.
- 47 • Protection in reserves and more hands-on techniques, such as removal of non-indigenous species,  
48 could preserve the integrity of marine communities in the sanctuary.
- 49

50 **Conclusions**

51 The high degree of natural environmental variability in the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary  
52 supports remarkable biological diversity. Climate change, in concert with anthropogenic stressors, will  
53 likely intensify the range of variability of the system. A marine reserve within the sanctuary has allowed  
54 kelp forests to flourish and increased their resilience to environmental shifts, such as those associated

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

1 with El Niño events. Similarly, marine reserves are likely to be effective tools for minimizing the negative  
2 ecological impacts of climate change. The Sanctuary Management Plan is an appropriate mechanism for  
3 identifying climate change as an emerging issue and developing a strategic plan for management of  
4 climate change impacts, and for research, education, and outreach about climate change.  
5

1 **8.10 Tables**

2 **Table 8.1.** Types of federal marine protected and marine managed areas, administration, and  
 3 legislative mandates. MPAs are intended primarily to protect or conserve marine life and habitat,  
 4 and are a subset of marine managed areas (MMAs), which protect, conserve, or otherwise  
 5 manage a variety of resources and uses including living marine resources, cultural and historical  
 6 resources, and recreational opportunities.<sup>42</sup>

Type of MPA/MMA	Number of Sites	Administration	Mandate
National Marine Sanctuary	13	NOAA/National Marine Sanctuary Program	National Marine Sanctuaries Act
Fishery Management Areas	216	NOAA/National Marine Fisheries Service	Magnuson-Stevens Act, Endangered Species Act, Marine Mammal Protection Act
National Estuarine Research Reserve <sup>43</sup>	27	NOAA/Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management	Coastal Zone Management Act
National Park	42	National Park Service	NPS Organic Act
National Monument <sup>44</sup>	3	National Park Service	NPS Organic Act
National Wildlife Refuge	109	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service	National Wildlife Refuge System Administration Act

7

<sup>42</sup> **California Department of Fish and Game**, 2007: Marine life protection act initiatives. California Department of Fish and Game Website, <http://www.dfg.ca.gov/mrd/mlpa/defs.html#mma>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>43</sup> The National Estuarine Research Reserve System is a state partnership program.

<sup>44</sup> The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument is included here. It is co-managed by NOAA/National Marine Sanctuary Program and National Marine Fisheries Service, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii and was established by Presidential Proclamation 8031.



1 **Table 8.2.** Type, number, area, and no-take area of federal marine managed areas (MMAs) and  
 2 areas of Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZs) by region in U.S. waters.<sup>45</sup>

Federal Marine Managed Areas (MMAs) in U.S. Waters (0-200 nm)						
Region	Type of MMA	Number	Total Area (km <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>46</sup>	Total Area No Take (km <sup>2</sup> )	% Area No Take	Area of EEZ in Region (km <sup>2</sup> )
New England						197,227
	NP	0	0	0	0%	
	NWR	1	30	0	0%	
	NMS	1	2,190	0	0%	
	FMA	30	212,930	0	0%	
	NERR <sup>47</sup>	1	27	0	0%	
Mid Atlantic						218,151
	NP	3	36,472	0	0%	
	NWR	22	15	0	0%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	9	686,379	0	0%	
	NERR	5	460	0	0%	
South Atlantic						525,627
	NP	8	1,421	119	8%	
	NWR	19	3,705	564	15%	
	NMS	3	9,853	591	6%	
	FMA	11	974,243	349	<0.1 %	
	NERR	5	928	0	0%	
Caribbean						212,371
	NP	2	27	1	2%	
	NWR	0	0	0	0%	
	NM <sup>48</sup>	2	128	76	59%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	6	168	55	33%	
	NERR	1	7	0	0%	
Gulf of Mexico						695,381
	NP	4	4,612	0	0%	
	NWR	24	2,375	2	<0.1%	
	NMS	1	146	0	0%	
	FMA	7	368,446	0	0%	
	NERR	5	2,195	0	0%	
West Coast						823,866
	NP	6	595	0	0%	
	NWR	15	226	16	7%	
	NMS	5	30,519	257	1%	
	FMA	56	386,869	0	0%	
	NERR	5	57	0	0%	
Alaska						3,710,774
	NP	3	29,795	0	0%	
	NWR	3	212,620	0	0%	
	NMS	0	0	0	0%	
	FMA	17	1,326,177	0	0%	
	NERR	1	931	0	0%	
Pacific Islands						3,869,806
	NP	4	21	< 1	<1%	
	NWR	10	281	158	56%	
	NM48	1	352,754	352,754	100%	
	NMS	3	3,556	1	<1%	
	FMA	6	1,467,614	0	0%	
	NERR	0	0	0	0%	
<b>National Total</b>						<b>10,413,230</b>

<sup>45</sup> **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2006: Marine Protected Areas of the United States: marine managed areas inventory. Marine Protected Areas Website, <http://www3.mpa.gov/exploreinv/AlphaSearch.aspx>, accessed on 2006.

<sup>46</sup> Total area includes only those sites for which data are available.

<sup>47</sup> NERRs are state/federal partnership sites.

<sup>48</sup> The Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Marine National Monument is scheduled to become a no-take area in five years when all fishing is phased out. This site has been included in the no-take category and will be the largest no-take MPA in the United States.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Marine Protected Areas**

<b>NP</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>72,943</b>	<b>120</b>	<b>0.16%</b>
<b>NWR</b>	<b>109</b>	<b>219,252</b>	<b>740</b>	<b>0.34%</b>
<b>NM</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>352,882</b>	<b>352,882</b>	<b>100%</b>
<b>NMS</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>46,264</b>	<b>591</b>	<b>1.3%</b>
<b>FMA</b>	<b>216</b>	<b>5,422,826</b>	<b>488</b>	<b>0.01%</b>
<b>NERR47</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>4,606</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0.00%</b>
<b>TOTAL ALL FEDERAL MMAS<sup>49</sup></b>	<b>410</b>	<b>6,118,773</b>	<b>354,820</b>	<b>5.8%</b>

- 1
- 2 New England: Maine to Connecticut, Mid Atlantic: New York to Virginia, South Atlantic: North
- 3 Carolina to Florida. NP: National Parks, NWR: National Wildlife Refuges, NMS: National
- 4 Marine Sanctuaries, FMA: Fishery Management Areas, NERR: National Estuarine Research
- 5 Reserves, and NM: National Monuments.

---

<sup>49</sup> This total is corrected for overlapping jurisdictions of Federal MMAs.

1 **Table 8.3.** Sites in the National Marine Sanctuary Program. Regions: PC = Pacific Coast, PI =  
 2 Pacific Islands, SE = Southeast Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and Caribbean, NE = Northeast.<sup>4</sup>  
 3  
 4

Site	Location	Region	Year Designated	Size (km <sup>2</sup> )	Yr of First Mgt Plan	Status of Mgt Plan Revision
Channel Islands	CA	PC	1980	4,263	1983	2007 planned publication
Cordell Bank	CA	PC	1989	1,362	1989	Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review <sup>50</sup>
Fagatele Bay	Amer. Samoa	PI	1986	0.66	1984	Ongoing
Florida Keys	FL	SE	1990	9,844	1996	2007 planned publication
Flower Garden Banks	TX	SE	1992	2.0	In preparation	
Gray's Reef	GA	SE	1981	58	1983	Published 2006
Gulf of the Farallones	CA	PC	1981	3,252	1983	Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review
Hawaiian Islands HW <sup>51</sup>	HI	PI	1992	3,548	1997	Published 2002
Monitor <sup>52</sup>	NC	NE	1975	4.1	1997 <sup>53</sup>	
Monterey Bay	CA	PC	1992	13,784	1992	Central CA Joint Mgt Plan Review
Olympic Coast	WA	PC	1994	8,573	1994	Ongoing
Papahānaumokuākea MNM <sup>54</sup>	HI	PI	2006	~360,000	In preparation	
Stellwagen Bank	MA	NE	1992	2,188	1993	2007 planned publication
Thunder Bay	MI	NE	2000	1,160	1999	Ongoing
Key Largo <sup>55</sup>	FL		1975	353		
Looe Key	FL		1981	18		

5  
6

<sup>50</sup> The Central California Joint Management Plan Review is a coordinated process to obtain public comments on draft management plans, proposed rules, and draft environmental impact statements for the three Central California Sanctuaries.

<sup>51</sup> HW = humpback whale.

<sup>52</sup> The Monitor (<http://monitor.noaa.gov/>) and Thunder Bay (<http://thunderbay.noaa.gov/>) NMSs were designated for protection of maritime heritage resources.

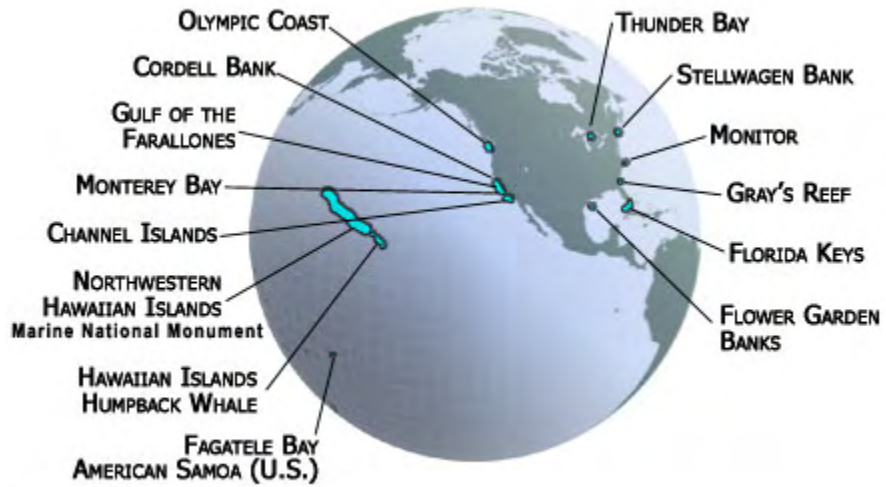
<sup>53</sup> This plan is actually a comprehensive, long-range preservation plan for the Civil War ironclad U.S.S. *Monitor*.

<sup>54</sup> The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument is co-managed by NOAA/National Marine Sanctuary Program and National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii.

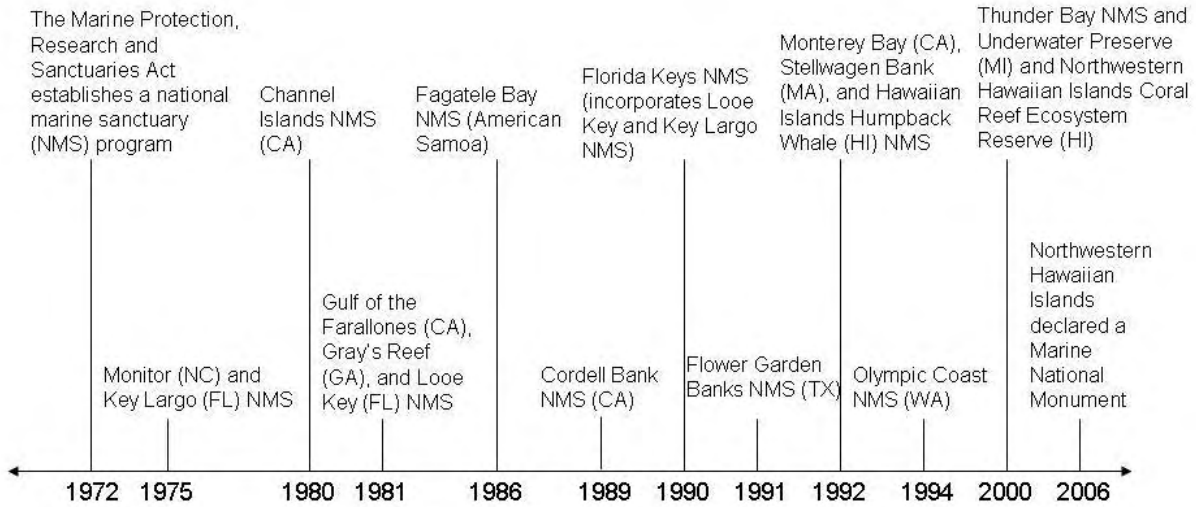
<sup>55</sup> The Key Largo and Looe Key NMSs were subsumed within the Florida Keys NMS as Existing Management Areas.

1 **8.11 Figures**

2 **Figure 8.1.** Locations of the 14 MPAs that compose the National Marine Sanctuary System.<sup>4</sup>



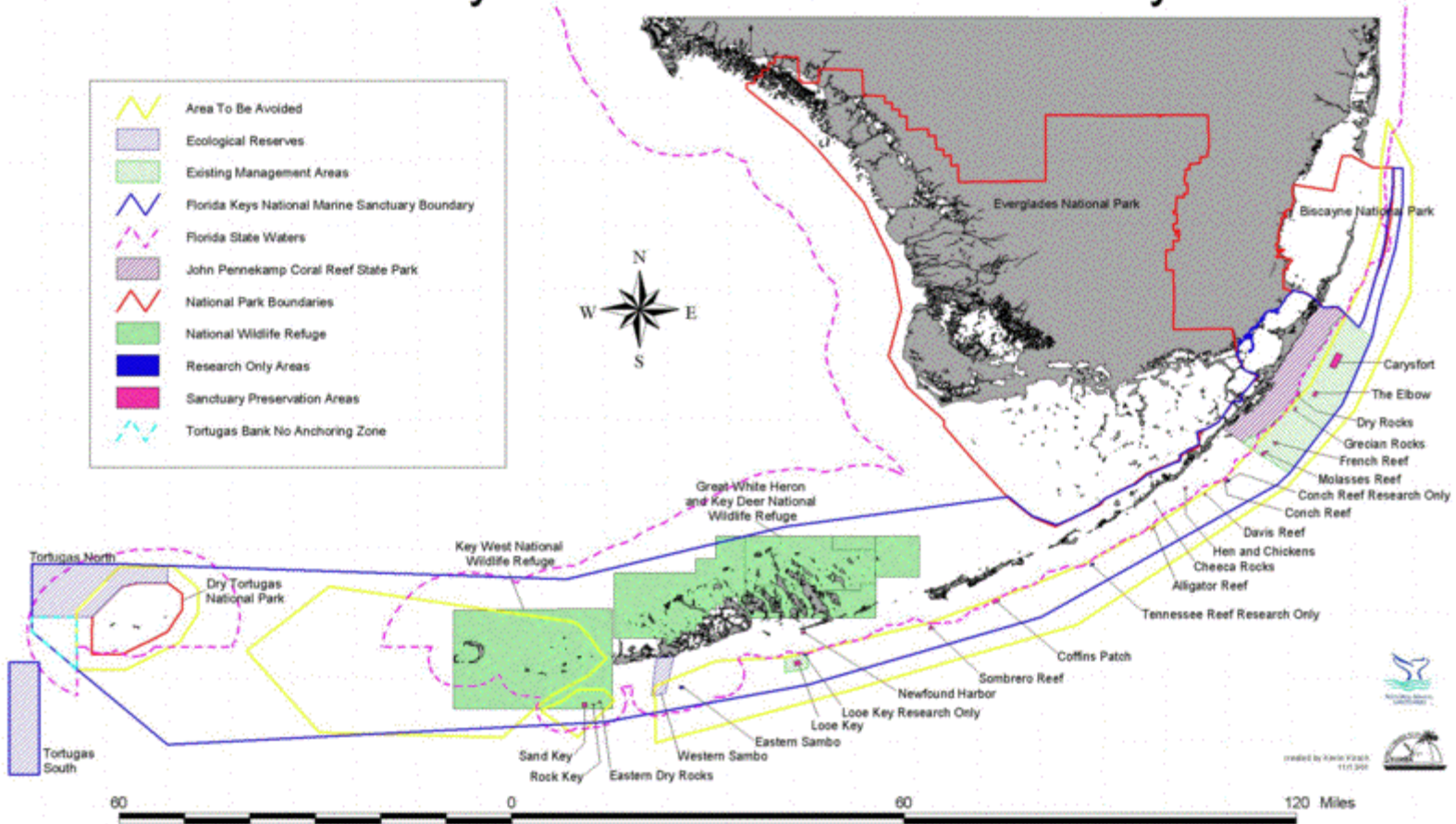
1 **Figure 8.2.** Timeline of the designation of the national marine sanctuaries in the National Marine  
2 Sanctuary Program.<sup>6</sup>  
3



4  
5

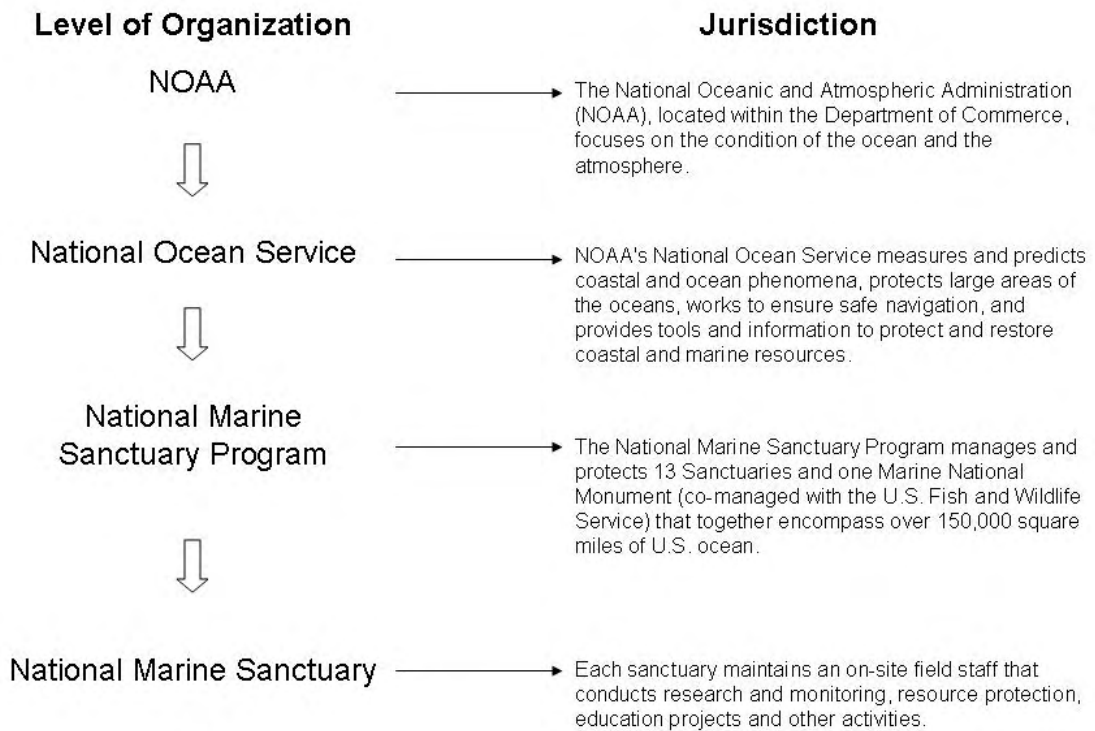
1 **Figure 8.3.** Map of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. The 1990 designation did not include the Tortugas Ecological  
 2 Reserve located at the western end of the sanctuary, which was implemented in 2001. The Key Largo NMS corresponded to the  
 3 Existing Management Area (EMA) just offshore of the John Pennekamp Coral Reef State Park; the Looe Key NMS corresponded to  
 4 the EMA surrounding the Looe Key Sanctuary Preservation Area and Research Only Area.<sup>8</sup>

## Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary



5  
6

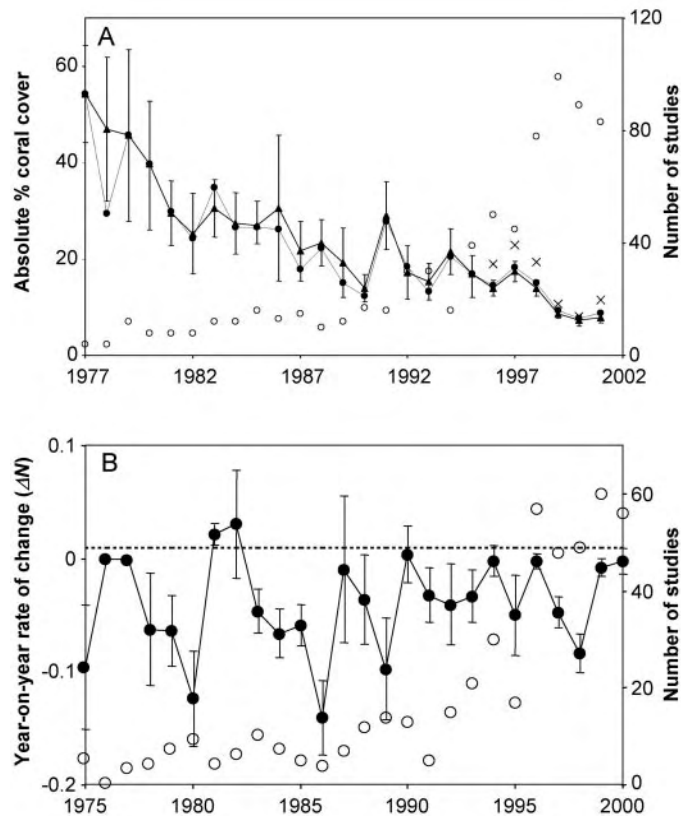
1 **Figure 8.4.** Organizational chart of the National Marine Sanctuary Program.<sup>9</sup>  
 2



Adapted from <http://www.oceanservice.noaa.gov/programs/>

3

1 **Figure 8.5.** Total observed change in coral cover (%) across the Caribbean basin over the past 25  
 2 years (Gardner *et al.*, 2003). A. Coral cover (%) 1977–2001. Annual estimates ( $\blacktriangle$ ) are weighted  
 3 means with 95% bootstrap confidence intervals. Also shown are unweighted estimates ( $\bullet$ ),  
 4 unweighted mean coral cover with the Florida Keys Coral Reef Monitoring Project (1996-2001)  
 5 omitted ( $\times$ ), and the number of studies each year ( $\circ$ ). B. Year-on-year rate of change (mean  $\Delta N \pm$   
 6 SE) in coral cover (%) for all sites reporting two consecutive years of data 1975-2000 ( $\bullet$ ) and the  
 7 number of studies for each two-year period ( $\circ$ ).  
 8



9



## 9 Synthesis and Conclusions

### Authors

#### Lead Author

Peter Kareiva, The Nature Conservancy

#### Contributing Authors

Carolyn Enquist, The Nature Conservancy

Ayana Johnson, University of California, San Diego

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

Joshua Lawler, Oregon State University

Brian Petersen, University of California, Santa Cruz

Louis Pitelka, University of Maryland

Rebecca Shaw, The Nature Conservancy

Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

**Chapter Contents**

1  
2  
3 9.1 Summary ..... 9-3  
4 9.2 Introduction..... 9-5  
5 9.3 Assessing Impacts to Support Adaptation ..... 9-6  
6 9.3.1 Mental Models for Making Adaptation Decisions..... 9-6  
7 9.3.2 Elements of an Impact Assessment..... 9-7  
8 9.3.3 Uncertainty and How to Incorporate it Into Assessments ..... 9-13  
9 9.4 Best Practices for Adaptation..... 9-16  
10 9.4.1 Resilience..... 9-16  
11 9.4.2 Adaptation Approaches..... 9-18  
12 9.4.3 Confidence ..... 9-21  
13 9.4.4 Adaptive Management ..... 9-23  
14 9.5 Barriers and Opportunities for Adaptation ..... 9-25  
15 9.5.1 Legislation and Regulation ..... 9-27  
16 9.5.2 Management Policies and Procedures ..... 9-28  
17 9.5.3 Human and Financial Capital..... 9-30  
18 9.5.4 Information and Science ..... 9-31  
19 9.6 Advancing the Nation’s Capability to Adapt..... 9-33  
20 9.6.1 Re-Evaluate Priorities and Consider Triage ..... 9-34  
21 9.6.2 Manage at Appropriate Scales ..... 9-35  
22 9.6.3 Manage for Change..... 9-35  
23 9.6.4 Expand Interagency Collaboration, Integration, and Lesson-Sharing ..... 9-36  
24 9.7 Conclusions..... 9-38  
25 9.8 References..... 9-40  
26 9.9 Appendix: Resources for Assessing Climate Vulnerability And Impacts ..... 9-47  
27 9.10 Boxes..... 9-49  
28 9.11 Tables..... 9-56  
29 9.12 Figures..... 9-65  
30

## 1 **9.1 Summary**

2 The Nation’s public lands and waters traditionally have been managed using frameworks and  
3 objectives that were established under an assumption of stable climate and the potential of  
4 achieving specific desirable conditions. Climate change implies that past experience may not  
5 apply and that the assumption of a stable climate is in some regions untenable. Previous chapters  
6 in this report examine a selected group of management systems (National Forests, National  
7 Parks, National Wildlife Refuges, Wild and Scenic Rivers, National Estuaries, and Marine  
8 Protected Areas) and assess how these management systems can adapt to climate change. Using  
9 these chapters and their case studies, as well as more general scientific literature concerning  
10 adaptive management and climate change, this chapter presents a synthesis of suggested  
11 principles and management approaches for federal management agencies as well as other  
12 resource managers.

13  
14 *A useful starting point for adaptation is to analyze management goals, assess impacts, and*  
15 *characterize uncertainty.*

16 To inform adaptation decisions, the first step is to clarify the management goals that have been  
17 established for the system being studied. This information may then be used to define the  
18 boundaries of the impact assessment, including geographic scope, focal species, and other  
19 parameters. Within these boundaries, components of the assessment may then include  
20 developing conceptual models, assessing available ecological data and establishing baseline  
21 information on system functioning, assessing available climate data, selecting impacts models,  
22 conducting scenario and sensitivity analyses that depict alternative futures, and characterizing  
23 uncertainty. Information from impact assessments helps determine whether existing monitoring  
24 programs need to be adjusted, or new ones established, to track changes in variables that  
25 represent triggers for threshold changes in ecosystems or that reflect overall resilience. Such  
26 monitoring programs can inform the location and timing of needed adaptation actions as well as  
27 the effectiveness of such actions once they are implemented. However, because of the high  
28 degree of uncertainty about the magnitude and temporal/spatial scale of climate change impacts,  
29 managers may find it difficult to translate results from impact assessments into practical  
30 management actions. The solution is not to view scenario results as “predictions” that support  
31 planning for “most likely” outcomes. Rather, it is to select a range of future scenarios that  
32 capture the breadth of realistic outcomes and develop robust adaptation responses that address  
33 this full range.

34  
35 *A variety of adaptation approaches can be used to apply existing and new practices to promote*  
36 *resilience to climate change*

37 Resilience may be defined as the amount of change or disturbance that an ecosystem can absorb  
38 without undergoing a fundamental shift to a different set of processes and structures. Many  
39 adaptation approaches suggested below are already being used to address a variety of other  
40 environmental stressors; however, their application may need to be adjusted to ensure their  
41 effectiveness for climate adaptation. These approaches include (1) protecting key ecosystem  
42 features that form the underpinnings of a system; (2) reducing anthropogenic stresses that erode  
43 resilience; (3) increasing representation of different genotypes, species, and communities under  
44 protection; (4) increasing the number of replicate units of each ecosystem type under protection;  
45 (5) restoring ecosystems that have been compromised or lost; (6) identifying and using areas that

1 are “refuges” from climate change; and (7) relocating organisms to appropriate habitats as  
2 conditions change.

3  
4 Reducing anthropogenic stresses is an approach for which there is considerable scientific  
5 confidence in its ability to promote resilience for virtually any situation. The effectiveness of the  
6 other approaches—including protecting key ecosystem features, representation, replication,  
7 restoration, identifying refuges, and especially relocation—is much more uncertain and will  
8 depend on a clear understanding of how the ecosystem in question functions, the extent and type  
9 of climate change that will occur there, and the resulting ecosystem impacts. One method to  
10 implement adaptation approaches under such conditions of uncertainty is adaptive management.  
11 Adaptive management is a process that promotes flexible decision making, such that adjustments  
12 are made in decisions as outcomes from management actions and other events are better  
13 understood. This method requires careful monitoring of management results to advance scientific  
14 understanding and to help adjust policies or operations as part of an iterative learning process.

15  
16 *Barriers to implementation of existing and new adaptation practices may be used as*  
17 *opportunities for strategic thinking.*

18 Providing information on adaptation approaches and specific strategies may not be enough to  
19 assist managers in addressing climate change impacts. Actual or perceived barriers may inhibit  
20 or prevent implementation of some types of adaptation. Identifying and understanding those  
21 barriers could facilitate critical adjustments to increase successful implementation and adaptive  
22 capacity of organizations. Four main types of barriers affecting implementation are (1)  
23 interpretation of legislative goals, (2) restrictive management procedures, (3) limitations on  
24 human and financial capital, and (4) gaps in information. Identifying a potential barrier, such as  
25 gaps in information or expertise necessary for implementing adaptation strategies, provides the  
26 basis for finding a solution, such as linking with other managers to coordinate training and  
27 research activities or sharing data and monitoring strategies to test scientific hypotheses. The  
28 challenge of turning barriers into opportunities may vary in the amount and degree of effort  
29 required, the levels of management necessary to engage, and the length of time needed. For  
30 example, re-evaluating management capabilities in light of existing authorities and legislation to  
31 expand their breadth may require more time, effort, and involvement of high level decision  
32 makers compared with altering the timing of management activities to take advantage of  
33 seasonal changes. Nevertheless, it should be possible to undertake strategic thinking and reshape  
34 priorities to convert barriers into opportunities to successfully implement adaptation.

35  
36 *Beyond the adaptation options reviewed in this report, key activities to ensure the Nation’s*  
37 *capability to adapt include applying triage, determining appropriate scales of response, and*  
38 *reassessing management goals.*

39 Our capability to respond appropriately to climate change impacts will depend on (1) developing  
40 systematic approaches for triage (*i.e.*, a form of prioritizing adaptation actions), (2) determining  
41 the appropriate geographic and temporal scales of response to climate change, and (3) assessing  
42 whether current management goals will continue to be relevant in the future, or whether they  
43 need to be adjusted. Triage involves maximizing the effectiveness of existing resources by re-  
44 evaluating current goals and management targets in light of observed and projected ecological  
45 changes. The goal is to determine those management actions that are worthwhile to continue and  
46 those that may need to be abandoned. To assess the appropriate scales of response, consideration

1 of observed and projected ecological changes are again needed. In the event that impacts are  
2 broader than single management units or occur at predictable periods through time, the spatial,  
3 temporal, and biological scope of management plans may need to be systematically broadened  
4 and integrated to increase the capacity to adapt beyond that of any given unit.

5  
6 Over time, some ecosystems may undergo state changes such that managing for resilience will  
7 no longer be feasible. In these cases, adapting to climate change would require more than simply  
8 changing management practices—it could require changing management goals. In other words,  
9 when climate change has such strong impacts that original management goals are untenable, the  
10 prudent course may be to alter the goals. At such a point, it will be necessary to manage for and  
11 embrace change. Climate change requires new patterns of thinking and greater agility in  
12 management planning and activities in order to respond to the inherent uncertainty of the  
13 challenge.

## 14 **9.2 Introduction**

15 Today’s natural resource planning and management practices were developed under relatively  
16 stable climatic conditions in the last century, and under a theoretical notion that ecological  
17 systems tend toward a natural equilibrium state for which one could manage. Most natural  
18 resource planning, management, and monitoring methodologies that are in place today are still  
19 based on the assumption that climate, species distributions, and ecological processes will remain  
20 stable, save for the direct impacts of management actions and historical interannual variability.  
21 Indeed, many government entities identify a “reference condition” based on historical ranges of  
22 variability as a guide to future desired conditions (Dixon, 2003).

23  
24 Although mainstream management practices typically follow these traditional assumptions, in  
25 recent years resource managers have recognized that climatic influences on ecosystems in the  
26 future will be increasingly complex and often outside the range of historical variability and,  
27 accordingly, more sophisticated management plans are needed to ensure that goals can continue  
28 to be met. By transforming management and goal-setting approaches from a static, equilibrium  
29 view of the natural world to a highly dynamic, uncertain, and variable framework, major  
30 advances in managing for change can be made, and thus adaptation is possible.

31  
32 As resource managers become aware of climate change and the challenges it poses, a major  
33 limitation is lack of guidance on what steps to take, especially guidance that is commensurate  
34 with agency cultures and the practical experiences that managers have accumulated from years  
35 of dealing with other stresses such as droughts, fires, and pest and pathogen outbreaks. Thus, it is  
36 the intent in this chapter to synthesize the lessons learned from across the previous chapters  
37 together with recent theoretical work concerning adaptive management and resource  
38 management under uncertainty, and discuss how managers can (1) assess the impacts of climate  
39 change on their systems and goals (Section 9.3), (2) identify best practice approaches for  
40 adaptation (Section 9.4), and (3) evaluate barriers and opportunities associated with  
41 implementation (Section 9.5). When it comes to management, the institutional mandates and  
42 objectives determine the management constraints and in turn the response to changing climate.  
43 As a result, the discussion and synthesis are framed around the institutions that manage lands and  
44 waters, as opposed to the ecosystems themselves. It may be the case that certain management  
45 goals are unattainable in the future and no adaptation options exist. In that case the adaptation that

1 takes place would be an alteration of institutional objectives. The final sections of this chapter  
 2 address these circumstances and conclude with observations about how to advance our capability  
 3 to adapt (Sections 9.6 and 9.7), along with approaches for making fundamental shifts in how  
 4 ecosystems are managed to anticipate potential future ecosystem states. These discussions are  
 5 based on the expert opinion of the authors of this report and feedback from expert workshops  
 6 that were composed of resource management scientists and representatives of the managing  
 7 agencies.

## 8 **9.3 Assessing Impacts to Support Adaptation**

### 9 **9.3.1 Mental Models for Making Adaptation Decisions**

10 Within the context of natural resource management, an impact assessment is a means of  
 11 evaluating the sensitivity of a natural system to climate change. Sensitivity is defined by the  
 12 IPCC (2001) as “the degree to which a system is affected, either adversely or beneficially, by  
 13 climate-related stimuli.” An impact assessment is part of a larger process to understand the risks  
 14 posed by climate change, including those social and economic factors that may contribute to or  
 15 ameliorate potential impacts, in order to decide where and when to adapt. In the climate change  
 16 community, this process is well established (see Fig. 9.1a). It begins with an assessment of  
 17 impacts, followed by an evaluation of an entity’s capacity to respond (adaptive capacity). The  
 18 information on impacts is then combined with information on adaptive capacity to determine a  
 19 system’s overall vulnerability. This information becomes the basis for selecting adaptation  
 20 options to implement. The resource managers’ mental model for this larger decision making  
 21 process (see Fig. 9.1b) contains similar elements to the climate community’s model, but  
 22 addresses them in a different sequence of evaluation to planning. The managers’ process begins  
 23 with estimating potential impacts, reviewing all possible management options, evaluating the  
 24 human capacity to respond, and finally deciding on specific management responses. The  
 25 resource management community implicitly combines the information on potential impacts with  
 26 knowledge of their capacity to respond during their planning processes. Since the primary  
 27 audience for this report is the resource management community, the remainder of this discussion  
 28 will follow their conceptual approach to decision making.

29

30

31 **Figure 9.1.** Two conceptual models for describing different processes used by (a) the  
 32 resource management community and (b) the climate community to support adaptation  
 33 decision making. Colors are used to represent similar elements of the different processes.

34

35 The following sub-sections lay out in greater detail some of the key issues and elements of an  
 36 impact assessment, which must necessarily begin with a clear articulation of the goals and  
 37 objectives of the assessment and the decisions that will be informed. This specification largely  
 38 determines the technical approach to be taken in an assessment, including its scope and scale, the  
 39 focal ecosystem components and processes to be studied, the types of tools most appropriate to  
 40 use, and the baseline data and monitoring needed. The final subsection discusses ways in which  
 41 uncertainty inherent in assessments of climate change impacts may be explicitly addressed.

### 1 **9.3.2 Elements of an Impact Assessment**

2 Impact assessments combine (1) our understanding of the current state of the system and its  
 3 processes and functions with (2) drivers of environmental change in order to (3) project potential  
 4 responses to future changes in those drivers. Knowledge of the current state of the system,  
 5 including its critical thresholds and coping ranges, provides the fundamental basis for  
 6 understanding the implications of changes in future conditions. A coping range is the breadth of  
 7 conditions under which a system continues to persist without significant, observable  
 8 consequences, taking into account the system’s natural resilience (Yohe and Tol, 2002). Change  
 9 is not necessarily “bad,” and the fact that a system responds by shifting to a new equilibrium or  
 10 state may not necessarily be a negative outcome. Regardless of the change, it will behoove  
 11 managers to adjust to or take advantage of the anticipated change. Several examples of  
 12 approaches to conducting impact assessments are provided below along with a discussion of the  
 13 types of tools needed and key issues related to conducting impact assessments.

#### 14 **9.3.2.1 A Guiding Framework for Impact Assessments**

15 The aim of a framework to assess impacts is to provide a logical and consistent approach for  
 16 eliciting the information needs of a decision maker, for conducting an assessment as efficiently  
 17 as possible, and for producing credible and useful results. While impact assessments are  
 18 routinely done to examine the ecological effects of various environmental stressors, the need to  
 19 incorporate changes in climate variables adds significantly to the spatial and temporal scales of  
 20 the assessment, and hence its complexity. One example framework, developed by Johnson and  
 21 Weaver (in press) for natural resource managers, is responsive to these and other concerns that  
 22 have been raised by those who work with climate data to conduct impact assessments. This  
 23 framework is described in Box 9.1.

24  
 25 A number of other frameworks have been developed as well. For example, within the  
 26 international conservation arena, a successful framework for managers has been developed by  
 27 The Nature Conservancy.<sup>1</sup> The steps include (1) identifying the management goal and climate  
 28 threat to that goal; (2) selecting measurable indicators; (3) determining the limits of acceptable  
 29 variation in the indicators; (4) assessing the current status of the system with respect to meeting  
 30 management goals, as well as with respect to the indicators; and (5) analyzing data on indicators  
 31 to decide whether a change in management is required. These five steps were agreed upon by the  
 32 Conservation Measures Partnership,<sup>2</sup> which includes the African Wildlife Foundation,  
 33 Conservation International, The Nature Conservancy, the Wildlife Conservation Society, and the  
 34 World Wide Fund for Nature/World Wildlife Fund. By melding these steps with an assessment  
 35 of the costs of any management response (including “no response” as one option), it should be  
 36 possible to offer practical guidance.

---

<sup>1</sup> **The Nature Conservancy**, 2007: Conservation action planning. The Nature Conservancy,  
<http://conserveonline.org/workspaces/cbdgateway/cap>, accessed on 6-11-2007.

<sup>2</sup> **Conservation Measures Partnership**, 2007: Active initiatives. The Conservation Measures Partnership Website,  
[http://conservationmeasures.org/CMP/Initiatives\\_Active.cfm](http://conservationmeasures.org/CMP/Initiatives_Active.cfm), accessed on 6-11-2007.

### 1 **9.3.2.2 Tools to Assess Impacts**

2 The example frameworks described in the previous section reference two key types of tools:  
 3 models that represent the climate system as a driver of ecological change and models that  
 4 embody the physical world to trace the effect of climate drivers through relevant pathways to  
 5 impacts on management endpoints of concern. There are numerous tools that begin to help  
 6 managers anticipate and manage for climate change (see Section 9.9), although characterization  
 7 of uncertainty could be improved, along with “user friendliness” and the ability to frame  
 8 management endpoints in a manner that more closely meshes with the needs of decision makers.  
 9 Fortunately, tool development for impact analysis is one of the most active areas of climate  
 10 research, and greatly improved tools can be expected within the next few years.

#### 11 **Climate Models**

12 Across all types of federal lands, the most widely recognized need for information is the need for  
 13 climate projections at useable scales—scales much finer than those associated with most general  
 14 circulation model (GCM) projections (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). In particular, the  
 15 resolution of current climate-change projections from GCMs is on the order of degrees of  
 16 latitude and longitude (200–500 km<sup>2</sup>). Projections from regional climate models are finer in  
 17 resolution (*e.g.*, 10 km<sup>2</sup>), but are not available for most regions. All climate projections can be  
 18 downscaled using methods that take local topography and local climate patterns into account  
 19 (Wilby *et al.*, 1998). Although relatively coarse climate projections may be useful for  
 20 anticipating general trends, the effects of local topography, large water bodies, and specific  
 21 ecological systems can make coarse predictions highly inaccurate. To be more useful to  
 22 managers, projections will need to be downscaled using methods that account for local climate  
 23 patterns. In addition, climate-change projections will need to be summarized in a way that takes  
 24 their inherent uncertainty into account. That uncertainty arises from the basic model structure,  
 25 the model parameters, and the path of global emissions into the future. Useful future projections  
 26 will provide summaries that take this uncertainty into account and inform managers where the  
 27 projections are more and less certain and, specifically, how confident we can be in a given level  
 28 of change. Several different approaches exist for capturing the range of projected future climates  
 29 (see comparison of approaches in Dettinger, 2005). It also will be important to work with climate  
 30 modelers to ensure that they provide the biologically relevant output variables from the model  
 31 results.  
 32

33  
 34 There are various methods of downscaling GCM data, including dynamical downscaling using  
 35 regional climate models, statistical downscaling, and the change factor approach (a type of  
 36 statistical downscaling). Dynamical downscaling uses physically based regional climate models  
 37 that originate from numerical weather prediction and generate results at a scale of 50 km,  
 38 although some generate results at 10km and finer scales (Georgi, Hewitson, and Christensen,  
 39 2001; Christensen *et al.*, 2007). As their name implies, they are typically run for a region of the  
 40 globe, using GCM outputs as boundary conditions. Statistical downscaling uses various methods  
 41 to estimate a relationship between large-scale climate variables (“predictors”) and finer-scale  
 42 regional or local variables (“predictands”). This relationship is derived from an observed period  
 43 of climate and then applied to the output from GCMs for future projections. This method is also  
 44 used for temporal downscaling to project daily or hourly variables, typically for hydrologic  
 45 analyses (Wilby *et al.*, 2004). Due to the complexity of determining a significant relationship  
 46 between the “predictors” and “predictands,” most studies that use statistical downscaling only



1 use the results from one GCM (*e.g.*, Shongwe, Landman, and Mason, 2006; Spak *et al.*, 2007;  
2 Benestad, Hanssen-Bauer, and Fairland, 2007). The change factor approach to downscaling  
3 involves subtracting the modeled future climate from the control run at the native coarse  
4 resolution of the GCM. These modeled climate “anomalies” are then interpolated to create a  
5 seamless surface of modeled change at a finer resolution. These interpolated data are then added  
6 to the current climate to provide an estimate of future climate. Researchers use the change factor  
7 approach when a rapid assessment of multiple GCMs and emissions scenarios is required (*e.g.*,  
8 Mitchell *et al.*, 2004; Wilby *et al.*, 2004; Scholze *et al.*, 2006; Malcolm *et al.*, 2006).

9  
10 It is becoming increasingly possible to examine multiple GCMs and look for more robust results.  
11 As this approach becomes widespread, the consequences of choosing one particular GCM will  
12 become less important. Moreover, all GCMs are undergoing refinement in models and parameter  
13 estimates. At this point, the key to applying any climate modeling technique is understanding the  
14 sensitivity of results to model selection before results are used to conduct impact assessments.

#### 15 16 **Impact Models to Assess Endpoints of Concern**

17 Climate change impacts may be defined by two factors, (1) the types and magnitude of climate  
18 changes that are likely to affect the target in a given location, and (2) the sensitivity of a given  
19 conservation target to climate change. Assessing the types and magnitude of climate changes that  
20 a population or system is likely to experience will require climate-change projections as well as  
21 projected changes in climate-driven processes such as fire, hydrology, vegetation, and sea level  
22 rise (Chapter 4, National Parks; Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). For example, managing  
23 forests in a changing climate will require data on projected potential changes to vegetation, as  
24 well as detailed data on the current condition of vegetation (Chapter 3, National Forests).

25  
26 As another example, to support managing coastlines, a detailed sea level rise assessment was  
27 undertaken by the USGS for the lower 48 states, and specifically for coastal national parks.<sup>3</sup>  
28 More accurate projections of coastal inundation and saltwater intrusion, such as those based on  
29 LIDAR conducted for the Blackwater National Wildlife Refuge, will require more detailed  
30 elevation data and targeted hydrological modeling (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). One  
31 report that provides information on ongoing mapping efforts by federal and non-federal  
32 researchers related to the implications of sea level rise is Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.1  
33 (in press), produced by the U.S. Climate Change Science Program. Various data layers are  
34 overlaid to develop new results, focusing on a contiguous portion of the U.S. coastal zone (New  
35 York to North Carolina).

36  
37 Sensitivity of target organisms to climate change depends on several aspects of the biology of a  
38 species or the ecological composition and functioning of a system. For example, species that are  
39 physiologically sensitive to changes in temperature or moisture; species that occupy climate-  
40 sensitive habitats such as shallow wetlands, perennial streams, and alpine areas; and species with  
41 limited dispersal abilities will all be more sensitive to climate change (Root and Schneider,  
42 2002). Populations with slow growth rates and populations at a species range boundary are also  
43 likely to be more sensitive to climate change (Pianka, 1970; Lovejoy and Hannah, 2005).  
44 Species, communities, or ecosystems that are highly dependant on specific climate-driven

---

<sup>3</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 2007: Coastal vulnerability assessment of National Park units to sea-level rise. U.S. Geological Survey Website, <http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/project-pages/nps-cvi/>, accessed on 6-11-2007.

1 processes—such as fire regimes, sea level rise, and hydrology—will also be highly sensitive to  
2 climate change.

3  
4 Projected shifts in individual species distributions are generally based on relatively coarse-scale  
5 data (*e.g.*, Pearson *et al.*, 2002; Thuiller *et al.*, 2005). Regional projections of species range shifts  
6 will require more detailed species distribution data. Some of these data already exist (*e.g.*,  
7 through the state Natural Heritage programs), but they need to be organized, catalogued and  
8 standardized. Even when built with finer-scale data, these species-distribution models have their  
9 limitations (Botkin *et al.*, 2007). They should not be seen as providing accurate projections of the  
10 future ranges of individual species, but instead should be viewed as assessments of the likely  
11 responses of plants and animals in general. They can be useful for identifying areas that are  
12 likely to experience more or less change in flora or fauna in a changing climate. In addition, as  
13 with the climate projections, all projections of climate-change impacts will need to include  
14 estimates of the inherent uncertainty and variability associated with the particular model that is  
15 used (*e.g.*, Araújo and New, 2007). Recent analyses indicate that some models perform better  
16 than others. For example, with regard to range shifts, a model-averaging approach (*e.g.*, random  
17 forest models) was compared with five other modeling approaches and was found to have the  
18 greatest potential for accurately predicting range shifts in response to climate change (Lawler *et*  
19 *al.*, 2006).

20  
21 An important consideration for impact analyses is to provide information on endpoints that are  
22 relevant to managers (*e.g.*, loss of valued species such as salmon) rather than those that might  
23 come naturally to ecologists (*e.g.*, changes in species composition or species richness). An  
24 exemplary impact analysis in this regard was a study of climate change impacts in California  
25 funded by the Union of Concerned Scientists.<sup>4</sup> The UCS study used a statistically downscaled  
26 version of two GCMs to consider future emissions conditions for the state. It produced  
27 compelling climate-related outputs. Projections of impacts, in the absence of aggressive  
28 emissions regulations, included heat waves that could kill 165–330 additional people each year  
29 in Los Angeles, a shorter ski season, annual losses of \$266–836 million for the dairy industry,  
30 and bad-tasting wine from the Napa Valley. Because the impacts chosen were relevant to  
31 management concerns, the study was covered extensively by national and California newspapers,  
32 radio stations, and TV stations (Tallis and Kareiva, 2006).

33  
34 There are many new ecological models that would help managers address climate change, but  
35 the most important modeling tools will be those that integrate diverse information for decision  
36 making and prioritize areas for different management activities. Planners and managers need the  
37 capability to evaluate the vulnerability of each site to climate change and the social and  
38 economic costs of addressing those vulnerabilities. One could provide this help with models that  
39 allow the exploration of alternative future climate-change scenarios and different funding  
40 limitations that could be used for priority-setting and triage decisions. Comprehensive, dynamic,  
41 priority-setting tools have been developed for other management activities, such as watershed  
42 restoration (Lamy *et al.*, 2002). Developing a dynamic tool for priority-setting will be critical for  
43 effectively allocating limited resources.

---

<sup>4</sup> **Union of Concerned Scientists**, 2007: Union of Concerned Scientists homepage. Website,  
<http://www.ucsusa.org/>, accessed on 6-11-2007.

### 1 **9.3.2.3 Establishing Baseline Information**

#### 2 **Collecting Information on Past and Current Condition**

3 To estimate current and potential future impacts, a literature review of expected climate impacts  
 4 may be conducted to provide a screening process that identifies “what trends to worry about.”  
 5 The next step beyond a literature review is a more focused elicitation of the ecological properties  
 6 or components needed to reach management goals for lands and waters. For each of these  
 7 properties or components, it will be important to determine the key to maintaining them (see  
 8 Table 9.1 for examples). If the literature review reveals that any of the general climate trends  
 9 may influence the ecological attributes or processes critical to meeting management goals, then  
 10 the next steps are to identify baselines, establish monitoring programs, and consider specific  
 11 management tools and models. For example, suppose the management goal is to maintain a  
 12 particular vegetation type, such as classical Mediterranean vegetation. Mediterranean vegetation  
 13 is restricted to the following five conditions (Aschmann, 1973):  
 14

- 15 • at least 65% of the annual precipitation occurs in the winter half of the year (November–  
 16 April in the northern hemisphere and May–September in the southern hemisphere);
- 17 • annual precipitation is greater than 275 mm;
- 18 • annual precipitation is less than 900 mm;
- 19 • the coldest month of the year is below 15°C; and
- 20 • the annual hours below 0°C account for less than 3% of the total.

21  
 22 If the general literature review indicates that climate trends have a reasonable likelihood of  
 23 influencing any of these defining features of Mediterranean plant communities, there will be a  
 24 need for deeper analysis. Sensitivity to current or past climate variability may be a good indicator  
 25 of potential future sensitivity. In the event that these analyses indicate that it will be very  
 26 unlikely that the region will be able to sustain Mediterranean plant communities in the future, it  
 27 may be necessary to cease management at particular sites and to consider protecting or managing  
 28 other areas where these communities could persist. Triage decisions like this will be very  
 29 difficult, and should be based not only on future predictions but also on the outcome of targeted  
 30 monitoring.

31  
 32 Once the important ecological attributes or processes are identified, a manager needs to have a  
 33 clear idea of the baseline set of conditions for the system. Ecologists, especially marine  
 34 ecologists, have drawn attention to the fact that the world has changed so much that it can be  
 35 hard to determine an accurate historical baseline for any system (Pauly, 1995). The reason that  
 36 an understanding of a system’s long history can be so valuable is that the historical record may  
 37 include information about how systems respond to extreme stresses and perturbations. When  
 38 dealing with sensitive, endangered, or stressed systems, experimental perturbation is not feasible.  
 39 Where available, paleoecological records should be used to examine past ranges of natural  
 40 environmental variability and past organismal responses to climate change (Willis and Birks,  
 41 2006). Although in an experimental sense “uncontrolled,” there is no lack of both historic and  
 42 recent examples of perturbations (of various magnitudes) and recoveries through which to  
 43 examine resilience.

44  
 45 Historic baselines have the potential to offer insights into how to manage for climate change. For  
 46 example, while the authority to acquire land interests and water rights exists under the Wild and

1 Scenic Rivers Act, lack of baseline data on flow regimes makes it difficult to determine how,  
2 when, and where to use this authority (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). Other examples of  
3 baseline data important for making management decisions and understanding potential effects of  
4 climate change include species composition and distribution of trees in forests; rates of  
5 freshwater discharge into estuaries; river flooding regimes; forest fire regimes; magnitude and  
6 timing of anadromous fish runs; and home ranges, migration patterns, and reproductive dynamics  
7 of sensitive organisms.

8  
9 However, baselines also have the potential to be misleading. For example, in Chapter 3 (National  
10 Forests), it is noted that historic baselines are useful only if climate is incorporated into those  
11 past baselines and the relationship of vegetation to climate is explored. If a baseline is held up as  
12 a goal, and the baseline depends on historic climates that will never again be seen in a region,  
13 then the baseline could be misleading. On the other hand, if baselines are to be developed using  
14 changing reference points or conditions, this approach also requires caution. The goal would be  
15 to realistically consider how conditions may change without allowing our definition of baseline  
16 conditions to rationalize acceptance of lower levels of “healthy” conditions, potentially risking  
17 ecosystem integrity for the future and losing valuable historical knowledge.

#### 18 **Monitoring to Inform Management Decisions**

19 Monitoring is needed to support a manager’s ability to detect changes in baseline conditions as  
20 well as to facilitate timely adaptation actions. Monitoring also provides a means to gauge  
21 whether management actions are effective. Some monitoring may be designed to detect general  
22 ecological trends in poorly understood systems. However, most monitoring programs should be  
23 designed with specific hypotheses in mind and trigger points that will initiate a policy or  
24 management re-evaluation (Gregory, Ohlson, and Arvai, 2006). For instance, using a  
25 combination of baseline and historical data, a monitoring program could be set up with pre-  
26 defined thresholds for a species’ abundance or growth rate, or a river’s flow rate, which, once  
27 exceeded, would cause a re-examination of management approaches and management objectives.  
28  
29

30 A second important feature of any monitoring program is the decision of what to monitor. Ideally  
31 several attributes should be monitored, and those that are selected should be chosen to represent  
32 the system in a tractable way and to give clear information about possible management options  
33 (Gregory and Failing, 2002). Otherwise there is a risk of collecting volumes of data but not really  
34 using it to alter management. Sometimes managers seek one aggregate indicator—the risk in this  
35 is that the indicator is harder to interpret because so many different processes could alter it.  
36

37 Some systems will require site-specific monitoring programs, whereas others will be able to take  
38 advantage of more general monitoring programs (see Table 9.2 for examples of potential  
39 monitoring targets). For example, the analysis of National Forests (Chapter 3, National Forests)  
40 highlights the need for monitoring both native plant species and non-native and invasive species.  
41 In addition, the severity and frequency of forest fires are clearly linked to climate (Bessie and  
42 Johnson, 1995; Fried, Torn, and Mills, 2004; Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Thus, managing for  
43 changing fire regimes will require assessing fire risk by detecting changes in fuel loads and  
44 weather patterns. Detecting climate-driven changes in insect outbreaks and disease prevalence  
45 will require monitoring the occurrence and prevalence of key insects, pathogens, and disease  
46 vectors (Logan, Regniere, and Powell, 2003). Detecting early changes in forests will also require  
47 monitoring changes in hydrology and phenology, and in tree establishment, growth, and

1 mortality. Some key monitoring efforts are already in place. For example, the Forest Service  
 2 conducts an extensive inventory through its Forest Inventory and Analysis program, and the  
 3 collaborative National Phenology Network collects data on the timing of ecological events across  
 4 the country to inform climate change research.<sup>5</sup>

5  
 6 In the National Wildlife Refuge System, monitoring might include targets associated with sea  
 7 level rise, hydrology, and the dynamics of sensitive species populations. Monitoring of marine  
 8 protected areas should address coral bleaching and disease, as well as the composition of  
 9 plankton, seagrass, and microbial communities. In the national estuaries, the most effective  
 10 monitoring will be of salinity, sea level, stream flow, sediment loads, disease prevalence, and  
 11 invasive species. Wild and scenic rivers should be monitored for changes in flow regimes and  
 12 shifts in species composition. Finally, national parks, which encompass a diversity of ecosystem  
 13 types, should be monitored for any number of the biotic and abiotic factors listed for the other  
 14 federal lands.

15  
 16 Although developing directed, intensive monitoring programs may seem daunting, there are  
 17 several opportunities to build on existing and developing efforts. In addition to the Forest  
 18 Service's Forest Inventory and Analysis program and the National Phenology Network  
 19 mentioned above, other opportunities include the National Science Foundation's National  
 20 Ecological Observation Network and the Park Service's Vital Signs program (*e.g.*, Mau-  
 21 Crimmins *et al.*, 2005). Some federal lands have detailed species inventories (*e.g.*, the national  
 22 parks are developing extensive species inventories for the Natural Resource Challenge) or  
 23 detailed stream flow measurements. Despite the importance of monitoring, it is critical to  
 24 recognize that monitoring is only one step in the management process and that monitoring alone  
 25 will not address the affects of climate change on federal lands.

### 26 **9.3.3 Uncertainty and How to Incorporate it Into Assessments**

27 The high degree of uncertainty inherent in assessments of climate change impacts can make it  
 28 difficult for a manager to translate results from those assessments into practical management  
 29 action. However, uncertainty is not the same thing as ignorance or lack of information—it simply  
 30 means that there is more than one outcome possible as a result of climate change. Fortunately,  
 31 there are approaches for dealing with uncertainty that allow progress.

#### 32 **9.3.3.1 Examples of Sources of Uncertainty**

33 To project future climate change, climate modelers have applied seven “families” of greenhouse  
 34 gas emissions scenarios that encompass a range of energy futures to a suite of 23 GCMs (IPCC,  
 35 2007), all differing in their climatic projections. Based on a doubling of CO<sub>2</sub>, global mean  
 36 temperatures are projected to increase from 1.4–5.8 C (2.5-10.5 F) with considerable  
 37 discrepancies in the distribution of the temperature and precipitation change. These direct  
 38 outputs are typically not very useful to managers because they lack the resolution at local and  
 39 regional scales where environmental impacts relevant for natural resource management can be  
 40 evaluated. However, as mentioned above, GCM model outputs derived at the very coarse grid  
 41 scales of 2.5 x 3.25 (roughly 200–500 km<sup>2</sup>, depending on latitude) can be downscaled (Melillo

<sup>5</sup> **University of Wisconsin-Milwaukee**, 2007: National phenological network. University of Wisconsin-Milwaukee Website, <http://www.uwm.edu/Dept/Geography/npn/>, accessed on 6-11-2007.

1 *et al.*, 1995; Pan *et al.*, 2001; Leung *et al.*, 2003; Salathé, Jr., 2003; Wood *et al.*, 2004; IPCC,  
2 2007). But when GCM output data are downscaled, uncertainties are amplified. In Region 6 of  
3 the Forest Service, the regional office recommended that the National Forest not model climatic  
4 change as a part of a management plan revision process after science reviewers acknowledged  
5 the high degree of uncertainty associated with the application of climate change models at the  
6 forest level (Chapter 3, National Forests). In the Northwest, management of rivers in the face of  
7 climate change is complicated by the fact that the uncertainty is so great that 67% of the modeled  
8 futures predict a decrease in runoff, while 33% predict an increase. Thus the uncertainty can be  
9 about the direction of change as well as the magnitude of change (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic  
10 Rivers).

11  
12 Changes in temperature, precipitation, and CO<sub>2</sub> will drive changes in species interactions,  
13 species distributions and ranges, community assemblages, ecological processes, and, therefore,  
14 ecosystem services. To understand the implications of these changes on species and/or  
15 vegetation distribution, models have been designed to assess the responses of biomes to climate  
16 change—but this of course introduces more uncertainty, and therefore management risk, into the  
17 final analysis. For terrestrial research, dynamic global vegetation models (DGVM) and Species  
18 Distributions Models (SDM) have been developed to help predict biological and species impacts.  
19 These models have weaknesses that make managers reluctant to use them. For example DGCM  
20 vegetation models, which should be useful to forest managers, are limited by the fact that they do  
21 not simulate actual vegetation (only potential natural vegetation), or the full suite of species  
22 migration patterns and dispersal capabilities, or the integration of the impacts of other global  
23 changes such as land use change (fragmentation and human barriers to dispersal) and invasive  
24 species (Field, 1999). Where vegetation cover is more natural and the impacts of other global  
25 changes are not prominent, the model simulations are likely to have a higher probability of  
26 providing useful information of future change. For regions where there is low percentage of  
27 natural cover, where fragmentation is great, and large areas are under some form of management,  
28 the models will provide limited insight into future vegetation distribution. It is unclear how  
29 climate change will interact with these other global and local changes, as well as unanticipated  
30 evolutionary changes and tolerance responses, and the models do not address this.

### 31 **9.3.3.2 Using Scenarios as a Means of Managing Under Uncertainty**

32 It is not possible to *predict* the changes that will occur, but managers can get an indication of the  
33 *range* of changes possible. By working with a range of possible changes rather than a single  
34 projection, managers can focus on developing the most appropriate responses based on that range  
35 rather than on a “most likely” outcome. To develop a set of scenarios—*e.g.*, internally consistent  
36 views of reasonably plausible futures in which decisions may be explored (adapted from Porter,  
37 1985; Schwartz, 1996)—quantitative or qualitative visions of the future are developed or  
38 described. These scenarios explore current assumptions and serve to expand viewpoints of the  
39 future. In the climate change impacts area, approaches for developing scenarios may range from  
40 using a number of different realizations from climate models representing a range of emissions  
41 growths, to analog scenarios, to informal synthetic scenario exercises that, for example,  
42 perturbate temperature and precipitation changes by percentage increments (*e.g.*, -5% change  
43 from baseline conditions, 0, +5%, +10%).  
44

1 Model-based scenarios explore plausible future conditions through direct representations of  
2 complex patterns of change. These scenarios have the advantage of helping to further our  
3 understanding of potential system responses to a range of changes in drivers. When using  
4 spatially downscaled climate models and a large number of emissions scenarios and climate  
5 model combinations (as many as 30 or more), a subset of “highly likely” climate expectations  
6 may be identifiable for a subset of regions and ecosystems. More typically, results among models  
7 will disagree for many places, precluding any unambiguous conclusions. Where there is a high  
8 level of agreement, statements may be made such as, “for 80% of the different model runs, peak  
9 daily summer temperatures are expected to rise by at least x degrees.” When downscaled and  
10 multiple runs are available (see the Appendix, Section 9.9, for possible sources), managers can  
11 use them to explore the consequences of different management options. For instance, Battin *et*  
12 *al.* (2007) were able to identify specific places where habitat restoration was likely to be  
13 effective in the face of climate change if the goal was recovery of salmon populations, and in  
14 specific places where restoration efforts would be fruitless given anticipated climate change.

15  
16 Analog scenarios use historical data and previously observed sensitivity to weather and climate  
17 variability. When developing analog scenarios, if historical data are incomplete or non-existent  
18 for one location, observations from a different region may be used. Synthetic scenarios specify  
19 changes in particular variables and apply those changes to an observed time series. For example,  
20 an historic time series of annual mean precipitation for the northeastern United States would be  
21 increased by 2% to create a synthetic scenario, but no other characteristics of precipitation would  
22 change. Developing a synthetic scenario might start by simply stating that in the future, it is  
23 possible that summers will be hotter and drier. That scenario would be used to alter the sets of  
24 historic time series, and decision makers would explore how management might respond.

25  
26 Along with developing multiple scenarios using the methods described above, it may be helpful  
27 to do sensitivity analyses to discover a system’s response to a range of possible changes in  
28 drivers. In such analyses, the key attributes of the system are examined to see how they respond  
29 to systematic changes in the climate drivers. This approach may allow managers to identify  
30 thresholds beyond which key management goals become unattainable.

31  
32 All of these scenario-building approaches and sensitivity analyses provide the foundation for  
33 “if/then” planning, or scenario planning. One of the most practical ways of dealing with  
34 uncertainty is scenario planning—that is, making plans for more than one potential future. If one  
35 were planning an outdoor event (picnic, wedding, family reunion), it is likely that an alternate  
36 plan would be prepared in case of rain. Scenario planning has become a scientific version of this  
37 common sense approach. It is appropriate and prudent when there are large uncertainties that  
38 cannot be reduced in the near future, as is the case with climate change. The key to scenario  
39 planning is limiting the scenarios to a set of possibilities, typically anywhere from two to five. If  
40 sensitivity analyses are performed, those results can be used to select the most relevant scenarios  
41 that both address managers’ needs and represent the widest possible, but still plausible, futures.  
42 For the selected range of scenarios, information should be provided, when possible, on the  
43 probability that a given scenario will transpire. The strategy is to then design a variety of  
44 management strategies that are robust across the whole range of scenarios and associated  
45 impacts. Ideally scenarios represent clusters of future projections that fit together as one bundled  
46 storyline that is easy to communicate to managers (*e.g.*, warmer and wetter, warmer and drier,

1 negligible change). When used deftly, scenario planning can alleviate decision-makers' and  
 2 managers' frustration at facing so much uncertainty and allow them to proactively manage risks.  
 3 For detailed guidance on using scenario data for climate impact assessments, see IPCC-TGICA  
 4 (2007).

## 5 **9.4 Best Practices for Adaptation**

6 Another element essential to the process of adaptation decision making is to know the possible  
 7 management options (*e.g.*, adaptation options) available to address the breadth of projected  
 8 impacts, and how those options may function to lessen the impacts. As defined in this report, the  
 9 goal of adaptation is to reduce the risk of adverse environmental outcomes through activities that  
 10 *increase the resilience* of ecological systems to climate change (Scheffer *et al.*, 2001; Turner, II  
 11 *et al.*, 2003; Tompkins and Adger, 2004). Here, resilience refers to the amount of change or  
 12 disturbance that a system can absorb *before it undergoes a fundamental shift* to a different set of  
 13 processes and structures (Holling, 1973; Gunderson, 2000; Bennett, Cumming, and Peterson,  
 14 2005). Therefore, all of the adaptation approaches reviewed below involve strategies for  
 15 supporting the ability of ecosystems to persist at local or regional scales.

16  
 17 The suites of characteristics that distinguish different ecosystems and regions determine the  
 18 potential for successful adaptation to support resilience. This section begins with a description of  
 19 resilience theory, including examples of some types of biological and physical factors that may  
 20 confer resilience to climate change. This is followed by a review of seven major adaptation  
 21 approaches gleaned from across the chapters of this report, a discussion of the confidence levels  
 22 associated with these approaches, and an examination of adaptive management as an effective  
 23 means of implementing adaptation strategies.

### 24 **9.4.1 Resilience**

25 Management of ecosystems for any objective will be made easier if the systems are resilient to  
 26 change—whether it is climate change or any other disturbance. Resilience is the ability of a  
 27 system to return to its initial state and function in spite of some major perturbation. For example,  
 28 a highly resilient coral reef might bleach but would be able to recover rapidly. Similarly, a  
 29 resilient forest ecosystem would quickly re-establish plant cover following a major forest fire,  
 30 with negligible loss of soils or fertility. An important contributing factor to overall resilience is  
 31 *resistance*, which is the ability of an organism or a system to remain un-impacted by major  
 32 disturbance or stress. “Un-impacted,” in this sense, means that the species or system can  
 33 continue to provide the desired ecosystem services. Resistance is derived from intrinsic  
 34 biological characteristics at the level of species or genetic varieties. Resistance contributes to  
 35 resilience since ecosystems that contain resistant individuals or communities will exhibit faster  
 36 overall recovery (through recruitment and regrowth) after a disturbance. It is certainly possible  
 37 that if systems are not resilient, the change that results could produce some benefits. However,  
 38 from the perspective of a resource manager responsible for managing the ecosystems in question,  
 39 a lack of resilience would mean that it would be difficult to establish clear objectives for that  
 40 system and a consistent plan for achieving those objectives.

41  
 42 The science and theory of resilience may soon be sufficiently advanced to be able to confidently  
 43 predict what confers resilience upon a system; the scientific literature is rapidly developing in



1 this area and provides plausible hypotheses and likely resilience factors. Perhaps more  
2 importantly, common sense indicates that healthier ecosystems will generally be more resilient to  
3 disturbances. Activities that promote overall ecosystem health, whether they are restorative (*e.g.*,  
4 planting trees, captive breeding, and reintroduction) or protective (*e.g.*, restrictive of destructive  
5 uses) will tend to build resilience.

6  
7 On the broadest level, working from the assumption that more intact and pristine ecosystems are  
8 more resilient to disturbances such as climate change, there are a number of ways to manage for  
9 resilience. The appropriate approach depends largely on the current state of the area being  
10 protected and the available resources with which to execute that protection. Options include (1)  
11 protecting intact systems (*e.g.*, Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument), (2) restoring  
12 systems to more pristine states (*e.g.*, restoring marshes and wetlands), and (3) preventing further  
13 degradation (*e.g.*, control of invasive species).

14  
15 Beyond simply managing for pristine systems, which can be hard to identify, a quantifiable  
16 objective is to manage for biodiversity and key structural components or features. An important  
17 challenge associated with resilience is what might be called a “timescale mismatch.” Resilience  
18 can be destroyed quickly, but often is “derived from things that can be restored only slowly, such  
19 as reservoirs of soil nutrients, heterogeneity of ecosystems on a landscape, or a variety of  
20 genotypes and species” (Folke *et al.*, 2002). This implies that while taking the necessary steps to  
21 prevent extinctions, management should worry most about species that have long generation  
22 times and low reproductive potential.

23  
24 Our understanding of specific resilience factors for particular systems is sparse, making  
25 managing for resilience currently more an art than a science. Fortunately, two general concepts  
26 provide a simple framework for thinking about and managing for resilience. One is to ensure that  
27 ecosystems have all the components they need in order to recover from disturbances. This may  
28 be termed the biodiversity concept. The other is to support the species composing the structural  
29 foundation of the ecosystem, such as corals or large trees as habitat. This may be termed the  
30 structural concept. Although resource managers may not explicitly use these terms, examples of  
31 both concepts may be found in their decision-making.

### 32 **Biodiversity Concept**

33  
34 Much academic research on managing for resilience invokes the precautionary principle. In this  
35 context, the precautionary principle calls for ensuring that ecosystems have all the biotic building  
36 blocks (functional groups, species, genes) that they need for recovery. These building blocks can  
37 also be thought of as *ecological memory*: the “network of species, their dynamic interactions  
38 between each other and the environment, and the combination of structures that make  
39 reorganization after disturbance possible” (Bengtsson *et al.*, 2003).

40  
41 A recent meta-analysis of ocean ecosystem services provides support for the biodiversity  
42 approach with its conclusion that in general, rates of resource collapse increased—and recovery  
43 rates decreased—exponentially with declining diversity. In contrast, with restoration of  
44 biodiversity, productivity increased fourfold and variability decreased by 21% on average  
45 (Worm *et al.*, 2006). Several other studies have concluded that diversity at numerous levels—  
46 *i.e.*, of functional groups, of species in functional groups, and within species and populations—  
47 appears to be critical for resilience and for the provision of ecosystem services (Chapin *et al.*,

1 1997; Luck, Daily, and Ehrlich, 2003; Folke *et al.*, 2004). National parks, national wildlife  
 2 refuges, and marine protected areas all manage for maintaining as many native species as  
 3 possible, and in so doing promote diversity as a resilience factor. The call for ecosystem-based  
 4 management in the chapter on national estuaries represents a move toward a multi-species focus  
 5 that could also enhance resilience. Although the detailed dynamics of the connection between  
 6 biodiversity and resilience are not yet understood, it is both practical and sensible as a  
 7 precautionary act to protect biodiversity as a means of promoting resilience.

8  
 9 Biodiversity exists at multiple levels: genetic, species, function, and ecosystem. Table 9.3 briefly  
 10 provides definitions and examples of management options for each of these four levels of  
 11 biodiversity. It is worth noting that national parks, national wildlife refuges, and marine  
 12 protected areas are all aimed at supporting diversity to the extent that any “reserve” or “protected  
 13 area” is. Wild and scenic rivers, national estuaries, and national forests have not traditionally had  
 14 diversity as a core management goal. It is noteworthy, however, that the 2004–2008 USDA  
 15 Forest Service Strategic plan does describe the Forest Service mission in terms of sustaining  
 16 “diversity” (Chapter 3, National Forests).

### 17 **Structural Concept**

18 Organisms that provide ecosystem structure include trees in forests, corals on coral reefs, kelp in  
 19 kelp forests, and grasses on prairies. These structure-providing groups represent the successional  
 20 climax of their respective ecosystems—a climax that often takes a long time to reach. Logically,  
 21 managers are concerned with loss of these species (whether due to disease, overharvesting,  
 22 pollution, or natural disturbances) because of consequent cascading effects.

24 One approach to managing for resilience is to evaluate options in terms of what they mean for  
 25 the recovery rate of fundamental structural aspects of an ecosystem. For example, the fishing  
 26 technique of bottom trawling and the forestry technique of clear-cutting destroy biological  
 27 structure, thus hindering recovery because the ecosystem is so degraded that either succession  
 28 has to start from a more barren state or the community may even shift into an entirely new stable  
 29 state. Thus, management plans should protect these structural species whose life histories dictate  
 30 that if they are damaged, recovery time will increase.

31 It is important to note that while structural species are often representative of the ecosystem state  
 32 most desirable to humans in terms of production of ecosystem services, they are still only  
 33 representative of one of several states that are natural for that system. The expectation that these  
 34 structural organisms will always dominate is unreasonable. In temperate forests, stand-replacing  
 35 fires can be critical to resetting ecosystem dynamics; in kelp forests, kelp is periodically  
 36 decimated by storms. Thus maintaining structural species does not mean management for  
 37 permanence—it simply means managing for processes that will keep structural species in the  
 38 system, albeit perhaps in a shifting mosaic of dominant trees in a forest, for example.

### 39 **9.4.2 Adaptation Approaches**

40 Managers’ past experiences with unpredictable and extreme events such as hurricanes, floods,  
 41 pest and disease outbreaks, invasions, and forest fires have already led to some existing  
 42 approaches that can be used to adapt to climate change. Ecological studies combined with  
 43 managers’ expertise reveal several common themes for managing natural systems for resilience

1 in the face of disturbance. A clear exposition of these themes is the starting point for developing  
2 best practices aimed at climate adaptation.

3  
4 The seven approaches discussed below—(1) protection of key ecosystem features, (2) reduction  
5 of anthropogenic stresses, (3) representation, (4) replication, (5) restoration, (6) refugia, and (7)  
6 relocation—involve techniques that manipulate or take advantage of ecosystem properties to  
7 enhance their resilience to climatic changes. All of these adaptation approaches ultimately  
8 contribute to resilience as defined above, whether at the scale of individual protected area units,  
9 or at the scale of regional/national systems. While different chapters vary in their perspectives  
10 and terminologies regarding adaptation, the seven categories presented are inclusive of the range  
11 of adaptation options found throughout this report.

#### 12 **9.4.2.1 Protect Key Ecosystem Features**

13 Within ecosystems, there may be particular structural characteristics (*e.g.*, three-dimensional  
14 complexity, growth patterns), organisms (*e.g.*, functional groups, native species), or areas (*e.g.*,  
15 buffer zones, migration corridors) that are particularly important for promoting the resilience of  
16 the overall system. Such key ecosystem features could be important focal points for special  
17 management protections or actions. For example, managers of national forests may proactively  
18 promote stand resilience to diseases and fires by using silviculture techniques such as widely  
19 spaced thinnings or shelterwood cuttings (Chapter 3, National Forests). Another example would  
20 be to aggressively prevent or reverse the establishment of invasive non-native species that  
21 threaten native species or impede current ecosystem function (Chapter 4, National Parks).  
22 Preserving the structural complexity of vegetation in tidal marshes, seagrass meadows, and  
23 mangroves may render estuaries more resilient (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). Finally,  
24 establishing and protecting corridors of connectivity that enable migrations can enhance  
25 resilience across landscapes in national wildlife refuges (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges).  
26 Box 9.2 draws additional examples of this adaptation approach from across the chapters of this  
27 report.

#### 28 **9.4.2.2 Reduce Anthropogenic Stresses**

29 Managing for resilience often implies minimizing anthropogenic stressors (*e.g.*, pollution,  
30 overfishing, development) that hinder the ability of species or ecosystems to withstand a stressful  
31 climatic event. For example, one way of enhancing resilience in wildlife refuges is to reduce  
32 other stresses on native vegetation such as erosion or altered hydrology caused by human  
33 activities (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). Marine protected area managers may focus on  
34 human stressors such as fishing and inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants both inside the  
35 protected area and outside the protected area on adjacent land and waters (Chapter 8, Marine  
36 Protected Areas). The resilience of rivers could be enhanced by strategically shifting access  
37 points or moving existing trails for wildlife or river enthusiasts, in order to protect important  
38 riparian zones (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). Box 9.3 draws additional examples of this  
39 adaptation approach from across the chapters of this report.

#### 40 **9.4.2.3 Representation**

41 Representation is based on the idea that biological systems come in a variety of forms. Species  
42 include locally adapted populations as opposed to one monotypic taxon, and major habitat types

1 or community types include variations on a theme with different species compositions, as  
2 opposed to one invariant community. The idea behind representation as a strategy for resilience  
3 is simply that a portfolio of several slightly different forms of a species or ecosystem increases  
4 the likelihood that, among those variants, there will be one or more that are suited to the new  
5 climate. A management plan for a large ecosystem that includes representation of all possible  
6 combinations of physical environments and biological communities increases the chances that,  
7 regardless of the climatic change that occurs, somewhere in the system there will be areas that  
8 survive and provide a source for recovery. Employing this approach with wildlife refuges may be  
9 particularly important for migrating birds because they use a diverse array of habitats at different  
10 stages of their life cycles and along their migration routes, and all of these habitats will be  
11 affected by climate change (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). At the level of species, it  
12 may be possible to increase genetic diversity in river systems through plantings or via stocking  
13 fish (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers), or maintain complexity of salt marsh landscapes by  
14 preserving marsh edge environments (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). Box 9.4 draws additional  
15 examples of this adaptation approach from across the chapters of this report.

#### 16 **9.4.2.4 Replication**

17 Replication is simply managing for the continued survival of more than one example of each  
18 ecosystem or species within a reserve system, even if the replicated examples are identical.  
19 When one recognizes that climate change stress includes unpredictable extreme events and  
20 storms, then replication represents a strategy of having multiple bets in a game of chance. With  
21 marine protected areas, replication is explicitly used as a way to spread risk: if one area is  
22 negatively affected by a disturbance, then species, genotypes, and habitats in another area  
23 provide both insurance against extinction and a larval supply that may facilitate recovery of  
24 affected areas (Chapter 8, Marine Protected Areas). The analogy for forests would be spreading  
25 risks by increasing ecosystem redundancy and buffers in both natural environments and  
26 plantations (Chapter 3, National Forests). It is prudent to use replication in all systems. In  
27 practice, most replication strategies also serve as representation strategies (since no two  
28 populations or ecosystems can ever be truly identical), and conversely most representation  
29 strategies provide some form of replication. Box 9.5 provides examples of this adaptation  
30 approach from chapters of this report.

#### 31 **9.4.2.5 Restoration**

32 In many cases natural intact ecosystems confer resilience to extreme events such as floods and  
33 storms. One strategy for adapting to climate change thus entails restoring intact ecosystems. For  
34 example the restoration of wetlands and natural floodplains will often confer resilience to floods.  
35 Restoration of particular species complexes may also be key to managing for resilience—a good  
36 example of this would be fire-adapted vegetation in forests that are expected to see more fires as  
37 a result of hotter and drier summers (Chapter 3, National Forests). At Blackwater National  
38 Wildlife Refuge, the USFWS is planning to restore wetlands that may otherwise be inundated by  
39 2100 (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). In the case of estuaries, restoring the vegetational  
40 layering and structure of tidal marshes, seagrass meadows, and mangroves can stabilize estuary  
41 function (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). Box 9.6 draws additional examples of this adaptation  
42 approach from across the chapters of this report.

**1 9.4.2.6 Refugia and Relocation**

2 The term *refugia* refers to physical environments that are less affected by climate change than  
3 other areas (*e.g.*, due to local currents, geographic location, etc.) and are thus a “refuge” from  
4 climate change for organisms. *Relocation* refers to human-facilitated transplantation of  
5 organisms from one location to another in order to bypass a barrier (*e.g.*, an urban area). Refugia  
6 and relocation, while major concepts, are actually subsets of one or more of the approaches listed  
7 above. For example, if refugia can be identified locally, they can be considered sites for long-  
8 term retention of species (*e.g.*, for representation and to maintain resilience) in forests (Chapter  
9 3, National Forests). Or, in national wildlife refuges, it may be possible to use restoration  
10 techniques to reforest riparian boundaries with native species to create shaded thermal refugia for  
11 fish species (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). In the case of relocation, an example would  
12 be transport of fish populations in the Southwest that become stranded as water levels drop to  
13 river reaches with appropriate flows (*e.g.*, to preserve system-wide resilience and species  
14 representation) (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). Transplantation of organisms among  
15 national parks could preserve system-wide representation of species that would not otherwise be  
16 able to overcome barriers to dispersal (Chapter 4, National Parks). Boxes 9.7 and 9.8 draw  
17 additional examples of these adaptation approaches from across the chapters of this report.

**18 9.4.3 Confidence**

19 Due to uncertainties associated with climate change projections as well as uncertainties in  
20 species and ecosystem responses, there is also uncertainty as to how effective the different  
21 adaptation approaches listed above will be at supporting resilience. It is therefore essential to  
22 assess the level of confidence associated with each adaptation approach. For this report, the  
23 levels of confidence for each adaptation approach are based on the expert judgment of the  
24 authors, using a conceptual methodology developed by the IPCC (2007).  
25

26 Confidence levels are presented for each of the seven adaptation approaches for each  
27 management system (Table 9.4). The goal of these adaptation approaches is to support the  
28 resilience of ecosystems to persist *in their current form* (*i.e.*, without major shifts to entirely  
29 redefined systems) under changing climatic conditions. Thus it is important to note at this point  
30 that promoting resilience may be a management strategy that is useful only on shorter time scales  
31 of a few decades rather than centuries, because as climate change continues, various thresholds  
32 of resilience will eventually be exceeded. Therefore, each of the authors’ confidence estimates  
33 are based solely on how effectively—in the near term—the adaptation approach will be at  
34 achieving positive ecological outcomes with respect to increased resilience to climate change.  
35 Through time, as ecosystem thresholds are exceeded, these approaches will cease to be effective,  
36 at which point major shifts in ecosystem processes, structures and components will be  
37 unavoidable. This eventuality is discussed in a later section (9.6.3, *Manage for Change*), where  
38 adaptation strategies associated with planning for major shifts are presented. In addition to  
39 limiting their confidence assessments to the near term, the authors also excluded from  
40 consideration any non-ecological factor (such as confidence in the ability to put particular  
41 approaches into practice) and only evaluated those adaptation approaches for which they had  
42 adaptation strategies discussed in their chapter.

### 1 **9.4.3.1 Approach to Estimating Levels of Confidence**

2 The authors considered two separate but related elements of confidence (IPCC, 2007). The first  
 3 element is the amount of evidence that is available to assess the effectiveness of a given  
 4 adaptation approach to support resilience. The second is the level of agreement or consensus in  
 5 the expert community regarding the different lines of evidence. From each chapter, specific  
 6 adaptation options were grouped according to the seven categories of “adaptation approaches”  
 7 described in the previous section (see Boxes 9.2–9.8). The authors then developed confidence  
 8 estimates for each adaptation approach based on consideration of the specific adaptation options  
 9 and the following questions:

10  
 11 *High/low amount of evidence*

12 Is this adaptation approach well-studied and understood, or instead is it mostly  
 13 experimental or theoretical and not well-studied? Does your experience in the field, your  
 14 analyses of data, and your understanding of the literature and performance of specific  
 15 adaptation options under this type of adaptation approach indicate that there is a high or  
 16 low amount of information on the effectiveness of this approach?

17  
 18 *High/low amount of agreement*

19 Do the studies, reports, and your experience in the field, analyzing data, or implementing  
 20 the types of adaptation strategies that comprise this approach reflect a high degree of  
 21 agreement on the effectiveness of this approach, or does it lead to competing  
 22 interpretations?

23  
 24 Because of the qualitative nature of this confidence exercise, the author teams provided  
 25 explanations of the basis for each of their estimates under each adaptation approach (see Annex  
 26 B, Confidence Estimates). The evidence they considered in making their judgments included  
 27 peer-reviewed and gray literature (journal articles, reports, working papers, management plans,  
 28 workshop reports, other management literature, other gray literature), data and observations,  
 29 model results, and the authors’ own experience, including their experiences in the field, their  
 30 analyses of data, and their knowledge of the performance of specific adaptation options under  
 31 each type of adaptation approach.

32  
 33 Confidence estimates are presented in Table 9.4 by management system type for each of the  
 34 seven adaptation approaches. Such confidence estimates should be a key consideration when  
 35 deciding which adaptation approaches to implement for a given system.

### 36 **9.4.3.2 Findings**

37 To take action today using the best available information, reducing anthropogenic stresses is  
 38 currently the adaptation approach that ranks highest in confidence, in terms of both evidence and  
 39 agreement across all six management systems. This may be due partly to the fact that managers  
 40 have been dealing with anthropogenic stresses for a long time, so there are a lot of data and good  
 41 agreement among the experts that this approach is effective in increasing resilience to any kind  
 42 of stress, including climate change.

43

1 Protecting key ecosystem features, representation, replication, restoration, and refugia all  
2 received variable confidence rankings across the management system chapters. This could be  
3 due to a number of factors related to both evidence and agreement. One explanation could be  
4 differences in the amount and nature of research and other information available on an approach  
5 depending on the management system. For example, one management system may have a great  
6 deal of evidence for the effectiveness of an approach at the species level, but little evidence that  
7 it would be effective in enhancing resilience at the ecosystem level; in contrast, another  
8 management system may have more evidence at the ecosystem as well as species level. Also,  
9 regardless of the amount of evidence, different groups can arrive at different interpretations of  
10 what constitutes agreement based on management goals, institutional perspectives, and  
11 experiences with particular ecosystem types. Even though the variability in confidence in these  
12 approaches suggests that caution is warranted, many of the individual adaptation options under  
13 these approaches may still be effective. In these cases, a more detailed assessment of confidence  
14 is needed for each specific adaptation option and ecosystem in which it would be applied.

15  
16 Relocation stands out as being the weakest in terms of confidence *at the current time*, based on  
17 available information. There appears to be little information (evidence) about relocation or its  
18 implications for ecosystem resilience, and thus there is little agreement among experts that it is a  
19 robust approach. Future research may change this ranking (as well as the rankings for other  
20 approaches) at any time.

#### 21 **9.4.3.3 Improving Confidence Estimates**

22 Management planning to select and prioritize adaptation approaches will always involve some  
23 assessment of confidence, whether implicitly or explicitly. Explicit estimations of confidence,  
24 while difficult, afford managers a better understanding of the nature, implications, and risks of  
25 different adaptation approaches. The confidence exercise in this report is a first attempt at  
26 evaluating a series of seven conceptual approaches to adaptation that each represents an  
27 aggregation of various adaptation options. The next level of refinement for confidence  
28 assessments may involve evaluating confidence in individual adaptation options within each  
29 approach. This will be especially important in those cases where levels of confidence in an  
30 approach are highly variable across management systems or across ecosystems.

31  
32 There are a number of challenges associated with improving confidence estimates for adaptation.  
33 One challenge is removing the inherent subjectivity of judgments about evidence and agreement.  
34 This could be addressed by more clearly defining terminology (*e.g.*, evidence and agreement)  
35 and developing more systematic rules (*e.g.*, weighting criteria for different sources of evidence).  
36 The goal of such improvements would be to move from a qualitative to a more quantitative  
37 method of expressing confidence, thereby facilitating more effective use of scientific information  
38 for adaptation planning. Finally, any confidence exercise would benefit from the largest number  
39 of participants as possible to improve the robustness of the results.

#### 40 **9.4.4 Adaptive Management**

41 Once adaptation approaches have been selected after taking into account confidence levels,  
42 adaptive management is likely to be the most attractive method for implementing those  
43 approaches. It emphasizes managing based on observation and continuous learning and provides

1 a means for effectively addressing varying degrees of uncertainty in our knowledge of current  
 2 and future climate change impacts. Adaptive management is typically divided into two types:  
 3 passive and active (Arvai *et al.*, 2006; Gregory, Ohlson, and Arvai, 2006). Passive adaptive  
 4 management refers to using historical data to develop hypotheses about the best management  
 5 action, followed by action and monitoring. Often models are used to guide the decisions and the  
 6 monitoring can improve the models. Active adaptive management refers to actually conducting a  
 7 management experiment, ideally with several different management actions implemented at once  
 8 as a means of testing competing hypotheses. Examples include flood release experiments in the  
 9 Grand Canyon (Chapter 4, National Parks) and at the Glen Canyon dam (National Research  
 10 Council, 1999). Releasing water from a dam allows for the application of highly regulated  
 11 experimental treatments and assessments of effects.

12  
 13 Adaptive management to address climate change is an iterative process that involves the  
 14 consideration of potential climate impacts, the design of management actions and experiments  
 15 that take those impacts into account, monitoring of climate-sensitive species and processes to  
 16 measure management effectiveness, and the redesign and implementation of improved (or new)  
 17 management actions (Fig. 9.2). To maximize the implementation of climate-sensitive adaptive  
 18 management within federal systems, managers can focus on (1) previously established strategies  
 19 that were designed for other management issues but have strong potential for application toward  
 20 climate change impacts, and (2) new strategies that are not yet in place but appear to be feasible  
 21 and within reasonable reach of current management structures. In other words, at a minimum,  
 22 managers need to vigorously pursue changes that are relatively easily accomplished under  
 23 existing programs and management cultures.

24  
 25  
 26  
 27 **Figure 9.2.** The process of adaptive management.

28  
 29 Recent examinations of the difficulty of actually using adaptive management have emphasized  
 30 that the temporal and spatial scale, dimension of uncertainty, risks, and institutional support can  
 31 create major difficulties with applying adaptive management. When one considers adaptive  
 32 management (whether active or passive) in response to climate change, every one of these  
 33 potential difficulties is at play (Arvai *et al.*, 2006; Gregory, Ohlson, and Arvai, 2006). The  
 34 critical challenge will be stating explicit scientific hypotheses, establishing monitoring programs  
 35 with predefined triggers that initiate a re-examination of management approaches, and a flexible  
 36 policy or institutional framework (Gregory, Ohlson, and Arvai, 2006). These challenges do not  
 37 mean adaptive management is impossible—only that attention to hypotheses, monitoring,  
 38 periodic re-evaluations, and flexibility are necessary.

39  
 40 Even in the absence of an ability to experimentally manipulate systems, rapid, climate-induced  
 41 ecological changes provide excellent opportunities to observe the effects of climate change in  
 42 relatively short time frames. Managers and scientists can design studies to take advantage of  
 43 increased climatic variability and climate trends to inform management. Some examples of such  
 44 studies could include observing: which riparian plant species are best adapted to extreme  
 45 variations in flow regime and flooding, how increased variability in climatic conditions affects  
 46 population dynamics of target insect pests or focal wildlife species, and the effects of marine



1 reserve size on recruitment and survival of key species. In order to make this approach effective,  
2 specific hypotheses should be proposed about which life history traits will predispose species to  
3 (biologically) adapt to climate change (Kelly and Adger, 2000). Otherwise the data collection  
4 will be less focused and efficient. Using climate-driven changes as treatments *per se* will be  
5 much less exact and less predictable than controlled experiments, so taking advantage of such  
6 situations for adaptive management studies will require increased flexibility, foresight, and  
7 creativity on the part of managers and scientists.

8  
9 Another key element of adaptive management is monitoring of sensitive species and processes in  
10 order to measure the effectiveness of experimental management actions. In the case of adaptive  
11 management for climate change, this step is critical, not only for measuring the degree to which  
12 management actions result in positive outcomes on the ground, but also for supporting a better  
13 scientific understanding of how to characterize and measure ecological resilience. Most resource  
14 agencies already have monitoring programs and sets of indicators. As long as management goals  
15 are not changed (see Section 9.6.1), then these existing monitoring programs should reflect the  
16 outcomes of management actions on the ground. If management goals are altered because  
17 climate change is perceived to be so severe that historical goals are untenable, then entirely new  
18 indicators and monitoring programs may need to be designed. Whatever the case, monitoring is  
19 fundamental to supporting the reevaluation and refinement of management strategies as part of  
20 the adaptive process.

21  
22 The same monitoring can also foster an improved understanding of how best to characterize and  
23 quantify resilience. For some systems, the ecology of climate stress (*e.g.*, coral bleaching) has  
24 been studied for decades, and resilience theory continues to develop rapidly. For other  
25 ecosystems, the negative impacts of climate change are less well understood, and understanding  
26 resilience is more difficult. In any event, while there may be some good conceptual models that  
27 describe resilience characteristics for species and ecosystems, there is generally a paucity of  
28 empirical data to confirm and resolve the relative importance of these characteristics. Such  
29 information is needed for the next generation of techniques and tools for quantification and  
30 prediction of resilience across species and ecosystems. If monitoring programs are designed with  
31 explicit hypotheses about resilience, they will be more likely to yield useful information.

32  
33 The idea of “adaptive management” has been widely advocated among natural resource  
34 managers for decades, but is still not applied as widely as it could be. Yet the prospect of  
35 uncertain, widespread, and severe climatic changes may galvanize managers to embrace adaptive  
36 management as an essential strategy. Climate change creates new situations of added complexity  
37 for which an adaptive management approach may be the only way to take management action  
38 today while allowing for increased understanding and refinement tomorrow.

## 39 **9.5 Barriers and Opportunities for Adaptation**

40 Although there may be many adaptation strategies that could be implemented, a very real  
41 consideration for managers is whether all of the possibilities are feasible. Factors limiting or  
42 enhancing managers’ ability to implement options may be technical, economic, social, or  
43 political. As noted previously in this chapter, the climate community refers to such opportunities  
44 and constraints (or barriers) as adaptive capacity. It may be helpful to understand the types of  
45 barriers to implementation that exist in order to assess the feasibility of specific adaptation

1 options, and even more so to identify corresponding ways in which barriers may be overcome.  
2 The barriers and opportunities discussed below are based on the expert opinions of the authors of  
3 this report and feedback from the expert workshops and are associated with implementation of  
4 adaptation options today, assuming no significant changes in institutional frameworks and  
5 authority.  
6

7 A useful way of thinking about both barriers and opportunities is in terms of the following four  
8 categories: (1) legislation and regulations, (2) management policies and procedures, (3) human  
9 and financial capital, and (4) information and science (see Tables 9.5–9.8). All of the federal  
10 land and water management systems reviewed in the preceding chapters are mandated by law to  
11 preserve and protect the nation’s natural resources. Specific management goals vary across  
12 systems, however, due to the unique mission statements articulated in their founding legislation,  
13 or organic acts. Organic acts are fundamental pieces of legislation that either signify the  
14 organization of an agency or provide a charter for a network of public lands, such as the National  
15 Park Service Organic Act that established the National Park System. Accordingly, goals are  
16 manifested through management principles that could interpret those goals in ways that may  
17 inhibit or enhance the capability to adapt.  
18

19 No matter how management goals are approached, achievement of goals may be difficult even  
20 without climate change. For example, in the case of the National Forest System, managers are  
21 asked to provide high-quality recreational opportunities and to develop means of meeting the  
22 nation’s energy needs through biofuel production while reducing the risk of wildfire and invasive  
23 species and protecting both watersheds and biodiversity. Successful management requires not  
24 only significant resources (*e.g.*, staff capacity and access to information), but also the ability of  
25 managers to apply resources strategically and effectively (*e.g.*, for monitoring and management  
26 experiments) (Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003).  
27

28 Resources are managed carefully across federal agencies to deal with a growing human  
29 population that puts new and expanding pressures on managers’ ability to meet management  
30 goals. Examples of these existing pressures include economic development near management  
31 unit boundaries (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges), air pollution (Chapter 4, National Parks),  
32 increased wildfire-related costs and risks (Chapter 3, National Forests), habitat degradation and  
33 destruction (Chapter 8, Marine Protected Areas), pollutant loading (Chapter 7, National  
34 Estuaries), and excessive water withdrawals (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). The added  
35 threat of climate change may exceed the capacity of the federal management systems to protect  
36 the species and ecological systems that each is mandated to protect. However, as many of the  
37 previous chapters point out, this threat also represents an opportunity to undertake strategic  
38 thinking, reshape priorities, and use carefully considered actions to initiate the development of  
39 management adaptations to more effectively protect resources.  
40

41 Adaptation responses to climate change are meant to reduce the risk of failing to achieve  
42 management goals. A better understanding of the barriers and opportunities that affect  
43 implementation of adaptation strategies could facilitate the identification of critical adjustments  
44 within the constraints of management structures and policies, and subsequently could foster  
45 increased adaptive capacity within and across federal management systems as those constraints  
46 are addressed in the longer term (see Section 9.6).

## 1 **9.5.1 Legislation and Regulation**

### 2 **9.5.1.1 Barriers**

3 While original organic acts represented progressive policy and management frameworks at the  
 4 time they were written, many reflect a past era (Table 9.5). For example, the first unit of the  
 5 National Wildlife Refuge System, Pelican Island, was designated in 1903 to protect waterfowl  
 6 from being over-hunted when that was the greatest threat. At that time, the U.S. population was  
 7 half of what it is now, and the interstate highway system was decades away from establishment  
 8 (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). In addition, ambiguous language in enabling legislation  
 9 poses challenges to addressing issues related to climate change, such as determining what  
 10 “impaired” means (Chapter 4, National Parks). It also has been recognized that specific  
 11 environmental policies such as the Endangered Species Act, National Environmental Policy Act,  
 12 and the National Forest Management Act are highly static, making dynamic planning difficult  
 13 and potentially impeding adaptive responses.<sup>6</sup> Even recently implemented legislation and  
 14 management plans have not directly addressed climate change (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). In  
 15 general, while community-focused approaches are more flexible, many existing laws force a  
 16 species-specific approach to management (Chapter 3, National Forests), limiting agency action  
 17 to address issues related to climate change.

18  
 19 Furthermore, organic acts and pursuant enabling legislation may limit the capacity to effectively  
 20 manage some resources. For example, the chief legal limitation on intensive management to adapt  
 21 to climate change for the National Wildlife Refuge System is the limited jurisdiction of many  
 22 refuges over their water (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges). Both the timing of water flows as  
 23 well as the quantity of water flowing through refuges are often subject to state permitting and  
 24 control by other federal agencies. Similarly, legal frameworks such as the Colorado River Compact  
 25 establish water rights, compacts, and property rights that all serve to constrain the ability to use  
 26 adaptive strategies to address climate change (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers).

27  
 28 Protected areas have political rather than ecological boundaries as an artifact of legislation.  
 29 These boundaries may pose a barrier to effectively addressing climate change. Climate change  
 30 will likely lead to shifts in species and habitat distribution (Chapter 3, National Forests; Chapter  
 31 4, National Parks; Chapter 7, National Estuaries; Chapter 8, Marine Protected Areas), potentially  
 32 moving them outside the bounds of federal jurisdiction or introducing new species that cause  
 33 changes in animal communities, such as changing predation and competition (Chapter 5,  
 34 National Wildlife Refuges). Agencies often do not have the capacity or authority to address  
 35 issues outside their jurisdiction, which could hamper efforts to adapt to climate change. This  
 36 could affect smaller holdings more acutely than others (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges).

37  
 38 Despite historical interpretations, existing legislation does not prohibit adaptation. Yet  
 39 uncertainty surrounding application of certain management techniques can lead to costly and  
 40 time-consuming challenges from particular stakeholders or the public (Chapter 3, National  
 41 Forests). Fuel treatments and other adaptive projects that have ground-disturbing elements, such  
 42 as salvage harvest after disturbance and use of herbicides before revegetation, have been strongly  
 43 opposed by the public.<sup>6</sup> While using adaptation approaches in management poses the risk of

---

<sup>6</sup> Levings, W., 2003: *Economics of Delay*. Unpublished report on file at the Tahoe National Forest, pp.1-6.

1 spurring costly litigation from stakeholders, every chapter in this volume concludes that inaction  
2 with regard to climate change may prove more damaging and costly than acting with insufficient  
3 knowledge of the outcomes.

#### 4 **9.5.1.2 Opportunities**

5 Federal land and water managers can use existing legislative tools in opportunistic ways (Table  
6 9.5). Managers can strategically apply existing legislation or regulations at the national or state  
7 level by applying traditional features or levers in non-traditional ways. For example, while still  
8 operating within the legislative framework, features of existing legislation can be effectively  
9 used to coordinate management outside of jurisdictional boundaries. Generally, the USFWS has  
10 ample proprietary authority to engage in transplantation-relocation, habitat engineering (including  
11 irrigation-hydrologic management), and captive breeding to support conservation (Chapter 5,  
12 National Wildlife Refuges). These activities are especially applicable to managing shifts in  
13 species distributions and in potentially preventing species extirpations likely to result from  
14 climate change. Portions of existing legislation could also be used to influence dam operations at  
15 the state level as a means of providing adaptive flow controls under future climate changes (*e.g.*,  
16 using the Clean Water Act to prevent low flows in vulnerable stream reaches, adjusting thermal  
17 properties of flows). As these examples suggest, managers can influence change within the  
18 legislative framework to address climate change impacts.

### 19 **9.5.2 Management Policies and Procedures**

#### 20 **9.5.2.1 Barriers**

21 Some management systems have a history of static policies that are counter to the dynamic  
22 management actions called for today (Table 9.6) and do not recognize climatic change as a  
23 significant problem or stressor. These agency policies do not allow for sufficient flexibility under  
24 uncertainty and change. Without flexibility, existing management goals and priorities—though  
25 potentially unrealistic given climate change—may have to be pursued without adjustments. Yet,  
26 with limited resources and staff time, priorities need to be established and adaptation efforts  
27 focused to make best use of limited resources. There are several specific hindrances to such  
28 management changes that are worth mentioning in detail.

29  
30 First, addressing climate change will require flexible and long-term planning horizons. Existing  
31 issues on public lands, coupled with insufficient resources (described below), force many  
32 agencies and managers to operate under crisis conditions, focusing on short-term and narrow  
33 objectives (Chapter 4, National Parks). Agencies often put priority on maintaining, retaining, and  
34 restoring historic conditions. These imperatives can lead to static as opposed to dynamic  
35 management (Chapter 3, National Forests) and may not be possible to achieve as a result of  
36 climate change. Additionally, place-based management paradigms may direct management at  
37 inappropriate spatial and temporal scales for climate change. Managing on a landscape scale, as  
38 opposed to smaller-scale piecemeal planning, would enable greater adaptability to climate-  
39 related changes (Chapter 3, National Forests).

40  
41 A number of factors may limit the usefulness of management plans. The extent to which plans  
42 are followed and updated is highly variable across management systems. Further, plans may not  
43 always adequately address evolving issues or directly identify actions necessary to address

1 climate change (Chapter 3, National Forests; Chapter 8, Marine Protected Areas). If a plan is not  
2 updated regularly, or a planning horizon is too short-sighted in view of climate change, a plan's  
3 management goals may become outdated or inappropriate. To date, few management plans  
4 address or incorporate climate change directly. Fortunately, many agencies recognize the need  
5 for management plans to identify the risks posed by climate change and to have the ability to  
6 adapt in response (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). Some proactive steps to address climate  
7 change will likely cost very little and could be included in policy and management plans  
8 (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). These include documenting baseline conditions to aid in  
9 identifying future changes and threats, identifying protection options, and developing techniques  
10 and methods to help predict climate related changes at various scales (Chapter 3, National  
11 Forests; Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers).

12  
13 Last, even if the plan for a particular management system addresses climate change  
14 appropriately, many federal lands and waters are affected by neighboring lands for which they  
15 have limited or no control (Chapter 4, National Parks). National wildlife refuges and wild and  
16 scenic rivers are subject to water regulation by other agencies or entities. This fragmented  
17 jurisdiction means that collaboration among agencies is required so that they are all working  
18 toward common goals using common management approaches. Although such collaboration  
19 does occur, formal co-management remains the exception, not the rule. Despite this lack of  
20 collaboration, there is widespread recognition that managing surrounding lands and waters is  
21 important to meeting management objectives (Chapter 5, National Wildlife Refuges; Chapter 8,  
22 Marine Protected Areas), which may lead to more effective management across borders in the  
23 future.

#### 24 **9.5.2.2 Opportunities**

25 Each management system mandates the development of a management plan. Incorporating  
26 climate change adaptation could be made a part of all planning exercises, both at the level of  
27 individual units and collaboratively with other management units. This might encourage more  
28 units in the same broad geographical areas to look for opportunities to coordinate and collaborate  
29 on the development of regional management plans (Table 9.6). A natural next step would then be  
30 to prioritize actions within the management plan. Different approaches may be used at different  
31 scales to decide on management activities across the public lands network or at specific sites. If  
32 planning and prioritizing occurs across a network of sites, then not only does this approach  
33 facilitate sharing of information between units, but this broader landscape approach also lends  
34 itself well to climate change planning. This has already occurred in the National Forest System,  
35 where the Olympic, Mt. Baker, and Gifford Pinchot National Forests have combined resources to  
36 produce coordinated plans. The Olympic National Forest's approach to its strategic planning  
37 process is also exemplary of an entity already possessing the capacity to incorporate climate  
38 change through its specific guidance on prioritization.

39  
40 In some cases, existing management plans may already set the stage for climate adaptation. A  
41 good example is the Forest Service's adoption of an early detection/rapid response strategy for  
42 invasive species. This same type of thinking could easily be translated to an early detection/rapid  
43 response management approach to climate impacts. Even destructive extreme climate events can  
44 be viewed as management opportunities by providing valuable post-disturbance data. For  
45 example, reforestation techniques following a fire or windfall event can be better honed and

1 implemented with such data (*e.g.*, use of genotypes that are better adjusted to the new or  
2 unfolding regional climate, use of nursery stock tolerant to low soil moisture and high  
3 temperature, or use of a variety of genotypes in the nursery stocks) (see Chapter 3, National  
4 Forests).

5  
6 Management plans that are allowed to incorporate climate change adaptation strategies but that  
7 have not yet done so provide a blank canvas of opportunity. In the near term, state wildlife action  
8 plans are an example of this type of leveraging opportunity. Another example is the Forest  
9 Service's involvement with the Puget Sound Coalition and the National Estuary Program's  
10 involvement in Coastal Habitat Protection Plans for fish, an ecosystem-based fisheries  
11 management approach at the state level. Stakeholder processes, described above as a barrier,  
12 might be an opportunity to move forward with new management approaches if public education  
13 campaigns precede the stakeholder involvement. The issue of climate change has received  
14 sufficient attention that many people in the public have begun to demand actions by the agencies  
15 to address it.

16  
17 As suggested by the many themes identified by the federal land and water management systems,  
18 the key to successful adaptation is to turn barriers into opportunities. This should be possible with  
19 increased availability of practical information, corresponding flexibility in management goals, and  
20 strong leadership. At the very least, managers (and corresponding management plans) may need to  
21 recognize climate change and its synergistic effects as an overarching threat to their resources.

### 22 **9.5.3 Human and Financial Capital**

#### 23 **9.5.3.1 Barriers**

24 Level of funding and staff capacity (or regular staff turnover) may pose significant barriers to  
25 adaptation to climate change (Table 9.7). Agencies may also lack adaptive capacity due to the  
26 reward systems in place. Currently, in some agencies a reward system exists that focuses  
27 primarily on achieving narrowly prescribed targets, and funding is directed at achieving these  
28 specific activities. This system provides few incentives for creative project development and  
29 implementation, instead creating a culture that prioritizes projects with easily attainable goals.  
30

31 Budgets may also curtail adaptation efforts. Managers may lack sufficient resources to deal with  
32 routine needs. Managers may have even fewer resources available to address unexpected events,  
33 which will likely increase as a result of climate change. In addition, staff capacity may not be  
34 sufficient to address climate change. While climate change stands to increase the scope of  
35 management by increasing both the area of land requiring active management and the planning  
36 burden per unit area (because of adaptive management techniques), agencies such as the USFWS  
37 face decreasing personnel in some regions. Additionally, minimal institutional capacity exists to  
38 capture experience and expand learning (Chapter 4, National Parks). As a result, many agency  
39 personnel do not have adequate training, expertise, or understanding to effectively address  
40 emerging issues (Chapter 3, National Forests). All of these factors work to constrain the ability  
41 of managers to alter or supplement practices that would enable adaptation to climate change.

**1 9.5.3.2 Opportunities**

2 Agency employees play important roles as crafters and ultimate implementers of management  
3 plans and strategies. In fact, with respect to whether the implementation of adaptation strategies  
4 is successful or unsuccessful, the management of people can be as—or more—important than  
5 managing the natural resource. A lack of risk-taking coupled with the uncertainty surrounding  
6 climate change could lead to a situation where managers opt for the no-action approach (e.g.,  
7 Hall and Fagre, 2003). On the other hand, climate change could cause the opposite response if  
8 managers perceive that risks must be taken because of the uncertainties surrounding climate  
9 change. Implementation of human resource policies that minimize risk for action and protect  
10 people when mistakes are made will be critical to enabling managers to make difficult choices  
11 under climate change (Table 9.7). A “safe-to-fail” policy would be exemplary of this approach  
12 (Chapter 4, National Parks). A safe-to-fail policy or action is one in which the system can  
13 recover without irreversible damage to either natural or human resources (e.g., careers and  
14 livelihoods). Because the uncertainties associated with projections of climate change are  
15 substantial, expected outcomes or targets of agency policies and actions may be equally likely to  
16 be correct or incorrect. Although managers aim to implement a “correct” action, it must be  
17 expected that when the behavior of drivers and system responses is uncertain, failures are likely  
18 to occur when attempting to manage for impacts of climate change (Chapter 4, National Parks).

19  
20 Tackling the challenge of managing natural resources in the face of climate change may require  
21 that staff members not only feel valued but also empowered by their institutions. Scores of  
22 federal land management employees began their careers as passionate stewards of the nation’s  
23 natural resources. With the threat of climate change further compounding management  
24 challenges, it is important that this passion be reinvigorated and fully cultivated. Existing  
25 employees could be effectively trained (or specialist positions designated) for tackling climate  
26 change issues within the context of their current job descriptions and management frameworks  
27 (Chapter 3, National Forests). For example, the National Park Service has recently implemented  
28 a program to educate park staff on climate change issues, in addition to offering training for  
29 presenting this information to park visitors in 11 national parks. Called the “Climate Friendly  
30 Parks” program, it includes guidelines for inventorying a park’s greenhouse gas emissions, park-  
31 specific suggestions to reduce greenhouse gas emissions, and help for setting realistic emissions  
32 reduction goals. Additionally, the Park Service’s Pacific West Regional Office has been  
33 proactive in educating western park managers on issues related to climate change as well as  
34 promoting messages to communicate to the public and actions to address the challenge of climate  
35 change (Chapter 4, National Parks). Such “no regrets” activities offer a cost-effective mechanism  
36 for empowering existing employees with both knowledge and public outreach skills.

**37 9.5.4 Information and Science****38 9.5.4.1 Barriers**

39 Adaptation is predicated upon research and scientific information. Addressing emerging issues  
40 that arise as a result of climate change will require new research and information to use in  
41 developing strategic management plans. Critical gaps in scientific information, such as  
42 understanding of ecosystem function and structure, coupled with the high degree of uncertainty  
43 surrounding potential impacts of climate change, hinder the potential for effective

1 implementation of adaptation (Table 9.8; Chapter 8, Marine Protected Areas). A lack of climate-  
2 related data from monitoring precludes managers from assessing the extent to which climate has  
3 affected their systems. Staff and budget limitations may not only constrain the ability to monitor  
4 but may also preclude managers from analyzing data from the monitoring programs that do  
5 receive support. Without adequate monitoring, it remains difficult to move forward confidently  
6 with appropriate adaptation efforts (Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers).

7  
8 Even if managers had sufficient information, decision-making would still prove problematic.  
9 Managers often lack sufficient tools to help guide them in selecting appropriate management  
10 approaches that address climate change. The complexity of climate models poses a barrier to  
11 adequately understanding future scenarios and how to react to them, and gaps in tools and resource  
12 availability limit the ability of managers to prioritize actions to address climate change (Chapter 3,  
13 National Forests). Of particular importance is the need to establish tools to help identify tradeoffs  
14 in different management decisions and understand how those tradeoffs would affect particular  
15 variables of interest (*e.g.*, air quality levels from prescribed fires versus high-intensity natural  
16 fires).

17  
18 Another gap exists between stakeholder information and expertise compared with that held by  
19 resource managers and scientists. Stakeholders often do not have full information, sufficient  
20 expertise, or a long-term perspective that allows them to evaluate the relative merit of adaptation  
21 options. Therefore, they may act to inhibit or even block the use of adaptation in management  
22 planning. Strong local preferences can contradict broader agency goals and drive non-optimal  
23 decision-making, all of which act to limit or preclude acceptance of proactive management  
24 (Chapter 3, National Forests).

#### 25 **9.5.4.2 Opportunities**

26 Although barriers exist, effective collaboration and linkages among managers and resource  
27 scientists are possible (Table 9.8). Scientists can support management by targeting their research to  
28 provide managers with information relevant to major management challenges, which would enable  
29 managers to make better-informed decisions as new resource issues emerge. Resource scientists  
30 have monitoring data and research results that are often underused or ignored. Monitoring efforts  
31 that have specific objectives and are conducted with information use in mind would make the data  
32 more useful for managers. The need for monitoring efforts may provide impetus for a more unified  
33 approach across agencies or management regions. This would serve to not only provide more  
34 comprehensive information but would also serve to minimize costs associated with monitoring  
35 efforts.

36  
37 A unified effort is also needed to invest resources and training into the promotion of agile  
38 approaches to adaptation management across all federal resource agencies and land or water  
39 managers. This would include producing general guidance in terms of the likely impacts of  
40 concern, and the implications of these impacts for ecosystem services and management. It would  
41 also mean expending efforts to develop “climate science translators” who are capable of  
42 translating the projections of climate models to managers and planners who are not trained in the  
43 highly specialized field of GCMs. These translators would be scientists adept at responding to  
44 climate change who help design adaptive responses. They would also function as outreach staff



1 who would explain to the public what climate change might mean to long-standing recreational  
2 opportunities or management goals.

3  
4 Many federal lands and waters provide excellent opportunities for educating the public about  
5 climate change. The national parks and wildlife refuges already put extensive resources into  
6 education and outreach for environmental, ecological, and cultural subjects. There are several  
7 ways in which the agencies can inform the public about climate change and climate-change  
8 impacts. The first of these uses traditional communication venues such as information kiosks and  
9 signs, documentaries, and brochures. Interactive video displays are well suited to demonstrating  
10 the potential effects of climate change. Such displays could demonstrate the effects of different  
11 climate-change scenarios on specific places or systems, making use, for example, of photos or  
12 video documenting coral bleaching and retreating glaciers, or modeling studies projecting  
13 changes in specific lands or waters (Kerr, 2004; 2005).

14  
15 The second major way that agencies can inform the public is to provide examples of sustainable  
16 practices that reduce greenhouse gas emissions. The National Park Service's Climate Friendly  
17 Parks program is a good example of such an outreach effort. The program involves a baseline  
18 inventory of park emissions using Environmental Protection Agency models and then uses that  
19 inventory to develop methods for reducing emissions, including coordinating transportation,  
20 implementing energy-saving technology, and reducing solid waste. Similar programs could  
21 easily be developed for other agencies.

## 22 **9.6 Advancing the Nation's Capability to Adapt**

23 Until now, we have discussed specific details and concepts for managers to consider relating to  
24 adapting to climate change. When all of these details and case studies are pulled together it is the  
25 opinion of the authors of this report that some fundamental strategic foci are needed. Those foci  
26 are to (1) have a rational approach for establishing priorities and triage; (2) make sure the  
27 management is done at appropriate scales, and not necessarily simply the scales of convenience  
28 or tradition; (3) manage expecting change; and (4) increase collaboration among agencies.

29  
30 In order to understand how these conclusions were reached, one needs only to appreciate that for  
31 virtually every category of federal land and water management, one is likely to find situations  
32 that exist in which currently available adaptation strategies will not enable a manager to meet  
33 specific goals, especially where those goals are related to keeping ecosystems unchanged or  
34 species where they are. The expert opinion of the report authors and experts is that these  
35 circumstances may require fundamental shifts in how ecosystems are managed. Such shifts may  
36 entail reformulating goals, managing cooperatively across landscapes, and looking forward to  
37 potential future ecosystem states and facilitating movement toward those preferred states. These  
38 sorts of fundamental shifts in management at local-to-regional scales may only be possible with  
39 coincident changes in organizations at the national level that empower managers to make the  
40 necessary shifts. Thus, fundamental shifts in national-level policies may also be needed.

41  
42 Even with actions taken to limit greenhouse gas emissions in the future, such shifts in  
43 management and policies may be necessary since concentrations resident in the atmosphere are  
44 significant enough to require planning for adaptation actions today (Myers, 1979). Ecosystem  
45 responses to the consequences of increasing concentrations are likely to be unusually fast, large,

1 and non-linear in character. More areas are becoming vulnerable to climate change because of  
2 anthropogenic constraints compounding natural barriers to biological adaptations.

3  
4 The types of changes that may be needed at the national level include modification of priorities  
5 across systems and species and use of new rules for triage; enabling management to occur at  
6 larger scales and for projected ecological changes; and expansion of interagency collaboration  
7 and access to expertise in climate change science and adaptation, data, and tools. Although many  
8 agencies have embraced subsets of these needed changes, there are no examples of the full suite  
9 of these changes being implemented as a best practices approach.

### 10 **9.6.1 Re-Evaluate Priorities and Consider Triage**

11 Climate change not only requires consideration of how to adapt management approaches, it also  
12 requires reconsideration of management objectives. In a world with unlimited resources and staff  
13 time, climate adaptation would simply be a matter of management innovation, monitoring, and  
14 more accessible and useable science. In reality, priorities may need to be re-examined and re-  
15 established to focus adaptation efforts appropriately and make the best use of limited resources.  
16 At the regional scale, one example of the type of change that may be needed is in selected  
17 estuaries where freshwater runoff is expected to increase and salt water is expected to penetrate  
18 further upstream. Given this scenario, combined with the goal of protecting anadromous fishes,  
19 models could be used to project shifts in critical propagation habitats and management efforts  
20 could be refocused to those sites (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). In Rocky Mountain National  
21 Park, because warmer winters are expected to result in greatly increased elk populations, a plan  
22 to reduce elk populations to appropriate numbers is being prepared with the goal of population  
23 control (Chapter 4, National Parks).

24  
25 In the situations above, the goals are still attainable with some modifications. However, in  
26 general, resource managers could face significant constraints on their authority to re-prioritize  
27 and make decisions about which goals to modify and how to accomplish those modifications.  
28 National-level policies may have to be re-examined with thought toward how to accommodate  
29 and even enable such changes in management at the regional level. This re-examination of  
30 policies at the national level is another form of priority-setting. Similar to regional-level  
31 prioritization, prioritization at the national level would require information at larger scales about  
32 the distribution of natural resources and conservation targets, the vulnerability of those targets to  
33 climate change, and costs of different management actions in different systems. Prioritization  
34 schemes may weight these three factors in different ways, depending on goals and needs.  
35 Knowing where resources and conservation targets are is relatively straightforward, although  
36 even baseline information on species distributions is often lacking (Chapter 5, National Wildlife  
37 Refuges; Chapter 6, Wild and Scenic Rivers). Prioritization schemes that weight rare species or  
38 systems heavily would likely target lands with more threatened and endangered species and  
39 unique ecosystems.

40  
41 Because climate-driven changes in some ecological systems are likely to be extreme, priority-  
42 setting may, in some instances, involve triage (Metzger, Leemans, and Schröter, 2005). Some  
43 goals may have to be abandoned and new goals established if climate change effects are severe  
44 enough. Even with substantial focused and creative management efforts, some systems may not  
45 be able to maintain the ecological properties and services that they provide in today's climate. In

1 other systems, the cost of adaptation may far outweigh the ecological, social, or economic  
2 returns it would provide. In such cases, resources may be better invested in other systems. One  
3 simple example of triage would be the decision to abandon habitat management efforts for a  
4 population of an endangered species on land at the “trailing” edge of its shifting range. If the  
5 refuge or park that currently provides habitat for the species will be unsuitable for the species in  
6 the next 50 years, it might be best to actively manage for habitat elsewhere and, depending on  
7 the species and the circumstances, investigate the potential for relocation. Such decisions will  
8 have to be made with extreme care. In addition to evaluating projected trends in climate and  
9 habitat suitability, it will be necessary to monitor the species or habitats in question to determine  
10 whether the projected trends are being realized. All of the changes in management approaches  
11 discussed throughout the rest of this section would likely require fundamental changes in policy  
12 and engagement in triage at the national level.

### 13 **9.6.2 Manage at Appropriate Scales**

14 Experience gained from natural resource management programs and other activities may offer  
15 insights into the application of integrated ecosystem management under changing climatic  
16 conditions. Integrated ecosystems management seeks to optimize the positive ecological and  
17 socioeconomic benefits of activities aimed at maintaining ecosystem services under a multitude  
18 of existing stressors. One lesson learned from this approach is that it may be necessary to define  
19 the management scale beyond the boundaries of a single habitat type, conservation area, or  
20 political or administrative unit to encompass an entire ecosystem or region. Currently,  
21 management plans for forests, rivers, marine protected areas, estuaries, national parks, and  
22 wildlife refuges are often developed for discrete geographies with specific attributes (species,  
23 ecosystems, commodities), without recognition that they may be nested within other systems.  
24 For example, marine protected areas are often within national estuaries; wild and scenic rivers  
25 are often within national parks. With few exceptions (see Section 9.5.2), plans are not developed  
26 with the ability to fully consider the matrix in which they are embedded and the extent to which  
27 those attributes may vary over time in response to drivers external to the management system.  
28 Climate change adaptation opportunities may be missed if land and water resources are thought  
29 of as distinct, static, or out of context of a regional and even continental arena. A better approach  
30 would be to systematically broaden and integrate management plans, where possible. Although a  
31 single national park or national forest may have limited capacity for adaptation, the entire system  
32 of parks and forests and refuges in a region may have the capacity for adaptation. When spatial  
33 scales of consideration are larger, federal agencies often have mutually reinforcing goals that  
34 may result in the enhancement of their ability to manage cooperatively across landscapes  
35 (Leeworthy and Wiley, 2003).

### 36 **9.6.3 Manage for Change**

37 Agencies have established best practices based on many years of past experience. Unfortunately,  
38 dramatic climate change may change the rules of the game, rendering yesterday’s best practices  
39 tomorrow’s bad practices. Experienced managers have begun to realize that they can anticipate  
40 changes in conditions, especially conditions that might alter the impacts of grazing, fire, logging,  
41 harvesting, park visitation, and so forth. Such anticipatory thinking will be critical, as climate  
42 change will likely exceed ecosystem thresholds over time such that strategies to increase  
43 ecosystem resilience will no longer be effective. At this point, major shifts in ecosystem

1 processes, structures, and components will be unavoidable, and adaptation will require planning  
2 for management of major ecosystem shifts.

3  
4 For example, some existing management plans identify a desired state (based on structural,  
5 ecosystem service, or ecosystem process attributes of the past) and then prescribe practices to  
6 achieve that state. While there is clarity and accountability in such fixed management objectives,  
7 these objectives may be unrealistic in light of dramatic environmental change. A desirable  
8 alternative management approach may be to “manage for change.” For example, when  
9 revegetation and silviculture are used for post-disturbance rehabilitation, species properly suited  
10 to the expected future climate could be used. In Tahoe National Forest, white fir could be  
11 favored over red fir, pines could be preferentially harvested at high elevations over fir, and  
12 species could be shifted upslope within expanded seed transfer guides (Chapter 3, National  
13 Forests). It is also possible that, after accounting for change, restoration may cease to be an  
14 appropriate undertaking. Again, in Tahoe National Forest, warming waters may render selected  
15 river reaches no longer suitable for salmon, so restoration of those reaches may not be a realistic  
16 management activity (Chapter 3, National Forests). The same applies to meadows in Tahoe  
17 National Forest, where restoration efforts may be abandoned due to possible succession to non-  
18 meadow conditions. Management will not be able to prevent change, so it may also be important  
19 to manage the public’s expectations. For example, the goal of the Park Service is to maintain a  
20 park exactly as it always has been, composed of the same tree species (Chapter 4, National  
21 Parks), and the public may not recognize the potential impossibility of this goal. Some additional  
22 examples of adaptation options for managing for change are presented in Box 9.9.

23  
24 Scenario-based planning can be a useful approach in efforts to manage for change. As discussed  
25 in Section 9.3.3.2, this is a qualitative process that involves exploration of a broad set of  
26 scenarios, which are plausible—yet very uncertain—stories or narratives about what might  
27 happen in the future. Protected-area managers, along with subject matter experts, can engage in  
28 scenario planning related to climate change and resources of interest and put into place plans for  
29 both high-probability and low-probability, high-risk events. Development of realistic plans may  
30 require a philosophical shift concerning when restoration is an appropriate post-disturbance  
31 response. It is impractical to attempt to keep ecosystem boundaries static. Estuaries display this  
32 poignantly. After a flood, there is often intense pressure to restore to the pre-flooding state  
33 (Chapter 7, National Estuaries). To ensure sound management responses, guidelines for the  
34 scenarios under which restoration and rebuilding should occur could be established in advance of  
35 disturbances. In this sense, disturbances could become opportunities for managing toward a  
36 distribution of human population and infrastructure that is more realistic given changing climate.

#### 37 **9.6.4 Expand Interagency Collaboration, Integration, and Lesson-Sharing**

38 The scale of the challenge posed by climate disruption and the uncertainty surrounding future  
39 changes demand coordinated, collaborative responses that go far beyond traditional “agency-by-  
40 agency” responses to stressors and threats. Every chapter in this volume has noted the need for a  
41 structured, interagency effort and for partnerships and collaboration in everything from research  
42 to management and land acquisition. Scientists and managers across agencies and management  
43 systems would benefit from greater sharing of data, models, and experiences. It may be  
44 necessary to develop formal structures and policies that foster extensive interagency cooperation.

45

1 One example of how to enhance the incorporation of climate information into management could  
2 be to designate climate experts to advise agency scientists and managers on climate change  
3 related issues. They could advise agency scientists and managers both at the national and at the  
4 site level, providing guidance, translating climate-impact projections, and coordinating  
5 interagency collaborations.

6  
7 In the area of climate change science, one interagency program established specifically to  
8 address climate change research is the U.S. Climate Change Science Program (CCSP). The goals  
9 of this program are to develop scientific knowledge of the climate system; the causes of changes  
10 in this system; and the effects of such changes on ecosystems, society, and the economy; and  
11 also to determine how best to apply that knowledge to decision-making. Climate change research  
12 conducted across 13 U.S. government departments and agencies is coordinated through the  
13 CCSP. The CCSP could be expanded to include management research and coordination to bridge  
14 the gap between resource management needs and scientific research priorities. This may enhance  
15 the goal of the CCSP to apply existing knowledge to decision-making.

16  
17 There are also other examples of existing collaborations across agencies that could be used as  
18 models. Several examples of interagency initiatives established to address universal threats to  
19 resources include the National Invasive Species Council, the Joint Fire Science Program, and  
20 National Interagency Fire Center. The analogy for climate change adaptation would be a group  
21 that would coordinate management activities, interpret research findings, inform on priority-  
22 setting, and disseminate data and tools.

23  
24 Any collaborative interagency effort would benefit from coordinating regional and national  
25 databases with scientific and monitoring data to increase the capacity to make informed decisions  
26 related to climate-induced changes. Pooling resources would allow for more effective data  
27 generation and sharing. Coordination could be done through easily accessible databases that can  
28 access and readily provide comprehensive information and serve to better inform managers and  
29 decision-makers in their efforts to adapt to climate change. Information on climate-change  
30 projections and climate-change-related research could also be included. Ideally, this would be a  
31 web-based clearinghouse with maps, a literature database, and pertinent models (*e.g.*, sea level  
32 projection models such as the Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model [SLAMM] and hydrology  
33 models such as those developed and used by the USGS<sup>7</sup> and EPA.<sup>8</sup> All maps, data, models, and  
34 papers could be easily downloaded and updated frequently as new information becomes  
35 available.

36  
37 Collaborations through national councils or interagency efforts may gain the greatest momentum  
38 and credibility when they address on-the-ground management challenges. There are several  
39 nascent collaborative networks that may provide models for success, such as the Greater  
40 Yellowstone Coalition and some collaborative research and management coalitions built around  
41 marine protected areas and wild and scenic rivers. These sorts of networks are critical to

---

<sup>7</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 1-4-2007: USGS water resources National Research Program (NRP) models. USGS Website, <http://water.usgs.gov/nrp/models.html>, accessed on 6-12-2007.

<sup>8</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 4-27-2007: Better assessment science integrating point & nonpoint sources. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Website, <http://www.epa.gov/waterscience/basins>, accessed on 6-12-2007.

1 illustrating how to overcome the challenges posed by lack of funding, and how to create critical  
2 ecological and sociological connectivity. With strong leadership, a systematic national network  
3 of such coalitions could lead to increased adaptive capacity across agencies and may set  
4 precedents for coordinating approaches among regional, state, and local-level management  
5 agencies.

## 6 **9.7 Conclusions**

7 Information on climate trends and climate impacts has increased dramatically within the last few  
8 years. The public, business leaders, and political leaders now widely recognize the risks of  
9 climate change and are beginning to take action. While a great deal of discussion has focused on  
10 emissions reductions and policies to limit climate change, many may not realize that—no matter  
11 which policy path is taken—some substantial climate change, uncertainty, and risk are  
12 inevitable. Moreover, the climate change that is already occurring will be here for years to come.  
13 Adaptation to climate change will therefore be necessary. Although there are constraints and  
14 limits to adaptation, some adaptation measures can go a long way toward reducing the loss of  
15 ecosystem services and limiting the economic or social burden of climate disruption. However, if  
16 the management cultures and planning approaches of agencies continue with a business-as-usual  
17 approach, it is likely that ecosystem services will suffer major degradation. It is the opinion of  
18 this report’s authors and expert stakeholders that we may be seeing a tipping point in terms of the  
19 need to plan and take appropriate action on climate adaptation.

20  
21 These experts believe that the current mindset toward management of natural resources and  
22 ecosystems may have to change. The spatial scale and ecological scope of climate change may  
23 necessitate that we broaden our thinking to view the natural resources of the United States as one  
24 large interlocking and interacting system, including state, federal, and private lands, with  
25 resilience emerging from coordinated stewardship of all of the parts. To achieve this, institutions  
26 may have to collaborate and cooperate more. Under conditions of uncertain climatic changes  
27 combined with uncertain ecosystem responses, agile management may have to become the rule  
28 rather than the exception. While energy corporations, insurance firms, and coastal developers are  
29 beginning to adapt to climate change, it is essential that federal agencies responsible for  
30 managing the nation’s land and water resources also develop management agility and deftness in  
31 dealing with climate disruptions. Maladaptation—adaptation that does not succeed in reducing  
32 vulnerability but increases it instead—must be avoided. Finally, to adapt to climate change,  
33 managers need to know in advance where the greatest vulnerabilities lie. In response to  
34 vulnerability analyses, agencies and the public can work together to bolster the resilience of  
35 those ecosystems and ecosystem services that are both valuable and capable of remaining viable  
36 into the future.

37  
38 It is crucial to emphasize that adaptation is not simply a matter of managers figuring out what to  
39 do, and then setting about to change their practices. All management is conducted within a  
40 broader context of socioeconomic incentives and institutional behaviors. This means it is  
41 essential to make sure that policies that seem external to the federal land and water resource  
42 management agencies do not undermine adaptation to climate change. One of the best examples  
43 of this danger is private, federal, and state insurance for coastal properties that are at risk of  
44 repeated storm damage or flooding. As long as insurance and mortgages are available for coastal  
45 building, coasts will be developed with seawalls and other hardened structures that ultimately

1 interfere with beach replenishment, rollback of marshes, and natural floodplains. At first glance  
2 one would not think that mortgages and insurance had anything to do with the adaptation of  
3 national estuaries to climate change, but in fact these economic incentives and constraints largely  
4 dictate the pattern of coastal development.

5  
6 Federal lands and waters do not function in isolation from human systems or from private land or  
7 water uses. For this reason, mechanisms for reducing conflict among private property uses and  
8 federal lands and waters are essential. For example, the National Park Service is working  
9 cooperatively with landowners bordering the Rio Grande in Texas to establish binding  
10 agreements that offer them technical assistance with measures to alleviate potentially adverse  
11 impacts on the river resulting from their land-use activities. In addition, landowners may  
12 voluntarily donate or sell lands or interests in lands (*i.e.*, easements) as part of a cooperative  
13 agreement. In the absence of agreements with private landowners, withdrawals from rivers and  
14 loss of riparian vegetation could foreclose opportunities for adaptation, potentially exacerbating  
15 the impacts of climate change.

16  
17 One adaptive response is large protected areas and replicated protected areas, but they are often  
18 associated with taking areas of land or ocean away from productive activities such as ranching,  
19 farming, or fishing. However, protected areas have multiple beneficial effects on the economy  
20 that are also important to consider. For example, in the Florida Keys it has been shown that total  
21 annual spending by recreating visitors to the Florida Keys was \$1.2 billion between June 2000  
22 and May 2001 (IPCC, 2007).

23  
24 Society can adapt to climate change through technological solutions and infrastructure, through  
25 behavioral choices (altered food and recreational choices), through land management practices,  
26 and through planning responses (Johnson and Weaver, in press). Although federal resource  
27 management agencies will tend to adapt by altering management policies, the effectiveness of  
28 those policies will be constrained by or enhanced by all of the other societal responses. In  
29 general, the federal government's authority over national parks, national forests, and other public  
30 resources is most likely to remain effective if management is aligned with the public's well-  
31 being and perception of well-being. Experienced resource managers recognize this and regularly  
32 invest in public education. This means that education and communication regarding managing  
33 for adaptation needs just as much attention as does the science of adaptation.

34  
35 Repeatedly, in response to crises and national challenges, the nation's executive and  
36 congressional leadership have mandated new collaboration among agencies, extended existing  
37 authorities, and encouraged innovation. The report authors and expert stakeholders conclude that  
38 this is exactly what is needed to adapt to climate change. The security of land and water  
39 resources and critical ecosystem services requires a national initiative and leadership. Greater  
40 agility will be required than has ever before been demanded from major land or water managers.  
41 The public has become accustomed to stakeholder involvement in major resource use decisions.  
42 This involvement cannot be sacrificed, but decision-making processes could be streamlined so  
43 that management approaches do not stand still while climate change proceeds rapidly. The  
44 specific recommendations for adaptation that emerge from studies of national forests, national  
45 parks, national wildlife refuges, wild and scenic rivers, national estuaries, and marine protected  
46 areas will not take root unless there is leadership at the highest level to address climate  
47 adaptation.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

## **9.8 References**

- Araújo**, M.B. and M. New, 2007: Ensemble forecasting of species distributions. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **22**, 42-47.
- Arvai**, J., G. Bridge, N. Dolsak, R. Franzese, T. Koontz, A. Luginbuhl, P. Robbins, K. Richards, K.S. Korfmacher, B. Sohngen, J. Tansey, and A. Thompson, 2006: Adaptive management of the global climate problem: bridging the gap between climate research and climate policy. *Climatic Change*, **78**, 217-225.
- Aschmann**, H., 1973: Distribution and peculiarity of Mediterranean ecosystems, In: *Mediterranean Type Ecosystems: Origin and Structure*, [Cagri, F.D. and H. Mooney (eds.)]. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY, pp. 11-19.
- Battin**, J., M.W. Wiley, M.H. Ruckelshaus, R.N. Palmer, E. Korb, K.K. Bartz, and H. Imaki, 2007: Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(16)**, 6720-6725.
- Behrenfeld**, M.J., R.T. O'Malley, D.A. Siegel, C.R. McClain, J.L. Sarmiento, G.C. Feldman, A.J. Milligan, P.G. Falkowski, R.M. Letelier, and E.S. Boss, 2006: Climate-driven trends in contemporary ocean productivity. *Nature*, **444(7120)**, 752-755.
- Benestad**, R.E., I. Hanssen-Bauer, and E.J. Fairland, 2007: An evaluation of statistical models for downscaling precipitation and their ability to capture long-term trends. *International Journal of Climatology*, **27(5)**, 649-665.
- Bengtsson**, J., P. Angelstam, T. Elmqvist, U. Emanuelsson, C. Folke, M. Ihse, F. Moberg, and M. Nystroem, 2003: Reserves, resilience and dynamic landscapes. *Ambio*, **32(6)**, 389-396.
- Bennett**, E.M., G.S. Cumming, and G.D. Peterson, 2005: A systems model approach to determining resilience surrogates for case studies. *Ecosystems*, **8**, 945-957.
- Bessie**, W.C. and E.A. Johnson, 1995: The relative importance of fuels and weather on fire behavior in subalpine forests. *Ecology*, **76(3)**, 747-762.
- Botkin**, D.B., H. Saxe, M.B. Araújo, R. Betts, R.H.W. Bradshaw, T. Cedhagen, P. Chesson, T.P. Dawson, J.R. Etterson, D.P. Faith, S. Ferrier, A. Guisan, A.S. Hansen, D.W. Hilbert, C. Loehle, C. Margules, M. New, M.J. Sobel, and D.R.B. Stockwell, 2007: Forecasting the effects of global warming on biodiversity. *BioScience*, **57(3)**, 227-236.



- 1 **Chapin**, F.S., B.H. Walker, R.J. Hobbs, D.U. Hooper, J.H. Lawton, O.E. Sala, and D. Tilman,  
2 1997: Biotic control over the functioning of ecosystems. *Science*, **277(5325)**, 500-504.
- 3 **Christensen**, J., B. C. Hewitson, A. Busuioc, A. Chen, X. Gao, I. Held, R. Jones, R. K. Kolli,  
4 W.-T. Kwon, R. Laprise, V. Magaña Rueda, L. Mearns, C. G. Menéndez, J. Räisänen, A.  
5 Rinke, A. Sarr, and P. Whetton, 2007: Regional climate projections, In: *Climate Change*  
6 *2007: the Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to Fourth Assessment*  
7 *Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M.  
8 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
9 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp.  
10 848-940.
- 11 **Dettinger**, M.D., 2005: From climate-change spaghetti to climate-change distributions for 21st  
12 century California. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science*, **3(1)**.
- 13 **Dixon**, G.E., 2003: *Essential FVS: A User's Guide to the Forest Vegetation Simulator*. U.S.  
14 Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Forest Management Service Center, Fort  
15 Collins, CO, pp.193p.
- 16 **Field**, C.B., 1999: Diverse controls on carbon storage under elevated CO<sub>2</sub>: toward a synthesis,  
17 In: *Carbon Dioxide and Environmental Stress*, [Luo, Y. (ed.)]. Academic Press, San  
18 Diego, California, pp. 373-391.
- 19 **Folke**, C., S. Carpenter, T. Elmqvist, L. Gunderson, C. Holling, and B. Walker, 2002: Resilience  
20 and sustainable development: building adaptive capacity in a world of transformations.  
21 *Ambio*, **31(5)**, 437-440.
- 22 **Folke**, C., S. Carpenter, B. Walker, M. Scheffer, T. Elmqvist, L.H. Gunderson, and C.S. Holling,  
23 2004: Regime shifts, resilience, and biodiversity in ecosystem management. *Annual*  
24 *Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **35**, 557-581.
- 25 **Fried**, J.S., M.S. Torn, and E. Mills, 2004: The impact of climate change on wildfire severity: a  
26 regional forecast for Northern California. *Climatic Change*, **64(1)**, 169-191.
- 27 **Georgi**, F., B. Hewitson, and J. Christensen, 2001: Regional climate information - evaluation  
28 and predictions, In: *Climate Change 2001: the Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working*  
29 *Group I to Third Assessment Report of IPCC*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,  
30 UK, pp. 583-638.
- 31 **Gregory**, R. and L. Failing, 2002: Using decision analysis to encourage sound deliberation:  
32 water use planning in British Columbia, Canada. *Journal of Policy Analysis and*  
33 *Management*, **21**, 492-499.

- 1 **Gregory, R., D. Ohlson, and J. Arvai, 2006:** Deconstructing adaptive management: criteria for  
 2 applications to environmental management. *Ecological Applications*, **16(6)**, 2411-2425.
- 3 **Guinotte, J.M., J. Orr, S. Cairns, A. Freiwald, L. Morgan, and R. George, 2006:** Will human-  
 4 induced changes in seawater chemistry alter the distribution of deep-sea scleractinian  
 5 corals? *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **4(3)**, 141-146.
- 6 **Gunderson, L.H., 2000:** Ecological resilience-in theory and application. *Annual Review of*  
 7 *Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 8 **Hall, M.H.P. and D.B. Fagre, 2003:** Modeled climate-induced glacier change in Glacier National  
 9 Park, 1850-2100. *BioScience*, **53(2)**, 131-140.
- 10 **Holling, C.S., 1973:** Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Annual Review of Ecology*  
 11 *and Systematics*, **4**, 1-23.
- 12 **IPCC, 2001:** *Climate Change 2001: the Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the*  
 13 *Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.* [Houghton,  
 14 J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A.  
 15 Johnson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New  
 16 York, NY, USA.
- 17 **IPCC, 2007:** Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical Science Basis.*  
 18 *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the*  
 19 *Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change,* [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M. Manning, Z.  
 20 Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)]. University of  
 21 Cambridge Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- 22 **IPCC-TGICA, 2007:** *General Guidelines on the Use of Scenario Data for Climate Impact and*  
 23 *Adaptation Assessment.* Version 2, Prepared by T.R. Carter on behalf of the  
 24 Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, Task Group on Data and Scenario Support  
 25 for Impact and Climate Assessment, pp.1-66.
- 26 **Johnson, T. and C. Weaver, in press:** A framework for assessing climate change impacts on  
 27 water resources. *Environmental Management*.
- 28 **Kelly, P.M. and W.N. Adger, 2000:** Theory and practice in assessing vulnerability to climate  
 29 change and facilitating adaptation. *Climatic Change*, **47(4)**, 325-352.
- 30 **Kerr, R.A., 2004:** Climate change: three degrees of consensus. *Science*, **305**, 932-934.
- 31 **Kerr, R.A., 2005:** How hot will the greenhouse world be? *Science*, **309(5731)**, 100-100.

- 1 **Lamy**, F., J. Bolte, M. Santelmann, and C. Smith, 2002: Development and evaluation of  
2 multiple-objective decision-making methods for watershed management planning.  
3 *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, **38(2)**, 517-529.
- 4 **Lawler**, J.J., D. White, R.P. Neilson, and A.R. Blaustein, 2006: Predicting climate-induced range  
5 shifts: model differences and model reliability. *Global Change Biology*, **12**, 1568-1584.
- 6 **Leeworthy**, V.R. and P.C. Wiley, 2003: *Profiles and Economic Contribution: General Visitors*  
7 *to Monroe County, Florida 2000-2001*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric  
8 Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-24.
- 9 **Leung**, L.R., L.O. Mearns, F. Giorgi, and R.L. Wilby, 2003: Regional climate research: needs  
10 and opportunities. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, **84**, 89-95.
- 11 **Logan**, J.A., J. Regniere, and J.A. Powell, 2003: Assessing the impacts of global warming on  
12 forest pest dynamics. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **1(3)**, 130-137.
- 13 **Lovejoy**, T.E. and L. Hannah, 2005: *Climate Change and Biodiversity*. Yale University Press,  
14 New Haven.
- 15 **Luck**, G.W., G.C. Daily, and P.R. Ehrlich, 2003: Population diversity and ecosystem services.  
16 *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **18(7)**, 331-336.
- 17 **Malcolm**, J.R., C. Liu, R.P. Neilson, L. Hansen, and L. Hannah, 2006: Global warming and  
18 extinctions of endemic species from biodiversity hotspots. *Conservation Biology*, **20(2)**,  
19 538-548.
- 20 **Mau-Crimmins**, T., A. Hubbard, D. Angell, C. Filippone, and N. Kline, 2005: *Sonoran Desert*  
21 *Network: Vitals Signs Monitoring Plan*. National Park Service, Intermountain Region,  
22 Denver, CO.
- 23 **Mearns**, L.O., F. Giorgi, P. Whetton, D. Pabon, M. Hulme, and M. Lal, 2003: *Guidelines for*  
24 *Use of Climate Scenarios Developed From Regional Climate Model Experiments*.  
25 Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, Task Group on Data and Scenarios Support  
26 for Impact and Climate Assessment, pp.1-38.
- 27 **Melillo**, J.M., J. Borchers, J. Chaney, H. Fisher, S. Fox, A. Haxeltine, A. Janetos, D.W.  
28 Kicklighter, T.G.F. Kittel, A.D. McGuire, R. McKeown, R. Neilson, R. Nemani, D.S.  
29 Ojima, T. Painter, Y. Pan, W.J. Parton, L. Pierce, L. Pitelka, C. Prentice, B. Rizzo, N.A.  
30 Rosenbloom, S. Running, D.S. Schimel, S. Sitch, T. Smith, and I. Woodward, 1995:  
31 Vegetation/ecosystem modeling and analysis project: comparing biogeography and  
32 geochemistry models in a continental-scale study of terrestrial ecosystem responses to  
33 climate change and CO<sub>2</sub> doubling. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **9(4)**, 407-437.

- 1 **Metzger**, M.J., R. Leemans, and D. Schröter, 2005: A multidisciplinary multi-scale framework  
 2 for assessing vulnerability to global change. *International Journal of Applied Earth*  
 3 *Observation and Geoinformation*, **7**, 253-267.
- 4 **Mitchell**, T.D., T.R. Carter, P.D. Jones, M. Hulme, and M. New, 2004: *A Comprehensive Set of*  
 5 *High-Resolution Grids of Monthly Climate for Europe and the Globe: the Observed*  
 6 *Record (1901-2000) and 16 Scenarios (2001-2100)*. Working Paper 55, Tyndall Centre  
 7 for Climate Change Research.
- 8 **Moore**, J.L., A. Balmford, T. Brooks, N.D. Burgess, L.A. Hansen, C. Rahbek, and P.H.  
 9 Williams, 2003: Performance of sub-Saharan vertebrates as indicator groups for  
 10 identifying priority areas for conservation. *Conservation Biology*, **17(1)**, 207-218.
- 11 **Myers**, N., 1979: *The Sinking Arc*. Pergamon Press, New York, NY.
- 12 **National Research Council**, 1999: *Downstream: Adaptive Management of the Glen Canyon*  
 13 *Dam and the Colorado River Ecosystem*. National Academies Press, Washington, DC.
- 14 **Pan**, Z., J.H. Christensen, R.W. Arritt, and W.J. Gutowski, 2001: Evaluation of uncertainties in  
 15 regional climate change simulations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **106**, 17735-  
 16 17751.
- 17 **Parmesan**, C., 1996: Climate and species' range. *Nature*, **382**, 765-766.
- 18 **Pauly**, D., 1995: Anecdotes and the shifting baseline syndrome of fisheries. *Trends in Ecology*  
 19 *and Evolution*, **10(10)**, 430-430.
- 20 **Pearson**, R.G., T.P. Dawson, P.M. Berry, and P.A. Harrison, 2002: SPECIES: A spatial  
 21 evaluation of climate impact on the envelope of species. *Ecological Modelling*, **154(3)**,  
 22 289-300.
- 23 **Pianka**, E.R., 1970: On r- and K-selection. *The American Naturalist*, **104(940)**, 592-597.
- 24 **Poff**, N.L., M.M. Brinson, and J.W. Day, Jr., 2002: *Aquatic Ecosystems & Global Climate*  
 25 *Change: Potential Impacts on Inland Freshwater and Coastal Wetland Ecosystems in the*  
 26 *United States*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, pp.1-56.
- 27 **Porter**, M.E., 1985: *The Competitive Advantage*. Free Press, New York, NY.
- 28 **Portner**, H.O. and R. Knust, 2007: Climate change affects marine fishes through the oxygen  
 29 limitation of thermal tolerance. *Science*, **315(5808)**, 95-97.

- 1 **Root**, T.L. and S. H. Schneider, 2002: Climate change: overview and implications for wildlife,  
2 In: *Wildlife Responses to Climate Change: North American Case Studies*, [Schneider,  
3 S.H. and T.L. Root (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-56.
- 4 **Salathé**, E.P., Jr., 2003: Comparison of various precipitation downscaling methods for the  
5 simulation of streamflow in a rainshadow river basin. *International Journal of*  
6 *Climatology*, **23(8)**, 887-901.
- 7 **Scheffer**, M., S. Carpenter, J.A. Foley, C. Folke, and B.H. Walker, 2001: Catastrophic shifts in  
8 ecosystems. *Nature*, **413**, 591-596.
- 9 **Scholze**, M., W. Knorr, N.W. Arnell, and I.C. Prentice, 2006: A climate-change risk analysis for  
10 world ecosystems. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States*  
11 *of America*, **103(35)**, 13116-13120.
- 12 **Schwartz**, P., 1996: *Art of the Long View: Planning for the Future in an Uncertain World*.  
13 Currency Doubleday, New York, NY, pp. 1-258.
- 14 **Shongwe**, M.E., W.A. Landman, and S.J. Mason, 2006: Performance of recalibration systems for  
15 GCM forecasts for southern Africa. *International Journal of Climatology*, **26(12)**, 1567-  
16 1585.
- 17 **Spak**, S., T. Holloway, B. Lynn, and R. Goldberg, 2007: A comparison of statistical and  
18 dynamical downscaling for surface temperature in North America. *Journal of*  
19 *Geophysical Research*, **112**, 1029-1034.
- 20 **Spittlehouse**, D.L. and R.B. Stewart, 2003: Adaptation to climate change in forest management.  
21 *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management*, **4(1)**, 7-17.
- 22 **Tallis**, H.M. and P. Kareiva, 2006: Shaping global environmental decisions using socio-  
23 ecological models. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **21**, 562-568.
- 24 **Thuiller**, W., S. Lavorel, M.B. Araujo, M.T. Sykes, and I.C. Prentice, 2005: Climate change  
25 threats to plant diversity in Europe. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of*  
26 *the United States of America*, **102(23)**, 8245-8250.
- 27 **Tompkins**, E.L. and N.W. Adger, 2004: Does adaptive management of natural resources  
28 enhance resilience to climate change? *Ecology and Society*, **19(2)**.
- 29 **Turner**, B.L., II, R.E. Kasperson, P.A. Matsone, J.J. McCarthy, R.W. Corell, L. Christensene, N.  
30 Eckley, J.X. Kasperson, A. Luerse, M.L. Martello, C. Polsky, A. Pulsipher, and A.  
31 Schiller, 2003: A framework for vulnerability analysis in sustainability science.

- 1            *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America Early*  
2            *Edition*, **100(14)**.
- 3    **U.S. Climate Change Science Program**, in press: Synthesis and assessment product 4.1:  
4            Coastal elevation and sensitivity to sea level rise. *A report by the U. S. Climate Change*  
5            *Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research, U. S.*  
6            *Environmental Protection Agency*. [Titus, J.G. (ed.)].
- 7    **Westerling**, A.L., H.G. Hidalgo, D.R. Cayan, and T.W. Swetnam, 2006: Warming and earlier  
8            spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. *Science*, **313(5789)**, 940-943.
- 9    **Wilby**, R.L., S.P. Charles, E. Zorita, B. Timbal, P. Whetton, and L.O. Mearns, 2004: *Guidelines*  
10           *for Use of Climate Scenarios Developed From Statistical Downscaling Methods*.  
11           Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, Task Group on Data and Scenarios Support  
12           for Impact and Climate Assessment, pp.1-27.
- 13   **Wilby**, R.L., T.M.L. Wigley, D. Conway, P.D. Jones, B.C. Hewitson, J. Main, and D.S. Wilks,  
14           1998: Statistical downscaling of general circulation model output: a comparison of  
15           methods. *Water Resources Research*, **34(11)**, 2995-3008.
- 16   **Willis**, K.J. and H.J.B. Birks, 2006: What is natural? The need for a long-term perspective in  
17           biodiversity conservation. *Science*, **314(5803)**, 1261.
- 18   **Wood**, A.W., L.R. Leung, V. Sridhar, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2004: Hydrologic implications of  
19           dynamical and statistical approaches to downscaling climate model outputs. *Climatic*  
20           *Change*, **62(1)**, 189-216.
- 21   **Worm**, B., E.B. Barbier, N. Beaumont, J.E. Duffy, C. Folke, B.S. Halpern, J.B.C. Jackson, H.K.  
22           Lotze, F. Micheli, S.R. Palumbi, E. Sala, K.A. Selkoe, J.J. Stachowicz, and R. Watson,  
23           2006: Impacts of biodiversity loss on ocean ecosystem services. *Science*, **314(5800)**, 787-  
24           790.
- 25   **Yohe**, G.W. and R.S.J. Tol, 2002: Indicators for social and economic coping capacity--moving  
26           toward a working definition of adaptive capacity. *Global Environmental Change*, **12**, 25-  
27           40.  
28  
29

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

## **9.9 Appendix: Resources for Assessing Climate Vulnerability And Impacts**

### **NCAR's MAGICC and SCENGEN**

<http://www.cgd.ucar.edu/cas/wigley/magicc/index.html>

Coupled, user-friendly interactive software suites that allow users to investigate future climate change and its uncertainties at both the global-mean and regional levels.

### **WALTER**

<http://java.arid.arizona.edu/ahp/>

Fire-Climate-Society (FCS-1) is an online, spatially explicit strategic wildfire planning model with an embedded multi-criteria decision process that facilitates the construction of user-designed risk assessment maps under alternative climate scenarios and varying perspectives of fire probability and values at risk.

### **North American Regional Climate Change Assessment Program**

<http://www.narccap.ucar.edu/>

### **Regional Hydro-Ecologic Simulation Tool**

<http://geography.sdsu.edu/Research/Projects/RHESSYS>

### **U.S. Climate Division Dataset Mapping Tool**

<http://www.cdc.noaa.gov/USclimate/USclimdivs.html>

<http://www.cdc.noaa.gov/cgi-bin/PublicData/getpage.pl>

This tool can generate regional maps.

### **ISPE/Weiss/Overpeck climate change projections for West (based on IPCC)**

[http://www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/research/regional/projected\\_US\\_climate\\_change/projected\\_US\\_climate\\_change.htm](http://www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/research/regional/projected_US_climate_change/projected_US_climate_change.htm)

### **High Plains Regional Climate Center**

<http://www.hprcc.unl.edu/>

### **Intergovernmental Panel On Climate Change**

<http://www.ipcc.ch/>

Climate change reports, graphics, summaries.

### **The Hadley Centre**

<http://www.metoffice.gov.uk/research/hadleycentre/index.html>

Coarse scale global temperature, soil moisture, sea level, and sea-ice volume and area projections.

### **National Center for Atmospheric Research (NCAR)**

1 <http://www.ucar.edu/research/climate/>

2 Coarse resolution climate-change projections, regional climate model.

3  
4 **Pew Center on Global Climate Change**

5 [http://www.pewclimate.org/what\\_s\\_being\\_done/](http://www.pewclimate.org/what_s_being_done/)

6 Background on climate change, policy implications.

7  
8 **NOAA Earth System Research Lab (Climate Analysis Branch)**

9 <http://www.cdc.noaa.gov/>

10 Current climate data and near-term forecasts.

11  
12 **The Climate Institute**

13 [http://www.climate.org/climate\\_main.shtml](http://www.climate.org/climate_main.shtml)

14 Basic background information on climate change.

15  
16 **U.S. Global Change Research Information Office**

17 <http://www.gcrio.org/>

18 Reports and information about climate change.

19  
20 **Real Climate**

21 <http://www.realclimate.org/>

22 In-depth discussions with scientists about many different aspects of climate change.

23  
24 **EPA Sea level Rise**

25 <http://yosemite.epa.gov/oar/globalwarming.nsf/content/ResourceCenterPublicationsSeaLevelRiseIndex.html>

27 Reports and impact projections.

28  
29 **CLIMAS, Climate Assessment for the Southwest**

30 (<http://www.ispe.arizona.edu/climas/>)

31 A source for climate change related research, short-term forecasts and climate  
32 reconstructions for the southwestern United States.

33  
34 **Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington**

35 <http://www.cses.washington.edu/cig/>

36 Climate-change research and projections for the Pacific Northwest.

37



## 1 **9.10 Boxes**

2 **Box 9.1.** An example framework for incorporating climate change information into impact  
3 assessments (Mearns *et al.*, 2003; Wilby *et al.*, 2004).

4  
5 **Step 1 – Define decision context:** Clarify management goals and endpoints of concern, as well as risk preferences  
6 and tradeoffs, time horizons for monitoring and management, and planning processes related to established  
7 endpoints.

8  
9 **Step 2 – Develop conceptual model:** Develop the conceptual model linking the spatial and temporal scales of  
10 interaction between and among drivers and endpoints to determine the most important dependencies, sensitivities,  
11 and uncertainties in the system.

12  
13 **Step 3 – Assess available climate data:** Determine whether available climate data are adequate for achieving the  
14 specified goals and endpoints. Data sources that may be used include historical weather observations, palaeoclimate  
15 data, and data from climate model experiments (the focus of this framework).

16  
17 **Step 4 – Downscale climate data:** Develop finer resolution datasets from coarser scale data using statistical  
18 relationships (“statistical” downscaling) or computer models (“dynamical” downscaling) to drive impacts models.  
19 For guidance on downscaling techniques, see IPCC-TGICA reports (Lovejoy and Hannah, 2005).<sup>9</sup>

20  
21 **Step 5 – Select impact assessment models:** Review and select physical models that capture the processes and  
22 causal pathways represented in the conceptual model.

23  
24 **Step 6 – Conduct scenario and sensitivity analyses:** Specify a number of climate scenarios that are consistent with  
25 associated global-scale scenarios, physically plausible, and sufficiently detailed to support an assessment of the  
26 specified endpoints. Use these scenarios to learn the potential ranges of the system’s response to changes in the  
27 climate drivers.

28  
29 **Step 7 – Use risk management to make adaptation decisions:** Evaluate the information generated to determine  
30 potential management responses, recognizing that the consequences of decisions are generally not known and hence  
31 decisions are made to reduce the effects of risk.

---

<sup>9</sup> Reports can be found at <http://www.ipcc-data.org/guidelines/index.html>.

- 1 **Box 9.2.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on protection of key ecosystem features as a  
 2 means of supporting resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Protect Key Ecosystem Features</b>
<p><b>National Forests</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Facilitate natural (evolutionary) adaptation through management practices (<i>e.g.</i>, prescribed fire and other silvicultural treatments) that shorten regeneration times and promote interspecific competition.</li> <li>✓ Promote connected landscapes to facilitate species movements and gene flow, sustain key ecosystem processes (<i>e.g.</i>, pollination and dispersal), and protect critical habitats for threatened and endangered species.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Parks</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Remove barriers to upstream migration in rivers and streams.</li> <li>✓ Reduce fragmentation and maintain or restore species migration corridors to facilitate natural flow of genes, species and populations.</li> <li>✓ Use wildland fire, mechanical thinning, or prescribed burns where it is documented to reduce risk of anomalously severe fires.</li> <li>✓ Minimize alteration of natural disturbance regimes, for example through protection of natural flow regimes in rivers or removal of infrastructure that prohibits the allowance of wildland fire.</li> <li>✓ Aggressively prevent establishment of invasive non-native species or diseases where they are documented to threaten native species or current ecosystem function.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Wildlife Refuges</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Manage risk of catastrophic fires through prescribed burns.</li> <li>✓ Reduce or eliminate stressors on conservation target species.</li> <li>✓ Improve the matrix surrounding the refuge by partnering with adjacent owners to improve/build new habitats.</li> <li>✓ Install levees and other engineering works to alter water flows to benefit refuge species.</li> <li>✓ Remove dispersal barriers and establish dispersal bridges for species.</li> <li>✓ Use conservation easements around the refuge to allow species dispersal and maintain ecosystem function.</li> <li>✓ Facilitate migration through the establishment and maintenance of wildlife corridors.</li> </ul> <p><b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Maintain the natural flow regime through managing dam flow releases upstream of the wild and scenic river (through option agreements with willing partners) to protect flora and fauna in drier downstream river reaches, or to prevent losses from extreme flooding.</li> <li>✓ Use drought-tolerant plant varieties to help protect riparian buffers.</li> <li>✓ Create wetlands or off-channel storage basins to reduce erosion during high flow periods.</li> <li>✓ Actively remove invasive species that threaten key native species.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Estuaries</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Help protect tidal marshes from erosion with oyster breakwaters and rock sills and thus preserve their water filtration and fisheries enhancement functions.</li> <li>✓ Preserve and restore the structural complexity and biodiversity of vegetation in tidal marshes, seagrass meadows, and mangroves.</li> <li>✓ Adapt protections of important biogeochemical zones and critical habitats as the locations of these areas change with climate.</li> <li>✓ Connect landscapes with corridors to enable migrations to sustain wildlife biodiversity across the landscape.</li> <li>✓ Develop practical approaches to apply the principle of rolling easements to prevent engineered barriers from blocking landward retreat of coastal marshes and other shoreline habitats as sea level rises.</li> </ul> <p><b>Marine Protected Areas</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Identify ecological connections among ecosystems and use them to inform the design of MPAs and management decisions such as protecting resistant areas to ensure sources of recruitment for recovery of populations in</li> </ul>

- damaged areas.
- ✓ Manage functional species groups necessary to maintaining the health of reefs and other ecosystems.
  - ✓ Design MPAs with dynamic boundaries and buffers to protect breeding and foraging habits of highly migratory and pelagic species.
  - ✓ Monitor ecosystems and have rapid-response strategies prepared to assess ecological effects of extreme events as they occur.
  - ✓ Identify and protect ecologically significant (“critical”) areas such as nursery grounds, spawning grounds, and areas of high species diversity.

1  
2  
3

**Box 9.3.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on reduction of anthropogenic stresses as a means of supporting resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Reduce Anthropogenic Stresses</b>
<p><b>National Forests</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Reduce the impact of current anthropogenic stressors such as fragmentation (<i>e.g.</i>, by creating larger management units and migration corridors) and uncharacteristically severe wildfires and insect outbreaks (<i>e.g.</i>, by reducing stand densities and abating fuels).</li> <li>✓ Identify and take early proactive action against non-native invasive species (<i>e.g.</i>, by using early detection and rapid response approaches).</li> </ul> <p><b>National Parks</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Remove structures that harden the coastlines, impede natural regeneration of sediments, and prevent natural inland migration of sand and vegetation after disturbances.</li> <li>✓ Reduce or eliminate water pollution by working with watershed coalitions to reduce non-point sources and with local, state and federal agencies to reduce atmospheric deposition.</li> <li>✓ Manage Park Service and visitor use practices to prevent people from inadvertently contributing to climate change.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Wildlife Refuges</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Reduce human water withdrawals to restore natural hydrologic regimes.</li> </ul> <p><b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Purchase or lease water rights to enhance flow management options.</li> <li>✓ Manage water storage and withdrawals to smooth the supply of available water throughout the year.</li> <li>✓ Develop more effective stormwater infrastructure to reduce future occurrences of severe erosion.</li> <li>✓ Consider shifting access points or moving existing trails for wildlife or river enthusiasts.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Estuaries</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Conduct integrated management of nutrient sources and wetland treatment of nutrients to limit hypoxia and eutrophication.</li> <li>✓ Manage water resources to ensure sustainable use in the face of changing recharge rates and saltwater infiltration.</li> <li>✓ Prohibit bulkheads and other engineered structures on estuarine shores to preserve or delay the loss of important shallow-water habitats by permitting their inland migration as sea levels rise.</li> </ul> <p><b>Marine Protected Areas</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Manage human stressors such as fishing and inputs of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants within MPAs.</li> <li>✓ Improve water quality by raising awareness of adverse effects of land-based activities on marine environments, implementing integrated coastal and watershed management, and developing options for advanced wastewater treatment.</li> </ul>

4

1 **Box 9.4.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on representation as a means of supporting  
 2 resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Representation</b>
<p><b>National Forests</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Modify genetic diversity guidelines to increase the range of species, maintain high effective population sizes, and favor genotypes known for broad tolerance ranges.</li> <li>✓ Where ecosystems will very likely become more water limited, manage for drought- and heat-tolerant species and populations, and where climate trends are less certain, manage for a variety of species and genotypes with a range of tolerances to low soil moisture and higher temperatures.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Parks</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Allow the establishment of species that are non-native locally, but which maintain native biodiversity or enhance ecosystem function in the overall region.</li> <li>✓ Actively plant or introduce desired species after disturbances or in anticipation of the loss of some species.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Wildlife Refuges</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Strategically expand the boundaries of NWRs to increase ecological, genetic, geographical, behavioral and morphological variation in species.</li> <li>✓ Facilitate the growth of plant species more adapted to future climate conditions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Increase genetic diversity through plantings or by stocking fish.</li> <li>✓ Increase physical habitat heterogeneity in channels to support diverse biotic assemblages.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Estuaries</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Maintain high genetic diversity through strategies such as the establishment of reserves specifically for this purpose.</li> <li>✓ Maintain landscape complexity of salt marsh landscapes, especially preserving marsh edge environments.</li> </ul> <p><b>Marine Protected Areas</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Maximize habitat heterogeneity within MPAs and consider protecting larger areas to preserve biodiversity, biological connections among habitats, and ecological functions.</li> <li>✓ Include entire ecological units (<i>e.g.</i>, coral reefs with their associated mangroves and seagrasses) in MPA design to maintain ecosystem function and resilience.</li> <li>✓ Ensure that the full breadth of habitat types is protected (<i>e.g.</i>, fringing reef, fore reef, back reef, patch reef).</li> </ul>

3  
 4 **Box 9.5.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on replication as a means of supporting  
 5 resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Replication</b>
<p><b>National Forests</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Spread risks by increasing ecosystem redundancy and buffers in both natural environments and plantations.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Parks</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Practice bet-hedging by replicating populations and gene pools of desired species.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Wildlife Refuges</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Provide redundant refuge types to reduce risk to trust species.</li> </ul> <p><b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Establish special protection for multiple headwater reaches that support keystone processes or sensitive species.</li> </ul> <p><b>National Estuaries</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ When restoring oyster reefs, replicate reefs along a depth gradient to allow fish and crustaceans to survive when depth-dependant environmental degradation occurs.</li> </ul>

- ✓ Support migrating shorebirds by ensuring protection of replicated estuaries along the flyway.

**Marine Protected Areas**

- ✓ Replicate habitat types in multiple areas to spread risks associated with climate change.

1  
2 **Box 9.6.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on restoration as a means of supporting  
3 resilience.

**Adaptation Approach: Restoration**

**National Forests**

- ✓ Use the paleological record and historical ecological studies to revise and update restoration goals so that selected species will be tolerant of anticipated climate.
- ✓ Where appropriate after large-scale disturbances, reset succession and manage for asynchrony at the landscape scale by promoting diverse age classes and species mixes, a variety of successional stages, and spatially complex and heterogeneous vegetation structure.

**National Parks**

- ✓ Restore vegetation where it confers biophysical protection to increase resilience, including riparian areas that shade streams and coastal wetland vegetation that buffers shorelines.
- ✓ Minimize soil loss after fire or vegetation dieback using native vegetation and debris.

**National Wildlife Refuges**

- ✓ Restore and increase habitat availability and reduce stressors in order to capture the full geographical, geophysical, and ecological ranges of species on as many refuges as possible.

**Wild & Scenic Rivers**

- ✓ Conduct river restoration projects to stabilize eroding banks, repair in-stream habitat, or promote fish passages from areas with high temperatures and less precipitation.
- ✓ Restore the natural capacity of rivers to buffer climate-change impacts (*e.g.*, through land acquisition around rivers, levee setbacks to free the floodplain of infrastructure, riparian buffer repairs).

**National Estuaries**

- ✓ Restore important native species and remove invasive non-natives to improve marsh characteristics that promote propagation and production of fish and wildlife.
- ✓ Direct estuarine habitat restoration projects to places where the restored ecosystem has room to retreat as sea level rises.

**Marine Protected Areas**

- ✓ Following extreme events, consider whether actions should be taken to enhance natural recovery processes through active restoration.
- ✓ Consider mangrove restoration for potential benefits including shoreline protection, expansion of nursery habitat, and release of tannins and other dissolved organic compounds that may reduce photo-oxidative stress in corals.

1 **Box 9.7.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on the use of refugia as a means of  
 2 supporting resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Refugia</b>	
<b>National Forests</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Use the paleological record and historical ecological studies to identify environments buffered against climate change, which would be good candidates for long-term conservation.</li> </ul>
<b>National Parks</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Create or protect refugia for valued aquatic species at risk to the effects of early snowmelt on river flow.</li> </ul>
<b>National Wildlife Refuges</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Reforest riparian boundaries with native species to create shaded thermal refugia for fish species in rivers and streams.</li> <li>✓ Identify climate change refugia and acquire necessary land.</li> </ul>
<b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Plant riparian vegetation to provide fish and other organisms with refugia.</li> <li>✓ Acquire additional river reaches for the wild and scenic river where they contain naturally occurring refugia from climate change stressors.</li> <li>✓ Create side-channels and adjacent wetlands to provide refugia for species during droughts and floods.</li> </ul>
<b>National Estuaries</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Restore oyster reefs along a depth gradient to provide shallow water refugia for mobile species such as fish and crustaceans to retreat to in response to climate-induced deep water hypoxia/anoxia.</li> </ul>
<b>Marine Protected Areas</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Identify and protect areas observed to be resistant to climate change effects or to recover quickly from climate-induced disturbances.</li> <li>✓ Establish dynamic MPAs defined by large-scale oceanographic features such as oceanic fronts where changes in types and abundances of organisms often occur.</li> </ul>

3  
 4 **Box 9.8.** Examples of adaptation actions that focus on relocation as a means of supporting  
 5 resilience.

<b>Adaptation Approach: Relocation</b>	
<b>National Forests</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Establish or strengthen long-term seed banks to create the option of re-establishing extirpated populations in new/more appropriate locations.</li> </ul>
<b>National Parks</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Assist in species migrations.</li> </ul>
<b>National Wildlife Refuges</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Facilitate long-distance transport of threatened endemic species.</li> <li>✓ Facilitate interim propagation and sheltering or feeding of mistimed migrants, holding them until suitable habitat becomes available.</li> </ul>
<b>Wild &amp; Scenic Rivers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Establish programs to move isolated populations of species of interest that become stranded when water levels drop.</li> </ul>
<b>National Estuaries</b>	– none
<b>Marine Protected Areas</b>	– none

1 **Box 9.9.** Adaptation options for managing in the context of major climatic and ecological  
2 changes.

<b>Adaptation Options for Managing for Change</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>✓ Assist transitions, population adjustments, and range shifts through manipulation of species mixes, altered genotype selections, modified age structures, and novel silvicultural techniques.</li><li>✓ Rather than focusing only on historic distributions, spread species over a range of environments according to modeled future conditions.</li><li>✓ Proactively manage early successional stages that follow widespread climate-related mortality by promoting diverse age classes, species mixes, stand diversities, genetic diversity, etc., at landscape scales.</li><li>✓ Identify areas that supported species in the past under similar conditions to those projected for the future and consider these sites for establishment of “neo-native” plantations or restoration sites.</li><li>✓ Favor the natural regeneration of species better adapted to projected future conditions.</li><li>✓ Realign management targets to recognize significantly disrupted conditions, rather than continuing to manage for restoration to a “reference” condition that is no longer realistic given climate change.</li><li>✓ Manage the public’s expectations as to what ecological states will be possible (or impossible) given the discrepancy between historical climate conditions and current/future climate conditions.</li><li>✓ Develop guidelines for the scenarios under which restoration projects or rebuilding of human structures should occur after climate disturbances.</li></ul>

1

2 **9.11 Tables**3 **Table 9.1.** Examples of climate change-related effects on key ecosystem attributes upon which  
4 management goals depend.

5

Federal lands	Ecosystem attributes critical to management goals	Potential climate-related changes that could influence management goals
National forests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fire tolerance</li> <li>• Insect tolerance</li> <li>• Tolerance to invasives</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Altered fire regimes</li> <li>• Vegetation changes</li> <li>• Changes in species dominance</li> </ul>
National wildlife refuges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Persistence of threatened and endangered species</li> <li>• Wetland water replenishment</li> <li>• Coastal wetland habitat</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Threatened and endangered species decline or loss</li> <li>• Altered hydrology</li> <li>• Sea level rise</li> </ul>
Marine protected areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Structural “foundation” species (e.g., corals, kelp)</li> <li>• Biodiversity</li> <li>• Water quality</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increased ocean temperatures and decreased pH</li> <li>• Increased bleaching and disease</li> <li>• Altered precipitation and runoff</li> </ul>
National estuaries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sediment filtration</li> <li>• Elevation and slope</li> <li>• Community composition</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Altered stream flow</li> <li>• Sea level rise</li> <li>• Salt water intrusion/species shifts</li> </ul>
Wild and scenic rivers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Anadromous fish habitat</li> <li>• Water quality</li> <li>• “Natural” flow</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increased water temperatures</li> <li>• Changes in runoff</li> <li>• Altered stream flow</li> </ul>
National parks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fire tolerance</li> <li>• Snow pack</li> <li>• Community composition</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation shifts</li> <li>• Changes in snow pack amount</li> <li>• Temperature-related species shifts</li> </ul>

6



1 **Table 9.2.** Examples of hypothesis-driven monitoring for adaptive management in a changing  
 2 climate.  
 3

Chapter	Monitoring target	Hypothesis (why monitored)	Management implications (how used).
Forests (Chapter 3)	Invasive species	Climate change will alter species distributions, creating new invasive species (Parmesan, 1996).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inform proactive actions to remove and block invasions</li> </ul>
Parks (Chapter 4) / National Wildlife Refuges (Chapter 5)	Species composition	Species are shifting ranges in response to climate change (Poff, Brinson, and Day, Jr., 2002).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage for species lost from one park or refuge at a different site</li> <li>• Inform translocation efforts</li> </ul>
Wild and Scenic Rivers (Chapter 6)	River flow	Increased temperatures will decrease snow pack and increase evaporation, changing the timing and amount of flows (Moore <i>et al.</i> , 2003).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage flows</li> <li>• Increase connectivity</li> </ul>
National Estuaries (Chapter 7)	Ecosystem functioning and species composition	As sea level rises, marshes will be lost and uplands will be converted to marshes (Behrenfeld <i>et al.</i> , 2006; Guinotte <i>et al.</i> , 2006; Portner and Knust, 2007).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilitate upland conversion, species translocation</li> </ul>
Marine Protected Areas (Chapter 8)	Water quality	Changes in temperature and runoff will affect acidity, oxygen levels, turbidity, and pollutant concentrations .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Address pollution sources</li> <li>• Inform coastal watershed policies</li> </ul>

4

1 **Table 9.3.** Levels of biodiversity and associated management options.

	<i>Definition</i>	<i>Management activities that support diversity</i>
<b>Genetic Diversity</b>	Allelic diversity and the presence/absence of rare alleles (foundation for all higher level diversity)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Transplantation: re-introduction of lost genes (<i>e.g.</i>, transplanting and/or releasing hatchery-reared larvae/juveniles)</li> <li>▪ Protected areas and corridors</li> </ul>
<b>Species Diversity</b>	Quantity of species in a given area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Captive breeding programs</li> <li>▪ ESA listings</li> <li>▪ Protected areas</li> </ul>
<b>Functional Diversity</b>	Full representation of species within functional groups.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Special protections for imperiled species within functional groups (<i>e.g.</i>, herbivorous fishes)</li> <li>▪ Protected areas</li> </ul>
<b>Ecosystem/Landscape Diversity</b>	All important habitats represented as well as appropriately large scale of metapopulations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Large protected areas</li> <li>▪ Networks of protected areas</li> </ul>

2  
3

1 **Table 9.4.** Confidence levels associated with seven different adaptation approaches, examined  
 2 across six management system types. Estimates reflect the expert opinions of the authors and are  
 3 based on the literature, personal experience, and stakeholder discussions.

**Confidence Estimates for SAP 4.4 Adaptation Approaches**

		Agreement ↑		Evidence →				
		LH Low evidence High agreement	HH High evidence High agreement	LL Low evidence Low agreement	HL High evidence Low agreement			
		Protecting key ecosystem features	Reducing anthropogenic stresses	Representation	Replication	Restoration	Refugia	Relocation
National Forests		HL	HH	LL	LL	HL	HL	HL
National Parks		HH	HH	LL	LL	HH	LL	LL
National Wildlife Refuges		HH	HH	HH	HH	LL	HL	LL
Wild and Scenic Rivers		LH	HH	HH	HH	LL	HH	LL
National Estuaries		LL	HH	LH	LH	HH	LL	N/A
Marine Protected Areas		LH	LH	LH	LH	LL	LH	N/A

4  
5  
6

1 **Table 9.5.** Examples of legislation and regulation as barriers to and opportunities for adaptation.  
 2

<b>LEGISLATION AND REGULATION</b>		
<b>Barrier</b>	<b>Opportunity</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Legislation and agency policies may be highly static, inhibit dynamic planning, impede flexible adaptive responses and force a fine-filter approach to management.	Re-evaluate capabilities of, or authorities under, existing legislation to determine how climate change can be addressed within the legislative boundaries.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use state wildlife action plans to manage lands adjacent to national wildlife refuges to enable climate-induced species emigration.</li> <li>• Re-evaluate specific ecosystem- and species-related legislation to use all capabilities within the legislation to address climate change.</li> <li>• Incorporate climate change impacts into priority setting for designation of new wild and scenic rivers (see Chapter 6 section 6.4.4).</li> </ul>

3

1  
2 **Table 9.6.** Examples of management policies and procedures as barriers to and opportunities for  
3 adaptation.

<b>MANAGEMENT POLICIES AND PROCEDURES</b>		
<b>Barrier</b>	<b>Opportunity</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Seasonal management activities may be affected by changes in timing and duration of seasons	Review timing of management activities and take advantage of seasonal changes that provide more opportunities to implement beneficial adaptation actions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take advantage of shorter winter seasons (longer prescribed fire season) to do fuel treatments on more national forest acres (see the Tahoe National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.1).</li> </ul>
Agency policies do not recognize climatic change as a significant problem or stressor.	Take advantage of flexibility in the planning guidelines and processes to develop management actions that address climate change impacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where guidelines are flexible for meeting strategic planning goals (<i>e.g.</i>, maintain biodiversity), re-prioritize management actions to address effect of climate change on achievement of goals (see the Olympic National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.2).</li> </ul>
Political boundaries do not necessarily align with ecological processes; some resources cross boundaries; checkerboard ownership pattern with lands alternating between public and private ownership at odds with landscape-scale management (see Chapter 3 section 3.4.5).	Identify management authorities/agencies with similar goals and adjacent lands; share information and create coalitions and partnerships that extend beyond political boundaries to coordinate management; acquire property for system expansion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop management plans that encompass multiple forest units such as the Pacific Northwest Forest Plan that includes Olympic National Forest-Mt. Baker-Gifford Pinchot National Forest (see the Olympic National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.2).</li> <li>Implement active management at broader landscape scales through existing multi-agency management processes such as (1) the Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Group Pilot and the FPA Adaptive Management project on Tahoe National Forest (see the Tahoe National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.1), (2) the Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee, and the Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere Program with relationships across jurisdictional boundaries (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.3), (3) The Delaware River, managed cooperatively as a partnership river (see the Upper Delaware River Case Study, Annex A4.3).</li> <li>Coordinate dam management at the landscape level for species that cross political boundaries using dam operations prospectively as thermal controls under future climate changes (see Chapter 6 section 6.4.4.2).</li> <li>Coordinate habitat and thermal needs for fish species with entities that control the timing and amount of up-stream water releases (see Chapter 6 section 6.4.4.2).</li> </ul>

4

1 **Table 9.7.** Examples of human and financial capital as barriers to and opportunities for  
 2 adaptation.  
 3

<b>HUMAN AND FINANCIAL CAPITAL</b>		
<b>Barrier</b>	<b>Opportunity</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Lack of incentive to take risks, develop creative projects; reward system focuses on achieving narrowly prescribed targets; funds allocated to achieve targets encourage routine, easily accomplished activities.	Shift from a culture of punishing failure to one that values creative thinking and supports incremental learning and gradual achievement of management goals.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop incentives that reward risk taking and innovative thinking</li> <li>• Build into performance expectations of a gradient between success and failure</li> <li>• Set up a systematic method for (1) learning from mistakes and successes, and (2) eliciting the experience and empirical data of front line managers, resource management personnel, and scientific staff</li> </ul> (Drawn from Chapter 4 section 4.4.2.)
Little to no climate expertise within many management units at the regional and local level; disconnect between science and management that impedes access to information	Use newly created positions or staff openings as opportunities to add climate change expertise; train resource managers and other personnel in climate change science	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use incremental changes in staff to “reinvent and redefine” organizations’ institutional ability to better respond to climate change impacts (see the Tahoe National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.1)</li> <li>• Develop expertise through incorporation into existing Forest Service training programs like the silvicultural certification program, regional integrated resource training workshops, and regional training sessions for resource staffs (see Chapter 3 section 3.5)</li> <li>• Develop managers’ guides, climate primers, management toolkits, a Web clearinghouse, and video presentations (see Chapter 3 section 3.5).</li> </ul>
National and regional budget policies/processes constrain the potential for altering or supplementing current management practices to enable adaptation to climate change (see Chapter 3 section 3.5; general decline in staff resources and capacity (see Chapter 3 section 3.4.5)	Look for creative ways to augment the workforce and stretch budgets to institute adaptation practices ( <i>e.g.</i> , individuals or parties with mutual interests in learning about or addressing climate change that may be engaged at no additional cost).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Augment budget and workforce through volunteers from the public or other sources such as institutions with compatible educational requirements, neighborhood groups, environmental associations, etc., such as the Reef Check Program that help collect coral reef monitoring data (see Chapter 8 sections 8.3.3, 8.4.4.1 and 8.4.4.2).</li> <li>• Identify organizations or private citizens that benefit from adaptation actions to share implementation costs in order to avoid more costly impacts/damages.</li> <li>• Use emerging carbon markets to promote (re-) development of regional biomass and biofuels industries, providing economic incentives for active adaptive management; funds from these industries could be used to promote thinning and fuel-reduction projects (see Tahoe National Forest Case Study, Annex A1.1).</li> </ul>

4  
5

1 **Table 9.8.** Examples of information and science as barriers to and opportunities for adaptation.

<b>INFORMATION AND SCIENCE</b>		
<b>Barrier</b>	<b>Opportunity</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Often no inventory or baseline information on condition exists, and nothing is in place to detect climate change impacts.	Identify existing monitoring programs for management; develop a suite of climate change indicators and incorporate them into existing programs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use monitoring programs such as the NPS vital signs for the Inventory and Monitoring Program, Global Fiducial Program, LTER networks, and NEON to monitor for climate change impacts and effectiveness of adaptation options (see Chapter 4 section 4.4.3).</li> </ul>
Historic conditions may no longer sufficiently inform future planning ( <i>e.g.</i> , “100-year” flood events may occur more often and dams need to be constructed accordingly).	Evaluate policies that use historic conditions and determine how to better reflect accurate baselines in the face of climate change; modify design assumptions to account for changing climate conditions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change emphasis from maintenance of “minimum flows” to the more sophisticated and scientifically based “natural flow paradigm,” as is happening in some places (see Chapter 6 section 6.3.4.2).</li> </ul>
Lack of decision support tools and models, uncertainty in climate change science, and critical gaps in scientific information that limits assessment of risks and efficacy and sustainability of actions.	Identify and use all available tools/mechanisms currently in place to deal with existing problems to apply to climate-change related impacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use early detection/rapid response approaches (such as that used to manage invasive species) to respond quickly to the impacts of extreme events (<i>e.g.</i>, disturbances, floods, windstorms) with an eye towards adaptation (see Chapter 3 section 3.3.3).</li> <li>• Diversify existing portfolio of management approaches to address high levels of uncertainty</li> <li>• Hedge bets and optimize practices in situations where system dynamics and responses are fairly certain</li> <li>• Use adaptive management in situations with greater uncertainty</li> </ul> (See Chapter 4 section 4.4.3).
Occurrence of extreme climate events outside historical experience.	Use disturbed landscapes as templates for “management experiments” that provide data to improve adaptive management of natural resources.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After fire, reforest with genotypes of species that are better adjusted to the new or unfolding regional climate with nursery stock tolerant to low soil moisture and high temperature, or with a variety of genotypes in the nursery stock (see Chapter 3 section 3.4.1.2).</li> </ul>
Stakeholders/public may have insufficient information to properly evaluate adaptation actions, and thus may oppose/prevent implementation of adaptive projects ( <i>e.g.</i> , such as those that have ground-disturbing elements like salvaging harvests after disturbance and using herbicides before revegetating). Appeals and litigation from external publics often results in the default of	Inform public and promote consensus-building on tough decisions; invite input from a broad range of sources to generate buy-in across stakeholder interests.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct public outreach activities with information on climate impacts and adaptation options—including demonstration projects with concrete results—through workshops, scoping meetings, face-to-face dialog, and informal disposition processes to raise public awareness and buy in for specific management actions (<i>e.g.</i>, like Tahoe NF, Annex A1.1 and Partnership for the Sounds (the Estuarium) and North Carolina Aquariums, Annex A5.1).</li> <li>• Use state and local stakeholders to develop management plans to gain support and participation in implementation and oversight of planning activities, as the National Estuary CCMPs do (see Chapter 7 section 7.2.2), the Coastal Habitat Protection Plans do for fisheries management (see Chapter 7 section 7.5), and</li> </ul>

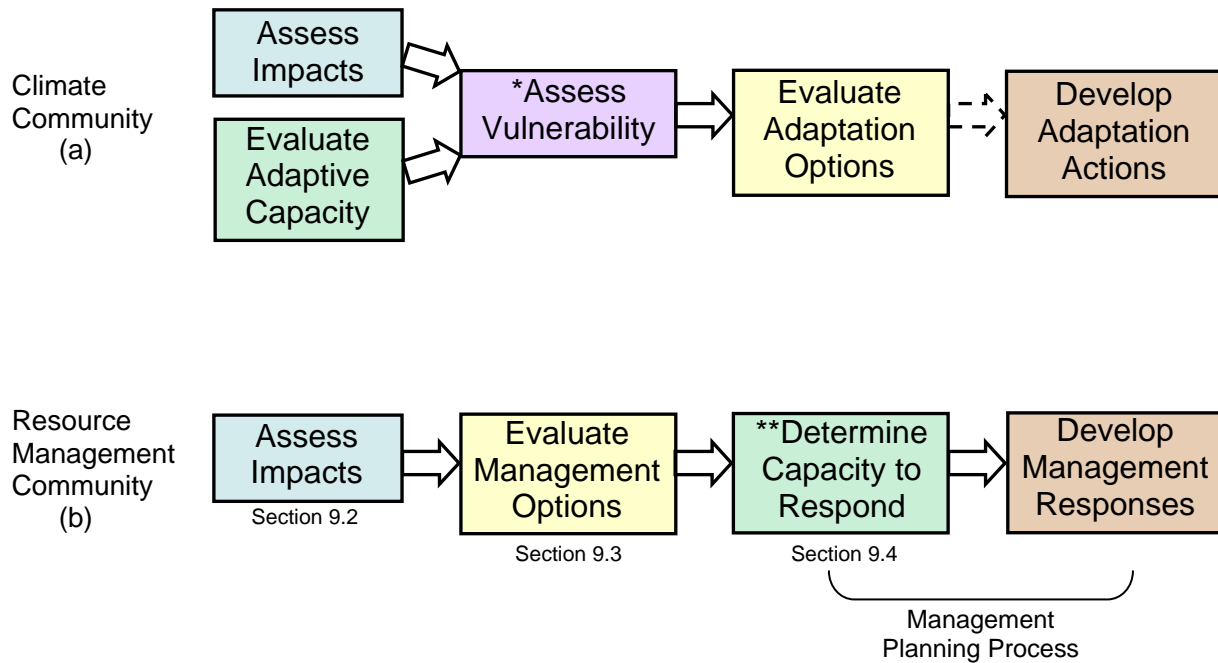
no action. (See Chapter 3 section 3.4.5)		some National Forests do (Chapter 3 section 3.5).
--	--	---

1



1 **9.12 Figures**

2 **Figure 9.1.** Two conceptual models for describing different processes used by (a) the resource  
 3 management community and (b) the climate community to support adaptation decision making.  
 4 Colors are used to represent similar elements of the different processes.  
 5  
 6  
 7

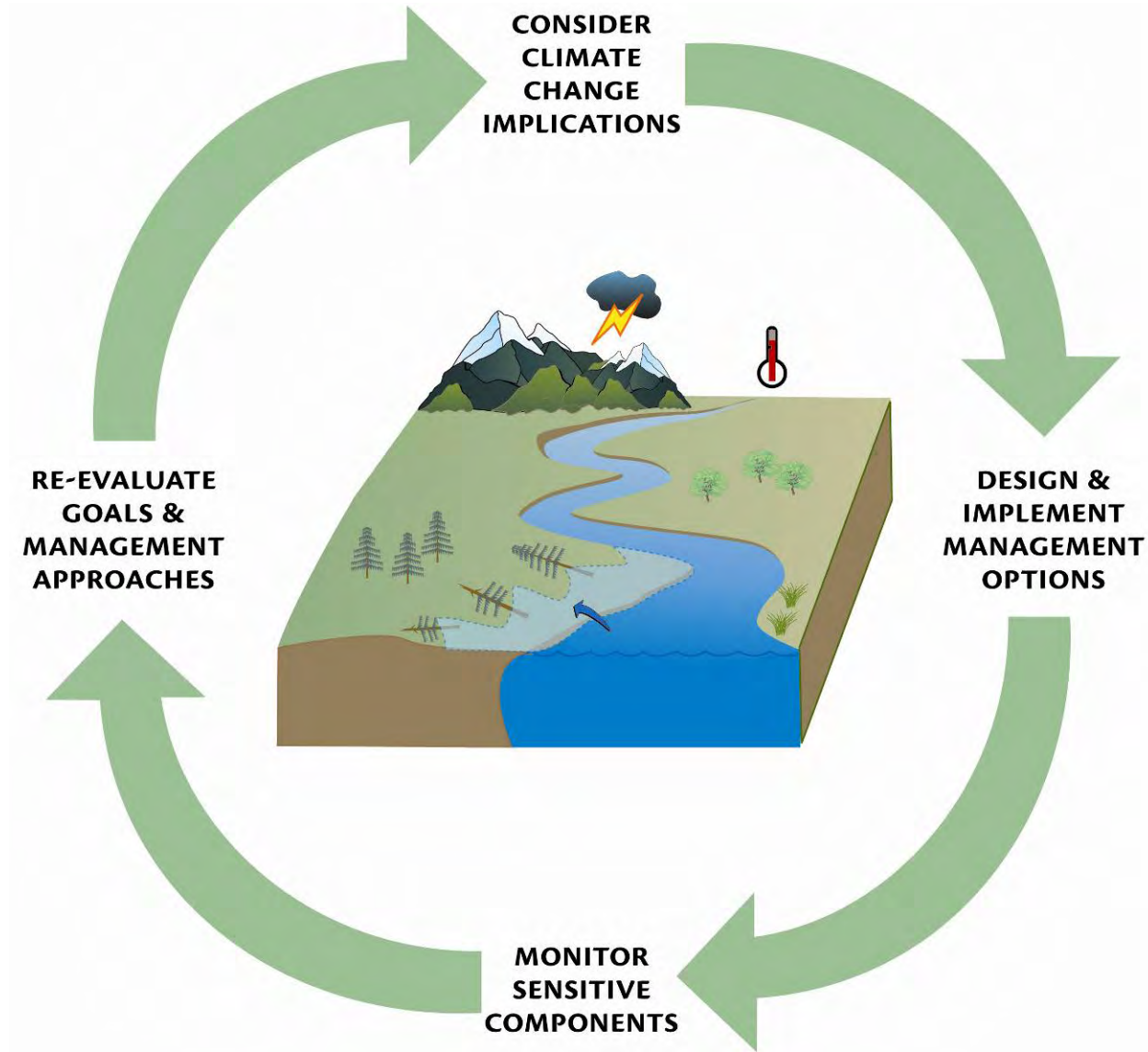


\*Vulnerability is the sum of projected impacts and adaptive capacity; this step is done by managers when they evaluate the projected impacts and their capacity to respond during their planning process

\*\*Assessing the capacity to respond in the management community is equivalent to assessing adaptive capacity in the climate community

1  
2  
3

**Figure 9.2.** The process of adaptive management.



4  
5  
6  
7

# 1 10 Glossary and Acronyms

2

## 3 10.1 Glossary

<b>adaptation</b>	Adjustment in natural or human systems to a new or changing environment. Adaptation to climate change refers to adjustment in natural or human systems in response to actual or expected climatic stimuli or their effects, which moderates harm or exploits beneficial opportunities.
<b>adaptive capacity</b>	(1) The ability of institutions, systems, and individuals to adjust to potential damage, to take advantage of opportunities, or to cope with the consequences of change. (2) The ability of a system to adjust to climate change (including climate variability and extremes) to moderate potential damages, to take advantage of opportunities, or to cope with the consequences.
<b>adaptive governance</b>	Institutional and political frameworks designed to adapt to changing relationships between society and ecosystems in ways that sustain ecosystem services; expands the focus from adaptive management of ecosystems to address the broader social contexts that enable ecosystem-based management.
<b>adaptive management</b>	A decision process that promotes flexible decision making that can be adjusted in the face of uncertainties as outcomes from management actions and other events become better understood. Careful monitoring of these outcomes both advances scientific understanding and helps adjust policies or operations as part of an iterative learning process. It also recognizes the importance of natural variability in contributing to ecological resilience and productivity.
<b>anthropogenic stress</b>	(1) Stressors resulting from or produced by human beings (see “stressor” definition below); (2) Any human activity that causes an ecosystem response that is considered negative.
<b>anticipatory adaptation</b>	Adaptation that takes place before impacts of climate change are observed. Also referred to as proactive adaptation.
<b>biodiversity</b>	(1) The variability among living organisms from all sources including, inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (2) The diversity of genes, populations, species, communities, and ecosystems, which underlies all ecosystem processes and determines the environment on which organisms, including people, depend.
<b>catastrophic event</b>	(1) A sudden natural or man-made disturbance that causes widespread destruction. (2) In the context of climate change, a suddenly occurring event having wide distribution and large impacts on human and/or natural systems ( <i>e.g.</i> , mass extinctions, rapid sea level rise, or shifts in atmospheric or oceanic circulation patterns over less than a decade). Such events have occurred in the past due to natural causes.

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>climate change</b>	Climate change refers to any change in climate over time, whether due to natural variability or as a result of human activity. This usage differs from that in the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, which defines “climate change” as: “a change of climate which is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity that alters the composition of the global atmosphere and which is in addition to natural climate variability observed over comparable time periods.”
<b>climate scenario</b>	A plausible and often simplified representation of the future climate, based on an internally consistent set of climatological relationships, that has been constructed for explicit use in investigating the potential consequences of anthropogenic climate change, often serving as input to impact models. Climate projections often serve as the raw material for constructing climate scenarios, but climate scenarios usually require additional information such as about the observed current climate. A “climate change scenario” is the difference between a climate scenario and the current climate.
<b>climate variability</b>	Climate variability refers to variations in the mean state and other statistics (such as standard deviations, the occurrence of extremes, etc.) of the climate on all temporal and spatial scales beyond that of individual weather events. Variability may be due to natural internal processes within the climate system (internal variability), or to variations in natural or anthropogenic external forcing (external variability).
<b>confidence</b> (for an adaptation approach)	Degree of belief that an event will occur given observations, modeling results, and current knowledge. In this report, confidence is based on the expert opinion of the authors and is composed of two elements: (1) the amount of evidence available to support the determination that the effectiveness of a given adaptation approach is well-studied and understood and (2) the level of agreement or consensus within the scientific community about the different lines of evidence on the effectiveness of that adaptation approach.
<b>disturbance regime</b>	Frequency, intensity, and types of recurrent natural disturbances, such as fires, insect or pest outbreaks, floods, and droughts.
<b>ecoregions</b>	Areas of general similarity in ecosystems and in the type, quality, and quantity of environmental resources
<b>ecosystem</b>	A system of interacting living organisms together with their physical environment. The boundaries of what could be called an ecosystem are somewhat arbitrary, depending on the focus of interest or study. Thus, the extent of an ecosystem may range from very small <i>spatial scales</i> to, ultimately, the entire earth.
<b>ecosystem management, or ecosystem-based management</b>	There are many definitions for this term, and different agencies interpret the term in slightly different ways. Three definitions follow; the first is frequently cited. (1) Management that integrates scientific knowledge of ecological relationships within a complex sociopolitical and values framework toward the general goal of protecting native ecosystem integrity over the long term. (2) Any land-management system that seeks to protect viable populations of all native species, perpetuate natural disturbance regimes on the regional scale, adopt a planning timeline of centuries, and allow human use at levels that do not result in long-term ecological degradation. (3) The application of ecological and social information, options, and constraints to achieve desired social benefits within a defined geographic area over a specified period.
<b>ecosystem services</b>	Ecological processes or functions that have value to individuals or society.

#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>extreme weather events</b>	An event that is rare within its statistical reference distribution at a particular place. Definitions of “rare” vary, but an extreme weather event would normally be as rare as or rarer than the 10th or 90th percentile. By definition, the characteristics of what is called extreme weather may vary from place to place. An extreme climate event is an average of a number of weather events over a certain period of time, an average which is itself extreme ( <i>e.g.</i> , rainfall over a season).
<b>global change</b>	Changes in the global environment (including alterations in climate, land productivity, oceans or other water resources, atmospheric chemistry, and ecological systems) that may alter the capacity of the Earth to sustain life.
<b>human social resilience</b>	The capacity to absorb shocks while maintaining function.
<b>impacts (climate change)</b>	<p>Consequences of climate change on natural and human systems. Depending on the consideration of adaptation, one can distinguish between potential impacts and residual impacts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>-Potential impacts: All impacts that may occur given a projected change in climate, without considering adaptation.</li><li>-Residual impacts: The impacts of climate change that would occur after adaptation.</li></ul> <p>Also related are: aggregate impacts, market impacts, and non-market impacts.</p>
<b>invasive species</b>	An alien species whose introduction does or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm or harm to human health. “Alien species” are considered not native to a particular ecosystem.
<b>likelihood</b>	The probability that a specified outcome will occur based on current observations and knowledge.
<b>maladaptation</b>	Any changes in natural or human systems that inadvertently increase vulnerability to climatic stimuli; an adaptation that does not succeed in reducing vulnerability but increases it instead.
<b>management plan</b>	In general, a document that provides guidance regarding all activities on federally managed lands. However, the meaning for National Forests is quite distinct. Specifically, the National Forest Management Act (NFMA (16 U.S.C. 1660(6))) requires the Forest Service to manage the National Forest System lands according to land and resource management plans that provide for multiple-uses and sustained-yield in accordance with MUSYA (16 U.S.C. 1604(e) and (g)(1)), in particular include coordination of outdoor recreation, range, timber, watershed, wildlife and fish, and wilderness and determine forest management systems, harvesting levels, and procedures in the light of all of the uses set forth in the Multiple-Use Sustained Yield Act of 1960, and the availability of lands and their suitability for resource management.
<b>mitigation</b>	An anthropogenic intervention to reduce the sources or enhance the sinks of greenhouse gases.

#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>native species</b>	With respect to a particular ecosystem, a species that, other than as a result of an introduction, historically occurred or currently occurs in that ecosystem.
<b>non-native species</b>	Also referred to as “alien,” “exotic,” and “introduced” species. These terms refer to any species (including its seeds, eggs, spores, or other biological material capable of propagating that species) that is not native to a particular ecosystem. Non-native species may, or may not be, invasive.
<b>organic acts</b>	Organic acts are fundamental pieces of legislation that either signify the organization of an agency and/or provide a charter for a network of public lands. The first “organic act” was the Organic Administration Act of 1897, which outlined the primary purposes of national forests as (1) securing favorable conditions of water flows, and (2) furnishing a continuous supply of timber for the use and necessities of the citizens of the United States.
<b>phenology</b>	The timing of behavior cued by environmental information.
<b>reactive adaptation</b>	Adaptation that takes place after impacts of climate change have been observed.
<b>realignment</b>	Considered in the context of restoration, realignment refers to an adjustment in management or planning goals to account for substantially altered reference conditions and new ecosystem dynamics. The rationale for this adaptation approach is that historical (pre-disturbance) baselines may be inappropriate in the face of a changing climate.
<b>refugia</b>	Physical environments that are less affected by climate change than other areas ( <i>e.g.</i> , due to local currents, geographic location, etc.) and are thus a “refuge” from climate change for organisms.
<b>relocation</b>	Human-facilitated transplantation of organisms from one location to another in order to bypass a barrier ( <i>e.g.</i> , an urban area). Also referred to as “assisted migration.”
<b>replication</b>	Multiple replicates of a habitat type ( <i>e.g.</i> , multiple fore reef areas throughout the reef system) are protected as a “bet hedging” strategy against loss of the habitat type due to a localized disaster.
<b>representation</b>	Includes both (1) ensuring that the full breadth of habitat types is protected ( <i>e.g.</i> , fringing reef, fore reef, back reef, patch reef) and (2) ensuring that full breadth of species diversity is included within sites; both concepts relate to maximizing overall biodiversity of the larger system.
<b>resilience</b>	The amount of change or disturbance that can be absorbed by a system before the system is redefined by a different set of processes and structures ( <i>i.e.</i> , the ecosystem recovers from the disturbance without a major phase shift).

#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>resistance</b>	Ecological resistance is the ability of an organism, population, community, or ecosystem to withstand perturbations without significant loss of structure or function. From a management perspective, resistance includes both (1) the concept of taking advantage of/boosting the inherent (biological) degree to which species are able to resist change and (2) manipulation of the physical environment to counteract/resist physical/biological change.
<b>restoration</b>	Manipulation of the physical and biological environment in order to restore a desired ecological state or set of ecological processes.
<b>sensitivity</b>	Sensitivity is the degree to which a system is affected, either adversely or beneficially, by climate-related stimuli. The effect may be direct ( <i>e.g.</i> , a change in crop yield in response to a change in the mean, range, or variability of temperature) or indirect ( <i>e.g.</i> , damages caused by an increase in the frequency of coastal flooding due to sea-level rise).
<b>stressor</b>	Any physical, chemical, or biological entity that can induce an adverse response.
<b>surprises</b>	(1) Sudden, unexpected change in the environment (biotic or abiotic) that may have disproportionately large ecological consequences. (2) In the context of climate change, unexpected events resulting from climate change (such as a shift in ocean circulation) that may have both positive and negative consequences. (3) In the context of social-ecological systems, a qualitative disagreement between ecosystem behavior and a priori expectations—an environmental cognitive dissonance.
<b>trust species</b>	All species where the federal government has primary jurisdiction including federally endangered or threatened species, migratory birds, anadromous fish, and certain marine mammals.
<b>unimpaired</b>	Refers to language in the NPS Organic Act that describes the purpose for which National Parks were established: "...to conserve the scenery and the natural and historic objects and the wild life therein and to provide for the enjoyment of the same in such manner and by such means as will leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations." "Unimpaired" generally means "not damaged or diminished in any respect."
<b>vulnerability</b>	The degree to which a system is susceptible to, or unable to cope with, adverse effects of climate change, including climate variability and extremes. Vulnerability is a function of the character, magnitude, and rate of climate variation to which a system is exposed, its sensitivity, and its adaptive capacity.
<b>wilderness management</b>	(1) Management activities that aim to preserve the wilderness character of designated wilderness areas, which are "...area[s] where the earth and its community of life are untrammeled by man, where man himself is a visitor who does not remain." (2) The planning for and management of wilderness resources.

## 1 10.2 Acronyms and Initialisms

ADCP	Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers
ANILCA	Alaska National Interest Lands Conservation Act
AOGCM	Atmosphere-Ocean Coupled General Circulation Model
APES	Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System
APHIS	Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service
APNEP	Abemarle-Pamlico National Estuarine Program
AQRV	Air Quality Related Values
ATBA	Area to Be Avoided
ATBI	All Taxa-Biodiversity Inventory
ATV	All-Terrain vehicle
AVHRR	Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer
BLM	Bureau of Land Management
CaCO <sub>3</sub>	Calcium Carbonate
CCMP	Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan
CCP	Comprehensive Conservation Plan
CCSP	Climate Change Science Program
CDFG	California Department of Fish and Game
CERP	Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan
CHPP	Coastal Habitat Protection Plan
CINMS	Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon Dioxide
CoRIS	Coral Reef Information System
CRED	Coral Reef Ecosystem Division
CREIOS	Coral Reef Ecosystem Integrated Observing System
CREWS	Coral Reef Early Warning System
CRMP	Comprehensive River Management Plan
CRP	Conservation Reserve Program
CTD casts	Water Conductivity-Temperature-Depth profiles
CWA	Clean Water Act
CWMTF	Clean Water Management Trust Fund
DDT	Dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane
DEFRA	United Kingdom Department for Environment Food and Rural Affairs
DGVM	Dynamic Global Vegetation Model
DO	Dissolved Oxygen
DRBC	Delaware River Basin Commission
EBM	Ecosystem-Based Management
EDRR	Early Detection and Rapid Response
EEP	Ecosystem Enhancement Program
EMA	Existing Management Area
EMS	Environmental Management System
ENSO	El Niño/Southern Oscillation
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ERA	Estuary Restoration Act
ESA	Endangered Species Act
EU	European Union
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHP	U.S. Forest Service Forest Health Protection Program



#### SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

FKNMS	Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary
FKNMS Act	Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection Act
FMP	Fishery Management Plan
FONSI	Finding of No Significant Importance
FPA	Forest Plan Amendment
FPR	Forest Plan Revision
GBR	Great Barrier Reef
GBRMPA	Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority
GBRNP	Great Barrier Reef National Park
GCM	General Circulation Model
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GIS	Geographic Information Systems
GtC	Gigaton Carbon
HINWR	Hawaiian Islands National Wildlife Refuge
ICRAN	International Coral Reef Action Network
IOOS	Integrated Ocean Observing System
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature/World Conservation Union
LAPS	Land Acquisition Priority System
LIDAR	Light Detection and Ranging
LMP	Land and Resource Management Plan
LTER	Long-Term Ecological Research
MHI	Main Hawaiian Islands
MMA	Marine Managed Area
MPA	Marine Protected Area
MSA	Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation Management Reauthorization Act
MSX	Multinucleate Sphere X, a parasite affecting oysters
NAO/NHM	North Atlantic Oscillation/Northern Hemisphere Annular Mode
NAWQA	National Water Quality Assessment
NEON	National Ecological Observatory Network
NEP	National Estuary Program
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NF	National Forest
NFMA	National Forest Management Act
NFS	National Forest System
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NMSA	National Marine Sanctuaries Act
NMSP	National Marine Sanctuary Program
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOx	Nitrogen Oxides
NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
NPS	National Park Service
NRE	Neuse River Estuary
NRI	National Rivers Inventory
NWFP	Northwest Forest Plan
NWHI	Northwestern Hawaiian Islands
NWRS	National Wildlife Refuge System
NWRSIA	National Wildlife Refuge System Improvement Act
OHV	Off-Highway Vehicle
ONF	Olympic National Forest

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

ONFP	Olympic National Forest Plan
ONP	Olympic National Park
ORION	Ocean Research Interactive Observatory Networks
PCB	Polychlorinated biphenyl
PDO	Pacific Decadal Oscillation
PMNM	Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument
PPR	Prairie Pothole Region
PRE	Pamlico River Estuary
RMNP	Rocky Mountain National Park
RPA	Resource Planning Act (1974)
SAC	Sanctuary Advisory Council
SAMAB	Southern Appalachian Man and the Biosphere
SAP 4.4	Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.4.
SAV	Submerged Aquatic Vegetation
SDM	Species Distribution Model
SFA	Sustainable Fisheries Act
SJRWMD	St. Johns River Water Management District
SLAMM	Sea Level Affecting Marshes Model
SPA	Sanctuary Protection Area
SRES	Special Report on Emissions Scenarios
SST	Summer Sea Surface Temperature
SVP	Surface Velocity Program
SW	Southwest
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
TNF	Tahoe National Forest
U.S. EEZ	U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone
UNESCO	United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization
UNF	Uwharrie National Forest
USACE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
USDA	U.S. Department of Agriculture
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
USGS	U.S. Geological Survey
UW-CIG	University of Washington's Climate Impacts Group
VMS	Vessel Monitoring System
WCA	Watershed Condition Assessment
WMA	Wildlife Management Area
WQPP	Water Quality Protection Program
WSR	Wild and Scenic Rivers
WUI	Wildland Urban Interface
ZIMM	Zonal Inundation and Marsh Model

## 11 SAP 4.4 Workshop Participants

In order to ensure that the proposed structure and content of each chapter was assessed for technical rigor and feasibility from a management perspective, workshops for a limited set of expert stakeholders were held during the report's earliest development stages. Stakeholders from the management and adaptation research communities were selected from across federal and state governments, territories, non-governmental organizations, and academia to participate in a series of workshops to advise the authors of the report on its content. At each of the six workshops (one for each "management system" chapter), no more than 20 stakeholder participants gathered to have chapter lead and contributing authors present draft information on their chapters and case studies. Stakeholders were able to provide feedback, and authors incorporated the expert input into their revisions.

Name	Affiliation
<i>National Forests</i>	
Paul Arndt	United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) Forest Service, Region 8
Chris Bernabo*	National Council on Science for the Environment (NCSE)
Michael Case	World Wildlife Fund (WWF) Global Climate Change Programme
Bob Davis*	United States Forest Service (USFS), Region 3
Steve Eubanks	USFS Tahoe National Forest
Lee Frelich*	The University of Minnesota Center for Hardwood Ecology
Greg Kujawa	USDA Forest Service
Jeremy Littell*	University of Washington, Climate Impacts Group
Douglas W. MacCleery*	USDA Forest Service
Duane Nelson	USFS Regional Forest Revegetation, Region 5
Kathy A. O'Halloran*	Olympic National Forest
Frank Roth	USDA Forest Service, Region 4
Lindsey Rustad*	USDA Forest Service, Northern Research Station
Hugh Safford*	USFS, Region 5
Charles Sams	USDA Forest Service, Region 9
Allen Solomon*	USDA Forest Service, Washington Office
Jeff Sorkin*	USDA Forest Service
Peter Stine	Sierra Nevada Research Center
John Townsley*	Okanogan and Wenatchee National Forests
Mary Vasse	National Forest Foundation

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>Name</b>	<b>Affiliation</b>
Bonnie Wyatt	USDA Forest Service
Christina Zarrella	National Commission on Science for Sustainable Forestry
<b><i>National Parks</i></b>	
Stan Austin*	Rocky Mountain National Park
Jane Belnap	United States Geological Survey (USGS)
Gillian Bowser*	Texas A&M University
Gregg Bruff	Pictured Rocks National Lakeshore
Hannah Campbell**	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), Office of Global Programs, Regional Integrated Sciences and Assessments Program (RISA)
John Dennis**	National Park Service (NPS) Headquarters
Dan Fagre	USGS Northern Rocky Mountain Science Center
Steve Fancy	NPS
David Graber*	Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks
John Gross*	NPS Vital Signs Program
Jon Jarvis	NPS
Beth Johnson	NPS
Kathy Jope	NPS
Sharon Kliwinski**	NPS Water Resources Division, Washington Liaison
Bob Krumenaker*	Apostle Islands National Lakeshore
Lloyde Loope	USGS
Abby Miller*	The Coalition of NPS Retirees
Jim Nations	National Parks and Conservation Association
Shawn Norton*	NPS Headquarters
David Parsons	USFS
David Peterson	USDA Forest Service
Mike Soukup*	NPS Headquarters
Lee Tarnay*	Yosemite National Park
Julie Thomas*	NPS
Kathy Tonnessen	University of Montana
Leigh Welling*	Crown of the Continent Research Learning Center
Mark Wenzler*	National Parks Conservation Association (NPCA)
Aaron Worstell	NPS, Air Resources Division
<b><i>National Wildlife Refuges</i></b>	
Dan Ashe*	United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), Refuges and Wildlife
Don Barry	Wilderness Society

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>Name</b>	<b>Affiliation</b>
Dawn Browne*	Ducks Unlimited
Tom Franklin*	Izaak Walton League
Patrick Gonzalez*	The Nature Conservancy
Lara Hansen	WWF Climate Change Program
Evan Hirsche	National Wildlife Refuge Association (NWRA)
Matt Hogan	Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies
Doug Inkley*	National Wildlife Federation (NWF)
Danielle G. Jerry*	USFWS (Alaska)
Kurt Johnson*	USFWS
John Kostyack	NWF
James Kurth*	USFWS
Tom Lovejoy	The Heinz Center
Noah Matson*	Defenders of Wildlife
Sean McMahon*	NWF
Claudia Nierenberg	The Heinz Center
Maribeth Oakes*	Wilderness Society
Amber Pairis	Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies
Camille Parmesan	The University of Texas at Austin
Caryn Rea	ConocoPhillips (Alaska)
Terry Rich	USFWS
John Schoen	Alaska Audubon
Mike Slimak**	United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), National Center for Environmental Assessment (NCEA)
Lisa Sorenson	Boston University
Kim Titus	Alaska Department of Fish and Game
Alan Wentz	Ducks Unlimited
John Wiens	The Nature Conservancy
Michael Woodbridge*	NWRA
<b><i>Wild and Scenic Rivers</i></b>	
Daniel M. Ashe*	USFWS, Refuges and Wildlife
Tom Beard	Far West Texas Water Planning Group
Donita Cotter*	National Wildlife Refuge System, Div. of Natural Resources
Jackie Diedrich*	USFS, Region 6
Karen Dunlap	USFS, Region 9, Ottawa National Forest
Andrew Fahlund*	American Rivers, Conservation
Dave Forney*	NPS, Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River (SRR)
Dan Haas*	USFWS, Hanford Reach National Monument
Kristy Hajny*	Niobrara, National Scenic River (NSR)
Joan Harn	NPS

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>Name</b>	<b>Affiliation</b>
Steve Harris	Rio Grande Restoration
John Haubert	NPS, Washington, D.C.
Peter Henn	Land Manager of Wekiva River Buffer Conservation Area for St Johns River Water Management District
Mike Higgins*	USFWS, National Wildlife Refuge System
Phil Horning	USFS, Tahoe National Forest
Quinn McKew*	American Rivers, Wild Rivers Program
Teri McMillan	Alaska Wild and Scenic Rivers (WSR) Program
Jerry Mosier	Klamath, California, multiple agencies
Tim O'Halloran	Yolo County Flood Control and Water Conservation District
David Purkey*	Stockholm Environment Institute-US Center
Jason Robertson*	U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management
Cassie Thomas*	NPS
Richard (Omar) Warner*	Kinni Consulting
<b><i>National Estuaries</i></b>	
Mark Alderson*	Sarasota Bay Project
Carol Auer*	NOAA/National Ocean Service
Rich Batiuk*	USEPA Region 3 – Chesapeake Bay Program
Suzanne Bricker	NOAA/National Ocean Service
Dean E. Carpenter*	Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program (NEP)
Derb Carter*	Southern Environmental Law Center, Chapel Hill
James E. Cloern	USGS
Pamela Emerson	City of Seattle
Holly Greening*	Tampa Bay Estuary Program
Michael J. Kennish*	Rutgers University
Wim Kimmerer	Romberg Tiburon Center for Environmental Studies
Karen L. McKee*	USGS National Wetlands Research Center
Doug Rader*	Environmental Defense, Raleigh Regional Office
Curtis J. Richardson*	Duke University Wetland Center, Nicholas School of the Environment and Earth Sciences
Stan Riggs*	East Carolina University, Greenville
Mary Ruckelshaus	NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Seattle

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

<b>Name</b>	<b>Affiliation</b>
Mark Schexnayder	Louisiana State University (LSU) Ag Center/Sea Grant
Ron Shultz*	Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team
Jan Smith*	Massachusetts Bays NEP
Katrina Smith Korfmacher*	University of Rochester
Kerry St. Pe	Barataria-Terrebonne NEP
<b><i>Marine Protected Areas</i></b>	
Peter Auster	National Undersea Research Center
Maria Brown*	Gulf of the Farallones National Marine Sanctuary (NMS)
Deborah Cramer*	Stellwagen Bank NMS Advisory Council
Andrew DeVogelaere	Monterey Bay NMS
Barbara Emley	Gulf of the Farallones NMS Advisory Council
Daniel Gleason*	Georgia Southern University
Lynne Hale*	The Nature Conservancy
Lara Hansen*	WWF
Sean Hastings	Channel Islands NMS
Terrie Klinger*	University of Washington (UW) School of Marine Affairs
Irina Kogan*	Gulf of the Farallones NMS
David Loomis*	University of Massachusetts
Steve Palumbi	Stanford University
Linda Paul*	Hawaii Audubon Society
Bruce Popham*	Florida Keys NMS Advisory Council
Steve Roady	Earthjustice; Duke University Nicholas School of the Environment and Earth Sciences
Teresa Scott*	Washington Department of Fish & Wildlife
Jack Sobel*	The Ocean Conservancy
Steve Tucker*	Cape Cod Commission
Charles M. Wahle, Ph.D.	NOAA National Marine Protected Areas Center
Lauren Wenzel*	NOAA National Marine Protected Areas Center
Bob Wilson*	Gulf of the Farallones NMS Advisory Council

1  
2  
3  
4

\* Indicates invitees who participated in the workshops

\*\* Indicates participants in the workshops who were not on the original invite list

# **Annex A: Case Studies**

## **Editors**

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

## **Authors**

### **National Forests Case Studies**

Linda A. Joyce, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Geoffrey M. Blate, AAAS Fellow at U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jeremy S. Littell, JISAO CSES Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington  
Steven G. McNulty, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Constance I. Millar, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Susanne C. Moser, National Center for Atmospheric Research  
Ronald P. Neilson, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Kathy O'Halloran, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
David L. Peterson, U.S.D.A. Forest Service

### **National Parks Case Studies**

Jill S. Baron, U.S. Geological Survey and Colorado State University  
Craig D. Allen, U.S. Geological Survey  
Erica Fleishman, National Center for Ecological Analysis and Synthesis  
Lance Gunderson, Emory University  
Don McKenzie, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Laura Meyerson, University of Rhode Island  
Jill Oropeza, Colorado State University  
Nate Stephenson, U.S. Geological Survey

### **National Wildlife Refuges Case Studies**

J. Michael Scott, U.S. Geological Survey and University of Idaho  
Brad Griffith, U.S. Geological Survey  
Robert S. Adamcik, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Daniel M. Ashe, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Brian Czech, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Robert L. Fischman, Indiana University School of Law  
Patrick Gonzalez, The Nature Conservancy  
Joshua J. Lawler, University of Washington  
A. David McGuire, U.S. Geological Survey  
Anna Pidgorna, University of Idaho



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39

**Wild and Scenic Rivers Case Studies**

Margaret A. Palmer, University of Maryland  
Dennis Lettenmaier, University of Washington  
N. LeRoy Poff, Colorado State University  
Sandra Postel, Global Water Policy Project  
Brian Richter, The Nature Conservancy  
Richard Warner, Kinnickinnic Consulting

**National Estuaries Case Studies**

Charles H. Peterson, University of North Carolina  
Richard T. Barber, Duke University  
Kathryn L. Cottingham, Dartmouth College  
Heike K. Lotze, Dalhousie University  
Charles A. Simenstad, University of Washington  
Robert R. Christian, East Carolina University  
Michael F. Piehler, University of North Carolina  
John Wilson, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

**Marine Protected Areas Case Studies**

Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Satie Airamé, University of California, Santa Barbara  
Billy Causey, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Alan Friedlander, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Daniel F. Gleason, Georgia Southern University  
Rikki Grober-Dunsmore, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Johanna Johnson, Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority  
Elizabeth Mcleod, The Nature Conservancy  
Steven L. Miller, University of North Carolina at Wilmington  
Robert S. Steneck, University of Maine  
Christa Woodley, University of California at Davis

1	<b>Annex Contents</b>	
2	A1 National Forests Case Studies.....	4
3	A1.1 Tahoe National Forest.....	4
4	A1.2 Olympic National Forest.....	16
5	A1.3 Uwharrie National Forest.....	26
6	A2 National Parks Case Study.....	30
7	A2.1 Rocky Mountain National Park .....	30
8	A3 National Wildlife Refuges Case Study .....	36
9	A3.1 Alaska and the Central Flyway .....	36
10	A4 Wild and Scenic Rivers Case Studies .....	47
11	A4.1 Wekiva River .....	47
12	A4.2 Rio Grande .....	54
13	A4.3 Upper Delaware River .....	59
14	A5 National Estuaries Case Study .....	63
15	A5.1 The Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System .....	63
16	A6 Marine Protected Area Case Studies.....	73
17	A6.1 The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary .....	74
18	A6.2 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park.....	83
19	A6.3 Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National	
20	Monument.....	90
21	A6.4 The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary .....	99
22	A6.5 Conclusions about Marine Protected Area Case Studies .....	107
23	A7 References.....	109
24	A8 Boxes.....	140
25	A9 Tables.....	147
26	A10 Figures.....	149
27		
28		

## 1 **A1 National Forests Case Studies**

### 2 **A1.1 Tahoe National Forest**

#### 3 **A1.1.1 Setting and Context of Tahoe National Forest**

4 Tahoe National Forest (TNF) is located in eastern California, where it straddles the  
5 northern Sierra Nevada (Fig. A1.1). The administrative boundary encompasses 475,722  
6 ha (1,175,535 ac), of which one-third are privately owned forest industry lands arranged  
7 in alternate sections (“checkerboard”) with TNF land. Elevations range from 365 m  
8 (1,200 ft) at the edge on the western slope to 2,788 m (9,148 ft) at the crest of the Sierra.  
9 The eastern slopes of TNF abut high-elevation (~1,525 m; 5,000 ft) arid steppes of the  
10 Great Basin. TNF experiences a Mediterranean-type climate with warm, dry summers  
11 alternating with cool, wet winters. The orientation of the Sierra Nevada paralleling the  
12 Pacific coast creates a steep west-east climatic gradient that contributes to strong  
13 orographic effects in temperature and a precipitation rainshadow. Near TNF’s western  
14 boundary, average precipitation is low (125 cm; 50 in), highest at west-side mid-  
15 elevations (200 cm; 80 in), and lowest near the eastern boundary (50 cm; 20 in). Snow  
16 dominates winter precipitation in the upper elevations, providing critical water reserves  
17 for the long annual summer drought.

18  
19  
20  
21 **Figure A1.1.** Map and location of the Tahoe National Forest, within California (a)  
22 and the Forest boundaries (b).<sup>1</sup>

23  
24 Floral and faunal diversity of TNF parallels the topographic and climatic gradients of the  
25 Sierra Nevada, with strong zonation along elevational bands. The long Mediterranean  
26 drought is a primary influence on the species that can grow and the natural disturbance  
27 regimes. Pine forests occupy low elevations on the western side. These grade upslope to a  
28 broad zone of economically and ecologically important mixed-conifer forests. Higher, at  
29 the elevation of the rain-snow zone, true-fir forests dominate; diverse subalpine forests  
30 are the highest-elevation tree communities. East of the crest, sparse eastside pine  
31 communities grade downslope to woodlands and shrublands of the Great Basin.  
32 Terrestrial and aquatic environments of TNF support critical habitat for a large number of  
33 plant and animal species, many of which have long been subjects of intense conservation  
34 concern. The TNF environments are used by 387 vertebrate species and more than 400  
35 plant species (Tahoe National Forest, 1990; Shevock, 1996). Several keystone species at  
36 the Sierra rangewide scale depend on now-limited old-growth forest conditions or other  
37 rare habitats.

38  

---

<sup>1</sup> **USDA Forest Service**, 2007: Tahoe National Forest map. USDA Forest Service Website,  
[http://www.fs.fed.us/r5/tahoe/maps\\_brochures/images/05\\_nov\\_01\\_tnf\\_map.jpg](http://www.fs.fed.us/r5/tahoe/maps_brochures/images/05_nov_01_tnf_map.jpg), accessed on 7-30-2007.  
And **USDA Forest Service**, 2007: National Forests in California. USDA Forest Service Website,  
<http://www.fs.fed.us/r5/forests.html>, accessed on 7-30-2007.

1 Cultural legacies have played significant roles in shaping present forest conditions and  
2 vulnerabilities in TNF. Timber, water, mining, and grazing, which started in the mid-  
3 1800s, remained intensive uses until the late 20th century. Low- to mid-elevation forests  
4 were denuded in the mid-1800s through early 1900s to provide wood for settlement  
5 (Beesley, 1996). Subsequently the forests regrew, but although they continued to be  
6 extensively harvested until recently, decades of fire suppression contributed to extremely  
7 dense stands, even-age classes, and low structural diversity. These conditions led to  
8 extreme fire susceptibilities; large fire events have occurred in recent years, and fire  
9 vulnerability is the highest concern for management. Modern human use of TNF and  
10 adjacent lands has changed the way in which natural resources are managed. Population  
11 and development in the communities adjacent to the low elevations have exploded in the  
12 past decades, creating extensive wildland-urban interface issues (Duane, 1996). Changing  
13 demographics and consequent resource values of new residents have forced re-evaluation  
14 of TNF goals and practices, many of which limit the capacity of TNF to implement  
15 adaptive but manipulative practices in the face of changing climates. Recreation is now a  
16 primary use of TNF lands; timber management is minor. Fuels reduction is a key issue  
17 both for protection of TNF resources and of adjacent rural communities.

#### 18 **A1.1.2 Recent and Anticipated Regional Climate Changes and Impacts**

19 The trend of temperature increase over the 20th century for California has paralleled the  
20 global pattern (IPCC, 2007a), although at greater magnitude (1.5–2°C; Millar *et al.*,  
21 2004).<sup>2</sup> Precipitation has not shown strong directional changes, but has been variable at  
22 annual and interannual scales (Cayan *et al.*, 1998). Forest insect and disease, mortality,  
23 and fire events have become more severe in TNF, as throughout the West (Logan and  
24 Powell, 2001; Westerling *et al.*, 2006). Decreases in average snowpack up to 80% are  
25 documented throughout much of the West; snowpacks peak as much as 45 days earlier  
26 (Hamlet *et al.*, 2005; Mote *et al.*, 2005) and peak streamflow peaks up to three weeks  
27 earlier in spring (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger, 2005) than during the 1950s, based on an  
28 analysis of the last 50 years.

29  
30 Many of the climate and ecological trends documented for the 20th century are projected  
31 to continue and exacerbate in the 21st century. Future climate scenarios and effects on  
32 water, forests, fires, insects, and disease for California are summarized in Hayhoe *et al.*  
33 (2004) and the California Climate Action Team reports (California Climate Action Team,  
34 2005). All models project increased annual temperatures over California ranging from  
35 2.3–5.8°C (4.1–10.4°F) (range of models to show model uncertainties). Model  
36 projections also indicate slight drying, especially in winter; interannual and interdecadal  
37 variability is projected to remain high in the next century. Snowpacks, however, are  
38 consistently projected to decline by as much as 97% at 1,000 m (3,280 ft.) elevation and  
39 89% for all elevations. The combined effects of continued warming, declining  
40 snowpacks, and earlier stream runoff portend longer summer droughts for TNF, and  
41 increasing soil moisture deficits during the growing season. This would increase stress  
42 that an already long, dry Mediterranean summer imposes on vegetation and wildlife.

---

<sup>2</sup> See also, **Western Regional Climate Center**, 2005: Instrumental weather databases for western climate stations. Western Regional Climate Center Database, <http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/>, accessed on 4-27-2007.

1  
2 Coupling climate models with vegetation models yields major contractions and  
3 expansions in cover of dominant montane vegetation types by the late 21st century  
4 (Hayhoe *et al.*, 2004; Lenihan *et al.*, 2006). By 2070–2099, alpine and subalpine forest  
5 types are modeled to decline by up to 90%, shrublands by 75%, and mixed evergreen  
6 woodland by 50%. In contrast, mixed evergreen forest and grasslands are each projected  
7 to expand by 100%. The following conditions are expected to be exacerbated in TNF as a  
8 result of anticipated changes (Dettinger *et al.*, 2004; Hayhoe *et al.*, 2004; Cayan *et al.*,  
9 2006b):

- 10
- 11     ▪ Increased fuel build-up and risk of uncharacteristically severe and widespread  
12 forest fire.
- 13     ▪ Longer fire seasons; year-round fires in some areas (winter fires have already  
14 occurred).
- 15     ▪ Higher-elevation insect and disease and wildfire events (large fires already  
16 moving into true fir and subalpine forests, which is unprecedented).
- 17     ▪ Increased interannual variability in precipitation, leading to fuels build up and  
18 causing additional forest stress. This situation promotes fire vulnerabilities and  
19 sensitivities.
- 20     ▪ Increased water temperatures in rivers and lakes and lower water levels in late  
21 summer.
- 22     ▪ Increased stress to forests during periodic multi-year droughts; heightened forest  
23 mortality.
- 24     ▪ Decreased water quality as a result of increased watershed erosion and sediment  
25 flow.
- 26     ▪ Increased likelihood of severe flood events.
- 27     ▪ Loss of seed and other germplasm sources as a result of population extirpation  
28 events.

### 29 **A1.1.3 Current TNF Natural-Resource Policy and Planning Context**

30 In addition to national laws and regional management directives, management goals and  
31 direction for the lands and resources of TNF are specified by several overarching  
32 planning documents. These relate to different landscape scales and locations. The 1990  
33 Tahoe National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan (LMP) (Tahoe National  
34 Forest, 1990) remains the comprehensive document for all resource management in TNF.  
35 The primary mission of TNF is to “serve as the public’s steward of the land, and to  
36 manage the forest’s resources for the benefit of all American people...[and]...to provide  
37 for the needs of both current and future generations” (Tahoe National Forest, 1990).  
38 Within this broad mission, specific goals, objectives, desired future conditions, and  
39 standards and guidelines are detailed for the following resource areas: recreation;  
40 interpretive services; visual management; cultural resources; wilderness; wildlife and  
41 fish; forage and wood resources; soil, water, and riparian areas; air quality; lands;  
42 minerals management; facilities; economic and environmental efficiency; security;  
43 human and community resources; and research.

44

1 Specific direction in the LMP has been amended by the Sierra Nevada Forest Plan  
2 Amendment (FPA; USDA Forest Service, 2004) and the Herger-Feinstein Quincy  
3 Library Group Forest Recovery Act.<sup>3</sup> The FPA is a multi-forest plan that specifies goals  
4 and direction for protecting old forests, wildlife habitats, watersheds, and communities on  
5 the 11 NFs of the Sierra Nevada and Modoc Plateau. Goals for old-growth forests focus  
6 on protection, enhancement, and maintenance of old forest ecosystems and their  
7 associated species through increasing density of large trees, increasing structural diversity  
8 of vegetation, and improving continuity of old forests at the landscape scale. A 2003  
9 decision by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to not list the California Spotted Owl as  
10 endangered was conditioned on the assumption that NFs (including TNF) would  
11 implement the direction of the FPA.

12  
13 In regard to aquatic, riparian, and meadow habitat, the FPA goals and management  
14 direction are intended to improve the quantity, quality, and extent of highly degraded  
15 wetlands throughout the Sierra Nevada, and to improve habitat for aquatic and wetland-  
16 dependent wildlife species such as the willow flycatcher and the Yosemite toad.

17  
18 Fire and fuels goals are among the most important in the FPA. In general, direction is  
19 given to provide a coordinated strategy for addressing the risk of catastrophic wildfire by  
20 reducing hazardous fuels while maintaining ecosystem functions and providing local  
21 economic benefits. The specific approaches to these goals are conditioned by the  
22 National Fire Plan of 2000 (USDA Forest Service, 2000a) and the Healthy Forests  
23 Restoration Act of 2003,<sup>4</sup> which emphasize strategic placement of fuel treatments across  
24 the landscape, removing only enough fuels to cause fires to burn at lower intensities and  
25 slower rates than in untreated areas, and are cost-efficient fuel treatments.

26  
27 The FPA contained a Sierra-wide adaptive management and monitoring strategy. This  
28 strategy is being implemented as a pilot project on two NFs in the Sierra Nevada, one of  
29 which includes TNF. This seven-year pilot project, undertaken via a Memorandum of  
30 Understanding between the U.S. Forest Service, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and  
31 the University of California, applies scientifically rigorous design, treatment, and analysis  
32 approaches to fire and forest health, watershed health, and wildlife. Several watersheds of  
33 TNF are involved in each of the three issue areas of the FPA adaptive management  
34 project.

35  
36 The Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Group Forest Recovery Act of 1998 provides  
37 specific management goals and direction for a portion of TNF (the Sierraville Ranger  
38 District, 164,049 ac) and adjacent NFs. The Act derived from an agreement by a coalition  
39 of representatives of fisheries, timber, environmental, county government, citizen groups,  
40 and local communities that formed to develop a resource management program to  
41 promote ecologic and economic health for certain federal lands and communities in the  
42 northern Sierra Nevada. The Act launched a pilot project to test alternative strategies for  
43 managing sensitive species, a new fire and fuels strategy, and a new adaptive  
44 management strategy. The Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Group Pilot is the resulting

---

<sup>3</sup> Title 4, Section 401(j), P.L. 103-354

<sup>4</sup> H. R. 1904

1 project with goals to test, assess, and demonstrate the effectiveness of fuelbreaks, group  
2 selection, individual tree selection, avoidance or protection of specified areas; and to  
3 implement a program for riparian restoration.

#### 4 **A1.1.4 TNF Management and Planning Approaches to Climate Change**

5 Management practices identified by TNF staff as being relevant to climate issues are  
6 listed below, relative to the three categories of responses described in the National  
7 Forests chapter of this report: unplanned, reactive adaptation, or no adaptation measures  
8 planned or taken; management responses reacting to crisis conditions or targeting  
9 disturbance, extreme events; and proactive management anticipating climate changes.

##### 10 **A1.1.4.1 No Active Adaptation**

11 Few if any of TNF's management policies or plans specifically mention or address  
12 climate or climate adaptation. Thus, while it would appear that "no adaptation" is the  
13 dominant paradigm at TNF, many practices are de-facto "climate-smart," where climatic  
14 trends or potential changes in climate are qualitatively or quantitatively incorporated into  
15 management consideration, as indicated in following sections.

##### 16 **A1.1.4.2 Management Responses Reacting to Changing Disturbance and Extreme 17 Events**

18 Most post-disturbance treatments planned by TNF were developed to meet goals of  
19 maintaining ecosystem health (*e.g.*, watershed protection, succession to forest after  
20 wildfire, fuel reduction after insect mortality) rather than catalyzing climate-adaptive  
21 conditions. Nonetheless, many of these best-forest-management practices are consistent  
22 with adaptive conditioning for climate contexts as well, as the example here suggests:  
23

##### 24 *Salvage and Planting Post-Fire*

25 While in most cases the capacity cannot meet the need, TNF is able to respond adaptively  
26 on a small number of acres post-disturbance if the effort to develop NEPA documentation  
27 is adequate to defend against appeal and litigation.<sup>5</sup> In these circumstances, watershed  
28 protection measures are implemented and species-site needs are considered in decisions  
29 about what and where to plant, or what seed to use.

##### 30 **A1.1.4.3 Management Anticipating Climate Change**

31 While TNF has not addressed climate directly through intentional proactive management,  
32 staff have been discussing climate change and climate implications for many years. This  
33 proactive thinking in itself has pre-conditioned TNF to taking climate into account in  
34 early management actions, and has started the discussion among staff regarding potential  
35 changes in strategic planning areas. Further, advances have been made in integrated  
36 planning processes that may be useful vehicles for incorporating climate-related  
37 treatments, thus pre-adapting TNF institutionally to move forward with proactive climate  
38 management. The following examples of actions and opportunities demonstrate how the  
39 TNF is moving forward with dynamic management.

##### 40 *Staff Support by Line Officers*

---

<sup>5</sup> Levings, W., 2003: *Economics of Delay*. Unpublished report on file at the Tahoe National Forest, pp.1-6.

1 The leadership team at TNF promotes broad science-based thinking and rewards adaptive  
2 and proactive behaviors. This practice clearly sets a stage where management responses  
3 to climate can be undertaken where possible, providing an incentive and the intellectual  
4 environment to do so.

5  
6 *Fireshed Assessment*

7 The new Fireshed Assessment process is a major step toward integrated management of  
8 TNF lands. Effective implementation of this process already provides a vehicle for other  
9 dynamic and whole-landscape planning processes such as are needed for climate  
10 adaptation.

11  
12 *Fuel Reduction Projects*

13 Strategies implemented by TNF as a result of FPA and Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library  
14 Group Pilot directions to reduce fuels and minimize chances of catastrophic fires are  
15 increasing the adaptability and resilience of TNF forests (Fig. A1.2). Strategically placed  
16 area treatments, a form of adaptive and dynamic approach to fuel management, are being  
17 tested on the adaptive management pilot of TNF.

18  
19  
20  
21 **Figure A1.2.** Thinned stands for fuel reduction and resilience management, part of  
22 the Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Pilot Project. Photo courtesy of Tahoe  
23 National Forest.

24  
25 *Riparian Management Policies*

26 New policies in the FPA for riparian and watershed management restrict road  
27 construction for timber management (*e.g.*, near or across perennial streams). Helicopters  
28 are used for logging in all situations where roads cannot be built. This allows more  
29 flexibility, adaptability, and reduces fragmentation and watershed erosion.

30  
31 *Post-Event Recovery*

32 While certain kinds of standardized post-fire restoration practices (*e.g.*, Burned Area  
33 Emergency Rehabilitation procedures) are not climate-proactive, a post-event recovery  
34 team at the Pacific Southwest regional level is investigating dynamic approaches to  
35 recovery post-major disturbance. These approaches might include planning for long-term  
36 changes on disturbed sites and taking advantage of new planting mixes, broadening gene  
37 pool mixes, planting in new spacing and designs, etc.

38  
39 *Revegetation and Silvicultural Choices*

40 In stand improvement projects and revegetation efforts, choices are being considered to  
41 favor and/or plant different species and species mixes. For instance, where appropriate  
42 based on anticipated changes, white fir could be favored over red fir, pines would be  
43 preferentially harvested at high elevations over fir, and species would be shifted upslope  
44 within seed transfer guides.

45  
46 *Forest Plan Revision*



1 The TNF LMP is due for revision. Climate considerations are being evaluated as the plan  
2 revision unfolds, including such options as flexible spotted owl (*Strix occidentalis*  
3 *occidentalis*) “Protected Activity Center” boundaries, species shifts in planting and  
4 thinning, and priority-setting for sensitive-species management.

5  
6 *Resisting Planned Projects That May Not Succeed Under Future Climate Conditions*

7 Restoring salmon to TNF rivers is a goal in the current LMP (Fig. A1.3). With waters  
8 warming, however, future conditions of TNF rivers are not likely to provide suitable  
9 habitat for salmon. Thus, TNF is considering the option to not restore salmon. Meadow  
10 restoration is another example: Rather than proceeding with plans for extensive and  
11 intensive meadow restoration, some areas are being considered for non-treatment due to  
12 possible succession of non-meadow conditions in these locations.

13  
14  
15  
16 **Figure A1.3.** Former salmon habitat (rivers marked in bold black) of the Sierra  
17 Nevada. Tahoe National Forest (TNF) rivers are scheduled to have salmon restored  
18 to them in current national forest planning. Adaptive approaches suggest that future  
19 waters may be too warm on the TNF for salmon to survive, and thus restoration  
20 may be inappropriate to begin. Map adapted from (Sierra Nevada Ecosystem  
21 Project Science Team, 1996).

22  
23 *Resilience Management*

24 All forms of proactive management that improve the resilience of natural resources are  
25 improving the adaptiveness of TNF by decreasing the number of situations where TNF  
26 must take crisis-reaction responses.

27  
28 *Dynamic Management*

29 TNF staff is using opportunities available at present (*i.e.*, under current policy) to manage  
30 dynamically and experimentally. An example is cases in which plans treat critical  
31 species’ range margins differently, favoring active management at advancing edges or  
32 optimal habitat rather than static or stressed margins.

33  
34 *Managing for Process*

35 TNF staff is also using opportunities available at present to manage for process rather  
36 than structure or composition in proposed projects; for example, those involving  
37 succession after fires, where novel mixes of species and spacing may reflect likely natural  
38 dynamic processes of adaptation.

39 **A1.1.5 Proactive Management Actions Anticipating Climate Change**

40 **A1.1.5.1 Examples of Potential Future Proactive Management Actions**

41 The ideas listed below were identified by TNF staff as being examples of how  
42 management actions could be leveraged in the future to increase the TNF adaptive  
43 responses to climate change.

- 44  
45
  - Rapid assessments of current planning and policy. A science-based (*e.g.*, U.S.  
46 Forest Service research team) rapid assessment or “audit” of existing TNF

1 planning documents (*e.g.*, the LMP and project plans) could focus on the level of  
2 climate adaptedness, pitfalls, and areas for improvement in current TNF plans and  
3 operations. Such an audit could focus on current management direction (written  
4 policy); current management practices (implementation); and priorities of species  
5 (*e.g.*, specific targeted species) and processes (fire, insects/disease). The audit  
6 would highlight concrete areas of the plans and projects that are ill-adapted as  
7 well as those that are proactive and already climate-proactive, and would  
8 recommend a set of specific areas where changes are needed and improvements  
9 could be made.

- 10  
11 ■ Assessment/audit of the Sierra Nevada FPA. This would be a similar assessment  
12 to that above, but would be undertaken at the FPA scale. The FPA did not  
13 originally include climate, and the science consistency review highlighted this  
14 problem. A more comprehensive assessment of the FPA's strengths and  
15 weaknesses is needed, with a call for revision as appropriate.
- 16  
17 ■ TNF as a pilot for the U.S. Forest Service Ecosystem Services program. Tapping  
18 into the ecosystems services market opportunities and acting as a pilot national  
19 forest within the ecosystems services goals and objectives may provide  
20 management flexibility needed for climate adaptation.
- 21  
22 ■ Management unit size. Increase sizes of management units on the forest, so whole  
23 landscapes (watersheds, forest types) could be managed in a single resource plan;  
24 decrease administrative fragmentation. Whole ecosystem management, rather  
25 than piecemeal by small management unit or by single species or single issue,  
26 would favor adaptability to climate-related challenges.
- 27  
28 ■ Watershed management; water storage. To increase groundwater storage  
29 capacities, treatments to improve infiltration could be implemented. For instance,  
30 in TNF, consider decreasing road densities and other activities (evaluate grazing)  
31 in order to change surfaces from impervious to permeable.
- 32  
33 ■ Watershed management; salvage harvest. To decrease erosion and sediment loss  
34 following disturbance, there is widespread need in TNF to salvage-harvest  
35 affected trees and reforest soon after disturbance. This is the plan at present, but  
36 mostly cannot be implemented in adequate time due to time required for NEPA  
37 processing and general public opposition.
- 38  
39 ■ Event recovery. Post-disturbance mortality and shrub invasion must be dealt with  
40 swiftly to keep options open for forest regeneration on the site. The means are  
41 known; the capacity (money, legal defense) is needed.

#### 42 **A1.1.6 Barriers and Opportunities to Proactive Management for Climate Change at TNF**

##### 43 **A1.1.6.1 Barriers**

44 The situations listed below were identified by TNF staff as barriers that limit TNF's  
45 capacity to respond adaptively to climate change.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46

- Public opposition. Appeals and litigation of proposed active management projects directly restrict ability of TNF to implement adaptive practices.<sup>5</sup> There is a large public constituency that opposes active management of any kind. Thus, no matter the purpose, if adaptive management proposals involve on-the-ground disturbance, these publics attempt to prohibit their implementation. The likelihood of appeals and litigation means that a large proportion of staff time must necessarily be used to develop “appeal-proof” NEPA documents, rather than undertaking active management projects on the ground. This often results in a situation in which no-management action can be taken, regardless of the knowledge and intent to implement active and adaptive practices.
- Funding. Overall lack of funds means that adaptive projects, while identified and prioritized, cannot be implemented. General funding limitations are barriers throughout TNF operations. The annual federal budget process limits capacity to plan or implement long-term projects.
- Staff capacity. Loss of key staff areas (*e.g.*, silviculture) and general decline in resource staff and planning capacity translate to lower capacity to respond adaptively to needed changes.
- Scope of on-the-ground needs. As a result of legacy issues (fire-suppression, land-use history, etc.), as well as responses to changing climates (increasing densification of forests, increasing forest mortality), the area of land needing active management is rapidly escalating, and far exceeds staff capacity or available funds to treat it.
- Crisis reaction as routine planning approach. Inadequate TNF funding and staff capacity, combined with persistent legal opposition by external publics, force a continuous reactive approach to priority-setting. This results in crisis-management being the only approach to decision-making that is possible, as opposed to conducting or implementing long-term, skillful, or phased management plans.
- Checkerboard ownership pattern. The alternating sections of TNF and private land create barriers to planning or implementing landscape-scale management, which is needed for adaptive responses to climate challenges. Achieving mutually agreeable management goals regarding prescribed fire, road building, fire suppression, post-fire recovery, and many other landscape treatments is extremely difficult; thus, often no management can be done. This is especially challenging in the central part of TNF, where important corridors, riparian forests, and continuous wildlife habitat would be actively enhanced by management, but cannot be due to mixed ownership barriers.
- Existing environmental laws. Many current important environmental laws that regulate national forest actions such as the Endangered Species Act, the National Forest Management Act, and the National Environmental Policy Act are highly

1 static, inhibit dynamic planning, and impede adaptive responses.<sup>5</sup> Further, these  
2 laws do not allow the option of not managing any specific situation—such choices  
3 may be necessary as triage-based adaptation in the future. Finally, while coarse-  
4 filter approaches are more adaptive, many existing laws force a fine-filter  
5 approach to management.  
6

- 7     ▪ Current agency management concepts and policies. Current agency-wide  
8 management paradigms limit capacity to plan in a proactive, forward-looking  
9 manner. For instance, the policies requiring use of historic-range-of-variability or  
10 other historic-reference approaches for goal-setting restrict dynamic, adaptive  
11 approaches to management. This problem was identified in vegetation  
12 management, dam construction (“100-year” flood references), and sensitive-  
13 species management (owls, salmon). Certain current regional policies and  
14 procedures limit adaptive responses. An example is the Burned Area Emergency  
15 Rehabilitation approach to post-fire rehabilitation. Burned Area Emergency  
16 Rehabilitation is a static and short-term set of practices that does not incorporate  
17 the capacity to respond flexibly and adaptively post-fire, such as taking actions to  
18 actively move the site in new ecological trajectories with different germplasm  
19 sources and different species mixes.  
20
- 21     ▪ Static management. Other current management paradigms that limit dynamic  
22 planning and managing include the focus on “maintaining,” “retaining,” and  
23 “restoring” conditions. The consequence of these imperatives in planning  
24 documents is to enforce static rather than dynamic management.  
25
- 26     ▪ Air quality standards. Regional regulatory standards for smoke and particulates  
27 are set low in order to optimize air quality. These levels, however, limit the  
28 capacity of TNF to conduct prescribed fires for adaptive fuel reduction or  
29 silvicultural stand treatment purposes.  
30
- 31     ▪ Community demographics and air quality/urban fuels. Changing demographics of  
32 foothill Sierran communities adjacent to TNF are moving toward less acceptance  
33 of smoke. Older and urban residents moving into the area in the past few years  
34 have little experience with fire and its effects, and have little understanding of or  
35 tolerance for smoke from prescribed fire treatments. Similarly, these residents are  
36 not apt to subscribe to Fire-Safe Council home ownership/maintenance  
37 recommendations, thus putting their homes and landscaping at high risk from  
38 wildfire.  
39
- 40     ▪ Agency target and reward system. The current system at the national agency level  
41 for successful accomplishments (*i.e.*, the reward system) focuses on achieving  
42 narrowly prescribed targets (“building widgets”). Funds are allocated to achieving  
43 targets; thus simplistic, in-the-box thinking, and routine, easily accomplished  
44 activities are encouraged. There are few incentives for creative project  
45 development or implementation.  
46

- 1       ▪ Small landscape management units. Fragmentation and inflexibility result from  
2       partitioning TNF into small management units; small unit sizes also restrict the  
3       capacity for full understanding of ongoing dynamics and process. For instance,  
4       even the adaptive management pilot projects under the FPA are too small to be  
5       meaningful under the conditions anticipated in the future—at least 20,000 acres  
6       (8,093 ha) are needed.

7       **A1.1.6.2 Opportunities**

8       The activities listed below were identified by TNF staff as current or potential future  
9       opportunities to enhance managers’ ability to proactively manage for climate change,  
10      some of which are currently employed at TNF.

- 11      ▪ Year-round management opportunities. TNF is experiencing later winters (snow  
12      arriving later in the year), lower snowpacks, and earlier runoff. The TNF staff has  
13      taken advantage of these changes by continuing fuel treatments far beyond the  
14      season where historically these treatments could be done. At present, winter-  
15      prescribed fires are being undertaken, and conditions are ideal to do so. This  
16      enables treating more acres in adaptive practices than could be done if only  
17      summer were available for these management activities.
- 18      ▪ Responses to public concerns through active dialog. TNF has effectively  
19      maintained a capacity to implement adaptive projects when in-depth,  
20      comprehensive analysis has been done on NEPA process. In addition, intensive  
21      education of the interested publics through workshops, scoping meetings, face-to-  
22      face dialog, and informal disposition processes have helped to develop support for  
23      plans (avoiding appeal), and thus these activities are enabling TNF’s adaptive  
24      projects to be conducted.
- 25      ▪ Responses to public concerns by demonstration. Specifically, TNF was able to  
26      gain public approval to cut larger-diameter classes (needed for active management  
27      to achieve dynamic goals) than had been previously acceptable, through the use of  
28      3-D computer simulations (visualizations), on-the-ground demonstration projects,  
29      “show-me” field trips, and other field-based educational efforts.
- 30      ▪ Emerging carbon markets are likely to promote the (re-)development of regional  
31      biomass and biofuels industries. These industries will provide economic  
32      incentives for active adaptive management, in particular funds to support thinning  
33      and fuel-reduction projects.
- 34      ▪ Planning flexibility in policy. The existence of the Herger-Feinstein Quincy  
35      Library Group Pilot and the FPA Adaptive Management project on TNF mean  
36      that there is more opportunity than in most other Sierra Nevada NFs to implement  
37      active management, especially at broader landscape scales.
- 38      ▪ New staff areas defined. When capacity to add staff arises, new positions  
39      (climate-smart) may be added. Through incremental changes in staff, TNF may  
40      41      42      43      44      45

1 “reinvent and redefine” its institutional ability to better respond adaptively to  
2 novel challenges.

- 3
- 4 ■ Public education. There is an opportunity to further educate the local public about  
5 the scientific bases for climate change, the implications for the northern Sierra  
6 Nevada and TNF, and the need for active resource management.

#### 7 **A1.1.7 Increasing Adaptive Capacity to Respond to Climate Change**

8 The ideas listed below were identified by TNF staff as being scientific, administrative,  
9 legal, or societal needs that would improve the capacity to respond adaptively to climate  
10 change challenges.

- 11
- 12 ■ New management strategies. Operationally appropriate and practical management  
13 strategies to address the many challenges and contexts implied by changing  
14 climates are needed.
- 15
- 16 ■ Scientifically supported practices for integrated management. Integration of  
17 resource management goals (*e.g.*, fuels, sensitive species, water, fire) rather than  
18 partitioning tasks into individual plans is already a barrier to effective ecosystem  
19 management. Changing climates are anticipated to increase the need for  
20 integration and integrated plans. Input from the science community on integrated  
21 knowledge, synthesis assessments, and toolboxes for integrated modeling, etc.  
22 will improve the capacity to respond adaptively.
- 23
- 24 ■ Projections and models. Modeled simulations of future climate, vegetation,  
25 species movements; rates of changes of all of these; and  
26 probabilities/uncertainties associated with the projections are needed.
- 27
- 28 ■ Case studies. Case studies of management planning and practices implemented as  
29 adaptive responses to climate are needed. Demonstration and template examples  
30 would allow ideas to disseminate quickly and be iteratively improved.
- 31
- 32 ■ Prioritization tools for managing a range of species and diverse ecosystems on  
33 TNF. Given the large number of species in the forest, it is impossible to manage  
34 all of them. Thus, new tools for adaptive decision-making are needed, as well as  
35 development of strategic processes to assist effective prioritizing of actions.
- 36
- 37 ■ Dynamic landscape and project planning. Scientific assistance is needed to help  
38 define targets and management goals that are appropriate in a changing climate  
39 context. Additional work on probabilistic management units, ranges of conditions  
40 likely, continually variable habitat probabilities, and habitat suitability contour  
41 mapping would be useful. Management planning guidelines that allow rules to  
42 change adaptively as conditions change need to be developed.
- 43
- 44 ■ Scientific clearinghouse on climate information. In high demand is a  
45 reference/resource center, such as a website, with current and practical climate-

- 1 related material. To be useful at the scale of individual forests such as TNF, the  
2 information needs to be locally relevant, simply written, and presented in one  
3 clear, consistent voice.  
4
- 5 ■ Scientific support and assistance to individual and specific TNF proposed actions.  
6 A consistent, clear voice from science is needed to help build the most appropriate  
7 and adaptive plans and actions. There is also a need for clear scientific evidence  
8 that demonstrates both the appropriateness of proposed TNF actions and the  
9 problems that would result from no action. A website could include such  
10 information as brief and extended fact sheets, regional assessments, archives of  
11 relevant long-term data or links to other websites with climate-relevant data,  
12 model output and primers (climate-relevant ecological, economic, and planning  
13 models), training packages on climate change that can be delivered through  
14 workshops and online tutorials, and access to climate-based decision-support  
15 tools.  
16
  - 17 ■ Seed banks. Seed banks need to be stocked to capacity as buffer for fire, insects  
18 and disease, and other population extirpation events.

## 19 **A1.2 Olympic National Forest**

### 20 **A1.2.1 Setting and Context of the Olympic National Forest**

#### 21 **A1.2.1.1 Biogeographic Description**

22 The Olympic Peninsula, in western Washington State (Fig. A1.4), consists of a mountain  
23 range and foothills surrounded by the Pacific Ocean (west); the Strait of Juan de Fuca  
24 (north); Puget Sound (east); and low elevation, forested land (south). Its elevation profile  
25 extends from sea level to nearly 2,500 m (8,200 ft.) at Mount Olympus in the Olympic  
26 Mountains. The range creates a strong precipitation gradient, with historic precipitation  
27 averages of about 500 cm (197 in.) in the lowlands of the southwestern peninsula, 750 cm  
28 (295 in.) in the high mountains, and only 40 cm (16 in.) in the drier northeastern  
29 lowlands. The climate is mild temperate rainy, with a Mediterranean (dry) summer. Most  
30 of the precipitation falls in winter and at higher elevations; nearly all of it is snow that  
31 persists well into summer. The resulting biophysical landscape is a diverse array of  
32 seasonal climates and ecological conditions, including coastal estuaries and forests,  
33 mountain streams and lakes, temperate rainforests, alpine tundra, mixed conifer forests,  
34 and prairies.  
35  
36  
37

38 **Figure A1.4.** Olympic Peninsula land ownership and Northwest Forest Plan  
39 allocation map. Olympic National Forest contains lands (dark boundary) with  
40 different land use mandates and regulations. These include adaptive management  
41 areas, late-successional reserves, and Wilderness areas. Map courtesy of Robert  
42 Norheim, Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington.  
43

1 The ecosystems on the peninsula are contained within a mosaic of federal, state, tribal,  
2 and private ownership. Olympic National Forest (ONF), comprising ~257,000 ha  
3 (~635,000 acres) (including five wilderness areas), surrounds Olympic National Park  
4 (ONP, ~364,000 ha (~899,000 acres)), the core of the peninsula. ONP is both a World  
5 Heritage Site and an International Biosphere Reserve. There are 12 Native American  
6 tribes on the peninsula. Approximately 3.5 million people live within four hours' travel  
7 of the ONF, and thus it is considered an urban forest because of its proximity to the cities  
8 of the greater Seattle area. Ecosystem services from ONF are notably diverse and include  
9 water supply to several municipal watersheds, nearly pristine air quality, abundant fish  
10 and wildlife (including several unique/endemic species of plants and animals, such as the  
11 Olympic marmot (*Marmota olympus*) and the Roosevelt elk (*Cervus elaphus roosevelti*),  
12 as well as critical habitat for four threatened species of birds and anadromous fish),  
13 recreation, and timber following implementation of the Northwest Forest Plan  
14 amendment (NWFP) to the Olympic National Forest Plan. Hereafter, reference to the  
15 Olympic National Forest Plan (ONFP) refers to the 1990 Olympic National Forest Plan,  
16 as amended by the NWFP in 1994.

17  
18 Managing ONF lands therefore requires consideration of complex geographical,  
19 climatological, ecological, and sociocultural issues. Climatic change is likely to influence  
20 the factors responsible for the Olympic Peninsula's diversity and biogeography, and  
21 numerous stakeholders and land management mandates will need to adapt to those  
22 changes to protect the natural and cultural resources on the Peninsula.

### 23 **A1.2.2 Recent and Anticipated Climate Change and Impacts**

24 The Pacific Northwest has warmed approximately 1°C (1.8°F) since 1920; most of this  
25 warming (0.9°C (1.6°F)) has been since 1950, and winter has warmed faster than summer  
26 (Mote, 2003). The trend in annual precipitation is less clear, though most sites show an  
27 increase between 1920 and 2000; decadal variability, rather than trends, best  
28 characterizes the region's 20th century precipitation (Mote, 2003). However, the winter  
29 temperature increase has caused the form of winter precipitation to change at mid- and  
30 low- elevation sites, and 30–60% declines in April 1 snow water equivalent have been  
31 observed in the Olympics and Cascade Range (Mote *et al.*, 2005). The timing of spring  
32 runoff was 10–30 days earlier in 2000 compared with 1948 (Stewart, Cayan, and  
33 Dettinger, 2004).

34  
35 Proxy records indicate that climatic variability has affected ecological processes on the  
36 Olympic Peninsula for millennia (Heusser, 1974; Gavin *et al.*, 2001). For example, pollen  
37 spectra from subalpine lakes in the Olympics indicate common responses after the retreat  
38 of Pleistocene glaciers, divergent vegetation in the early Holocene, and convergent  
39 responses in the late Holocene (McLachlan and Brubaker, 1995). More recently, tree  
40 growth for many lower elevation species increased with water supply and decreased with  
41 high summer temperatures (Ettl and Peterson, 1995; Nakawatase and Peterson, 2006). A  
42 common lesson from both paleo and modern studies is that, for a given regional shift in  
43 climate, the ecological and climatic context of a particular site determines the degree and  
44 nature of the response (Holman and Peterson, 2006)—so much so that high versus low



1 elevations and the wet versus the dry side of the Olympics may have very different  
2 responses to a uniform climatic change.

3  
4 Hydrological resources also respond to climate. The timing, duration, and magnitude of  
5 stream runoff depend on the abundance of winter snowpack and winter-to-spring  
6 temperatures. The Olympic Mountains mirror regional patterns of decadal climatic  
7 variability and trends in climatic change. During the 20th century, snowpacks were  
8 smaller (especially at low elevations), temperatures were warmer (especially minimum  
9 temperatures), and precipitation varied significantly with the fluctuations of the Pacific  
10 Decadal Oscillation. Regional anadromous fish populations (Mantua *et al.*, 1997), tree  
11 growth (Peterson and Peterson, 2001), glacier mass balance (Bitz and Battisti, 1999), and  
12 forest fire activity;<sup>6</sup> Littell (2006) has responded to these changes.

13  
14 Predictions of future climate for the Pacific Northwest are uncertain because of  
15 uncertainty about future fossil fuel emissions, global population, efficacy of mitigation,  
16 and the response and sensitivity of the climatic system. However, by comparing a range  
17 of scenarios and models for future events, climate modelers can estimate future climatic  
18 conditions. Regional climate models suggest an increase in mean temperature of 1.2–  
19 5.5°C (2.2–9.9°F), with a mean of 3.2°C (5.8°F) by 2090 (Salathé, Jr., 2005). Summer  
20 temperatures are projected to increase more than winter temperatures. Precipitation  
21 changes are less certain due to large natural variability, but slight increases in annual and  
22 winter precipitation are projected, while slight decreases in summer precipitation are  
23 possible (Salathé, Jr., 2005).

24  
25 Projected changes in temperature and precipitation would lead to lower snowpacks at  
26 middle and lower elevations, shifts in timing of spring snowmelt and runoff, and  
27 increases in summer evapotranspiration (Mote *et al.*, 2005; Hamlet *et al.*, 2007). Runoff  
28 in winter (October to March) would increase, and summer runoff (April to September)  
29 would decrease (Hamlet *et al.*, 2007). For basins with vulnerable snowpack (*i.e.*, mid-  
30 elevations), streamflow would increase in winter and decrease in summer. Higher  
31 temperatures and lower summer flows would have serious consequences for anadromous  
32 and resident fish species (salmon, steelhead, bull trout). Floods may increase in frequency  
33 because the buffering effect of snowpacks would decrease and because the severity of  
34 storms is projected to increase (although less snow can decrease the maximum impacts of  
35 rain-on-snow events due to lower water storage in snow). Sea level rise would exacerbate  
36 flooding in coastal areas. Some effects, especially the timing of snowmelt and peak  
37 streamflow, are likely to vary substantially with topography.

38  
39 Increased summer temperature may lead to non-linear increases in evapotranspiration  
40 from vegetation and land surfaces (McCabe and Wolock, 2002). This, in turn, would  
41 decrease the growth (Littell, 2006; Nakawatase and Peterson, 2006), vigor, and fuel  
42 moisture in lower elevation (*e.g.*, Douglas-fir and western hemlock) forests while  
43 increasing growth (Ettl and Peterson, 1995; Nakawatase and Peterson, 2006) and

---

<sup>6</sup> Mote, P.W., W.S. Keeton, and J.F. Franklin, 1999: Decadal variations in forest fire activity in the Pacific Northwest. In: *Proceedings of the 11th Conference on Applied Climatology*, American Meteorological Society, pp. 155-156.

1 regeneration in high elevation (*e.g.*, subalpine fir and mountain hemlock) forests  
2 (Woodward, Schreiner, and Silsbee, 1995). Higher temperatures would also expand the  
3 range and decrease generation time of climatically limited forest insects such as the  
4 mountain pine beetle (Logan, Regniere, and Powell, 2003), as well as increase the area  
5 burned by fire in western Washington and Oregon (Littell, 2006).

6  
7 The distribution and abundance of plant and animal species would change over time  
8 (Zolbrod and Peterson, 1999), given that paleoecological data show this has always been  
9 a result of climatic variability in the range projected for future warming. This change may  
10 be difficult to observe at small scales, and would be facilitated in many cases by large-  
11 scale disturbances such as fire or windstorms that remove much of the overstory and  
12 “clear the slate” for a new cohort of vegetation. The regeneration phase will be the key  
13 stage at which species will compete and establish in a warmer climate, thus determining  
14 the composition of future vegetative assemblages and habitat for animals.

15  
16 Thus, ecosystem services in ONF are likely to be affected by climatic change. Water  
17 quality for threatened fish species may decline as temperatures increase and, potentially,  
18 as increasing storm intensity causes road failures. Water quantity may decline in summer  
19 when it is most needed, as streamflow timing shifts with temperature changes. Air quality  
20 will decline if drought frequencies or durations increase and cause increased area burned  
21 by fire. The influence of climate change on habitat for threatened species is less certain,  
22 but high elevation and currently rare species would be more vulnerable (*e.g.*, Olympic  
23 Marmot, bull trout, whitebark pine).

#### 24 **A1.2.3 Current ONF Policy Environment, Planning Context and Management Goals**

25 Current natural resources management in ONF is directed primarily from policy  
26 mandates and shaped by historical land use and forest fragmentation (Fig. A1.4). ONF is  
27 a “restoration forest” charged with managing large, contiguous areas of second-growth  
28 forest. Natural resource objectives include managing for native biodiversity and  
29 promoting the development of late-successional forests (*e.g.*, NWFP); restoring and  
30 protecting aquatic ecosystems from the impacts of an aging road infrastructure; and  
31 managing for individual threatened and endangered species as defined by the Endangered  
32 Species Act (ESA) or other policies related to the protection of other rare species.

33  
34 Most ONF natural resources management activities are focused on restoring important  
35 habitats (*e.g.*, native prairies, old-growth forests, pristine waterways), rehabilitation or  
36 restoration of impacts related to unmaintained logging roads, invasive species control,  
37 and monitoring. Collaboration with other agencies occurs, and is a cornerstone of the  
38 NWFP. Without clear consensus on climate change, cross-boundary difficulties in  
39 solving problems may arise due to differing mandates, requirements, and strategies, but  
40 there is no evidence that this is currently a problem.

41  
42 Planning guidelines for ONF are structured by mandates from the National Forest  
43 Management Act (NFMA) and the NWFP. The ONF land management plan (OLMP, to  
44 be revised in the future in coordination with other western Washington NFs) is influenced  
45 by the NWFP as well as regional Forest Service policy. Planning also is influenced by

1 comments from the public served by ONF. Project planning is carried out at a site-  
2 specific level, so incorporating regional climatic change information into Environmental  
3 Assessment/Environmental Impact Statement documents can be difficult because  
4 assessment takes place at the site scale, while there is still substantial uncertainty  
5 surrounding climate change predictions—especially precipitation—at sub-regional scales.  
6

7 Adaptation to climatic change is not yet addressed formally in the OLMP or included in  
8 planning for most management activities. Current management objectives are attempting  
9 to confer resilience by promoting landscape diversity and biodiversity and this is in  
10 keeping with adapting to climate change. To this end, tools available to ONF managers  
11 include restoration of aquatic systems (especially the minimization of the impacts of  
12 roads, bridges, and culverts); active management of terrestrial systems (through thinning  
13 and planting); and, increasingly, treatment of invasive species. Prescribed fire and  
14 wildland use fire are unlikely tools because of the low historical area burned, limitations  
15 of the Clean Air Act, and low funding levels. The range of strategies and information in  
16 using these tools varies across ONF land use designations. Late-successional reserves and  
17 wilderness have less leeway than adaptive management areas, because there are more  
18 explicit restrictions on land use and silvicultural treatment.

#### 19 **A1.2.4 Proactive Management Actions Anticipating Climate Change**

20 ONF’s policy and regulatory environment encompasses a great deal of responsibility, but  
21 little scientific information or specific guidance is available to guide adaptation to  
22 climatic change. The scope of possible adaptation, clear strategies for successful  
23 outcomes, and the tools available to managers are all limited. Under current funding  
24 restrictions, most tools would need to be adapted from management responses to current  
25 stresses (Table A1.1). Future impacts on ecological and socioeconomic sensitivities can  
26 result in potential tradeoffs or conflicts. For example, currently threatened species may  
27 become even more rare in the future (*e.g.*, bull trout, spotted owl, marbled murrelet,  
28 Olympic marmot) due to stress complexes, undermining the likelihood of successful  
29 protection. Another example is when short-term impacts must be weighed against long-  
30 term gains. Fish species may be vulnerable to failures of unmaintained, closed roads  
31 caused by increased precipitation/storminess, but road rehabilitation may produce  
32 temporary sedimentation and may invite invasive weeds. Ideally, triage situations could  
33 be avoided, but in the face of climate change and limited resources it may be necessary to  
34 prioritize management actions with the highest likelihood of success, at the expense of  
35 actions that divert resources and have less-certain outcomes.  
36

37 Generally, success of adaptation strategies should be defined by their ability to reduce the  
38 vulnerability of resources to a changing climate while attaining current management  
39 goals. Strategies include prioritizing treatments with the greatest likelihood of being  
40 effective (resources are too limited to do otherwise) and recognizing that some treatments  
41 may cause short-term detrimental effects but have long-term benefits. For structures,  
42 using designs and engineering standards that match future conditions (*e.g.*, culvert size)  
43 will help minimize future crises. Specific strategies likely to be used in ONF terrestrial  
44 ecosystems are to increase landscape diversity, maintain biological diversity, and employ  
45 early detection/rapid response for invasive species.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46

Landscape diversity and resilience can be achieved by: (1) targeted thinning (increases diversity, can decrease vulnerability by increasing tree vigor, and can reduce vulnerability to disturbance); (2) avoiding a “one size fits all” toolkit, and using a variety of treatments even if new prescriptions are required; (3) creating openings large enough for elk habitat, but small enough to minimize invasive exotics; (4) considering preserves at many elevations, not just high-elevation wilderness; and (5) considering “blocking” ownerships (land trades) to reduce edges, maintain corridors, and consolidate habitat.

Biological diversity may be maintained by: (1) planting species in anticipation of climate change—using different geographical locations and nursery stock from outside current seed zones; (2) maintaining within-species diversity; and (3) providing corridors for wildlife. However, there must be credible rationale for decisions to use seed and seedlings other than local native plant species.

Early detection/rapid response focuses on solving small problems before they become large, unsolvable problems, and recognizes that proactive management is more effective than long delays in implementation. For example, the ONF strategic plan recognizes that invasive species often become established in small, treatable patches, and are best addressed at early stages of invasion. Although designed for other problems like invasives, it is also appropriate for climate change because it could allow managers to respond quickly to the impacts of extreme events (disturbances, floods, windstorms) with an eye toward adaptation.

Large-scale disturbance can cause sudden and major changes in ecosystems, but can be used as occasions to apply adaptation strategies. ONF is currently climatically buffered from chronic disturbance complexes already evident in drier forests, but age-class studies and paleoproxy evidence indicate that large-scale disturbances occurred in the past. For comparison, fire suppression and harvest practices in British Columbia played a role in the current pine beetle outbreak by homogenizing forest structure over very large areas. In ONF, the amount of young forest (as a result of 20th century harvest) is both a risk (hence ONF’s “restoration” status) and an opportunity. Large disturbances that may occur in the future could be used to influence the future structure and function of forests. Carefully designed management experiments for adapting to climatic change could be implemented. There is a clear need to have concepts and plans in place in anticipation of large fire and wind events, so that maximum benefit can be realized.

Information and tools needed to assist adaptation are primarily a long-term, management-science partnership with decision-specific scientific information. ONF relayed a critical request of scientists: natural resource managers need a manager’s guide with important scientific concepts and techniques. Critical gaps in scientific information hinder adaptation by limiting assessment of risks, efficacy, and sustainability of actions. Managers would also like assistance and consultation on interpreting climate and ecosystem model output so that the context and relevance of model predictions can be reconciled with managers’ priorities for adaptation. Managers identified a need to determine effectiveness of prevention and control efforts for invasive species; monitoring

1 is critical (and expensive). There is a strong need for data on genetic variability of key  
2 species, as well as recent results of hydrologic modeling relative to water supply,  
3 seasonal patterns, and temperature. In contrast, managers pointed out that ONF collects  
4 data on a large array of different topics, many of them important, but new data collection  
5 should be implemented only if it will be highly relevant, scientifically robust, and inform  
6 key decisions.

7 **A1.2.5 Opportunities and Barriers to Proactive Management for Climate Change on the**  
8 **ONF**

9 An important opportunity for adapting to climatic change at the regional scale is the  
10 coordinated development of forest plans among ONF, Mt. Baker-Snoqualmie National  
11 Forest, and Gifford Pinchot National Forest. The target date for beginning this forest  
12 planning effort is 2012. The effort would facilitate further cooperation and planning for  
13 adaptation in similar ecosystems subject to similar stressors. ONF has implemented a  
14 strategic plan that has similar capacity for guiding prioritization and can incorporate  
15 climatic change elements now, rather than waiting for the multi-forest plan effort. By  
16 explicitly addressing resilience to climatic change (and simultaneously developing any  
17 science needed to do so) in the OLMP, ONF can formalize the use of climate change  
18 information in management actions.

19  
20 A second, related opportunity is to integrate climatic change into region-wide NWFP  
21 guidelines that amended Pacific Northwest forest plans. The legacy of the 20th century  
22 timber economy in the Pacific Northwest has created ecological problems, but also  
23 opportunities (Fig. A1.5). Landscapes predominately in early seral stages are more easily  
24 influenced by management actions, such as targeted thinning and planting, than are late  
25 seral forests, so there is an opportunity to anticipate climate change and prepare for its  
26 impacts with carefully considered management actions. By recognizing the likely future  
27 impacts of climatic change on forest ecosystems (such as shifts in disturbance regimes),  
28 the revised forest plans can become an evolving set of guidelines for forest managers.  
29 Specifically, will the NWFP network of late successional reserves remain resilient to  
30 climatic change and its influence on disturbance regimes? Are there specific management  
31 practices in adaptive management areas that would change given the likely impacts of  
32 climatic change?

33  
34  
35

36 **Figure A1.5.** Olympic National Forest is charged with mitigating the legacy of  
37 20th century timber harvest. Landscape fragmentation and extensive road networks  
38 (upper left) are consequences of this legacy that influence strategies for adaptation  
39 to climate change. The old-growth forest dependent northern spotted owl (upper  
40 right) is one focus of the NWFP, which prescribes forest practices but does not  
41 address climatic change. Changes in the timing and intensity of runoff expected  
42 with climate change are likely to interact with this legacy to have negative impacts  
43 on unmaintained roads (lower left) that in turn will impact water quality for five  
44 threatened or endangered species of anadromous and resident fish. Photo Credits:  
45 All photos courtesy Olympic National Forest.

1  
2 Collaboration among multiple organizations is key to successful management. ONF staff  
3 believe that the “stage is set” for continued and future collaboration among organizations  
4 and agencies on the Olympic Peninsula. Climatic change and ecosystems do not  
5 recognize political boundaries, and significant adaptive leverage can be gained by  
6 cooperation. Initiatives by coalitions and partnerships can include climatic change (*e.g.*,  
7 the Puget Sound Partnership) and are conducive to an environment in which adaptation  
8 actions are well supported. In some cases, working with other agencies can improve the  
9 likelihood of success by increasing overall land base and resources for addressing  
10 problems.

11  
12 Major barriers to adaptation are (1) limited resources, (2) policies that do not recognize  
13 climate change as a significant problem or stressor, and (3) the lack of a strong  
14 management-science partnership. National and regional budget policies and processes are  
15 significant barriers to adaptation, and represent a constraint on the potential for altering or  
16 supplementing current management practices to enable adaptation to climate change.  
17 Current emphasis on fire and fuel treatments in dry forest systems has greatly reduced  
18 resources for stand density management, pathogen management, etc. in forests that do not  
19 have as much fire on the ground but may, in the future, be equally vulnerable. Multiple  
20 agency collaboration can be difficult because of conflicting legislation, mandates, and  
21 cultures, but such collaboration is likely to be a hallmark of successful adaptation to  
22 climatic change. Certainly increased collaboration between scientists and managers could  
23 streamline the process of proposing testable scientific questions and applying knowledge  
24 to management decisions and actions.

25  
26 Policies, laws, and regulations that are based on a more static view of the environment do  
27 not consider the flexibility required to adapt to changing conditions outside historical  
28 observations. The NFMA puts limitations on management actions, and NEPA delays  
29 implementation of actions. The ESA requires fine-scale management for many imperiled  
30 species, which may be unrealistic in a rapidly changing climate. Given the projected  
31 future rate of climate change and the resource limitations for land management agencies,  
32 it may be more sustainable and a more efficient use of funding to protect systems and  
33 landscape diversity than to plan for and protect many individual species. The NWFP  
34 partially embraces this strategy, but does not focus specifically on climate change. The  
35 Clean Water Act could become an important barrier in the future as stream temperatures  
36 increase; this may result in unattainable standards that constrain management actions.  
37 NEPA, the ESA, the Clean Water Act, and the NWFP all focus on historical reference  
38 points in comparatively static environments, but climate change warrants looking to  
39 future impacts and the need for preparation.

40  
41 Future barriers to adaptation may arise with the interaction of current policy restrictions  
42 and the potential need to adapt to climatically mediated changes in ecosystem processes.  
43 One example is the potential for using wildland fire for the benefit of forest ecosystems,  
44 which is not currently an authorized management tool on ONF. The benefits of wildland  
45 fire use (likely limited in ONF to natural ignitions within wilderness areas) would need to  
46 be weighed against the cost of authorization. Authorization to use this tool in the short

1 term would require a Forest Plan amendment and associated NEPA process. A less costly  
2 but longer-horizon alternative is to include wildland fire use in the 2012 Forest Plan  
3 revision effort. Benefits would be limited to wildland fire use that could be approved  
4 within the confines of the ESA and other regulations. Olympic National Park recently  
5 completed a fire management plan that authorizes wildland fire use, but has restrictions  
6 related to ESA requirements. For ONF the role of wildland fire use in management would  
7 also be limited by the ESA and the adjacency of non-federal land concerns.

#### 8 **A1.2.6 Increasing the Adaptive Capacity to Respond to Climate Change**

9 The ecosystem stressors ONF manages for currently (Table A1.1) are likely to be  
10 exacerbated by climatic change, but little work has focused on quantifying the direct  
11 linkages between the climate system and future ecosystem services on the Olympic  
12 Peninsula. Resilience to climate change is therefore only describable qualitatively. Past  
13 timber harvest has resulted in a very large area of lower-elevation forest consisting of  
14 second growth, in an ecosystem that was characterized by resilient old growth. This  
15 landscape homogenization has occurred in other forest types, and, at least in theory,  
16 results in less resilience to climate-mediated disturbances. However, such  
17 characterization is at the moment speculative. Aquatic ecosystems are probably less  
18 resilient, and measuring resilience there is similarly underdeveloped.

19  
20 The primary conclusions of this case study are:

- 21  
22 1. Climate change and its impacts are identifiable regionally, and adaptation to  
23 climate change is necessary to ensure the sustainability of ecosystem services.
- 24 2. ONF management priorities (Table A1.1) are consistent with adaptation to  
25 climatic change and promoting resilience to the impacts of climate change.  
26 However, available resources do not allow adaptation at sufficient scale.  
27 Moreover, scientific uncertainty remains about the best adaptation strategies and  
28 practices.
- 29 3. The current political and regulatory contexts limit adaptive capacity to current and  
30 future climatic changes by:
  - 31 a. failing to incorporate climatic change into policy, regulations, and  
32 guidelines;
  - 33 b. requiring lengthy planning processes for management actions, regardless  
34 of scope; and
  - 35 c. adopting priorities and guidelines that are not clear in intent and/or  
36 consistently applicable at national, regional, and forest levels.
- 37 4. These limitations can be overcome by:
  - 38 a. developing a manager's guide to climate impacts and adaptation;
  - 39 b. developing an ongoing science-management partnership focused on  
40 climate change;
  - 41 c. incorporating climatic change explicitly into national, regional, and forest-  
42 level policy;
  - 43 d. re-examining the appropriateness of laws, regulations, and policies on  
44 management actions in the context of adaptation to climatic change;

- 1 e. creating clear, consistent priorities that provide guidance but allow for
- 2 local/forest level strategies and management actions that increase
- 3 resilience and reduce vulnerability to climatic change;
- 4 f. allocating resources sufficient for adaptation; and
- 5 g. increasing educational and outreach efforts to promote awareness of
- 6 climate change impacts on ecosystem services.

7  
8 ONF is at a crossroads. The effects of climatic change on forest ecosystems and natural  
9 resources are already detectable. Adapting to those changes and sustaining ecosystem  
10 services is an obvious and urgent priority, yet adaptive capacity is limited by the policy  
11 environment, current allocation of scarce resources, and lack of relevant scientific  
12 information on the effects of climate change and, more crucially, on the likely outcomes  
13 of adaptive strategies. Adaptive management is one potential strategy for learning how to  
14 predict, act on, and mitigate the impacts of climatic change on a forest ecosystem, but if  
15 there is no leeway for management actions or those actions must occur quickly, then  
16 adaptation options are limited in the current environment. ONF staff indicated that if they  
17 were managing for climate change, given what they know now and their current levels of  
18 funding and personnel, they would continue to emphasize management for biodiversity.  
19 It is possible, for example, that they might further increase their current emphasis on  
20 restoration and diversity. Another possible change, reminiscent of the earlier Forest  
21 Service priorities, would be to emphasize the role of forests as producers of hydrological  
22 commodities.

23  
24 Key components of adaptation will be to (1) develop a vision of what is needed and  
25 remove as many barriers as possible; (2) increase collaboration among agencies,  
26 managers, and scientists at multiple scales; and (3) facilitate strategies (such as early  
27 detection/rapid response) that are proven to work. A functional forest ecosystem is most  
28 likely to persist if managers prioritize landscape diversity and biological diversity.  
29 Equally certain is that management actions should not, in aggregate, lead to the  
30 extirpation of rare species. Clear and consistent mandates, priorities, and policies are  
31 needed to support sustainability of ecosystem services in the face of a warmer climate  
32 and changing biophysical conditions.

33  
34 We envision a future in which the policy, planning, and scientific aspects of ecosystem-  
35 based management co-evolve with changes in climate and ecosystems. This vision  
36 requires trust, collaboration, and education among policy makers, land managers, and  
37 scientists as well as the publics they serve. Climate will continue to change, effects on  
38 ecosystems will be complex, and land managers will struggle to adapt to those changes  
39 with limited resources. Collaboration with scientists is certain to produce information that  
40 relates directly to on-the-ground decision making. Less certain is how opportunities for  
41 adaptation will be realized while retaining public support for resource management  
42 actions. ONF has already transitioned from producing a few commodities to producing a  
43 broad array of ecosystem services, but the more ambitious vision of coevolution must  
44 progress rapidly in order for adaptation to keep pace with anticipated effects of climatic  
45 change.



1 **A1.3 Uwharrie National Forest**

2 **A1.3.1 Setting and Context of the Uwharrie National Forest**

3 The Uwharrie National Forest (originally called the Uwharrie Reservation) was first  
4 purchased by the federal government in 1931 during the Great Depression. In 1961,  
5 President John F. Kennedy proclaimed the federal lands in Montgomery, Randolph, and  
6 Davidson Counties (Fig. A1.6). The UNF is within a two-hour drive of North Carolina’s  
7 largest population centers, including Winston-Salem, Greensboro, Charlotte, Raleigh, and  
8 Durham. The forest is fragmented into 61 separate parcels, which pose unique forest  
9 management challenges (Fig. A1.6). Therefore, much of UNF has been modified from a  
10 natural to a managed ecological condition. UNF has a rolling topography, with elevation  
11 ranging from 122 to 305 m above sea level. Although small by most national forest  
12 standards (20,383 ha), the UNF provides a variety of natural resources, including clean  
13 rivers and streams, diverse vegetation for scenery, wildlife habitat, and wood products.  
14 There is also a wide variety of recreational activities, and UNF is a natural setting for  
15 tourism and economic development.

16  
17  
18  
19 **Figure A1.6.** Map of the Uwharrie National Forest in North Carolina.<sup>7</sup>

20  
21 The UNF is rich in history. It is named for the Uwharrie Mountains, some of the oldest in  
22 North America. According to geologists, the Uwharries were created from an ancient  
23 chain of volcanoes. The 1,000-foot hills of today were once 20,000-foot peaks.

24  
25 The UNF is located at the crossroads of both prehistoric and historic settlements. Their  
26 legacy is one of the greatest concentrations of archeological sites in the Southeast. Left  
27 undisturbed, these sites and artifacts give a record of our heritage. The first large gold  
28 discovery in the United States occurred around 1799 at the nearby Reed Gold Mine. In  
29 the early 1800s, gold was found in the Uwharries, with a later boom during the  
30 depression of the 1930s. Old mining sites still remain, and part-time prospectors still pan  
31 in the streams and find traces of gold dust.

32  
33 Today, the UNF is dynamic and responsive to public needs. It continues to provide  
34 timber, wildlife, water, recreation opportunities, and a natural setting for tourism and  
35 economic development. Recreational use is growing, especially in the Badin Lake area  
36 and along the 20-mile Uwharrie National Recreation Trail. Badin Lake is one of the  
37 largest bodies of water included in the series of reservoirs within the Yadkin-PeeDee  
38 River drainage system. The entire watershed is known as the Uwharrie Lakes Region.  
39 Badin Lake is a popular setting for many different recreation activities, including  
40 camping, hiking, fishing, boating, and hunting. The area is rich game land for deer and  
41 wild turkey, and a home for bald eagles.

---

<sup>7</sup> **USDA Forest Service**, 2007: Uwharrie National Forest Uwharrie Ranger District. University of North Carolina at Asheville National Forest Service Website, [http://www.cs.unca.edu/nfsnc/uwharrie\\_plan/maps/uwharrie\\_map.pdf](http://www.cs.unca.edu/nfsnc/uwharrie_plan/maps/uwharrie_map.pdf), accessed on 7-30-2007.

1

2 **A1.3.2 Current Uwharrie NF Planning Context, Forest Plan Revision and Climate Change**

3 The National Forest Management Act of 1976 requires that all NFs periodically revise  
4 their forest management plan.<sup>8</sup> Existing environmental and economic situations within  
5 the forest are examined. Then plans are revised to move the forest closer to a desired  
6 future condition. The current UNF forest management plan was originally developed in  
7 1986, and UNF is now undergoing a Forest Plan Revision (FPR).

8

9 The revised forest plan focuses on three themes. Two of the themes—restoring the forest  
10 to a more natural ecological condition, and providing outstanding and environmentally  
11 friendly outdoor recreation opportunities—will likely be affected by a changing climate.  
12 The third theme of the FPR (*i.e.*, better managing heritage (historical and archeological)  
13 resources) will likely not be significantly affected by climate change. Thus, this case  
14 study examines potential impacts on the first two UNF FPR themes.

15

16 The revised forest plan will suggest management strategies that help reduce risks to the  
17 health and sustainability of UNF associated with projected impacts of a changing climate.  
18 Therefore, the UNF case study focuses on specific recommended modifications to the  
19 forest plan. This level of specificity was not possible with either the Tahoe or Olympic  
20 National Forest case studies because neither has recently undergone a forest plan revision  
21 that incorporates climate change impacts into forest management decision making.

22 **A1.3.2.1 Revised Forest Plan Theme 1: Restoring the Forest to a More Natural Ecological**  
23 **Condition**

24 Prior to the 1940s, fires were a regular occurrence in southern U.S. ecosystems (Whitney,  
25 1994). The reoccurrence interval varied among vegetation types, with more frequent fires  
26 being less intense than less frequent fires (Wear and Greis, 2002). Upland oak (*Quercus*  
27 sp.) and hickory (*Carya* sp.) forests would burn at an interval of 7–20 years with flame  
28 heights of less than one m (3.3 ft.). These fires would kill thin-barked tree species such as  
29 red maple (*Acer rubrum*), sweetgum (*Liquidambar styraciflua*), and tulip poplar  
30 (*Liriodendron tulipifera*), while leaving the more fire-resistant oaks and hickories alive.  
31 Pine ecosystems had a shorter fire return interval of 3–5 years, with flame heights  
32 reaching 1–2 m (3.3–6.6 ft.), thus favoring fire- and drought-resistant longleaf (*Pinus*  
33 *palustris*) and shortleaf (*Pinus echinata*) pines more than loblolly pines. The fires also  
34 removed much of the mid-canopy vegetation and promoted light-demanding grasses and  
35 herbs.<sup>9</sup> Deciduous and coniferous tree species are equally represented in UNF. However,  
36 a higher percent of the conifers are in loblolly pine (*Pinus taeda*) plantations than would  
37 have historically occurred, because of the planting emphasis of this species over the past  
38 40 years.<sup>9</sup>

39

---

<sup>8</sup> 16 U.S.C. §1600-1614

<sup>9</sup> **Uwharrie National Forest**, 2007: *Proposed Uwharrie National Forest Land Management Plan*. Available from [http://www.cs.unca.edu/nfsnc/uwharrie\\_plan/wo\\_review\\_draft\\_plan.pdf](http://www.cs.unca.edu/nfsnc/uwharrie_plan/wo_review_draft_plan.pdf). USDA Forest Service, Asheville, NC.

1 Climate change is projected to increase the number and severity of wildfires across the  
2 southern United States in the coming years (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001). As part of its FPR,  
3 UNF plans to restore approximately 120 ha (296 acres) of loblolly pine plantation to  
4 more fire-resistant ecosystem types (*e.g.*, longleaf pine) each year.<sup>9</sup> This management  
5 shift will restore UNF to a more historically natural condition and reduce catastrophic  
6 wildfire risk associated with an increase in fuel loading (Stanturf *et al.*, 2002; Busenberg,  
7 2004) and hotter climate (Bachelet *et al.*, 2001).

8 **A1.3.2.2 Revised Forest Plan Theme 2: Provide Outstanding and Environmentally**  
9 **Friendly Outdoor Recreation Opportunities**

10 Recreation opportunities provided by UNF are an important ecosystem service to the  
11 local and regional communities. The proximity to large population centers and diverse  
12 interest in outdoor activities make UNF a destination for many groups that use the trails  
13 and water bodies located within the forest. The continued quality of these trails, streams,  
14 and lakes are of very high importance to UNF's mission.

15  
16 During the 20th century the frequency of extreme precipitation events has increased, and  
17 climate models suggest that rainfall intensity will continue to increase during the 21st  
18 century (Nearing, 2001). Soil erosion occurs when the surface soil is exposed to rainfall  
19 and surface runoff. Soil erosion is affected by many factors, including rainfall intensity,  
20 land cover, soil texture and structure (soil erodibility), and land topography (slope) (Toy,  
21 Foster, and Renard, 2002). Because soil erosion increases linearly with rainfall-runoff  
22 erosivity, it would be expected to increase over the next 50 years in the UNF region if no  
23 management measures are taken to control the current soil erosion problems. Soil erosion  
24 is limited to exposed (*i.e.*, without vegetative cover) soil surfaces (Pimentel and  
25 Kounang, 1998). Hiking, off-highway vehicles, and logging trails and forest harvest areas  
26 represent the major types of exposed soil surface in UNF.<sup>9</sup> Increased soil erosion would  
27 degrade both trail and water quality.

28  
29 In response to current and projected increases in soil erosion potential, the UNF FPR  
30 proposes to repair authorized roads and trails, close unauthorized roads and trails,  
31 minimize new road construction, and reroute needed roads that increase soil erosion. In  
32 total, these measures should effectively reduce the potential impact of increased  
33 precipitation intensity on soil erosion in the UNF.

34 **A1.3.3 Long-Term Natural Resource Services**

35 In addition to the objectives outlined in the Uwharrie forest plan revision, forests in the  
36 United States provide valuable natural resources of clean water and wood products.  
37 While the demand for U.S. pulp and paper products has decreased in recent years, it is  
38 important to assess the long-term ability of the forests to supply wood resources if a  
39 future need should arise. The demand for clean, dependable water is increasing within the  
40 southern United States as population pressure on water resources increase. Therefore,  
41 climate change impacts on UNF water yield and timber supply were also assessed in the  
42 UNF Watershed Analysis Document of the FPR.

43 **A1.3.3.1 Water Yield**

1 Clean water is one of the most valuable commodities that our NFs provide. National  
2 forest lands are the largest single source of water in the United States and one of the  
3 original reasons that the NFS was established in 1891 (USDA Forest Service, 2000b).  
4 There is concern that climate change could reduce water yield from the Uwharrie.  
5 Currently, about 1,590 mm of precipitation falls in UNF every year, with close to 70%  
6 (or 1,100 mm) of it evapotranspiring back to the atmosphere. The other 30% (or 490 mm)  
7 leaves the forest as stream runoff and percolates downward becoming a part of the  
8 groundwater.<sup>9</sup> Climate change models suggest that precipitation may increase to 1,780  
9 mm per year. Air temperature is also expected to increase, which will, in turn, increase  
10 forest evapotranspiration. In total, stream water flow is projected to decrease by  
11 approximately 10% by the middle of the 21st century if there is no change in forest  
12 management (Sun *et al.*, 2005).<sup>10</sup>

13  
14 Forest water use increases with increased tree stocking density and leaf area (Hatton *et al.*, 1998; Cook *et al.*, 2002). The use of controlled fire and other forest management  
15 activities that will increase tree spacing and shift the forest toward more fire- and  
16 drought-tolerant tree species will also help to reduce forest water use (Heyward, 1939).  
17 Based on this line of research, most of the climate change-caused reductions in water  
18 yield can be compensated through this proposed change in forest management.  
19

#### 20 **A1.3.3.2 Timber and Pulpwood Productivity**

21 The southern United States has long been a major supplier of pulpwood and timber. But  
22 because an increasing amount of timber and pulpwood is being supplied to the United  
23 States by Canada, Europe, and countries in the Southern Hemisphere (USDA Forest  
24 Service, 2003), national forest managers have moved away from an emphasis on timber  
25 supply toward recreational opportunities and sustainable water (Apple, 1996).  
26

27 Climate change will have variable impacts globally. Timber production in some  
28 countries, such as Canada, may benefit from warmer climate, while countries closer to  
29 the Equator may experience significant reductions in productivity (Melillo *et al.*, 1993).  
30 Although NFs are not currently major sources of wood products, this situation could  
31 change as timber production from other parts of the world shifts. Therefore, it is  
32 important to assess the impact of climate change on forest productivity in UNF. Forest  
33 productivity models suggest that although pine productivity may decrease, hardwood  
34 productivity is projected to increase and the net loss of total forest productivity would be  
35 small for the UNF over the next 40 years (National Assessment Synthesis Team, 2000).  
36 However, the analysis did not account for the potential for increased fire occurrence,  
37 which could significantly reduce overall forest volume and growth (Bachelet *et al.*,  
38 2001). The proposed shift in forest tree types to more drought-tolerant and fire-resistant  
39 species should also help to assure that UNF remains a timber resource for future  
40 generations (Smith, Ragland, and Pitts, 1996).

---

<sup>10</sup> See also Sun, G., S.G. McNulty, E. Cohen, J.M. Myers, and D. Wear, 2005: Modeling the impacts of climate change, landuse change, and human population dynamics on water availability and demands in the Southeastern US. Paper number 052219. Proceedings of the 2005 ASAE Annual Meeting, St. Joseph, MI.

## 1 **A2 National Parks Case Study**

### 2 **A2.1 Rocky Mountain National Park**

3 The climate is going to change continuously over at least the next 100 years. Ecosystems,  
4 species, and processes in each of the 270 natural resource parks will be affected by  
5 climate change over this time period. Therefore, it was not appropriate to select a case  
6 study based on its perceived current vulnerability to climate change. Some parks are  
7 beginning to face issues related to sea level rise; treasured species in others are at risk.  
8 Regardless of the apparent urgency in some parks, all will have to initiate adaptation  
9 actions in order to meet NPS mission and goals. Rocky Mountain National Park (RMNP),  
10 Colorado, was selected for a case study because it is a good example of the state at which  
11 most parks find themselves as they confront resource management in the face of climate  
12 change. Park managers know RMNP has some highly vulnerable and visible resources,  
13 including glaciers and alpine tundra communities, but there is high uncertainty regarding  
14 just how vulnerable they are, what specific changes might occur, how rapidly change  
15 might occur, or what to do. The following case study describes RMNP’s first attempt to  
16 take stock of the Park with respect to climate change, and begin to think about  
17 management.

#### 18 **A2.1.1 Park Description and Management Goals**

19 RMNP was established in 1915 and “is dedicated and set apart as a public park for the  
20 benefit and enjoyment of the people of the United States ...with regulations primarily  
21 aimed at the freest use of the said park and for the preservation of natural conditions and  
22 scenic beauties.”<sup>11</sup> The Park is located in the Front Range of the southern Colorado  
23 Rocky Mountains, the first mountain range west of the Great Plains. RMNP’s wide  
24 elevation gradient—from 8,000 to more than 14,000 feet—includes montane forests and  
25 grasslands, old-growth subalpine forests, and the largest expanse of alpine tundra in the  
26 lower 48 states. More than 150 lakes and 450 miles of streams form the headwaters of the  
27 Colorado River to the west, and the South Platte River to the east. Rich wetlands and  
28 riparian areas are regional hotspots of native biodiversity. Several small glaciers and rock  
29 glaciers persist in east-facing cirque basins along the Continental Divide. The snow that  
30 accumulates in these basins each winter provides water that supports downstream cities  
31 and agricultural activities in Colorado and neighboring states. RMNP is home to  
32 populations of migratory elk, mule deer, bighorn sheep, and charismatic predators such as  
33 golden eagles, cougars, and bobcats; many plant and animal species that live in the  
34 alpine, including white-tailed ptarmigan, pika, and yellow-bellied marmot; and several  
35 endangered species, including the boreal toad and the greenback cutthroat trout.

36  
37 At slightly larger than 415 square miles, RMNP is not large compared with other western  
38 national parks (Yellowstone, by comparison, is more than eight times larger). RMNP is  
39 bordered on all four sides by national forests. The Roosevelt National Forest surrounds  
40 the Park on the north and east, the Routt National Forest is to the northwest, and the  
41 Arapahoe National Forest surrounds the southwest, southern, and eastern Park

---

<sup>11</sup> 16 U.S.C. § 191-198

1 boundaries. Approximately half of the adjacent Forest Service land is in wilderness  
2 designation (Comanche Peak Wilderness, Neota Wilderness, Never Summer Wilderness,  
3 and Indian Peaks Wilderness), and 95% of RMNP is managed as if it was wilderness. A  
4 primary goal for RMNP, therefore, is to protect and manage the Park in its natural  
5 condition (see Box A2.1). Wilderness status has been proposed since 1974, and  
6 legislation is pending. RMNP is also designated a Clean Air Act Class I Area, meaning  
7 the superintendent has a responsibility to protect air-quality related values, including  
8 vegetation, visibility, water quality, wildlife, historic and prehistoric structures and  
9 objects, cultural landscapes, and most other elements of a park environment that are  
10 sensitive to air pollution. Several endangered species, such as the boreal toad and the  
11 greenback cutthroat trout, have management plans for enhancement and recovery. Other  
12 current management issues include fire, elk, and invasive exotic species. All told, there  
13 are more than 30 planning documents (Acts, Executive Orders, Plans, and  
14 Recommendations) that guide RMNP operations.

15  
16 The towns of Estes Park and Grand Lake form gateway communities, and are connected  
17 by Trail Ridge Road which is open for traffic crossing the Continental Divide during the  
18 summer and fall months. Largely because of its spectacular vistas, the Park receives more  
19 than three million visitors each year, 25% of whom come from Colorado. Most visitor  
20 use is in the summer, when hiking, camping, mountain climbing, viewing nature, and  
21 sightseeing are common. Fall visitation is also popular, when visitors arrive to view  
22 aspen leaves and watch and listen to elk go through their mating rituals.

### 23 **A2.1.2 Observed Climate Change in the Western United States**

24 Many climate change signals have been observed in the western United States, but not all  
25 of them in the southern Rocky Mountains or in RMNP. Strong trends in winter warming,  
26 increased proportions of winter precipitation falling as rain instead of snow, and earlier  
27 snowmelt are found throughout the western United States (Stewart, Cayan, and Dettinger,  
28 2005; Knowles, Dettinger, and Cayan, 2006; Mote, 2006). All of these trends are more  
29 pronounced in the Pacific Northwest and the Sierra Nevada than they are in the Colorado  
30 Front Range of the southern Rocky Mountains. The less pronounced evidence for RMNP  
31 compared with the rest of western U.S. mountains should not be interpreted as a lack of  
32 climate change potential within the Park. The high (and thus cold) elevations and a shift  
33 over the past 40 years from a more even annual distribution of precipitation to more  
34 winter precipitation have contributed to Front Range mountain weather going against the  
35 trend seen across much of the rest of the West (Knowles, Dettinger, and Cayan, 2006).

36  
37 Summer warming has been observed in RMNP, and while a ten year record is insufficient  
38 for an understanding of cause, July temperatures increased approximately 3°C, as  
39 measured at three high elevation sites from 1991-2001 (Clow *et al.*, 2003). RMNP, along  
40 with most of the rest of the western United States, experienced record-breaking extreme  
41 March temperatures and coincident early melting of winter snowpack in 2004. While not  
42 directly attributable to climate change, extreme heat events are consistent with climate  
43 change model projections that suggest increased rates of extreme events due to the  
44 warming atmosphere (Pagano *et al.*, 2004).

1 **A2.1.3 Observed and Projected Effects of Climate Change in the Southern Rocky**  
2 **Mountains and Rocky Mountain National Park**

3 A number of studies have indicated that climatic warming is being expressed in  
4 environmental change in the southern Rocky Mountains and in RMNP: mountain glacier  
5 retreat (evidence of climatic warming) is occurring adjacent to and within RMNP.  
6 Arapahoe Glacier, located 10 miles south of the Park on the Continental Divide, has  
7 thinned by more than 40 m since 1960 (Fig. A2.1). Photograph pairs of Rowe Glacier in  
8 RMNP also show the loss of ice mass over time (Fig. A2.2). Responses to climatic  
9 change are also showing up in ecological communities: a long-term study of the timing of  
10 marmot emergence from hibernation in central Colorado found marmots emerge on  
11 average 38 days earlier than they did in 1977 (Inouye *et al.*, 2000). This is triggered by  
12 warming spring temperatures. Similarly, the spring arrival of migratory robins to Crested  
13 Butte, Colorado, is two weeks earlier now than in 1977. This also signals biological  
14 changes in response to climate (Inouye *et al.*, 2000).

15  
16  
17  
18 **Figure A2.1.** Photos of Arapahoe Glacier in 1898 and 2004.<sup>12</sup>

19  
20  
21  
22 **Figure A2.2.** Photo pair of Rowe Glacier, with permissions, NSIDC and leachfam  
23 website.<sup>13</sup>

24  
25 A number of species of plants and animals may be vulnerable to climate change. Dwarf  
26 larkspur (*Delphinium nuttalianum*) shows a strong positive correlation between  
27 snowpack and flower production (Saavedra *et al.*, 2003). Research findings suggest that  
28 reduced snowpacks that accompany global warming might reduce fitness of this  
29 flowering plant. Local weather, as opposed to regional patterns, exerts a strong influence  
30 on several species of birds found in the Park, including white-tailed ptarmigan, *Lagopus*  
31 *leucurus* (Wang *et al.*, 2002b). The median hatch rates of white-tailed ptarmigan in  
32 RMNP advanced significantly from 1975–1999 in response to warmer April and May  
33 temperatures. Population numbers have been declining along Trail Ridge Road, where  
34 they are routinely monitored (Wang *et al.*, 2002a), and where population growth rates  
35 were negatively correlated with warmer winter temperatures. The Wang *et al.* (2002b)  
36 study suggests that ptarmigan may likely be extinct in RMNP within another two or three  
37 decades. Dippers (*Cinclus mexicanus*) in RMNP may also be vulnerable, as has been  
38 shown by studies of the closely related white-fronted dipper (*Cinclus cinclus*) in  
39 Scandinavia (Saether *et al.*, 2000; Wang *et al.*, 2002b).

---

<sup>12</sup> NSIDC/WDC for Glaciology, Boulder, Compiler, 2006: Online glacier photograph database. *National Snow and Ice Data Center/World Data Center for Glaciology*. Available at <http://nsidc.org/data/g00472.html>.

<sup>13</sup> Lee, W.T., 1916: Rowe Glacier photograph. In: *Online glacier photograph database*. National Snow and Ice Data Center/World Data Center for Glaciology.

Leach, A., 1994: Rowe Glacier photograph. Available from <http://www.leachfam.com/securearea/album.php>. Boulder, Colorado.

1  
2 Some studies of animal responses to climate change in the Park reveal positive responses.  
3 Elk populations were projected to double under climate scenarios of warmer winters and  
4 possibly wetter summers, while model results for warmer winters with drier summers  
5 projected an increase in the elk population of 50% (Wang *et al.*, 2002c). Elk populations  
6 have been increasing within RMNP due to enhanced overwinter survival, and this may be  
7 another factor in the demise of white-tailed ptarmigan, as elk are now taking advantage of  
8 warmer springs to graze on high level tundra where they compete with ptarmigan for  
9 shrubby browse.

10  
11 Greenback cutthroat trout, an endangered species, have been translocated into streams  
12 and lakes in RMNP as part of a recovery effort. Water temperatures in many of the  
13 translocation streams are colder than optimal for greenback cutthroat trout growth and  
14 reproduction. Of the ten streams where the fish were reintroduced by the Colorado  
15 Division of Wildlife, only three had temperatures within the range for successful growth  
16 and reproduction at the time of translocation. A modeling scenario that postulated  
17 warmer stream temperatures suggests that three additional streams will experience  
18 sufficient temperature increases to raise the probability of translocation success to >70%.  
19 In at least one of these streams, however, temperatures are projected to also warm enough  
20 to allow the establishment of whirling disease, caused by *Myxobolus cerebralis*, a  
21 parasite that is fatal to young trout.<sup>14</sup>

22  
23 Other studies suggest that climate warming will diminish opportunities for willow  
24 establishment along riparian areas in RMNP (Cooper *et al.*, 2006), and the occurrence of  
25 longer and more severe fire seasons will increase throughout the western United States  
26 (Westerling *et al.*, 2006).

27  
28 An analysis of recreation preferences under climate change scenarios projected a  
29 relatively small increase (10-15%) in visitation to RMNP for climate-related reasons  
30 under climate warming scenarios (Richardson and Loomis, 2004). An economic study of  
31 whether such an increased visitation would affect the economy and employment outlook  
32 for Estes Park similarly did not find climate change to be very important (Weiler *et al.*,  
33 2002). A more important driver of economic change for the Town of Estes Park was  
34 projected increases in human population numbers within the State of Colorado (Weiler *et*  
35 *al.*, 2002).

#### 36 **A2.1.4 Adapting to Climate Change**

37 RMNP is relatively rich in information about its ecosystems and natural resources, and  
38 has benefited from long-term research and monitoring projects and climate change  
39 assessments. Examples include research and monitoring, in Loch Vale Watershed<sup>15</sup>, and  
40 the focused assessment of the effects of climate change on RMNP and its Gateway

---

<sup>14</sup> Cooney, S., 2005: Modeling global warming scenarios in greenback cutthroat trout (*Oncorhynchus clarki stomias*) streams: implications for species recovery. M.S. thesis, Colorado State University, Fort Collins.

<sup>15</sup> Natural Resource Ecology Laboratory, 2007: Loch Vale Watershed research project. Colorado State University, [www.nrel.colostate.edu/projects/lvws](http://www.nrel.colostate.edu/projects/lvws), accessed on 5-15-2007.



1 Community.<sup>16</sup> Even so, planning and resource management in the Park does not yet  
2 include considerations of climate change. A workshop in March 2007 provided the  
3 opportunity for Park managers and community members to begin thinking about the steps  
4 to take to increase preparedness for a climate that will be warmer and less predictable.  
5 Results of the workshop are summarized below.

6  
7 In many ways, effective science-based management in RMNP has enhanced the ability of  
8 park natural resources to adapt to climate change. Most of the water rights have been  
9 purchased, dams and ditches have been removed, and many streams and lakes have been  
10 restored to free-flowing status since 1980. An exception is the Grand River Ditch. Park  
11 managers have also been proactive in removing or preventing invasive species such as  
12 leafy spurge, and invasive non-native species such as mountain goats; managing fire  
13 through controlled burns and thinning; reducing regional air pollution through  
14 partnerships with regulatory agencies; and preparing a plan to reduce elk populations to  
15 more sustainable numbers.

16  
17 Despite these actions, RMNP managers are concerned over the potential for catastrophic  
18 wildfire, increasing insect infestations and outbreaks, and damage from large storm  
19 events with increasing climate change. A flooding event in the Grand River Ditch, while  
20 not necessarily caused by climate change, serves as an example of the potential effects  
21 from future storm-caused floods. The Grand Ditch diverts a significant percentage of  
22 annual Colorado River tributary streamflow into the east-flowing Poudre River. It was  
23 developed in 1894, and is privately owned and managed. A breach of the ditch during  
24 snowmelt in May 2003 caused significant erosion and damage to Kawuneechee Valley  
25 forests, wetlands, trails, bridges, and campsites.

26  
27 Park managers are also concerned about the future of alpine tundra and species that live  
28 above treeline, but do not have much information about current alpine species  
29 populations and trends. Modest baseline data and monitoring programs are currently in  
30 place. Regional biogeographic models suggest that the treeline will rise and some alpine  
31 areas will diminish or disappear (Neilson and Drapek, 1998). Reduced tundra area, or its  
32 fragmentation by trees, could endanger many obligate tundra plants and animals. Species  
33 such as pika, white-tailed ptarmigan, and marmots are already known to be responsive to  
34 climate change (Inouye *et al.*, 2000; Wang *et al.*, 2002a; Beaver, Brussard, and Berger,  
35 2003).

36  
37 RMNP managers have identified a strategy for increasing their ability to adapt to climate  
38 change built on their current activities, what they know, and what they do not know about  
39 upcoming challenges related to climate change. The strategy involves bringing teams of  
40 experts and regional resource managers together in a series of workshops to share  
41 information and help identify resources and processes that may be most susceptible to  
42 climate change. Support for high resolution models that project possible changes to  
43 species and processes can be used to establish scenarios of future ecological trajectories  
44 and end-states. Regularly held workshops with scientific experts offer the opportunity to

---

<sup>16</sup> **Natural Resource Ecology Laboratory**, 2002: Science to achieve results. Colorado State University, <http://www.nrel.colostate.edu/projects/star/index.html>, accessed on 4-6-2007.

1 develop planning scenarios, propose adaptive experiments and management  
2 opportunities, and keep abreast of the state of knowledge regarding climate change and  
3 its effects.

4  
5 Managers also propose establishing a Rocky Mountain National Park Science Advisory  
6 Board. A Science Advisory Board could serve as a springboard for thinking strategically  
7 and enabling the Park to anticipate climate-related events. RMNP managers recognize the  
8 need to develop baselines for species or processes of highest concern (or of greatest  
9 indicator value) and plan to establish monitoring programs to track changes over time.  
10 The vital signs that have been identified for the Park need to be reviewed and possibly  
11 revised in order to capture effects that will occur with climate change.

12  
13 Park managers identified a critical need to develop a series of learning activities and  
14 opportunities for all Park employees to increase their knowledge of climate change-  
15 related natural resource issues within RMNP. The Continental Divide Learning Center  
16 was recognized as an ideal venue for these activities. Managers have proposed that the  
17 Center be used as a hub for adaptive learning, articulating the value of natural resources  
18 better, and turning managers into consumers of science.

19  
20 Finally, Park managers have recognized the importance of building greater collaborations  
21 with regional partners in order to facilitate regional planning, especially for issues that  
22 cross Park boundaries. RMNP already has strong working relations with the Town of  
23 Estes Park, the Colorado Department of Public Health and Environment, the Colorado  
24 Division of Wildlife, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Larimer and Boulder Counties,  
25 and many local organizations and schools. Opportunities to work more closely with the  
26 Routt, Arapaho, and Roosevelt National Forest managers could be pursued with the  
27 objective of discussing shared management goals.

28  
29 In summary, RMNP managers propose to continue current resource management  
30 activities to minimize damage from other threats, increase their knowledge of which  
31 species and ecosystems are subject to change from climate change, monitor rates of  
32 change for select species and processes, and work with experts to consider what  
33 management actions are appropriate to their protection. By developing working relations  
34 with neighboring and regional resource managers, the Park keeps its options open for  
35 allowing species to migrate in and out of the Park, considering assisted migrations, and  
36 promotes regional approaches toward fire management (Box A2.2).

#### 37 **A2.1.5 Needed: A New Approach Toward Resource Management**

38 RMNP, like other national parks, often operates in reactive mode, with limited  
39 opportunity for long-term planning. Reactive management has a number of causes, only  
40 some of which are related to tight budgets and restrictive funding mechanisms. Partly  
41 because national parks are so visible to the public, there are public expectations and  
42 political pressures that trigger short-term management activities (tree thinning in  
43 lodgepole pine forest is one example of an activity that is visible to many, but of  
44 questionable value in reducing the risk of catastrophic fire). Natural resource issues are  
45 increasingly complex, and climate change adds greatly to this complexity.

1  
2 RMNP managers have been proactive in addressing many of the resource issues faced by  
3 the Park. Yet they recognize there is still more to be done, particularly in human resource  
4 management. Complex issues require broad and flexible ways of thinking about them,  
5 and creative new tools for their management. Professional development programs for  
6 current resource managers, rangers, and park managers could be strengthened so that all  
7 employees understand the natural resources that are under the protection of the NPS, the  
8 causes and consequences of threats to these resources, and the various management  
9 options that are available.

10  
11 The skill sets for new National Park Service (NPS) employees should reflect broad  
12 systems training. University programs for natural resource management could shift from  
13 traditional training in fisheries, wildlife, or recreational management to providing more  
14 holistic ecosystems management training. Curricula at universities and colleges could  
15 also emphasize critical and strategic thinking that embraces science and scientific tools  
16 for managing adaptively, and recognizes the need for lifelong learning. Climate change  
17 can serve as the catalyst for this new way of managing national park resources. Indeed, if  
18 the natural resources entrusted to RMNP—and other parks—are to persist and thrive  
19 under future climates, the Park Service will need managers that see the whole as well as  
20 the parts, and act accordingly.

## 21 **A3 National Wildlife Refuges Case Study**

### 22 **A3.1 Alaska and the Central Flyway**

23 Warming trends in Alaska and the Arctic are more pronounced than in southerly regions  
24 of the United States, and the disproportionate rate of warming in Alaska is expected to  
25 continue throughout the coming century (IPCC, 2001) (see Fig. 5.3a in the National  
26 Wildlife Refuges chapter). Migratory birds are one of the major trust species groups of  
27 the National Wildlife Refuge System (NWRS), and birds that breed in Alaska traverse  
28 most of the system as they use portions of the Pacific, Central (see Fig. A3.1),  
29 Mississippi, and Atlantic Flyways during their annual cycle. Projected warming is  
30 expected to encompass much of the Central Flyway but is expected to be less pronounced  
31 in the remaining flyways (IPCC, 2001). Historical records show strong warming in the  
32 Dakotas and a tendency toward cooling in the southern reaches of the flyway (see Fig.  
33 5.3a in the National Wildlife Refuges chapter). Pervasive and dramatic habitat shifts (see  
34 Fig. 5.9 in the National Wildlife Refuges chapter) are projected in Alaska and especially  
35 throughout the Central Flyway by the end of the century.

36  
37  
38  
39 **Figure A3.1.** Central Flyway Waterfowl Migration Corridor.<sup>17</sup>  
40

---

<sup>17</sup> **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.** 2007: Central flyway. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Pacific Flyway Council Website, [http://pacificflyway.gov/Documents/Central\\_map.pdf](http://pacificflyway.gov/Documents/Central_map.pdf), accessed on 6-2-0007.

1 Migration is an energetically costly and complex life history strategy (Arzel, Elmberg,  
2 and Guillemain, 2006). The heterogeneity in warming and additional stressors along  
3 migratory pathways along with their potential effects on productivity and population  
4 levels of migratory birds emphasize the importance of strong interconnections among  
5 units of the NWRS and the need for a national vision and a comprehensive management  
6 strategy to meet the challenge of climate change in the next century. The following case  
7 study examines warming and additional stressors, as well as management options in  
8 Alaska and the Central Flyway, which together produce 50–80% of the continent’s ducks  
9 (Table A3.1).

### 10 **A3.1.1 Current Environmental Conditions**

#### 11 **A3.1.1.1 Changes in Climate and Growing Season Duration**

##### 12 **Climate**

13 In recent decades, warming has been very pronounced in Alaska, with most of the  
14 warming occurring in winter (December–February) and spring (March–May) (Serreze *et*  
15 *al.*, 2000; McBean *et al.*, 2005). In western and central Canada, the increases in air  
16 temperature have been somewhat less than those observed in Alaska (Serreze *et al.*,  
17 2000). While precipitation has remained largely stable throughout Alaska and in Canada  
18 in recent decades, several lines of evidence indicate that Alaska and western Canada are  
19 experiencing increased drought stress due to increased summer water deficits (Barber,  
20 Juday, and Finney, 2000; Oechel *et al.*, 2000; Hogg and Bernier, 2005; Hogg, 2005;  
21 Hogg, Brandt, and Hochtubajda, 2005).

22

##### 23 **Growing Season Duration**

24 The seasonal transition of northern ecosystems from a frozen to a thawed condition  
25 represents the closest analog to a biospheric “on-off switch” that exists in nature,  
26 dramatically affecting ecological, hydrologic, and meteorological processes (Running *et*  
27 *al.*, 1999). Several studies based on remote sensing indicate that growing seasons are  
28 changing in high-latitude regions (Dye, 2002; McDonald *et al.*, 2004; McGuire *et al.*,  
29 2004; Smith, Saatchi, and Randerson, 2004; Euskirchen *et al.*, 2006). These studies  
30 identify earlier onset of thaw in northern North America, but the magnitude of change  
31 depends on the study. Putting together the trends in the onset of both thaw and freeze,  
32 Smith, Saatchi, and Randerson (2004) indicate that the trend for longer growing seasons  
33 in northern North America (3 days per decade) is primarily due to later freezing.  
34 However, other studies indicate that the lengthening growing season in North America is  
35 primarily due to earlier thaw (Dye, 2002; Euskirchen *et al.*, 2006). Consistent with earlier  
36 thaw of terrestrial ecosystems in northern North America, lake ice has also been observed  
37 to be melting earlier across much of the Northern Hemisphere in recent decades  
38 (Magnuson *et al.*, 2000). The study of Euskirchen *et al.* (2006) indicates that trends for  
39 earlier thaw are generally stronger in Alaska than in the Central Flyway of Canada and  
40 northern United States, but trends for later freeze are stronger in the Central Flyway of  
41 Canada and the northern United States than in Alaska.

#### 42 **A3.1.1.2 Changes in Agriculture**

43 Agriculture and migratory waterfowl are intimately related because waterfowl make  
44 significant use of agricultural waste on staging and wintering areas. Much of the

1 agricultural production in the United States is centered in the Central Flyway. Dynamic  
2 markets, government subsidies, cleaner farming practices, and irrigation have changed  
3 the mix, area, and distribution of agricultural products during the past 50 years (Krapu,  
4 Brandt, and Cox, Jr., 2004). Genetically engineered crops and resultant changes in tillage  
5 practices and the use of pesticides and herbicides, as well as development of drought  
6 resistant crop varieties, will likely add heterogeneity to the dynamics of future crop  
7 production. While corn acreage has remained relatively stable during the past 50 years,  
8 waste corn available to waterfowl and other wildlife declined by one-quarter to one-half  
9 during the last two decades of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, primarily as a result of more efficient  
10 harvest (Krapu, Brandt, and Cox, Jr., 2004). While soybean acreage has increased by  
11 approximately 600% during the past 50 years, metabolizable energy and digestibility of  
12 soybeans is noticeably less than for corn, and waterfowl consume little, if any, soybeans  
13 (Krapu, Brandt, and Cox, Jr., 2004). These changes in availability of corn and soybeans  
14 suggest that nutrition of waterfowl on migratory staging areas may be compromised  
15 (Krapu, Brandt, and Cox, Jr., 2004). If a future emphasis on bio-fuels increases acreage in  
16 corn production, the potential negative effects of the recent increase in soybean  
17 production on waterfowl energetics may be ameliorated.

### 18 **A3.1.1.3 Changes in Lake Area**

19 Analyses of remotely sensed imagery indicate that there has been a significant loss of  
20 closed-basin water bodies (water bodies without an inlet or an outlet) over the past half  
21 century in many areas of Alaska (Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire, 2006). Significant  
22 water body losses have occurred primarily in areas of discontinuous permafrost  
23 (Yoshikawa and Hinzman, 2003; Hinzman *et al.*, 2005; Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire,  
24 2006) and subarctic areas that are permafrost-free (Klein, Berg, and Dial, 2005). In an  
25 analysis of approximately 10,000 closed-basin ponds across eight study areas in Alaska  
26 with discontinuous permafrost, Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire (2006) found that surface  
27 water area of the ponds decreased by 4–31% while the total number of closed-basin  
28 ponds surveyed within each study region decreased by 5–54% (Riordan, Verbyla, and  
29 McGuire, 2006). There was a significant increasing trend in annual mean surface air  
30 temperature and potential evapotranspiration since the 1950s for all the study regions, but  
31 there was no significant trend in annual precipitation during the same period. In contrast,  
32 it appears that lake area is not changing in regions of Alaska with continuous permafrost  
33 (Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire, 2006). However, in adjacent Canada, significant water  
34 body losses have occurred in areas dominated by permafrost (Hawkings, 1996).<sup>18</sup>

35  
36 Warming of permafrost may be causing a significant loss of lake area across the  
37 landscape because the loss of permafrost may allow surface waters to drain into  
38 groundwater (Yoshikawa and Hinzman, 2003; Hinzman *et al.*, 2005; Riordan, Verbyla,  
39 and McGuire, 2006). While permafrost generally restricts infiltration of surface water to  
40 the sub-surface groundwater, unfrozen zones called taliks may be found under lakes  
41 because of the ability of water to store and vertically transfer heat energy. As climate  
42 warming occurs, these talik regions can expand and provide lateral subsurface drainage to  
43 stream channels. This mechanism may be important in areas that have discontinuous

---

<sup>18</sup> See also **Hawkings**, J. and E. Malta, 2000: Are northern wetlands drying up? A case study in the Old Crow Flats, Yukon. *51st AAAS Arctic Science Conference*.

1 permafrost such as the boreal forest region of Alaska. However, the reduction of open  
2 water bodies may also reflect increased evaporation under a warmer and effectively drier  
3 climate in Alaska, as the loss of open water has also been observed in permafrost-free  
4 areas (Klein, Berg, and Dial, 2005).

5  
6 In the Prairie Pothole Region (PPR) of the Central Flyway, changes in climate accounted  
7 for 60% of the variation in the number of wet basins (Larson, 1995), with partially  
8 forested parklands being more sensitive to increasing temperature than treeless  
9 grasslands. When wet basins are limited, birds may overfly grasslands for parklands and  
10 then proceed even farther north to Alaska in particularly dry years in the pothole region.  
11 Small- and large-scale heterogeneity in lake drying may first cause a redistribution of  
12 birds and, if effects are pervasive enough, may ultimately cause changes in the  
13 productivity and abundance of birds. Fire and vegetation changes in the PPR and in  
14 Alaska may exacerbate these effects.

### 15 **A3.1.2 Projections and Uncertainties of Future Climate Changes and Responses**

#### 16 **A3.1.2.1 Projected Changes in Climate and Growing Season Duration**

##### 17 **Climate**

18 Projections of changes in climate during the 21st century for the region between 60° and  
19 90° N indicate that air temperature may increase approximately 2°C (range ~1–4°C  
20 among models) and that precipitation may increase approximately 12% (range ~8–18%  
21 among models) (Kattsov and Källén, 2005). The increase in precipitation will be due  
22 largely to moisture transport from the south, as temperature-induced increases in  
23 evaporation put more moisture into the atmosphere. Across model projections, increases  
24 in temperature and precipitation are projected to be highest in winter and autumn. Across  
25 the region, there is much spatial variability in projected increases in temperature and  
26 precipitation, both within a model and among models. For any location, the scatter in  
27 projected temperature and precipitation changes among the models is larger than the  
28 mean temperature and precipitation change projected among the models (Kattsov and  
29 Källén, 2005).

30  
31 In comparison with northern North America, climate model projections indicate that the  
32 Central Flyway of the United States will warm less with decreasing latitude (Cubasch *et al.*,  
33 2001). Mid-continental regions such as the Central Flyway are generally projected to  
34 experience drying during the summer due to increased temperature and potential  
35 evapotranspiration that is not balanced by increases in precipitation (Cubasch *et al.*,  
36 2001). Projections of changes in vegetation suggest that most of the Central Flyway (see  
37 Fig. A3.1 and Fig. 5.9d in the National Wildlife Refuges chapter) will experience a biome  
38 shift by the latter part of the 21st century (Bachelet *et al.*, 2003; Lemieux and Scott,  
39 2005).

##### 40 **Growing Season Duration**

41  
42 One analysis suggests that projected climate change may increase growing season length  
43 in northern and temperate North America by 0.4–0.5 day per year during the 21st century  
44 (Euskirchen *et al.*, 2006), with stronger trends for more northern latitudes. This will be  
45 caused almost entirely by an earlier date of thaw in the spring, as the analysis indicated

1 essentially no trend in the date of freeze. Analyses of this type need to be conducted  
2 across a broader range of climate scenarios to determine if this finding is robust. If so,  
3 then one inference is that lake ice would likely melt progressively earlier throughout  
4 northern and temperate North America during the 21st century.

#### 5 **A3.1.2.2 Changes in Lake Area**

6 It is expected that the documented loss of surface water of closed-basin ponds in Alaska  
7 (Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire, 2006) and adjacent Canada will continue if climate  
8 continues to warm in the 20th century. The ubiquitous loss of shallow permafrost  
9 (Lawrence and Slater, 2005) as well as the progressive loss of deep permafrost  
10 (Euskirchen *et al.*, 2006) are likely to enhance drainage by increasing the flow paths of  
11 lake water to ground water. Also, it is likely that enhanced evaporation will increase loss  
12 of water. While projections of climate change indicate that precipitation will increase, it  
13 is unlikely that increases in precipitation will compensate for water loss from lakes from  
14 increased evaporation. An analysis by Rouse (1998) estimated that if atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>  
15 concentration doubles, an increase in precipitation of at least 20% would be needed to  
16 maintain the present-day water balance of a subarctic fen. Furthermore, Lafleur (1993)  
17 estimated that a summer temperature increase of 4°C would require an increase in  
18 summer precipitation of 25% to maintain present water balance. These changes in  
19 precipitation to maintain water balance are higher than the range of precipitation changes  
20 (8–18%) anticipated for the 60–90° N region in climate model projections (Kattsov and  
21 Källén, 2005).

#### 22 **A3.1.3 Non-Climate Stressors**

23 In Alaska, climate is the primary driver of change in habitat value for breeding migrants  
24 through its effects on length of the ice-free season (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2006)  
25 and on lake drying (Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire, 2006). Throughout the Central  
26 Flyway, projected major changes in vegetation are expected to occur by the end of the  
27 century (see Fig. 5.9d in the National Wildlife Refuges chapter) (Bachelet *et al.*, 2003;  
28 Lemieux and Scott, 2005). Additional stressors in the Central Flyway include competing  
29 land uses on staging areas outside the NWRS, changes in the distribution and mix of  
30 agricultural crops that may favor/disfavor foraging opportunities for migrants on  
31 migratory and winter ranges, and anthropogenic disturbance that may affect nutrient  
32 acquisition strategies for migrants in both spring and fall by restricting access to foraging  
33 areas. In southern regions of the Central Flyway, rising sea level and increasing  
34 urbanization may cause reductions in refuge area and increased insularity of remaining  
35 fragments. All stressors contribute to uncertainty in future distribution and abundance of  
36 birds. Climate dominates on Alaskan breeding grounds, and additional stressors  
37 complicate estimation of the net effects of climate on migrants and their use of staging  
38 and wintering areas in central and southern portions of the Central Flyway.

#### 39 **A3.1.4 Function of Alaska in the National Wildlife Refuge System**

40 Alaska is a major breeding area for North American migratory waterfowl. Alaska and the  
41 adjacent Yukon Territory are particularly important breeding areas for American widgeon  
42 (~38% of total in 2006), green-winged teal (~31%), northern pintail (~31%) and greater

1 and lesser scaup combined (~27%). Substantial proportions of the North American  
2 populations of western trumpeter swans, Brant geese, light geese (Snows) and greater  
3 sandhill cranes also breed in Alaska (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2006).

4  
5 Alaska both contributes to NWRS waterfowl production and provides a vehicle to  
6 conceptually integrate most of the NWRS. Waterfowl that breed in Alaska make annual  
7 migrations throughout North America and are thus exposed to large-scale heterogeneity  
8 in potential climate warming effects. Migrants use the Pacific, Central, Mississippi, and  
9 to a lesser extent the Atlantic, Flyways on their annual spring and fall migrations. Their  
10 migration routes extend to wintering grounds as far south as Central and South America.

11  
12 The spatial heterogeneity in warming, variable energetic demands among life history  
13 stages, and variable number and intensity of non-climate stressors along the migratory  
14 pathways creates substantial complexity within the NWRS. This complexity emphasizes  
15 that performance (*e.g.*, weight gain, survival, reproduction) of any species in any life  
16 history stage at any location within a region may be substantially affected by synergistic  
17 effects of climate and non-climate stressors elsewhere within the NWRS. A successful  
18 response to this complexity will require a national vision of the problems and solutions,  
19 and creative local action.

20 **A3.1.4.1 Potential Effects of Climate Change on the Annual Cycle of Alaska Breeding**  
21 **Migrants**

22 Abundance of waterfowl arriving on the breeding grounds is a function of survival and  
23 nutritional balance on the wintering grounds and on spring migration staging areas. Two  
24 types of breeding strategies are recognized. “Income” breeders obtain the energy for egg  
25 production primarily from the nesting area while “capital” breeders obtain energy for egg  
26 production primarily from wintering and spring staging areas. Regardless of whether  
27 species are income or capital breeders, food availability in the spring on breeding grounds  
28 in the Arctic is important to breeding success (Arzel, Elmberg, and Guillemain, 2006).

29  
30 Breeding conditions for waterfowl in Alaska depend largely on the timing of spring ice  
31 melt (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2006). In the short term, earlier springs that result  
32 from warming likely advance green-up and ice melt, thus increasing access to open water  
33 and to new, highly digestible vegetation growth and to terrestrial and aquatic  
34 invertebrates. Such putative changes in open water and food resources in turn may  
35 influence the energetic balance and reproductive success of breeders and the performance  
36 of their offspring. Flexibility in arrival and breeding dates may allow some migrants to  
37 capitalize on earlier access to resources and increase the length of time available for re-  
38 nesting attempts and fledging of young. Some relatively late migrants, such as scaup  
39 (Austin *et al.*, 2000), may not be able to adapt to warming induced variable timing of  
40 open water and food resources, and thus may become decoupled from their primary  
41 resources at breeding.

42  
43 In the long term, increased temperatures and greater length of the ice-free season on the  
44 breeding grounds may contribute to permafrost degradation and long-term reduction in  
45 the number and area of closed-basin ponds (Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire, 2006),  
46 which may reduce habitat availability, particularly for diving ducks. Countering this



1 potential reduction in habitat area may be changes in wetland chemistry and aquatic food  
2 resources. Reductions in water volume of remaining ponds may result in increased  
3 nutrient or contaminant concentrations, increases in phytoplankton, and a shift from an  
4 invertebrate community dominated by benthic amphipods to one dominated by  
5 zooplankton in the water column.<sup>19</sup> This has variable implications for foraging  
6 opportunities for waterfowl that make differential use of shallow and deep water for  
7 foraging. The net effects of lake drying on waterfowl populations in Alaska are not  
8 known at this time, but the heterogeneity in relatively local reductions and increases in  
9 lake area in relation to breeding waterfowl survey lines (see Fig. A3.2) may make it  
10 difficult to detect any effects that have occurred.

11  
12  
13 **Figure A3.2.** Heterogeneity in closed-basin lakes with increasing and decreasing  
14 surface area, 1950–2000, Yukon Flats NWR, Alaska. Net reduction in lake area  
15 was 18% with the area of 566 lakes decreasing, 364 lakes increasing, and 462  
16 lakes remaining stable. Adapted from Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire (2006).

17  
18 Departure of waterfowl from breeding grounds in the fall may be delayed by later freeze-  
19 up. The ability to prolong occupancy at northern latitudes may increase successful  
20 fledging and allow immature birds to begin fall migration in better body condition. Later  
21 freeze-up may allow immature birds, particularly large species such as swans, to delay  
22 their rate of travel southward and increase their opportunities for nutrient intake during  
23 migration. Changes in the timing of arrival at various southern staging areas may affect  
24 waterfowl's access to and availability of resources such as waste grain and may result in  
25 re-distribution of birds along the migration route as they attempt to optimize foraging  
26 opportunities. The primary effect of this later departure and reduced rate of southward  
27 migration may be observed in more northerly fall distributions of species and a northward  
28 shift in harvest locations as has already been observed for some species. Later freeze-up  
29 and warmer winters may allow species to “short-stop” their migrations and winter farther  
30 north. Observations by Central Flyway biologists indicate that 1) numbers of wintering  
31 white-fronted geese numbers have increased in Kansas in recent years, evidently as a  
32 result of diminished proclivity to travel further southward to Texas and Mexico for the  
33 winter; 2) portions of the tundra swan population now winter in Ontario rather than  
34 continuing southward; and 3) the winter distribution of Canada geese has shifted to more  
35 northern latitudes. The energetic and population implications of these putative northerly  
36 shifts in distribution in winter will ultimately be determined by the interaction of  
37 migratory costs, food availability, non-climate stressors such as anthropogenic  
38 disturbance and shifting agricultural practices, and harvest risk.

39  
40 Earlier spring thaw may advance the timing of spring migration and increase the amount  
41 of time that some species, such as greater sandhill cranes, spend on their staging grounds  
42 in Nebraska. Increased foraging time during spring migration should benefit larger  
43 species, which tend to accumulate nutrients for breeding on the wintering grounds and on

---

<sup>19</sup> **Corcoran, R.M.**, 2005: Lesser scaup nesting ecology in relation to water chemistry and macroinvertebrates on the Yukon Flats, Alaska. Masters Thesis. Department of Zoology and Physiology, University of Wyoming, Laramie, 1-83.

1 spring migration stopovers, more than smaller species, which tend to obtain nutrients  
2 necessary for breeding while on the breeding ground (Arzel, Elmberg, and Guillemain,  
3 2006) although the explicit resolution of this concept needs to be quantified on a species-  
4 by-species basis. Warming-induced changes in the timing of forage availability on spring  
5 migration routes may cause redistribution of waterfowl or dietary shifts as they attempt to  
6 maximize the results of their strategic feeding prior to breeding. Increased understanding  
7 of the relative value of spring migration staging areas to reproductive success and annual  
8 population dynamics of different waterfowl species is a critical need in order to adapt  
9 management strategies to a changing climate.

#### 10 **A3.1.4.2 Implications for Migrants**

11 Climate change adds temporal and spatial uncertainty to the problems associated with  
12 accessing resources necessary to meet energy requirements for migration and  
13 reproduction. Because birds are vagile, the primary near-term expected response to  
14 climate change is redistribution as birds seek to maintain energy balance.

15  
16 Lengthened ice-free periods may result in earlier arrival on breeding grounds, delayed  
17 migration (*e.g.*, trumpeter swans and greater sandhill cranes), and wintering farther north  
18 (*e.g.*, white-fronted geese) among other phenomena. Warmer conditions that result in  
19 lake drying may result in birds over-flying normal breeding areas to areas farther north  
20 (*e.g.*, pintail ducks). Warmer temperatures may reduce water levels but increase nutrient  
21 levels in warmed lakes. Community composition of the invertebrate food base may  
22 change and life cycles of invertebrates may be shortened; amphipods may be disfavored  
23 and zooplankton favored with differential implications for birds with different feeding  
24 strategies. Changes in hydrologic periods may cause nest flooding or make nesting  
25 habitats that are normally isolated by floodwater accessible to predators. Either effect  
26 may alter nest and nesting hen survival.

27  
28 The primary challenge to migratory waterfowl, and all other trust species for that matter,  
29 is that the spatial timing of resource availability may become decoupled from need. For  
30 example, late nesters such as lesser scaup may be hampered by pulsed resources that  
31 appear before nesting. Other species such as trumpeter swans may benefit from increased  
32 ice-free periods that enhance the potential to fledge young and provision them on  
33 southward migrations. Earlier and longer spring staging periods may benefit energetic  
34 status of migrating sandhill cranes. Harvest may shift northward as birds delay fall  
35 migrations.

36  
37 Alaska and the Central Flyway (see Fig. A3.1) encompass substantial spatial variation in  
38 documented (see Fig. 5.3 in the National Wildlife Refuges chapter) and expected climate  
39 warming. This spatial variation in warming is superimposed on the variable demands of  
40 spatially distinct seasonal life history events (*e.g.*, nesting, staging, wintering) of  
41 migrants. Variance in success in any life history stage may affect waterfowl performance  
42 in subsequent stages at remote locations, as well as the long-term abundance and  
43 distribution of migrants. Performance of migrants at one location in one life history stage  
44 may be affected by climate in a different life history stage at a different location. The  
45 superimposition of spatially variable warming on spatially separated life history events  
46 creates substantial complexity in both documenting and developing an understanding of

1 the potential effects of climate warming on major trust species of the NWRS. This  
2 unresolved complexity does offer a vehicle to focus on the interconnection of spatially  
3 separated units of the system and to foster a national and international vision of a  
4 management strategy for accommodating net climate warming effects on system trust  
5 species.

### 6 **A3.1.5 Management Option Considerations**

#### 7 **A3.1.5.1 Response Levels**

8 Response to climate change challenges must occur at multiple integrated scales within the  
9 NWRS and among partner entities. Individual symptomatic challenges of climate change  
10 must be addressed at the refuge level, while NWRS planning is the most appropriate level  
11 for addressing systemic challenges to the system. Flyway Councils, if they can be  
12 encouraged to include a regular focus on climate change, may provide an essential mid-  
13 level integration mechanism. Regardless of the level of response, the immediate focus  
14 needs to be on what can be done.

#### 15 **A3.1.5.2 Necessary Management Tools**

16 Foremost among necessary management tools are formal mechanisms to increase inter-  
17 agency communication and long-term national level planning. This could be  
18 accomplished through the establishment of an interagency public lands council or other  
19 entity that facilitates collaboration among federal land management agencies, NGOs, and  
20 private stakeholders. Institutional insularity of agencies and stakeholders at national and  
21 regional levels needs to be eliminated. The council should foster intra- and inter-agency  
22 climate change communication networks, because *ad hoc* communication within or  
23 among agencies is inadequate. Explicit outreach, partnerships and collaborations should  
24 be identified and target dates for their implementations drafted. In addition, the council  
25 should develop and implement national and regional coordination mechanisms and devise  
26 mechanisms for integrating potential climate effects into management decisions. The  
27 council needs to increase effective communication among wildlife, habitat, and climate  
28 specialists.

29  
30 Within the NWRS there needs to be adequate support to insure the development of an  
31 increased capacity to rigorously model possible future conditions, and explicit  
32 recognition that spatial variation in climate has differential effects on life cycle stages of  
33 migrants; performance in one region may be affected by conditions outside a region.  
34 Enhanced ability to assist migratory trust species when “off-refuge” and enhanced ability  
35 to facilitate desirable range expansions within and across jurisdictions are needed.

36  
37 Comprehensive Plans and Biological Reviews need to routinely address expected effects  
38 of climate change and identify potential mechanisms for adaptation to these challenges.  
39 The ability to effectively employ plans and reviews as focus mechanisms for potential  
40 climate change effects will be enhanced by institutionalization of climate change in job  
41 descriptions and increased training for refuge personnel.

#### 42 **A3.1.5.3 Barriers to Adaptation**

1 The primary barriers to adaptation include the lack of a spatially explicit understanding of  
2 the heterogeneity and degree of uncertainty in effects of changing climate on seasonal  
3 habitats of trust species—breeding, staging and wintering—and their implications for  
4 populations. Currently there is concern about effects of climate change on trust species,  
5 but insufficient information on which to act. This lack of understanding hampers the  
6 development of an explicit national vision of potential net effects of climate change on  
7 migrants. In addition, the lack of a secure network of protected staging areas, similar to  
8 the established network of breeding and wintering areas, limits the ability of the NWRS  
9 to provide adequate security for migratory trust species in a changing climate. More  
10 efficient use of all types of resources will be needed to minimize these national-level  
11 barriers to adaptation of the NWRS to climate change.

#### 12 **A3.1.5.4 Opportunities for Adaptation**

13 One of the greatest opportunities may lie in creating an institutional culture  
14 that rewards employees for being proactive catalysts for adaptation. This would require  
15 the acceptance of some degree of failure due to the uncertain nature of the magnitude and  
16 direction of climate change effects on habitats and populations. In addition, managers and  
17 their constituencies could be energized to mount successful adaptation to climate change  
18 by emphasizing the previous successful adaptations by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
19 (USFWS) to the first three management crises of market hunting, dust bowl habitat  
20 alteration, and threatened and endangered species management.

21  
22 The capacity to provide more rigorous projections of possible future states will require  
23 the creative design of inventory and monitoring programs that enhance detection of  
24 climate change effects, particularly changing distributions of migratory trust species.  
25 Monitoring programs that establish baseline data regarding the synergy of climate change  
26 and other stressors (*e.g.*, contaminants, habitat fragmentation) will especially be needed.  
27 These monitoring programs will need to be coordinated with private, NGO and state and  
28 federal agency partners.

29  
30 In stakeholder meetings, refuge biologists were emphatic that they needed more  
31 biological information in order to clearly define and to take preemptive management  
32 actions in anticipation of climate change. Thus, effective adaptation to climate change  
33 will require education, training and long-term research-management partnerships that are  
34 focused on adaptive responses to climate change. The following strategy is proposed for  
35 the activities of such a research-management partnership:

- 36
- 37 • Synthesize extant biological information relevant to biotic responses to climate  
38 change;
  - 39 • Educate and train refuge managers and other staff regarding climate change, its  
40 potential ecological effects, and the changes in management and planning that  
41 may be necessary;
  - 42 • Evaluate possible management and policy responses to alternative climate change  
43 scenarios in multiple regional and national workshops;
  - 44 • Conduct workshops involving managers, researchers and stakeholders to identify  
45 research questions relevant to managing species in the face of climate change;

- 1 • Conduct research on questions relevant to managing species in the face of climate  
2 change. This may require the development of tools that are useful for identifying  
3 the range of responses that are likely;
- 4 • Apply management actions in response to biotic responses that emerge as likely  
5 from such research; and
- 6 • Evaluate of the effectiveness of management actions and modification of  
7 management actions in the spirit of adaptive management.

8  
9 Synthesis workshops should be held every few years to identify what has been learned  
10 and to redefine questions relevant to the management of species that depend on the  
11 NWRS.

12  
13 There are a number of examples of recent climate-change-related challenges and  
14 potential and implemented adaptations in Alaska and the Central Flyway:

15  
16 Potential adaptations:

- 17 • The development of a robust understanding of the relative contribution of various  
18 NWRS components to waterfowl performance in a warming climate is an  
19 immediate challenge. There is a clear research need to elucidate the relative  
20 contribution of staging and breeding areas to energetics and reproductive  
21 performance of waterfowl, and to clarify the interdependence of NWRS elements  
22 and their contributions to waterfowl demography. A flyway-scale perspective is  
23 necessary to understand the importance of migratory staging areas and to assess  
24 the relative importance of endogenous/exogenous energetics to reproduction and  
25 survival. These studies should address, in the explicit context of climate warming,  
26 strategic feeding by waterfowl, temporal shifts in diets, and the spatial and  
27 temporal implications of climate induced changes in the availability of various  
28 natural and agricultural foods (Arzel, Elmberg, and Guillemain, 2006).
- 29  
30 • Providing adequate spatial and temporal distribution of migratory foraging  
31 opportunities is a chronic challenge to the NWRS. Spring staging areas are under-  
32 represented and this problem is likely to be exacerbated by a warming climate. It  
33 will be necessary to strengthen and clarify existing partnerships with private,  
34 NGO, and state and federal entities and to identify and develop new partnerships  
35 throughout the NWRS in order to provide a system of staging areas that are  
36 extensive and resilient enough to provide security for migratory trust species.  
37 Strategic system growth through fee-simple and conservation easement  
38 acquisition will be a necessary component of successful adaptation.

39  
40 Implemented adaptations:

- 41 • Indigenous communities on the Aleutian Island chain (Alaska Maritime NWR)  
42 are concerned about the potential effects of increased shipping traffic in new  
43 routes that may become accessible in a more ice-free Arctic Ocean. Previous  
44 introductions of non-endemic species to islands have had severe negative effects  
45 on nesting Aleutian Canada geese. The ecosystem management mandate of the  
46 refuge facilitates a leadership role for the refuge that has been implemented

- 1 through 1) development of monitoring partnerships that are designed to detect the  
2 appearance of invasive species and of contaminants, and 2) initiation of timely  
3 prevention/mitigation programs.  
4
- 5 • Indigenous peoples that depend on Interior Alaska NWRs are concerned about the  
6 potential effects of climate-induced lake drying and changing snow conditions on  
7 their seasonal access to subsistence resources, and on the availability of waterfowl  
8 for subsistence harvest. The refuges have promoted enhanced capacity for  
9 projecting possible future conditions, and have educated users regarding observed  
10 and expected changes while clarifying conflicting information on the magnitude  
11 and extent of observed changes in lake number and area and in snow conditions.  
12
  - 13 • Warming-induced advances in the timing of ice-out can bias waterfowl population  
14 indices that are derived from traditional fixed-date surveys. The Office of  
15 Migratory Bird Management has developed quantitative models to project the  
16 arrival date of migrants based on weather and other records. This allows the office  
17 to dynamically adjust survey timing to match changing arrival dates and thereby  
18 reduce bias in population indices.

## 19 **A4 Wild and Scenic Rivers Case Studies**

20 As emphasized throughout the Wild and Scenic Rivers (WSR) chapter, the effects of  
21 climate change on rivers will vary greatly throughout the United States depending on  
22 local geology, climate, land use, and a host of other factors. To illustrate the general  
23 “categories” of effects, we have selected three WSRs to highlight in the following case  
24 studies (Box A4.1). We selected these rivers because they span the range of some of the  
25 most obvious issues that managers will need to grapple with as they develop plans for  
26 protecting natural resources in the face of climate change. Rivers in the Southwest, such  
27 as the Rio Grande, will experience more severe droughts at a time when pressures for  
28 water extraction for growing populations are increasing. Rivers near coastal areas, such  
29 as the Wekiva, face potential impacts from sea level rise. A combination of groundwater  
30 withdrawals and sea level rise may lead to increases in salinity in the springs that feed  
31 this river. Rivers that are expected to experience both temperature increases and an  
32 increased frequency of flooding, such as the Upper Delaware, will need proactive  
33 management to prevent loss or damage to ecosystem services.  
34

35 There are also key outstandingly remarkable values that the WSR program focuses on.  
36 One of those areas is anadromous fish. Box A4.2 provides an overview of potential  
37 climate change impacts to anadromous fish and offers management actions that may be  
38 taken to lessen those impacts.

### 39 **A4.1 Wekiva River**

40 The Wekiva River Basin, located north of Orlando, in east-central Florida, is a complex  
41 ecological system of streams, springs, seepage areas, lakes, sinkholes, wetland prairies,  
42 swamps, hardwood hammocks, pine flatwoods, and sand pine scrub communities.  
43 Several streams in the basin run crystal clear due to being spring-fed by the Floridan

1 aquifer. Others are “blackwater” streams that receive most of their flow from  
2 precipitation, resulting in annual rainy season over-bank flows. (Fig. A4.1)

3  
4  
5  
6 **Figure A4.1.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Wekiva River. Data from USGS,  
7 National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

8  
9 In 2000, portions of the Wekiva River and its tributaries of Rock Springs Run, Wekiwa<sup>21</sup>  
10 Springs Run, and Black Water Creek were added to the National Wild and Scenic Rivers  
11 System. The designated segments total 66.9 km, including 50.5 km designated as Wild,  
12 3.4 miles as Scenic, and 13 km as Recreational. The National Park Service (NPS) has  
13 overall coordinating responsibility for the Wekiva River WSR, but there are no federal  
14 lands in the protected river corridor. Approximately 60%–70% of the 0.8-km-wide WSR  
15 corridor is in public ownership, primarily managed by the State of Florida Department of  
16 Environmental Protection and the St. Johns River Water Management District  
17 (SJRWMD). The long-term protection, preservation, and enhancement are provided  
18 through cooperation among the State of Florida, local political jurisdictions, landowners,  
19 and private organizations. The designated waterways that flow through publicly owned  
20 lands are managed by the agencies that have jurisdiction over the lands. SJRWMD has  
21 significant regulatory authority to manage surface and ground water resources throughout  
22 the Wekiva Basin.

23  
24 One of the main tributaries to the Wekiva River is the Little Wekiva River. Running  
25 through the highly developed Orlando area, the Little Wekiva is the most heavily  
26 urbanized stream in the Wekiva River Basin, and consequently the most heavily affected.  
27 The Orlando metropolitan area has experienced rapid growth in the last two decades, and  
28 an estimated 1.3 million people now live within a 20-mile radius of the Wekiva River.

29  
30 The sections of the Wekiva River and its tributaries that are designated as WSR are  
31 generally in superb ecological condition. The basin supports plant and animal species that  
32 are endangered, threatened, or of special concern, including the American Alligator, the  
33 Bald Eagle, the Wood Stork, the West Indian Manatee, and two invertebrates endemic to  
34 the Wekiva River, the Wekiwa hydrobe and the Wekiwa siltsnail. At the location of the  
35 U.S. Geological Survey’s gauging station on the Wekiva River near Sanford, the drainage  
36 area of the basin is 489 square km. Elevations for the basin range from 1.5–53 m above  
37 sea level. The climate is subtropical, with an average annual temperature of around 22°C.  
38 Mean annual rainfall over the Wekiva basin is 132 cm, most of which occurs during the  
39 June–October rainy season.

40  

---

<sup>20</sup> **U.S. Geological Survey**, 2005: Federal land features of the United States - parkways and scenic rivers. *Federal Land Features of the United States*. <http://www-atlas.usgs.gov/mld/fedlanl.html>. Available from [nationalatlas.gov](http://nationalatlas.gov).

<sup>21</sup> The term “Wekiwa” refers to the spring itself, from the Creek/Seminole “spring of water” or “bubbling water.” “Wekiva” refers to the river, from the Creek/Seminole “flowing water.”

1 The WSR management plan is being prepared with the leadership of the NPS. Based on  
2 information from the pre-legislation WSR study report,<sup>22</sup> and management plans for the  
3 state parks (Florida Department of Environmental Protection, 2005) and the SJRWMD  
4 (2006a), the priority management objectives for the WSR will likely include maintaining  
5 or improving: water quantity and quality in the springs, streams, and river; native aquatic  
6 and riparian ecosystems; viable populations of endangered and sensitive species; scenic  
7 values; and access and service for recreational users.

8  
9 The Wekiva River was selected for a case study because it provides an example of a  
10 spring-fed WSR system, sub-tropical ecosystems, a coastal location with a history of  
11 tropical storms and hurricanes, and a system in a watershed dealing directly with large  
12 and expanding urban and suburban populations. In particular, the spring-fed systems  
13 combined with urban and suburban land uses require consideration of the relationship  
14 between groundwater and surface water and how they relate to management options in  
15 the context of climate change.

#### 16 **A4.1.1 Current Stressors and Management Methods Used to Address Them**

17 The primary stressors of the Wekiva WSR are:

- 18
- 19 • water extraction for public, recreational and agricultural uses;
- 20 • land conversion to urban and suburban development;
- 21 • pollution, particularly nitrates, via groundwater pathways and surface water
- 22 runoff; and
- 23 • invasive species.
- 24

25 The Floridan aquifer has a naturally high potentiometric surface (*i.e.*, the level that water  
26 will rise in an artesian well), which sustains the natural springs that are critical to the  
27 water regime of the Wekiva WSR. McGurk and Presley<sup>23</sup> cite numerous studies that  
28 show the long history of water extraction in East Central Florida and related these  
29 extractions to lowering of the potentiometric surface. Taking advantage of the high  
30 potentiometric surface, in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century more than two thousands  
31 artesian (free-flowing) wells were drilled into the Upper Floridan aquifer, the water used  
32 to irrigate agriculture fields and the excess allowed to flow into the streams and rivers.  
33 Many of the artesian wells have since been plugged and otherwise regulated to reduce  
34 such squandering of the water resources.

35  
36 Between 1970 and 1995, agricultural and recreational water use from the aquifer has  
37 increased nearly three fold to 958 million gallons per day (mgpd), with a significant part  
38 of the additional water supporting recreational uses (*i.e.*, golf courses). Over that same  
39 period, public (*e.g.*, city) use of water from the aquifer also increased threefold to 321

---

<sup>22</sup> **National Park Service**, 1999: *Wekiva River, Rock Spring Run & Seminole Creek Wild and Scenic River Study*. U.S. Department of Interior, pp.1-49.

<sup>23</sup> **McGurk**, B.E. and P.F. Presley, 2002: *Simulation of the Effects of Groundwater Withdrawals on the Floridan Aquifer System in East-Central Florida: Model Expansion and Revision*. St. Johns River Water Management District, pp.1-196.



1 mgpd. Projections for the year 2020 are for water extraction for agricultural and  
2 recreational uses to barely increase, while extractions for public use will nearly double.<sup>23</sup>  
3 The St. Johns River, Southwest Florida, and South Florida Water Management Districts  
4 have jointly determined that the Floridan Aquifer will be at maximum sustainable yield  
5 by 2013, and by that date and into the future much of the water used by people will have  
6 to come from alternative sources.

7  
8 Urban development prior to modern stormwater management controls is another stressor  
9 on aquatic systems in the Wekiva Basin. In particular, the Little Wekiva River exhibits  
10 extreme erosion and sedimentation caused by high flows and velocities during major  
11 storm events (St. Johns River Water Management District, 2002). Approximately 479  
12 drainage wells were completed in the Orlando area to control stormwater and control lake  
13 levels.<sup>23</sup> These drainage wells recharge the Floridan aquifer.

14  
15 Declines in spring flows in the Wekiva River Basin are strongly correlated with urban  
16 development and ground water extraction (Florida Department of Environmental  
17 Protection, 2005). Projections based on current practices indicate that by 2020 water  
18 demand will surpass supply and recharge. By 2010, spring flows may decline to levels  
19 that will cause irreparable harm (Florida Department of Environmental Protection, 2005).  
20 In response to these projections, the SJRWMD has declared the central Florida region,  
21 which includes the Wekiva River Watershed, a “Priority Water Resource Caution Area”  
22 where measures are needed to protect ground water supplies and spring-dependent  
23 ecosystems. SJRWMD has developed “Minimum Flows and Levels” (a.k.a., instream  
24 flow criteria) for the Wekiva River and Blackwater Creek, and the district has identified  
25 minimum spring flows in selected major springs feeding the Wekiva and Rock Springs  
26 Run. These are an important regulatory tool to set limits on ground water withdrawals to  
27 prevent adverse reductions in spring flow.

28  
29 The water management district recommends the following strategies for improving water  
30 management (St. Johns River Water Management District, 2006b):

- 31
- 32 • water conservation;
  - 33 • use of reclaimed water; and
  - 34 • water resource development, including:
    - 35 ○ artificial aquifer recharge
    - 36 ○ aquifer storage and recovery
    - 37 ○ avoidance of impacts through hydration
    - 38 ○ interconnectivity of water systems.
- 39

40 The SJRWMD, counties, and cities in the watershed are working on local water resources  
41 plans and an integrated basin-wide water plan that will guide water use and conservation  
42 land use changes for the coming decades.<sup>24</sup>

43

---

<sup>24</sup> **Florida Department of Community Affairs**, 2005: *Guidelines for Preparing Comprehensive Plan Amendments for the Wekiva Study Area Pursuant to the Wekiva Parkway and Protection Act*. pp.1-50.

1 Water pollution is another significant stressor of the Wekiva WSR. The causes of water  
2 pollution are closely related to the water quantity issues discussed above. In particular,  
3 unusually high concentrations of nitrates emanating from the springs of the basin are  
4 stressing the native ecosystems in the spring runs. Nitrates promote algal blooms that  
5 deplete oxygen, shade-out native species, and may negatively affect invertebrate and fish  
6 habitat. Nitrates in spring water now may reflect more distant past inputs from  
7 agricultural operations and septic systems. The sources of the nitrogen in the springs are  
8 animal waste, sewage, and fertilizers (Florida Department of Environmental Protection,  
9 2005), which readily leach to groundwater due to the karstic geology of the basin. Future  
10 spring discharges may reflect a newer type of input from reclaimed water application for  
11 both landscape irrigation and for direct recharge via rapid infiltration basins that have  
12 increased significantly within the past 10–15 years and continue to increase. The  
13 management solutions to reduce nitrate pollution include educating the public to use  
14 fewer chemicals and apply these with greater care, development and application of  
15 agricultural best management practices, and increasing the use of central sewage  
16 treatment facilities in place of on-site systems such as septic tanks.

17  
18 Recent data suggest that increases in dissolved chlorides in the springwaters may be  
19 related to sea level rise and groundwater withdrawals (Florida Department of  
20 Environmental Protection, 2005). To date, salinity changes in the Wekiva Basin springs  
21 are minor and the causes are unclear. Major increases in the salinity (increased chlorides)  
22 in the springwater would have significant impacts on the ecosystems of the WSR.  
23 Continued monitoring and further research are needed to determine the source of the  
24 chlorides (*e.g.*, recharge from polluted surface water or mixing with saltwater from below  
25 the Upper Floridan aquifer) and how to manage land and water to limit chlorides in the  
26 springflows.

27  
28 Exotic plants are a major problem stressing ecosystems in the Wekiva WSR corridor. For  
29 example, wild taro (*Colocasia esculentum*) has infested Rock Springs Run and the lagoon  
30 area of Wekiwa Springs has hydrilla (*Hydrilla verticillata*), water hyacinth (*Eichhornia*  
31 *carssipes*), and water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes*). The park managers use a combination of  
32 herbicides and manual labor to control invasive plant species (Florida Department of  
33 Environmental Protection, 2005).

34  
35 Drought-related stress in upland areas has increased the vulnerability of trees to pest  
36 species, the Southern pine beetle (*Dendroctonus frontalis*) in particular. Infestations have  
37 prompted park managers to clear-cut infested stands and buffers to limit the spread of the  
38 beetles. Without these interventions, dead trees would contribute significant fuel,  
39 increasing the potential for destructive forest fires.

1 **A4.1.2 Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems and Current Management**  
2 **Practices**

3 For Central Florida, climate change models project average temperatures rising by  
4 perhaps 2.2–2.8°C and annual rainfall to total about the same as it does today.<sup>25</sup>  
5 However, the late summer and fall rainy season may see more frequent tropical storms  
6 and hurricanes, overwhelming the current stormwater management infrastructure and  
7 resulting in periodic surges of surface water with significant pollution and sedimentation  
8 loads. More runoff also means less recharge of the aquifer.

9  
10 At other times of the year, droughts may be more frequent and of longer duration, leading  
11 to water shortages and increased withdrawals from the aquifer, which may reduce spring  
12 flows.

13  
14 While there is only moderate confidence in projections of changes in patterns of  
15 precipitation, there is a high confidence that it will get warmer. Warmer temperatures  
16 over an extended period will change species composition in the WSR corridor. Some  
17 native species, particularly those with limited ranges, may no longer find suitable habitat,  
18 while invasive exotics, which often tolerate a broad range of conditions, would thrive.  
19 Current programs to control invasive species would face new challenges as some native  
20 species are lost and replaced by species that favor the warmer climate, particularly for  
21 terrestrial species. Where the cold spring waters can moderate water temperature in the  
22 streams and river, the current control programs for aquatic invasive species may still be  
23 successful in a moderately warmer climate. Warmer temperatures would also lead to  
24 increased evaporation and transpiration, which in turn may lead to more water used for  
25 irrigation; all of these factors combine to further reduce water available for ecosystems in  
26 the WSR. The warmer climate may also reduce or eliminate frost events that currently  
27 determine the range for some species in central Florida.

28  
29 Climate change scenarios project sea level rising between 0.18–0.59 m by 2099 (IPCC,  
30 2007b). There are two issues related to potential sea level rise relative to the Wekiva  
31 WSR: 1) how would changes in the tidal reach of the St. Johns River affect the Wekiva,  
32 and 2) how might the rising sea level affect the aquifer that supports the springflows?  
33 There are too few data available to answer these questions.

34  
35 Finally, projected population increases in the Wekiva Basin and associated aquifer  
36 recharge area will add to the burden of managing for climate change impacts on water  
37 resources. Suburban expansion increases impermeable surfaces, thereby adding to  
38 polluted surface water runoff and reducing aquifer recharge. And groundwater will  
39 continue to be extracted for the public and recreational uses.

---

<sup>25</sup> **University of Arizona**, Environmental Studies Laboratory, 2007: Climate change projections for the United States. University of Arizona, <http://www.geo.arizona.edu/dgesl/>, accessed on 5-17-2007.

1 **A4.1.3 Potential for Altering/Supplementing Current Management to Enable Adaptation**  
2 **to Climate Change**

3 Future management adaptations for meeting ecosystem goals in the Wekiva WSR should  
4 include monitoring ecosystem health, including water quantity and quality; basin-wide  
5 modeling to protect future management needs; and implementation of management  
6 programs in advance of climatic changes. The water management district and other land  
7 management agencies have robust monitoring programs, though they may not be  
8 adequate to understand the complexity of applying reclaimed surface water in a the karst  
9 uplands. Current groundwater monitoring, which focuses on salinity, may need to be  
10 expanded to better understand how nitrates and other nutrients are transported to the  
11 springflows. Increasingly refined models are needed to understand how water and  
12 ecosystems in the Wekiva Basin respond to management.

13  
14 In many ways, it appears that the SJRWMD and local government agencies are beginning  
15 to implement management programs that would be needed to maintain ecological  
16 processes in the Wekiva WSR in a climate change scenario. Aquifer management is  
17 widely recognized as among the most critical tools for ensuring public water supplies and  
18 ecological integrity of the Wekiva WSR. Most of the drinking water in and around the  
19 Wekiva Basin is extracted from the Floridan aquifer—the same water source for the  
20 springflows that are essential to ecosystems of the Wekiva WSR. The Floridan aquifer is  
21 a water reservoir that can be managed in ways analogous to a reservoir behind a dam.  
22 Like a dam, with each rain event, to the extent permitted by surface conditions, the  
23 aquifer is recharged; water otherwise runs into streams and rivers, effectively lost for  
24 most public uses and often negatively affecting riverine ecosystems. Different from a  
25 dam, aquifer recharge and replenishment operate in a delayed time frame. This  
26 characteristic makes reversal of any mitigation measures a slow process, and should be  
27 considered in adaptation planning for global climate changes. Recognizing these  
28 conditions, programs and plans are in place to minimize surface runoff and maximize  
29 groundwater recharge. Programs include, for example, minimizing impermeable surfaces  
30 (*e.g.*, roofs, driveways, and roads), and holding surface water in water gardens and  
31 artificial ponds.

32  
33 Recharge water must be of sufficiently good quality in order to not adversely affect the  
34 WSR system. Current stormwater management programs, while quite good, are focused  
35 on capturing surface water runoff to prevent it from degrading water quality, but this then  
36 “re-routes” poor-quality water from a surface water load to a ground water load. The  
37 sandy soils and karst geology of the area may result in nitrate-loaded water recharged to  
38 the aquifer and then to the springs. There is a great deal to learn about the ultimate effects  
39 on groundwater quality of applying reclaimed water to land surface in the karstic uplands.

40  
41 While the human population in the Wekiva Basin is expected to grow, climate change  
42 models suggest that annual rainfall will remain about the same over the next 100 years,  
43 presenting a challenge for meeting water demand. In response, programs in the basin are  
44 under development to conserve water (reduce water use per person) and to develop  
45 “new” water sources (hold and use more surface water). Similarly, programs are also  
46 being planned and implemented to reduce pollution, including educating the public and

1 commercial users about what, when, and how to apply chemicals, including nitrate-based  
2 fertilizers.

3  
4 Management adaptations to more intense rain events under climate change conditions  
5 would require more aggressive implementation of all these programs, to: maximize  
6 recharge of the aquifer during rain events, minimize withdrawals at all times and  
7 particularly during droughts, minimize pollution of surface water and groundwater, and  
8 monitor and prevent salt water intrusion in the surface water-groundwater-seawater  
9 balance system. Considering the importance of water to local residents and as a factor  
10 driving economic development, there is considerable political will to invest in water  
11 management technologies and programs in the Wekiva Basin. Through this century,  
12 current and emerging technologies will likely be adequate for meeting the water needs for  
13 human consumption and ecosystem services in the Wekiva Basin, if people are willing to  
14 make the investment in technologies and engineering and to allocate enough water to  
15 maintain ecosystems.

#### 16 **A4.2 Rio Grande**

17 The Rio Grande, the second largest river in the American Southwest, rises in the snow-  
18 capped mountains of southern Colorado, flows south through the San Luis Valley,  
19 crosses into New Mexico and then flows south through Albuquerque and Las Cruces to  
20 El Paso, Texas, on the U.S.-Mexican border (see Figs. A4.2 and A4.3). A major tributary,  
21 the Rio Conchos, flows out of Mexico to join the Rio Grande below El Paso at Presidio  
22 and supplies most of the river's flow for the 1,254 miles of river corridor along the  
23 Texas-Mexico border. Since 1845, the Rio Grande has marked the boundary between  
24 Mexico and the United States from the twin border cities of Ciudad Juárez and El Paso to  
25 the Gulf of Mexico.

26  
27  
28  
29 **Figure A4.2.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Rio Grande WSR in New  
30 Mexico. Data from USGS, National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

31  
32  
33  
34 **Figure A4.3.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Rio Grande WSR in Texas. Data  
35 from USGS, National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

36  
37 Three different segments of the Rio Grande that total 259.6 miles of stream have been  
38 designated as Wild, Scenic, and Recreational. Part of the 68.2-mile segment of the river  
39 south of the Colorado-New Mexico border was among the original eight river corridors  
40 designated as wild and scenic at the time of the system's creation in 1968. A total of 53.2  
41 miles of this reach are designated as wild, passing through 800-foot chasms of the Rio  
42 Grande Gorge with limited development. This segment is administered by the Bureau of

1 Land Management (BLM) and the U.S. Forest Service (USFS).<sup>26</sup> About 97% of the land  
2 in the New Mexico WSR management zones is owned and managed by BLM or the  
3 USFS.

4  
5 The longest segment of the Rio Grande WSR comprises 195.7 river miles in Texas  
6 (National Park Service, 2004) along the U.S.-Mexico border, with about half of this  
7 stretch classified as wild and half as scenic. This stretch, which was added to the system  
8 in 1978, is administered by the NPS at Big Bend National Park for the purpose of  
9 protecting the “outstanding remarkable” scenic, geologic, fish and wildlife, and  
10 recreational values (National Park Service, 2004). Land ownership is evenly divided  
11 between private and public (federal and state) owners on the United States side of the  
12 designated river segment.

13  
14 In New Mexico, objectives for managing the WSR include (Bureau of Land  
15 Management, 2000):

- 16 • maintain water quality objectives designated by the New Mexico Environment  
17 Department;
- 18 • conserve or enhance riparian vegetation;
- 19 • preserve scenic qualities;
- 20 • provide for recreational access, including boating and fishing; and
- 21 • protect habitat for native species, particular federally listed species.

22  
23 In Texas, the resource management goals for the wild and scenic river include (National  
24 Park Service, 2004):

- 25 • preserve the river in its natural, free-flowing character;
- 26 • conserve or restore wildlife, scenery, natural sights and sounds;
- 27 • achieve protection of cultural resources;
- 28 • prevent adverse impacts on natural and cultural resources;
- 29 • advocate for scientifically determined suitable instream flow levels to support fish  
30 and wildlife populations, riparian communities and recreational opportunities; and
- 31 • maintain or improve water quality to federal and state standards.

32  
33 The Rio Grande WSR was selected for a case study because the distinct segments of the  
34 designated river provide examples of features typical of many rivers in the mountainous  
35 and arid Southwest. Attributes important to this paper include: significant federal and  
36 state ownership of the streamside in designated segments; an important influence of  
37 snowpack on river flow; complex water rights issues with a great deal of water being  
38 extracted upstream of the WSR; primary competition for water by agriculture; and an  
39 international component.

#### 40 **A4.2.1 Current Stressors and Management Methods Used to Address Them**

41 The primary stressors of the Rio Grande WSR include (Bureau of Land Management,  
42 2000; National Park Service, 2004; New Mexico Department of Game and Fish, 2006):

---

<sup>26</sup> **National Wild and Scenic Rivers System**, 2007: Homepage: National Wild and Scenic Rivers System. National Wild and Scenic Rivers System Website, <http://www.rivers.gov>, accessed on 5-30-2007.

- 1 • altered hydrology: impoundment, reservoir management and water extraction  
2 have led to flow reductions and changes in flow regime (loss of natural flood and  
3 drought cycle) and concomitant changes in the sediment regime and channel  
4 narrowing;
- 5 • altered land use: land and water use for agriculture, mining operations, and cities  
6 is leading to declines in water quality due to pollution and sedimentations;
- 7 • invasive species: non-native fish and vegetation are altering ecosystems,  
8 displacing native species and reducing biodiversity, giant reed and saltcedar are  
9 particularly problematic in the Texas WSR segment; and
- 10 • recreational users: visitors and associated infrastructure impact the riparian  
11 vegetation and protected species; subdivision and building on private lands along  
12 the Texas and Mexico segments threatens scenic values and may increase  
13 recreational users' impacts.

14  
15 All segments of the Rio Grande that are designated as WSR face complex management  
16 challenges and multiple stressors on river health, most notably from dams, diversions and  
17 other water projects that dot the river and its tributaries, reducing and altering natural  
18 flows for much of the river's length. (Fig. A4.4) Although there are no dams on the main  
19 stem of the river upstream of the New Mexico WSR corridor, dams and other water  
20 projects on major tributaries affect flows downstream. For example, two Bureau of  
21 Reclamation projects in Colorado—the Closed Basin (groundwater) Project and the  
22 Platoro Dam and Reservoir on the Conejos River—influence downstream flows into New  
23 Mexico. Flow regime of the WSR in New Mexico is largely managed by the Bureau of  
24 Reclamation, which manages upstream dam and diversion projects based on a century of  
25 water rights claims and seasonal fluctuations in available water. The water rights and  
26 dams are considered integral to the baseline condition for the WSR, as they were in place  
27 prior to the river's designation.

28  
29  
30  
31 **Figure A4.4.** Dams and diversions along the Rio Grande.<sup>27</sup>

32  
33 Downstream from El Paso, Texas, the channel of the Rio Grande is effectively dry from  
34 diversion for about 80 miles. Because of this “lost reach,” the river is more like two  
35 separate rivers than one, with management of the Colorado and New Mexico portion  
36 having little effect on flows downstream of El Paso. In the past, the river in Colorado and  
37 New Mexico normally received annual spring floods from the melting snowpack while  
38 the river below Presidio, Texas received additional flood events in the summer through  
39 fall from rains in the Rio Conchos Basin, Mexico. However, throughout the Rio Grande  
40 these natural cycles of annual floods have been severely disrupted by dams and water  
41 extraction.

42  

---

<sup>27</sup> **Middle Rio Grande Bosque Initiative**, 2007: Dams and diversions of the Middle Rio Grande. Middle Rio Grande Bosque Initiative Website, <http://www.fws.gov/southwest/mrgbi/Resources/Dams/index.html>, accessed on 5-17-2007.

1 Management of the Texas Rio Grande WSR still depends on flows entering from  
2 Mexico—including the Rio Conchos, which provides 85% of the water to this WSR  
3 segment—and which is managed by the International Boundary and Water Commission  
4 according to the Rio Grande Compact. Instream flows in Texas segments of the WSR  
5 have decreased 50% in the past 20 years (National Park Service, 2004). During drought  
6 years of the late 1990s and into 2004, Mexico did not meet its obligations to the United  
7 States under the compact and water levels reached critical lows (Woodhouse, 2005). In  
8 2003, the combination of dams, water extraction and drought were particularly hard on  
9 the river, flow essentially ceased, the river became a series of pools in Texas WSR  
10 segments and the river failed to reach the ocean.<sup>28</sup>

11  
12 Inefficient regulation of groundwater contributes to these impacts on the river’s flow. The  
13 primary source of household water in central New Mexico is groundwater, for which the  
14 rate of extraction currently exceeds recharge.<sup>29</sup> Aquifers in the region may not be able to  
15 meet demand in twenty years, which will further stress an overburdened surface water  
16 resource.

17  
18 Changes in the flow regime of the river are affecting the channel, the floodplain, and the  
19 associated aquatic and riparian ecosystems. In the past 90 years, overall stream flow has  
20 been reduced more than 50%, and periodic flooding below Presidio has been reduced by  
21 49% (Schmidt, Everitt, and Richard, 2003). Dams in the lower Rio Grande prevent fish  
22 migrations so that Atlantic Sturgeon and American Eel no longer reach the WSR.<sup>30</sup>  
23 Where native species were dependent on or tolerant of the periodic floods, the new flow  
24 regime is apparently giving an edge to invasive, non-native species (National Park  
25 Service, 1996). Garrett and Edwards<sup>28</sup> suggest that changes in flow and sedimentation,  
26 pollution, simplification of channel morphology and substrates, and increased dominance  
27 of non-native plant species can explain recent changes in fish diversity and critical  
28 reductions and local extinctions of fish species. Giant reed (*Arundo donax*) and salt cedar  
29 (*Tamarix* sp.) are particularly problematic as these exotic species invade the channelized  
30 river and further disrupt normal sedimentation, thereby reducing habitats critical to fish  
31 diversity.<sup>28</sup> The problems of dams and irregular flows are complicated by local and  
32 international water rights issues, and the ecological health of WSR is only one of the  
33 many competing needs for limited water resources.

34  
35 To address pollution issues, BLM, USFS, and NPS managers have reduced pollution to  
36 the river from their operations by reducing or eliminating grazing and mining near the  
37 river, improving management of recreation sites, and increasing education and outreach.  
38 However, as with flow regime, most of the water quality problems are tied to decreases in

---

<sup>28</sup> Garrett, G.P. and R.J. Edwards, forthcoming: Changes in fish populations in the Lower Canyons of the Rio Grande. *Proceedings of the Sixth Symposium on Natural Resources of the Chihuahuan Desert Region, Chihuahuan Desert Research Institute.*

<sup>29</sup> New Mexico Office of State Engineer and Interstate Stream Commission, 2006: *The Impact of Climate Change on New Mexico's Water Supply and Ability to Manage Water Resources.* New Mexico Office of State Engineer/Interstate Stream Commission.

<sup>30</sup> National Park Service, 2007: Floating the lower canyons. National Park Service, [http://www.nps.gov/rigr/planyourvisit/lower\\_cyns.htm](http://www.nps.gov/rigr/planyourvisit/lower_cyns.htm), accessed on 4-14-2007.



1 water quantity and discharge from large-scale agricultural, industrial and urban upstream  
2 users.

3  
4 Federal land managers are making a difference where they can with site-level  
5 management. For example, riparian zones are being withdrawn from grazing and mineral  
6 leases and are being protected via limited access to sensitive sites and education of  
7 backcountry visitors about the values of protected streamside vegetation. Programs are  
8 also underway to control erosion in recreation areas and river access points and to  
9 improve habitat for protected species (Bureau of Land Management, 2000).

#### 10 **A4.2.2 Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems and Current Management** 11 **Practices**

12 According to Schmidt *et al.* (2003) the primary drivers of ecosystem change of the Rio  
13 Grande are:

- 14 • climatic changes that change runoff and influx of sedimentation;
- 15 • dam management and water extraction that lead to changes in flow regime (loss  
16 of natural flood and drought cycle) and sedimentation;
- 17 • changes to the physical structure of the channel and floodplain;
- 18 • introduction of exotic species; and
- 19 • ecosystem dynamics that cause species to replace other species over time.

20  
21 The American Southwest in general, including the Rio Grande watershed, seems likely to  
22 experience climate extremes in the form of higher temperature, reduced precipitation  
23 (including reduced snowpacks), earlier spring melts, and recurring droughts on top of  
24 population growth and other existing stressors.<sup>29</sup> While global climate models are  
25 inconclusive regarding changes in precipitation for this region, and for the Upper Rio  
26 Grande Basin in particular, it seems likely that the projected increase in temperature will  
27 result in evaporation rates that more than offset any possible increase in precipitation.<sup>29</sup> In  
28 this scenario, the New Mexico WSR segment of the Rio Grande might experience earlier  
29 spring floods, with reduced volume and more erratic summer rains.<sup>29</sup> Projections of  
30 perhaps 5% decrease in annual precipitation for the middle and lower Rio Grande (see  
31 Fig. 6.13 in the Wild and Scenic Rivers chapter) combined with higher temperatures (see  
32 Fig. 6.12 in the Wild and Scenic Rivers chapter) suggest that annual flows in the Texas  
33 WSR segment may be further reduced, and during severe droughts the water levels may  
34 decline to critical levels as has been the case in recent years (National Park Service,  
35 2004). Water quality may be further reduced as the shallower water is susceptible to  
36 increased warming due to higher temperatures driven by climate change (Poff, Brinson,  
37 and Day, Jr., 2002). These conditions would negatively affect many native species and  
38 may favor invasive non-native species, further complicating existing programs to manage  
39 for native riparian vegetation and riverine ecosystems (National Park Service, 2004).<sup>29</sup>

#### 40 **A4.2.3 Potential for Altering/Supplementing Current Management to Enable** 41 **Adaptation to Climate Change**

42 The incorporation of climate change impacts into the planning and management of the  
43 WSR corridors of the Rio Grande is complicated by the river's international character,

1 the numerous dams, diversions, and groundwater schemes that already affect its flow  
2 regime, and the multiple agencies involved in the river’s management within the WSR  
3 corridors as well as upstream and downstream. Sustaining the Rio Grande’s wild and  
4 scenic values under these circumstances will require planning, coordination, monitoring  
5 of hydrological trends, and scenario-based forecasting to help river managers anticipate  
6 trends and their ramifications. For example, given the probability of reduced snowpack in  
7 the headwaters of the Rio Grande, sustaining flows through the New Mexico WSR  
8 corridor will likely depend on coordination among the USFS and BLM, which administer  
9 this WSR stretch, the Bureau of Reclamation, which manages upstream water projects  
10 (both groundwater and surface water) that influence downstream flows, and owners of  
11 local and international water rights. Long standing water rights complications make it  
12 difficult to predict needed water releases to mimic natural flow regime. In this region,  
13 required water deliveries might be met by transferring water rights between watersheds or  
14 through credits for future water delivery.

15  
16 Similarly, the NPS, which administers the Rio Grande WSR corridor in Texas, needs to  
17 coordinate with the International Boundary and Water Commission to extract ecological  
18 services from regulated flows. This may prove more difficult than securing water for the  
19 river in New Mexico. During recent years of drought, Mexico did not meet its obligations  
20 to the United States under the compact. With droughts of greater duration expected as  
21 temperatures warm, more years of difficulty meeting treaty obligations may arise.

22  
23 Economic incentives are another approach to securing sufficient clean water needed to  
24 meet management objectives of the WSR. Recognizing the value of ecological services,  
25 one potential measure, for instance, is to purchase or lease water rights for the river.  
26 Additionally, technical assistance and incentives could also be provided to users who  
27 improve water efficiency, reduce pollution, and release surplus clean water to the river.  
28 Water deliveries could mimic natural flows, including scouring floods to build the  
29 channel.

30  
31 Improving efficiency of agricultural and urban water use and increasing re-use to  
32 conserve water and reduce pollution are probably the most cost-effective strategies to  
33 make more clean water available in the Rio Grande. If improved water efficiency results  
34 in “new” water, the challenge for WSR managers will be to negotiate, purchase or lease  
35 water for the river when it is most needed for ecological flows.

### 36 **A4.3 Upper Delaware River**

37 The Delaware River runs 330 miles from the confluence of its East and West branches at  
38 Hancock, New York to the mouth of the Delaware Bay. Established by Congress in 1978,  
39 the Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River consists of 73.4 miles (32.1 miles  
40 designated as scenic and 50.3 miles as recreational) of the Delaware River between  
41 Hancock and Sparrow Bush, New York, along the Pennsylvania-New York border.  
42 Although this case study focuses on the Upper Delaware, there are also 35 miles  
43 designated as scenic in the Middle Delaware River in the Delaware Water Gap National  
44 Recreational Area and 67.3 miles of Delaware River and tributaries (25.4 scenic and 41.9  
45 recreational) in the Lower Delaware Scenic and Recreational River (Fig. A4.5).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

**Figure A4.5.** Map of Wild and Scenic stretches in the Delaware River basin. Courtesy of Delaware River Basin Commission.<sup>31</sup>

The Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River boasts hardwood forests covering over 50% of the river corridor (Conference of the Upper Delaware Townships, 1986). These forests provide lush habitat for diverse fauna including at least 40 species of mammals, such as many of Pennsylvania’s remaining river otters and one of the largest populations of black bear in the state. It is one of the most important inland bald eagle wintering habitats in the northeastern United States. Water quality in the Upper Delaware is exceptional and supports abundant cold- and warm-water fish. As the last major river on the Atlantic coast undammed throughout the entire length of its mainstem, the Delaware provides important habitat for migratory fish such as American eel and America shad. In the upper reaches of the Delaware system, rainbow and brown trout are highly sought by anglers. The river and its surrounding ecosystems provide a beautiful setting for recreation including fishing, boating, kayaking, sightseeing and hiking.

The Upper Delaware Scenic and Recreational River includes a 55,575 acre ridge-top-to-ridge-top (approx. ½ mile wide) corridor, nearly all privately held. The NPS has jurisdiction over 73.4 miles of the river, including a “strand” area along its banks (up to the mean high water mark), but owns only 31 acres within the corridor (Conference of the Upper Delaware Townships, 1986). While the Delaware’s main stem remains free flowing, New York City has constructed three reservoirs on major tributaries (the East and West Branches of the Delaware River and the Neversink River) to provide drinking water for more than 17 million people. New York City gets the majority of its water—in fact, its best quality water—from these Catskill reservoirs.

The negligible public ownership, complex private ownership, and significant extraction of water for New York City require that the Upper Delaware be managed as a “Partnership River.” The NPS, the Upper Delaware Council (*e.g.*, local jurisdictions), the Delaware River Basin Commission (DRBC, which manages the water releases), the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, and the State of New York collaborated in preparing the River Management Plan (Conference of the Upper Delaware Townships, 1986) and collaborate in managing the river.

The goals described in the River Management Plan include maintaining or improving water quality and aquatic ecosystems, providing opportunities for recreation, and maintaining scenic values of river corridor and selected historic sites. The rights of private land owners are described in great detail and heavily emphasized throughout the plan, while management actions essential to maintain ecosystem services are more generalized.

---

<sup>31</sup> **Delaware River Basin Commission**, 2007: Wild and Scenic Rivers map. Delaware River Basin Commission Website, [http://www.state.nj.us/drbc/wild\\_scenic\\_map.htm](http://www.state.nj.us/drbc/wild_scenic_map.htm), accessed on 7-20-2007.

1 The Upper Delaware was chosen as a case study because it exemplifies river ecology for  
2 the northeast and management challenges typical of the region, including a significant  
3 human population, intense water extraction for enormous urban centers, and its status as a  
4 “Partnership River.”

5 **A4.3.1 Current Stressors of Ecosystems and Management Methods Used to Address**  
6 **Them**

7 The primary ecosystem stressors in the Upper Delaware include water extraction and  
8 unnatural flow regimes associated with reservoir management. Water quality, water  
9 temperature, fish and other river biota are negatively affected by these stressors (Mid-  
10 Atlantic Regional Assessment Team, 2000). In 2004 to 2006 unusually frequent and  
11 severe flooding—three separate hundred-year flood events in a 22-month period—further  
12 stressed the river system and added to the management challenges.<sup>32</sup>

13  
14 Water managers in the Delaware Basin are addressing at least four priority issues: (1)  
15 provision of drinking water for major metropolitan areas, (2) flood control, (3) biotic  
16 integrity and natural processes of the WSR, and (4) recreation activities, including  
17 coldwater fisheries. New York City takes about half of the water available in the Upper  
18 Delaware River Basin above the designated WSR. Hence, the primary mechanism  
19 remaining to manage the flow regime, water quality, and river ecology and processes in  
20 the WSR is dam management, and the secondary mechanism is improved surface water  
21 management throughout the Upper Basin. Considering the volume of water extracted,  
22 water released from the reservoirs is, overall, significantly below historic flows.  
23 Furthermore, while goals for *annual* average releases are met, they do not always  
24 conform to the periodicity that stream biologists and anglers say are required for native  
25 species and ecological processes. When too little water is released, particularly in the  
26 spring and summer, water temperature increases beyond optimal conditions for many  
27 species, and pollutants are more concentrated. Aquatic invertebrates decline, trout and  
28 other species up the food chain are negatively affected and tourism based on river boating  
29 and anglers suffers (Parasiewicz, undated).

30  
31 Water is also released from the Upper Delaware reservoirs to help maintain river levels  
32 adequate to prevent saltwater intrusion from Delaware Bay up river. During droughts in  
33 the past 50 years, the “salt front” has moved up river considerably. This intrusion may  
34 play a role in the conversion of upland forest areas to marshes, which could affect  
35 adjacent river ecosystems.<sup>33</sup> The saltwater is problematic for industries using water along  
36 the river front and increases sodium in the aquifer that supplies water to Southern New  
37 Jersey. Water conservation in the Delaware Basin and New York City has significantly  
38 helped address drought-related water shortages.

39

---

<sup>32</sup> **Delaware River Basin Commission**, 2006: *Water Resource Program FY2006 – FY 2012*. Available at <http://www.state.nj.us/drbc/WRP2006-12.pdf>. Delaware River Basin Commission, pp.1-9.

<sup>33</sup> **Partnership for the Delaware Estuary**, 2007: Partnership for the Delaware Estuary, a National Estuary Program homepage. Partnership for the Delaware Estuary Website, <http://www.delawareestuary.org/>, accessed on 7-12-2007.

1 Flood control and water quality in the Upper Basin are managed through restoration of  
2 stream banks, riparian buffers and floodplain ecosystems and through improved land and  
3 water management. The DRBC sets specific objectives for ecosystem management in the  
4 basin (Delaware River Basin Commission, 2004). Land use along the river is regulated  
5 by Township (PA) and Town (NY) zoning regulations, which are influenced by state  
6 regulations and requirements to qualify for FEMA flood insurance. The NPS and other  
7 partners work with the towns and townships to promote, through planning and zoning,  
8 maintenance of native vegetation in the floodplain and river corridor and to improve  
9 stormwater management throughout the watershed.

10  
11 The NPS and state agencies also manage river recreation, providing access to boaters and  
12 hikers and regulating their impacts. Following recent floods, agencies assisted with  
13 evacuation of residents in low-lying flood-prone areas; evacuated their own boats,  
14 vehicles, and equipment to higher ground; and mobilized post-flood boat patrols to  
15 identify hazardous materials (*e.g.*, propane tanks, etc.) left in the floodway and hazards to  
16 navigation in the river channel.

17  
18 NPS and others are beginning to work more closely with the National Weather Service to  
19 provide them with data on local precipitation amounts, snowpack, and river ice cover,  
20 and to coordinate with their Advanced Hydrologic Prediction Service to enable better  
21 forecasting and advanced warning to valley residents of flood crests and times.

#### 22 **A4.3.2 Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems**

23 Climate in the Delaware Basin can be highly variable, sometimes bringing severe winter  
24 ice storms and summer heat-waves. However, there has been a steady increase in mean  
25 temperature over the last 50 years as well as an increase in precipitation (Lins and Slack,  
26 1999; Rogers and McCarty, 2000; Najjar *et al.*, 2000). The expectations are for this  
27 pattern to continue and, in particular, for there to be the potential for less snowpack that  
28 melts earlier in the spring, and rain in the form of more intense rain events that may  
29 create greater fluctuations in river levels and greater floods. Severe flood events will  
30 likely continue to disrupt the river channel and impact floodplain ecosystems.

31 Furthermore, during periodic droughts there will be increased potential for combinations  
32 of shallower water and warmer temperatures, leading to significantly warmer water that  
33 could be especially damaging to coldwater invertebrates and fish. It is possible that dam  
34 management could offset this warming if water can be drawn from sufficient depths in  
35 the reservoir (*e.g.*, with a temperature control device on the dam).

36  
37 As with any river system, such climate-induced changes in environmental conditions may  
38 have serious ecological consequences, including erosion of streambanks and bottom  
39 sediments that may decrease the availability of suitable habitat, shifts in the growth rate  
40 of species due to thermal and flood-related stresses, and unpredictable changes in  
41 ecological processes such as carbon and nitrogen processing (see section 6.4.3 in the  
42 Wild and Scenic Rivers chapter).

1 **A4.3.3 Potential for Altering or Supplementing Current Management to Enable**  
2 **Adaptation for Climate Change**

3 Management of the reservoir levels and dam releases are the most direct methods to  
4 maintain riverine ecosystems under increased burdens of climate change. The DRBC  
5 Water Resource Program report for 2006–2012<sup>32</sup> identifies the current water management  
6 issues for the Basin and their program to address the challenges, including a river flow  
7 management program to ensure human and ecosystem needs.<sup>32</sup> A major thrust of the  
8 Commission’s program is research and modeling to help find a balanced approach to  
9 managing the limited water resources. This approach of establishing flow regime based  
10 on sound scientific data, with models and projects extended over decades will serve well  
11 in a future impacted by climate change.

12  
13 Improved watershed management to reduce aberrant flood events and minimize water  
14 pollution is one of the most useful long-term tools for managing river resources in a  
15 changing climate (Mid-Atlantic Regional Assessment Team, 2000). Federal, state and  
16 local authorities can create incentives and pass ordinances to encourage better water and  
17 land use that protect the river and its resources. For example, improved efficiency of  
18 water use and stormwater management (*e.g.*, household rain barrels and rain gardens,  
19 holding ponds), improved use of agrochemicals and soil management, and restoration of  
20 wetlands and riparian buffers would combine to reduce severity of floods, erosion  
21 damage and water pollution.

22  
23 Finally, continual improvements in municipal and household water conservation are  
24 among the most promising approaches to manage water in the Delaware River Basin.  
25 Populations in and around the Delaware Basin will grow, increasing demand on water  
26 supplies and river access for recreational uses. Per capita water use in New York City has  
27 declined from more than 200 gallons per capita per day around 1990 to 138 gallons per  
28 capita per day in 2006.<sup>34</sup> Water pricing can be use to promote further conservation (Mid-  
29 Atlantic Regional Assessment Team, 2000). An important component of this approach is  
30 educating the public so that consumers better understand the important role that water  
31 conservation plays in protecting river ecosystems and future water supplies.

32 **A5 National Estuaries Case Study**

33 **A5.1 The Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System**

34 **A5.1.1 Introduction**

35 We chose the Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System (APES) for our case study. APES  
36 provides a range of ecosystem services, extending over a diversity of ecosystem types,  
37 which provide the basis for the management goals of the Albemarle-Pamlico National  
38 Estuary Program (APNEP). Like other estuaries, the ecosystem services of APES are  
39 climate sensitive, and this sensitivity affects the ability to meet management goals. A  
40 range of adaptation options exist for climate-sensitive management goals. Many of these

---

<sup>34</sup> New York City Department of Environmental Protection, 2006: Water Conservation Program. pp.1-54.

1 adaptation options are applicable across estuarine ecosystems generally. Furthermore,  
2 because APNEP represents one of the first national estuaries, documentation of  
3 management successes and failures (Korfmacher, 1998; Korfmacher, 2002) exists for its  
4 20-year history. Extensive data and decision support information are available for the  
5 system and are likely to continue to be gathered into the future. We highlight a few key  
6 climate-related issues in this case study, including warming and altered precipitation  
7 patterns, but especially accelerated sea level rise and increased frequency of intense  
8 storms.

9  
10 The rationale for selecting the APES for the in-depth case study is based upon several  
11 unique characteristics of this system in addition to the scope of its management  
12 challenges related to climate change. First, the shores of the Albemarle and Pamlico  
13 Sounds are so gradually sloped that this system possesses more low-lying land within 1.5  
14 m of sea level than any other national estuary. Within the United States, wetlands and  
15 coastal lands inundated by sea level rise will be exceeded only on the Louisiana coast of  
16 the Mississippi River delta and the Everglades region of South Florida (Titus, 2000; U.S.  
17 Climate Change Science Program, 2007). Thus, the incentives here for management  
18 adaptation are high. Second, the State of North Carolina passed a Fisheries Reform Act in  
19 1997, which mandated development of a Coastal Habitat Protection Plan (CHPP) for  
20 fisheries enhancement. This plan at the state level represents a working example of  
21 ecosystem-based management because it engages all the diverse and usually independent  
22 state agencies whose mandates involve aspects of the environment that affect fish and  
23 their habitat. Consequently, there exists a model opportunity for integrating climate  
24 change into an ecosystem-based plan for management adaptation. Third, the Albemarle-  
25 Pamlico Sound system faces the daunting management challenges associated with  
26 projected disintegration of the protective coastal barrier of the Outer Banks of North  
27 Carolina (Riggs and Ames, 2003). As a result, the general problem of responding to  
28 erosion risk on coastal barriers is of higher urgency here because what is estuary now  
29 could become converted to an oceanic bay if the integrity of the banks is breached.

### 30 **A5.1.2 Historical Context**

31 Like many important estuaries, the Albemarle-Pamlico ecosystem has experienced a long  
32 history of human-induced changes including species depletion, habitat loss, water quality  
33 degradation, and species invasion (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). About 800 years ago, indigenous  
34 Native Americans initiated agriculture in the basin, and approximately 400 years ago  
35 Europeans began to colonize and transform the land. Since then, the human population  
36 around the estuary has increased by two orders of magnitude from that in 1700 (Lotze *et al.*,  
37 2006). Before European colonization, North Carolina had about 11 million acres of  
38 wetlands, of which only 5.7 million remain today. About one-third of the wetland  
39 conversion, mostly to managed forests and agriculture, has occurred since the 1950s.<sup>35</sup>  
40 Since 1850, the amount of cropland has increased 3.5-fold. More recent land use patterns  
41 show that 20% of the basin area consists of agricultural lands, 60% is forested, and  
42 relatively little is urbanized (Stanley, 1992). Over the last three decades, the production

---

<sup>35</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 1999: National water summary on wetland resources: state summary highlights. USGS, [http://water.usgs.gov/nwsum/WSP2425/state\\_highlights\\_summary.html](http://water.usgs.gov/nwsum/WSP2425/state_highlights_summary.html), accessed on 3-23-2007.

1 of swine has tripled and the area of fertilized cropland has almost doubled (Cooper *et al.*,  
2 2004). These changes in land-use patterns and increases in point and non-point nutrient  
3 loading have induced multiple changes in water quality, with the greatest changes  
4 appearing during the last 50–60 years (Cooper *et al.*, 2004).

5  
6 Over the last two to three centuries in the Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds,  
7 overexploitation, habitat loss, and pollution have resulted in the depletion and loss of  
8 many marine species that historically have been of economic or ecological importance  
9 (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Of the 44 marine mammals, birds, reptiles, fish, invertebrates, and  
10 plants for which sufficient time series information exists, 24 became depleted (<50% of  
11 former abundance), 19 became rare (<90%), and 1 became regionally extinct by 2000  
12 (Lotze *et al.*, 2006). Great losses also occurred among the subtidal bottom habitats.  
13 Historical accounts from the late 1800s indicate that bays and waterways near the  
14 mainland once had extensive beds of seagrass, while today seagrass is limited to the  
15 landward side of the barrier islands (Mallin *et al.*, 2000). Oyster reef acreage has been  
16 diminished over the last 100 years as a consequence of overharvesting, habitat  
17 disturbance, pollution, and most recently Dermo (*Perkinsus marinus*) infections.<sup>36</sup>

### 18 **A5.1.3 Geomorphological and Land Use Contexts and Climate Change**

19 Climate change impacts on APES may take numerous forms. Warming in and of itself  
20 can alter community and trophic structure through differential species-dependent  
21 metabolic, phenological, and behavioral responses. Changes in precipitation patterns also  
22 may have species-specific consequences. In combination, warming and precipitation  
23 patterns affect evapotranspiration, soil moisture, groundwater use and recharge, and river  
24 flow patterns. The current rate of relative rise in mean sea level in this geographic region  
25 is among the highest for the Atlantic coast, with estimates commonly over 3 mm per year  
26 and in at least one study as high as 4.27 mm per year (Zervas, 2001). The anticipated  
27 scenario of increasing frequency of intense storms in combination with rising sea levels  
28 creates a likelihood of dramatic physical and biological changes in ecosystem state for  
29 APES because the very integrity of the Outer Banks that create the protected estuaries  
30 behind them is at risk (Riggs and Ames, 2003; Paerl *et al.*, 2006).

31  
32 APES is a large and important complex of rivers, tributary estuaries, extensive wetlands,  
33 coastal lagoons and barrier islands. Its 73,445 km<sup>2</sup> watershed (Stanley, 1992) is mostly in  
34 North Carolina but extends into southern Virginia (Fig. A5.1). The largest water body is  
35 Pamlico Sound to the southeast, with two major tributaries, the Neuse and the Tar-  
36 Pamlico Rivers. Both rivers empty into drowned river estuaries, the Neuse River Estuary  
37 (NRE) and the Pamlico River Estuary (PRE), which connect to Pamlico Sound.  
38 Albemarle Sound is farther north with two major tributaries, the Chowan and the  
39 Roanoke Rivers, and a number of local tributary estuaries. Other smaller sounds connect  
40 the Albemarle and the Pamlico (Roanoke and Croatan Sounds), and the Currituck Sound  
41 extends along the northeastern portion of the complex.

---

<sup>36</sup> **North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources**, 2006: Stock status of important coastal fisheries in North Carolina. North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources, North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources, Division of Marine fisheries, <http://www.ncfisheries.net/stocks/index.html>, accessed on 3-23-2007.



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

**Figure A5.1.** The Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program region.<sup>37</sup>

The geological framework for coastal North Carolina, including APES has recently been summarized by Riggs and Ames (2003). The system represents several drowned river valley estuaries that coalesce into its large coastal lagoon (Fig. A5.1). The coastal plane, estuaries and sounds have a very gentle slope in which Quarternary sediments are underlain largely by Pliocene sediments. Much of this sediment is organic rich mud arising from eroding peat of swamps and marshes (Riggs, 1996). The gentle slope has allowed major shifts in position of the shoreline and barrier islands as sea level has risen and fallen. Furthermore, the position and number of inlets has changed along the barrier islands, promoting or limiting the exchange of fresh and seawater.

Much of the watershed is within the coastal plain with low elevations that affect land use. Moorhead and Brinson (1995) estimate that 56% of the peninsula between the Albemarle Sound and PRE is less than 1.5 m in elevation. Fifty-three percent of the peninsula’s area is composed of wetlands, and 90% contains hydric soils. Thus, this region of the watershed is sparsely populated and largely rural. In contrast, other regions are more highly developed. The barrier islands, the famous “Outer Banks” of North Carolina, are a mosaic of highly developed lands for tourism and protected natural areas. The southeastern portion of Virginia in the APES basin is highly urbanized, and the piedmont origins of the Neuse and Tar Rivers in North Carolina are highly populated. Agriculture and silvaculture are important land uses and economic drivers in the region. Urban economies dominate much of southeastern Virginia. And a relatively new trend is the development of high-end and retirement subdivisions along the “Inner Banks,” the mainland shore zone of the complex. The watershed’s population exceeds 3,000,000 people including Virginia. However, only about 25% are found in coastal counties of North Carolina, based on estimates for 2000.<sup>38</sup> A significant portion of this population is considered “vulnerable” to strong storms and thus faces risks from climate change (*i.e.*, people who live in evacuation zones for storm surge or who are subject to risks from high winds by living in mobile homes). The low-lying lands and basic nature of services and infrastructure of the rural environment pose growing risks of flood damage as sea level and storm intensities rise to land uses, infrastructure (*e.g.*, water delivery from aquifers, waste water treatment facilities, roads, and buildings) and even human lives.

Another characteristic of the system’s geomorphology makes it uniquely susceptible to climate change drivers. The exchange of water between the ocean and the sounds is restricted by the few and small inlets that separate the long, thin barrier islands (Giese,

---

<sup>37</sup> **Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program**, 2007: Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds region. Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program Website, <http://www.apnep.org/pages/regions.html>, accessed on 7-25-2007.

<sup>38</sup> **Federal Emergency Management Agency**, 2007: Chapter 01 - description of study area. Comprehensive Hurricane Data Preparedness, FEMA Study Web Site, [http://chps.sam.usace.army.mil/USHESDATA/NC/Data/chapter1/chapter01\\_description.html](http://chps.sam.usace.army.mil/USHESDATA/NC/Data/chapter1/chapter01_description.html), accessed on 3-23-2007.

1 Wilder, and Parker, 1985; Riggs and Ames, 2003). This restricted connectivity greatly  
2 dampens amplitude of astronomical tides and limits the degree to which seawater is  
3 mixed with freshwater. Temperature increases may have significant impacts on the APES  
4 because its shallow bays have limited exchange with ocean waters, which serve as a  
5 cooling influence in summer.

6  
7 Water quality has been a recurring management concern for APES and APNEP. The  
8 tributary rivers generally have high concentrations of dissolved nutrients. This fosters  
9 high primary productivity in tributary estuaries, but under most circumstances nutrient  
10 concentrations in the sounds remain relatively low (Peierls, Christian, and Paerl, 2003;  
11 Piehler *et al.*, 2004). Most nutrient loading derives from non-point sources, although  
12 nitrogen loading from point sources may account for up to 60–70% in summer months  
13 (Steel and Carolina, 1991). Nitrogen deposition from the atmosphere may account for an  
14 additional 15–32% (Paerl, H.W., Dennis, and Whitall, 2002). Phosphorus loading to the  
15 Pamlico River Estuary was greatly enhanced by phosphate mining, which accounts for  
16 about half of the total point source phosphorus loadings to this estuary and officially  
17 began in 1964 (Copeland and Hobbie, 1972; Stanley, 1992). Loading has decreased  
18 dramatically in recent years as treatment of mine wastes has improved. High surface  
19 sediment concentrations of the toxic heavy metals arsenic, chromium, copper, nickel, and  
20 lead are found in the Neuse River Estuary, possibly associated with industrial and  
21 military operations, while high cadmium and silver levels in PRE most likely result from  
22 phosphate mining discharges (Cooper *et al.*, 2004). In 1960, hypoxia was first reported in  
23 the Pamlico River Estuary (Hobbie, Copeland, and Harrison, 1975). Since then, hypoxic  
24 and anoxic waters in the PRE and NRE were mostly of short duration (days to weeks) but  
25 have resulted in death of benthic invertebrates on the bottom and fish kills (Stanley and  
26 Nixon, 1992; Buzzelli *et al.*, 2002; Cooper *et al.*, 2004). Nuisance and toxic algal blooms  
27 are reported periodically (Burkholder *et al.*, 1992; Bricker *et al.*, 1999), and about 22  
28 aquatic plants and 116 aquatic animals, of which 22 occur in marine or marine-freshwater  
29 habitats, have been identified as non-indigenous species in North Carolina.<sup>39</sup> Increases in  
30 temperatures are expected to enhance hypoxia and its negative consequences, through the  
31 combined effects of increased metabolism and, to a lesser degree, decreased oxygen  
32 solubility.

33  
34 The interactions between relative sea level rise, shoreline morphology, and bay  
35 ravinement could have significant impacts on estuarine water quality and ecosystem  
36 function in the APES. Losses of wetlands to inundation could lead to a large shift in  
37 function from being a nitrogen sink to being a nitrogen source. Both planktonic and  
38 benthic primary producers may be affected by, and mediate, changes in water quality,  
39 nutrient and material fluxes across the sediment-water interface that may result from sea  
40 level rise (Fig. A5.2). Changes in the water column productivity affect particle  
41 composition and concentration, which in turn increases turbidity and feedback to modify  
42 further the balance between water column and benthic productivity. Inundated sediments  
43 will then be subject to typical estuarine stressors (*e.g.*, salinity, changes in water table,  
44 isolation from atmosphere) that can lead to dissolution of particulates, desorption of

---

<sup>39</sup> U.S. Geological Survey, 2005: Nonindigenous aquatic species search page. U.S. Geological Survey, <http://nas.er.usgs.gov/queries/default.asp>, accessed on 4-9-2007.

1 nutrients or organic matter, and altered redox states. These changes result in fluxes of  
2 nutrients and DOC that could radically transform the proportion of productivity and  
3 heterotrophic activity in the water above the sediment and in the rest of the estuary.  
4 Nutrient management plans generally assume that the frequency and magnitude of  
5 bottom water hypoxia will decrease by reducing watershed inputs of dissolved inorganic  
6 nitrogen and organic matter that either indirectly or directly fuel water column and  
7 benthic respiration (Kemp *et al.*, 1992; Conley *et al.*, 2002). However, factors such as the  
8 nutrient and sediment filtration capacity of wetlands under flooded conditions of higher  
9 sea levels, and the potential for a large organic matter input from erosion and  
10 disintegration of now inundated wetlands, create uncertainty about progress in containing  
11 eutrophication across different scales and render the determination of management targets  
12 and forecasting of hypoxia extremely difficult.

13  
14  
15  
16 **Figure A5.2.** Feedbacks between nutrient and sediment exchange and primary  
17 production in the benthos and water column. A plus symbol indicates  
18 enhancement and a minus symbol suppression.

19  
20 Because of the large fetch of the major sounds and tributary estuaries, wind tides control  
21 water levels and wave energy can be quite high. Wind tides can lead to extended flooding  
22 and high erosion rates, especially within the eastern and southern parts of the complex  
23 (Brinson, 1991; Riggs and Ames, 2003). Furthermore, the barrier islands are prone to  
24 breaching during storms, and geological history demonstrates the fragility of this thin  
25 strip of sand and reveals the locations of highest risk of breaching. Formation of  
26 persistent inlets within the barrier islands would increase oceanic exchange and thereby  
27 the amplitude of astronomical tides. This, in turn, could profoundly alter the ecology of  
28 both aquatic and wetland ecosystems in the APES.

29  
30 The size, geomorphology, and location of the APES complex make it an important source  
31 of ecosystem services for the region and the nation. The largest economic contribution of  
32 APES today derives from tourism and recreation. The Outer Banks attract people from  
33 around the world. Populations during the prime summer season considerably exceed  
34 winter populations. The Outer Banks include the most economically important acreage of  
35 the complex along with ecologically important natural areas. These coastal barriers are  
36 also the most sensitive to the combination of sea level rise and increased frequency of  
37 intense storms. Barrier island geomorphology is constantly changing on short and long  
38 time scales, increasing and decreasing in width with sand movement and both forming  
39 and closing inlets during storms. Inlets have broken through the Outer Banks repeatedly  
40 over the past century and paleo records from the past few thousand years demonstrate  
41 dramatic movements in location and character of the barriers as sea level has changed  
42 (Riggs and Ames, 2003). But human structures on the islands and human uses of the  
43 barrier islands' natural resources have now changed the degree to which natural  
44 geological processes occur. Construction and maintenance of Route 12 along the Outer  
45 Banks has restricted washover and the movement of sand from the seaward side of the  
46 islands to the sound side. Furthermore, the presence of houses, condominiums, hotels,

1 etc. produces conflicts between maintaining the natural geomorphic processes that allow  
2 island migration landwards as sea level rises and protecting human infrastructure. Rising  
3 sea level and increased frequency of intense storms enhances the potential beach erosion,  
4 thereby increasing costs of beach nourishment, and increases risk of island disintegration,  
5 leading to increased political pressure to legalize hard structures on the ocean shoreline.  
6

7 Beaches are a major natural resource and drive many coastal economies. Because the  
8 presence of houses, condominiums, and roads and other infrastructure leads to defense of  
9 the shoreline position and prevents natural recession, beach erosion now reduces beach  
10 widths as sea level is rising. North Carolina prohibits hard structures (*e.g.*, bulkheads,  
11 jetties, and permanent sand bags) on the ocean shoreline. Instead, erosion is countered by  
12 beach nourishment, in which sand is dredged from offshore. This is a temporary and  
13 expensive solution. It also has potentially significant impacts on the living resources of  
14 the beach, such as shorebirds and resident invertebrates (Peterson and Bishop, 2005;  
15 Peterson *et al.*, 2006). Erosion of beaches tends to occur with the major axis parallel to  
16 the islands (*i.e.*, meters or tens of meters of erosion of beach along hundreds to thousands  
17 of meters along the beach face). Breaching of new inlets and overwash events penetrate  
18 more into the islands. A recent breach occurred on Hatteras Island during Hurricane  
19 Isabel, but it was quickly closed by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to permit road  
20 reconstruction and automobile travel along the Outer Banks. Riggs and Ames (2003)  
21 have projected that under higher stands of sea level, future hurricanes may create  
22 numerous large, new inlets and break the chain of coastal barriers that forms the eastern  
23 edge of the entire APES system. They mapped locations of the paleochannels along the  
24 islands and identified these as the most likely locations for such breaches. Such events  
25 represent the most dramatic consequences of climate change to APES. Extensive new  
26 inlets would lead to an entirely new tidal, salinity, wave, and hydrodynamic regime  
27 within APES, and in turn drastically change the ecology of the complex. Wise  
28 management for the future must include preparation for the possibility of events such as  
29 these and their consequences.  
30

31 Natural areas in APES have been recognized for their significance as wildlife habitat,  
32 nurseries for aquatic species, stop-over sites (flyways) for migratory birds, and important  
33 spawning areas for anadromous fish. Recreational fishing and boating add to the  
34 attraction of the beaches, barrier islands, and natural areas within the watershed. The  
35 nursery services of the complex are also important to fisheries, both locally and along the  
36 entire eastern coast of the United States. Cape Hatteras sits at the biogeographic  
37 convergence of populations of northern and southern species, and many of these species  
38 use the sounds during their life cycles. Thus, the location of APES makes it particularly  
39 sensitive to any climate-related changes that alter migratory patterns of both birds and  
40 marine organisms.  
41

42 The wetlands of the Albemarle Pamlico Sound complex are largely non-tidal and subject  
43 to irregular wind tides, as described above. In freshwater regions along the rivers and  
44 flood plains, swamp forests dominate. Pocosins—peat-forming ombrotrophic wetlands—  
45 are found in interstream divides. As sea level rises in oligohaline regions, swamp forests  
46 may continue to dominate or be replaced by brackish marshes. Irregularly flooded

1 marshes, dominated by *Juncus roemerianus*, extend over much of the higher-salinity  
2 areas. Back barrier island marshes are dominated by *Spartina alterniflora*. The ability of  
3 these wetlands to respond to sea level rise is becoming compromised by increased human  
4 infrastructure. Roads, residential and urban developments, hard structures for shoreline  
5 stabilization, and agricultural ditching are preventing horizontal transgression of wetlands  
6 and promoting erosion of edges throughout the complex. Furthermore, development of  
7 the barrier islands has prevented natural overwash and inlet-forming processes that  
8 promote salt marsh development (Christian *et al.*, 2000; Riggs and Ames, 2003).

#### 9 **A5.1.4 Current Management Issues and Climate Change**

10 The APES became part of the NEP (APNEP) in 1987. Initial programmatic efforts  
11 focused on assessments of the condition of the system through the Albemarle-Pamlico  
12 Estuarine Study. The results of these efforts were used in the stakeholder-based  
13 development of a Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan (CCMP) in 1994.  
14 The CCMP presented objectives for plans in five areas: water quality, vital habitats,  
15 fisheries, stewardship, and implementation (Box A5.1).<sup>40</sup> For each objective, issues of  
16 concern were identified and management actions proposed. None of the issues or  
17 proposed actions explicitly included climate change. In 2005, NEP Headquarters  
18 conducted its most recent triennial implementation review of APNEP. APNEP passed the  
19 implementation review and was found eligible for funding through FY 2008.

20  
21 Although no management objective explicitly identifies climate change or its  
22 consequences, water quality, vital habitats, and fisheries are likely to be substantially  
23 affected by changes in climate. Recent efforts by APNEP and the State of North Carolina  
24 led to more direct consideration of the impacts of climate change. APNEP has identified  
25 indicators of condition of the system and begun the process for implementing their use.  
26 Multiple indicators assess condition of atmosphere, land, wetland, aquatic, and human  
27 components of the system. While some indicators focus on short-term changes in these  
28 components, many have meaning only in their long-term trends. Given a changing  
29 climate and associated impacts, these indicators place APNEP in position to assess these  
30 impacts for wise management. On a broader front, the legislature of North Carolina in  
31 2006 established a commission on climate change to assess how climate change will  
32 affect the state and to propose actions to either minimize impacts or take advantage of  
33 them.

34  
35 In 1987 North Carolina passed the Fisheries Reform Act, requiring both development of  
36 formal species management plans for each commercially and/or recreationally harvested  
37 fishery stock and the development of a CHPP. The CHPP development and  
38 implementation process resembles an EBM at the state level because it requires  
39 consideration and integrated management of all factors that affect the quality of fish  
40 habitats in a synthetic, integrative fashion. To achieve this goal, staff from all appropriate  
41 state resource and environmental commissions came together to map coordinated  
42 approaches to achieve sustainability of habitat quantity and quality for fishery resources.

---

<sup>40</sup> **Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program**, 1994: Albemarle-Pamlico NEP Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan.

1 This partnership among agencies, while only at the state level, addresses one of the  
2 biggest goals of EBM (Peterson and Estes, 2001). Commissions and agencies responsible  
3 for fisheries management (Marine Fisheries Commission), water quality and wetlands  
4 (Environmental Management Commission), and coastal development (Coastal Resources  
5 Commission) are the major entities, but the Sedimentation Control Commission and  
6 Wildlife Resources Commission also contribute. The CHPP does contemplate several  
7 aspects of climate change and human responses to threats such as beach and shoreline  
8 erosion, although long-term solutions are elusive. Now that a plan exists, the  
9 implementation of its short-term goals has yet to begin and may become contentious.

10  
11 Other innovative programs and initiatives within North Carolina are the Ecosystem  
12 Enhancement Program (EEP), Clean Water Management Trust Fund (CWMTF), and the  
13 designation of estuaries as nutrient sensitive. EEP is an agency that coordinates wetland  
14 mitigation efforts to maximize their effectiveness. The North Carolina Department of  
15 Transportation's mitigation needs are largely met through EEP. The program uses a  
16 watershed approach in planning mitigation projects. This allows a broad and  
17 comprehensive perspective that should be reconciled with climate change expectations.  
18 The CWMTF provides financial support for activities that improve or protect water  
19 quality. It offers an opportunity to link consideration of climate change to such activities,  
20 although no such link has been an explicit consideration. The designation of nutrient  
21 sensitivity allows enhanced controls on nutrient additions and total maximum daily  
22 loadings to the Neuse and Tar-Pamlico systems. In fact, regulations have been designed  
23 to not only curb expansion of nutrient enrichment but to roll it back with restrictions to  
24 both point- and non-point sources.

#### 25 **A5.1.5 Recommendations for Environmental Management in the Face of Climate Change**

26 We make three overarching recommendations for management of estuaries in the face of  
27 climate change: (1) maintain an appropriate environmental observing system; (2) educate  
28 a variety of audiences on long-term consequences; and (3) pursue adaptation and adaptive  
29 management. Each of these is described specifically for APES but has application to  
30 other estuaries in whole or part. Furthermore, each involves coordination of multiple  
31 initiatives and programs. It is this coordination that should be a major focus of APNEP in  
32 particular and NEP in general.

33  
34 An appropriate observing system involves a network of programs that detects, attributes  
35 and predicts change at multiple scales. It includes sustained monitoring, data and  
36 information management, predictive model production, and communication of these  
37 products to users. The users include environmental managers, policy makers, and  
38 members of the public over a range of economic positions and status. Regulatory and  
39 policy needs require a variety of measurements to be made in a sustained way. These  
40 measurements extend to variables of physical, chemical, biological, and socioeconomic  
41 attributes of APES. Many have been identified by APNEP with its indicator program.  
42 These measurements must be made to respond to drivers at different time scales; while  
43 these time scales include short-term variation, the most important to this report are long-  
44 term trends and infrequent but intense disturbances.

45

1 There are other observing system initiatives within coastal North Carolina. These include  
2 the North Carolina Coastal Ocean Observing System and Coastal Ocean Research and  
3 Monitoring Program. Both have their emphases on the coastal ocean and near real-time  
4 products of physical conditions. However, their efforts need to be more directed toward  
5 the APES and other estuarine ecosystems to be more valuable to the people of North  
6 Carolina. More effort is needed to assess and understand the physical dynamics of the  
7 estuarine systems. Observations and analyses should be extended to characterize the  
8 physical and geochemical processes of catchment and riverine inflows, which are likely  
9 to change dramatically under changing climatic conditions. The systems also need to  
10 broaden their observations to include ecological and socioeconomic measurements. These  
11 measurements are less likely to be near real-time, but user needs do not require such  
12 quick reporting. We recommend that the coastal observing systems be linked explicitly to  
13 APNEP indicator activities.

14  
15 Education is needed across the spectrum of society to produce informed stakeholders and  
16 thus facilitate enlightened management adaptations. The need for K–12 education on  
17 climate change is obvious, but there is also a lack of general understanding among adults.  
18 Education efforts are needed for the general public, policy makers, and even  
19 environmental managers. North Carolina has several significant programs that can  
20 promote this general understanding. APNEP and the Commission on Climate Change  
21 have been mentioned above. Public television and radio have a general mission to  
22 educate and have contributed time to the topic. Two other programs are (1) the  
23 Partnership for the Sounds, including the Estuarium in Washington, North Carolina, and  
24 (2) the North Carolina Aquariums. The latter includes three aquaria along the coast.  
25 These programs are in a unique position to teach the general public about climate change.  
26 We recommend that coordination among these different programs be fostered to promote  
27 education within the state.

28  
29 Finally, adaptive management and adaptation strategies are essential to respond to the  
30 complex implications of climate change. Adaptive management recognizes the need for  
31 both sustained monitoring associated with observing systems and adaptive justification of  
32 intervention plans that reflect advances in our understanding of impacts of climate change  
33 and new insights on what experimental interventions are needed. Adaptive management  
34 also recognizes the important role of education that promotes better appreciation of a  
35 changing and uncertain world. Adaptive management is explicit within APNEP, CHPP,  
36 and EEP. It also is incorporated into controls on nutrient additions to alleviate the impacts  
37 of cultural eutrophication. It acknowledges the importance of the ecosystem perspective  
38 and breaks the regulatory mold of being specific to an issue, species, single source of  
39 pollution, etc. This enhances the ability to meet the challenges of climate change. One  
40 aspect of this change is the expectation that landscape units that are controlled by sea  
41 level will migrate. Beaches and wetlands will move shoreward. Regulations and policies  
42 that foster the ability to retreat from these landscape migrations are part of this adaptive  
43 approach. Adaptive management is an established approach in North Carolina, which can  
44 serve as a successful example nationally.

1 **A5.1.6 Barriers and Opportunities**

2 APNEP possesses environmental and social barriers to effective implementation of  
3 management adaptation to climate change, yet at the same time various social and  
4 environmental characteristics represent favorable opportunities for adaptation. Indeed,  
5 APNEP was chosen for a case study because it could illustrate both significant barriers  
6 and opportunities. Perhaps its greatest single barrier to successful adaptation to climate  
7 change is the intractable nature of the challenge of preserving the integrity of the coastal  
8 barrier complex of the Outer Banks over the long time scales of a century and longer.  
9 These coastal barriers are responsible for creating the APNEP estuarine system, and a  
10 major breach in the integrity would ultimately convert the estuary into a coastal ocean  
11 embayment (Riggs and Ames, 2003). Current management employs beach nourishment  
12 to fortify the barrier, but this method will become increasingly expensive as sea level  
13 rises substantially, and thus would be politically infeasible. Construction of a seawall  
14 along the entire extent of the barrier complex also does not appear to be a viable option  
15 because of financial costs and loss of the beach that defines and enriches the Outer  
16 Banks.

17  
18 Special opportunities for implementation of adaptive management in APNEP include the  
19 existence of the CHPP process, a legislatively mandated ecosystem-based management  
20 plan for preserving and enhancing coastal fisheries. This plan involves collaborative  
21 attentions by all necessary state agencies and thereby can overcome the historic  
22 constraints of compartmentalization of management authorities. This plan sets an  
23 admirable example for other states. Similarly, the novel state commission on effects of  
24 climate change that was legislated in 2005 also provides opportunity for education and  
25 participation of legislators in a process of looking forward, well beyond the usual time  
26 frames of politics, to serve as an example of proactivity for other states to emulate.  
27 Sparse human populations and low levels of development along much of the interior  
28 mainland shoreline of the APNEP complex provide opportunities for implementation of  
29 policies that protect the ability of the salt marsh and other shallow-water estuarine  
30 habitats to be allowed to retreat as sea level rises. Implementing the policies required to  
31 achieve this management adaptation would not be possible in places where development  
32 and infrastructure are so dense that the economic and social costs of shoreline retreat are  
33 high. Special funding to support purchase of rolling easements or other implementation  
34 methods can come from the Clean Water Management Trust Fund and the Ecosystem  
35 Enhancement Program of North Carolina, two facilitators of large coordinated projects.  
36 The State of North Carolina was among the first to establish basin-scale water quality  
37 management and has established novel methods of basin-wide capping of nutrient  
38 delivery to estuaries, such the NRE, involving ecosystem-based management through  
39 participation of all stakeholders. This too facilitates actions required to manage  
40 consequences of climate change to preserve management goals of a national estuary.

41 **A6 Marine Protected Area Case Studies**

42 This section includes three U.S. case studies along with an Australian case study for  
43 comparison. This report focuses on U.S. federally managed lands and waters to frame the  
44 question of adaptation, the goal is to review all types of adaptation options including



1 those developed by non-governmental organizations and internationally that may be  
2 implemented to benefit U.S. resources. With regard to climate change impacts and  
3 adaptation, coral reefs are the best studied marine system. Because the Great Barrier Reef  
4 Marine Park (GBRMP) in Australia is an international leader in addressing climate  
5 change impacts to coral reefs, a case study of how this issue is being addressed there is of  
6 great value for examining adaptation options that may be transferable to U.S. coral reefs  
7 and other U.S. marine systems. Each case study discusses existing management  
8 approaches, threats of climate change, and adaptation options. The case studies are  
9 located in Florida (Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (FKNMS)), Australia  
10 (GBRMP), Hawaii (Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument (PMNM)), and  
11 California (Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS)). These MPAs range in  
12 size, species composition, and levels of protection; no-take designations, for example, are  
13 6% (FKNMS), 10% (CINMS), 33% (GBRMP), and 100% (PMNM).

## 14 **A6.1 The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**

### 15 **A6.1.1 Introduction**

16 The Florida Keys are a limestone island archipelago extending southwest over 320 km  
17 from the southern tip of the Florida mainland (see Fig. 8.3 in the MPA chapter). The  
18 FKNMS surrounds the Florida Reef Tract, one of the world's largest systems of coral  
19 reefs and the only bank-barrier reef in the coterminous United States. The FKNMS is  
20 bounded by and connected to Florida Bay, the Southwest Florida Continental Shelf, and  
21 the Straits of Florida and Atlantic Ocean. It is influenced by the powerful Loop  
22 Current/Florida Current/Gulf Stream system to the west and south, as well as a weaker  
23 southerly flow along the West Florida Shelf (Lee *et al.*, 2002). The combined Gulf of  
24 Mexico and tropical Atlantic biotic influences make the area one of the most diverse in  
25 North America.

26  
27 The uniqueness of the marine environment and ready access from the mainland by a  
28 series of bridges and causeways draws millions of visitors to the Keys, including many  
29 from the heavily populated city of Miami and other metropolitan areas of South Florida.  
30 Also, in recent years Key West has become a major destination for cruise liners,  
31 attracting more than 500 stop-overs annually. The major industry in the Florida Keys has  
32 become tourism, including dive shops, charter fishing, and dive boats and marinas as well  
33 as hotels and restaurants. There also is an important commercial fishing industry.

34  
35 National Marine Sanctuaries established at Key Largo in 1975 and Looe Key in 1981  
36 demonstrated that measures to protect coral reefs from direct impacts could be successful  
37 using management actions such as mooring buoys, education programs, research and  
38 monitoring, restoration efforts, and proactive, interpretive law enforcement. In 1989,  
39 mounting threats to the health and ecological future of the coral reef ecosystem in the  
40 Florida Keys prompted Congress to take further protective steps. The threat of oil drilling  
41 in the mid- to late-1980s off the Florida Keys, combined with reports of deteriorating  
42 water quality throughout the region, occurred at the same time as adverse effects of coral

1 bleaching,<sup>41</sup> the Caribbean-wide die-off of the long-spined urchin (Lessios, Robertson,  
2 and Cubit, 1984), loss of living coral cover on reefs (Porter and Meier, 1992), a major  
3 seagrass die-off (Robblee *et al.*, 1991), declines in reef fish populations (Bohnsack,  
4 Harper, and McClellan, 1994; Ault, Bohnsack, and Meester, 1998), and the spread of  
5 coral diseases (Kuta and Richardson, 1996). These were already topics of major scientific  
6 concern and the focus of several scientific workshops when, in the fall of 1989, three  
7 large ships ran aground on the Florida Reef Tract within a brief 18-day period. On  
8 November 16, 1990, President Bush signed into law the Florida Keys National Marine  
9 Sanctuary and Protection Act. Specific regulations to manage the sanctuary did not go  
10 into effect until July 1997, after the final management plan (U.S. Department of  
11 Commerce, 1996) had been approved by the Secretary of Commerce and the Governor  
12 and Cabinet of the State of Florida. The FKNMS encompasses approximately 9,800 km<sup>2</sup>  
13 of coastal and oceanic waters surrounding the Florida Keys (Keller and Causey, 2005)  
14 (see Fig. 8.3 in the MPA chapter), including the Florida Reef Tract, all of the mangrove  
15 islands of the Florida Keys, extensive seagrass beds and hard-bottom areas, and hundreds  
16 of shipwrecks.

17  
18 Visitors spent \$1.2 billion<sup>42</sup> over 12.1 million person-days<sup>43</sup> in the Florida Keys between  
19 June 2000 and May 2001. Over that period, visitors and residents spent 5.5 million of the  
20 person-days on natural and artificial reefs. Significantly, visitors (and residents) perceive  
21 significant declines in the quality of the marine environment of the Keys.<sup>44</sup>

## 22 **A6.1.2 Specific Management Goals and Current Ecosystem Stressors Being Addressed**

### 23 **Goal and Objectives of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**

24 The goal of the FKNMS is “To preserve and protect the physical and biological  
25 components of the South Florida estuarine and marine ecosystem to ensure its viability  
26 for the use and enjoyment of present and future generations” (U.S. Department of  
27 Commerce, 1996). The Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary and Protection Act as  
28 well as the Sanctuary Advisory Council identified a number of objectives to achieve this  
29 goal (Box A6.1). FKNMS management was designed during the 1990s to address local  
30 stressors; the subsequent recognition of the significance of regional and global stressors  
31 requires that future planning efforts incorporate these larger-scale factors.  
32

---

<sup>41</sup> **Causey, B.D.**, 2001: Lessons learned from the intensification of coral bleaching from 1980-2000 in the Florida Keys, USA. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design, Volume 102* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Asia Pacific Coastal Marine Program Report #0102, Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas Conference, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 60-66.

<sup>42</sup> **Leeworthy, V.R.** and P.C. Wiley, 2003: *Profiles and Economic Contribution: General Visitors to Monroe County, Florida 2000-2001*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service, Office of Management and Budget, Special Projects Division, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-24.

<sup>43</sup> **Johns, G.M.**, V.R. Leeworthy, F.W. Bell, and M.A. Bonn, 2003: *Socioeconomic Study of Reefs in Southeast Florida*. Final Report October 19, 2001 as Revised April 18, 2003 for Broward County, Palm Beach County, Miami-Dade County, Monroe County, Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Hollywood, FL.

<sup>44</sup> **Leeworthy, V.R.**, P.C. Wiley, and J.D. Hospital, 2004: *Importance-Satisfaction Ratings Five-Year Comparison, SPA and ER Use, and Socioeconomic and Ecological Monitoring Comparison of Results 1995-96 to 2000-01*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service, Office of Management and Budget, Special Projects Division, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-59.

1 **Coral Reef and Seagrass Protection**

2 The management plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996) established a channel and  
3 reef marking program that coordinated federal, state, and local efforts to mark channels  
4 and shallow reef areas. These markers help prevent damage from boat groundings and  
5 propeller-scarring.

6  
7 A mooring buoy program is one of the most simple and effective management actions to  
8 protect sanctuary resources from direct impact by boat anchors. By installing mooring  
9 buoys in high-use areas, the sanctuary has prevented damage to coral from the thousands  
10 of anchors dropped every week in the Keys.

11  
12 **Marine Zoning**

13 The management plan implemented marine zoning with five categories of zones. The  
14 relatively large “no-take” Ecological Reserve at Western Sambo (see Fig. 8.3 in the MPA  
15 chapter) was designed to help restore ecosystem structure and function. A second  
16 Ecological Reserve was implemented in the Tortugas region in 2001 as one of the largest  
17 no-take areas in U.S. waters (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2000; Cowie-Haskell and  
18 Delaney, 2003; Delaney, 2003). In addition to the larger Ecological Reserves, there are  
19 18 small, no-take Sanctuary Preservation Areas (SPAs) that protect over 65% of shallow,  
20 spur and groove reef habitat. These areas displaced few commercial and recreational  
21 fishermen and resolved a user conflict with snorkeling and diving activities in the same  
22 shallow reef areas. Four small Research-Only Areas are also no-take; only scientists with  
23 permits are allowed access.

24  
25 In addition, 27 Wildlife Management Areas (WMAs) were established to address human  
26 impacts to nearshore habitats such as seagrass flats and mangrove-fringed shorelines.  
27 Most of these WMAs only allow no-motorized access. Finally, because the FKNMS Act  
28 called for the two existing sanctuaries to be subsumed by the FKNMS, a final type of  
29 marine zone, called Existing Management Areas, was used to codify both Key Largo and  
30 Looe Key NMS regulations into FKNMS regulations. This was a way to maintain the  
31 additional protective resource measures that had been in effect for the Key Largo and  
32 Looe Key NMSs since 1975 and 1981, respectively. Those areas prohibited spearfishing,  
33 marine life collecting, fish trapping, trawling, and a number of other specific activities  
34 that posed threats to coral reef resources.

35  
36 **Improvement of Water Quality**

37 The FKNMS Act directed the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to work with the  
38 State of Florida and NOAA to develop a Water Quality Protection Program (WQPP) to  
39 address water quality problems and establish corrective actions. The WQPP consists of  
40 four interrelated components: 1) corrective actions that reduce water pollution directly by  
41 using engineering methods, prohibiting or restricting certain activities, tightening existing  
42 regulations, and increasing enforcement; 2) monitoring of water quality, seagrasses, and  
43 coral reefs to provide information about status and trends in the sanctuary; 3) research to  
44 identify and understand cause-and-effect relationships involving pollutants, transport  
45 pathways, and biological communities; and 4) public education and outreach programs to  
46 increase public awareness of the sanctuary, the WQPP, and pollution sources and impacts  
47 on sanctuary resources.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

### **Research and Monitoring**

The FKNMS management plan established a research and monitoring program that focused research on specific management needs. In 2000, staff convened a panel of external peers to review the sanctuary’s science program and provide recommendations for improvements.<sup>45</sup> Based on the panel’s recommendation that sanctuary managers identify priority research needs, staff prepared a Comprehensive Science Plan to identify priority research and monitoring needs explicitly linked to management objectives (Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, 2002).

The three monitoring projects of the WQPP<sup>46</sup> are developing baselines for water quality, seagrass distribution and abundance, and coral cover, diversity, and condition. Such a baseline of information is particularly important to have as the Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan (CERP)<sup>47</sup> is implemented just north of the FKNMS. The CERP is designed so that managers can be adaptive to ecological or hydrological changes that are taking place within or emanating from the Everglades, with possible positive or negative influences on communities in the FKNMS (Keller and Causey, 2005).

Additional monitoring comprises the Marine Zone Monitoring Program, which is designed to detect changes in populations, communities, and human dimensions resulting from no-take zoning (Keller and Donahue, 2006). Coupled with environmental monitoring using data buoys,<sup>48</sup> routine cruises,<sup>49</sup> remote sensing,<sup>50</sup> and paleoclimatic analyses of coral skeletons,<sup>51</sup> the FKNMS is a relatively data-rich environment for detecting presumptive climate change effects.

### **Education and Outreach**

The management plan for the FKNMS includes an education and outreach program that lays out ways that education efforts can directly enhance the various programs to protect sanctuary resources. Public awareness and understanding are essential to achieve resource protection through cooperation and compliance with regulations.

---

<sup>45</sup> **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Year 2000 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary advisory panel meeting. NOAA Website, [http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/research\\_monitoring/sap2000.html](http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/research_monitoring/sap2000.html), accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>46</sup> **Fish and Wildlife Research Institute**, 2007: Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary water quality protection program. Fish and Wildlife Research Institute Website, [http://ocean.floridamarine.org/fknms\\_wqpp/](http://ocean.floridamarine.org/fknms_wqpp/), accessed on 7-27-0007.

<sup>47</sup> **U.S. Army Corps of Engineers**, 2007: Official website of the comprehensive Everglades restoration plan. Comprehensive Everglades Restoration Plan Website, <http://www.evergladesplan.org/index.aspx>, accessed on 5-23-2007.

<sup>48</sup> **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2006: NOAA’s coral health and monitoring homepage. NOAA Website, <http://www.coral.noaa.gov/seakeys/index.shtml>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>49</sup> **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007: NOAA’s south Florida ecosystem research and monitoring program. NOAA Website, <http://www.aoml.noaa.gov/sfp/data.shtml>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>50</sup> **NOAA Coast Watch Program**, 2007: Harmful algae bloom bulletin home page. NOAA Website, Harmful Algae Bloom Bulletin, [http://coastwatch.noaa.gov/hab/bulletins\\_ms.htm](http://coastwatch.noaa.gov/hab/bulletins_ms.htm), accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>51</sup> **Eakin, C.M., P.K. Swart, T.M. Quinn, K.P. Helmle, J.M. Smith, and R.E. Dodge**, 2006: Application of paleoclimatology to coral reef monitoring and management. *Proceedings of the 10<sup>th</sup> International Coral Reef Symposium*, 588-596.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

**Regulations and Enforcement**

The FKNMS management plan includes regulations that have helped managers protect resources of the sanctuary while having the least amount of impact on those who enjoy and utilize sanctuary resources in a conscientious way. In order to maximize existing enforcement programs, the management plan contains an enforcement plan that has served to help focus enforcement on priority problems within the sanctuary. The program also coordinates all the enforcement agencies in the Keys. Enforcement complements education and outreach in efforts to achieve compliance with regulations.

**A6.1.3 Potential Effects of Climate Change on Management**

**Coral Bleaching**

The potential effects of climate change on coral reefs are generally well known (*e.g.*, Smith and Buddemeier, 1992; Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004; Hoegh-Guldberg, 2004; Sheppard, 2006), but the fate of individual reef systems such as the Florida Reef Tract will vary based on a combination of factors related to history, geography, and an understanding of processes that explain the patchiness of coral bleaching and subsequent mortality that occurs on reefs. Coral bleaching was first reported in the Florida Keys in 1973 (Jaap, 1979), with at least seven other episodes documented prior to 2000<sup>41</sup> and a major bleaching event in 2005 that also affected the Caribbean (Miller *et al.*, 2006; Donner, Knutson, and Oppenheimer, 2007). Unfortunately, before-during-and-after sampling has not been conducted during major bleaching events in the Florida Keys (but see Lang *et al.*, 1992 for during- and after-surveys at four sites), which makes assumptions about coral mortality caused by bleaching at best correlative. Hurricanes are an especially confounding factor when they occur during bleaching years, as they did in 1997–98 and 2005. Still, anecdotal evidence suggests that large numbers of corals were killed in 1997–98 when corals remained bleached for two consecutive years.<sup>41</sup> Long-term temperature records do not exist that reveal trends of increasing surface seawater temperature for the Florida Keys, but Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach (2007), using climate models and IPCC greenhouse gas estimates to forecast how climate zones may change in the next 100 years, identified the southeastern United States as a region with the greatest likelihood of developing novel regional climate conditions that would be associated with temperature increases of several degrees. The consequences of such changes on coral reefs in Florida will be dramatic unless significant adaptation or acclimatization occurs.

Governments and agencies have responded to the crisis of coral bleaching with detailed management plans (Westmacott *et al.*, 2000; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006), workshops to develop strategies that support response efforts,<sup>52</sup> and research plans (Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006; Puglise and Kelty, 2007). Two themes have emerged from these efforts. First, effort is needed at local and regional levels to identify and protect bleaching-resistant sites—if they exist. Second, management plans should be developed or modified in the case

---

<sup>52</sup> Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles, 2001: Coral bleaching and marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, Volume 102* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Asia Pacific Coastal Marine Program Report #0102. Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 1-118.

1 of the FKNMS to restore or enhance the natural resilience (Hughes *et al.*, 2003; West and  
2 Salm, 2003) of coral reefs.

3  
4 Response plans to coral bleaching events depend upon increasingly accurate predictions  
5 to help guide resource assessment and monitoring programs, and the NOAA Coral Reef  
6 Watch program has increasingly accurate capability to predict the severity, timing, and  
7 geographic variability of mass bleaching events, largely using remote sensing  
8 technologies.<sup>53</sup> Scientists and managers in Florida have not fully implemented an  
9 assessment and monitoring program that specifically addresses bleaching events,  
10 including the critical before-during-after sampling that is necessary to quantify the  
11 distribution, severity, and consequences of mass bleaching. While such monitoring  
12 programs do nothing to prevent coral bleaching, they do provide data that may identify  
13 bleaching-resistant sites that, if not already protected, can be considered high priority for  
14 management action and protection against local stressors.

15  
16 Currently in Florida, status and trends monitoring has identified habitat types with higher  
17 than average coral cover and abundance, but it is unknown whether these areas are more  
18 or less prone to bleaching because only baseline assessments have been conducted.<sup>54</sup>  
19 Deeper reefs (to 35 meters) may also exhibit less evidence of mortality caused by coral  
20 bleaching (Miller *et al.*, 2001), but even less is known about these habitats—especially  
21 related to the distribution and abundance of coral diseases, which can confound  
22 assessments of factors causing mortality because the temporal scale of monitoring is  
23 sufficient to only assess disease prevalence and not incidence or mortality rates.

#### 24 **No-Take Protection and Zoning for Resistance or Resilience**

25  
26 The use of marine reserves (Sanctuary Preservation Areas, Research-Only Areas, and  
27 Ecological Reserves) in the FKNMS has already been adopted as a tool to manage  
28 multiple user groups throughout the Sanctuary (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996),  
29 and in the Dry Tortugas to enhance fisheries where positive results have been obtained  
30 after only a few years (Ault *et al.*, 2006). Potential exists to use a range of options to  
31 identify bleaching-resistant reefs in the Keys, from simply identifying the best remaining  
32 sites left and using a decision matrix based on factors that may confer resilience to  
33 establish priority sites for protection, to the Bayesian approach of Wooldridge and Done  
34 (2005). Only recently have coral community data been obtained at the relevant spatial  
35 scales and across multiple habitat types (Smith *et al.*, forthcoming). Whatever approach is  
36 used, the results are likely to include sites with high coral cover and abundance, high  
37 diversity, connectivity related to current regimes with the potential to transport larvae,

---

<sup>53</sup> NOAA Satellite and Information Service, 2007: NOAA coral reef watch satellite bleaching monitoring datasets. NOAA Website, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, <http://coralreefwatch.noaa.gov/satellite/ge/>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

<sup>54</sup> Miller, S.L., M. Chiappone, L.M. Rutten, D.W. Swanson, and B. Shank, 2005: *Rapid Assessment and Monitoring of Coral Reef Habitats in the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary: Quick Look Report: Summer 2005 Keys-Wide Sampling*. National Undersea Research Center, University of North Carolina at Wilmington, Wilimington, NC.

1 and protection from local stressors including overfishing and pollution (Done, 1999;  
2 Hughes *et al.*, 2003).<sup>55</sup>

3  
4 In the Florida Keys, marine protected areas date to 1960 for John Pennekamp Coral Reef  
5 State Park, 1975 for the Key Largo National Marine Sanctuary, 1981 for Looe Key  
6 National Marine Sanctuary, and 1990 for expansion of these sites to include 2,800 square  
7 nautical miles of coastal waters that are now designated as the Florida Keys National  
8 Marine Sanctuary. The Tortugas Ecological Reserve was added in 2001, and six years  
9 later a 46-square-mile Research Natural Area was also established within Dry Tortugas  
10 National Park.<sup>56</sup> While spatial resolution among habitat types from Miami to the Dry  
11 Tortugas is not as extensive as in the Great Barrier Reef, work similar to Wooldridge and  
12 Done (2005) should be evaluated for application to the Florida Keys. For example, a  
13 combination of retrospective sea-surface temperature studies using NOAA Coral Reef  
14 Watch products, combined with *in situ* temperature data, water quality monitoring data,<sup>57</sup>  
15 and detailed site characterizations<sup>58</sup> might help identify bleaching-resistant sites (if  
16 temporally- and spatially-relevant sampling is conducted before, during, and after a  
17 bleaching event), identify candidate sites for protection based on resilience criteria, and in  
18 general validate the concept of marine reserve networks in the region as a management  
19 response to coral bleaching threats.

#### 20 21 **Geographic Range Extensions of Coral Reefs in Florida**

22 Coral reefs in south Florida represent the northern geographic limit of reef development  
23 in the United States. It is reasonable to assume that some northward expansion of either  
24 the whole reef community or individual species may occur as a result of warming  
25 climate. Indeed, such a northward expansion may already be in progress, but caution is  
26 necessary before assigning too much significance to what might be an anomalous event.  
27 Specifically, *Acropora cervicornis* was discovered growing in large thickets off Fort  
28 Lauderdale in 1998 (Vargas-Ángel, Thomas, and Hoke, 2003) and *A. palmata* was  
29 discovered off Pompano Beach in northern Broward county (Precht and Aronson, 2004).  
30 It is possible that these populations—over 50 km northward of their previously known

---

<sup>55</sup> See also **Salm**, R.V., S.E. Smith, and G. Llewellyn, 2001: Mitigating the impact of coral bleaching through Marine Protected Area design. In: *Coral Bleaching: Causes, Consequences and Response* [Schuttenberg, H.Z. (ed.)]. Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium on Coral Bleaching: Assessing and linking ecological and socioeconomic impacts, future trends and mitigation planning. Coastal Management Report 2230, Coastal Resources Center, University of Rhode Island, Narragansett, pp. 81-88.

And **West**, J.M., 2001: Environmental determinants of resistance to coral bleaching: implications for management of marine protected areas. In: *Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, Volume 102* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Asia Pacific Coastal Marine Program Report #0102. Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 40-52.

<sup>56</sup> **National Park Service**, 1-18-2007: Dry Tortugas National Park - research natural area will be effective January 19, 2007. National Park Service Website,

<http://www.nps.gov/drto/parknews/researchnaturalarea.htm>, accessed on 7-26-2007.

<sup>57</sup> **Boyer**, J.N. and H.O. Briceño, 2006: *FY2005 Annual Report of the Water Quality Monitoring Project for the Water Quality Protection Program of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary*. Southeast Environmental Research Center, Florida International University, Miami, FL, pp.1-83.

<sup>58</sup> **Miller**, S.L., D.W. Swanson, and M. Chiappone, 2002: Multiple spatial scale assessment of coral reef and hard-bottom community structure in the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary. In: *Proceedings of the 9th International Coral Reef Symposium*, pp. 69-74.

1 northern limit—are a result of recent climate warming known to have occurred in the  
2 western Atlantic (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Levitus *et al.*, 2000; Barnett, Pierce, and  
3 Schnur, 2001). It is also possible that these reefs represent a remnant population or a  
4 chance recruitment event based on a short-term but favorable set of circumstances that  
5 will disappear with the next hurricane, cold front, disease epizootic, or bleaching event.  
6 Still, the presence of these acroporid reefs is suggestive of what might happen as climate  
7 warms. Interestingly, the presence of these northern acroporid populations matches the  
8 previous northern extension of reef development in the region during the middle  
9 Holocene (Lighty, Macintyre, and Stuckenrath, 1978), when sea surface temperatures  
10 were warmer. Reefs up to 10 m thick grew off Palm Beach County in the middle  
11 Holocene (Lighty, Macintyre, and Stuckenrath, 1978) and when temperatures started to  
12 cool 5,000 years before present reef development moved south to its current location  
13 (Precht and Aronson, 2004).

14  
15 Despite these northern extensions in the geographic distributions of corals seen in the  
16 fossil record, predicting future geographic expansions in Florida is complicated by factors  
17 other than temperature that influence coral reefs, including light, carbonate saturation  
18 state, pollution, disease (Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004), and a shift from a  
19 carbonate to siliciclastic sedimentary regime along with increasing nutrient  
20 concentrations as latitude increases up the east coast of Florida (Precht and Aronson,  
21 2004). One thing, however, is certain: geographic shifts of reefs in Florida that result  
22 from global warming will not mitigate existing factors that today cause widespread local  
23 and regional coral reef decline (Precht and Aronson, 2004). Further, if we assume that the  
24 reefs of the mid-Holocene were in better condition than today’s reefs, they may not prove  
25 to be a good analogue for predicting the future geographic trajectory of today’s reefs.  
26 Because corals in Florida are already severely impacted by disease, bleaching, pollution,  
27 and overfishing, expansion at best will be severely limited compared to what might occur  
28 if the ecosystem were intact.

29  
30 At the global scale and across deep geological time, range extensions to higher latitudes  
31 occurred for hard corals that survived the Cretaceous warming period (KieSSLing, 2001;  
32 Kleypas, 2006), and some coral species today that are found in the Red Sea and Persian  
33 Gulf can survive under much greater temperature ranges than they experience throughout  
34 the Indo-Pacific (Coles and Fadlallah, 1991). Both of these examples, however, probably  
35 reflect long-term adaptation by natural selection and not short-term acclimatization  
36 (Kleypas, 2006). At shorter times scales (decades), corals that survive rapid climate  
37 warming may be those that are able to quickly colonize and survive at higher latitudes  
38 where maximum summer temperatures may be reduced compared to their previous  
39 geographic range. An alternative to migration is the situation where corals adapt to  
40 increasing temperatures at ecological time scales (decades), and there is some evidence to  
41 suggest that this might occur (Guzmán and Cortés, 2001; Podestá and Glynn, 2001).  
42 However, the ability to predict if corals will acclimate is complicated because absolute  
43 values and adaptive potential are likely to vary across species (Hughes *et al.*, 2003;



1 Kleypas, 2006).<sup>59</sup> Acclimation without range expansion is a topic of great significance  
2 related to coral bleaching.

3  
4 Another question related to the potential for coral reef migration to higher latitudes in  
5 Florida is related to understanding factors that currently limit expansion northward. Cold-  
6 water temperature tolerances for individual corals are not well known; however, their  
7 present-day global distribution generally follows the 18 °C monthly minimum seawater  
8 isotherm (Kleypas, McManus, and Mendez, 1999; Kleypas, Buddemeier, and Gattuso,  
9 2001; Buddemeier, Kleypas, and Aronson, 2004). South Florida is located between the 18  
10 and 20 °C isotherm and is thus significantly affected by severe winter cold fronts,  
11 especially for corals in shallow water (Burns, 1985; Walker, Rouse, and Huh, 1987).<sup>60</sup>  
12 Well documented coral die-offs due to cold water fronts have occurred repeatedly  
13 throughout the Florida Keys (Davis, 1982; Porter, Battey, and Smith, 1982; Walker *et al.*,  
14 1982; Roberts, Rouse, and Walker, 1983; Shinn, 1989); and as far south as the Dry  
15 Tortugas (Porter, Battey, and Smith, 1982; Jaap and Hallock, 1990).<sup>61</sup> Porter and Tougas  
16 (2001) documented a decreasing trend in generic coral diversity along the east coast of  
17 Florida, but a number of coral species extend well beyond the 18 °C isotherm with at least  
18 two species surviving as far north as North Carolina, likely due to the influence of the  
19 Gulf Stream. Thus, climate warming that has the potential to influence the impact of  
20 winter cold fronts may influence the range expansion of corals in Florida.

21  
22 Finally, the above examples have focused mostly on the acroporid corals, which represent  
23 only two species out of more than forty that are found regionally (Jaap, 1984). Obviously,  
24 when considering range expansion of the total reef system, and not just two coral species,  
25 models designed to optimize or anticipate management actions that conserve existing  
26 habitat or predict future locations for habitat protection are likely to be exceedingly  
27 complicated. In Florida, if reefs are in sufficiently good condition in the future to act as  
28 seed populations for range expansion, one management action to anticipate the effects of  
29 climate change would be to protect habitats similar to those that thrived during the middle  
30 Holocene when coral reefs flourished north of their current distribution (Lighty,  
31 Macintyre, and Stuckenrath, 1978). However, existing declines in the acroporids  
32 throughout Florida and the Caribbean (Gardner *et al.*, 2003; Precht and Miller, 2006)  
33 suggest that at least for these two species, the major framework building species in the  
34 region, expansion will not occur unless factors such as disease and coral bleaching are  
35 mitigated.

---

<sup>59</sup> See also **Ware**, J.R., 1997: The effect of global warming on coral reefs: acclimate or die. In: *Proceedings of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium, Volume 1*, pp. 527-532.

<sup>60</sup> See also **Jones**, J.A., 1977: Morphology and development of southeastern Florida patch reefs. In: *Proceedings of the 3rd International Coral Reef Symposium, Volume 2*. University of Miami, Miami, Florida, pp. 232-235.

<sup>61</sup> See also **Jaap**, W.C. and F.J. Sargent, 1994: The status of the remnant population of *Acropora cervicornis* (Lamarck, 1816) at Dry Tortugas National Park, Florida, with a discussion of possible causes of changes since 1881. In: *Proceedings of the Colloquium on Global Aspects of Coral Reefs: Health, Hazards and History* [Ginsburg, R.N. (ed.)] Rosenstiel School of Marine and Atmospheric Science, University of Miami, Miami, Florida pp. 101-105.

1 **A6.1.4 Adapting Management to Climate Change**

2 The Sanctuary Advisory Council (SAC) is a committee of stakeholder representatives  
3 that provides advise to sanctuary managers across a broad range of topics and issues  
4 (Keller and Causey, 2005), particularly regarding new issues as they arise. The SAC has  
5 a climate change working group, which can work with sanctuary managers to help  
6 develop adaptation approaches best suited for the Florida Keys (see also section 8.4.4.2  
7 of the Marine Protected Areas chapter).

8  
9 Little has been done to restore mangrove habitat in the Florida Keys, where many  
10 shorelines were cleared for development. In addition to supporting critical nurseries,  
11 mangroves produce tannins and other dissolved organic compounds that absorb  
12 ultraviolet radiation. Dependable sources of these compounds from intact mangrove  
13 coastlines can provide reefs with some protection from photo-oxidative stress that  
14 contributes to bleaching. Mangrove restoration should be considered as a management  
15 strategy that may become increasingly important in the context of climate change - for  
16 shoreline protection as well as the benefits noted above.

17  
18 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority (next section) has a Climate Change  
19 Response Program and an action plan (section 8.4.4 of the Marine Protected Areas  
20 chapter) that is a model for the FKNMS, which is completing a bleaching response plan,  
21 but has not yet developed a broader plan about responding to climate change. Such a plan  
22 is a logical next step. At the same time, The Nature Conservancy is leading the Florida  
23 Reef Resilience Program<sup>62</sup> to investigate possible patterns of resilience along the Florida  
24 Reef Tract and recommend actions.

25 **A6.2 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**

26 **A6.2.1 Introduction**

27 The Great Barrier Reef (GBR) is a maze of reefs and islands spanning an area of 348,000  
28 km<sup>2</sup> off the Queensland coast in northeast Australia (Fig. A6.1). It spans 14 degrees of  
29 latitude, making it the largest coral reef ecosystem in the world and one of the richest in  
30 biological diversity. The GBR supports 1,500 species of fish, 350 species of hard corals,  
31 more than 4,000 species of mollusks, 500 species of algae, six of the world's seven  
32 species of marine turtles, 24 species of seabirds, more than 30 species of whales and  
33 dolphins, and the dugong. The GBR was chosen as a case study because it is a large  
34 marine protected area that has moderate representation of no-take areas (33%) and has  
35 been under a management regime since 1975.

36  
37  
38  
39 **Figure A6.1.** Map of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park showing the adjacent  
40 catchment in Queensland. Modified from Haynes (2001) and courtesy of the Great  
41 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.  
42

---

<sup>62</sup> <http://www.nature.org/wherewework/northamerica/states/florida/preserves/art17499.html>

1 The GBR already appears to have been affected by climate change. The first reports of  
2 coral bleaching in the GBR appeared in the literature in the 1980s<sup>63</sup> and have continued  
3 to increase in frequency since then (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Done *et al.*, 2003). Coral-  
4 coring work done at the Australian Institute of Marine Science detected the earliest  
5 growth hiatus associated with mass coral bleaching in 1998 (Lough, 2007). There have  
6 been nine bleaching events on the GBR, with three major events in the last decade  
7 correlating with elevated sea temperatures and causing damage to parts of the reef. These  
8 early signs of climate change, and the extensive research and monitoring data that are  
9 available for the GBR, make it a suitable case study for this report.

10  
11 The conservation values of the GBR are recognized in its status as a World Heritage Area  
12 (listed in 1981), and its resources are protected within the Great Barrier Reef Marine  
13 Park. The enactment of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Act in 1975 established the  
14 legal framework for protecting these values. The goal of the legislation is “...to provide  
15 for the protection, wise use, understanding and enjoyment of the Great Barrier Reef in  
16 perpetuity through the care and development of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park.”

#### 17 **A6.2.2 Managing the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park**

18 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority has management strategies in place to  
19 address current stresses on the GBR. Stressors include terrestrial inputs of sediment,  
20 nutrients, and pesticides from coastal catchments; fisheries extraction; tourism and  
21 recreational activities; and changes to coastal hydrology as a result of coastal  
22 development and climate change. Sustainability of the environmental and social values of  
23 the Great Barrier Reef depend largely (and in most cases, entirely) on a healthy, self-  
24 perpetuating ecosystem. Reducing pressures on this system has been a focus of  
25 management activities over the last decade.

26  
27 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park was rezoned in 2003 to increase the area of highly  
28 protected no-take zones to 33%, with at least 20% protected in each habitat bioregion.  
29 These no-take areas aim to conserve biodiversity, increasing the potential of maintaining  
30 an intact ecosystem, with larger no-take areas including more representative habitats.<sup>64</sup>

#### 31 32 **Current Approaches to Management**

33 There are 26 major catchments that drain into the GBR (Fig. A6.1) covering an area of  
34 425,964 km<sup>2</sup>. Cropping (primarily of sugar cane), grazing, heavy industry and urban  
35 settlement are the main land uses. The *Reef Water Quality Protection Plan* (The State of  
36 Queensland and Commonwealth of Australia, 2003) is a joint state and federal initiative  
37 that aims to *halt and reverse the decline in the quality of water entering the Reef by 2013*.

---

<sup>63</sup> **Oliver, J.**, 1985: Recurrent seasonal bleaching and mortality of corals on the Great Barrier Reef. In: *Proceedings of the 5th International Coral Reef Symposium, Volume 4*, pp. 201-206.

<sup>64</sup> **Day, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, G. De'ath, S. Slegers, B. Barnett, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, J. Innes, J. Oliver, T. Ward, and D. Lowe**, 2002: The representative areas program for protecting biodiversity in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium, Volume 2*, 23, October 2000, Bali, Indonesia, pp. 687-696.

**Day, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, and J. Innes**, 2004: Representative areas program - an ecosystem approach to biodiversity protection planning. In: *Proceedings of the Second International Tropical Ecosystems Management Symposium*, March 2003, Manila, Philippines.

1 Under this initiative, diffuse sources of pollution are targeted through a range of  
2 voluntary and incentive-driven strategies to address water quality entering the GBR from  
3 activities in the catchments.

4  
5 Important commercial fisheries in the GBR include trawling that mainly targets prawns  
6 and reef-based hook-and-line that targets coral trout and sweetlip emperor, inshore fin  
7 fish, and three crab fisheries (spanner, blue, and mud). None of these fisheries is  
8 considered overexploited; however, there is considerable unused (latent) effort in both the  
9 commercial and recreational sectors. Commercial fisheries contribute A\$251 million to  
10 the Australian economy (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, 2007). Fisheries  
11 management is undertaken by the Queensland Government and includes a range of  
12 measures such as limited entry, management plans, catch and effort limits, permits, and  
13 industry accreditation. Recreational activities (including fishing) contribute A\$623  
14 million per annum to the region (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, 2007), and  
15 recreational fishing is subject to size and bag limits for many species.

16  
17 Over 1 million tourists visit the GBR annually, contributing A\$6.1 billion to the  
18 Australian economy (Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, 2007). The Great Barrier  
19 Reef Marine Park Authority manages tourism using permits, zoning, and other planning  
20 tools such as management plans and site plans (Smith *et al.*, 2004). Visitation is  
21 concentrated in the Cairns and Whitsunday Island areas, and an eco-certification program  
22 encourages best practices and sustainable tourism (Skeat, 2003).

23  
24 As one of the fastest growing regions in Australia, the GBR coast is being extensively  
25 developed through the addition of tourist resorts, urban subdivisions, marinas, and major  
26 infrastructure such as roads and sewage treatment plants. All levels of government  
27 regulate coastal development depending on the scale and potential impacts of the  
28 development. Local government uses local planning schemes and permits, state  
29 government uses the Integrated Planning Act,<sup>65</sup> and in the case of significant  
30 developments, the federal government uses the Environment Protection and Biodiversity  
31 Conservation Act<sup>66</sup> to assess the environmental impacts of proposals. These efforts have  
32 resulted in an increase in biodiversity protection, a multi-stakeholder agreement to  
33 address water quality, and a well-managed, multiple-use marine protected area.

#### 34 **Vulnerability of the Great Barrier Reef to Climate Change**

35  
36 Despite these landmark initiatives, the ability of the ecosystem to sustain provision of  
37 goods and services is under renewed threat from climate change (Wilkinson, 2004).  
38 Climate change is rapidly emerging as one of the most significant challenges facing the  
39 GBR and its management. While MPA managers cannot directly control climate, and  
40 climate change cannot be fully averted, there is an urgent need to identify possibilities for  
41 reducing climate-induced stresses on the GBR (Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006). The  
42 GBR Climate Change Response Program has undertaken an assessment of the  
43 vulnerability of the GBR to climate change and is developing strategies to enhance

---

<sup>65</sup> Number 69 of 1997

<sup>66</sup> Number 91 of 1999

1 ecosystem resilience, sustain regional communities and industries that rely on the GBR,  
2 and provide supportive policy and collaborations.

3  
4 The Climate Change Response Program used regional GBR climate projections to assess  
5 the vulnerability of species, habitats, and key processes to climate change. Some relevant  
6 projections emerged. Regional GBR sea temperatures have increased by 0.4°C since 1850  
7 and are projected to increase by a further 1–3°C above present temperatures by 2100 (Fig.  
8 A6.2). Sea level rise is projected to be 30–60 cm by 2100, and ocean chemistry is  
9 projected to decrease in pH by 0.4–0.5 units by 2100 (Lough, 2007). There is less  
10 certainty about: changes to tropical cyclones, with a 5–12% increase in wind speed  
11 projected; rainfall and river flow, with projected increases in intensity of droughts and  
12 rainfall events; and ENSOs, which will continue to be a source of high interannual  
13 variability (Lough, 2007).

14  
15  
16  
17 **Figure A6.2.** Sea surface temperature (SST) projections for the Great Barrier Reef  
18 (GBR) (Lough, 2007).

#### 19 20 **Coral Bleaching**

21 The key threats to the GBR ecosystem from climate change manifest in impacts to all  
22 components of the ecosystem, from species to populations to habitats and key processes.  
23 Although coral reefs represent only 6% of the Great Barrier Reef, they are an iconic  
24 component of the system and support a diversity of life. Unusually warm summers  
25 caused significant coral bleaching events in the GBR in 1998, 2002, and 2006. More than  
26 50% of reefs were affected by bleaching in the summers of 1998 and 2002, following  
27 persistent high sea temperatures throughout the GBR. Fortunately, temperatures cooled  
28 soon enough to avoid catastrophic impacts, yet approximately 5% of reefs suffered long-  
29 term damage in each year. Stressful temperatures were confined to the southern parts of  
30 the GBR in the summer of 2006 and persisted long enough to cause over 40% of the  
31 corals to die. Future warming of the world’s oceans is projected to increase the frequency  
32 and severity of coral bleaching events, making further damage to the GBR inevitable  
33 (Hoegh-Guldberg *et al.*, 2007). Continued monitoring efforts—such as those proposed in  
34 the GBR Coral Bleaching Response Plan—will be essential for understanding this  
35 ecosystem change.

#### 36 37 **Impacts to Species**

38 Mass mortalities of seabirds and failures of nesting (death of all chicks) have been  
39 observed at several key seabird rookeries during anomalously warm summers on the  
40 GBR (coinciding with mass coral bleaching). New research is showing that provisioning  
41 failure, resulting when adults have to travel too far to find food for their chicks, causes  
42 these deaths (Congdon *et al.*, 2007). This is thought to be due to decreased availability of  
43 food fish caused by changes in circulation patterns (location and depth of cool water  
44 bodies preferred by these fish). Marine turtles are also at risk from climate change, with  
45 increasing air temperatures projected to alter the gender ratio of turtle hatchlings; during  
46 periods of extremely high temperatures in the past, complete nesting failures have been  
47 observed. Sea level rise also poses a threat to seabirds and turtles, as nesting islands and

1 beaches become inundated and suitability of alternative beaches is reduced by coastal  
2 development.

3  
4 Fish, shark, and ray populations will be most affected by reductions in reef habitat, with  
5 resultant decreases in diversity and abundance and changes in community composition  
6 (Munday *et al.*, 2007; Chin *et al.*, 2007). Conversely, small increases in sea temperature  
7 may benefit larval fish by accelerating embryonic and larval growth and enhancing larval  
8 swimming ability. This shows that climate change will not affect all organisms equally,  
9 and some populations or groups (such as macroalgae) may in fact benefit by increasing  
10 their range or growth rate. However, this will change the distributions of species as they  
11 migrate southward or offshore. This in turn would likely result in population explosions  
12 of fast growing, ‘weed-like’ species to the detriment of other species, thereby reducing  
13 species diversity. As species and habitats decline, so too does the productivity of the  
14 system and its ability to respond to future change.

#### 15 16 **Impacts to Key Processes**

17  
18 The reef matrix itself is at risk from climate change through loss of coral—not only from  
19 coral bleaching but also physical damage from more intense storms and cyclones and  
20 reduced coral calcification rates as ocean pH decreases. This is critical from the  
21 perspective of the structural integrity of the GBR as well as the services reefs provide to  
22 other organisms, such as habitat and food.

23  
24 Primary productivity, through changes to microbial, plankton, and seagrass communities,  
25 is likely to be affected as changes in the carbon cycle occur. Changes in rainfall patterns,  
26 runoff, and sea temperature also are likely to change plankton, seagrass, and microbial  
27 communities. These changes reduce trophic efficiency, which decreases food quality and  
28 quantity for higher trophic levels with a resultant decline in abundance of animals at  
29 higher trophic levels. Productivity is also likely to be sensitive to changes in ocean  
30 circulation as nutrient transport patterns change, thereby reducing nutrient availability  
31 and primary production.

32  
33 Connectivity is at risk from changes to ocean circulation patterns and ENSO; as ocean  
34 currents and upwelling are affected, so too will be the hydrological cycles that transport  
35 material latitudinally and across the shelf. Connectivity will also be affected by coastal  
36 changes such as sea level rise and altered rainfall regimes, which are likely to have the  
37 most influence on coastal connectivity between estuaries and the inshore lagoon of the  
38 GBR. As temperature-induced stratification reduces wind-driven upwelling, offshore  
39 hydrological cycles are affected, potentially reducing connectivity between offshore  
40 reefs. All these changes could interact to affect the survival and dispersal patterns of  
41 larvae between reefs.

42  
43 As biodiversity and connectivity are lost, the system becomes less complex, which  
44 initiates a cascade of events that results in long-term change. Simplified systems are  
45 generally less resilient and therefore less able to absorb shocks and disturbances while  
46 continuing to maintain their original levels of function. Reducing biodiversity and  
47 connectivity reduces the number of components and networks that can buffer against

1 poor water quality, overfishing, and climate change. Maintaining a healthy ecosystem  
2 requires that ecological processes be preserved and that there is sufficient biodiversity to  
3 respond to changes. Larger marine protected areas that include representative habitats and  
4 protect biodiversity and connectivity may be more resilient to climate change (Roberts *et*  
5 *al.*, 2006).

### 6 **A6.2.3 Adapting Management to Climate Change**

7 In the face of these potential climate change impacts, the GBR Climate Change Response  
8 Program developed a Climate Change Action Plan in 2006. The action plan has five main  
9 objectives:

- 10
- 11 1. Address climate change knowledge gaps
- 12 2. Communicate with and educate communities about climate change implications for  
13 the GBR
- 14 3. Support greenhouse gas emissions mitigation strategies in the GBR region
- 15 4. Enhance resilience of the GBR ecosystem to climate change
- 16 5. Support GBR communities and industries to adapt to climate change
- 17

18 Key strategies within the action plan include assessing the vulnerability of the GBR  
19 ecological and social systems to climate change; developing an agency-wide  
20 communication strategy for climate change; facilitating greenhouse gas emissions  
21 reductions using the Reef Guardian incentive project; undertaking resilience mapping for  
22 the entire GBR and reviewing management arrangements in light of the relative resilience  
23 of areas of the GBR; and working with industries to promote industry-led initiatives to  
24 address climate change.

#### 25 **Addressing Information Gaps**

26 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority (GBRMPA) has been working with  
27 scientists to assess the vulnerability of the different components of the GBR ecosystem,  
28 industries, and communities to climate change. A resultant publication identifies the key  
29 vulnerabilities for all components of the ecosystem, from plankton to corals to marine  
30 mammals, and makes management recommendations that aim to maximize the ability of  
31 the system to resist or adapt to climate changes (Johnson and Marshall, 2007). Examples  
32 of management recommendations include addressing water quality in inshore areas where  
33 primary productivity is high (*e.g.*, areas with extensive seagrass meadows or with critical  
34 plankton aggregations). Another example is conserving landward areas for migration of  
35 mangroves and wetlands as sea level rises, including possible land acquisitions and  
36 removal of barrier structures. Finally, protecting sites of specific importance from coral  
37 bleaching through shading or water mixing in summer months is an option. Reducing  
38 other impacts on critical habitats or species is also recommended (*e.g.*, improving shark  
39 fisheries management, reducing disturbance of seabird nesting sites during breeding  
40 season, reducing boat traffic and entanglement of marine mammals, protecting key turtle  
41 nesting beaches, enhancing resilience of coral reefs by improving water quality,  
42 protecting herbivores, and managing other destructive activities such as anchoring and  
43 snorkeling). These recommendations will be used to review existing management  
44 strategies and incorporate climate change considerations where needed.  
45

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

**Raising Awareness and Changing Behavior**

The Climate Change Response Program developed a communication strategy in 2004 that aims to increase public awareness of the implications of climate change for the GBR. This strategy is being amended to include all GBRMPA activities and ensure that all groups consistently present key climate change messages. This is particularly important for groups that are addressing those factors that confer resilience to the ecosystem, such as water quality and fisheries. The key messages of the agency-wide communication strategy are that climate change is real, climate change is happening now, climate change is affecting the GBR, the GBRMPA is working to address climate change, and individuals’ actions can make a difference.

The Reef Guardian program is a partnership with schools and local governments in GBR catchments. The program is voluntary and provides resources for schools and councils to incorporate sustainability initiatives into their everyday business. A sustainability and climate change syllabus has been developed for primary schools and will teach students about climate change and the implications for the GBR, as well as provide greenhouse gas emission reductions projects for the schools. The local council participants have been provided with similar information, and in order to be a recognized Reef Guardian, a council must implement a minimum number of sustainability modules. This partnership currently has 180 schools and is incrementally working toward having 20 local councils participating by 2010.

**Toward Resilience-Based Management**

One of the most significant strategies that coral reef managers can employ in the face of climate change is to enhance the resilience of the ecosystem (West *et al.*, 2006). Working with researchers, the Climate Change Response Program has identified resilience factors that include water quality, coral cover, community composition, larval supply, recruitment success, herbivory, disease, and effective management. These will be used to identify areas of the GBR that have high resilience to climate change and should be protected from other stresses, as well as areas that have low resilience and may require active management to enhance their resilience. Recognized research institutes have provided essential science that has formed the basis of this project and will continue collaborations between GBRMPA and researchers. Ultimately, it is hoped that this information can be used to review existing management regimes (such as planning and permit tools) to protect areas with high resilience as source sites and actively work in areas with low resilience to improve their condition.

**Partnering with Stakeholders**

The GBRMPA has been working with the GBR tourism industry to facilitate development of the GBR Tourism and Climate Change Action Strategy. This initiative was the result of a workshop with representative tourism operators that generated the GBR Tourism and Climate Change Action Group. This industry-led group has developed the action strategy to identify how climate change will affect the industry, how the industry can respond, and what options are available for the industry to become climate sustainable. The marine tourism industry considers reef-based activities particularly susceptible to the effects of climate change. Loss of coral from bleaching and changes to



1 the abundance and location of fish, marine mammals, and other iconic species are likely  
2 to have the greatest impact on the industry. Increasing intensity of cyclones and storms  
3 will affect trip scheduling, industry seasonality, tourism infrastructure (particularly on  
4 islands), and future tourism industry development. Potential strategies for adapting to  
5 climate change include product diversification, new marketing initiatives, and targeting  
6 eco-accredited programs.

### 7 **Managing Uncertainty**

9 A critical component of all these strategies is the ability to manage flexibly and respond  
10 to change rapidly. This is important to enable managers to shift focus as new information  
11 becomes available or climate impact events occur. In reviewing existing management  
12 regimes, there will be a focus on ways of making management more flexible and drawing  
13 on management tools as they are needed. This type of adaptive management is essential  
14 for addressing the uncertain and shifting climate change impacts on the GBR. Given the  
15 scale of the issue and the fact that the cause and many of the solutions lie outside the  
16 jurisdiction of GBRMPA managers, effective partnerships with other levels of  
17 government and stakeholders to work cooperatively on climate change have been  
18 developed and will continue to be integral to adapting management to the climate change  
19 challenge.

## 20 **A6.3 Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National** 21 **Monument**

### 22 **A6.3.1 Introduction**

23 The Hawaiian Islands are one of the most isolated archipelagos in the world and stretch  
24 for over 2,500 km, from the island of Hawaii in the southeast to Kure Atoll (the world's  
25 highest-latitude atoll) in the northwest (Grigg, 1982; 1988; Friedlander *et al.*, 2005).  
26 Beginning at Nihoa and Mokumanamana Islands (~7 and 10 million years old,  
27 respectively) and extending to Midway and Kure Atolls (~28 million years old), the  
28 Northwestern Hawaiian Islands (NWHI) represent the older portion of the emergent  
29 archipelago (Grigg, 1988). The majority of the islets, shoals, and atolls are low-lying and  
30 remain uninhabited, although Midway, Kure, Laysan Island, and French Frigate Shoals  
31 have all been occupied for extended periods over the last century by various government  
32 agencies (Shallenberger, 2006). Because of their location in the central Pacific, the  
33 NWHI are influenced by large-wave events resulting from extratropical storms passing  
34 across the North Pacific each winter that have a profound influence on the geology and  
35 biology of the region (Grigg, 1998; Dollar and Grigg, 2004; Jokiel *et al.*, 2004;  
36 Friedlander *et al.*, 2005).

### 37 **Ecosystem Structure**

39 With coral reefs around the world in decline (Jackson *et al.*, 2001; Bellwood *et al.*, 2004;  
40 Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005), it is extremely rare to be able to examine a coral reef ecosystem  
41 that is relatively free of human influence and consisting of a wide range of healthy coral  
42 reef habitats. The remoteness and limited reef fishing and other human activities that  
43 have occurred in the NWHI have resulted in minimal anthropogenic impacts (Friedlander  
44 and DeMartini, 2002; Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). The NWHI therefore provide a unique

1 opportunity to assess how a “natural” coral reef ecosystem functions in the absence of  
2 major localized human intervention.

3  
4 One of the most striking and unique components of the NWHI ecosystem is the  
5 abundance and dominance of large apex predators such as sharks and jacks (Friedlander  
6 and DeMartini, 2002; DeMartini, Friedlander, and Holzwarth, 2005). These predators  
7 exert a strong top-down control on the ecosystem (DeMartini, Friedlander, and  
8 Holzwarth, 2005; DeMartini and Friedlander, 2006) and have been depleted in most other  
9 locations around the world (Myers and Worm, 2003; 2005). Differences in fish biomass  
10 between the main Hawaiian Islands (MHI) and NWHI represent both near-extirpation of  
11 apex predators and heavy exploitation of lower-trophic-level fishes on shallow reefs of  
12 the MHI (Friedlander and DeMartini, 2002; DeMartini and Friedlander, 2006).

13  
14 The geographic isolation of the Hawaiian Islands has resulted in some of the highest  
15 endemism of any tropical marine ecosystem on earth (Jokiel, 1987; Kay and Palumbi,  
16 1987; Randall, 1998) (Fig. A6.3). Some of these endemics are a dominant component of  
17 the community, resulting in a unique ecosystem that has extremely high conservation  
18 value (DeMartini and Friedlander, 2004; Maragos *et al.*, 2004). With species loss in the  
19 sea accelerating, the irreplaceability of these species makes Hawaii an important  
20 biodiversity hotspot (Roberts *et al.*, 2002; DeMartini and Friedlander, 2006).<sup>67</sup> The coral  
21 assemblage in the NWHI contains a large number of endemics (~30%), including at least  
22 seven species of acroporid corals (Maragos *et al.*, 2004). Acroporids are the dominant  
23 reef-building corals in the Indo-Pacific, but are absent from the MHI (Grigg, 1981; Grigg,  
24 Wells, and Wallace, 1981). Kure Atoll is the world’s most northern atoll and is referred  
25 to as the Darwin Point, where coral growth, subsidence, and erosion balance one another  
26 (Grigg, 1982).

27  
28  
29  
30 **Figure A6.3.** Endemic species from the Hawaiian Islands. A. Masked angelfish,  
31 *Genicanthus personatus* (Photo courtesy of J. Watt), B. Rice coral, *Montipora*  
32 *capitata*, and finger coral, *Porites compressa* (photo courtesy of C. Hunter), C.  
33 Hawaiian hermit crab, *Calcinus laurentae* (photo courtesy of S. Godwin), D. Red  
34 alga, *Acrosymphyton brainardii* (photo courtesy of P. Vroom).

35  
36 The NWHI represent important habitat for a number of threatened and endangered  
37 species. The Hawaiian monk seal is one of the most critically endangered marine  
38 mammals in the United States (1,300 individuals) and depends almost entirely on the  
39 islands of the NWHI for breeding and the surrounding reefs for sustenance (Antonelis *et*  
40 *al.*, 2006). Over 90% of all sub-adult and adult Hawaiian green sea turtles found  
41 throughout Hawaii inhabit the NWHI (Balazs and Chaloupka, 2006). Additionally,  
42 seabird colonies in the NWHI constitute one of the largest and most important  
43 assemblages of seabirds in the world (Friedlander *et al.*, 2005).

---

<sup>67</sup> See also Allen, G.R., 2002: Indo-Pacific coral-reef fishes as indicators of conservation hotspots. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium, Volume 2*, 23, October 2000, Bali, Indonesia, pp. 921-926.

1  
2 In contrast to the MHI, the reefs of the NWHI are relatively free of major human  
3 influences. The few alien species known from the NWHI are restricted to the  
4 anthropogenic habitats of Midway Atoll and French Frigate Shoals (Friedlander *et al.*,  
5 2005). Disease levels in corals in the NWHI were much lower than those reported from  
6 other locations in the Indo-Pacific (Aeby, 2006).

#### 7 8 **Existing Stressors**

9 Although limited in scale, a number of past and present human activities have negatively  
10 affected the NWHI. Marine debris is currently one of the largest threats to the reefs of the  
11 NWHI (Boland *et al.*, 2006; Dameron *et al.*, 2007). Marine debris has caused  
12 entanglement of a number of protected species and damage to benthic habitats and is a  
13 potential vector for invasive species in the NWHI (Dameron *et al.*, 2007). An extensive  
14 debris removal effort between 1999 and 2003 has now surpassed the accumulation rate,  
15 resulting in a reduction in overall accumulation levels (Boland *et al.*, 2006). However,  
16 much of this debris originates thousands of kilometers away in the north Pacific, making  
17 the solution to the problem both a national and international issue. Other direct human  
18 stresses such as pollution, coastal development, and ship groundings, have had negative  
19 consequences in localized areas but have been limited to a small number of locations.  
20

21 The NWHI are influenced by a dynamic environment that includes large annual water  
22 temperature fluctuations, seasonally high wave energy, and strong inter-annual and inter-  
23 decadal variations in ocean productivity (Polovina *et al.*, 1994; Grigg, 1998; Polovina *et al.*,  
24 2001; Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). As a result of these influences, natural stressors play  
25 an important role in the structure of the NWHI ecosystem. Large swell events generated  
26 every winter commonly produce waves up to 10–12 m in vertical height and between 15–  
27 20 m about once every decade (Grigg *et al.*, 2007). This limits the growth and abundance  
28 of coral communities, particularly on the north and western sides of all the islands. The  
29 best-developed reefs on all the islands exist either in the lagoons or off southwestern  
30 exposures (Grigg, 1982).

31  
32 Summer sea surface temperatures (SSTs) along the island chain are generally similar,  
33 peaking at about 28°C; however, winter SSTs are much cooler at the northern end of the  
34 chain, dipping down to 17°C in some years (Grigg, 1982; Grigg *et al.*, 2007). This  
35 represents a 10°C intra-annual difference at the northern end of the chain, while that at  
36 the southern end of the NWHI is only half as great: 5°C (22–27°C). Compared with most  
37 reef ecosystems around the globe, the annual fluctuations of SST of about 10°C at these  
38 northerly atolls is extremely high. Cooler water temperatures to the north restrict the  
39 growth and distribution of a number of coral species (Grigg, 1982). In addition, the  
40 biogeographic distribution of many fish species in the NWHI is influenced by differences  
41 in water temperatures along the archipelago (DeMartini and Friedlander, 2004; Mundy,  
42 2005).

#### 43 44 **Climate Sensitivity**

45 The NWHI ecosystem is sensitive to natural climate variability at a number of spatial and  
46 temporal scales. The Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO) results in changes in ocean  
47 productivity at large spatial and long temporal scales and has been attributed to changes

1 in monk seal pup survival, sea bird fledging success, and spiny lobster recruitment in the  
2 NWHI (Polovina *et al.*, 1994; Polovina, Mitchem, and Evans, 1995). Inter-annual  
3 variation in the Transition Zone Chlorophyll Front is also known to affect the distribution  
4 and survival of a number of species in the NWHI (Polovina *et al.*, 1994; Polovina *et al.*,  
5 2001).

6  
7 Because of their high latitude location in the central Pacific, the NWHI were thought to  
8 be one of the last places in the world to experience coral bleaching (Hoegh-Guldberg,  
9 1999). Hawaiian reefs were unaffected by the 1998 mass bleaching event that affected  
10 much of the Indo-Pacific region (Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Reaser, Pomerance, and  
11 Thomas, 2000; Jokiel and Brown, 2004). The first documented bleaching event in the  
12 MHI was reported in 1996 (Jokiel and Brown, 2004). The NWHI were affected by mass  
13 coral bleaching in 2002 and again in 2004 (Aeby *et al.*, 2003; Kenyon *et al.*, 2006).  
14 Bleaching was most acute at the three northern-most atolls (Pearl and Hermes, Midway,  
15 and Kure) and was most severe on backreef habitats (Kenyon and Brainard, 2006). Of the  
16 three coral genera that predominate at these atolls, *Montipora* and *Pocillopora* spp. were  
17 most affected by bleaching, with lesser incidences observed in *Porites* (Kenyon and  
18 Brainard, 2006). The occurrence of two mass bleaching episodes in three years lends  
19 credence to the projection of increased frequency of bleaching with climate change.

20  
21 SST data derived from both remotely sensed satellite observations (Fig. A6.4a) as well as  
22 in situ Coral Reef Early Warning System (CREWS) buoys suggest that prolonged,  
23 elevated SSTs combined with a prolonged period of anomalously light wind speed led to  
24 decreased wind and wave mixing of the upper ocean (Hoeke *et al.*, 2006) (Fig. A6.4b).  
25 The reefs to the southeast of the archipelago show smaller positive temperature anomalies  
26 compared with the reefs towards the northwest. Research and monitoring efforts should  
27 target this pattern to better understand dispersal, bleaching, and other events that might be  
28 affected by it.

29  
30  
31  
32 **Figure A6.4.** a) NOAA Pathfinder SST anomaly composite during summer 2002  
33 period of NWHI elevated temperatures, July 28–August 29. b) NASA/JPL  
34 Quikscat winds (wind stress overlaid by wind vector arrows) composite during  
35 summer 2002 period of increasing SSTs, July 16–August 13. The Hawaii Exclusive  
36 Economic Zone (EEZ) is indicated with a heavy black line; all island shorelines in  
37 the archipelago are also plotted (adapted from Hoeke *et al.*, 2006).

### 38 39 **Potential Impacts of Climate Change**

40 Climate change may increase the intensity of storm events as well as result in changes in  
41 ocean temperature, circulation patterns, and water chemistry (Cabanes, Cazenave, and Le  
42 Provost, 2001; IPCC, 2001; Caldeira and Wickett, 2003). Warmer temperatures in  
43 Hawaii have been shown to cause bleaching mortality (Jokiel and Coles, 1990) and

1 negatively affect fertilization and development of corals.<sup>68</sup> Annual spawning of some  
2 species in Hawaii occurs at temperatures near the upper limit for reproduction,<sup>68</sup> so  
3 increases in ocean temperature related to climate change may have a profound effect on  
4 coral populations by causing reproductive failure. The rate and scale at which bleaching  
5 has been increasing in recent decades (Glynn, 1993) points to the likelihood of future  
6 bleaching events in Hawaii (Jokiel and Coles, 1990).

7  
8 Coral disease is currently low in the NWHI (Aeby, 2006), but increases in the frequency  
9 and intensity of bleaching events will stress corals and make them more susceptible to  
10 disease (Harvell *et al.*, 1999; Harvell *et al.*, 2002). Acroporid corals are prone to  
11 bleaching and disease (Willis, Page, and Dinsdale, 2004) and are restricted in range and  
12 habitat within the Hawaiian Archipelago to a few core reefs in the NWHI (Grigg, 1981;  
13 Grigg, Wells, and Wallace, 1981; Maragos *et al.*, 2004). This combination could lead to  
14 the extinction of this genus from Hawaii if mortality associated with climate change  
15 becomes severe.

16  
17 Most of the emergent land in the NWHI is low-lying, highly vulnerable to inundation  
18 from storm waves, and therefore vulnerable to sea level rise (Baker, Littnan, and  
19 Johnston, 2006). The limited amount of emergent land in the NWHI is critical habitat for  
20 the endangered Hawaiian monk seal (Antonelis *et al.*, 2006), the threatened green sea  
21 turtle (Balazs and Chaloupka, 2006), and numerous terrestrial organisms and land birds  
22 that are found nowhere else on Earth (Rauzon, 2001). The emergent land in the NWHI  
23 may shrink by as much as 65% with a 48 cm rise in sea level (Baker, Littnan, and  
24 Johnston, 2006). Efforts such as translocation or habitat alteration might be necessary if  
25 these species are to be saved from extinction.

26  
27 At the northern end of the chain, lower coral diversity is linked to lower winter  
28 temperatures and lower annual solar radiation (Grigg, 1982). Increases in ocean  
29 temperature could therefore change the distribution of corals and other organisms that  
30 might currently be limited by lower temperatures. Many shallow-water fish species that  
31 are adapted to warmer water are restricted from occurring in the NWHI by winter  
32 temperatures that can be as much as 7°C cooler than the MHI (Mundy, 2005).  
33 Conversely, some shallow-water species are adapted to cooler water and can be found in  
34 deeper waters at the southern end of the archipelago. This phenomenon—known as  
35 tropical submergence—is exemplified by species such as the yellowfin soldierfish  
36 (*Myripristis chrysonemus*), the endemic Hawaiian grouper (*Epinephelus quernus*), and  
37 the masked angelfish (*Genicanthus personatus*), which are found in shallower water at  
38 Midway and/or Kure atolls, but are restricted to deeper depths in the MHI (Randall *et al.*,  
39 1993; DeMartini and Friedlander, 2004; Mundy, 2005).

#### 40 41 **Level/Degree of Management**

42 Administrative jurisdiction over the islands and marine waters is shared by  
43 NOAA/NMSP, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the State of Hawaii. Eight of the 10

---

<sup>68</sup> Krupp, D.A., L.L. Hollingsworth, and J. Peterka, 2006: Elevated temperature sensitivity of fertilization and early development in the mushroom coral, *Fungia scutaria*. In: *Proceedings of the 10th International Coral Reef Symposium, Okinawa, Japan*, 28, June 2004, pp. 71-77.

1 NWHI (except Kure and Midway Atolls) have been protected by what is now the  
2 Hawaiian Islands National Wildlife Refuge (HINWR) established by President Theodore  
3 Roosevelt in 1909. The Northwestern Hawaiian Islands Coral Reef Ecosystem Reserve  
4 was created by Executive Orders 13178 and 13196 in December 2000 and amended by  
5 Executive Order 13196 in January of 2001 to include the marine waters and submerged  
6 lands extending 1,200 nautical miles long and 100 nautical miles wide from Nihoa Island  
7 to Kure Atoll.

8  
9 In June 2006, nearly 140,000 square miles of the marine environment in the NWHI was  
10 designated as the Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National  
11 Monument (PMNM). This action provided immediate and permanent protection for the  
12 resources of the NWHI and established a management structure that requires extensive  
13 collaboration and coordination among the three primary co-trustee agencies: the State of  
14 Hawaii, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and NOAA.

15  
16 Proclamation 8031 states that the monument will:

- 17 • Preserve access for Native Hawaiian cultural activities;
- 18 • Provide for carefully regulated educational and scientific activities;
- 19 • Enhance visitation in a special area around Midway Island;
- 20 • Prohibit unauthorized access to the monument;
- 21 • Phase out commercial fishing over a five-year period; and
- 22 • Ban other types of resource extraction and dumping of waste.

23  
24 Preservation areas have been established in the PMNM in sensitive areas around all the  
25 emergent reefs, islands, and atolls. Vessels issued permits to operate in the PMNM are  
26 required to carry approved Vessel Monitoring Systems (VMS).

### 27 **Program of Monitoring and Research**

28 Long-term monitoring relevant to climate change has been conducted in the NWHI  
29 dating back to the 1970s by a variety of agencies (Grigg, 2006). Since 2000, a  
30 collaborative interagency monitoring program led by the Coral Reef Ecosystem Division  
31 (CRED) of the NOAA Pacific Islands Science Center has conducted integrated  
32 assessment and monitoring of coral reef ecosystems in the NWHI and throughout the  
33 U.S. Pacific (Wadell, 2005; Friedlander *et al.*, 2005). In conjunction with various state,  
34 federal, and academic partners, this program has integrated ecological studies with  
35 environmental data to develop a comprehensive ecosystem-based program of assessment  
36 and monitoring of U.S. Pacific coral reef ecosystems.

37  
38  
39 Ocean currents are measured and monitored in the NWHI using shipboard acoustic  
40 Doppler current profilers (ADCP), Surface Velocity Program (SVP) current drifters, and  
41 APEX profiling drifters (Friedlander *et al.*, 2005; Firing and Brainard, 2006). Spatial  
42 maps of ocean currents in the vicinity of the NWHI are also computed from satellite  
43 observations of sea surface height from the TOPEX-Poseidon and JASON altimetric  
44 satellites (Polovina, Kleiber, and Kobayashi, 1999). Moored ADCPs have been deployed  
45 by CRED at several locations to examine temporal variability of ocean currents over  
46 submerged banks and reef habitats in the NWHI.

1  
2 Because of the significant influence of temperature on coral reef ecosystem health,  
3 observations of temperature in the NWHI are collected by a wide array of instruments  
4 and platforms, including satellite remote sensing (AVHRR) of SST (Smith and Reynolds,  
5 2004), moored surface buoys and subsurface temperature recorders, closely spaced  
6 shallow water conductivity-temperature-depth profiles (CTD casts) in nearshore reef  
7 habitats, broadly spaced shipboard deep water CTD casts to depths of 500 m, and  
8 satellite-tracked SVP drifters. These data are integrated in the Coral Reef Ecosystem  
9 Integrated Observing System (CREIOS) as described below.

#### 10 **A6.3.2 Managing the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument**

##### 11 **Current Approaches to Research and Monitoring in Support of Management and How** 12 **Climate Change is Being Examined**

13 Over the past several years, the NOAA Coral Reef Conservation Program has established  
14 the Coral Reef Ecosystem Integrated Observing System (CREIOS), which is a cross-  
15 cutting collaboration between four NOAA Line Offices (NMFS, OAR, NESDIS, and  
16 NOS) focused on mapping, monitoring, and observing ecological and environmental  
17 conditions of U.S. coral reefs. At present, the ocean observing system in the NWHI  
18 consists of surface buoys measuring SST, salinity, wind, atmospheric pressure, and air  
19 temperature (enhanced systems also measure ultraviolet-B (UV-B) and  
20 photosynthetically available radiation); surface SST buoys; subsurface Ocean Data  
21 Platforms measuring ocean current profiles, wave energy and direction, temperature and  
22 salinity; subsurface current meters measuring bottom currents and temperature; and  
23 subsurface temperature recorders. Many of the surface platforms provide near real-time  
24 data telemetry to the Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center and subsequent distribution  
25 via the World Wide Web. Time series data from subsurface instruments (without  
26 telemetry) are typically available every 12 to 24 months, after the instrument has been  
27 recovered and the dataset uploaded. Information about available datasets such as geo-  
28 location, depth, data format, and other metadata are available for both surface and  
29 subsurface instruments at the NOAA Coral Reef Information System (CoRIS) website.<sup>69</sup>

30  
31 Another component of CREIOS is Coral Reef Watch (NESDIS, Office of Research and  
32 Applications) which uses remote sensing, computational algorithms, and artificial  
33 intelligence tools in the near real-time monitoring, modeling, and reporting of physical  
34 environmental conditions that adversely influence coral reef ecosystems. Satellite  
35 remotely sensed data products include near real-time identification of bleaching  
36 “hotspots” and identification of low-wind (doldrums) areas over the world’s oceans. The  
37 CRED long-term moored observing stations are part of the Coral Reef Early Warning  
38 System (CREWS) network initiated by the NOAA Coral Health and Monitoring  
39 Program, which provides access to near real-time meteorological and oceanographic data  
40 from major U.S. coral reef areas. The CREWS buoys deployed by CRED in the NWHI  
41 record and telemeter data pertaining to sea-surface temperature, salinity, wind speed and

---

<sup>69</sup> **National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**, 2007: NOAA's coral reef information system. NOAA Website, <http://www.coris.noaa.gov/>, accessed on 7-27-2007.

1 direction, air temperature, barometric pressure, UV-B, and photosynthetically available  
2 radiation (Kenyon *et al.*, 2006).<sup>70</sup>

3  
4 Information from CREIOS serves to alert resource managers and researchers to  
5 environmental events considered significant to the health of the surrounding coral reef  
6 ecosystem, allowing managers to implement response measures in a timely manner, and  
7 allowing researchers to increase spatial or temporal sampling resolution, if warranted.  
8 Response measures might include focused monitoring to determine the extent and  
9 duration of the event and management actions could include limiting access to these areas  
10 until recovery is observed. Information from the Coral Reef Watch Program in summer  
11 2002 indicated conditions favorable for bleaching and resulted in assessments focused on  
12 potential bleaching areas during the subsequent research cruise.

13  
14 **Potential for Altering or Supplementing Current Management Practices to Enable**  
15 **Adaptation to Climate Change**

16 To more fully address concerns about the ecological impacts of climate change on coral  
17 reef ecosystems and the effect of reef ecosystems on climate change, a number of  
18 agencies have proposed a collaborative effort to establish a state-of-the-art ocean  
19 observing system to monitor the key parameters of climate change impacting reef  
20 ecosystems of the Pacific and Western Atlantic/Caribbean. This proposed system  
21 includes:

- 22 • Expanding the existing array of oceanographic platforms across the remainder of  
23 the U.S. Pacific Islands
- 24 • Installing pCO<sub>2</sub> and UV-B sensors to examine long-term changes in carbon cycling  
25 and UV radiation
- 26 • Establish long-term records of coral reef environmental variability to examine past  
27 climate changes using paleoclimatic records of SST and other parameters from  
28 coral skeletons. This will allow us to determine if current and future SST stresses  
29 are unusual, or part of natural climatic variability.
- 30 • Develop/expand integrated *in situ* and satellite based bleaching mapping system
- 31 • Continue the development of the Coral Reef Early Warning System, which can be  
32 used to develop timely research activities to determine the extent and duration of  
33 any climate event and management actions that can potentially be implemented to  
34 mitigate these events.

35  
36 In order to better understanding the impact of sea level rise on low-lying emergent areas  
37 in the NWHI, data are needed on hydrodynamic and geological characteristics of the  
38 region. Detailed information on elevation, bathymetry, waves, wind, tide, etc. is needed  
39 to develop predictive models of shoreline change relative to climate change. One possible  
40 management measure to counter loss of habitat for monk seals and turtles in the NWHI  
41 due to sea level rise might be beach nourishment (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston, 2006).  
42 Given the small size of the islets in the NWHI, local sand resources might be sufficient to  
43 mitigate sea level rise, but a great deal of research and planning would be required given

---

<sup>70</sup> NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, 2007: Coral reef ecosystems - ecological assessment, marine debris removal, oceanography, habitat mapping. NOAA Website, <http://www.pifsc.noaa.gov/cred/>, accessed on 5-24-2007.



1 the remoteness and sensitive nature of the ecosystem (Baker, Littnan, and Johnston,  
2 2006).

### 3 **A6.3.3 Adapting Management to Climate Change**

4 The draft Monument Management Plan does not address climate and ocean change  
5 management actions specifically, but by integrating strategies that focus on climate  
6 through research and monitoring, education and outreach, and review and syntheses,  
7 management will be better informed and prepared to deal with issues related to climate  
8 and ocean change. A comprehensive understanding of the effects of climate change on  
9 the NWHI is needed in order to provide managers with the information and tools needed  
10 to address these effects. Specific attention should be given to the effects on habitats  
11 critical to endemic and protected species.

12  
13 The continued development and expansion of the Coral Reef Early Warning System and  
14 the Ocean Observing System are critical to improve understanding of climate change in  
15 the PMNM and the scale and capabilities of these systems should be enhanced.  
16 Investigations directed at examining the physiological, ecological, and genetic responses  
17 of the entire ecosystem to climate change should be conducted. Continuation and  
18 expansion of monitoring programs are important to better understand the ecosystem in  
19 time and space and higher-intensity spatial and temporal monitoring and assessment  
20 should be initiated in conjunction with disturbance events (*e.g.*, coral bleaching, disease  
21 outbreaks, elevated water temperatures).

22  
23 The draft PMNM science plan calls for a number of specific research activities to  
24 examine the effects of climate change on the NWHI ecosystem.

- 25 • Determine the effect of climate change on nesting sites of protected species, *e.g.* the  
26 effect of sea level rise on nesting site of the green sea turtle and Hawaiian monk  
27 seal.
- 28 • Determine specific habitats, communities, and populations that will be affected by  
29 global climate change (ocean acidification, sea level, temperature, chlorophyll  
30 fronts, etc.).
- 31 • Understand habitat changes that will result from sea level rise.
- 32 • Map areas that will be most affected by extreme wave events.
- 33 • Discern anthropogenic impacts from natural variability of the physical environment.

34  
35 PMNM constituency building and outreach plans should emphasize climate change in its  
36 various venues of information dissemination (*e.g.*, websites, brochures, fact sheets,  
37 school presentations, meetings, workshops, etc.). Building upon existing NWHI-based  
38 curricula developed under the Navigating Change Partnership and the new Hawaii  
39 Marine Curriculum, specific study units on climate change should be developed and  
40 impacts of climate change incorporated into other study units, where appropriate. By  
41 increasing the public's awareness of climate change impacts, the PMNM can provide a  
42 societal benefit that extends beyond the boundaries of the monument.

1 **A6.3.4 Conclusions**

2 The nearly pristine condition of the NWHI results in one of the last large-scale, intact,  
3 predator-dominated reef ecosystems remaining in the world (Friedlander and DeMartini,  
4 2002; Pandolfi *et al.*, 2005). Top predators can regulate the structure of the entire  
5 community and have the potential to buffer some of the ecological effects of climate  
6 change (Sala, 2006). Intact ecosystems such as the NWHI are hypothesized to be more  
7 resistant and resilient to stressors, including climate change (West and Salm, 2003).  
8 Owing to its irreplaceable assemblage of organisms, it possesses extremely high  
9 conservation value. The Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument is the largest  
10 marine protected area (MPA) in the world and provides a unique opportunity to examine  
11 the effects of climate change on a nearly intact large-scale marine ecosystem.

12 **A6.4 The Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

13 **A6.4.1 Introduction**

14 **Ecosystem Structure**

15 Designated in 1980, the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS) consists of  
16 an area of approximately 1,243 nm<sup>2</sup> of coastal and ocean waters and submerged lands off  
17 the southern coast of California (Fig. A6.5). CINMS extends 6 nm offshore from the five  
18 northern Channel Islands, including San Miguel, Santa Cruz, Santa Rosa, Anacapa, and  
19 Santa Barbara islands. The primary objective of the sanctuary is to conserve, protect, and  
20 enhance the biodiversity, ecological integrity, and cultural legacy of marine resources  
21 surrounding the Channel Islands for current and future generations. State and federal  
22 agencies with overlapping jurisdiction in the CINMS, including the California  
23 Department of Fish and Game, the Channel Islands National Park, and the National  
24 Marine Fisheries Service, are working together to manage impacts of human activities on  
25 marine ecosystems.

26  
27  
28

29 **Figure A6.5.** Map of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary showing the  
30 location of existing state and proposed federal marine reserves and marine  
31 conservation areas.<sup>71</sup>

32

33 The Channel Islands are distributed across a biogeographic boundary between cool  
34 temperate waters of the Californian Current and warm temperate waters of the Davidson  
35 Current (or California Countercurrent). The California Current is characterized by coastal  
36 upwelling of cool, nutrient-rich waters that contribute to high biological productivity.  
37 Intertidal communities around San Miguel, Santa Rosa, and part of Santa Cruz islands are  
38 characteristic of the cool temperate region, whereas those around Catalina, San Clemente,  
39 Anacapa, and Santa Barbara islands are associated with the warm temperate region  
40 (Murray and Littler, 1981). Fish communities around the Channel Islands also show a  
41 distinctive grouping based on association with western islands (influenced strongly by the

---

<sup>71</sup> **Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**, 2007: Marine reserves environmental review process. NOAA Website, NOAA, <http://channelislands.noaa.gov/marineres/main.html>, accessed on 7-1-2007.

1 California Current) and eastern islands (influenced by the Davidson Current). Rockfish  
2 (*Sebastes* spp.), embiotocid species, and pile perch occur more in western islands while  
3 Island kelpfish (*Alloclinus holderi*), opaleye (*Girella nigricans*), garibaldi (*Hypsypops*  
4 *rubicundus*), blacksmith (*Chromis punctipinnis*), and kelp bass (*Paralabrax clathratus*)  
5 occur more often in the eastern islands (Halpern and Cottenie, 2007).

6  
7 From Monterey Bay to Baja California, including the Channel Islands, giant kelp  
8 (*Macrocystis pyrifera*) is the dominant habitat-forming alga. Giant kelp grows in dense  
9 stands on hard rocky substrate at depths of 2–30 m (Foster and Schiel, 1985). Kelp is  
10 among the fastest growing of all algae, adding an average of 27 cm/day (in spring) and a  
11 maximum of 61 cm/day and reaching lengths of 60 m (200 ft). Giant kelp forests support  
12 a diverse community of associated species including marine invertebrates, fishes, marine  
13 mammals and seabirds (Graham, 2004). Kelp stocks and fronds may support thousands of  
14 invertebrates including amphipods, decapods, polychaetes, and ophiuroids. Some  
15 invertebrates such as sea urchins (*Strongylocentrotus* spp.) and abalone (*Haliotis* spp.)  
16 rely on bits of drifting kelp as their primary source of food. Fish in the kelp forest  
17 community specialize in life at different depths: kelp, black and yellow, and gopher  
18 rockfish are found at the base of kelp stocks, while olive, yellowtail, and black rockfish  
19 swim in mid-water. Drifting kelp mats at the sea surface provide cover for young fishes  
20 that are vulnerable to predation. Marine mammals and seabirds are attracted to abundant  
21 fish and invertebrate populations (which serve as their primary prey) associated with kelp  
22 forests. Because of their high diversity, California kelp forests are thought to be more  
23 resistant and resilient to disturbance than kelp forests elsewhere (Steneck *et al.*, 2002).

#### 24 **Stressors on Marine Ecosystems in the Channel Islands**

25 Kelp forest communities are vulnerable to an array of stressors caused by human  
26 activities and natural environmental variation. Using data gathered by the Channel  
27 Islands National Park over a period of 20 years, Halpern and Cottenie (2007) documented  
28 overall declines in abundance of giant kelp communities over time. These declines were  
29 linked with commercial and recreational fishing in the Channel Islands. Fishing reduces  
30 density and average individual size of targeted populations and, consequently, targeted  
31 species are more vulnerable to the effects of natural environmental variation. Fishing also  
32 has cascading effects through the marine food web. In areas of the Channel Islands where  
33 lobster (*Panulirus interruptus*) and other top predators were fished, purple sea urchin  
34 (*Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*) populations were more abundant, overgrazing stands of  
35 giant kelp and other algae and resulting in barren reefs devoid of kelp and its associated  
36 species (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004).

37  
38  
39 Kelp forest communities also respond to natural environmental variations, such as  
40 increased storm intensity, ocean warming, and shifts in winds associated with ENSO  
41 events (Dayton *et al.*, 1992; Ladah, Zertuche-Gonzalez, and Hernandez-Carmona, 1999;  
42 Edwards, 2004). Storm intensity, which is known to increase during periods of ocean  
43 warming, damages kelp stocks and rips kelp holdfasts from their rocky substrate (Dayton  
44 *et al.*, 1992; 1999). In addition to the physical damage from storms, kelp growth may be  
45 suppressed by lower levels of nutrients due to relaxation of coastal wind activity and  
46 reduction of upwelling during ENSO events. Giant kelp forests were decimated during  
47 the intense ENSO event of 1982–83 and did not recover to their previous extent for

1 almost two decades. Several other ENSO events, in 1992–93 and 1997–98 also  
2 diminished kelp growth. The effects of these ENSO events may have been compounded  
3 by a shift (Pacific Decadal Oscillation) in 1977 to a period of slightly warmer waters in  
4 the northeastern Pacific Ocean.

5  
6 Dramatic declines of giant kelp communities are likely the consequence of cumulative  
7 impacts of human activities and natural environmental variation. Giant kelp forests in one  
8 marine reserve (where fishing has been prohibited since 1978) were more resilient to  
9 ocean warming, shifts in winds, and increased storm activity associated with ENSO  
10 (Behrens and Lafferty, 2004). Giant kelp forests in the reserve persisted over a period of  
11 20 years, including several intense ENSO events. Kelp forests at all study sites outside of  
12 the reserve were overgrazed by dense populations of sea urchins, and their growth was  
13 further inhibited by warmer water, increased storm intensity, and lower levels of  
14 nutrients, leading to periodic die-backs to a barren reef state. These observations suggest  
15 that marine reserves can be used as a management tool to increase resilience of kelp  
16 forest communities.

#### 17 **Current Management of the Channel Islands**

18 In 1999, the CINMS and the California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG) developed  
19 a partnership and public process (modeled after the Florida Keys National Marine  
20 Sanctuary) to consider the use of fully protected marine reserves to protect natural  
21 biological communities (Box A6.2). The cooperating agencies engaged a working group  
22 of stakeholders through the Sanctuary Advisory Council to evaluate the problem and  
23 develop potential solutions. The “Marine Reserves Working Group” developed a problem  
24 statement acknowledging that human activities and natural ecological changes  
25 contributed to the decline of marine communities in southern California. The working  
26 group determined that marine reserves should be established to protect marine habitats  
27 and species, to achieve sustainable fisheries and maintain long-term socioeconomic  
28 viability, and to protect cultural heritage. The stakeholders, working with marine  
29 scientists and economists, created a range of options for marine reserves to meet these  
30 goals. Subsequently, the CINMS and CDFG used the two most widely supported options  
31 to craft compromise solution that addressed the interests of a broad array of stakeholders.  
32  
33

34 In 2003, the CDFG established a network of 10 fully protected marine reserves and two  
35 conservation areas that allow limited commercial and recreational fishing (Fig. A6.5).  
36 The total area protected was 102 nm<sup>2</sup>, approximately 10% of sanctuary waters. The  
37 marine reserves and conservation areas included a variety of representative marine  
38 habitats characteristic of the region, such as rocky intertidal habitats, sandy beaches, kelp  
39 forests, seagrass beds, soft bottom habitats, submerged rocky substrate, and submarine  
40 canyons. In 2006, the Pacific Fisheries Management Council designated Essential Fish  
41 Habitat to protect benthic communities from bottom contact fishing gear within and  
42 adjacent to the state marine protected areas, up to 6 nm offshore. In the same year, the  
43 CINMS released a Draft Environmental Impact Statement proposing complementary  
44 marine reserves and a marine conservation area extending into federal waters (Fig. A6.5).  
45 The Essential Fish Habitat designated by the Council and the marine protected areas  
46 proposed by the sanctuary increase the total area of protected marine zones to 19% of the  
47 CINMS.

1  
2 In 2008, data from relevant monitoring programs will be prepared for a review by the  
3 California Fish and Game Commission of the first five years of monitoring the Channel  
4 Islands state marine reserves. Expectations are that species that were targeted by  
5 commercial or recreational fisheries will increase in density and size within marine  
6 reserves (Halpern, 2003). Some species are expected to decline if their predators or  
7 competitors increase in abundance.

8  
9 **Potential Effects of Climate Change on Ecosystems in the Channel Islands Region**

10 Coastal SST has increased steadily (by approximately 2°C) since 1950 and is expected to  
11 increase further in the coming centuries (IPCC, 2007a). Water temperature affects  
12 metabolism and growth (Bayne, Thompson, and Widdows, 1973; Phillips, 2005), feeding  
13 behavior (Petraitis, 1992; Sanford, 1999; 2002), reproduction (Hutchins, 1947; Philippart  
14 *et al.*, 2003), and rates of larval development (Hoegh-Guldberg and Pearse, 1995; Anil,  
15 Desai, and Khandeparker, 2001; Luppi, Spivak, and Bas, 2003; O'Connor *et al.*, 2007) of  
16 intertidal and subtidal animals. Shifts in species ranges already have occurred in  
17 California with the steady increase of coastal sea surface temperature. The range  
18 boundary of *Kelletia kelletii* has shifted north from the late 1970s to the 2000s  
19 (Herrlinger, 1981; Zacherl, Gaines, and Lonhart, 2003). Southern species of anthozoans,  
20 barnacles, and gastropods increased in Monterey Bay, while northern species of  
21 anthozoans and limpets decreased between the 1930s (Hewatt, 1937) and the 1990s  
22 (Barry *et al.*, 1995; Sagarin *et al.*, 1999). Holbrook, Schmitt, and Stephens, Jr. (1997)  
23 documented an increase of 150% in southern species of kelp forest fish in southern  
24 California, and a decrease of 50% in northern species since the 1970s.

25  
26 Increased ocean temperatures have been linked with outbreaks of marine disease  
27 (Hofmann *et al.*, 1999). Populations of black abalone (*Haliotis cracherodii*) in the  
28 Channel Islands and north along the California coast to Cambria suffered mass  
29 mortalities from “withering syndrome” caused by the intracellular prokaryote  
30 *Xenohaliotis californiensis*, between 1986 and 2001. Healthy populations of black  
31 abalone persist north of Cambria, where cool waters suppress the disease. Samples of red  
32 abalone (*Haliotis rufescens*) from populations around San Miguel Island in 2006  
33 indicated that approximately 58% of the population carries *X. californiensis*, but the red  
34 abalone population persists in a thermal refuge within which temperatures are low  
35 enough to suppress the expression of the disease. The disease may be expressed during  
36 prolonged periods of warming (*e.g.*, over 18°C for several days) associated with ENSO or  
37 other warm-water events. In 1992, an ENSO year, an urchin-specific bacterial disease  
38 entered the Channel Islands region and spread through dense populations of purple sea  
39 urchin (*Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*). Sites located in a marine reserve where fishing  
40 was prohibited had more lobster (which prey on urchins), smaller populations of urchins,  
41 persistent forests of giant kelp, and a near absence of the disease.<sup>72</sup> During several warm-  
42 water events, including the ENSO of 1997–98, scientists observed and documented

---

<sup>72</sup> Lafferty, K.D. and D. Kushner, 2000: Population regulation of the purple sea urchin, *Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*, at the California Channel Islands. In: *Fifth California Islands Symposium*, Minerals Management Service, Santa Barbara, California, pp. 379-381.

1 declines of sea star populations at the Channel Islands due to epidemics of “wasting  
2 disease,” which disintegrates the animals.

3  
4 Increased temperature is expected to lead to numerous changes in currents and upwelling  
5 activity. As the sea surface warms, thermal stratification will intensify and become more  
6 stable, leading to reduced upwelling of cool, nutrient-rich water (Soto, 2001; Field *et al.*,  
7 2001). Reduced upwelling will lead to a decline in primary productivity (McGowan *et*  
8 *al.*, 1998), suppression of kelp growth, and cascading effects through the marine food  
9 web.

10  
11 Introductions of non-native species (such as the European green crab *Carcinus maenas*  
12 on the U.S. West Coast) are associated with rising temperatures and altered currents  
13 associated with ENSO events (Yamada *et al.*, 2005). The Sanctuary Advisory Council  
14 identified non-indigenous species as an emerging issue in the revised Sanctuary  
15 Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006). The sanctuary participated in  
16 the removal of a non-indigenous alga (*Undaria pinnatifida*) from the Santa Barbara  
17 Harbor, but the sanctuary does not support systematic monitoring or removal of non-  
18 indigenous species. Introduction of non-indigenous species can disrupt native  
19 communities, potentially leading to shifts in community structure.

20  
21 Sea level may rise up to three feet in the next 100 years, depending on the concentrations  
22 of greenhouse gases during this period (Cayan *et al.*, 2006a; IPCC, 2007a). Projections of  
23 sea level rise around the Channel Islands indicate little encroachment of seawater onto  
24 land due to steep rocky cliffs that form the margins of the islands; however, projections  
25 of sea level rise indicate potential saltwater intrusion into low-lying coastal areas such as  
26 the Santa Barbara Harbor (where the CINMS Headquarters is located) and the Channel  
27 Islands Harbor (where the sanctuary’s southern office is located). Changes in sea level  
28 may affect the type of coastal ecosystem (Hoffman, 2003). Graham, Dayton, and  
29 Erlandson (2003) suggested that sea level rise transformed the Southern California Bight  
30 from a productive rocky coast to a less productive sandy coast more than 18,000 years  
31 ago.

32  
33 The severity of storm events is likely to increase with climate change (IPCC, 2001). As  
34 described above, storm activity damages kelp stocks and pulls kelp holdfasts from the  
35 substrate (Dayton *et al.*, 1992; 1999). Frequent and intense storm activity during the  
36 1982–83 ENSO event decimated populations of giant kelp that once formed extensive  
37 beds attached to massive old kelp holdfasts in sandy areas along the mainland coast.  
38 Since the old kelp holdfasts were displaced from the mainland coast, young kelp plants  
39 have been unable to attach to the sandy substrate and the coastal kelp forests have not  
40 returned. At the Channel Islands, kelp forests that were destroyed during the same ENSO  
41 event have slowly returned to the rocky reefs around the Channel Islands, particularly  
42 following a Pacific Decadal Oscillation to cooler waters in 1998.

#### 43 44 **A Shared Vision for the Channel Islands**

45 The CINMS manager and staff work closely with the Sanctuary Advisory Council to  
46 identify and resolve resource management issues. As noted above, the Sanctuary  
47 Advisory Council consists of representatives from local, state, and federal agencies,

1 which share jurisdiction of resources within the Channel Islands region, and stakeholders  
2 with interests in those resources. The Sanctuary Advisory Council offers a unique  
3 opportunity to focus attention of regional agencies and stakeholders on the potential  
4 threats associated with climate change and to develop a shared vision for how to respond.

5  
6 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes a  
7 strategy to work in a coordinated, complementary, and comprehensive manner with other  
8 authorities that share similar or overlapping mandates, jurisdiction, objectives, and/or  
9 interests. The sanctuary is poised to take a leading role to bring together the relevant  
10 agencies and stakeholders to discuss the issue of climate change. The sanctuary can  
11 initiate an effort to develop regional plans to adapt to a modified landscape and seascape  
12 predicted from climate change models, and mitigate the negative impacts of climate  
13 change.

#### 14 **A6.4.2 Management of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary**

15 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) for the CINMS  
16 mentions but does not fully address the issue of climate change, with one exception in the  
17 strategy for offshore water quality monitoring. The strategy is to better evaluate and  
18 understand impacts on water quality from oceanographic and climatic changes and  
19 human activities. The proposed actions include continued vessel and staff support for  
20 monitoring projects related to water quality. To evaluate the potential impacts of climate  
21 change, the sanctuary staff could expand monitoring of—or collaborate with researchers  
22 who are monitoring—ocean water temperature, currents, dissolved oxygen, and pH at  
23 different depths.

24  
25 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes a  
26 strategy to identify, assess, and respond to emerging issues. The plan explicitly identifies  
27 noise pollution, non-indigenous species, and marine mammal strikes as emerging issues.  
28 Other emerging issues that are not addressed by the management plan, but should be,  
29 include ocean warming, sea level rise, shifts in ocean circulation, ocean acidification,  
30 spread of disease, and shifts in species ranges.

31  
32 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) outlined a  
33 potential response to emerging issues through consultation with the Sanctuary Advisory  
34 Council and local, state, or federal agencies with a leading or shared authority for  
35 addressing the issue. With the elevated level of certainty associated with climate change  
36 projections (IPCC, 2007a), it is appropriate to bring the topic of climate change to the  
37 Sanctuary Advisory Council and begin working with local, state, and federal agencies  
38 that share authority in the region to plan for potential impacts of climate change.  
39 Regional agency managers may consider and develop strategies to respond to the  
40 potential impacts of:

- 41  
42 • Ocean warming (contributing to potential shifts in species ranges, changes in  
43 metabolic and physiological processes, and accelerated spread of disease);  
44 • Ocean acidification (leading to breakdown of calcareous accretions in corals and  
45 shells);

- 1 • Shifts in ocean circulation (leading to changes in upwelling activity and possible  
2 formation of low oxygen zones); and
- 3 • Sea level rise (shifting jurisdictional boundaries, displacing terrestrial and intertidal  
4 organisms, leading to salt-water inundation of coastal marshes, lagoons and estuaries,  
5 and increasing coastal flood events).

### 6 **Monitoring and Research in the Channel Islands Region**

7 Monitoring and research are critical for detecting and understanding the effects of climate  
8 and ocean change. The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce,  
9 2006) outlines strategies for monitoring and research in the coming years, but the plan  
10 does not address climate and ocean change specifically. The current strategies for  
11 monitoring and research can be refocused slightly to capture important information about  
12 climate and ocean change.  
13

14  
15 Monitoring of algae, invertebrates, and fishes is needed within and around marine  
16 reserves to detect differences between protected and targeted populations in their  
17 responses to climate change. One hypothesis is that populations within marine reserves  
18 will be more resilient to the effects of climate change than those that are altered by  
19 fishing and other extractive uses. In addition, scientists have determined that local  
20 environmental variation causes different populations to respond in different ways to  
21 ocean warming (*e.g.*, Helmuth *et al.*, 2006). For example, a population of red abalone at  
22 San Miguel Island lives in a “thermal refuge” where waters are cooled by upwelling,  
23 preventing spread of disease that is carried in the population. Sustained ocean warming is  
24 likely to increase thermal stress of individuals in this population and accelerate the spread  
25 of disease through affected populations. Monitoring can be used to detect such changes at  
26 individual, population, and regional levels. The CINMS has the capacity to support  
27 subtidal monitoring activities from the *RV Shearwater*, aerial surveys of kelp canopy  
28 from the sanctuary aircraft, and collaborative research projects with scientists and  
29 fishermen.  
30

31 In addition to the ecological monitoring in marine reserves, it will be critical to monitor  
32 environmental variables, including ocean water temperature, sea level, currents, dissolved  
33 oxygen, and pH at different depths. Any change in these variables should trigger more  
34 intensive monitoring to evaluate the ecological impacts of ocean warming, sea level rise,  
35 shifts in current patterns, low oxygen, and increased acidification. The sanctuary could  
36 benefit from partnerships with scientists who are monitoring ocean changes and who  
37 have the capability of ramping up research activities in response to observed changes. For  
38 example, before 2002, scientists at Oregon State University, Corvallis, routinely  
39 monitored temperature and salinity at stationary moorings off the coast of Oregon. When  
40 they detected low oxygen during routine monitoring in 2002, the scientists intensified  
41 their monitoring efforts by increasing the number of temperature and salinity sensors and  
42 adding oxygen sensors (which transmit data on a daily basis) near the seafloor at a  
43 number of locations along the coast. In this way, the scientists can quantify the scope and  
44 duration of hypoxic events, which have recurred off the coast of Oregon during the past  
45 five years (Barth *et al.*, 2007).  
46



1 The Sanctuary Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) describes the  
2 need for analysis and evaluation of information from sanctuary monitoring and research.  
3 Working with local educational institutions and the National Center for Ecological  
4 Analysis and Synthesis, the sanctuary could develop the capacity to catalog and analyze  
5 spatial data (maps) that characterize the coastline of the sanctuary and the extent of kelp  
6 canopy within the sanctuary, among other types of information. To detect the ecological  
7 impacts of climate change, the information from sanctuary monitoring and research  
8 should be reviewed at regular intervals (at least annually) by collaborating scientists  
9 (such as the Sanctuary Advisory Council’s Research Activities Panel), sanctuary staff,  
10 and the sanctuary manager. The annual review should compare data from the current year  
11 with previous years, from areas inside marine reserves and in surrounding, fished areas.  
12 Ecological changes should be placed within the context of El Niño-Southern Oscillation  
13 and La Niña cycles and shifts associated with the Pacific Decadal Oscillation. Changes in  
14 fisheries or other management regulations also should be considered as part of the  
15 evaluation. Any significant shifts away from predictable trends should trigger further  
16 evaluation of the data in an effort to understand local and regional ecosystem dynamics  
17 and any possible links to climate change.

#### 18 **Communication in the Channel Islands Region**

19 Public awareness and understanding are paramount in the discussion about how to adapt  
20 to climate change. The education and outreach strategies described in the Sanctuary  
21 Management Plan (U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006) do not focus on the issue of  
22 climate change but, with a slight shift in focus, the existing strategies can be used to  
23 increase public awareness and understanding of the causes and impacts of climate change  
24 on ocean ecosystems. Key strategies are to educate teachers, students, volunteers, and the  
25 public using an array of tools, including workshops, public lectures, the sanctuary  
26 website and weather kiosks, and a sanctuary publication and brochure, among others.  
27 Opportunities to focus the sanctuary education program’s activities and products on the  
28 issue of climate change include the following:  
29

- 30
- 31 • Integrate information about climate change into volunteer Sanctuary Naturalist Corps  
32 and adult education programs;
  - 33 • Update the sanctuary website and weather kiosks with information about causes and  
34 impacts of climate change;
  - 35 • Produce a special issue of the sanctuary publication, *Aloikoy*, about the current  
36 scientific understanding of climate change and potential impacts on sanctuary  
37 resources;
  - 38 • Develop a brochure about climate change to help members of the community identify  
39 opportunities to reduce their contributions to greenhouse gases and other stressors  
40 that exacerbate the problem of climate change;
  - 41 • Expand the sanctuary’s Ocean Etiquette program<sup>73</sup> to include consideration and  
42 mitigation of individual activities that contribute to climate change;
  - 43 • Host a teacher workshop on the subject of climate change;

---

<sup>73</sup> <http://sanctuaries.noaa.gov/protect/oceanetiquette.html>

- 1 • Prepare web-based curriculum with classroom exercises and opportunities for
- 2 experiential learning about climate change; and
- 3 Partner with local scientists who study climate change to give public lectures and engage
- 4 students in monitoring climate change.

## 5 **A6.5 Conclusions about Marine Protected Area Case Studies**

6 The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park has been examined along with the National Marine  
7 Sanctuary case studies because it is an example of an MPA that has a relatively highly  
8 developed climate change program in place. A Coral Bleaching Response Plan is part of  
9 its Climate Change Response Program, which is linked to a Representative Areas  
10 Program and a Water Quality Protection Plan in a comprehensive approach to support the  
11 resilience of the coral reef ecosystem. In contrast, the Florida Keys National Marine  
12 Sanctuary is only now developing a bleaching response plan. The Florida Reef Resilience  
13 Program, under the leadership of The Nature Conservancy, is implementing a  
14 quantitative assessment of coral reefs before and after bleaching events. The recently  
15 established Papahānaumokuākea (Northwestern Hawaiian Islands) Marine National  
16 Monument is the largest MPA in the world and provides a unique opportunity to examine  
17 the effects of climate change on a nearly intact large-scale marine ecosystem. These three  
18 MPAs consist of coral reef ecosystems, which have experienced coral bleaching events  
19 over the past two decades.

20

21 The Sanctuary Management Plan for the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary  
22 mentions, but does not fully address, the issue of climate change. The Plan describes a  
23 strategy to identify, assess, and respond to emerging issues through consultation with the  
24 Sanctuary Advisory Council and local, state, or federal agencies. Emerging issues that are  
25 not yet addressed by the management plan include ocean warming, sea level rise, shifts in  
26 ocean circulation, ocean acidification, spread of disease, and shifts in species ranges.

27

28 Barriers to implementation of adaptation options in MPAs include lack of resources,  
29 varying degrees of interest in and concern about climate change impacts, and a need for  
30 basic research on marine ecosystems and climate change impacts. National Marine  
31 Sanctuary Program staff are hard-pressed to maintain existing management programs,  
32 which do not yet include explicit focus on effects of climate change. While the Program's  
33 strategic plan does not address climate change, the Program has recently formed a  
34 Climate Change Working Group that will be developing recommendations. Although  
35 there is considerable research on physical impacts of climate change in marine systems,  
36 research on biological effects and ecological consequences is not as well developed.

37

38 Opportunities with regard to implementation of adaptation options in MPAs include a  
39 growing public concern about the marine environment, recommendations of two ocean  
40 commissions, and an increasing dedication of marine scientists to conduct research that is  
41 relevant to MPA management. References to climate change as well as MPAs permeate  
42 both the Pew Oceans Commission and U.S. Commission on Ocean Policy reports on the  
43 state of the oceans. Both commissions held extensive public meetings, and their findings  
44 reflect changing public perceptions and attitudes about protecting marine resources from  
45 threats of climate change. The interests of the marine science community have also

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Annex A: Case Studies**

- 1 evolved, with a shift from “basic” to “applied” research over recent decades. Attitudes of
- 2 MPA managers have changed as well, with a growing recognition of the need to better
- 3 understand ecological processes in order to implement science-based adaptive
- 4 management.

1 **A7 References**

- 2
- 3 **Aeby**, G.S., J.C. Kenyon, J.E. Maragos, and D.C. Potts, 2003: First record of mass coral  
4 bleaching in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Coral Reefs*, **22**, 256-256.
- 5 **Aeby**, G.S., 2006: Baseline levels of coral disease in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands.  
6 *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 471-488.
- 7 **Anil**, A.C., D. Desai, and L. Khandeparker, 2001: Larval development and  
8 metamorphosis in *Balanus amphitrite* Darwin (Cirripedia; Thoracica):  
9 significance of food concentration, temperature and nucleic acids. *Journal of*  
10 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology*, **263(2)**, 125-141.
- 11 **Antonelis**, G.A., J.D. Baker, T.C. Johanos, R.C. Braun, and A.L. Harting, 2006:  
12 Hawaiian monk seal: status and conservation issues. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**,  
13 75-101.
- 14 **Apple**, D.D., 1996: Changing social and legal forces affecting the management of  
15 national forests. *Women in Natural Resources*, **18**, 1-13.
- 16 **Arzel**, C., J. Elmberg, and M. Guillemain, 2006: Ecology of spring-migrating Anatidae: a  
17 review. *Journal of Ornithology*, **147(2)**, 167-184.
- 18 **Ault**, J.S., J.A. Bohnsack, and G.A. Meester, 1998: A retrospective (1979-1996)  
19 multispecies assessment of coral reef fish stocks in the Florida Keys. *Fishery*  
20 *Bulletin*, **96(3)**, 395-414.
- 21 **Ault**, J.S., S.G. Smith, J.A. Bohnsack, J. Luo, D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 2006:  
22 Building sustainable fisheries in Florida's coral reef ecosystem: positive signs in  
23 the Dry Tortugas. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **78(3)**, 633-654.
- 24 **Austin**, J.E., A.D. Afton, M.G. Anderson, R.G. Clark, C.M. Custer, J.S. Lawrence, J.B.  
25 Pollard, and J.K. Ringelman, 2000: Declining scaup populations: issues,  
26 hypotheses, and research needs. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, **28(1)**, 254-263.
- 27 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, J.M. Lenihan, and R.J. Drapek, 2001: Climate change effects  
28 on vegetation distribution and carbon budget in the United States. *Ecosystems*, **4**,  
29 164-185.
- 30 **Bachelet**, D., R.P. Neilson, T. Hickler, R.J. Drapek, J.M. Lenihan, M.T. Sykes, B. Smith,  
31 S. Sitch, and K. Thonicke, 2003: Simulating past and future dynamics of natural

- 1 ecosystems in the United States. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, **17(2)**, 1045-  
2 1066.
- 3 **Baker**, J.D., C.L. Littnan, and D.W. Johnston, 2006: Potential effects of sea level rise on  
4 the terrestrial habitats of endangered and endemic megafauna in the Northwestern  
5 Hawaiian Islands. *Endangered Species Research*, **4**, 1-10.
- 6 **Balazs**, G.H. and M. Chaloupka, 2006: Recovery trend over 32 years at the Hawaiian  
7 green turtle rookery of French Frigate Shoals. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 147-  
8 158.
- 9 **Barber**, V.A., G.P. Juday, and B.P. Finney, 2000: Reduced growth of Alaskan white  
10 spruce in the twentieth century from temperature-induced drought stress. *Nature*,  
11 **405(6787)**, 668-673.
- 12 **Barnett**, T.P., D.W. Pierce, and R. Schnur, 2001: Detection of anthropogenic climate  
13 change in the world's oceans. *Science*, **292**, 270-274.
- 14 **Barry**, J.P., C.H. Baxter, R.D. Sagarin, and S.E. Gilman, 1995: Climate-related, long-  
15 term faunal changes in a California rocky intertidal community. *Science*,  
16 **267(5198)**, 672-675.
- 17 **Barth**, J.A., B.A. Menge, J. Lubchenco, F. Chan, J.M. Bane, A.R. Kirincich, M.A.  
18 McManus, K.J. Nielsen, S.D. Pierce, and L. Washburn, 2007: Delayed upwelling  
19 alters nearshore coastal ocean ecosystems in the northern California current.  
20 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
21 **104(10)**, 3719-3724.
- 22 **Battin**, J., M.W. Wiley, M.H. Ruckelshaus, R.N. Palmer, E. Korb, K.K. Bartz, and H.  
23 Imaki, 2007: Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration.  
24 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
25 **104(16)**, 6720-.
- 26 **Bayne**, B.L., R. J. Thompson, and J. Widdows, 1973: Some effects of temperature and  
27 food on the rate of oxygen consumption by *Mytilus edulus*, In: *Effects of*  
28 *Temperature on Ectothermic Organisms*, [Weiser, W. (ed.)]. Springer-Verlag,  
29 Berlin, pp. 181-193.
- 30 **Beesley**, D., 1996: Reconstructing the landscape: An environmental history, 1820-1960.  
31 *Sierra Nevada Ecosystem Project: Final report to Congress*, **2**, 3-24.

- 1 **Beever**, E.A., P.F. Brussard, and J. Berger, 2003: Patterns of apparent extirpation among  
2 isolated populations of pikas (*Ochotona princeps*) in the Great Basin. *Journal of*  
3 *Mammalogy*, **84(1)**, 37-54.
- 4 **Behrens**, M.D. and K.D. Lafferty, 2004: Effects of marine reserves and urchin disease on  
5 southern Californian rocky reef communities. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,  
6 **279**, 129-139.
- 7 **Bellwood**, D.R., T.P. Hughes, C. Folke, and M. Nystroem, 2004: Confronting the coral  
8 reef crisis. *Nature*, **429(6994)**, 827-833.
- 9 **Bitz**, C.M. and D.S. Battisti, 1999: Interannual to decadal variability in climate and the  
10 glacier mass balance in Washington, Western Canada, and Alaska. *Journal of*  
11 *Climate*, **12(11)**, 3181-3196.
- 12 **Bohnsack**, J.A., D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 1994: Fisheries trends from Monroe  
13 County, Florida. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **54(3)**, 982-1018.
- 14 **Boland**, R., B. Zgliczynski, J. Asher, A. Hall, K. Hogrefe, and M. Timmers, 2006:  
15 Dynamics of debris densities and removal at the northwestern Hawaiian Islands  
16 coral reefs. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 461-470.
- 17 **Bricker**, S.B., C.G. Clement, D.E. Pirhalla, S.P. Orlando, and D.R.G. Farrow, 1999:  
18 *National Estuarine Eutrophication Assessment: Effects of Nutrient Enrichment in*  
19 *the Nation's Estuaries*. National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science, National  
20 Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp. 1-71.
- 21 **Brinson**, M.M., 1991: *Ecology of a Nontidal Brackish Marsh in Coastal North Carolina*.  
22 [Brinson, M.M. (ed.)]. U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Wetlands  
23 Research Center, Slidell, Louisiana.
- 24 **Buddemeier**, R.W., J.A. Kleypas, and R. Aronson, 2004: *Coral Reefs and Global*  
25 *Climate Change: Potential Contributions of Climate Change to Stresses on Coral*  
26 *Reef Ecosystems*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change.
- 27 **Bureau of Land Management**, 2000: *The Rio Grande Corridor Final Plan*. U.S.  
28 Department of Interior, pp.1-54.
- 29 **Burkholder**, J.M., E.J. Noga, C.H. Hobbs, and H.B. Glasgow Jr, 1992: New 'phantom'  
30 dinoflagellate is the causative agent of major estuarine fish kills. *Nature*,  
31 **358(6385)**, 407-410.

- 1 **Burns, T.P.**, 1985: Hard-coral distribution and cold-water disturbances in South Florida:  
2 variation with depth and location. *Coral Reefs*, **4**, 117-124.
- 3 **Busenberg, G.**, 2004: Wildfire management in the United States: The evolution of a  
4 policy failure. *Review of Policy Research*, **21(2)**, 145-156.
- 5 **Buzzelli, C.P., R.A. Luettich Jr, S.P. Powers, C.H. Peterson, J.E. McNinch, J.L.**  
6 **Pinckney, and H.W. Paerl**, 2002: Estimating the spatial extent of bottom-water  
7 hypoxia and habitat degradation in a shallow estuary. *Marine Ecology Progress*  
8 *Series*, **230**, 103-112.
- 9 **Cabanes, C., A. Cazenave, and C. Le Provost**, 2001: Sea level rise during past 40 years  
10 determined from satellite and in situ observations. *Science*, **294(5543)**, 840-842.
- 11 **Caldeira, K. and M.E. Wickett**, 2003: Anthropogenic carbon and ocean pH. *Nature*,  
12 **425(6956)**, 365-365.
- 13 **California Climate Action Team**, 2005: *First Annual Report to the Governor and*  
14 *Legislators (Draft)*.
- 15 **Cayan, D., P. Bromirski, K. Hayhoe, M. Tyree, M. Dettinger, and R. Flick**, 2006a:  
16 *Projecting Future Sea Level*. CEC-500-2005-202-SF, White paper prepared for  
17 the California Climate Change Center.
- 18 **Cayan, D., A.L. Luers, M. Hanemann, and G. Franco**, 2006b: *Scenarios of Climate*  
19 *Change in California: an Overview*. Climate action team report to the Governor  
20 and Legislators. California Climate Change Center.
- 21 **Cayan, D.R., M.D. Dettinger, H.F. Diaz, and N.E. Graham**, 1998: Decadal variability of  
22 precipitation over Western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **11(12)**, 3148-  
23 3166.
- 24 **Chin, A., P. M. Kyne, T. I. Walker, R. B. McAuley, J. D. Stevens, C. L. Dudgeon, and R.**  
25 **D. Pillans**, 2007: Vulnerability of chondrichthyan fishes of the Great Barrier Reef  
26 to climate change, In: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J.  
27 and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 28 **Christian, R.R., L. Stasavich, C. Thomas, and M. M. Brinson**, 2000: Reference is a  
29 moving target in sea-level controlled wetlands, In: *Concepts and Controversies in*  
30 *Tidal Marsh Ecology*, [Weinstein, M.P. and D.A. Kreeger (eds.)]. Kluwer Press,  
31 The Netherlands, pp. 805-825.

- 1 **Climate Impacts Group**, University of Washington, 2004: *Overview of Climate Change*  
2 *Impacts in the U.S. Pacific Northwest*. Climate Impacts Group, University of  
3 Washington, Seattle.
- 4 **Clow**, D.W., L. Schrott, R. Webb, D.H. Campbell, A. Torizzo, and M. Dornblaser, 2003:  
5 Ground water occurrence and contributions to streamflow in an alpine catchment,  
6 Colorado front range. *Ground Water*, **41(7)**, 937-950.
- 7 **Coles**, S.L. and Y.H. Fadlallah, 1991: Reef coral survival and mortality at low  
8 temperatures in the Arabian Gulf: new species-specific lower temperature limits.  
9 *Coral Reefs*, **9(4)**, 231-237.
- 10 **Conference of the Upper Delaware Townships**, 1986: *Final Management Plan: Upper*  
11 *Delaware Scenic and Recreational River*. pp.1-197.
- 12 **Congdon**, B.C., C. A. Erwin, D. R. Peck, G. B. Baker, M. C. Double, and P. O'Neill,  
13 2007: Vulnerability of seabirds on the Great Barrier Reef to climate change, In:  
14 *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)].  
15 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 16 **Conley**, D.J., S. Markager, J. Andersen, T. Ellermann, and L.M. Svendsen, 2002: Coastal  
17 eutrophication and the Danish national aquatic monitoring and assessment  
18 program. *Estuaries*, **25(4)**, 848-861.
- 19 **Cook**, G.D., R.J. Williams, L.B. Hutley, A.P. O'Grady, and A.C. Liedloff, 2002:  
20 Variation in vegetative water use in the savannas of the North Australian Tropical  
21 Transect. *Journal of Vegetation Science*, **13(3)**, 413-418.
- 22 **Cooper**, D.J., J. Dickens, N. Thompson Hobbs, L. Christensen, and L. Landrum, 2006:  
23 Hydrologic, geomorphic and climatic processes controlling willow establishment  
24 in a montane ecosystem. *Hydrological Processes*, **20(8)**, 1845-1864.
- 25 **Cooper**, S.R., S.K. McGlothlin, M. Madritch, and D.L. Jones, 2004: Paleoecological  
26 evidence of human impacts on the Neuse and Pamlico Estuaries of North  
27 Carolina, USA. *Estuaries*, **27(4)**, 617-633.
- 28 **Copeland**, B.J. and J.E. Hobbie, 1972: *Phosphorus and Eutrophication in the Pamlico*  
29 *River Estuary, N. C., 1966-1969- A SUMMARY*. 1972-65, University of North  
30 Carolina Water Resources Research Institute, Raleigh, North Carolina.
- 31 **Cowie-Haskell**, B.D. and J.M. Delaney, 2003: Integrating science into the design of the  
32 Tortugas Ecological Reserve. *Marine Technology Society Journal*, **37(1)**, 68-79.



- 1 **Cubasch**, U., G. A. Meehl, G. J. Boer, R. J. Stouffer, M. Dix, A. Noda, C. A. Senior, S.  
2 Raper, and K. S. Yap, 2001: Projections of future climate change, In: *Climate*  
3 *Change 2001: The Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Third*  
4 *Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*,  
5 [Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K.  
6 Maskell, and C.A. Johnson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,  
7 United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA, pp. 525-582.
- 8 **Dameron**, O.J., M. Parke, M.A. Albins, and R. Brainard, 2007: Marine debris  
9 accumulation in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands: an examination of rates and  
10 processes. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **54(4)**, 423-433.
- 11 **Davis**, G.E., 1982: A century of natural change in coral distribution at the Dry Tortugas:  
12 a comparison of reef maps from 1881 and 1976. *Bulletin of Marine Science*,  
13 **32(2)**, 608-623.
- 14 **Dayton**, P.K., M.J. Tegner, P.B. Edwards, and K.L. Riser, 1999: Temporal and spatial  
15 scales of kelp demography: the role of oceanographic climate. *Ecological*  
16 *Monographs*, **69(2)**, 219-250.
- 17 **Dayton**, P.K., M.J. Tegner, P.E. Parnell, and P.B. Edwards, 1992: Temporal and spatial  
18 patterns of disturbance and recovery in a kelp forest community. *Ecological*  
19 *Monographs*, **62(3)**, 421-445.
- 20 **Delaney**, J.M., 2003: Community capacity building in the designation of the Tortugas  
21 Ecological Reserve. *Gulf and Caribbean Research*, **12(2)**, 163-169.
- 22 **Delaware River Basin Commission**, 2004: *Water Resource Plan for the Delaware River*  
23 *Basin*. Delaware River Basin Commission, pp.1-100.
- 24 **DeMartini**, E.E. and A.M. Friedlander, 2004: Spatial patterns of endemism in shallow-  
25 water reef fish populations of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Marine*  
26 *Ecology Progress Series*, **271**, 281-296.
- 27 **DeMartini**, E.E. and A.M. Friedlander, 2006: Predation, endemism, and related  
28 processes structuring shallow-water reef fish assemblages of the Northwestern  
29 Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 237-256.
- 30 **DeMartini**, E.E., A.M. Friedlander, and S.R. Holzwarth, 2005: Size at sex change in  
31 protogynous labroids, prey body size distributions, and apex predator densities at  
32 NW Hawaiian atolls. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **297**, 259-271.

- 1 **Dettinger**, M.D., D.R. Cayan, M.K. Meyer, and A.E. Jeton, 2004: Simulated hydrologic  
2 responses to climate variations and change in the Merced, Carson, and American  
3 River basins, Sierra Nevada, California, 1900-2099. *Climatic Change*, **62(1/3)**,  
4 283-317.
- 5 **Dollar**, S.J. and R.W. Grigg, 2004: Anthropogenic and natural stresses on selected coral  
6 reefs in Hawaii: a multidecade synthesis of impact and recovery. *Pacific Science*,  
7 **58(2)**, 281-304.
- 8 **Done**, T., P. Whetton, R. Jones, R. Berkelmans, J. Lough, W. Skirving, and S.  
9 Wooldridge, 2003: *Global Climate Change and Coral Bleaching on the Great*  
10 *Barrier Reef*. State of Queensland Greenhouse Taskforce through the Department  
11 of Natural Resources and Mines.
- 12 **Done**, T.J., 1999: Coral community adaptability to environmental change at the scales of  
13 regions, reefs and reef zones. *American Zoologist*, **39(1)**, 66-79.
- 14 **Donner**, S.D., T.R. Knutson, and M. Oppenheimer, 2007: Model-based assessment of the  
15 role of human-induced climate change in the 2005 Caribbean coral bleaching  
16 event. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of*  
17 *America*, **104(13)**, 5483-5488.
- 18 **Duane**, T., 1996: *Sierra Nevada Ecosystem Project Final Report to Congress: Status of*  
19 *the Sierra Nevada*. Centers for Water and Wildland Resources, University of  
20 California.
- 21 **Dye**, D.G., 2002: Variability and trends in the annual snow-cover cycle in Northern  
22 Hemisphere land areas, 1972-2000. *Hydrological Processes*, **16(15)**, 3065-3077.
- 23 **Edwards**, M.S., 2004: Estimating scale-dependency in disturbance impacts: El Niños and  
24 giant kelp forests in the northeast Pacific. *Oecologia*, **138(3)**, 436-447.
- 25 **Ettl**, G.J. and D.L. Peterson, 1995: Growth response of subalpine fir (*Abies lasiocarpa*)  
26 to climate in the Olympic Mountains Washington, USA. *Global Change Biology*,  
27 **1(3)**, 213-230.
- 28 **Euskirchen**, S., A.D. McGuire, D.W. Kicklighter, Q. Zhuang, J.S. Clein, R.J. Dargaville,  
29 D.G. Dye, J.S. Kimball, K.C. McDonald, J.M. Melillo, V.E. Romanovsky, and  
30 N.V. Smith, 2006: Importance of recent shifts in soil thermal dynamics on  
31 growing season length, productivity, and carbon sequestration in terrestrial high-  
32 latitude ecosystems. *Global Change Biology*, **12**, 731-750.

- 1 **Field, J.C.**, D. F. Boesch, D. Scavia, R. H. Buddemeier, V. R. Burkett, D. Cayan, M.  
2 Fogerty, M. A. Harwell, R. W. Howarth, C. Mason, L. J. Pietrafesa, D. J. Reed, T.  
3 C. Royer, A. H. Sallenger, M. Spranger, and J. G. Titus, 2001: Potential  
4 consequences of climate variability and change on coastal and marine resources,  
5 In: *Climate Change Impacts in the United States: Potential Consequences of*  
6 *Climate Change and Variability and Change*, Report for the U.S. Global Change  
7 Research Program, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- 8 **Firing, J.** and R.E. Brainard, 2006: Ten years of shipboard ADCP measurements along  
9 the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 351-368.
- 10 **Florida Department of Environmental Protection**, 2005: *Wekiva River Basin State*  
11 *Parks, Multi-Unit Management Plan*. pp.1-98.
- 12 **Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary**, 2002: *Comprehensive Science Plan*.  
13 Available from  
14 [http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/research\\_monitoring/fknms\\_science\\_plan.pdf](http://floridakeys.noaa.gov/research_monitoring/fknms_science_plan.pdf).
- 15 **Foster, M.S.** and D.R. Schiel, 1985: *The Ecology of Giant Kelp Forests in California: a*  
16 *Community Profile*. Biological Report 85(7.2), U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service,  
17 Slidell, LA, pp.1-153.
- 18 **Friedlander, A.**, G. S. Aeby, R. S. Brainard, A. Clark, E. DeMartini, S. Godwin, J.  
19 Kenyon, R. Kosaki, J. Maragos, and P. Vroom, 2005: The state of coral reef  
20 ecosystems of the northwestern Hawaiian islands, In: *The State of Coral Reef*  
21 *Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific Freely Associated States: 2005*,  
22 [Wadell, J.E. (ed.)]. NOAA/NCCOS Center for Coastal Monitoring and  
23 Assessment's Biogeography Team, Silver Spring, MD, pp. 270-311.
- 24 **Friedlander, A.M.** and E.E. DeMartini, 2002: Contrasts in density, size, and biomass of  
25 reef fishes between the northwestern and the main Hawaiian Islands: the effects of  
26 fishing down apex predators. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **230**, 253-264.
- 27 **Galbraith, H.**, D. Yates, D.D. Purkey, A. Huber-Lee, J. Sieber, J. West, S. Herrod-Julius,  
28 and B. Joyce, in press: Climate warming, water storage, and chinook salmon in  
29 California's Sacramento Valley. *Climatic Change*.
- 30 **Gardner, T.A.**, I.M. Cote, J.A. Gill, A. Grant, and A.R. Watkinson, 2003: Long-term  
31 region-wide declines in Caribbean corals. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 958-960.
- 32 **Gavin, D.G.**, J.S. McLachlan, L.B. Brubaker, and K.A. Young, 2001: Postglacial history  
33 of subalpine forests, Olympic Peninsula, Washington, USA. *The Holocene*, **11(2)**,  
34 177-188.

- 1 **Giese**, G.L., H.B. Wilder, and G.G. Parker, 1985: *Hydrology of Major Estuaries and*  
2 *Sounds of North Carolina*. USGS Water-Supply Paper 2221, USGS, pp.1-108.
- 3 **Glynn**, P.W., 1993: Coral reef bleaching: ecological perspectives. *Coral Reefs*, **12(1)**, 1-  
4 17.
- 5 **Graham**, M.H., 2004: Effects of local deforestation on the diversity and structure of  
6 southern California giant kelp forest food webs. *Ecosystems*, **7(4)**, 341-357.
- 7 **Graham**, M.H., P.K. Dayton, and J.M. Erlandson, 2003: Ice ages and ecological  
8 transitions on temperate coasts. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **18(1)**, 33-40.
- 9 **Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority**, 2007: *Measuring the Economic and*  
10 *Financial Value of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park 2005/06*. Access  
11 Economics.
- 12 **Grigg**, R.W., 1981: Acropora in Hawaii. Part 2: zoogeography. *Pacific Science*, **35**, 15-  
13 24.
- 14 **Grigg**, R.W., 1982: Darwin point: a threshold for atoll formation. *Coral Reefs*, **1(1)**, 29-  
15 34.
- 16 **Grigg**, R.W., 1988: Paleoceanography of coral reefs in the Hawaiian-Emperor chain.  
17 *Science*, **240(4860)**, 1737-1743.
- 18 **Grigg**, R.W., 1998: Holocene coral reef accretion in Hawaii: a function of wave exposure  
19 and sea level history. *Coral Reefs*, **17(3)**, 263-272.
- 20 **Grigg**, R.W., 2006: The history of marine research in the Northwestern Hawaiian  
21 Islands: lessons from the past and hopes for the future. *Atoll Research Bulletin*,  
22 **543**, 13-22.
- 23 **Grigg**, R.W., J. Polovina, A. Friedlander, and S. Rohman, 2007: Biology and  
24 paleoceanography of the coral reefs in the northwestern Hawaiian Islands, In:  
25 *Coral Reefs of the United States*, [Riegl, B. and R. Dodge (eds.)]. Springer-Vergal  
26 Publishing.
- 27 **Grigg**, R.W., J. Wells, and C. Wallace, 1981: Acropora in Hawaii, Part 1: history of the  
28 scientific record, systematics and ecology. *Pacific Science*, **35**, 1-13.
- 29 **Guzmán**, H.M. and J. Cortés, 2001: Changes in reef community structure after fifteen  
30 years of natural disturbances in the eastern pacific (Costa Rica). *Bulletin of*  
31 *Marine Science*, **69(1)**, 133-149.

- 1 **Halpern, B.S.**, 2003: The impact of marine reserves: do reserves work and does reserve  
2 size matter? *Ecological Applications*, **13(1)**, S117-S137.
- 3 **Halpern, B.S.** and K. Cottenie, 2007: Little evidence for climate effects on local-scale  
4 structure and dynamics of California kelp forest communities. *Global Change*  
5 *Biology*, **13(1)**, 236-251.
- 6 **Hamlet, A.F.**, P.W. Mote, M.P. Clark, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Effects of  
7 temperature and precipitation variability on snowpack trends in the western  
8 United States. *Journal of Climate*, **18(21)**, 4545-4561.
- 9 **Hamlet, A.F.**, P.W. Mote, M.P. Clark, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2007: Twentieth-century  
10 trends in runoff, evapotranspiration, and soil moisture in the western United  
11 States. *Journal of Climate*, **20(8)**, 1468-1486.
- 12 **Harvell, C.D.**, K. Kim, J.M. Burkholder, R.R. Colwell, P.R. Epstein, D.J. Grimes, E.E.  
13 Hofmann, E.K. Lipp, A. Osterhaus, and R.M. Overstreet, 1999: Emerging marine  
14 diseases--climate links and anthropogenic factors. *Science*, **285**, 1505-1510.
- 15 **Harvell, C.D.**, C.E. Mitchell, J.R. Ward, S. Altizer, A.P. Dobson, R.S. Ostfeld, and M.D.  
16 Samuel, 2002: Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota.  
17 *Science*, **296(5576)**, 2158-2162.
- 18 **Hatton, T.**, P. Reece, P. Taylor, and K. McEwan, 1998: Does leaf water efficiency vary  
19 among eucalypts in water-limited environments? *Tree Physiology*, **18(8)**, 529-  
20 536.
- 21 **Hawkings, J.**, 1996: Case study 1: Canada old crow flats, Yukon territory, In: *Wetlands,*  
22 *Biodiversity and the Ramsar Convention: the Role of the Convention on Wetlands*  
23 *in the Conservation and Wise Use of Biodiversity*, [Hails, A.J. (ed.)]. Ramsar  
24 Convention Bureau, Gland, Switzerland.
- 25 **Hayhoe, K.**, D. Cayan, C.B. Field, P.C. Frumhoff, E.P. Maurer, N.L. Miller, S.C. Moser,  
26 S.H. Schneider, K.N. Cahill, E.E. Cleland, L. Dale, R. Drapek, R.M. Hanemann,  
27 L.S. Kalkstein, J. Lenihan, C.K. Lunch, R.P. Neilson, S.C. Sheridan, and J.H.  
28 Verville, 2004: Emissions pathways, climate change, and impacts on California.  
29 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
30 **101**, 34-.
- 31 **Haynes, D.**, 2001: *Great Barrier Reef Water Quality: Current Issues*. [Haynes, D. (ed.)].  
32 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville, Australia.

- 1 **Helmuth, B.**, B.R. Broitman, C.A. Blanchette, S. Gilman, P. Halpin, C.D.G. Harley, M.J.  
2 O'Donnell, G.E. Hofmann, B. Menge, and D. Strickland, 2006: Mosaic patterns of  
3 thermal stress in the rocky intertidal zone: implications for climate change.  
4 *Ecological Monographs*, **76(4)**, 461-479.
- 5 **Herrlinger, T.J.**, 1981: *Range Extension of Kelletia Kelletii*. Veliger, pp. 1-78.
- 6 **Heusser, C.J.**, 1974: Quaternary vegetation, climate, and glaciation of the Hoh River  
7 Valley, Washington. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*, **85(10)**, 1547-1560.
- 8 **Hewatt, W.G.**, 1937: Ecological studies on selected marine intertidal communities of  
9 Monterey Bay, California. *American Midland Naturalist*, **18(2)**, 161-206.
- 10 **Heyward, F.**, 1939: The relation of fire to stand composition of longleaf pine forests.  
11 *Ecology*, **20(2)**, 287-304.
- 12 **Hinzman, L.D.**, N.D. Bettez, W.R. Bolton, F.S. Chapin, III, M.B. Dyurgerov, C.L.  
13 Fastie, B. Griffith, R.D. Hollister, A. Hope, H.P. Huntington, A.M. Jensen, G.J.  
14 Jia, T. Jorgenson, D.L. Kane, D.R. Klein, G. Kofinas, A.H. Lynch, A.H. Lloyd,  
15 A.D. McGuire, F.E. Nelson, M. Nolan, W.C. Oechel, T.E. Osterkamp, C.H.  
16 Racine, V.E. Romanovsky, R.S. Stone, D.A. Stow, M. Sturm, C.E. Tweedie, G.L.  
17 Vourlitis, M.D. Walker, P.J. Webber, J. Welker, K.S. Winker, and K. Yoshikawa,  
18 2005: Evidence and implications of recent climate change in northern Alaska and  
19 other arctic regions. *Climatic Change*, **72(3)**, 251-298.
- 20 **Hobbie, J.E.**, B. J. Copeland, and W. G. Harrison, 1975: Sources and fates of nutrients in  
21 the Pamlico River estuary, North Carolina, In: *Chemistry, Biology and the*  
22 *Estuarine System*, [Cronin, L.E. (ed.)]. Academic Press, New York, NY, pp. 287-  
23 302.
- 24 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.**, 1999: Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the  
25 world's coral reefs. *Marine & Freshwater Research*, **50(8)**, 839-866.
- 26 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.**, 2004: Coral reefs and projections of future change, In: *Coral*  
27 *Health and Disease*, [Rosenberg, E. and Y. Loya (eds.)]. Springer, Berlin,  
28 Germany, pp. 463-484.
- 29 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.**, K. Anthony, R. Berkelmans, S. Dove, K. Fabricius, J. Lough, P.  
30 A. Marshall, M. J. H. van Oppen, A. Negri, and B. Willis, 2007: Vulnerability of  
31 reef-building corals on the Great Barrier Reef to Climate Change, In: *Climate*  
32 *Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J.E. and P.A. Marshall (eds.)].  
33 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority & Australian Greenhouse Office.

- 1 **Hoegh-Guldberg, O.** and J.S. Pearse, 1995: Temperature, food availability, and the  
2 development of marine invertebrate larvae. *American Zoologist*, **35(4)**, 415-425.
- 3 **Hoeke, R., R. Brainard, R. Moffitt, and M. Merrifield,** 2006: The role of oceanographic  
4 conditions and reef morphology in the 2002 coral bleaching event in the  
5 Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 489-503.
- 6 **Hoffman, J.,** 2003: Designing reserves to sustain temperate marine ecosystems in the  
7 face of global climate change, In: *Buying Time: a User's Manual for Building*  
8 *Resistance and Resilience to Climate Change in Natural Systems*, [Hansen, L.J.,  
9 J.L. Biringer, and J.R. Hoffman (eds.)]. WWF Climate Change Program,  
10 Washington, DC, pp. 123-155.
- 11 **Hofmann, E.E., J.M. Klinck, S.E. Ford, and E.N. Powell,** 1999: Disease dynamics:  
12 modeling of the effect of climate change on oyster disease. *National Shellfisheries*  
13 *Association*, **19(1)**, 329-.
- 14 **Hogg, E.H.,** 2005: Impacts of drought on forest growth and regeneration following fire in  
15 southwestern Yukon, Canada. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **35(9)**, 2141-  
16 2150.
- 17 **Hogg, E.H. and P.Y. Bernier,** 2005: Climate change impacts on drought-prone forests in  
18 western Canada. *Forestry Chronicle*, **81(5)**, 675-682.
- 19 **Hogg, E.H., J.P. Brandt, and P. Hochtubajda,** 2005: Factors affecting interannual  
20 variation in growth of western Canadian aspen forests during 1951-2000.  
21 *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **35(3)**, 610-622.
- 22 **Holbrook, S.J., R.J. Schmitt, and J.S. Stephens, Jr.,** 1997: Changes in an assemblage of  
23 temperate reef fishes associated with a climate shift. *Ecological Applications*,  
24 **7(4)**, 1299-1310.
- 25 **Holman, M.L. and D.L. Peterson,** 2006: Spatial and temporal variability in forest growth  
26 in the Olympic Mountains, Washington: sensitivity to climatic variability.  
27 *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **36(1)**, 92-104.
- 28 **Hughes, T.P., A.H. Baird, D.R. Bellwood, M. Card, S.R. Connolly, C. Folke, R.**  
29 **Grosberg, O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J.B.C. Jackson, J. Kleypas, J.M. Lough, P.**  
30 **Marshall, M. Nystrom, S.R. Palumbi, J.M. Pandolfi, B. Rosen, and J.**  
31 **Roughgarden,** 2003: Climate change, human impacts, and the resilience of coral  
32 reefs. *Science*, **301(5635)**, 929-933.

- 1 **Hutchins**, L.W., 1947: The bases for temperature zonation in geographical distribution.  
2 *Ecological Monographs*, **17(3)**, 325-335.
- 3 **Inouye**, D.W., B. Barr, K.B. Armitage, and B.D. Inouye, 2000: Climate change is  
4 affecting altitudinal migrants and hibernating species. *Proceedings of the National*  
5 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **97(4)**, 1630-1633.
- 6 **IPCC**, 2001: *Climate Change 2001: the Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group*  
7 *I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate*  
8 *Change*. [Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden,  
9 X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press,  
10 Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- 11 **IPCC**, 2007b: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts,*  
12 *Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth*  
13 *Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry,  
14 M.L., O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)].  
15 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 7-22.
- 16 **IPCC**, 2007a: Summary for policymakers, In: *Climate Change 2007: the Physical*  
17 *Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report*  
18 *of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Solomon, S., D. Qin, M.  
19 Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor, and H.L. Miller (eds.)].  
20 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY,  
21 USA.
- 22 **Jaap**, W.C., 1979: Observation on zooxanthellae expulsion at Middle Sambo Reef,  
23 Florida Keys. *Bulletin of Marine Science*, **29**, 414-422.
- 24 **Jaap**, W.C., 1984: *The Ecology of the South Florida Coral Reefs: a Community Profile*.  
25 FWS OBS-82/08 and MMS 84-0038, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Metairie,  
26 LA, pp.1-152.
- 27 **Jaap**, W.C. and P. Hallock, 1990: Coral reefs, In: *Ecosystems of Florida*, [Meyers, R.L.  
28 and J.J. Ewel (eds.)]. University of Central Florida Press, Orlando, Florida, pp.  
29 574-616.
- 30 **Jackson**, J.B.C., M.X. Kirby, W.H. Berger, K.A. Bjorndal, L.W. Botsford, B.J. Bourque,  
31 R.H. Bradbury, R. Cooke, J. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, T.P. Hughes, S. Kidwell, C.B.  
32 Lange, H.S. Lenihan, J.M. Pandolfi, C.H. Peterson, R.S. Steneck, M.J. Tegner,  
33 and R.R. Warner, 2001: Historical overfishing and the recent collapse of coastal  
34 ecosystems. *Science*, **293**, 629-638.



- 1 **Johnson, J.** and P. Marshall, 2007: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef: A*  
2 *Vulnerability Assessment*. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.
- 3 **Jokiel, P.L.**, 1987: Ecology, biogeography and evolution of corals in Hawaii. *Trends in*  
4 *Ecology and Evolution*, **2(7)**, 179-182.
- 5 **Jokiel, P.L.** and E.K. Brown, 2004: Global warming, regional trends and inshore  
6 environmental conditions influence coral bleaching in Hawaii. *Global Change*  
7 *Biology*, **10(10)**, 1627-1641.
- 8 **Jokiel, P.L.**, E.K. Brown, A. Friedlander, S.K. Rodgers, and W.R. Smith, 2004: Hawaii  
9 coral reef assessment and monitoring program: spatial patterns and temporal  
10 dynamics in reef coral communities. *Pacific Science*, **58(2)**, 159-174.
- 11 **Jokiel, P.L.** and S.L. Coles, 1990: Response of Hawaiian and other Indo-Pacific reef  
12 corals to elevated temperature. *Coral Reefs*, **8(4)**, 155-162.
- 13 **Kattsov, V.M.** and E. Källén, 2005: Future climate change: modeling and scenarios for  
14 the Arctic, In: *Arctic Climate Impact Assessment*, Cambridge University Press,  
15 Cambridge, UK, pp. 99-150.
- 16 **Kay, E.A.** and S.R. Palumbi, 1987: Endemism and evolution in Hawaiian marine  
17 invertebrates. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **2**, 183-186.
- 18 **Keller, B.D.** and B.D. Causey, 2005: Linkages between the Florida Keys National  
19 Marine Sanctuary and the South Florida Ecosystem Restoration Initiative. *Ocean*  
20 *& Coastal Management*, **48(11-12)**, 869-900.
- 21 **Keller, B.D.** and S. Donahue, 2006: *2002-03 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary*  
22 *Science Report: an Ecosystem Report Card After Five Years of Marine Zoning*.  
23 Marine Sanctuaries Conservation Series NMSP-06-12, U.S. Department of  
24 Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine  
25 Sanctuary Program, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-358.
- 26 **Kemp, W.M.**, P.A. Sampou, J. Garber, J. Tuttle, and W.R. Boynton, 1992: Seasonal  
27 depletion of oxygen from bottom waters of Chesapeake Bay: roles of benthic and  
28 planktonic respiration and physical exchange processes. *Marine Ecology Progress*  
29 *Series*, **85(1)**.
- 30 **Kenyon, J.** and R.E. Brainard, 2006: Second recorded episode of mass coral bleaching in  
31 the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 505-523.

- 1 **Kenyon, J.C., P.S. Vroom, K.N. Page, M.J. Dunlap, C.B. Wilkinson, and G.S. Aeby,**  
2 2006: Community structure of hermatypic corals at French Frigate Shoals,  
3 Northwestern Hawaiian Islands: capacity for resistance and resilience to selective  
4 stressors. *Pacific Science*, **60(2)**, 153-175.
- 5 **Kiessling, W.,** 2001: Paleoclimatic significance of Phanerozoic reefs. *Geology*, **29(8)**,  
6 751-754.
- 7 **Klein, E., E.E. Berg, and R. Dial,** 2005: Wetland drying and succession across the Kenai  
8 Peninsula Lowlands, south-central Alaska. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*,  
9 **35(8)**, 1931-1941.
- 10 **Kleypas, J.A.,** 2006: Constraints on predicting coral reef response to climate change, In:  
11 *Geological Approaches to Coral Reef Ecology*, [Aronson, R. (ed.)]. Springer,  
12 Verlag, NY, pp. 386-424.
- 13 **Kleypas, J.A., R.W. Buddemeier, and J.P. Gattuso,** 2001: The future of coral reefs in an  
14 age of global change. *International Journal of Earth Sciences*, **90(2)**, 426-437.
- 15 **Kleypas, J.A., J.W. McManus, and L.A.B. Mendez,** 1999: Environmental limits to coral  
16 reef development: where do we draw the line? *Integrative and Comparative*  
17 *Biology*, **39(1)**, 146-159.
- 18 **Knowles, N., M.D. Dettinger, and D.R. Cayan,** 2006: Trends in snowfall versus rainfall  
19 in the Western United States. *Journal of Climate*, **19(18)**, 4545-4559.
- 20 **Korfmacher, K.S.,** 1998: Invisible successes, visible failures: paradoxes of ecosystem  
21 management in the Albemarle-Pamlico estuarine study. *Coastal Management*,  
22 **26(3)**, 191-212.
- 23 **Korfmacher, K.S.,** 2002: Science and ecosystem management in the Albemarle-Pamlico  
24 Estuarine study. *Ocean & Coastal Management*, **45**, 277-300.
- 25 **Krapu, G.L., D.A. Brandt, and R.R. Cox, Jr.,** 2004: Less waste corn, more land in  
26 soybeans, and the switch to genetically modified crops: trends with important  
27 implications for wildlife management. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, **32(1)**, 127-136.
- 28 **Kuta, K.G. and L.L. Richardson,** 1996: Abundance and distribution of black band  
29 disease on coral reefs in the northern Florida Keys. *Coral Reefs*, **15(4)**, 219-223.
- 30 **Ladah, L., J. Zertuche-Gonzalez, and G. Hernandez-Carmona,** 1999: Rapid recovery  
31 giant kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*, Phaeophyceae) recruitment near its southern

- 1           limit in Baja California after mass disappearance during ENSO 1997-1998.  
2           *Journal of Phycology*, **35**, 1106-1112.
- 3   **Lafleur**, P.M., 1993: Potential water balance response to climatic warming: the case of a  
4           coastal wetland ecosystem of the James Bay lowland. *Wetlands*, **13(4)**, 270-276.
- 5   **Lang**, J.C., H.R. Lasker, E.H. Gladfelter, P. Hallock, W.C. Jaap, F.J. Losada, and R.G.  
6           Muller, 1992: Spatial and temporal variability during periods of "recovery" after  
7           mass bleaching on Western Atlantic coral reefs. *American Zoologist*, **32(6)**, 696-  
8           706.
- 9   **Larson**, D.L., 1995: Effects of climate on numbers of northern prairie wetlands. *Climatic*  
10          *Change*, **30(2)**, 169-180.
- 11   **Lawrence**, D.M. and A.G. Slater, 2005: A projection of severe near-surface permafrost  
12          degradation during the 21st century. *Geophysical Research Letters*, **32(L24401)**.
- 13   **Lee**, T.N., E. Williams, E. Johns, D. Wilson, and N. P. Smith, 2002: Transport processes  
14          linking south Florida coastal ecosystems, In: *The Everglades, Florida Bay, and*  
15          *Coral Reefs of the Florida Keys: an Ecosystem Sourcebook*, [Porter, J.W. and  
16          K.G. Porter (eds.)]. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 309-342.
- 17   **Lemieux**, C.J. and D.J. Scott, 2005: Climate change, biodiversity conservation and  
18          protected area planning in Canada. *The Canadian Geographer*, **49(4)**, 384-399.
- 19   **Lenihan**, J.M., D. Bachelet, R. Drapek, and R.P. Neilson, 2006: *The Response of*  
20          *Vegetation, Distribution, Ecosystem Productivity, and Fire in California to*  
21          *Future Climate Scenarios Simulated by the MCI Dynamic Vegetation Model*.  
22          Climate action team report to the Governor and Legislators, available from  
23          [http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-](http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-191-SF.PDF)  
24          [191-SF.PDF](http://www.energy.ca.gov/2005publications/CEC-500-2005-191/CEC-500-2005-191-SF.PDF).
- 25   **Lessios**, H.A., D.R. Robertson, and J.D. Cubit, 1984: Spread of *Diadema* mass mortality  
26          through the Caribbean. *Science*, **226(4672)**, 335-337.
- 27   **Levitus**, S., J.I. Antonov, T.P. Boyer, and C. Stephens, 2000: Warming of the world  
28          ocean. *Science*, **287**, 2225-2229.
- 29   **Lighty**, R.G., I.G. Macintyre, and R. Stuckenrath, 1978: Submerged early Holocene  
30          barrier reef south-east Florida shelf. *Nature*, **276(5683)**, 59-60.
- 31   **Lins**, H.F. and J.R. Slack, 1999: Streamflow trends in the United States. *Geophysical*  
32          *Research Letters*, **26(2)**, 227-230.

- 1 **Littell, J.S.**, 2006: Climate impacts to forest ecosystem processes: douglas-fir growth in  
2 northwestern U.S. mountain landscapes and area burned by wildfire in western  
3 U.S. ecoprovinces. *PhD Dissertation, University of Washington, Seattle*.
- 4 **Logan, J.A. and J.A. Powell**, 2001: Ghost forests, global warming, and the mountain pine  
5 beetle (*Coleoptera: Scolytidae*). *American Entomologist*, **47(3)**, 160-172.
- 6 **Logan, J.A., J. Regniere, and J.A. Powell**, 2003: Assessing the impacts of global  
7 warming on forest pest dynamics. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*,  
8 **1(3)**, 130-137.
- 9 **Lotze, H.K., H.S. Lenihan, B.J. Bourque, R.H. Bradbury, R.G. Cooke, M.C. Kay, S.M.**  
10 **Kidwell, M.X. Kirby, C.H. Peterson, and J.B.C. Jackson**, 2006: Depletion,  
11 degradation, and recovery potential of estuaries and coastal seas. *Science*,  
12 **312(5781)**, 1806-1809.
- 13 **Lough, J.**, 2007: Climate and climate change scenarios for the Great Barrier Reef, In:  
14 *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)].  
15 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville, Australia, pp. 15-50.
- 16 **Luppi, T.A., E.D. Spivak, and C.C. Bas**, 2003: The effects of temperature and salinity on  
17 larval development of *Armases rubripes* Rathbun, 1897 (Brachyura, Grapsoidea,  
18 Sesarnidae), and the southern limit of its geographical distribution. *Estuarine,*  
19 *Coastal and Shelf Science*, **58(3)**, 575-585.
- 20 **Magnuson, J.J., D.M. Robertson, B.J. Benson, R.H. Wynne, D.M. Livingstone, T. Arai,**  
21 **R.A. Assel, R.G. Barry, V. Card, E. Kuusisto, N.G. Granin, T.D. Prowse, K.M.**  
22 **Stewart, and V.S. Vuglinski**, 2000: Historical trends in lake and river ice cover in  
23 the Northern Hemisphere. *Science*, **289(5485)**, 1743-1746.
- 24 **Mallin, M.A., J.M. Burkholder, L.B. Cahoon, and M.H. Posey**, 2000: North and South  
25 Carolina coasts. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **41(1)**, 56-75.
- 26 **Mantua, N.J., S.R. Hare, Y. Zhang, J.M. Wallace, and R.C. Francis**, 1997: A pacific  
27 interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. *Bulletin of*  
28 *the American Meteorological Society*, **78(6)**, 1069-1079.
- 29 **Maragos, J.E., D.C. Potts, G. Aeby, D. Gulko, J. Kenyon, D. Siciliano, and D.**  
30 **VanRavenswaay**, 2004: 2000-2002 Rapid ecological assessment of corals  
31 (*Anthozoa*) on shallow reefs of the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. Part 1: species  
32 and distribution. *Pacific Science*, **58(2)**, 211-230.

- 1 **Marshall**, P. and H. Schuttenberg, 2006: Adapting coral reef management in the face of  
2 climate change, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*,  
3 [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong  
4 (eds.)]. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 223-241.
- 5 **McBean**, G.A., G. Alekseev, D. Chen, E. Forland, J. Fyfe, P. Y. Groisman, R. King, H.  
6 Melling, R. Vose, and P. H. Whitefield, 2005: Arctic climate - past and present,  
7 In: *Arctic Climate Impact Assessment*, [Corell, R.W. (ed.)]. Cambridge University  
8 Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 21-60.
- 9 **McCabe**, G.J. and D.M. Wolock, 2002: Trends and temperature sensitivity of moisture  
10 conditions in the conterminous United States. *Climate Research*, **20(1)**, 19-29.
- 11 **McDonald**, K.C., J.S. Kimball, E. Njoku, R. Zimmermann, and M. Zhao, 2004:  
12 Variability in springtime thaw in the terrestrial high latitudes: monitoring a major  
13 control on the biospheric assimilation of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> with spaceborne  
14 microwave remote sensing. *Earth Interactions*, **8(20)**, 1-23.
- 15 **McGowan**, J.A., D.R. Cayan, L.M. Dorman, and A. Butler, 1998: Climate-ocean  
16 variability and ecosystem response in the Northeast Pacific. *Science*, **281(5374)**,  
17 210-217.
- 18 **McGuire**, A.D., M. Apps, F. S. Chapin III, R. Dargaville, M. D. Flannigan, E. S.  
19 Kasischke, D. Kicklighter, J. Kimball, W. Kurz, D. J. McCrae, K. A. McDonald,  
20 J. Melillo, R. Myneni, B. J. Stocks, D. L. Verbyla, and Q. Zhuang, 2004: Land  
21 cover disturbances and feedbacks to the climate system in Canada and Alaska, In:  
22 *Land Change Science: Observing, Monitoring, and Understanding Trajectories of*  
23 *Change on the Earth's Surface*, [Gutman, G. and A.C. Janetos (eds.)]. Kluwer  
24 Academic Publisher, Netherlands, pp. 139-162.
- 25 **McLachlan**, J.S. and L.B. Brubaker, 1995: Local and regional vegetation change on the  
26 northeastern Olympic Peninsula during the Holocene. *Canadian Journal of*  
27 *Botany*, **73(10)**, 1618-1627.
- 28 **Melillo**, J., A.D. McGuire, D.W. Kicklighter, B. Moore, III, C.J. Vorosmarty, and A.L.  
29 Schloss, 1993: Global climate change and terrestrial net primary production.  
30 *Nature*, **363(6426)**, 234-240.
- 31 **Mid-Atlantic Regional Assessment Team**, 2000: *Preparing for a Changing Climate:*  
32 *Mid-Atlantic Overview*. U.S. Global Change Research Program, U.S.  
33 Environmental Protection Agency and Pennsylvania State University.
- 34 **Millar**, C.I., R.D. Westfall, D.L. Delany, J.C. King, and L.J. Graumlich, 2004: Response  
35 of subalpine conifers in the Sierra Nevada, California, USA, to 20th-century

- 1 warming and decadal climate variability. *Arctic, Antarctic, and Alpine Research*,  
2 **36(2)**, 181-200.
- 3 **Miller**, J., R. Waara, E. Muller, and C. Rogers, 2006: Coral bleaching and disease  
4 combine to cause extensive mortality on reefs in US Virgin Islands. *Coral Reefs*,  
5 **25(3)**, 418-418.
- 6 **Miller**, S.L., M. Chiappone, D.W. Swanson, J.S. Ault, S.G. Smith, G.A. Meester, J. Luo,  
7 E.C. Franklin, J.A. Bohnsack, D.E. Harper, and D.B. McClellan, 2001: An  
8 extensive deep reef terrace on the Tortugas bank, Florida Keys National Marine  
9 Sanctuary. *Coral Reefs*, 299-300.
- 10 **Moorhead**, K.K. and M.M. Brinson, 1995: Response of wetlands to rising sea level in  
11 the lower coastal plain of North Carolina. *Ecological Applications*, **5(1)**, 261-271.
- 12 **Mote**, P.W., 2003: Trends in temperature and precipitation in the Pacific Northwest  
13 during the twentieth century. *Northwest Science*, **77(4)**, 271-282.
- 14 **Mote**, P.W., 2006: Climate-driven variability and trends in mountain snowpack in  
15 western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **19(23)**, 6209-6220.
- 16 **Mote**, P.W., A.F. Hamlet, M.P. Clark, and D.P. Lettenmaier, 2005: Declining mountain  
17 snowpack in Western North America. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological*  
18 *Society*, **86(1)**, 39-49.
- 19 **Munday**, P.L., G. P. Jones, M. Sheaves, A. J. Williams, and G. Goby, 2007:  
20 Vulnerability of fishes of the Great Barrier Reef to climate change, In: *Climate*  
21 *Change and the Great Barrier Reef*, [Johnson, J. and P. Marshall (eds.)]. Great  
22 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Townsville.
- 23 **Mundy**, B.C., 2005: *Checklist of the Fishes of the Hawaiian Archipelago*. Bishop  
24 Museum Press, Honolulu, Hawaii.
- 25 **Murray**, S.N. and M.M. Littler, 1981: Biogeographical analysis of intertidal macrophyte  
26 floras of southern California. *Journal of Biogeography*, **8(5)**, 339-351.
- 27 **Myers**, R.A. and B. Worm, 2003: Rapid worldwide depletion of predatory fish  
28 communities. *Nature*, **423(6937)**, 280-283.
- 29 **Myers**, R.A. and B. Worm, 2005: Extinction, survival or recovery of large predatory  
30 fishes. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Series B:*  
31 *Biological Sciences*, **360(1453)**, 13-20.

- 1 **Najjar**, R.G., H.A. Walker, P.J. Anderson, E.J. Barron, R.J. Bord, J.R. Gibson, V.S.  
2 Kennedy, C.G. Knight, J.P. Megonigal, and R.E. O'Connor, 2000: The potential  
3 impacts of climate change on the mid-Atlantic coastal region. *Climate Research*,  
4 **14**, 219-233.
- 5 **Nakawatase**, J.M. and D.L. Peterson, 2006: Spatial variability in forest growth- climate  
6 relationships in the Olympic Mountains, Washington. *Canadian Journal of Forest*  
7 *Research*, **36(1)**, 77-91.
- 8 **National Assessment Synthesis Team**, 2000: *Climate Change Impacts on the United*  
9 *States: the Potential Consequences of Climate Variability and Change*. U.S.  
10 Global Change Research Program, Washington, DC.
- 11 **National Park Service**, 1996: *Water Resources Management Plan - Big Bend National*  
12 *Park*. Department of Hydrology and Water Resources, Univ. of Arizona, Tucson,  
13 Big Bend National Park, Texas, and National Park Service - Water Resources  
14 Division, Fort Collins, CO, pp.1-163.
- 15 **National Park Service**, 2004: *Rio Grande Wild and Scenic River: Final General*  
16 *Management Plan / Environmental Impact Statement*.
- 17 **Nearing**, M.A., 2001: Potential changes in rainfall erosivity in the U.S. with climate  
18 change during the 21st century. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation*, **56(3)**,  
19 229-232.
- 20 **Neilson**, R.P. and R.J. Drapek, 1998: Potentially complex biosphere responses to  
21 transient global warming. *Global Change Biology*, **4(5)**, 505-521.
- 22 **New Mexico Department of Game and Fish**, 2006: *Comprehensive Wildlife*  
23 *Conservation Strategy for New Mexico*. New Mexico Department of Game and  
24 Fish, Santa Fe, New Mexico, pp.1-526.
- 25 **O'Connor**, M.I., J.F. Bruno, S.D. Gaines, B.S. Halpern, S.E. Lester, B.P. Kinlan, and  
26 J.M. Weiss, 2007: Temperature control of larval dispersal and the implications for  
27 marine ecology, evolution, and conservation. *Proceedings of the National*  
28 *Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104**, 1266-1271.
- 29 **Oechel**, W.C., S.J. Hastings, R.C. Zulueta, G.L. Vourlitis, L. Hinzman, and D. Kane,  
30 2000: Acclimation of ecosystem CO<sub>2</sub> exchange in the Alaskan Arctic in response  
31 to decadal climate warming. *Nature*, **406(6799)**, 978-981.

- 1 **Paerl**, H.W., R.L. Dennis, and D.R. Whitall, 2002: Atmospheric deposition of nitrogen:  
2 Implications for nutrient overenrichment of coastal waters. *Estuaries*, **25**, 677-  
3 693.
- 4 **Paerl**, H.W., L.M. Valdes, A.R. Joyner, B.L. Peierls, M.F. Piehler, S.R. Riggs, R.R.  
5 Christian, L.A. Eby, L.B. Crowder, J.S. Ramus, E.J. Clesceri, C.P. Buzzelli, and  
6 R.A. Luetlich, Jr., 2006: Ecological response to hurricane events in the Pamlico  
7 Sound System, North Carolina, and implications for assessment and management  
8 in a regime of increased frequency. *Estuaries and coasts*, **29(6A)**, 1033-1045.
- 9 **Pagano**, T., P. Pasteris, M. Dettinger, D. Cayan, and K. Redmond, 2004: Water year  
10 2004: western water managers feel the heat. *EOS Transactions*, **85(40)**, 385-392.
- 11 **Pandolfi**, J.M., J.B.C. Jackson, N. Baron, R.H. Bradbury, H.M. Guzman, T.P. Hughes,  
12 C.V. Kappel, F. Micheli, J.C. Ogden, H.P. Possingham, and E. Sala, 2005: Are U.  
13 S. coral reefs on the slippery slope to slime? *Science*, **307(5716)**, 1725-1726.
- 14 **Parasiewicz**, P., undated: Strategy for sustainable management of the Upper Delaware  
15 River basin.
- 16 **Peierls**, B.L., R.R. Christian, and H.W. Paerl, 2003: Water quality and phytoplankton as  
17 indicators of hurricane impacts on a large estuarine ecosystem. *Estuaries*, **26(5)**,  
18 1329-1343.
- 19 **Peterson**, C.H. and M.J. Bishop, 2005: Assessing the environmental impacts of beach  
20 nourishment. *BioScience*, **55(10)**, 887-896.
- 21 **Peterson**, C.H., M.J. Bishop, G.A. Johnson, L.M. D'Anna, and L.M. Manning, 2006:  
22 Exploiting beach filling as an unaffordable experiment: benthic intertidal impacts  
23 propagating upwards to shorebirds. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*  
24 *Ecology*, **338(2)**, 205-221.
- 25 **Peterson**, C.H. and J. A. Estes, 2001: Conservation and management of marine  
26 communities, [Bertness, M.D., S.D. Gaines, and M.E. Hay (eds.)]. pp. 469-508.
- 27 **Peterson**, D.W. and D.L. Peterson, 2001: Mountain hemlock growth responds to climatic  
28 variability at annual and decadal time scales. *Ecology*, **82(12)**, 3330-3345.
- 29 **Petraitis**, P.S., 1992: Effects of body size and water temperature on grazing rates of four  
30 intertidal gastropods. *Australian Journal of Ecology*, **17(4)**, 409-414.



- 1 **Philippart**, C.J.M., H.M. van Aken, J.J. Beukema, O.G. Bos, G.C. Cadee, and R.  
2 Dekker, 2003: Climate-related changes in recruitment of the bivalve *Macoma*  
3 *balthica*. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **48(6)**, 2171-2185.
- 4 **Phillips**, N.E., 2005: Growth of filter-feeding benthic invertebrates from a region with  
5 variable upwelling intensity. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 79-89.
- 6 **Piehler**, M.F., L.J. Twomey, N.S. Hall, and H.W. Paerl, 2004: Impacts of inorganic  
7 nutrient enrichment on the phytoplankton community structure and function in  
8 Pamlico Sound, NC USA. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science*, **61(197)**, 207-.
- 9 **Pimentel**, D. and N. Kounang, 1998: Ecology of soil erosion in ecosystems. *Ecosystems*,  
10 **1(5)**, 416-426.
- 11 **Podestá**, G.P. and P.W. Glynn, 2001: The 1997-98 El Niño event in Panama and  
12 Galapagos: an update of thermal stress indices relative to coral bleaching. *Bulletin*  
13 *of Marine Science*, **69(1)**, 43-59.
- 14 **Poff**, N.L., M.M. Brinson, and J.W. Day, Jr., 2002: *Aquatic Ecosystems & Global*  
15 *Climate Change: Potential Impacts on Inland Freshwater and Coastal Wetland*  
16 *Ecosystems in the United States*. Pew Center on Global Climate Change, pp.1-56.
- 17 **Polovina**, J.J., E. Howell, D.R. Kobayashi, and M.P. Seki, 2001: The transition zone  
18 chlorophyll front, a dynamic global feature defining migration and forage habitat  
19 for marine resources. *Progress in Oceanography*, **49(1)**, 469-483.
- 20 **Polovina**, J.J., P. Kleiber, and D.R. Kobayashi, 1999: Application of TOPEX-  
21 POSEIDON satellite altimetry to simulate transport dynamics of larvae of spiny  
22 lobster, *Panulirus marginatus*, in the Northwestern Hawaiian Islands, 1993-1996.  
23 *Fishery Bulletin*, **97(1)**, 132-143.
- 24 **Polovina**, J.J., G.T. Mitchum, N.E. Graham, M.G. Craig, E.E. DeMartini, and E.N. Flint,  
25 1994: Physical and biological consequences of a climate event in the central  
26 North Pacific. *Fisheries Oceanography*, **3(1)**, 15-21.
- 27 **Polovina**, J.P., G.T. Mitchem, and G.T. Evans, 1995: Decadal and basin-scale variation  
28 in mixed layer depth and the impact on biological production in the Central and  
29 North Pacific, 1960-1988. *Deep-sea Research*, **42**, 1701-1716.
- 30 **Porter**, J.W., J.F. Battey, and G.J. Smith, 1982: Perturbation and change in coral reef  
31 communities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United*  
32 *States of America*, **79**, 1678-1681.

- 1 **Porter, J.W. and O.W. Meier, 1992:** Quantification of loss and change in Floridian reef  
2 coral populations. *Integrative and Comparative Biology*, **32(6)**, 625-.
- 3 **Porter, J.W. and J.I. Tougas, 2001:** Reef ecosystems: threats to their biodiversity.  
4 *Encyclopedia of Biodiversity*, **5**, 73-95.
- 5 **Precht, W.F. and R.B. Aronson, 2004:** Climate flickers and range shifts of reef corals.  
6 *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **2(6)**, 307-314.
- 7 **Precht, W.F. and S. L. Miller, 2006:** Ecological shifts along the Florida reef tract: the  
8 past as a key to the future, In: *Geological Approaches to Coral Reef Ecology*,  
9 [Aronson, R.B. (ed.)]. Springer, New York, NY, pp. 237-312.
- 10 **Puglise, K.A. and R. Kelty, 2007:** *NOAA Coral Reef Ecosystem Research Plan for Fiscal*  
11 *Years 2007 to 2011*. NOAA Technical Memorandum CRCP 1, NOAA Coral Reef  
12 Conservation Program, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-128.
- 13 **Randall, J.E., 1998:** Zoogeography of shore fishes of Indo-Pacific region. *Zoological*  
14 *Studies*, **37(4)**, 227-268.
- 15 **Randall, J.E., J.L. Earle, R.L. Pyle, J.D. Parrish, and T. Hayes, 1993:** Annotated  
16 checklist of the fishes of Midway Atoll, Northwestern Hawaiian Islands. *Pacific*  
17 *Science*, **47**, 356-400.
- 18 **Rauzon, M.J., 2001:** *Isles of Refuge: Wildlife and History of the North-Western*  
19 *Hawaiian Islands*. University of Hawaii Press.
- 20 **Reaser, J.K., R. Pomerance, and P.O. Thomas, 2000:** Coral bleaching and global climate  
21 change: scientific findings and policy recommendations. *Conservation Biology*,  
22 **14(5)**, 1500-1511.
- 23 **Richardson, R.B. and J.B. Loomis, 2004:** Adaptive recreation planning and climate  
24 change: a contingent visitation approach. *Ecological Economics*, **50**, 83-99.
- 25 **Riggs, S.R., 1996:** Sediment evolution and habitat function of organic-rich muds within  
26 the Albemarle estuarine system, North Carolina. *Estuaries*, **19(2A)**, 169-185.
- 27 **Riggs, S.R. and D.V. Ames, 2003:** *Drowning the North Carolina Coast: Sea-Level Rise*  
28 *and Estuarine Dynamics*. UNC-SG-03-04, NC Sea Grant College Program,  
29 Raleigh, NC, pp.1-152.

- 1 **Riordan, B.**, D. Verbyla, and A.D. McGuire, 2006: Shrinking ponds in subarctic Alaska  
2 based on 1950-2002 remotely sensed images. *Journal of Geophysical Research-*  
3 *Biogeosciences*, **111**, G04002-.
- 4 **Robblee, M.B.**, T.R. Barber, P.R. Carlson Jr, M.J. Durako, J.W. Fourqurean, L.K.  
5 Muehlstein, D. Porter, L.A. Yarbrow, R.T. Zieman, and J.C. Zieman, 1991: Mass  
6 mortality of the tropical seagrass *Thalassia testudinum* in Florida Bay (USA).  
7 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **71(3)**, 297-299.
- 8 **Roberts, C.M.**, C.J. McClean, J.E.N. Veron, J.P. Hawkins, G.R. Allen, D.E. McAllister,  
9 C.G. Mittermeier, F.W. Schueler, M. Spalding, and F. Wells, 2002: Marine  
10 biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities for tropical reefs. *Science*,  
11 **295(5558)**, 1280-1284.
- 12 **Roberts, C.M.**, J. D. Reynolds, I. M. Côté, and J. P. Hawkins, 2006: Redesigning coral  
13 reef conservation, In: *Coral Reef Conservation*, Cambridge University Press,  
14 Cambridge, UK, pp. 515-537.
- 15 **Roberts, H.H.**, L.J.Jr. Rouse, and N.D. Walker, 1983: Evolution of cold-water stress  
16 conditions in high-latitude reef systems: Florida Reef Tract and the Bahama  
17 Banks. *Caribbean Journal of Science*, **19(55)**, 60-.
- 18 **Rogers, C.E.** and J.P. McCarty, 2000: Climate change and ecosystems of the mid-  
19 Atlantic region. *Climate Research*, **14**, 235-244.
- 20 **Rouse, W.R.**, 1998: A water balance model for a subarctic sedge fen and its application  
21 to climatic change. *Climatic Change*, **38(2)**, 207-234.
- 22 **Running, S.W.**, J.B. Way, K.C. McDonald, J.S. Kimball, S. Frolking, A.R. Keyser, and  
23 R. Zimmerman, 1999: Radar remote sensing proposed for monitoring freeze-thaw  
24 transitions in boreal regions. *Eos Transactions, American Geophysical Union*,  
25 **80(19)**, 220-221.
- 26 **Saavedra, F.**, D.W. Inouye, M.V. Price, and J. Harte, 2003: Changes in flowering and  
27 abundance of *Delphinium nuttallianum* (Ranunculaceae) in response to a  
28 subalpine climate warming experiment. *Global Change Biology*, **9(6)**, 885-894.
- 29 **Saether, B.E.**, J. Tufto, S. Engen, K. Jerstad, O.W. Roestad, and J.E. Skaatan, 2000:  
30 Population dynamical consequences of climate change for a small temperate  
31 songbird. *Science*, **287(5454)**, 854-856.

- 1 **Sagarin**, R.D., J.P. Barry, S.E. Gilman, and C.H. Baxter, 1999: Climate-related change in  
2 an intertidal community over short and long time scales. *Ecological Monographs*,  
3 **69(4)**, 465-490.
- 4 **Sala**, E., 2006: Top predators provide insurance against climate change. *Trends in*  
5 *Ecology and Evolution*, **21**, 479-480.
- 6 **Salathé**, E.P., Jr., 2005: Downscaling simulations of future global climate with  
7 application to hydrologic modelling. *International Journal of Climatology*, **25(4)**,  
8 419-436.
- 9 **Sanford**, E., 1999: Regulation of keystone predation by small changes in ocean  
10 temperature. *Science*, **283(5410)**, 2095-2097.
- 11 **Sanford**, E., 2002: The feeding, growth, and energetics of two rocky intertidal predators  
12 (*Pisaster ochraceus* and *Nucella canaliculata*) under water temperatures  
13 simulating episodic upwelling. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*  
14 *Ecology*, **273(2)**, 199-218.
- 15 **Schmidt**, J.C., B. L. Everitt, and G. A. Richard, 2003: Hydrology and geomorphology of  
16 the Rio Grande and implications for river rehabilitation, In: *Aquatic Fauna of the*  
17 *Northern Chihuahuan Desert. Museum of Texas Tech University*, [Garrett, G.P.  
18 and N.L. Allan (eds.)]. Museum of Texas Tech University, Special Publications,  
19 Lubbock, TX, pp. 25-45.
- 20 **Serreze**, M.C., J.E. Walsh, F.S. Chapin III, T. Osterkamp, M. Dyurgerov, V.  
21 Romanovsky, W.C. Oechel, J. Morison, T. Zhang, and R.G. Barry, 2000:  
22 Observational evidence of recent change in the northern high-latitude  
23 environment. *Climatic Change*, **46(1-2)**, 159-207.
- 24 **Shallenberger**, R.J., 2006: History of management in the Northwestern Hawaiian  
25 Islands. *Atoll Research Bulletin*, **543**, 23-32.
- 26 **Sheppard**, C., 2006: Longer-term impacts of climate change on coral reefs, In: *Coral*  
27 *Reef Conservation*, [Côté, I.M. and J.D. Reynolds (eds.)]. Cambridge University  
28 Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 264-290.
- 29 **Shevock**, J.R., 1996: *Status of Rare and Endemic Plants*. Sierra Nevada Ecosystem  
30 Project: final report to Congress, Vol. II, Assessments and scientific basis for  
31 management options University of California, Centers for Water and Wildland  
32 Resources, Davis, pp.691-707.
- 33 **Shinn**, E.A., 1989: What is really killing the corals. *Sea Frontiers*, **35**, 72-81.

- 1 **Sierra Nevada Ecosystem Project Science Team**, 1996: *Fire and Fuels*. Sierra Nevada  
2 Ecosystem Project, final report to Congress, Volume I, Assessment Summaries  
3 and Management Strategies Report No. 37, Chapter 4, Centers for Water and  
4 Wildland Resources, University of California, Davis, pp.61-71.
- 5 **Skeat, H.**, 2003: *Sustainable Tourism in the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park*. 2003  
6 Environment by numbers: selected articles on Australia's environment 4617,  
7 Australian Bureau of Statistics.
- 8 **Smith, A.**, J. Monkivitch, P. Koloi, J. Hassall, and G. Hamilton, 2004: Environmental  
9 impact assessment in the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park. *The Environmental*  
10 *Engineer*, **5(4)**, 14-18.
- 11 **Smith, J.B.**, S.E. Ragland, and G.J. Pitts, 1996: Process for evaluating anticipatory  
12 adaptation measures for climate change. *Water, Air, & Soil Pollution*, **92(1)**, 229-  
13 238.
- 14 **Smith, N.V.**, S.S. Saatchi, and J.T. Randerson, 2004: Trends in high northern latitude soil  
15 freeze and thaw cycles from 1988 to 2002. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, **109**,  
16 D12101-.
- 17 **Smith, S.G.**, D.W. Swanson, J.S. Ault, M. Chiappone, and S.L. Miller, forthcoming:  
18 Sampling survey design for multiple spatial scale coral reef assessments in the  
19 Florida Keys. *Coral Reefs*.
- 20 **Smith, S.V.** and R.W. Buddemeier, 1992: Global change and coral reef ecosystems.  
21 *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, **23**, 89-118.
- 22 **Smith, T.M.** and R.W. Reynolds, 2004: Improved extended reconstruction of SST (1854-  
23 1997). *Journal of Climate*, **17(12)**, 2466-2477.
- 24 **Soto, C.G.**, 2001: The potential impacts of global climate change on marine protected  
25 areas. *Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries*, **11(3)**, 181-195.
- 26 **St. Johns River Water Management District**, 2002: *Middle St. Johns River Basin*  
27 *Surface Water Improvement and Management Plan*. Palatka, Florida, pp.1-78.
- 28 **St. Johns River Water Management District**, 2006a: *Middle St. Johns River Basin*  
29 *Initiative: Fiscal Year 2007-2008*. Palatka, Florida, pp.1-22.
- 30 **St. Johns River Water Management District**, 2006b: *Water Supply Assessment and*  
31 *Water Supply Plan*. Palatka, Florida, pp.1-4.

- 1 **Stanley, D.W.**, 1992: *Historical Trends: Water Quality and Fisheries, Albemarle-*  
2 *Pamlico Sounds, With Emphasis on the Pamlico River Estuary.* UNC-SG-92-04,  
3 University of North Carolina Sea Grant College Program Publication, Institute for  
4 Coastal and Marine Resources, East Carolina University, Greenville, NC.
- 5 **Stanley, D.W.** and S.W. Nixon, 1992: Stratification and bottom-water hypoxia in the  
6 Pamlico River Estuary. *Estuaries*, **15(3)**, 270-281.
- 7 **Stanturf, J.A.**, D. D. Wade, T. A. Waldrop, D. K. Kennard, and G. L. Achtemeier, 2002:  
8 Background paper: fire in southern forest landscapes, In: *Southern Forest*  
9 *Resource Assessment, General Technical Report SRS-53*, [Wear, D.N. and J.G.  
10 Greis (eds.)]. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southern Research  
11 Station, Asheville, NC, pp. 607-630.
- 12 **Steel, J.** and N. Carolina, 1991: *Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine System: Technical Analysis*  
13 *of Status and Trends.* Albemarle-Pamlico Estuarine Study Report 91-01,  
14 Environmental Protection Agency National Estuary Program, Raleigh, NC.
- 15 **Steneck, R.S.**, M.H. Graham, B.J. Bourque, D. Corbett, J.M. Erlandson, J.A. Estes, and  
16 M.J. Tegner, 2002: Kelp forest ecosystems: biodiversity, stability, resilience and  
17 future. *Environmental Conservation*, **29(4)**, 436-459.
- 18 **Stewart, I.T.**, D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2004: Changes in snowmelt runoff  
19 timing in Western North America under a 'business as usual' climate change  
20 scenario. *Climatic Change*, **62**, 217-232.
- 21 **Stewart, I.T.**, D.R. Cayan, and M.D. Dettinger, 2005: Changes toward earlier streamflow  
22 timing across western North America. *Journal of Climate*, **18(8)**, 1136-1155.
- 23 **Sun, G.**, S.G. McNulty, J. Lu, D.M. Amatya, Y. Liang, and R.K. Kolka, 2005: Regional  
24 annual water yield from forest lands and its response to potential deforestation  
25 across the southeastern United States. *Journal of Hydrology*, **308(1)**, 258-268.
- 26 **Tahoe National Forest**, 1990: *Tahoe National Forest Land and Resource Management*  
27 *Plan.* USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region.
- 28 **The State of Queensland and Commonwealth of Australia**, 2003: *Reef Water Quality*  
29 *Protection Plan; for Catchments Adjacent to the Great Barrier Reef World*  
30 *Heritage Area.* Queensland Department of Premier and Cabinet, Brisbane.
- 31 **Titus, J.G.**, 2000: Does the U.S. government realize that the sea is rising? How to  
32 restructure federal programs so that wetlands can survive. *Golden Gate University*  
33 *Law Review*, **30(4)**, 717-778.

- 1 **Toy, T.J., G.R. Foster, and K.G. Renard, 2002: *Soil Erosion: Processes, Prediction,***  
2 ***Measurement, and Control.*** John Wiley and Sons.
- 3 **U.S. Climate Change Science Program, 2007: *Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.1:***  
4 ***Coastal Elevation and Sensitivity to Sea Level Rise.*** A report by the U.S. Climate  
5 **Change Science Program and the Subcommittee on Global Change Research,**  
6 **U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.**
- 7 **U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996: *Final Management Plan/Environmental Impact***  
8 ***Statement for the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, Volume I.*** National  
9 **Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-319.**
- 10 **U.S. Department of Commerce, 2000: *Tortugas Ecological Reserve: Final***  
11 ***Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement/Final Supplemental Management***  
12 ***Plan.*** National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Silver Spring, MD,  
13 **pp.1-315.**
- 14 **U.S. Department of Commerce, 2006: *Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary***  
15 ***Draft Management Plan / Draft Environmental Impact Statement.*** National  
16 **Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Sanctuary Program,**  
17 **Silver Spring, MD.**
- 18 **U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2006: *Waterfowl Population Status 2006.*** U.S.  
19 **Department of the Interior, Washington, DC.**
- 20 **USDA Forest Service, 2000a: *National Fire Plan.***
- 21 **USDA Forest Service, 2000b: *Water and the Forest Service.*** FS-660, Washington, DC.
- 22 **USDA Forest Service, 2003: *An Analysis of the Timber Situation in the United States:***  
23 ***1952 to 2050.*** General Technical Report PNW-GTR-560, Pacific Northwest  
24 **Research Station, Portland, OR.**
- 25 **USDA Forest Service, 2004: *Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment (SNFPA).*** 2004-  
26 **ROD, USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region.**
- 27 **Vargas-Ángel, B., J.D. Thomas, and S.M. Hoke, 2003: High-latitude *Acropora***  
28 ***Cervicornis* thickets off Fort Lauderdale, Florida, USA. *Coral Reefs*, **22(4)**, 465-  
29 **473.****
- 30 **Wadell, J.E., 2005: *The State of Coral Reef Ecosystems of the United States and Pacific***  
31 ***Freely Associated States: 2005.*** NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NCCOS

- 1           11, NOAA/NCCOS Center for Coastal Monitoring and Assessment's  
2           Biogeography Team, Silver Spring, MD, pp.1-522.
- 3   **Walker**, N.D., H.H. Roberts, L.J. Rouse, and O.K. Huh, 1982: Thermal history of reef-  
4           associated environments during a record cold-air outbreak event. *Coral Reefs*, **1**,  
5           83-87.
- 6   **Walker**, N.D., L.J. Rouse, and O.K. Huh, 1987: Response of subtropical shallow-water  
7           environments to cold-air outbreak events: satellite radiometry and heat flux  
8           modeling. *Continental Shelf Research*, **7**, 735-757.
- 9   **Wang**, G., N.T. Hobbs, K.M. Giesen, H. Galbraith, D.S. Ojima, and C.E. Braun, 2002a:  
10          Relationships between climate and population dynamics of white-tailed ptarmigan  
11          (*Lagopus leucurus*) in Rocky Mountain National Park, Colorado, USA. *Climate*  
12          *Research*, **23**, 81-87.
- 13   **Wang**, G., N.T. Hobbs, H. Galbraith, and K.M. Giesen, 2002b: Signatures of large-scale  
14          and local climates on the demography of white-tailed ptarmigans in Rocky  
15          Mountain National Park, Colorado, USA. *International Journal of*  
16          *Biometeorology*, **46**, 197-201.
- 17   **Wang**, G., N.T. Hobbs, F.J. Singer, D.S. Ojima, and B.C. Lubow, 2002c: Impacts of  
18          climate changes on elk population dynamics in Rocky Mountain National Park,  
19          Colorado, U.S.A. *Climate Change*, **54(1-2)**, 205-224.
- 20   **Wear**, D.N. and J.G. Greis, 2002: *The Southern Forest Resource Assessment: Summary*  
21          *Report: United States Forest Service*. General Technical Report SRS-54,  
22          Washington, DC, USA, -103.
- 23   **Weiler**, S., J. Loomis, R. Richardson, and S. Shwiff, 2002: Driving regional economic  
24          models with a statistical model: hypothesis testing for economic impact analysis.  
25          *Review of Regional Studies*, **32(1)**, 97-111.
- 26   **West**, J.M., P. A. Marshall, R. V. Salm, and H. Z. Schuttenberg, 2006: Coral bleaching:  
27          managing for resilience in a changing world, In: *Principles of Conservation*  
28          *Biology*, [Groom, M.J., G.K. Meffe, and C.R. Carroll (eds.)].
- 29   **West**, J.M. and R.V. Salm, 2003: Resistance and resilience to coral bleaching:  
30          implications for coral reef conservation and management. *Conservation Biology*,  
31          **17(4)**, 956-967.



- 1 **Westerling**, A.L., H.G. Hidalgo, D.R. Cayan, and T.W. Swetnam, 2006: Warming and  
2 earlier spring increase western U.S. forest wildfire activity. *Science*, **313(5789)**,  
3 940-943.
- 4 **Westmacott**, S., K. Teleki, S. Wells, and J. West, 2000: *Management of Bleached and*  
5 *Severely Damaged Coral Reefs*. IUCN, The World Conservation Union,  
6 Washington, DC.
- 7 **Whitney**, G.G., 1994: *From Coastal Wilderness to Fruited Plain: a History of*  
8 *Environmental Change in Temperate North America, 1500 to the Present*.  
9 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 1-451.
- 10 **Wilkinson**, C.R., 2004: *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2004*. Australian Institute of  
11 Marine Science, Townsville, Australia.
- 12 **Williams**, J.W., S.T. Jackson, and J.E. Kutzbach, 2007: Projected distributions of novel  
13 and disappearing climates by 2100 AD. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
14 *Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5738-5742.
- 15 **Willis**, B.L., C. A. Page, and E. A. Dinsdale, 2004: Coral disease on the Great Barrier  
16 Reef, In: *Coral Health and Disease*, [Rosenberg, E. and Y. Loya (eds.)].  
17 Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Germany, pp. 69-104.
- 18 **Woodhouse**, B., 2005: An end to Mexico's Rio Grande deficit? *Southwest Hydrology*,  
19 **4(5)**, 19-.
- 20 **Woodward**, A., E.G. Schreiner, and D.G. Silsbee, 1995: Climate, geography, and tree  
21 establishment in subalpine meadows of the Olympic Mountains, Washington,  
22 USA. *Arctic and Alpine Research*, **27(3)**, 217-225.
- 23 **Wooldridge**, S., T. Done, R. Berkelmans, R. Jones, and P. Marshall, 2005: Precursors for  
24 resilience in coral communities in a warming climate: a belief network approach.  
25 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, **295**, 157-169.
- 26 **Yamada**, S.B., B.R. Dumbauld, A. Kalin, C.E. Hunt, R. Figlar-Barnes, and A. Randall,  
27 2005: Growth and persistence of a recent invader *Carcinus maenas* in estuaries of  
28 the northeastern Pacific. *Biological Invasions*, **7(2)**, 309-321.
- 29 **Yoshikawa**, K. and L.D. Hinzman, 2003: Shrinking thermokarst ponds and groundwater  
30 dynamics in discontinuous permafrost near council, Alaska. *Permafrost and*  
31 *Periglacial Processes*, **14(2)**, 151-160.

- 1 **Zacherl, D., S.D. Gaines, and S.I. Lonhart, 2003:** The limits to biogeographical  
2 distributions: insights from the northward range extension of the marine snail,  
3 *Kelletia kelletii* (Forbes, 1852). *Journal of Biogeography*, **30(6)**, 913-924.
- 4 **Zervas, C., 2001:** *Sea Level Variations of the United States, 1854-1999*. Technical  
5 Report NOS CO-OPS 36, US Dept. of Commerce, National Oceanic and  
6 Atmospheric Administration, National Ocean Service, -201.
- 7 **Zolbrod, A.N. and D.L.U.S. Peterson, 1999:** Response of high-elevation forests in the  
8 Olympic Mountains to climatic change. *Canadian Journal of Forest Restoration*,  
9 **29(12)**, 1966-1979.
- 10  
11

1 **A8 Boxes**

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14

**Box A2.1.** Definition of Wilderness

A wilderness, in contrast with those areas where man and his own works dominate the landscape, is hereby recognized as an area where the earth and its community of life are untrammelled by man, where man himself is a visitor who does not remain. For the purposes of this chapter, an area of wilderness is further defined to mean an area of undeveloped Federal land retaining its primeval character and influence, without permanent improvements or human habitation, which is protected and managed so as to preserve its natural conditions and which (1) generally appears to have been affected primarily by the forces of nature, with the imprint of man's work substantially unnoticeable; (2) has outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation; (3) has at least five thousand acres of land or is of sufficient size as to make practicable its preservation and use in an unimpaired condition; and (4) may also contain ecological, geological, or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, or historical value.<sup>74</sup>

---

<sup>74</sup> 16 U.S. C. 1131-1136 P.L. 88-577

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21

**Box A2.2.** Opportunities and Barriers for Rocky Mountain National Park in Adapting to Climate Change

**Opportunities:**

- Cadre of highly trained natural resource professionals
- Extensive scientifically grounded knowledge of many natural resources and processes
- Continental Divide Learning Center serves as hub of learning and training
- Plan to establish a Science Advisory Board
- Climate Friendly Parks Program has enhanced climate change awareness
- Good working relations with city, county, state, and federal land and resource managers
- RMNP is surrounded on nearly all sides by protected national forest lands, including wilderness.
- Regionally, mountain and high valley lands to the north, west, and south of RMNP are mostly publicly owned and protected, or sparsely populated ranch and second home developments.
- RMNP is a headwater park and controls most of the water rights within its boundaries. As such, it has direct control over its aquatic ecosystems and water quality.

**Barriers:**

- Insufficient knowledge about individual species’ status and trends
- Limited opportunity for long-term strategic planning
- Limited interagency coordination of management programs
- The large and growing urban, suburban, exurban Front Range urban corridor may hinder migration of species into or out of RMNP from the Great Plains and Foothills to the east.

1

<b>Box A4.1. Climate Change, Multiple Stressors and WSRs</b>				
<b>Examples are provided to illustrate categories of change and common complicating factors; however, a very large number of combinations are expected around the United States and some of the complicating factors may be present in all regions (e.g., invasive species). See the WSR Case Studies for literature citations.</b>				
<i>Dominant Climate Change</i>	<i>Examples of Climate Change Impacts</i>	<i>Common Complicating Stressors</i>	<i>Example of Region</i>	<i>Case study</i>
Early snowmelt run-off	Species life histories temporally out of synch with flow regime	Dams, flow diversions or changes in reservoir releases	Pacific Northwest	North Fork of the American River
More flooding	Flood mortality, channel erosion, poor water quality	Development in watershed	Northeast, Upper Midwest	Upper Delaware
Droughts, intense heat	Drought mortality, shrinking habitat, fragmentation	Over-extraction of water Invasive Species	Southwest	Rio Grande
Little change in rainfall, moderately warmer	Impacts modest unless complicating stressors	Development in watershed	Northern Florida, Mississippi, parts of middle and western states	Wekiva River

2

**Box A4.2. Migratory Fish**

Many fish species are anadromous and adapted to cooler waters—living much of their lives in oceans, but migrating inland to spawn in colder reaches of freshwaters. Several species of salmon and sturgeon reproduce in the rivers of Alaska and the Pacific Northwest, while others, including Atlantic salmon, sturgeon, and striped bass, spawn in eastern seaboard rivers from the Rio Grande to the Canadian coast. Many of these species were also introduced to the Great Lakes, where they migrate up many of Michigan’s WSRs. Such species played a significant role in the establishment of the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act and continue to be a primary focus in the management of WSRs. The life cycles of most of these species are determined largely by water temperatures and flows, driven by snowmelt or low water in the summer and fall.

Anadromous fish in the United States are exposed to several anthropogenic stressors that may be exacerbated by climate change. Dams impede or prevent fish migrations, including dams upstream of river stretches designated “wild and scenic.” Water withdrawals and reservoir management have affected flow regimes, and water temperatures and pollutants—combined with increased sediment loads—have made many rivers uninhabitable for some migratory fish.

Climate change effects, including reduced streamflows, higher water temperatures, and altered frequencies and intensities of storms and droughts, will further degrade fish habitat (Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, 2004). Battin et al. (2007) estimate a 20–40% decline in populations of Chinook salmon by 2050 due to higher water temperatures degrading thermal spawning habitat, and winter and early spring floods scouring riverbeds and destroying eggs. This may be a conservative estimate since the analysis did not address the effects that increased sea levels and ocean temperatures would have on Chinook during the oceanic phase of their life cycle, and the study focused on the run of Chinook salmon that spawns in late winter or spring and migrates to the sea by June. Yearlings that remain in freshwater throughout the summer months may be even more vulnerable.

Fish habitat restoration efforts are widespread throughout the United States. However, the models used to guide restoration efforts rarely include projected impacts of climate change. Nevertheless, Chinook salmon studies suggest that habitat restoration in lower elevation rivers (including reforestation narrow reaches to increase shade and decrease water temperatures) may reduce the adverse impacts of climate change (Battin et al., 2007). Galbraith et al. (forthcoming) also identify the potential importance of releases of cool water from existing dams for the preservation of thermal spawning and rearing habitat. Also, mitigating watershed-level anthropogenic stressors that could exacerbate climate change impacts (e.g., water withdrawals, pollutants) could be an effective adaptation option.

Ultimately, management of anadromous fish in WSR will need to reflect species and local circumstances. However, including climate change projections in habitat restoration plans, working to mitigate human-induced stressors, and implementing effective monitoring programs will likely be three of the most important actions managers can take to facilitate the adaptation of anadromous fish to climate change.

**Box A5.1. CCMP Objectives for the Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program**

**Water Quality Plan**

GOAL: Restore, maintain or enhance water quality in the Albemarle-Pamlico region so that it is fit for fish, wildlife and recreation.

- Objective A: Implement a comprehensive basinwide approach to water quality management.
- Objective B: Reduce sediments, nutrients and toxicants from nonpoint sources.
- Objective C: Reduce pollution from point sources, such as wastewater treatment facilities and industry.
- Objective D: Reduce the risk of toxic contamination to aquatic life and human health.
- Objective E: Evaluate indicators of environmental stress in the estuary and develop new techniques to better assess water quality degradation.

**Vital Habitats Plan**

GOAL: Conserve and Protect Vital Fish and Wildlife Habitats and Maintain the Natural Heritage of the Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds Region.

- Objective A: Promote regional planning to protect and restore the natural heritage of the A/P Sounds region.
- Objective B: Promote the responsible stewardship, protection and conservation of valuable natural areas in the A/P Sounds region.
- Objective C: Maintain, restore and enhance vital habitat functions to ensure the survival of wildlife and fisheries.

**Fisheries Plan**

GOAL: Restore or Maintain Fisheries and Provide for Their Long-Term, Sustainable Use, Both Commercial and Recreational.

- Objective A: Control overfishing by developing and implementing fishery management plans for all important estuarine species.
- Objective B: Promote the use of best fishing practices that reduce bycatch and impacts on fisheries habitats.

**Stewardship Plan**

GOAL: Promote Responsible Stewardship of the Natural Resources of the Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds Region.

- Objective A: Promote local and regional planning that protects the environment and allows for economic growth.
- Objective B: Increase public understanding of environmental issues and citizen involvement in environmental policy making.
- Objective C: Ensure that students, particularly in grades K-5, are exposed to science and environmental education.

**Implementation Plan**

GOAL: Implement the Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan in a way that protects environmental quality while using the most cost-effective and equitable strategies.

- Objective A: Coordinate public agencies involved in resource management and environmental protection to implement the recommendations of the CCMP.
- Objective B: Assess the progress and success of implementing CCMP recommendations and the status of environmental quality in the Albemarle-Pamlico Sounds region.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

**Box A6.1.** Goal and Objectives of the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary (U.S. Department of Commerce, 1996)

**Goal:**

To preserve and protect the physical and biological components of the South Florida estuarine and marine ecosystem to ensure its viability for the use and enjoyment of present and future generations.

**Objectives Required by the FKNMS Act:**

- Objective 1.** Facilitate all public and private uses of the Sanctuary consistent with the primary objective of resource protection.
- Objective 2.** Consider temporal and geographic zoning to ensure protection of Sanctuary resources.
- Objective 3.** Incorporate regulations necessary to enforce the Water Quality Protection Program.
- Objective 4.** Identify needs for research and establish a long-term ecological monitoring program.
- Objective 5.** Identify alternative sources of funding needed to fully implement the management plan’s provisions and supplement appropriations authorized under the FKNMS and National Marine Sanctuaries Acts.
- Objective 6.** Ensure coordination and cooperation between Sanctuary managers and other federal, state, and local authorities with jurisdiction within or adjacent to the Sanctuary.
- Objective 7.** Promote education among users of the Sanctuary about coral reef conservation and navigational safety.
- Objective 8.** Incorporate the existing Looe Key and Key Largo National Marine Sanctuaries into the FKNMS.

**Objectives Developed by the FKNMS Sanctuary Advisory Council:**

- Objective 1.** Encourage all agencies and institutions to adopt an ecosystem and cooperative approach to accomplish the following objectives, including the provision of mechanisms to address impacts affecting Sanctuary resources, but originating outside the boundaries of the Sanctuary.
- Objective 2.** Provide a management system that is in harmony with an environment whose long-term ecological, economic, and sociological principles are understood, and which will allow appropriate sustainable uses.
- Objective 3.** Manage the FKNMS for the natural diversity of healthy species, populations, and communities.
- Objective 4.** Reach every single user of and visitor to the FKNMS with information appropriate to his or her activities.
- Objective 5.** Recognize the importance of cultural and historical resources, and managing these resources for reasonable, appropriate use and enjoyment.



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20

- Box A6.2.** Timeline for Establishment of Marine Reserves in the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary (CINMS)
- 1998: Sportfishing group initiates discussions about marine reserves in the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary
  - 1999: California Department of Fish and Game and NOAA develop partnership and initiate community-based Marine Reserves Working Group process
  - 2001: Working Group recommendations delivered to California Department of Fish and Game and NOAA
  - 2003: California Fish and Game Commission established 10 state marine reserves and 2 state marine conservation areas established in state waters of the CINMS
  - 2006: Pacific Fisheries Management Council designated Essential Fish Habitat and Habitat of Areas of Particular Concern in adjacent federal waters of the CINMS prohibiting bottom fishing
  - 2006: Sanctuary released Draft Environmental Impact Statement to propose marine reserves in federal waters of the CINMS.
  - 2007: Pending - NOAA will release Final Environmental Impact Statement and final rule to complete the marine reserves in federal waters
  - 2007: Pending - California Fish and Game Commission will take regulatory action to close gaps between state and federal marine protected areas

1 **A9 Tables**

<b>Table A1.1.</b> Case Study Outline Foci for the ONF: current ecosystem stresses, management goals, current management methods, and climate change impacts			
<b>Current ecosystem stresses</b>	<b>Management goal(s)</b>	<b>Current methods</b>	<b>Climate impacts on ecosystems and management practices</b>
Historical timber harvest impacts on landscape	Promote species and landscape biodiversity	Silvicultural treatment to achieve a broad range of habitats for native species	Depends on how area and frequency of disturbances changes (windthrow, fire, endemic/exotic insect/pathogen outbreaks). Increases in the above, and their interactions, in ONF per se are understudied because they have not been large problems. All are climate mediated, and could become so, but unknown impact on management practices.  Currently, the main disturbance legacy on ONF is 20 <sup>th</sup> century logging.
	Increase late seral habitat	Silvicultural treatments to increase rate of “old growth” structure development	
	Protect old-growth dependent species	Same as above	
Aquatic ecosystem degradation	Restore aquatic ecosystems to conditions that support endangered species	Riparian restoration, culvert rehabilitation	Warming waters, changes in timing of seasonal snow/rain/runoff will increase need for restoration, but potentially limit its success rate as well.
Impacts of unmaintained, closed roads	Remove potential effects of unmaintained roads	Road restoration / rehabilitation; occasionally removal	If intense storms, flooding, or rain-on-snow events increase in frequency, closed road failures will likely increase in frequency. Multiple failures on the same road limit response/access. This will require substantial investment in new management efforts.
Invasive exotic species	Limit spread of new invasives	Preventive educ./strategies	If disturbances or recreational travel increase or if climate changes the competitive balance between natives and exotics , efficacy of current strategies uncertain
	Treat established invasive species	Treatment limited to hand pulling in most locations; herbicide where permitted.	
Endemic Insects	Currently none	Monitoring	Uncertain
Fire	Currently none	Suppression (rare)	Depends on interplay between climate-mediated fire and climate-mediated regeneration

2

**Table A3.1.** The annual cycle of migratory waterfowl that breed in Alaska may serve as an integrative focus for development of a national vision of climate effects and management adaptation options for the National Wildlife Refuge System. The complexity of potential interactions among locations, life history stages, climate mechanisms, non-climate stressors, and options for management adaptation for migratory waterfowl that breed in Alaska demonstrates that inter-regional assessment and timely communication will be essential to the development of a national vision.

<b>Location</b>	<b>Life History</b>	<b>Climate Mechanisms</b>	<b>Non-Climate Stressors</b>	<b>Adaptation Options</b>
Alaska	Production: <i>Breeding</i> <i>Fledging</i>	Early Thaw: <i>Resource access</i> <i>Habitat area</i> <i>Season length</i>	Minimal	Assess System Predict Collaborate Facilitate
Prairie Potholes (Central Flyway)	Staging: <i>Energy reserves</i>	Late Freeze: <i>Habitat distribution</i> <i>Migration timing</i> <i>Harvest distribution</i>	Land use Crop mix Disturbance Alternate Energy Sources	Assess System Predict Partnerships Secure Network
Southern United States	Wintering: <i>Survival</i> <i>Nutrition</i>	Sea Level: <i>Habitat access</i> Storms: <i>Frequency, Intensity</i>	Urbanization Fragmentation Pollution	Partnerships Education Acquisition Adaptive Mgmt.

1 **A10 Figures**

2 **Figure A1.1.** Map and location of the Tahoe National Forest, within California (a) and  
3 the Forest boundaries (b).<sup>1</sup>

4

5 a)



6

1 b)



2

- 1 **Figure A1.2.** Thinned stands for fuel reduction and resilience management, part of the
- 2 Herger-Feinstein Quincy Library Pilot Project. Photo courtesy of Tahoe National Forest.
- 3



- 4
- 5

1 **Figure A1.3.** Former salmon habitat (rivers marked in bold black) of the Sierra Nevada.  
2 Tahoe National Forest (TNF) rivers are scheduled to have salmon restored to them in  
3 current national forest planning. Adaptive approaches suggest that future waters may be  
4 too warm on the TNF for salmon to survive, and thus, restoration may be inappropriate to  
5 begin. Map adapted from (Sierra Nevada Ecosystem Project Science Team, 1996).  
6

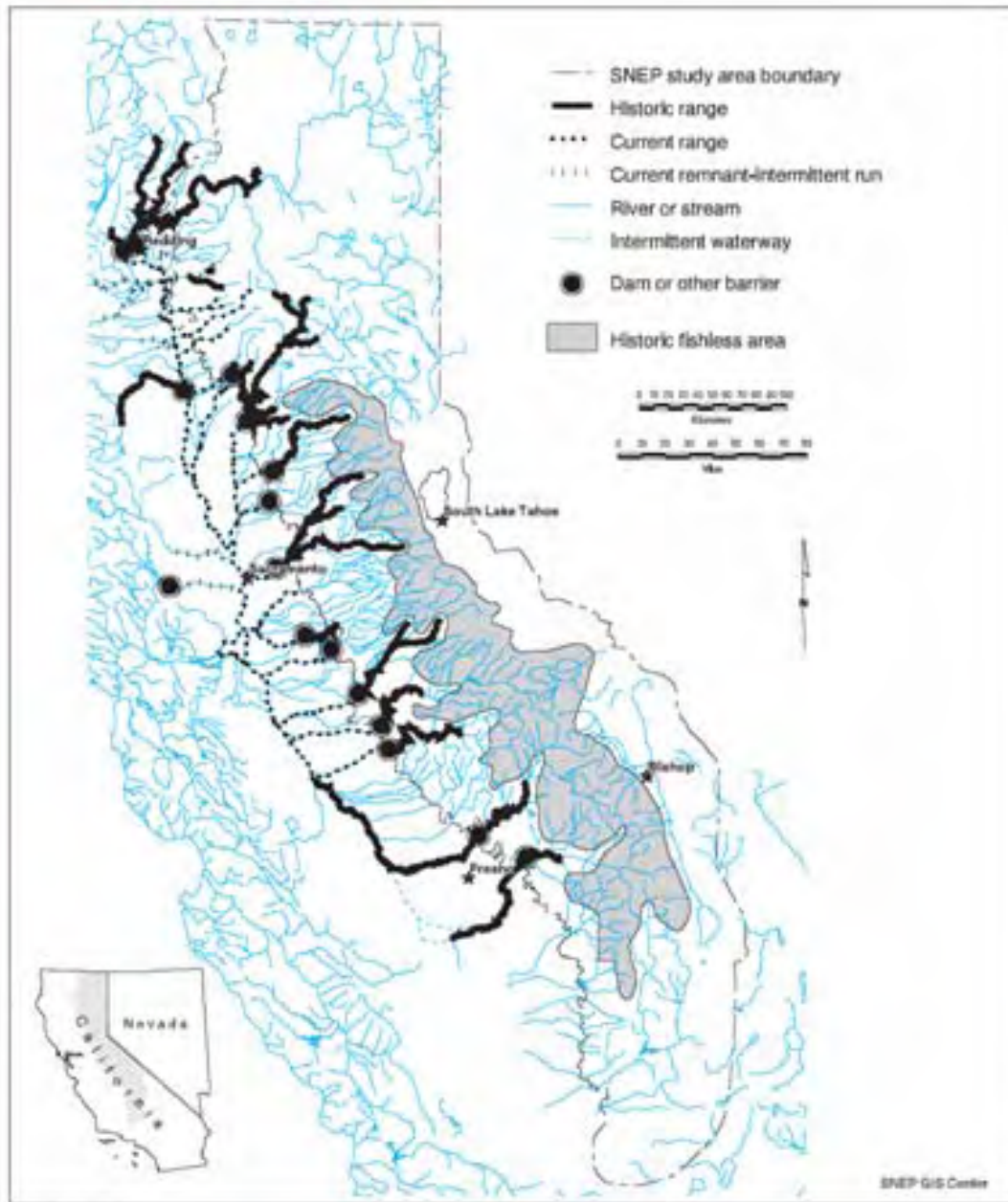
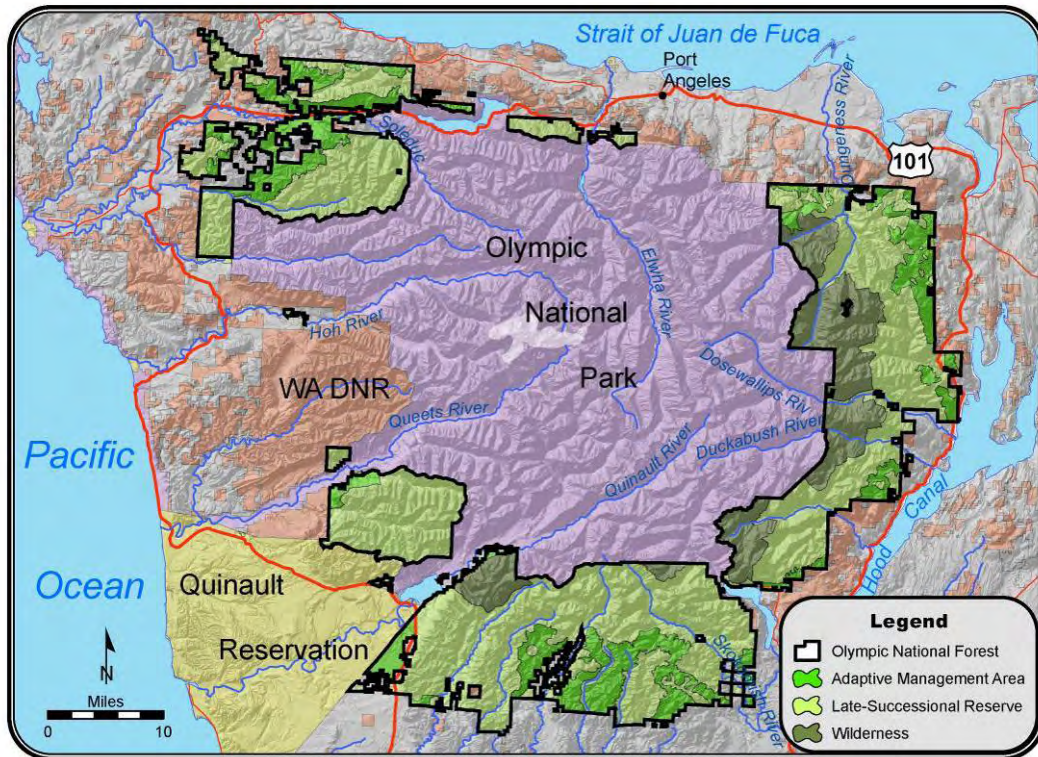


FIGURE 33.1

7  
8  
9

- 1 **Figure A1.4.** Olympic Peninsula land ownership and Northwest Forest Plan allocation
- 2 map. Olympic National Forest contains lands (dark boundary) with different land use
- 3 mandates and regulations. These include adaptive management areas, late-successional
- 4 reserves, and Wilderness areas. Map courtesy of Robert Norheim, Climate Impacts
- 5 Group, University of Washington.



6  
7  
8



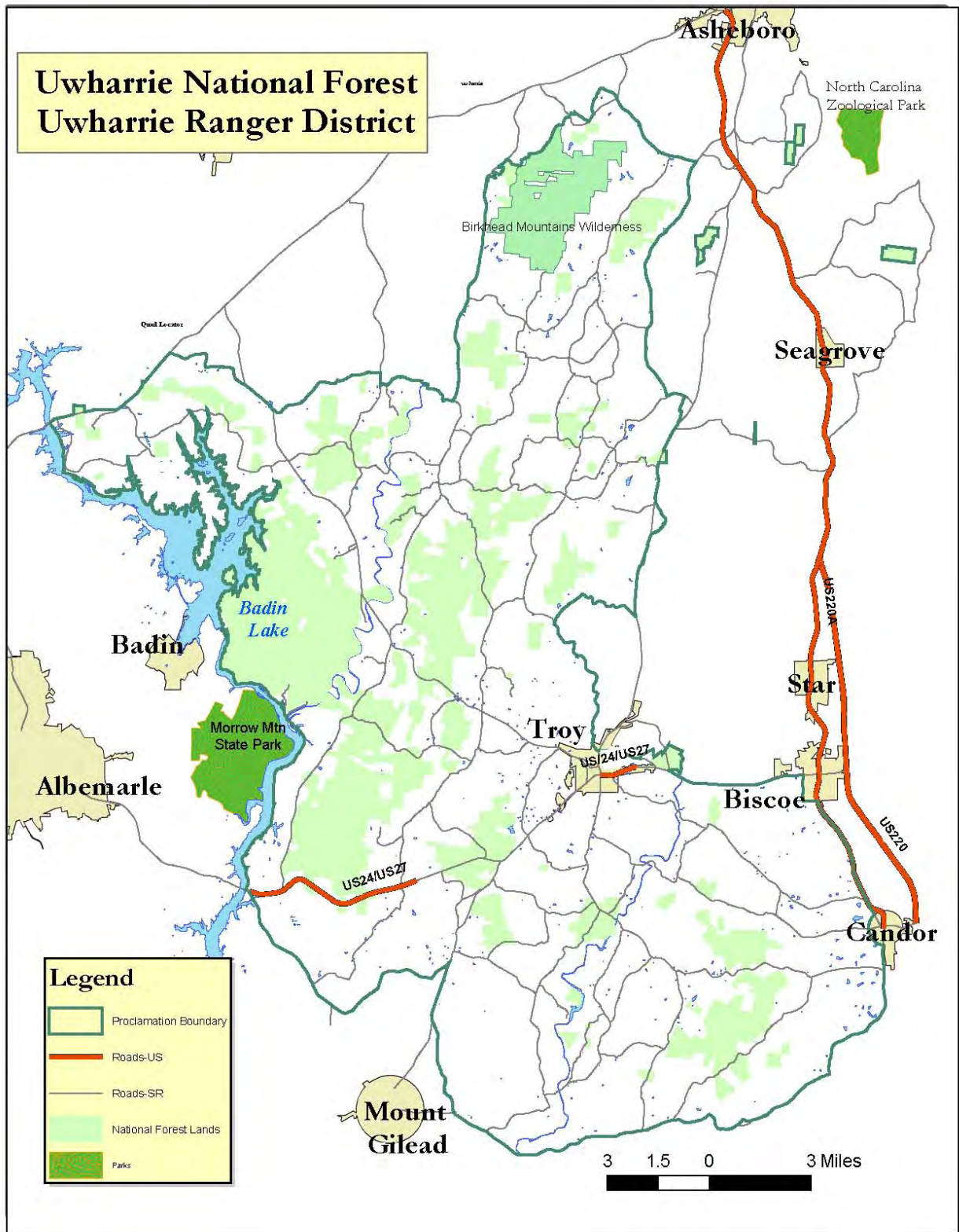
1 **Figure A1.5.** Olympic National Forest is charged with mitigating the legacy of 20th  
2 century timber harvest. Landscape fragmentation and extensive road networks (upper  
3 left) are consequences of this legacy that influence strategies for adaptation to climate  
4 change. The old-growth forest dependent northern spotted owl (upper right) is one focus  
5 of the NWFP, which prescribes forest practices but does not address climatic change.  
6 Changes in the timing and intensity of runoff expected with climate change are likely to  
7 interact with this legacy to have negative impacts on unmaintained roads (lower left) that  
8 in turn will impact water quality for five threatened or endangered species of anadromous  
9 and resident fish. Photo Credits: All photos courtesy Olympic National Forest.

10  
11  
12



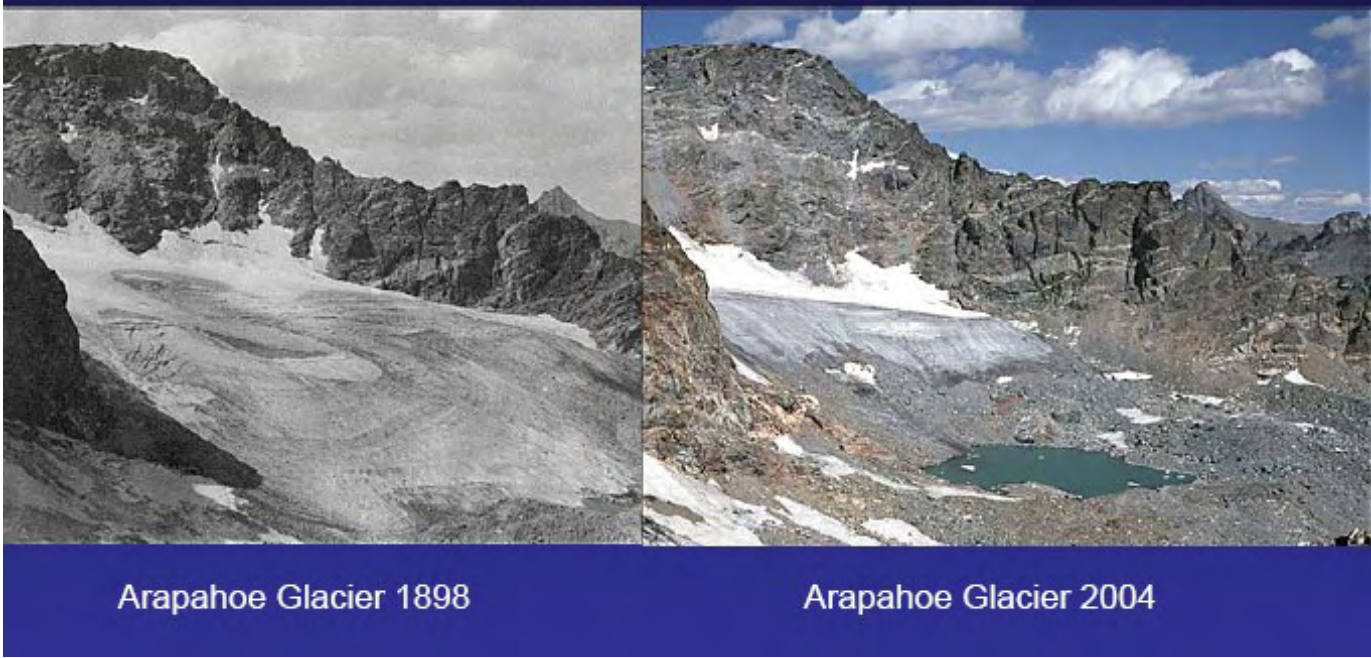
13

1 **Figure A1.6.** Map of the Uwharrie National Forest in North Carolina.<sup>7</sup>



2

1 **Figure A2.1.** Photos of Arapahoe Glacier in 1898 and 2004.<sup>12</sup>  
2



3

- 1 **Figure A2.2.** Photo pair of Rowe Glacier, with permissions, NSIDC and leachfam
- 2 website.<sup>13</sup>



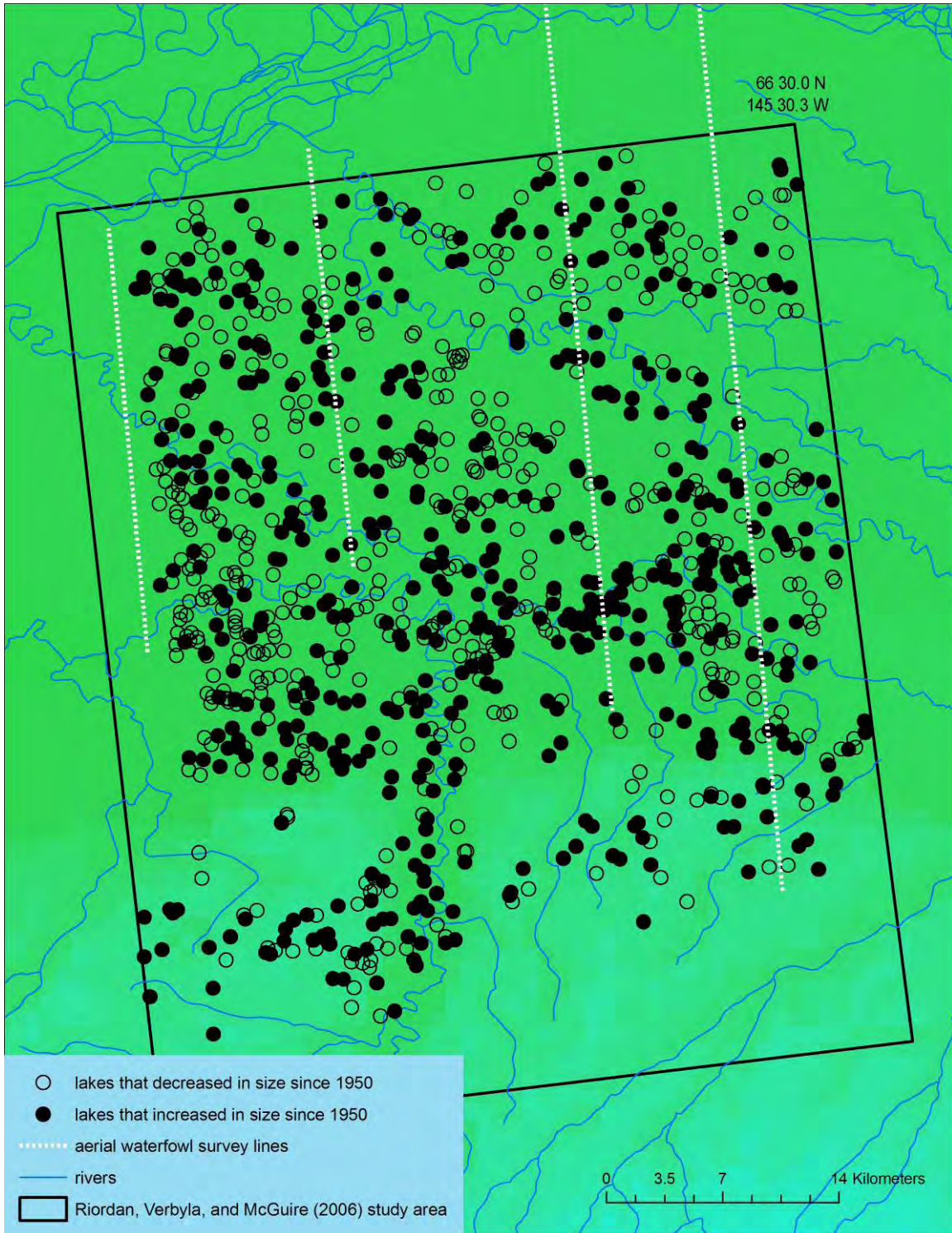
- 3
- 4
- 5

1 **Figure A3.1.** Central Flyway Waterfowl Migration Corridor.<sup>17</sup>



2

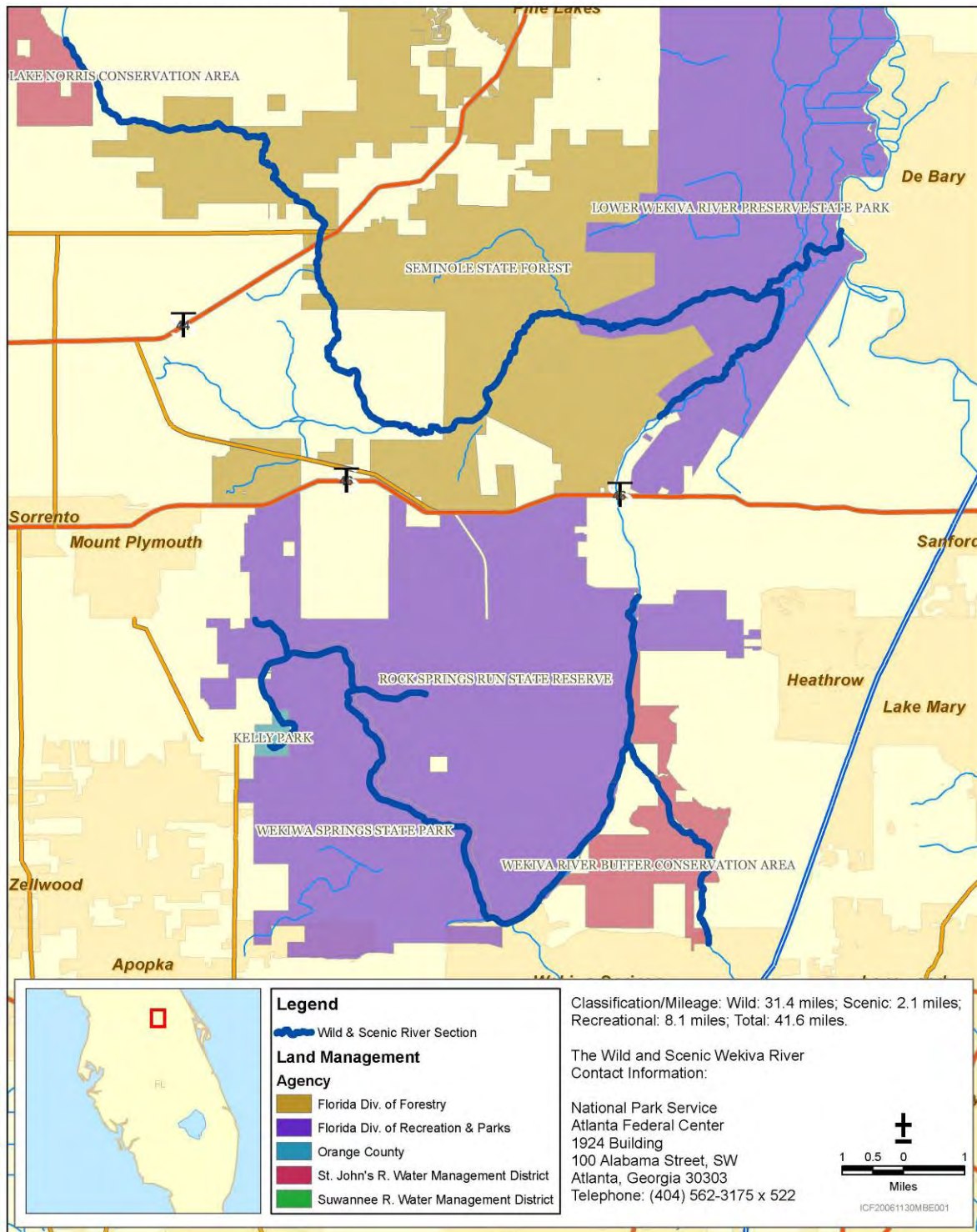
1 **Figure A3.2.** Heterogeneity in closed-basin lakes with increasing and decreasing surface  
2 area, 1950–2000, Yukon Flats NWR, Alaska. Net reduction in lake area was 18% with  
3 the area of 566 lakes decreasing, 364 lakes increasing, and 462 lakes remaining stable.  
4 Adapted from Riordan, Verbyla, and McGuire (2006).  
5



6  
7

- 1 **Figure A4.1.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Wekiva River. Data from USGS,
- 2 National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

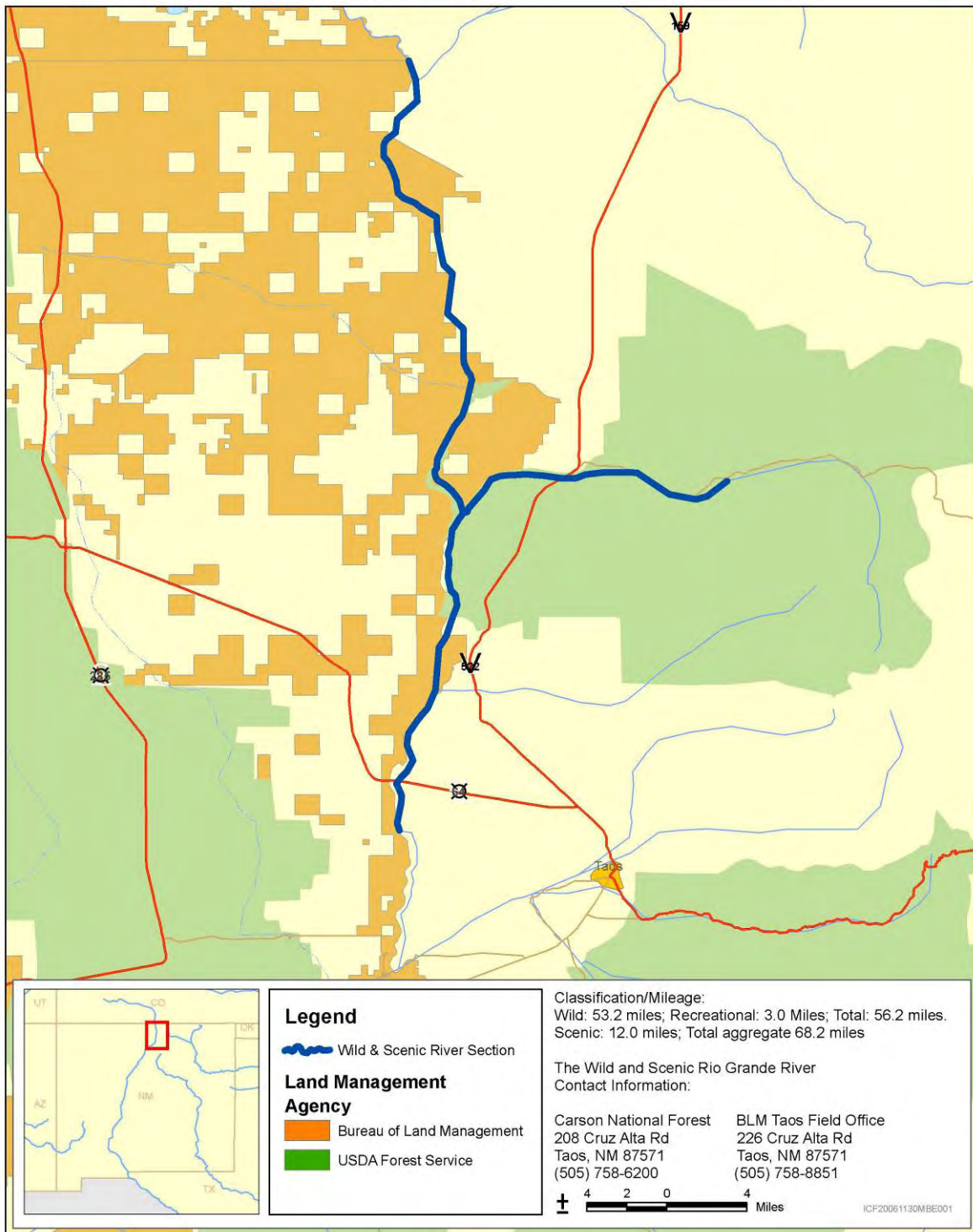
**The Wild and Scenic Wekiva River**



3

- 1 **Figure A4.2.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Rio Grande WSR in New Mexico.
- 2 Data from USGS, National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

**The Wild and Scenic Rio Grande River**

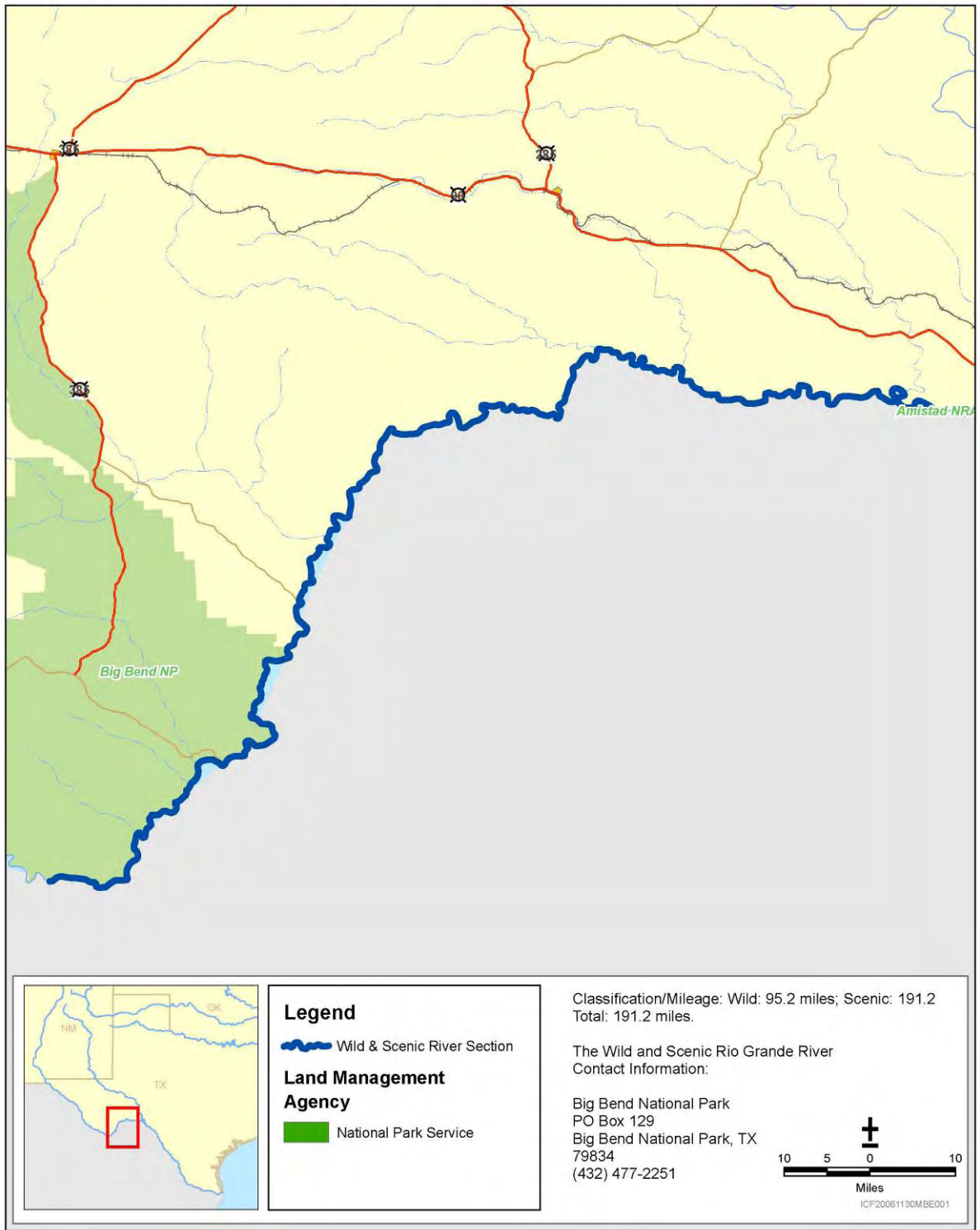


3



- 1 **Figure A4.3.** The Wild and Scenic portions of the Rio Grande WSR in Texas. Data from
- 2 USGS, National Atlas of the United States.<sup>20</sup>

**The Wild and Scenic Rio Grande River**



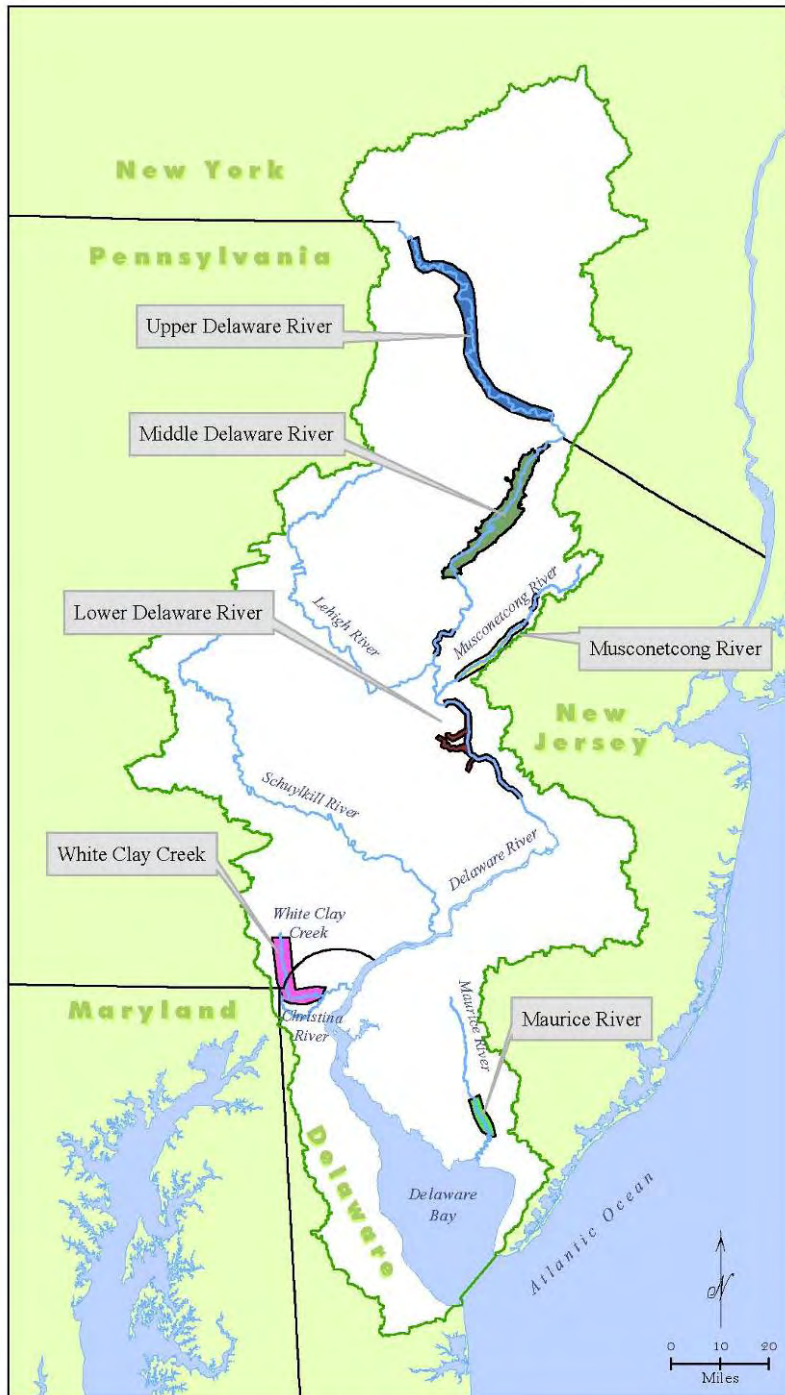
3  
4

1 **Figure A4.4.** Dams and diversions along the Rio Grande.<sup>27</sup>  
2



3  
4

- 1 **Figure A4.5.** Map of Wild and Scenic stretches in the Delaware River basin. Courtesy of
- 2 Delaware River Basin Commission.<sup>31</sup>



3

1  
2

**Figure A5.1.** The Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program region.<sup>37</sup>

**ALBEMARLE-PAMLICO NATIONAL ESTUARY PROGRAM REGION**



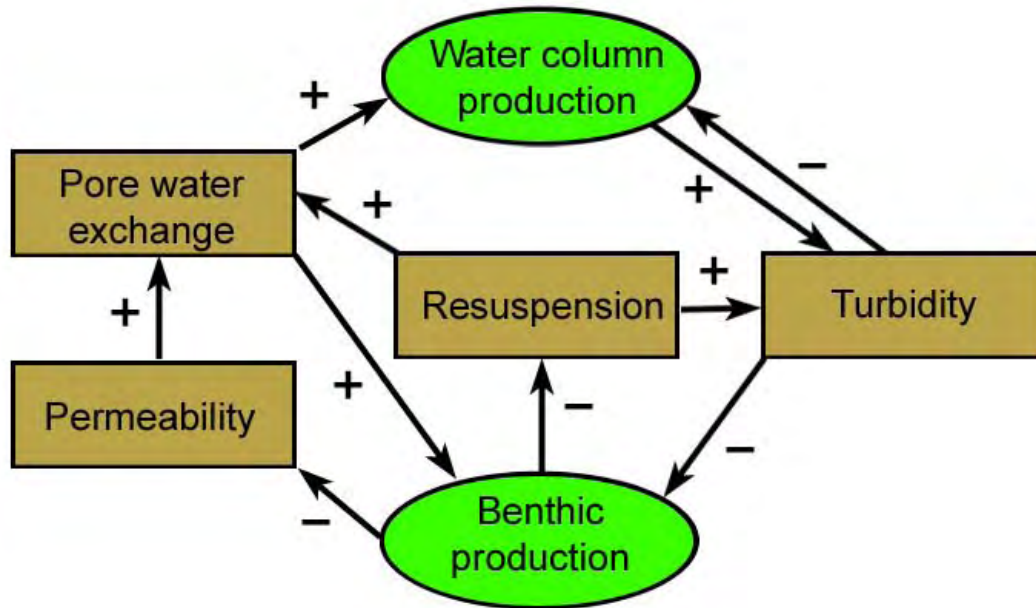
- 1 - Chowan River Basin
- 2 - Roanoke River Basin
- 3 - Currituck Sound & Pasquotank River/Albemarle Sound Drainage Basin
- 4 - Tar-Pamlico River & Pamlico Sound Drainage Basin
- 5 - Neuse River Basin & Core Sound/Bogue Sound Drainage Basin



3

Map prepared April 30, 1999 by the NC Center for Geographic Information & Analysis

- 1 **Figure A5.2.** Feedbacks between nutrient and sediment exchange and primary production in the benthos and water column. A plus symbol indicates enhancement and a minus symbol suppression.
- 2
- 3

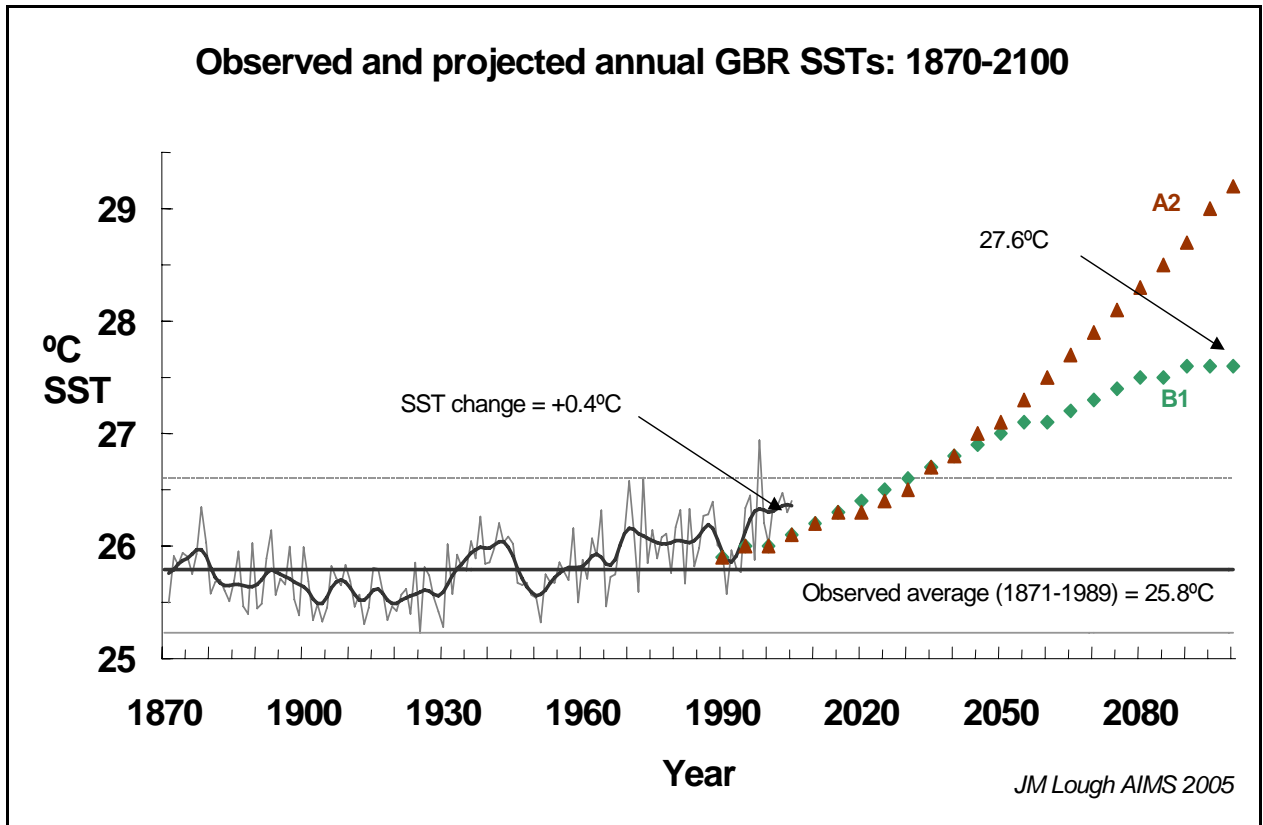


- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

1 **Figure A6.1.** Map of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park showing the adjacent catchment  
2 in Queensland. Modified from Haynes (2001) and courtesy of the Great Barrier Reef  
3 Marine Park Authority.  
4  
5  
6  
7

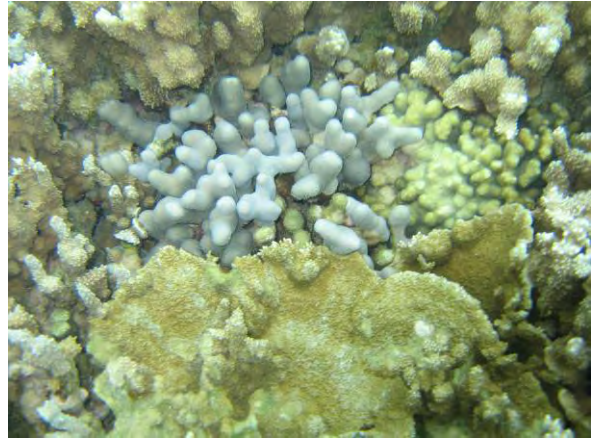


1 **Figure A6.2.** Sea surface temperature (SST) projections for the Great Barrier Reef  
2 (GBR) (Lough, 2007).  
3



4  
5

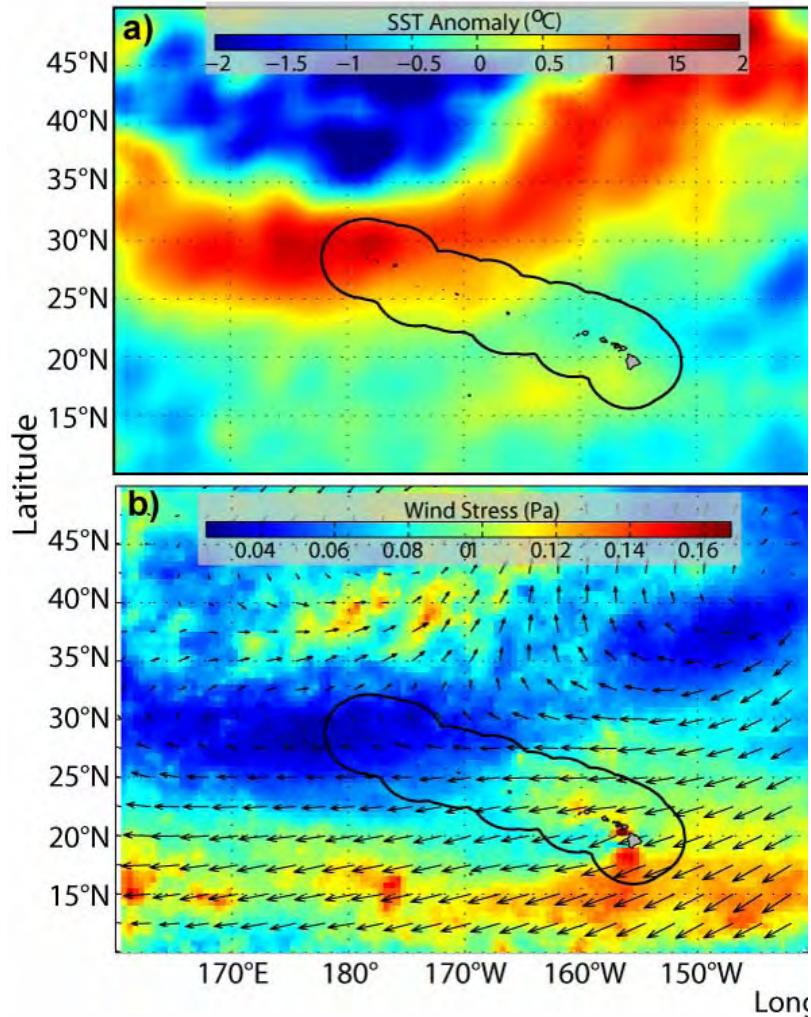
- 1 **Figure A6.3.** Endemic species from the Hawaiian Islands. A. Masked angelfish,  
2 *Genicanthus personatus* (Photo courtesy of J. Watt), B. Rice coral, *Montipora capitata*,  
3 and finger coral, *Porites compressa* (photo courtesy of C. Hunter), C. Hawaiian hermit  
4 crab, *Calcinus laurentae* (photo courtesy of S. Godwin), D. Red alga, *Acrosymphtyon*  
5 *brainardii* (photo courtesy of P. Vroom).



32  
33  
34  
35  
36



1 **Figure A6.4.** a) NOAA Pathfinder SST anomaly composite during summer 2002 period  
2 of NWHI elevated temperatures, July 28–August 29. b) NASA/JPL Quikscat winds  
3 (wind stress overlaid by wind vector arrows) composite during summer 2002 period of  
4 increasing SSTs, July 16–August 13. The Hawaii Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) is  
5 indicated with a heavy black line; all island shorelines in the archipelago are also plotted  
6 (adapted from Hoeke *et al.*, 2006).



1 **Figure A6.5.** Map of the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary showing the  
2 location of existing state and proposed federal marine reserves and marine conservation  
3 areas.<sup>71</sup>  
4  
5



23 **NOAA's preferred alternative for marine zones in the Sanctuary.**  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16

# **Annex B: Confidence Estimates for SAP 4.4 Adaptation Approaches**

## **Authors**

Susan Herrod Julius, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jordan M. West, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Jill S. Baron, U.S. Geological Survey and Colorado State University  
Linda A. Joyce, U.S.D.A. Forest Service  
Brian D. Keller, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Margaret Palmer, University of Maryland  
Charles Peterson, University of North Carolina  
J. Michael Scott, U.S. Geological Survey and University of Idaho

1	<b>Annex Contents</b>	
2		
3	B1	Introduction..... B-3
4	B2	Adaptation Approach: Protecting Key Ecosystem Features..... B-3
5	B3	Adaptation Approach: Reducing Anthropogenic Stresses..... B-8
6	B4	Adaptation Approach: Representation..... B-11
7	B5	Adaptation Approach: Replication ..... B-15
8	B6	Adaptation Approach: Restoration ..... B-17
9	B7	Adaptation Approach: Refugia ..... B-21
10	B8	Adaptation Approach: Relocation..... B-24
11	B9	References..... B-28
12		
13		

## 1 **B1 Introduction**

2 For each adaptation approach, authors were asked to consider two separate but related  
3 elements of confidence. The first element is the amount of evidence that is available to  
4 assess the effectiveness of a given adaptation approach (indicating that the topic is well-  
5 studied and understood). The second is the level of agreement or consensus across the  
6 different lines of evidence regarding the effectiveness of the adaptation approach.  
7 Authors were asked to rate their confidence according to the following criteria:

### 8 9 *High/low amount of evidence*

10 Is this adaptation approach well-studied and understood, or instead is it mostly  
11 experimental or theoretical and not well-studied? Does your experience in the field, your  
12 analyses of data, and your understanding of the literature and performance of specific  
13 adaptation options under this type of adaptation approach indicate that there is a high/low  
14 amount of information on the effectiveness of this approach?

### 15 16 *High/low amount of agreement*

17 Do the studies, reports, and your experience in the field, analyzing data, or implementing  
18 the types of adaptation strategies that comprise this approach reflect a high degree of  
19 agreement on the effectiveness of this approach, or does it lead to competing  
20 interpretations?

21  
22 The authors' responses are provided in the following sections, organized by adaptation  
23 approach.

## 24 **B2 Adaptation Approach: Protecting Key Ecosystem Features**

25 **Description:** Focusing management protections on structural characteristics, organisms,  
26 or areas that represent important “underpinnings” or “keystones” of the overall system.

27 **Confidence:** Is strategic protection of key ecosystem features an effective way to  
28 preserve or enhance resilience to climate change?

### 29 30 **National Forests**

31 *Amount of evidence: High*

- 32  
33 1) There is ample theoretical and empirical evidence to support the positive  
34 relationship between biodiversity and ecosystem resilience. Based on a study in  
35 Australian rangeland, Walker, Kinzig, and Langridge (1999) concluded that  
36 functional group diversity maintains the resilience of ecosystem structure and  
37 function. Resilience is increased when ecosystems have multiple species that  
38 fulfill similar “functions” but that respond differently to human actions (Walker,  
39 1995; Fischer, Lindenmayer, and Manning, 2006). Elmqvist *et al.* (2003)  
40 concluded that the diversity of responses to management and disturbance enabled  
41 by diverse ecosystems “insures the system against the failure of management  
42 actions and policies based on incomplete understanding.” Brussaard, de Ruiter,  
43 and Brown (2007) concluded that soil biodiversity confers resilience against stress  
44 and disturbance and protecting it is necessary to sustain agricultural and forestry

1 production. Keystone species and structural elements of ecosystems are  
2 particularly important because many species and ecological processes rely on  
3 them (Fischer, Lindenmayer, and Manning, 2006). Because keystone species  
4 largely “control the future” (*i.e.*, guide the successional trajectories and  
5 characteristics) of ecosystems (Walker, 1995; Gunderson, 2000), protecting them  
6 (and biodiversity in general) is a fundamental feature of conservation and  
7 restoration schemes.

8 2) Restoration research currently discussing climate change concludes that key  
9 processes may be the only way to address restoration under climate change.

10 3) The United States Forest Service (USFS) emphasizes biodiversity conservation  
11 and protection of critical habitat and other key ecosystem features in its  
12 management of national forests. Some national forest managers currently seek to  
13 enhance landscape and species diversity as the most sensible way to adapt to  
14 climate change in the absence of contradictory information (see Olympic National  
15 Forest case study). Major USFS programs and plans—such as the early detection  
16 program for invasive species, the forest health program (which tries to prevent or  
17 reduce the impact of insect and disease outbreaks) and the National Fire Plan—  
18 also aim to protect key ecosystem features and values. Similarly, efforts to reduce  
19 the impacts of fragmentation and create larger, connected landscapes with  
20 continuous habitat help conserve keystone species. Maintenance of old-growth  
21 habitat and particular characteristics of old-growth is also emphasized in many  
22 national forests.

23  
24 *Amount of agreement: Low*

25  
26 1) Ecologists have engaged in heated debates for the past century about the extent to  
27 which diversity begets stability (*i.e.*, resilience). The current state of the debate  
28 appears to be somewhat nuanced. Although it appears that “a large number of  
29 species is required to sustain the assembly and functioning ecosystems in  
30 landscapes subject to increasingly intensive land use,” there is still uncertainty  
31 about the specific mechanism and details of this dependence on diversity (Loreau  
32 *et al.*, 2001). Recent reviews (Loreau *et al.*, 2001; Hooper *et al.*, 2005) note that  
33 the debate has become more nuanced because of theoretical and experimental  
34 advances (e.g., Tilman, Reich, and Knops, 2006).

35 2) Functional groups have been used to explore ecosystem function and the role of  
36 suites of species. However, the makeup and composition of these functional  
37 groups and their roles in the ecosystem is not always agreed upon by the research  
38 community

39 3) The inability to accurately define either species or functional groups that ensure  
40 the viability of the ecosystem result in an uncertainty and likelihood that as many  
41 species as possible must be maintained, a distinct challenge for resource  
42 management.

#### 43 **National Parks**

44 *Amount of evidence: High*

45  
46  
47 While the large body of literature related to protection of key ecosystem features does not  
48 address resiliency in light of climate change, it provides evidence that in the absence of

1 protection of natural flow regimes, natural fire regimes, and physical structures natural  
2 processes are compromised.

3  
4 Protection of soils from erosion using natural materials reduced soil loss, promoted  
5 vegetation regrowth, and reduced siltation of streams in northern New Mexico and  
6 Colorado (Allen *et al.*, 2002).<sup>1</sup>

7  
8 Use of wildland fire, mechanical thinning, or prescribed burns where it is documented to  
9 reduce risk of anomalously severe fires has been shown to work, but only to work where  
10 forest stands are unnaturally dense due to fire suppression such that removal of fuels  
11 reduces the risk of anomalous fires.

12  
13 River systems with minimal disturbance maintain higher levels of native biodiversity  
14 than disturbed systems, suggesting the converse is also true, that disturbance of natural  
15 flow regimes reduces native biodiversity (Poff *et al.*, 2007).

16  
17 Studies of certain species, such as whitebark pine in the western United States, show that  
18 they are important food sources for many species, including bears and Clark's  
19 nutcrackers. In their absence animals find alternative food sources or become locally  
20 extirpated (Tomback and Kendall, 2002).

21  
22 Studies of the effects of reintroducing wolves to Yellowstone ecosystem show a strong  
23 cascading positive effect on ecosystem performance, ranging from improved riparian  
24 habitat (less trampling by elk), increased beaver activity, and restored habitat leading to  
25 increased numbers of migratory birds.

26  
27 Studies of habitat requirements for bighorn sheep survival and reproduction demonstrated  
28 the need for specific vegetation mosaics and densities. In the absence of such vegetation  
29 structure (vegetation too dense or too sparse), sheep are exposed to predators and  
30 populations decline (Singer, Bleich, and Gudorf, 2000).

31  
32 Several papers describe the benefits of maintaining corridors for species migrations  
33 (Novacek and Cleland, 2001; Levey *et al.*, 2005).

34  
35 *Amount of agreement: High*

36  
37 There seems to be high agreement, as well as a fair bit of common sense, that maintaining  
38 ecosystem structure, including physical structure and natural processes will be at least  
39 somewhat protective of ecosystems and their species under climate change, and allow  
40 some ability to respond to climate change.

41  
42 Many papers in the literature that recommend ways to ameliorate the effects of climate  
43 change strongly promote protecting features and processes that structure ecosystems as  
44 one of their first recommendations (Welch, 2005).

---

<sup>1</sup> See also Sydoriak, C.A., C.D. Allen, and B.F. Jacobs, 2000: Would ecological landscape restoration make the Bandelier Wilderness more or less of a wilderness? *Proceedings: Wilderness Science in a Time of Change Conference-Volume 5: Wilderness Ecosystems, Threats, and Management*, Proceedings RMRS-P-15-VOL-5, 209-215.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48

**National Wildlife Refuges**

*Amount of evidence: High*

The refuge system has a long history of habitat enhancement to maintain high quality habitat and sustain ecological processes for waterfowl and other aquatic species. There are large number of studies documenting response of species to prescribed burns and altered water regimes. Magnitude of the response varies among species and seasons. Prescribed fire is frequently used for managing grasslands and fire and prescribed cuts for forest lands. The changes projected from climate change are an additional variable. There are many references in the literature to the consequences of altered ecological processes on the integrity, diversity, and health of natural communities. Protection of nesting islands for colonial nesting birds from predators has been shown to positively affect reproductive success of many species. Reintroduction of keystone species such as beavers on refuges significantly alters habitat conditions and population size of other species.

*Amount of agreement: High*

There is wide agreement that protecting key ecosystem features will preserve or enhance resilience to climate change. Logically, protection will allow more of the resilience capacity to be “dedicated” to climate change because protection will minimize the challenges of non-climate stressors.

**Wild and Scenic Rivers**

*Amount of evidence: Low*

It is generally believed that there are no “keystone species” in running water ecosystems. Beaver can affect streams, but they convert them to wetlands and certainly there have been no attempts to protect them.

Headwater streams are the closest thing for WSRs that are “critical” because the rest of the river system is influenced by them and there is growing research evidence showing they have a disproportionate impact on the health of rivers. They should be the focus of protection, but have not been to date.

*Amount of agreement: High*

This is a difficult question because there is high agreement that headwater streams are disproportionately important, based on studies measuring rates of processes and the impacts of excluding some headwater inputs/processes to downstream reaches. But this research has not been done it a management/protection context. It is all basic research experiments.

**National Estuaries**

*Amount of evidence: Low*

- (1) There has been much oyster reef restoration, but none testing success in protecting shoreline from erosion.



- 1 (2) Managed realignment is good in concept, but no tests exist of its success.  
2 (3) Many tests have been done of how biodiversity affects resilience and  
3 observational studies exist relating structural complexity to biodiversity.  
4 (4) No real test exists to assess success of protecting estuarine zones of high  
5 biogeochemical functioning.  
6 (5) There is little empirical testing of bulkheads impacts on long enough time scales.  
7 (6) No development or tests of effectiveness of rolling easement concept exist.  
8

9 *Amount of agreement: Low*

- 10  
11 (1) There are many more failed than successful oyster reef restorations.  
12 (2) Some disagreement exists over need for realignment, due to uncertainty over rate  
13 of natural soil accretion in marshes.  
14 (3) Mixed, conflicting results exist in tests of how biodiversity influences resilience.  
15 (4) No data test the success of protecting biogeochemical zones of importance.  
16 (5) There is high conceptual agreement that bulkheads inhibit transgression.  
17 (6) There is high conceptual agreement that many species need corridors but this is of  
18 debatable applicability to estuaries, where larval or seed dispersal is almost  
19 universal.  
20 (7) The debate over need for rolling easements is only just beginning.  
21

## 22 **Marine Protected Areas**

23 *Amount of evidence: Low*

24  
25 This approach is fundamental to place-based management and MPAs that are designed to  
26 protect ecosystems. Palumbi (2002) summarized the situation at the time of his review:  
27 "...there are very few data that examine the relative resilience of marine habitats inside  
28 and outside reserves, nor are there comprehensive studies available that address whether  
29 ecosystems inside reserves can better weather climate shifts." There are some studies that  
30 have documented changes in ecosystem features in MPAs (Babcock *et al.* in New  
31 Zealand; McClanahan, Mwangi, and Muthiga in Kenya; Mumby *et al.* in the Bahamas),  
32 and Hughes *et al.* (2007) concluded that managing herbivorous fishes is a key component  
33 of managing reef resilience. Mumby *et al.* (2007) documented higher coral recruitment  
34 rates in a 20-year-old marine reserve, which likely would enhance rates of coral  
35 population recovery after disturbances and thus increase resilience compared with areas  
36 outside the reserve. One might argue that the evidence is moderate, but "low" was  
37 selected to reflect the limited amount of research on this topic directly relevant to  
38 resilience to climate change.  
39

40 *Amount of agreement: High*

41  
42 The existing studies, though limited in number, appear consistent. Studies that have not  
43 found changes in ecosystem features in MPAs, such as unpublished research in the  
44 Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, probably reflect the relatively short duration  
45 (10 years) of no-take regulations.  
46  
47

1 **B3 Adaptation Approach: Reducing Anthropogenic Stresses**

2 **Description:** Minimizing localized human stressors (*e.g.*, pollution) that hinder the ability  
3 of species or ecosystems to withstand climatic events

4 **Confidence:** Is reduction of anthropogenic stresses effective at increasing resilience to  
5 climate change?  
6

7 **National Forests**

8 *Amount of evidence: High*  
9

- 10 1) There is considerable literature that current stressors (air quality, invasives,  
11 altered fire regimes) increase the stress on plants and animals within ecosystems,  
12 and that management to reduce these stressors has a positive impact on ecosystem  
13 health.
- 14 2) With respect to air quality impacts, there is extensive literature on the impacts  
15 associated with ozone, nitrogen oxides, and mercury; the interactions of these  
16 pollutants; and the value of protecting ecosystems from air quality impacts (*e.g.*,  
17 National Research Council, 2004). Current levels of ozone exposure are estimated  
18 to reduce eastern and southern forest productivity by 5–10% (Joyce *et al.*, 2001;  
19 Felzer *et al.*, 2004). In the western United States, increased nitrogen deposition  
20 has altered plant communities and reduced lichen and soil mychorriza (Baron *et al.*,  
21 2000; Fenn *et al.*, 2003). Interaction of ozone and nitrogen deposition has  
22 been shown to cause major physiological disruption in ponderosa pine trees (Fenn  
23 *et al.*, 2003). Mercury deposition negatively affects aquatic food webs, as well as  
24 terrestrial wildlife, as a result of bioaccumulation (Chen *et al.*, 2005; Ottawa  
25 National Forest, 2006; Driscoll *et al.*, 2007; Peterson *et al.*, 2007). Given that  
26 climate change is likely to increase drought, exposure to ozone may further  
27 exacerbate the effects of drought on both forest growth and stream health  
28 (McLaughlin *et al.*, 2007a; 2007b).
- 29 3) There is considerable literature on the impact of invasives on ecosystems,  
30 biodiversity (Stein *et al.*, 1996; Mooney and Hobbs, 2000; Pimentel *et al.*, 2000;  
31 Rahel, 2000; Von Holle and Simberloff, 2005). Disturbances such as fire, insects,  
32 hurricanes, ice storms, and floods (all of which are likely to increase under  
33 climate change), create opportunities for invasive species to become established  
34 on areas ranging from multiple stands to landscapes. In turn, invasive plants alter  
35 the nature of fire regimes (Williams and Baruch, 2000; Lippincott, 2000; Pimentel  
36 *et al.*, 2000; Ziska, Reeves, and Blank, 2005)<sup>2</sup> as well as hydrological patterns  
37 (Pimentel *et al.*, 2000), in some cases increasing runoff, erosion, and sediment  
38 loads (*e.g.*, Lacey, Marlow, and Lane, 1989). Potential increase in these  
39 disturbances under climate change will heighten the challenges of managing  
40 invasive species. Climate change is expected to compound the invasive species  
41 problem because of its direct influence on native species distributions and because  
42 of the effects of its interactions with other stressors (Chornesky *et al.*, 2005). The  
43 need to protect, sustain, and restore ecosystems that are either threatened or

---

<sup>2</sup> See also **Tausch**, R.J., 1999: Transitions and thresholds: influences and implications for management in pinyon and juniper woodlands. In: *Proceedings: Ecology and Management of Pinyon-Juniper Communities Within the Interior West* US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station, pp. 361-365.

1 impacted by invasives has been recognized by management agencies (USDA  
2 Forest Service, 2004).

3 4) Adaptation literature describes the value of minimizing these current stressors to  
4 reduce ecosystem vulnerability to climate change and to enhance ecosystem  
5 resilience to climate change (*e.g.*, Spittlehouse and Stewart, 2003; Schneider *et*  
6 *al.*, 2007; Adger *et al.*, 2007).

7

8 *Amount of agreement: High*

9

10 1) The literature is in agreement that reducing these stressors is an important  
11 management strategy.

12 2) The literature also agrees that the effectiveness of these restoration approaches is  
13 influenced by the current environmental conditions, current condition of the  
14 ecosystem, and current status and degree of other human alterations of the  
15 ecosystem (*i.e.*, presence of invasives, departure from historical fire regimes,  
16 condition of watersheds).

17

### 18 **National Parks**

19 *Amount of evidence: High*

20

21 There is a vast amount of literature, plus a lot of common sense, demonstrating that  
22 ecosystems and their biota are more resilient to both natural and human-caused  
23 disturbances (although not necessarily climate change) when they are not stressed by  
24 pollution, habitat alteration, erosion of physical features such as beaches or soil, or  
25 prevention of natural disturbance cycles. Some methods may be more effective than  
26 others.

27

28 The IPCC Working Group II report on coasts offers literature about restoration of natural  
29 coastal processes as a way to promote shore, wetland and marsh protection from climate  
30 change (IPCC, 2007).

31

32 Restoration can protect salmon fisheries from some effects of climate change (Battin *et*  
33 *al.*, 2007).

34

35 While there is ample evidence that man-made barriers prevent natural migration of  
36 aquatic species, there is also growing evidence that it may not increase ecosystem  
37 resilience. Upstream migration of non-native species or diseases may compromise gains  
38 made by removal of barriers. Other management activities or land use may similarly  
39 compromise gains (U.S. Geological Survey, 2005).

40

41 Literature demonstrating that managing visitor use patterns in national parks works to  
42 minimize the effects of climate change is not readily available, although there are many  
43 examples of where restrictions of use has either been effective in restoring vegetation or  
44 enabled birds to nest successfully.

45

46 *Amount of agreement: High*

47

1 Reduction of human-caused stressors is the root of restoration ecology, a respected field  
2 of applied ecology. Many papers demonstrate recovery of at least some ecosystem  
3 attributes when pollutants are removed, including examples of recovery of zooplankton in  
4 Ontario lakes recovering from acid rain, increase in lake and stream acid-neutralizing  
5 capacity in the Adirondacks and Europe after reductions of SO<sub>2</sub> emissions, and  
6 restoration of native fishes after recovery from acid mine drainage or phosphorus  
7 reduction.

8  
9 Removal of non-native fishes in Alberta lakes allowed for natural (and assisted) recovery  
10 of natural food webs (Parker and Schindler, 2006).

### 11 **National Wildlife Refuges**

12 *Amount of evidence: High*

13  
14  
15 Management of anthropogenic stresses such as introduced predators, ungulates, etc. has  
16 been shown to increase numbers and reproductive success of waterfowl and ground  
17 nesting game birds. Reduction in pollutants (*e.g.*, DDT, selenium) has also been shown to  
18 increase survival and reproductive success of many species. Control of nest parasites,  
19 such as cowbirds, has been widely and successfully used as a management tool for  
20 endangered songbirds. The magnitude of the demographic response varies among species  
21 and ecological conditions. Provision of contaminant-free food has been used to reduce  
22 exposure of carrion feeding birds to lead with mixed success.

23  
24 *Amount of agreement: High*

25  
26 There is wide agreement that reducing anthropogenic stresses will increase resilience to  
27 climate change. Reducing anthropogenic stressors will increase the survival, reproductive  
28 success, and population size of most organisms (particularly those not dependent on  
29 disturbed anthropogenic habitats), and these increases will enhance the resilience  
30 capacity of trust species.

### 31 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

32 *Amount of evidence: High*

33  
34  
35 There have been extensive studies demonstrating that the amount of degradation of a  
36 watershed increases directly in relation to human stresses such as deforestation, dam-  
37 building, urbanization, and agriculture.

38  
39 There is very strong scientific data to show that when human stresses are reduced, the  
40 systems recover. There is also strong scientific evidence that a “healthy” river corridor  
41 that has minimal human stress imposed on it is very resilient to new stresses of the  
42 magnitude expected in the near term for climate change.

43  
44 *Amount of agreement: High*

45  
46 There are an incredible number of studies showing that reducing impervious cover and  
47 agriculture (and other human stressors) impart a healthy, more resilient river. This is  
48 probably one of the few areas where there is almost total agreement.

1  
2 There are many existing and newly forming management actions for rivers that are  
3 directly related to the amount of human stress. The management is doing this by capping  
4 the total amount of development and land clearing that can occur in a watershed,  
5 followed up by data collection.

### 6 7 **National Estuaries**

8 *Amount of evidence: High*

9  
10 (1) A prodigious amount of research has been conducted to show the role of nutrient  
11 loading and organic loading in eutrophication, and to assess BMPs for successful  
12 control. It is also clear from many models that climate change will enhance  
13 eutrophication in many estuaries.

14 (2) There is limited but some research on salt water intrusion and groundwater  
15 recharge rates with rising sea level.

16  
17 *Amount of agreement: High*

18  
19 (1) There is excellent agreement that reducing one driver of eutrophication will  
20 benefit the system and reduce the level of overall eutrophication.

21 (2) The disagreement applies to models of precipitation change, which provide results  
22 that are generally too coarse in scale to project which estuaries will experience  
23 increased precipitation and which will receive less.

### 24 25 **Marine Protected Areas**

26 *Amount of evidence: Low*

27  
28 This theme crops up in reviews dating back to at least Boesch, Field, and Scavia (2000)  
29 and Scavia *et al.* (2002), as well as recent works such as Marshall and Schuttenberg  
30 (2006) and Marshall and Johnson (2007). The principle is well established, though not  
31 well tested. Our understanding of synergistic stressors at a physiological level has  
32 substantial evidence for individual species, but the extension to ecosystems is largely  
33 through conceptual modeling. This is a logical, common-sense approach, but the hard  
34 evidence is limited.

35  
36 *Amount of agreement: High*

37  
38 Although the evidence is low, there appears to be agreement among a number of authors  
39 over a long period. On the other hand, the analysis of decline of Indo-Pacific reefs by  
40 Bruno and Selig (2007) concluded that high vs. low levels of management did not appear  
41 to influence the trajectory of decline.

## 42 **B4 Adaptation Approach: Representation**

43 *Description:* Protecting a portfolio of variant forms of a species or ecosystem so that,  
44 regardless of what climatic changes occur, there will be areas that survive and provide a  
45 source for recovery.

1 **Confidence:** Is representation effective in supporting resilience through preservation of  
2 overall biodiversity?  
3

4 **National Forests**

5 *Amount of evidence: Low*  
6

- 7 1) Reserves and national networks are often established on the premise that  
8 additional sites will ensure the persistence of a particular vegetation type. Under a  
9 constant climate, this premise for duplication within networks is well accepted.
- 10 2) However, while it is common to duplicate vegetation types, the recent literature  
11 on paleoecology demonstrates that plant and animal species respond  
12 individualistically and uniquely in time and space, incorporating competition and  
13 ecological disturbance as well as climatic factors in their response. Thus,  
14 vegetation types are not likely to retain the same composition and structure under  
15 change.
- 16 3) If this adaptation were focused on species, the literature would suggest that the  
17 evidence is high with respect to this adaptation strategy and its effectiveness.
- 18 4) On the species level, the distributions of species display distinct “leading” edges  
19 that are well incised and indistinct “trailing” edges showing the microsites where  
20 species can survive locally, but not under the regional climate. This pattern  
21 merely displays that there are a myriad of microhabitats outside of the primary  
22 range of a species’ distribution that will support that species. There is a scale issue  
23 regarding the importance of the survival of that species with respect to the overall  
24 ecosystem in the region. Survival of the individual species does not necessarily  
25 guarantee the survival of the entire ecosystem.

26  
27 *Amount of agreement: Low*  
28

- 29 1) While the literature would support agreement on the effectiveness of this  
30 approach for species, there is little agreement that this approach is effective for  
31 vegetation types or ecosystems. Therefore agreement is low that this approach  
32 would increase resilience in the system.

33  
34 **National Parks**

35 *Amount of evidence: Low*  
36

37 Multiple representatives of valued populations or systems is a form of bet-hedging and  
38 has been shown to protect species of populations when one or more patches or  
39 communities are destroyed.

40  
41 Individual species respond to climate according to specific climate needs. There is at least  
42 one paper suggesting multiple representatives of a species within their specific climate  
43 niche will have little value in a changing climate (Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach,  
44 2007). If the different populations all have narrow tolerances to climate, having more of  
45 them when all will change beyond their range if viability will not be beneficial.

46  
47 *Amount of agreement: Low*  
48

1 There is insufficient evidence that representation will be effective in promoting resilience  
2 of species of ecosystems, although there is ample evidence that having only few  
3 populations or representatives of species increases their vulnerability to extinction.  
4

#### 5 **National Wildlife Refuges**

6 *Amount of evidence: High*  
7

8 There is a large body of evidence in the literature showing that species that are found on  
9 National Wildlife Refuges are more abundant on refuges than on adjacent habitats.  
10 Several studies have shown that capturing the full geographical, ecological, and genetic  
11 variation of a species in the wild or in captivity is a hedge against extinction and other  
12 losses. Thus, greater numbers of refuges that support higher densities of trust species will  
13 reduce the chances that climate change will completely eliminate any trust habitats,  
14 populations, or species. Evidence is lacking for most species regarding what degree of  
15 representation is sufficient. Each population of a species or ecosystem example on a  
16 refuge will experience different effects of climate change. As a result each one is a  
17 different entry in the evolutionary sweepstakes under climate change.  
18

19 *Amount of agreement: High*  
20

21 There is wide agreement that increasing representation will be effective in supporting  
22 resilience through preservation of overall biodiversity. Logically, and statistically, the  
23 broader the range of trust species and/or trust habitats that are included in the refuge  
24 system, the lower the likelihood that biodiversity will be lost due to climate change.  
25 However, individual refuges or refuge complexes need to be large enough to maintain  
26 viable populations to maximize the advantages of increased representation.  
27

#### 28 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

29 *Amount of evidence: High*  
30

31 This is a difficult question because most of the evidence available is from fisheries. If  
32 they are becoming threatened, then some areas have been set aside as special  
33 conservation areas to ensure some populations remain alive. Then if they do recover, they  
34 are released in rivers elsewhere. In the event of climate change, we may need to release  
35 fish and other species in to new regions where the climate is now appropriate for them  
36 (assuming their old regions are now too warm or otherwise inappropriate). This is a  
37 major management strategy that has been around a long time, and in fact Habitat  
38 Conservation Plans are required once a riverine species becomes endangered.  
39

40 Protecting representative running-water ecosystems themselves (*i.e.*, distinguished from  
41 species) has not been a management or scientific focus to date in the United States, but it  
42 is being tried in Australia. Because of their dire drought situation, many riparian zones  
43 along rivers in Australia are losing all of their vegetation. So managers are setting aside  
44 some areas where they ensure minimum water needs (through regulating withdrawals and  
45 dam releases) to keep the vegetation alive. The idea is then that these plants can be used  
46 for “seed” at other sites once the drought is over.  
47

48 *Amount of agreement: High*

1  
2 There are many things coupled together in this management strategy. There is good  
3 agreement that maintaining local fish populations when other populations around them  
4 (*i.e.*, in different rivers) are dying makes a great deal of sense, and we have the science to  
5 support that.

6  
7 There is not as much agreement on the ecosystem “set-aside” idea, only because it has  
8 not been extensively tried. However, most scientists would agree it is a low risk  
9 venture—*i.e.*, likely to work.

## 10 **National Estuaries**

11 *Amount of evidence: Low*

- 12  
13  
14 (1) There is limited study of effects of genetic diversity on resilience of estuarine  
15 species (but see Hughes and Stachowicz, 2004).  
16 (2) There has been growing scientific attention to landscape effects of multiple  
17 habitats in salt marshes (Minello; Able; Zedler; Grabowski) and some for seagrass  
18 beds, but the scope of these studies is limited.

19  
20 *Amount of agreement: High*

- 21  
22 (1) There is no ambiguity in the theory of natural selection that genetic diversity is  
23 the substrate on which adaptation through evolution acts.  
24 (2) The effects of landscape proximity among marsh and other shoreline habitats are  
25 reasonably well established, and the importance of habitat edge effects is also  
26 becoming clearer.

## 27 **Marine Protected Areas**

28 *Amount of evidence: Low*

29  
30  
31 This is a cornerstone of the zoning approach for the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park  
32 (Fernandes *et al.*, 2005)<sup>3</sup>. It is very logical (Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006) and has  
33 been effectively applied to the marine park. Similar approaches for other marine systems  
34 are not readily available, although the representative areas approach has broad  
35 applicability.

36  
37 *Amount of agreement: High*

38  
39 Although the evidence is low there appears to be agreement among a number of authors  
40 (Palumbi, 2002; Sobel and Dahlgren, 2004; Fernandes *et al.*, 2005; Salm, Done, and  
41 McLeod, 2006; Roberts *et al.*, 2006; McCook *et al.*, 2007).<sup>3</sup> A contrary line of evidence  
42 is not known.

43  

---

<sup>3</sup> See also Day, J., L. Fernandes, A. Lewis, G. De'ath, S. Slegers, B. Barnett, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, J. Innes, J. Oliver, T. Ward, and D. Lowe, 2002: The representative areas program for protecting biodiversity in the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area. In: *Proceedings of the Ninth International Coral Reef Symposium 23*, October 2000, pp. 687-696.



## 1 **B5 Adaptation Approach: Replication**

2 **Description:** Maintaining more than one example of each ecosystem or population within  
3 a reserve system such that if one area is affected by a disturbance, replicates in another  
4 area provide insurance against extinction and a source for recovery of affected areas.

5 **Confidence:** Is replication effective in supporting resilience by spreading the risks posed  
6 by climate change?

### 7 8 **National Forests**

9 *Amount of evidence: Low*

- 10  
11 1) The literature is extensive in terms of the value of maintaining numerous animal  
12 and plant populations of species to maintain species viability. The concept is  
13 certainly well-supported in both theoretical and experimental (lab) approaches  
14 and for some situations in the field. The rationale for maintaining more than one  
15 population or ecosystem is often associated with the probability of extreme  
16 events, such as drought or fire, that may be associated with future climate change.  
17 2) A strategy that combines practices to restore vigor and redundancy (Markham,  
18 1996; Noss, 2001) and ecological processes (Rice and Emery, 2003), so that after  
19 a disturbance these ecosystems have the necessary keystone species and  
20 functional processes to recover to a healthy state even if species composition  
21 changes, would be the goal of managing for ecosystem change.  
22 3) Agreement for this approach is rated as low, however, because few examples have  
23 been documented in the field at the ecosystem level.  
24

25 *Amount of agreement: Low*

- 26  
27 1) For populations of plants and animals, the literature is in agreement with the  
28 effectiveness of this concept.  
29 2) For ecosystems, less information is available.  
30 3) Therefore, agreement is low that this approach would increase resilience in the  
31 system.  
32

### 33 **National Parks**

34 *Amount of evidence: Low*

35  
36 Multiple representatives of valued populations or systems is a form of bet-hedging and  
37 has been shown to protect species of populations when one or more patches or  
38 communities are destroyed. This has been a foundation of endangered species protection.  
39

40 While one paper was found that promotes replication of desired species (Bengtsson *et al.*,  
41 2003), the National Parks chapter does not promote this as a means of building resilience.  
42 Human intervention to move species adds a decidedly anthropomorphic slant to natural  
43 resources. Only species of interest are considered, while the majority of insects, plants,  
44 soil microbes and biota will be ignored.  
45

46 Species move independently according to their biophysical needs (Williams, Jackson, and  
47 Kutzbach, 2007), so that replication of populations with narrow climatic niches may not

1 provide protection against novel climates, or similar climates too far away for effective  
2 natural establishment of new colonies.

3  
4 *Amount of agreement: Low*

5  
6 This approach is sanctioned by conservationists, but papers like those of Kutzbach *et al.*  
7 (2007) suggest it is insufficient for promoting resilience of ecosystems in novel climates.

### 8 9 **National Wildlife Refuges**

10 *Amount of evidence: High*

11  
12 A basic principle of conservation by design is redundancy, and this concept is repeatedly  
13 addressed in the scientific literature. Having multiple refuges for a trust species or trust  
14 habitat in each of the ecological and climate domains in which it occurs provides logical  
15 and statistical insurance against loss of a species or habitat from the refuge system due to  
16 a catastrophic event at a single refuge. There are several examples of species becoming  
17 extinct after storms affected the last known population.

18  
19 *Amount of agreement: High*

20  
21 There is wide agreement in the science community that redundancy in refuges and  
22 species populations increases the logical and statistical likelihood that biodiversity will be  
23 preserved. There is some discussion regarding how much redundancy is required.

### 24 25 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

26 *Amount of evidence: High*

27  
28 The same evidence is available for the last question (fisheries): maintaining multiple  
29 populations spreads the risk of total extinction. There is good evidence available for this  
30 risk reduction in fisheries. Less evidence is available for river insects and even less for  
31 ecosystem processes.

32  
33 The critical piece of data needed (for fauna other than fish) is how far they disperse and  
34 what their dispersal requirements are. This is an important current research area because  
35 of the obvious conservation implications—if we know this then we can design the spatial  
36 arrangement of the protected “representative ecosystems/populations” in a way that  
37 allows organisms to disperse naturally (*i.e.*, no transplants necessary).

38  
39 *Amount of agreement: High*

40  
41 The emerging interest and efforts by nongovernmental organizations to establish  
42 freshwater protected areas is a sign of the confidence that this approach is worthwhile.

43  
44 There has been extensive research in river networks to determine if there are particular  
45 configurations of river reaches that minimize extinction risk.

### 46 47 **National Estuaries**

48 *Amount of evidence: Low*

- 1
- 2 (1) Oyster reef restoration done in replication along a depth gradient was shown to
- 3 allow fish and crustaceans to survive when environmental degradation occurred
- 4 that was depth-dependent: the fishes moved to reefs that were not affected and
- 5 found enough prey to survive (Lenihan *et al.*, 2001).
- 6 (2) Migrating shorebirds require replicated estuaries along the flyway so that they can
- 7 move to more rewarding feeding sites to fuel up for the migration and breeding.
- 8 (3) Otherwise, there is little research on replication at the spatial and temporal scales
- 9 appropriate to project its value in a climate change context.

10  
11 *Amount of agreement: High*

- 12
- 13 (1) There is a high level of agreement, although in part perhaps because so few
- 14 studies of relevance have been done.
- 15 (2) There is agreement in concept that populations of mobile vertebrates such as
- 16 fishes, birds, and mammals benefit from replication. However, many such
- 17 species, such as salmon, exhibit high faithfulness to natal sites; replication would
- 18 not provide much if any benefit for them.

## 19 **Marine Protected Areas**

20  
21 *Amount of evidence: Low*

22  
23 There are numerous modeling studies of reserve networks (*e.g.*, Allison, Lubchenco, and

24 Carr, 1998), but empirical data are lacking. Areas such as the Great Barrier Reef Marine

25 Park and the Channel Islands National Marine Sanctuary should produce relevant results

26 over time. This approach also might be ranked as moderate (per question 1).

27  
28 *Amount of agreement: High*

29  
30 Replication and representation in the marine literature generally go hand-in-hand; please

31 refer to question 3 for literature citations. Again, a contrary line of evidence is not known.

## 32 **B6 Adaptation Approach: Restoration**

33 **Description:** Rebuilding ecosystems that have been lost or compromised.

34 **Confidence:** Is restoration of desired ecological states or ecological processes effective in

35 supporting resilience to climate change?

### 36 **National Forests**

37  
38 *Amount of evidence: High*

- 39
- 40 1) There is a large body of literature describing and documenting restoration theory
- 41 and practices across a wide variety of ecosystems and ecological processes.

42  
43 *Amount of agreement: Low*

- 44
- 45 1) While there is high agreement that the current theories and practices can be used
- 46 to restore a number of different ecosystems, climate change has the potential to

1 significantly influence the practice and outcomes of ecological restoration under a  
2 changing climate (Harris *et al.*, 2006), where the focus is on tying assemblages to  
3 one place. The restoration literature is now in discussion about the impact that a  
4 changing climate may have on the theories and practices that have been  
5 developed. For example, natural resource management, planning, conservation,  
6 restoration, and policy are deeply founded on strategies based on the historic  
7 range of variability ecological concept (Landres, Morgan, and Swanson, 1999).  
8 However, use of such strategies will become increasingly problematic as the  
9 potential for a “no analog” futures are realized (Millar, Westfall, and Delany, in  
10 press; Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach, 2007).

- 11 2) The climate sensitivity of best management practices, genetic diversity guidelines,  
12 restoration treatments, and regeneration guidelines may need to be revisited.  
13 Space for evolutionary development under climate change may be important to  
14 incorporate into conservation and restoration programs under a changing climate  
15 (Rice and Emery, 2003).

### 16 **National Parks**

17 *Amount of evidence: High*

18  
19  
20 Restoration of some species, such as wolves, into habitats where they have been  
21 extirpated has been highly successful by nearly all ecological standards.

22  
23 There are some examples showing that restoration of natural flow regimes in rivers by  
24 dam removal has been successful in restoring reproducing fish populations

25  
26 There are at least several instances in the literature that decry the lack of restoration  
27 standards that allow managers to evaluate the effectiveness of restoration efforts  
28 (Bernhardt *et al.*, 2005).

29  
30 Restoration of wetlands or riparian areas has been shown to bring back some ecosystem  
31 services, such as nutrient or pollutant retention, but there is uncertainty among wetland  
32 scientists whether restoration activities truly reproduce natural conditions.

33  
34 Restoration of damaged systems will allow climate change to occur with fewer ecological  
35 disruptions than if soils have eroded, invasive species dominate, river banks are trampled,  
36 or pollutants contaminate native populations (discussed above in reducing anthropogenic  
37 stresses).

38  
39 *Amount of agreement: High*

40  
41 There is an entire professional society devoted to ecological restoration, the Society for  
42 Ecological Restoration, with journals that describe the theory behind restoration and  
43 practical applications of restoration science.<sup>4</sup>

### 44 **National Wildlife Refuges**

45 *Amount of evidence: Low*

---

46 <sup>4</sup> Society for Ecological Restoration, <http://www.ser.org/about.asp>

1  
2 Habitat restoration is a widely used tool in relatively small-scale conservation biology  
3 activities. There is a large body of literature on the topic, with several journals devoted  
4 solely to habitat restoration (*e.g.*, Ecological Management and Restoration, Restoration  
5 Ecology) as well as a professional society dedicated to restoration ecology. In Hawaii,  
6 restoration of pasture lands to *ohia koa* forests resulted in recolonization by endangered  
7 birds. Re-creation of wetlands has been used widely and successfully to restore/attract  
8 migratory water birds. However, the magnitude of the site response to restoration can  
9 vary due to (1) temporal shifts in habitat use by species, (2) scale of restoration in relation  
10 to the desired population goals, (3) introduced species, (4) long-term and large-scale  
11 ecological processes, or (5) barriers to recolonization. Further, few restoration studies  
12 have been conducted in a controlled experimental design, and reoccupancy of restored  
13 habitats by native plants and invertebrates is not well documented. Although there is  
14 small-scale evidence for effectiveness of restoration, there is little evaluation or evidence  
15 regarding the effectiveness at the larger scales of ecological processes that would be  
16 necessary to provide resilience to climate change.

17  
18 *Amount of agreement: Low*

19  
20 There is little general agreement that restoring a desired ecological state or process will  
21 be effective in supporting resilience to climate change. There is little logical support for  
22 the idea that restoring a state or a process to a historical condition will provide resilience  
23 to climate change, because it is expected that the historical restored condition will no  
24 longer be appropriate in a changed climate.

### 25 26 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

27 *Amount of evidence: Low*

28  
29 Very little rigorous monitoring has been done on stream restoration. This is a very current  
30 area of research and data are just starting to come in. The evidence suggests that if the  
31 restoration not only repairs the degraded portion of the stream but removes the stress,  
32 then the restoration is usually successful. But if the restoration is a local fix, such as  
33 regrading streambanks and stabilizing them without taking care of the underlying  
34 problem (*e.g.*, inadequate stormwater infrastructure above the reach), then the restoration  
35 project will most likely fail or else huge resources will be needed to maintain it.

36  
37 *Amount of agreement: Low*

38  
39 The effectiveness of restoration is a contentious issue. Many scientists are skeptical that  
40 most projects work, because many are done poorly or the underlying problem is not  
41 addressed. Other scientists point toward data from projects that were adequately  
42 monitored and were well-done projects—success has clearly been shown. So to a certain  
43 extent the low agreement is that some scientists believe we must focus on what is done *in*  
44 *reality* while others focus on what is possible.

### 45 46 **National Estuaries**

47 *Amount of evidence: High*

48

- 1 (1) There are many studies of salt marsh restoration (beginning 40 years ago with
- 2 *Spartina* methods developed by Seneca, Woodhouse, and Broome).
- 3 (2) Similarly, a lot of effort has gone into oyster reef restoration and SAV restoration.
- 4 (3) There is not much research on exterminating invasive estuarine species: *Meloluca*
- 5 is everywhere along Florida waterways; *Phragmites* dominates many areas of
- 6 East Coast marshes; San Francisco Bay suffers from persistent *Spartina* invasion,
- 7 etc.
- 8 (4) The value of positioning salt marsh restorations where transgressive retreat is
- 9 possible is strongly supported in concept, although no empirical tests of the
- 10 effectiveness with sea level rise exist, except for paleontological evidence (*e.g.*,
- 11 Bertness work) of substantial transgressions of marsh historically.
- 12

13 *Amount of agreement: High*

- 14
- 15 (1) There is uniform agreement that salt marsh can be successfully restored.
- 16 (2) Some challenges exist in assuring the durability of SAV and oyster reef
- 17 restorations.
- 18 (3) Nevertheless, there is also good agreement that exterminating invasives is
- 19 generally infeasible for estuaries (although easier for large plants than for mobile
- 20 animals or microbes).
- 21 (4) There is high agreement in concept that building the capacity for transgression
- 22 will provide a viable means for marshes and other shoreline habitats to become
- 23 resilient to sea level rise.
- 24

#### 25 **Marine Protected Areas**

26 *Amount of evidence: Low*

27

28 Reef restoration following vessel groundings has a long history of application in the

29 Florida Keys (and elsewhere) and more general discussions of restoration are in Marshall

30 and Schuttenberg (2006), Salm, Done, and McLeod (2006), and Precht and Aronson

31 (2006). The discussion has been extended to include restoring herbivory, coral

32 recruitment, and other topics with regard to ecological processes. There is an appreciation

33 by managers that it may be necessary to employ more restoration because of the

34 widespread degradation of marine ecosystems. Nevertheless, it appears that evidence

35 about effectiveness in supporting resilience to climate change is low.

36

37 *Amount of agreement: Low*

38

39 There appears to be agreement among several authors (Halpin, 1997; Burke and Maidens,

40 2004; Salm, Done, and McLeod, 2006; references in Precht and Miller, 2006; Jaap *et al.*,

41 2006; Gunderson, 2007) but some question the value or potential for success of

42 restoration efforts (Jameson, Tupper, and Ridley, 2002; Hughes *et al.*, 2007). Jameson,

43 Tupper, and Ridley (2002) note that expensive restoration efforts are questionable unless

44 environmental conditions are healthy enough to warrant them.

45

## 1 **B7 Adaptation Approach: Refugia**

2 **Description:** Using areas relatively less affected by climate change as sources of “seed”  
3 for recovery or as destinations for climate-sensitive migrants.

4 **Confidence:** Are refugia an effective way to preserve or enhance resilience to climate  
5 change at the scale of species, communities or regional networks?  
6

### 7 **National Forests**

8 *Amount of evidence: High*  
9

- 10 1) The paleo literature has documented the presence of refugia under past climate  
11 changes. Local climate trajectories, local topography, and microclimatology  
12 interact in ways that may yield very different climate conditions than those given  
13 by broad-scale models. In mountainous terrain especially, the climate landscape is  
14 patchy and highly variable, with local inversions, wind patterns, aspect  
15 differences, soil relations, storm tracks, and hydrology influencing the weather  
16 that a site experiences. Sometimes lower elevations may be refugial during  
17 warming conditions, as in inversion-prone basins, deep and narrow canyons,  
18 riparian zones, and north slopes. Such patterns, and occupation of them by plants  
19 during transitional climate periods, are corroborated in the paleoecological record  
20 (Millar and Woolfenden, 1999; Millar *et al.*, 2006). Further, unusual and  
21 nutritionally extreme soil types (*e.g.*, acid podsols, limestones etc.) have been  
22 noted for their long persistence of species and genetic diversity, resistance to  
23 invasive species, and long-lasting community physiognomy compared with  
24 adjacent fertile soils (Millar, 1989). During historic periods of rapid climate  
25 change and widespread population extirpation, refugial populations persisted on  
26 sites that avoided the regional climate impacts and the effects of large  
27 disturbance. For example, Camp *et al.* (1995) reported that topographic and site  
28 characteristics of old-growth refugia in the Swauk Pass area of the Wenatchee  
29 National Forest were uniquely identifiable. These populations provided both  
30 adapted germplasm and local seed sources for advance colonization as climates  
31 naturally changed toward favoring the species.  
32

33 *Amount of agreement: Low*  
34

- 35 1) While the literature has documented these refugia either in the paleo record or on  
36 current landscapes, the use of this technique as an adaptation option has been little  
37 tested.  
38

### 39 **National Parks**

40 *Amount of evidence: Low*  
41

42 A refugium implies a place where climate conditions will remain similar to present  
43 conditions so that species can persist. According to Williams, Jackson, and Kutzbach  
44 (2007) many parts of the world will acquire novel climates unseen before on Earth.  
45 Selecting, and then protecting, specific habitats for species may in the long run be a  
46 matter of chance.  
47

1 Some very high elevation habitats may provide refugia for cold-loving species such as  
2 tundra and pika. High elevation streams where non-native fish can be excluded with  
3 natural barriers might provide refugia for cold-water fishes.

4  
5 Phenological changes that accompany climate change may disrupt mutualistic species  
6 associations, regardless of the availability of refugia.

7  
8 *Amount of agreement: Low*

9  
10 Species are currently migrating north and to high elevations as climate changes.  
11 Preselecting areas to serve as refuges for individual species or assemblages might or  
12 might not work to protect them, with the exception of the high elevations or latitudes  
13 where cold-loving species may persist. Therefore, there is low agreement.

#### 14 **National Wildlife Refuges**

15  
16 *Amount of evidence: High*

17  
18 Climate refugia, areas where effects of past climate change were minimized, are  
19 documented in the paleontological record, and refugia are projected to occur in a changed  
20 climate of the future. Historically these refugia were the only areas in which some species  
21 survived, and they provided colonization sources when conditions became suitable  
22 elsewhere as environmental conditions changed. An analogous situation can be expected  
23 to occur with the current episode of climate change. However, large areas of projected  
24 climate refugia have no wildlife refuges. There is some evidence that refugia will often  
25 be found at the ecological or geographical extremes of species ranges.

26  
27 *Amount of agreement: Low*

28  
29 There is generally low agreement that refugia will be effective at preserving resilience to  
30 climate change at all scales, from species to regions. Creating refugia from climate  
31 change is not possible; refugia will emerge in response to heterogeneity in landscape  
32 characteristics and realized climate change. Further, it is difficult to project the explicit  
33 location of future climate change refugia at scales that are ecologically relevant or useful  
34 for identifying new sites for strategic growth of the refuge system, particularly at the  
35 scale of individual refuges. There may be opportunities to take advantage of emerging  
36 refugia, particularly for threatened/endangered species or small scale habitats, but refugia  
37 will be difficult to impossible to manage in the adaptive management framework.  
38 Predicting species specific responses to potential refugia will be a challenge.

#### 39 40 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

41 *Amount of evidence: High*

- 42  
43 1) There is good evidence that small-scale, local refugia (within-channel such as  
44 diverse habitat types) are important to the survival of stream plants and animals, if  
45 those areas are protected from significant disturbance events such as unusual  
46 floods or droughts. This is directly tied to resilience, because these local refugia  
47 act as a protective place from which surviving organisms can disperse. These  
48 dispersing individuals then reproduce and re-populate areas denuded of biota.



- 1           2) There is some evidence for plants and fish, but little evidence to date for smaller  
2           organisms, that some habitat types, even if widely dispersed, can act as refugia for  
3           moderate to large scale (landscape scale) disturbances. Examples include distant  
4           floodplains, tributaries that remain intact or undisturbed, or any region that for  
5           some reason is protected from the full brunt of a disturbance. Thus, resilience at  
6           broad scales (*e.g.*, entire watersheds or perhaps even ecoregions) may depend on  
7           setting aside such refuge areas. Since most climate-induced disturbances are  
8           expected to be exacerbated by development in a watershed (this makes entire  
9           rivers downstream of the development more vulnerable), one form of protection  
10          that could be part of a management strategy to provide refugia could include  
11          limits to development or protection of floodplains or surrounding forests.

12  
13 *Amount of agreement: High*

14  
15 The only reason there might be some disagreement is if we are considering an organism  
16 for which we know nothing or little about its dispersal abilities. If we protect or establish  
17 in-stream or regional refugia, but organisms can not move to areas formerly affected by  
18 disturbances such as those related to climate change, then the value of the refugia is  
19 somewhat reduced. However, because we should be able in most or all cases to transport  
20 the biota ourselves (seed, larvae, nymphs, juveniles, etc) using some management  
21 programs, this concern is minor. Thus, most river ecologists would strongly agree that  
22 provision of refugia is a great way to enhance long term resilience in the face of climate  
23 change. In fact, use of such approaches (setting aside “preserves,” which are a form of  
24 refugia) is already in place in some cases, on the advice of scientific boards in advance of  
25 any research or data showing that there is high agreement.

26  
27 **National Estuaries**

28 *Amount of evidence: Low*

- 29  
30           (1) There has been little work done on this topic in estuaries. However, if features  
31           such as oyster reefs are restored in replication along a depth gradient or along  
32           some other environmental gradient, then when perturbations occur that are depth-  
33           dependent or vary in intensity along the gradient, one end of the gradient is more  
34           likely to serve as a refugium into which mobile species can escape the threat or  
35           impact of the perturbation. This is illustrated by the Lenihan *et al.* (2001)  
36           example, in which fish and crabs escape hypoxia/anoxia (which can be climate  
37           change-induced) that develops in deep water by retreating to shallow water  
38           refugia.  
39           (2) Relative sea level rise does vary geographically, so some salt marsh systems may  
40           be able to build soils at rates fast enough to keep up with sea level rise for a  
41           relatively long time. However, patterns of geographic distribution in relative rates  
42           of sea level rise are too coarse geographically to enable “surviving” estuaries to  
43           be successful refugia and sources of migrants. Most estuarine fishes and most  
44           marine invertebrates possess highly dispersive planktonic larvae, so there may be  
45           some value to refugia at these large distances, but little information is available.

46  
47 *Amount of agreement: Low*

- 1 (1) There is simply insufficient scientific evidence to determine which marshes may  
2 be able to keep up in soil elevation with sea level rise, so a debate will go on.  
3 (2) As regards both oyster reefs and networks of estuaries, virtually no research has  
4 been done to assess the effectiveness of refugia, except for the value of alternative  
5 estuaries as stop-over sites for migrating shorebirds. Thus, the literature of  
6 relevance that exists is relatively speculative and reflects several disagreements.

### 7 **Marine Protected Areas**

8 *Amount of evidence: Low*

9  
10  
11 A number of authors note the potential value of refugia (e.g., McClanahan, Polunin, and  
12 Done, 2002; West and Salm, 2003; Coles and Brown, 2003; Salm, Done, and McLeod,  
13 2006; Marshall and Schuttenberg, 2006).<sup>5</sup> Nevertheless, experimental or empirical  
14 evidence is limited (e.g., Riegl and Piller, 2003).

15  
16 *Amount of agreement: High*

17  
18 Both the more-speculative as well as at least one empirical study are consistent, so  
19 agreement is considered to be high.

## 20 **B8 Adaptation Approach: Relocation**

21 **Description:** Human-facilitated transplanting of organisms from one location to another  
22 in order to bypass a barrier (e.g., urban area).

23 **Confidence:** Is relocation an effective way to promote system-wide (regional) resilience  
24 by moving species that would not otherwise be able to emigrate in response to climate  
25 change?

### 26 **National Forests**

27 *Amount of evidence: High*

- 28  
29  
30 1) For plants, relocation has been a common technique for commercial plant species.  
31 Provenance studies demonstrate the appropriateness of different germplasm, and  
32 management is based on the likelihood of planting different provenances across  
33 widely scattered landscapes and within landscapes.  
34 2) For other plant species and for animals, a nascent literature is developing on the  
35 advantages and disadvantages of “assisted migration,” that is, intentional  
36 movement of propagules or juvenile and adult individuals into areas assumed to  
37 become their future habitats (Halpin, 1997; Collingham and Huntley, 2000;  
38 McLachlan, Hellmann, and Schwartz, 2007). At this point, insufficient data exists  
39 to judge the success of such techniques.

40  
41 *Amount of agreement: Low*

---

<sup>5</sup> See also **Salm**, R.V. and S.L. Coles, 2001: Coral bleaching and marine protected areas. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Mitigating Coral Bleaching Impact Through MPA Design* [Salm, R.V. and S.L. Coles (eds.)]. Proceedings of the Coral Bleaching and Marine Protected Areas, pp. 1-118. See chapters in **Johnson**, J. and P. Marshall, 2007: *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef: a Vulnerability Assessment*. Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.

- 1  
2 1) Protocols for “assisted migration” of species need to be tested and established  
3 before approaches are implemented more broadly.  
4

5 **National Parks**

6 *Amount of evidence: Low*  
7

8 Some studies have shown successful colonization of native after removal of invasive  
9 species; aggressive control of invasives followed by restoration of native species might  
10 be successful in preventing, or slowing, the establishment of unwanted species.  
11

12 This approach is not well understood, particularly with respect to system-wide resilience.  
13

14 *Amount of agreement: Low*  
15

16 Relocation of desired species may allow that species to persist, but ecosystems are made  
17 up of complex webs of living organisms, including insects, soil flora and fauna, and  
18 many other types of organisms that would not be relocated.  
19

20 There is little agreement about whether relocation would increase system resilience.  
21

22 **National Wildlife Refuges**

23 *Amount of evidence: Low*  
24

25 Translocation of species is a very common species-specific management tool. However  
26 few of these efforts are conducted with appropriate experimental design. Translocation  
27 has been successfully used to introduce game species around the globe. Efforts to use  
28 translocation for establishing or re-establishing populations of threatened or endangered  
29 species have been highly variable in their success. Synthesis studies indicate that success  
30 is very dependent on quality of available habitat and the mitigation of stressors at  
31 translocation site prior to relocation. Movement of a species across a dispersal barrier  
32 (e.g., fish over dams) assumes that suitable habitat is available beyond the barrier and the  
33 uncertainty of climate change challenges that assumption. Climate change projections  
34 engender a fear that changes in habitat will result in the loss of species on refuges as  
35 conditions become unsuitable and the ability of refuges to mitigate changes is exceeded.  
36 The extreme risks would be extinction or extirpation from refuge lands. This presents a  
37 very different situation than movement across a barrier (e.g., salamanders, toads and  
38 frogs across a highway during dispersal from wintering habitat). Because most evidence  
39 has been focused on individual species, the success of species relocation has been  
40 variable and there is little to no evidence of the effect of relocated species on recipient  
41 communities, there is little evidence that relocation is an effective way to promote  
42 system-wide (regional) resilience.  
43

44 *Amount of agreement: Low*  
45

46 There is generally low agreement that relocation will be an effective way to promote  
47 system-wide (regional) resilience to climate change. Ethical concerns regarding the  
48 unpredictable effects on other species and communities that result from introducing a

1 species into a previously unoccupied habitat are notable; it is not clear that the net effect  
2 of translocation will be positive at the system-wide scale. Relocation may be effective at  
3 smaller scales; for example, in the case of a threatened or endangered non-disperser that  
4 was unlikely to negatively affect a suitable target area.

### 6 **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

7 *Amount of evidence: Low*

9 While fish have been translocated and are able to survive if put into an appropriate reach,  
10 there is no evidence that this will end up promoting system-wide recovery. Most  
11 scientists would say the more critical thing for system wide recovery is removing the  
12 “insult” to the system. With climate change, that will be pretty hard to do. If you can  
13 move the species to a totally new watershed where the climate is appropriate then it is  
14 hard to say.

16 *Amount of agreement: Low*

18 Some scientists speculate that we may be able to, for example, shift fish species from  
19 lower latitude/altitude places that have become too warm to higher latitude/altitude places  
20 that are appropriate under future climates. However, others will argue that even if the  
21 temperature is comparable, getting the flow conditions and ecosystem processes that are  
22 needed to support the species in the long-run is unlikely.

### 24 **National Estuaries**

25 *Amount of evidence: N/A*

- 27 (1) Little, if any, work has been done transplanting estuarine species to overcome  
28 dispersal barriers to latitudinal shifts, largely because so many estuarine species  
29 are actually highly dispersive at some life stage. Therefore, it is not applicable to  
30 rate confidence levels for relocation with regard to estuaries.

32 *Amount of agreement: N/A*

- 34 (1) There is very little agreement that this approach is suitable for most estuarine  
35 species. It may, however, play a future role for some reptiles and mammals of salt  
36 marshes or mangroves that have limited dispersal capacity, but this requires  
37 investigation.

### 39 **Marine Protected Areas**

40 *Amount of evidence: N/A*

42 An assessment of “relocation” as a management approach is not made for MPAs because  
43 advanced web searches on all the major literature databases result in very little  
44 information on the concept of relocation as defined in this report.

46 *Amount of agreement: N/A*

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Annex B:**  
**Confidence Estimates**

1 Since there is virtually no scientific evidence and little discussion of relocation as it  
2 would apply to MPAs, it is not applicable to discuss level of agreement in this approach  
3 at this time. However, such an approach should not necessarily be written off as a future  
4 option; despite the cost, relocation may become an attractive option to managers of small,  
5 secluded, higher-impacted reef environments.  
6

1 **B9 References**

- 2 **Adger**, W.N., S. Agrawala, M. M. Q. Mirza, C. Conde, K. O'Brien, J. Pulhin, R.  
3 Pulwarty, B. Smit, and K. Takahashi, 2007: Assessment of adaptation practices,  
4 options, constraints and capacity, In: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation*  
5 *and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment*  
6 *Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L., O.F.  
7 Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge  
8 University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 717-743.
- 9 **Allen**, C.D., M. Savage, D.A. Falk, K.F. Suckling, T. Schulke, T.W. Swetnam, P.B.  
10 Stacey, P. Morgan, M. Hoffman, and J.T. Klingel, 2002: Ecological restoration of  
11 southwestern ponderosa pine ecosystems: a broad perspective. *Ecological*  
12 *Applications*, **12(5)**, 1418-1433.
- 13 **Allison**, G.W., J. Lubchenco, and M.H. Carr, 1998: Marine reserves are necessary but not  
14 sufficient for marine conservation. *Ecological Applications*, **8 Supplement-**  
15 **Ecosystem Management for Sustainable Marine Fisheries(1)**, S79-S92.
- 16 **Babcock**, R.C., S. Kelly, N.T. Shears, J.W. Walker, and T.J. Willis, 1999: Changes in  
17 community structure in temperate marine reserves. *Marine Ecology Progress*  
18 *Series*, **189**, 125-134.
- 19 **Baron**, J.S., H.M. Rueth, A.M. Wolfe, K.R. Nydick, E.J. Allstott, J.T. Minear, and B.  
20 Moraska, 2000: Ecosystem responses to nitrogen deposition in the Colorado Front  
21 Range. *Ecosystems*, **3(4)**, 352-368.
- 22 **Battin**, J., M.W. Wiley, M.H. Ruckelshaus, R.N. Palmer, E. Korb, K.K. Bartz, and H.  
23 Imaki, 2007: Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration.  
24 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
25 **104(16)**, 6720.
- 26 **Bengtsson**, J., P. Angelstam, T. Elmqvist, U. Emanuelsson, C. Folke, M. Ihse, F.  
27 Moberg, and M. Nystroem, 2003: Reserves, resilience and dynamic landscapes.  
28 *Ambio*, **32(6)**, 389-396.
- 29 **Bernhardt**, E.S., M.A. Palmer, J.D. Allan, G. Alexander, K. Barnas, S. Brooks, J. Carr,  
30 S. Clayton, C. Dahm, J. Follstad-Shah, D. Galat, S. Gloss, P. Goodwin, D. Hart,  
31 B. Hassett, R. Jenkinson, S. Katz, G.M. Kondolf, P.S. Lake, R. Lave, J.L. Meyer,  
32 T.K. O'Donnell, L. Pagano, B. Powell, and E. Sudduth, 2005: Synthesizing U.S.  
33 river restoration efforts. *Science*, **308**, 636-637.
- 34 **Boesch**, D.F., J. C. Field, and D. Scavia, 2000: The potential consequences of climate  
35 variability and change on coastal areas and marine resources, In: *U.S. National*

- 1            *Assessment of the Potential Consequences of Climate Variability and Change,*  
2            Report of the Coastal Areas and Marine Resources Sector Team, for the U.S.  
3            Global Change Research Program, Silver Spring, MD.
- 4    **Bruno**, J.F. and E.R. Selig, 2007: Regional decline of coral cover in the Indo-Pacific:  
5            timing, extent, and subregional comparisons. *PLoS ONE*, **2(8)**, 1-8.
- 6    **Brussaard**, L., P.C. de Ruiter, and G.G. Brown, 2007: Soil biodiversity for agricultural  
7            sustainability. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*, **121(3)**, 233-244.
- 8    **Burke**, L.M. and J. Maidens, 2004: *Reefs at Risk in the Caribbean*. World Resources  
9            Institute, Washington, DC.
- 10   **Camp**, A.E., P.F. Hessburg, R.L. Everett, and C.D. Oliver, 1995: *Spatial Changes in*  
11            *Forest Landscape Patterns Resulting From Altered Disturbance Regimes on the*  
12            *Eastern Slope of the Washington Cascades*. General Technical Report INT-GTR-  
13            320, US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Intermountain Research  
14            Station, Ogden, Utah, pp.1-283.
- 15   **Chen**, C.Y., R.S. Stemberger, N.C. Kamman, B.M. Mayes, and C.L. Folt, 2005: Patterns  
16            of Hg bioaccumulation and transfer in aquatic food webs across multi-lake studies  
17            in the Northeast US. *Ecotoxicology*, **14(1)**, 135-147.
- 18   **Chornesky**, E.A., A.M. Bartuska, G.H. Aplet, K.O. Britton, J. Cummings-carlson, F.W.  
19            Davis, J. Eskow, D.R. Gordon, K.W. Gottschalk, and R.A. Haack, 2005: Science  
20            priorities for reducing the threat of invasive species to sustainable forestry.  
21            *BioScience*, **55(4)**, 335-348.
- 22   **Coles**, S.L. and B.E. Brown, 2003: Coral bleaching-capacity for acclimatization and  
23            adaptation. *Advances in Marine Biology*, **46**, 183-223.
- 24   **Collingham**, Y.C. and B. Huntley, 2000: Impacts of habitat fragmentation and patch size  
25            upon migration rates. *Ecological Applications*, **10(1)**, 131-144.
- 26   **Driscoll**, C.T., Y.J.I. Han, C.Y. Chen, D.C. Evers, K.F. Lambert, T.M. Holsen, N.C.  
27            Kamman, and R.K. Munson, 2007: Mercury contamination in forest and  
28            freshwater ecosystems in the Northeastern United States. *BioScience*, **57**, 17-28.
- 29   **Elmqvist**, T., C. Folke, M. Nyström, G. Peterson, J. Bengtsson, B. Walker, and J.  
30            Norberg, 2003: Response diversity, ecosystem change, and resilience. *Frontiers*  
31            *in Ecology and the Environment*, **1(9)**, 488-494.
- 32   **Felzer**, B., D. Kicklighter, J. Melillo, C. Wang, Q. Zhuang, and R. Prinn, 2004: Effects of  
33            ozone on net primary production and carbon sequestration in the conterminous

- 1 United States using a biogeochemistry model. *Tellus Series B-Chemical and*  
2 *Physical Meteorology*, **56(3)**, 230-248.
- 3 **Fenn**, M.E., J.S. Baron, E.B. Allen, H.M. Rueth, K.R. Nydick, L. Geiser, W.D. Bowman,  
4 J.O. Sickman, T. Meixner, and D.W. Johnson, 2003: Ecological effects of  
5 nitrogen deposition in the western United States. *BioScience*, **53(4)**, 404-420.
- 6 **Fernandes**, L., J. Day, A. Lewis, S. Slegers, B. Kerrigan, D. Breen, D. Cameron, B.  
7 Jago, J. Hall, D. Lowe, J. Tanzer, V. Chadwick, L. Thompson, K. Gorman, M.  
8 Simmons, B. Barnett, K. Sampson, G. De'ath, B. Mapstone, H. Marsh, H.  
9 Possingham, I. Ball, T. Ward, K. Dobbs, J. Aumend, D. Slater, and K. Stapleton,  
10 2005: Establishing representative no-take areas in the Great Barrier Reef: large-  
11 scale implementation of theory on Marine Protected Areas. *Conservation Biology*,  
12 **19(6)**, 1733-1744.
- 13 **Fischer**, J., D.B. Lindenmayer, and A.D. Manning, 2006: Biodiversity, ecosystem  
14 function, and resilience: ten guiding principles for commodity production  
15 landscapes. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **4(2)**, 80-86.
- 16 **Gunderson**, L., 2007: Ecology: a different route to recovery for coral reefs. *Current*  
17 *Biology*, **17(1)**, 27-28.
- 18 **Gunderson**, L.H., 2000: Ecological resilience-in theory and practice. *Annual Review of*  
19 *Ecology and Systematics*, **31**, 425-439.
- 20 **Halpin**, P.N., 1997: Global climate change and natural-area protection: management  
21 responses and research directions. *Ecological Applications*, **7(3)**, 828-843.
- 22 **Harris**, J.A., R.J. Hobbs, E. Higgs, and J. Aronson, 2006: Ecological restoration and  
23 global climate change. *Restoration Ecology*, **14(2)**, 170-176.
- 24 **Hooper**, D.U., F.S. Chapin, III, J.J. Ewel, A. Hector, P. Inchausti, S. Lavorel, J.H.  
25 Lawton, D.M. Lodge, M. Loreau, S. Naeem, B. Schmid, H. Setälä, A.J. Symstad,  
26 J. Vandermeer, and D.A. Wardle, 2005: Effects of biodiversity on ecosystem  
27 functioning: a consensus of current knowledge. *Ecological Monographs*, **75(1)**, 3-  
28 35.
- 29 **Hughes**, A.R. and J.J. Stachowicz, 2004: Genetic diversity enhances the resistance of a  
30 seagrass ecosystem to disturbance. In: *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
31 *Sciences of the United States of America* 2004.
- 32 **Hughes**, T.P., M.J. Rodrigues, D.R. Bellwood, D. Ceccarelli, O. Hoegh-Guldberg, L.  
33 McCook, N. Moltschaniwskyj, M.S. Pratchett, R.S. Steneck, and B. Willis, 2007:  
34 Phase shifts, herbivory, and the resilience of coral reefs to climate change.  
35 *Current Biology*, **17(4)**, 360-365.



- 1 **IPCC**, 2007: *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution*  
2 *of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental*  
3 *Panel on Climate Change*. [Parry, M.L., O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der  
4 Linden, and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK,  
5 pp. 1-976.
- 6 **Jaap**, W.C., J. H. Hudson, R. E. Dodge, D. Gilliam, and R. Shaul, 2006: Coral reef  
7 restoration with case studies from Florida, In: *Coral Reef Conservation*, [Côté,  
8 I.M. and J.D. Reynolds (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp.  
9 478-514.
- 10 **Jameson**, S.C., M.H. Tupper, and J.M. Ridley, 2002: The three screen doors: can  
11 marine" protected" areas be effective? *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, **44(11)**, 1177-  
12 1183.
- 13 **Joyce**, L.A., J. Aber, S. McNulty, D. H. Vale, A. Hansen, L. C. Irland, R. P. Neilson, and  
14 K. Skog, 2001: Potential consequences of climate variability and change for the  
15 forests of the United States, In: *Climate Change Impacts on the United States: the*  
16 *Potential Consequences of Climate Variability and Change, National Assessment*  
17 *Synthesis Team Report for the US Global Change Research Program*, Cambridge  
18 University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 489-522.
- 19 **Lacey**, J.R., C.B. Marlow, and J.R. Lane, 1989: Influence of spotted knapweed  
20 (*Centaurea-maculosa*) on surface runoff and sediment yield. *Weed Technology*,  
21 **3(4)**, 627-631.
- 22 **Landres**, P.B., P. Morgan, and F.J. Swanson, 1999: Overview of the use of natural  
23 variability concepts in managing ecological systems. *Ecological Applications*,  
24 **9(4)**, 1179-1188.
- 25 **Lenihan**, H.S., C.H. Peterson, J.E. Byers, J.H. Grabowski, G.W. Thayer, and D.R.  
26 Colby, 2001: Cascading of habitat degradation: oyster reefs invaded by refugee  
27 fishes escaping stress. *Ecological Applications*, **11(3)**, 764-782.
- 28 **Levey**, D.J., B.M. Bolker, J.J. Tewksbury, S. Sargent, and N.M. Haddad, 2005: Effects of  
29 landscape corridors on seed dispersal by birds. *Science*, **309**, 146-148.
- 30 **Lippincott**, C.L., 2000: Effects of *Imperata cylindrica* (L.) Beauv. (Cogongrass)  
31 invasion on fire regime in Florida sandhill (USA). *Natural Areas Journal*, **20(2)**,  
32 140-149.
- 33 **Loreau**, M., S. Naeem, P. Inchausti, J. Bengtsson, J.P. Grime, A. Hector, D.U. Hooper,  
34 M.A. Huston, D. Raffaelli, B. Schmid, D. Tilman, and D.A. Wardle, 2001:  
35 Biodiversity and ecosystem functioning: current knowledge and future challenges.  
36 *Science*, **294(5543)**, 804-808.

- 1 **Markham, A.**, 1996: Potential impacts of climate change on ecosystems: a review of  
2 implications for policymakers and conservation biologists. *Climate Research*, **6**,  
3 171-191.
- 4 **Marshall, P.** and J. Johnson, 2007: The Great Barrier Reef and climate change:  
5 vulnerability and management implications, Chapter 24, In: *Climate Change and*  
6 *the Great Barrier Reef: a Vulnerability Assessment*, Great Barrier Reef Marine  
7 Park Authority.
- 8 **Marshall, P.** and H. Schuttenberg, 2006: Adapting coral reef management in the face of  
9 climate change, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and Management*,  
10 [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W.J. Skirving, and A. Strong  
11 (eds.)]. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 223-241.
- 12 **McClanahan, T.R.**, S. Mwangi, and N.A. Muthiga, 2005: Management of the Kenyan  
13 coast. *Ocean and Coastal Management*, **48**, 901-931.
- 14 **McClanahan, T.R.**, N. V. C. Polunin, and T. J. Done, 2002: Ecological states and the  
15 resilience of coral reefs, In: *Resilience and Behaviour of Large-Scale Ecosystems*,  
16 [Gunderson, L.H. and L. Pritchard, Jr. (eds.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp.  
17 111-163.
- 18 **McCook, L.J.**, C. Folke, T. Hughes, M. Nyström, D. Obura, and R. Salm, 2007:  
19 Ecological resilience, climate change and the Great Barrier Reef, Chapter 4, In:  
20 *Climate Change and the Great Barrier Reef: a Vulnerability Assessment*, Great  
21 Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority.
- 22 **McLachlan, J.S.**, J.J. Hellmann, and M.W. Schwartz, 2007: A framework for debate of  
23 assisted migration in an era of climate change. *Conservation Biology*, **21(2)**, 297-  
24 302.
- 25 **McLaughlin, S.B.**, M. Nosal, S.D. Wullschleger, and G. Sun, 2007a: Interactive effects  
26 of ozone and climate on tree growth and water use in a southern Appalachian  
27 forest in the USA. *New Phytologist*, **174(1)**, 109-124.
- 28 **McLaughlin, S.B.**, S.D. Wullschleger, G. Sun, and M. Nosal, 2007b: Interactive effects  
29 of ozone and climate on water use, soil moisture content and streamflow in a  
30 southern Appalachian forest in the USA. *New Phytologist*, **174(1)**, 125-136.
- 31 **Millar, C.I.**, 1989: Allozyme variation of bishop pine associated with pygmy-forest soils  
32 in northern California. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*, **19(7)**, 870-879.
- 33 **Millar, C.I.**, J.C. King, R.D. Westfall, H.A. Alden, and D.L. Delany, 2006: Late  
34 Holocene forest dynamics, volcanism, and climate change at Whitewing

- 1 Mountain and San Joaquin Ridge, Mono County, Sierra Nevada, CA, USA.  
2 *Quaternary research*, **66**, 273-287.
- 3 **Millar**, C.I., R.D. Westfall, and D.L. Delany, in press: Mortality and growth suppression  
4 in high elevation limber pine (*Pinus flexilis*) forests in response to multi-year  
5 droughts and 20th century warming. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research*.
- 6 **Millar**, C.I. and W.B. Woolfenden, 1999: The role of climate change in interpreting  
7 historical variability. *Ecological Applications*, **9(4)**, 1207-1216.
- 8 **Mooney**, H.A. and R.J. Hobbs, 2000: *Invasive Species in a Changing World*. Island  
9 Press, Washington, DC.
- 10 **Mumby**, P.J., A.R. Harborne, J. Williams, C.V. Kappel, D.R. Brumbaugh, F. Micheli,  
11 K.E. Holmes, C.P. Dahlgren, C.B. Paris, and P.G. Blackwell, 2007: Trophic  
12 cascade facilitates coral recruitment in a marine reserve. *Proceedings of the*  
13 *National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(20)**, 8362-  
14 8367.
- 15 **National Research Council**, 2004: *Air Quality Management in the United States*.  
16 National Academies Press, National Academies of Science.
- 17 **Noss**, R.F., 2001: Beyond Kyoto: Forest management in a time of rapid climate change.  
18 *Conservation Biology*, **15(3)**, 578-590.
- 19 **Novacek**, M.J. and E.E. Cleland, 2001: The current biodiversity extinction event:  
20 scenarios for mitigation and recovery. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
21 *Sciences of the United States of America*, **98(10)**, 5466-5470.
- 22 **Ottawa National Forest**, 2006: Affected environment and environmental consequences,  
23 Chapter 3, In: *Draft Environmental Impact Assessment*, USDA Forest Service,  
24 available at  
25 [http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest\\_management/forest\\_plan/revision/fp\\_final/v](http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest_management/forest_plan/revision/fp_final/volume_1_final_eis/final_eis_chapter_3.pdf)  
26 [olume\\_1\\_final\\_eis/final\\_eis\\_chapter\\_3.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/r9/ottawa/forest_management/forest_plan/revision/fp_final/volume_1_final_eis/final_eis_chapter_3.pdf).
- 27 **Palumbi**, S.R., 2002: *Marine Reserves: a Tool for Ecosystem Management and*  
28 *Conservation*. Pew Oceans Commission, Arlington, VA, pp.1-45.
- 29 **Parker**, B.R. and D.W. Schindler, 2006: Cascading trophic interactions in an  
30 oligotrophic species-poor alpine lake. *Ecosystems*, **9(2)**, 157-166.
- 31 **Peterson**, S.A., J. Van Sickle, A.T. Herlihy, and R.M. Hughes, 2007: Mercury  
32 concentration in fish from streams and rivers throughout the western united states.  
33 *Environmental Science & Technology*, **41(1)**, 58-65.

- 1 **Pimentel, D.**, L. Lach, R. Zuniga, and D. Morrison, 2000: Environmental and economic  
2 costs of nonindigenous species in the United States. *BioScience*, **50(1)**, 53-64.
- 3 **Poff, N.L.R.**, J.D. Olden, D.M. Merritt, and D.M. Pepin, 2007: Homogenization of  
4 regional river dynamics by dams and global biodiversity implications.  
5 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*,  
6 **104(14)**, 5732-5737.
- 7 **Precht, W.F.** and R. B. Aronson, 2006: Death and the resurrection of Caribbean reefs: a  
8 palaeoecological perspective, In: *Coral Reef Conservation*, [Cote, I.M. and J.  
9 Reynolds (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 40-77.
- 10 **Precht, W.F.** and S. L. Miller, 2006: Ecological shifts along the Florida reef tract: the  
11 past as a key to the future, In: *Geological Approaches to Coral Reef Ecology*,  
12 [Aronson, R.B. (ed.)]. Springer, New York, NY, pp. 237-312.
- 13 **Rahel, F.J.**, 2000: Homogenization of fish faunas across the United States. *Science*,  
14 **288(5467)**, 854-856.
- 15 **Rice, K.J.** and N.C. Emery, 2003: Managing microevolution: restoration in the face of  
16 global change. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, **(1)**, 469-478.
- 17 **Riegl, B.** and W.E. Piller, 2003: Possible refugia for reefs in times of environmental  
18 stress. *International Journal of Earth Sciences*, **92(4)**, 520-531.
- 19 **Roberts, C.M.**, J. D. Reynolds, I. M. Côté, and J. P. Hawkins, 2006: Redesigning coral  
20 reef conservation, In: *Coral Reef Conservation*, Cambridge University Press,  
21 Cambridge, UK, pp. 515-537.
- 22 **Salm, R.V.**, T. Done, and E. McLeod, 2006: Marine protected area planning in a  
23 changing climate, In: *Coral Reefs and Climate Change: Science and*  
24 *Management*, [Phinney, J.T., O. Hoegh-Guldberg, J. Kleypas, W. Skirving, and  
25 A. Strong (eds.)]. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 207-221.
- 26 **Scavia, D.**, J.C. Field, D.F. Boesch, R.W. Buddemeier, V. Burkett, D.R. Cayan, M.  
27 Fogarty, M.A. Harwell, R.W. Howarth, C. Mason, D.J. Reed, T.C. Royer, A.H.  
28 Sallenger, and J.G. Titus, 2002: Climate change impacts on U.S. coastal and  
29 marine ecosystems. *Estuaries*, **25(2)**, 149-164.
- 30 **Schneider, S.H.**, S. Semenov, A. Patwardhan, I. Burton, C. H. D. Magadza, M.  
31 Oppenheimer, A. B. Pittock, A. Rahman, J. B. Smith, A. Suarez, and F. Yamin,  
32 2007: Assessing key vulnerabilities and the risk from climate change, In: *Climate*  
33 *Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working*  
34 *Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on*  
35 *Climate Change*, [Parry, M.L., O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden,

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Annex B:**  
**Confidence Estimates**

- 1           and C.E. Hanson (eds.)]. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 779-  
2           810.
- 3   **Singer**, J.F., C.V. Bleich, and A.M. Gudorf, 2000: Restoration of bighorn sheep  
4           metapopulations in and near western National Parks. *Restoration Ecology*, **8(4)**,  
5           14-24.
- 6   **Sobel**, J.A. and C. Dahlgren, 2004: *Marine Reserves: a Guide to Science, Design, and*  
7           *Use*. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 1-383.
- 8   **Spittlehouse**, D.L. and R.B. Stewart, 2003: Adaptation to climate change in forest  
9           management. *BC Journal of Ecosystems and Management*, **4(1)**.
- 10   **Stein**, B.A., S.R. Flack, N.B. Benton, and N. Conservancy, 1996: *America's Least*  
11           *Wanted: Alien Species Invasions of US Ecosystems*. The Nature Conservancy,  
12           Arlington, VA.
- 13   **Tilman**, D., P.B. Reich, and J.M.H. Knops, 2006: Biodiversity and ecosystem stability in  
14           a decade-long grassland experiment. *Nature*, **441(7093)**, 629-632.
- 15   **Tomback**, D.F. and K. C. Kendall, 2002: Rocky road in the Rockies: challenges to  
16           biodiversity, In: *Rocky Mountain Futures, an Ecological Perspective*, [Baron, J.  
17           (ed.)]. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 153-180.
- 18   **U.S. Geological Survey**, 2005: *The State of the Colorado River Ecosystem in Grand*  
19           *Canyon*. USGS Circular 1282, U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological  
20           Survey, pp.1-220.
- 21   **USDA Forest Service**, 2004: *National Strategy and Implementation Plan for Invasive*  
22           *Species Management*. FS-805.
- 23   **Von Holle**, B. and D. Simberloff, 2005: Ecological resistance to biological invasion  
24           overwhelmed by propagule pressure. *Ecology*, **86(12)**, 3212-3218.
- 25   **Walker**, B., 1995: Conserving biological diversity through ecosystem resilience.  
26           *Conservation Biology*, **9(4)**, 747-752.
- 27   **Walker**, B., A. Kinzig, and J. Langridge, 1999: Plant attribute diversity, resilience, and  
28           ecosystem function: the nature and significance of dominant and minor species.  
29           *Ecosystems*, **2(2)**, 95-113.
- 30   **Welch**, D., 2005: What should protected areas managers do in the face of climate  
31           change? *The George Wright Forum*, **22(1)**, 75-93.

SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources | **Annex B:**  
**Confidence Estimates**

1 **West, J.M. and R.V. Salm, 2003: Resistance and resilience to coral bleaching:**  
2       implications for coral reef conservation and management. *Conservation Biology*,  
3       **17(4)**, 956-967.

4 **Williams, D.G. and Z. Baruch, 2000: African grass invasion in the Americas: ecosystem**  
5       consequences and the role of ecophysiology. *Biological Invasions*, **2(2)**, 123-140.

6 **Williams, J.W., S.T. Jackson, and J.E. Kutzbach, 2007: Projected distributions of novel**  
7       and disappearing climates by 2100 AD. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*  
8       *Sciences of the United States of America*, **104(14)**, 5738-5742.

9 **Ziska, L.H., J.B. Reeves, and B. Blank, 2005: The impact of recent increases in**  
10       atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> on biomass production and vegetative retention of Cheatgrass  
11       (*Bromus tectorum*): implications for fire disturbance. *Global Change Biology*,  
12       **11(8)**, 1325-1332.  
13  
14

## SAP 4.4. Adaptation Options for Climate-Sensitive Ecosystems and Resources

### Contact Information

Global Change Research Information Office  
c/o Climate Change Science Program Office  
1717 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW  
Suite 250  
Washington, DC 20006  
202-223-6262 (voice)  
202-223-3065 (fax)

The Climate Change Science Program incorporates the U.S. Global Change Research Program and the Climate Change Research Initiative.

To obtain a copy of this document, place an order at the Global Change Research Information Office (GCRI) web site:  
<http://www.gcric.org/orders>

### Climate Change Science Program and The Subcommittee on Global Change Research

#### **William J. Brennan, Chair**

Department of Commerce  
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration  
Acting Director, Climate Change Science Program

#### **Jack Kaye, Vice Chair**

National Aeronautics and Space Administration

#### **Allen Dearry**

Department of Health and Human Services

#### **Jerry Elwood**

Department of Energy

#### **Mary Glackin**

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

#### **Patricia Gruber**

Department of Defense

#### **William Hohenstein**

Department of Agriculture

#### **Linda Lawson**

Department of Transportation

#### **Mark Myers**

U.S. Geological Survey

#### **Jarvis Moyers**

National Science Foundation

#### **Patrick Neale**

Smithsonian Institution

#### **Jacqueline Schafer**

U.S. Agency for International Development

#### **Joel Scheraga**

Environmental Protection Agency

#### **Harlan Watson**

Department of State

#### **Executive Office and other Liaisons**

#### **Stuart Levenbach**

Office of Management and Budget

#### **Stephen Eule**

Department of Energy

Director, Climate Change Technology Program

#### **Katharine Gebbie**

National Institute of Standards & Technology

#### **Margaret McCalla**

Office of the Federal Coordinator for Meteorology

#### **Bob Rainey**

Council on Environmental Quality

#### **Gene Whitney**

Office of Science and Technology Policy